NTT DoCoMo

Manual for

FOMA® N905iμ ’07.11

Easy Search/Contents/ Precautions

Before Using the Handset

Voice/Videophone Calls

PushTalk

Phonebook

Sound/Screen/Light Settings

Security Settings

Camera

i-mode/i-motion/i-Channel

Mail

i-αppli

Osaifu-Keitai/ToruCa

GPS Function

Full Browser

Data Display/Edit/ Management

Music&Video Channel/ Music Playback

Other Convenient Functions

Character Entry

Network Services

PC Connection

Overseas Use

Appendix/External Devices/ Troubleshooting

Index/Quick Manual

WORLD WING

3G+GSM

DCMX iD

DoCoMo
W-CDMA and GSM/GPRS Systems

Thank you for choosing FOMA N905iμ.
Read this manual carefully before use or during operation as well as separate manuals for components including battery pack, and use FOMA N905iμ properly. If you have further questions regarding manuals, contact the inquiries number provided on the back of this manual. FOMA N905iμ is your useful companion. Take good care of it for so long a period.

Before using your FOMA terminal

- Wireless transmission may disable the FOMA terminal in tunnels, underground, inside of buildings, or even outdoors in poor signal conditions or out of service area. In addition, reception may fail even in upper floors including tall buildings or condominiums affording an unobstructed view. Note that, however, transmission may be disrupted even in strongest signal conditions and without moving.
- Use your FOMA terminal not to bother others around you especially in public and in a crowded or quiet place.
- Employing radio waves to the FOMA terminal makes eavesdropping not impossible.
  However, W-CDMA and GSM/GPRS systems automatically support the privacy function for all calls and others can only read a call as a noisy signal even if they succeed in eavesdropping.
- The FOMA terminal performs wireless communication with digital voice conversion. If you move into poor signal conditions and the digital signal cannot be restored to original state, voice may differ from the actual one.
- The user hereby agrees that the user shall be solely responsible for the result of the use of SSL/TLS. Neither DoCoMo nor the certifier as listed herein makes any representation or warranty as for security in the use of SSL/TLS. In the event that the user shall sustain damage or loss due to the use of SSL/TLS, neither DoCoMo nor the certifier shall be responsible for any damage or loss.
  Certifier: VeriSign Japan K.K., Cybertrust Japan Co., Ltd., GlobalSign K.K., RSA Security Inc. and SECOM Trust Systems Co., Ltd.
- This FOMA terminal is available in FOMA Plus-Area and FOMA High-speed area.
- This FOMA terminal can be used only via the FOMA network provided by DoCoMo and DoCoMo's roaming area.
- It is your responsibility to keep a separate record of all data (such as phonebook, schedule, memo, record message, voice memo or VP msg.) saved in your FOMA terminal. Under no circumstances shall NTT DoCoMo be liable for any loss or damage to the data saved in your FOMA terminal, caused by malfunction, repair, model change, etc.
- It is recommended to back up the important data to the microSD memory card. If you own a PC, you can also transfer and save the data such as phonebook, mail or schedule to your PC by using DoCoMo keitai datalink.

Before using this manual

This FOMA terminal supports Kisekae Tool (pp.120, 290). When changing the menu screen design with use of Kisekae Tool, some menu may show the different menu configuration depending on frequency in use. The other menu may not apply the numbers assigned to the menu items (menu number). In this case, change the theme to "Standard" (p.35) on the main menu or reset the menu operation history (p.110) so as to operate as described by the manual.

Latest information regarding to this manual may be downloaded from the DoCoMo website.
· To download "User's Manual" (PDF file), access the following site
http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/english/support/manual/index.html
* The URL and the contents are subject to change without notice.

Manual Reference

This manual offers the effective search that you can find functions or services to be referenced by several ways.

Index → p.458

You can fine keywords and functions displayed on the display of the FOMA terminal.

Easy Search → p.4

You can find often-used functions and convenient functions in simple terms.

Index on the front cover → Cover

You can find the table of contents for each chapter by using the Index on the front cover.

See the next page for details.

Contents → p.6

You can find descriptions using the Table of Contents which is divided by the function.

Feature Preview → p.8

You can find main functions of the FOMA N905iμ, such as new functions and convenient functions.

Menu function List → p.402

You can find menu functions displayed on the display of the FOMA terminal.

Quick Manual → p.472

You can find brief descriptions of the basic functions. You can also remove the pages to take along.

Take Quick Manual (For Overseas Use) when using your FOMA terminal abroad.

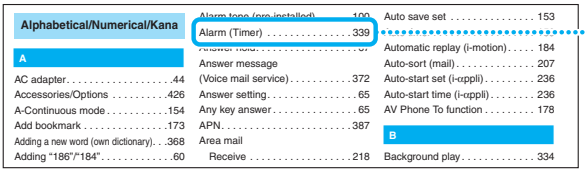
- In Manual for FOMA N905iμ, “FOMA N905iμ” is referred to as “FOMA terminal”.
- This manual covers specific functions involving the microSD memory card, which is separately purchased. microSD memory Card→p.291
- Unauthorized copying/reprinting is prohibited.
- The contents of this manual are subject to change without notice.

Manual Reference (Continued)

Following example shows how to look up the alarm function using “Index”, “Easy Search” and “Index on the front cover”.

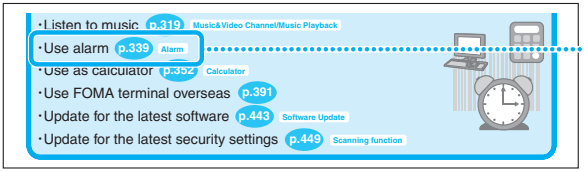
Index → p.458

You can find keywords and functions displayed on the display of the FOMA terminal.



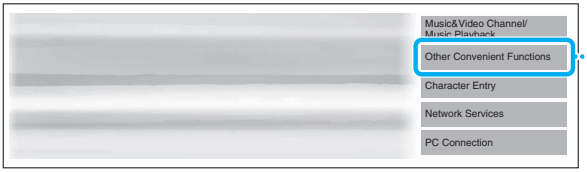
Easy Search → p.4

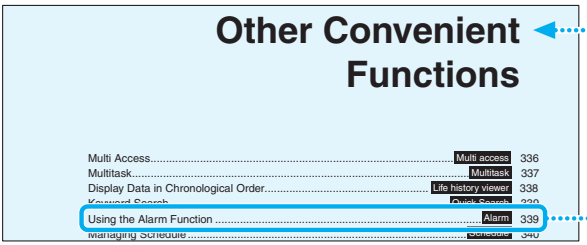
You can find often-used functions and convenient functions in simple terms.



Index on the Cover → Cover

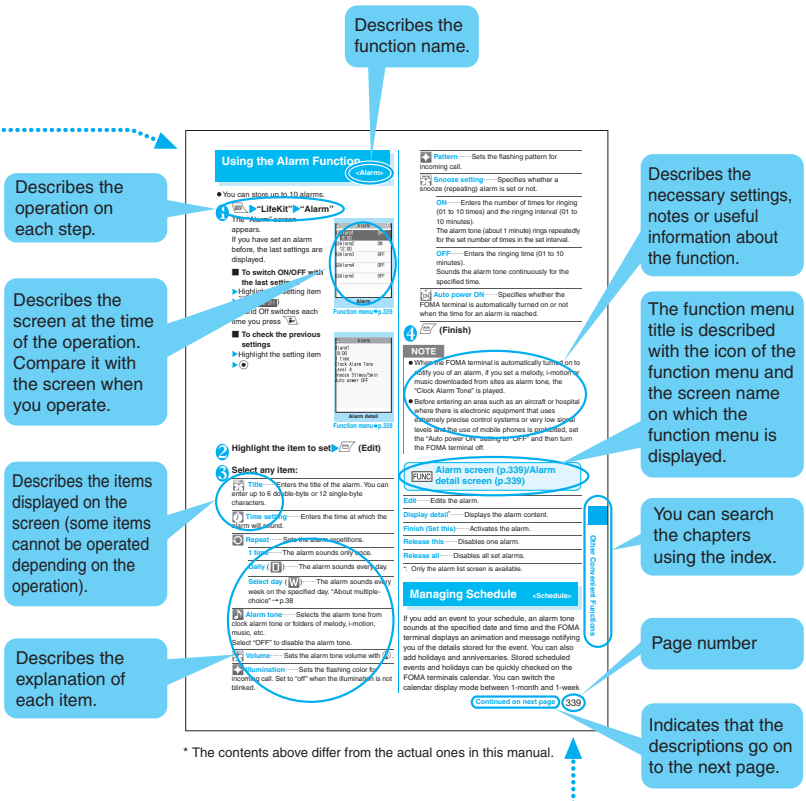
Refer to “Cover”, “Chapter title page” and “Description pages” sequentially to find the descriptions of the function you want to set. You can find the detailed table of contents on the chapter title page.





* Illustration above is provided for reference only. Actual contents may differ.

This manual uses illustrations and marks to explain how to operate the function so that you can use the FOMA terminal correctly.



* The contents above differ from the actual ones in this manual.

- For better viewing of sample screen in this manual, the color is in white for background and black for fonts with “Stand-by display” set to “OFF”. In addition, important area may be zoomed in on the screen to show clearly.
- Color pattern of the screen or an icon described in this manual is assumed as the terminal in opal white. “Standard” is adopted to the main menu.
- This manual assumes that the main function is described in default. If you change settings, manual description may differ in actual operating condition.
- Screens are used as a sample and may differ in appearance.
- In this manual, “Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli compatible with IC card function” is referred to as “Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli”.
- This manual illustrates the simple key figures to explain the key press action.

Easy Search

Find out a function with easy words from the Easy Search index below.

Useful functions for talking

- Do/do not notify your party of your caller ID p.48 Caller ID Notification
- Switch voice/videophone call during call p.53
- Adjust the volume during a call p.66 Volume
- Hold the current call p.67 Holding



When you cannot answer incoming call

- Hold the ringing call without answering p.67 On hold
- Notify that you cannot answer the call p.67 Public mode (Driving mode) p.69 Public mode (Power OFF)
- Have your party record voice/videophone message p.70 Record message



Change melody or illumination

- Adjust the ring volume p.66 Ring volume
- Set ring tone to specify party p.95 Ring tone/Image
- Change ring tone p.100 Select ring tone
- Set vibration to notify incoming call or mail p.102 Vibrator
- Mute keypad tone p.103 Keypad sound
- Set silent mode p.105 Manner mode
- Change color or pattern of incoming call lamp p.113 Illumination



Change/understand display

- Mark (icon) on the display p.26 View display
- Switch menu display p.35 Simple Menu
- Change standby screen (wallpaper) p.107 Display setting
- Display calendar on the standby screen p.108
- Change font size p.114 Font*



*: Alternatively, set font size in the function menu of "Phonebook" and "My Profile" (pp.93, 348), "Clock display" (p.115), "i-mode settings" (p.179), "Mail Setting" (p.211), "Character input set" (p.361).

Master mail



- Send Deco-mail p.190 Deco-mail
- Send image or melody p.193 Attach file
- Sort and save mail automatically p.207 Auto-sort

Master camera



- Change the size of image to shoot p.151
- Display the shot p.274 My picture
- Save image on the microSD memory card p.298

Use your phone without worries



- Lock the FOMA terminal from remote location when the FOMA terminal is lost p.126 Omakase Lock*1
- Prevent others from viewing the phonebook p.127 Secret mode/Secret data only mode
- Reject unidentified calls p.140 Call setting w/o ID
- Reject calls from callers who are not stored in phonebook p.141 Reject unknown
- Save data such as phonebook in case of loss of data p.142 Data Security Service*2

*1: Omakase Lock is a pay service
*2: Data Security Service is a pay service you need to apply for. (i-mode subscription is necessary to apply for this service.)

Miscellaneous



- Save battery life p.110 Backlight (Emergency mode)
- Read QR code or bar code p.159 Bar code reader
- Use GPS function p.249 GPS function
- Use microSD memory card p.291
- Exchange information with PC or other FOMA terminal p.305 Infrared data exchange/iC exchange/OBEX
- Listen to music p.319 Music&Video Channel/Music Playback
- Use alarm p.339 Alarm
- Use as calculator p.352 Calculator
- Use FOMA terminal overseas p.391
- Update for the latest software p.443 Software Update
- Update for the latest security settings p.449 Scanning function

For other search, see “Manual Reference”. →p.1
“Quick Manual” guides you to operate the often-used functions. →p.472

Contents

Manual Reference 1
Easy Search 4
Contents 6
Feature Preview of FOMA N905iμ 8
Mastering FOMA N905iμ! 10
Precautions 12
Handling with Care 18
Intellectual Property Right 20
Package Contents 22

Before Using the Handset p.23	• Names and functions • Display • Menu selection • Basic operations • FOMA card (UIM) • Battery installation • Charging battery • Power on/off • Initial setting • Clock • Caller ID Notification, etc.
Voice/Videophone Calls p.49	• Making voice/videophone calls • Switching between voice/videophone calls • Hands-free • Redial/Received calls • Chaku-moji • WORLD CALL • Receiving voice/videophone calls • Volume • Ring volume • Answer hold • Public mode (Driving mode/Power off) • Record message • Videophone settings, etc.
PushTalk p.79	• What is PushTalk? • Making/Receiving PushTalk calls • PushTalk phonebook • PushTalk settings, etc.
Phonebook p.87	• Add to phonebook • Group setting • Search phonebook • Editing/deleting phonebook entries • Discern connect/Discern group • Choku-Den, etc.
Sound/Screen/Light Settings p.99	• Ring tone • Vibrator • Manner mode • Display setting • Privacy angle • Backlight • Display design • Menu display set • Indicator display • Illumination • Kisekae Tool setting, etc.
Security Settings p.123	• Security code • PIN code • Dial lock • Omakase Lock • Secret mode • Secret folder • Original lock • Keypad lock • IC card authentication • Face authentication • Data Security Service, etc.
Camera p.145	• Photo mode • Movie mode • Settings for shooting • Bar code reader • Text reader, etc.
i-mode/i-motion/ i-Channel p.165	• What is i-mode? • Viewing sites • i-mode password • Internet access • Bookmark • Downloading i-motion • Using i-Channel, etc.
Mail p.187	• What is i-mode mail? • Composing/sending i-mode mail • Deco-mail/Auto Deco-mail • Attaching files • Receiving mail • Check new messages • Replying/Forwarding mail • Saving attached file • Operating mail box • Mail Setting • Message service • What is Early Warning “AreaMail”? • Chat Mail • SMS, etc.

i-αppli p.227	• What is an i-αppli? • Downloading an i-αppli • Launching an i-αppli • Pre-installed applications • i-αppli standby screen • Upgrading an i-αppli, etc.
Osaifu-Keitai/ ToruCa p.241	• What is Osaifu-Keitai • What is iC transfer service? • Using Osaifu-Keitai • What is ToruCa? • Acquiring ToruCa • Viewing ToruCa • IC card lock, etc.
GPS Function p.249	• Checking the current location • Using GPS i-αppli • Providing location information • Notifying the current location • Location history, etc.
Full Browser p.263	• Displaying website designed for PC • Viewer type • Standard type • Full Browser settings (Viewer type/Standard type), etc.
Data Display/Edit/ Management p.271	• Data box • Still image • Movie/i-motion • Chara-den • Melody • Kisekae Tool • microSD memory card • Infrared data exchange/iC exchange • Viewing PDF data • Viewing documents • Printing still images, etc.
Music&Video Channel/Music Playback p.319	• What is Music&Video Channel? • Downloading Chaku-Uta-Full® • Playback of songs, etc. * "Chaku-Uta-Full" is a registered trademark of Sony Music Entertainment (Japan) Inc.
Other Convenient Functions p.335	• Multi access • Multitask • Life history viewer • Quick Search • Alarm • Schedule • To Do list • My Profile • Checking Call data • Calculator • Text memo • Dictionary • Reset settings • Initialize, etc.
Character Entry p.359	• Character entry • 5-touch • Fixed common phrases • Copying/cutting/pasting text • Own dictionary • Download dictionary • 2-touch • T9, etc.
Network Services p.371	• Voice Mail service • Call Waiting • Call Forwarding service • Nuisance Call Blocking • Caller ID Request service • Dual Network Service • 2in1, etc.
PC Connection p.385	• Data Communication Available for the FOMA Terminal, etc. * For details, see "Manual for PC connection setting" (PDF) included on the CD-ROM.
Overseas Use p.391	• WORLD WING • Available overseas service • Checking before using overseas • Making/Receiving a call abroad • NW search mode, etc.
Appendix/ External Devices/ Troubleshooting p.401	• Menu Function List • Character Assignment to Dial Keys • Symbols/pictographs/face symbols/fixed common phrases list • Multi access/Multitask combination patterns • Options/Accessories • Troubleshooting • Error message • Software Update • Specifications, etc.
Index/Quick Manual p.457	• Index • Quick Manual • Quick Manual (For Overseas Use)

Feature Preview of FOMA N905iμ

FOMA is the name of DoCoMo's service based on the W-CDMA system approved as one of the global standards for third-generation mobile telecommunication systems (IMT-2000).

i-mode
i-mode is online service supporting simple e-mail activity as well as providing useful information on the i-mode menu site (program) or i-mode compatible Website.

●●●●● Features of N905iμ ●●●●●

i-mode mail/Deco-mail/Decorate PI →pp.188, 190

You can attach up to 2M bytes or up to 10 files (JPEG, ToruCa, PDF, etc.) along with the message body. As Deco-mail/Decorate PI is supported, you can change font color/size or background color of the message body and also insert images or motion pictogram.

Mega i-αppli/Chokkan game (touchy-feely game)→p.227

Using i-αppli downloaded from Website enables you to play a game or make automatic-updates including share prices or weather report. As the FOMA terminal supports mega i-αppli with large capacity, you can enjoy high-resolution 3D games or full-length roll-playing games.
It also supports touchy-feely games on which you take intuitive actions to tilt or shake the handset while playing a game. N905iμ employs voice recognition technology and you can perform voice-based operation.

High-speed communication →p.386

Supporting FOMA high-speed area enables high-speed communication up to 3.6 Mbps downlink and 384 Kbps uplink.

International roaming →p.392

You can use your FOMA terminal as-is overseas with the same phone number and e-mail address (because of covering GSM and 3G area). Voice/videophone calls, i-mode, i-mode mail, SMS and network services are also available. Pre-installed interpretation software "しゃべって翻訳 for N" (Shabette Translation for N) exchanges speech between Japanese and English.

GPS →p.249

Positional information from GPS enables the following: search for the current location or surroundings, notification of the current place attaching to e-mail, and navigation to the destination. Pre-installed map software allows to use high-precision handy map.

Chaku-Uta-Full®/Uta-houdai/Music&Video Channel*/Video clip →pp.324, 319, 183

* This is a pay service you need to subscribe to.

FOMA terminal supports Chaku-Uta-Full® that you can download the entire music and Uta-houdai that you can enjoy your favorite music as many as you want with fixed monthly charge.
In addition, Music&Video Channel is supported and you can automatically download the music program at night if setting in advance. Using N905iμ enjoys programs with motion picture. Moreover, N905iμ supports up to 10M bytes i-motion as well as video clips which is enjoyable for the entire music clips.

Osaifu-Keitai/ToruCa →pp.234, 241

By downloading Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli, you can transmit electric money from the site into the IC card in your FOMA terminal or check the accountant balance or transaction history. Moreover, i-αppli for "DCMX" of the DoCoMo credit service is pre-installed. "iC transfer service" is also supported so that you can easily move your IC card data to a new terminal when replacing your FOMA terminal. ToruCa can be acquired via a reader/writer unit or websites and easily exchanged via mail or Infrared data exchange.

Kisekae Tool →p.120

You can download your favorite character screen from i-mode to change the standby screen or menu collectively. N905iμ enables the change of menu sequence in high use and customization of the menu screen to your favor.

●●●●● Wide variety of network services (→p.371) ●●●●●

- Voice Mail (charged)*
- Call Waiting (charged)*
- Call Forwarding (free)*
- Nuisance Call Blocking (free)
- Caller ID Request (free)
- Dual Network (charged)*
- English Guidance (free)
- Multi Number (charged)*
- 2in1 (charged)*

*: You need to subscribe to.

●●●●● Wide variety of functions ●●●●●

3.0 inch wide VGA (WVGA) LCD

The FOMA terminal employs a high-resolution LCD of 480 dots wide × 854 dots high. High precision display is available in all screens as well as standby screen.

Camera empolying the auto-focus function →p.145

The CMOS (rear camera) featuring the auto focus function of effective 200 million pixels enables you to shoot large images of 1,200 dots wide × 1,600 dots high.

Music player →p.325

Convert tracks in the music CD or movies to WMA (Windows Media Audio) or SD-Audio data in your PC and save in the microSD memory card, and you can play the tracks with your FOMA terminal.

IC Card Authentication →p.135

Instead of entering a security code, putting your FOMA terminal close to a contactless IC card supporting FeliCa performs user authentication to release Dial lock or Keypad lock.

Face authentication →p.137

Face authentication is available to identify the user when releasing Keypad lock or IC card lock.

Original lock/Keypad lock →pp.130, 134

- You can lock the functions which use your personal information such as phonebook and mails, or restrict making/receiving calls or sending mails (Original lock).
- You can lock the key operations automatically when the FOMA terminal is folded or no operation is performed for a certain period of time (Keypad lock).

PDF viewer/Document viewer →pp.311, 313

- With the PDF viewer, you can easily view useful information such as a map, catalogue or time table on your i-mode terminal easily.
- The document viewer that allows you to view document files of Microsoft® Word, Microsoft® Excel and Microsoft® PowerPoint is incorporated.

Full Browser →p.263

With Full Browser, you can view websites for PC which provide you with more information.

One-touch multi window/Multi window →pp.174, 171

- Up to 5 websites can be accessed consecutively on one operation.
- You can switch the open sites using tab.

Choku-Den →p.96

By storing frequently used phonebook to Choku-Den, you can make a call or send a mail quickly.
You can store up to 5 Choku-Den. When mail addresses are stored, you can compose i-mode mail or chat mail to all the members easily.

Privacy angle →p.109

You can set the screen difficult to be seen from an angle. You can use the FOMA terminal without worrying about the others.

Auto Deco-mail →p.192

The FOMA terminal detects the emotion from the mail text and automatically converts the mail to Deco-mail with most suitable decorations including pictogram or face symbol.

Emotion-expressing mail →p.197

An icon pops up and displays the emotion matching the contents of the received mail.

iC exchange →p.309

You can exchange data by putting FeliCa marks (📶) of sending and receiving FOMA terminals close to each other.

Infrared data exchange/Infrared remote control →pp.307, 311

You can exchange data with other FOMA terminals using infrared communication. You can also use your FOMA terminal as a remote control.

Multi access/Multitask →pp.336, 337

You can use the voice call, packet communication and SMS at the same time (Multi access). Use multiple functions by switching them (Multitask).

Dictionary →p.353

Japanese, English-Japanese and Japanese-English dictionaries are available.

Bar code reader →p.159

You can scan bar codes or QR codes with your FOMA terminal and use the information to store it into the phonebook or compose i-mode mails, etc.

Quick Search →p.339

Easy search is convenient to lookup information while viewing i-mode site or schedule.

●●●●● Safety ●●●●●

Omakase Lock →p.126

You can lock the FOMA terminal when you lost it and can release the lock at your request. Refer to the back of this manual for the inquiries numbers.
Note that Omakase Lock is a pay service. If you subscribe to the service at the same time with the subscription of suspending the service or while the service is suspended, no charge applies.

* Omakase Lock is the service to lock the FOMA terminal by the request from the subscriber. Note that the FOMA terminal is locked if the subscriber requests to lock the FOMA terminal even if the subscriber and the user of the FOMA terminal are different.

Data Security Service →p.142

The Data Security Service enables you to store the phonebook entries, images or mails on the FOMA terminal to the Data Security Center and retrieve the data to the FOMA terminal when you lost the FOMA terminal, etc. Moreover, you can edit or manage the data stored at the Data Security Center using a PC and save the edited data on the FOMA terminal. For notes on using the “Data Security Service” and details on how to use the service, refer to “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode] FOMA version” and refer to the back of this manual for the inquiries numbers.

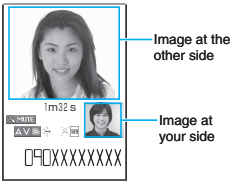
* This is a pay service you need to subscribe to.

Mastering FOMA N905iμ!

Send and receive real-time movie while talking
"Videophone"

● **Videophone→p.51**

You can talk to the other party seeing his/her face.
Your FOMA terminal is set to emit other party's voice through the speaker by default so that you can start talking immediately when making or answering a call. Furthermore, you can change the call mode from voice to videophone without having to end the call.



Enjoy talking with your fellows
"PushTalk"

● **PushTalk→p.79**

Just select the parties from the PushTalk phonebook and then press the PushTalk key. You can talk with one party or more (up to five people including yourself) at the same time.



The telop appears on the standby screen when the latest information is distributed
"i-Channel"

● **i-Channel→p.185**

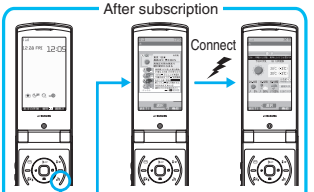
Graphical information including news or whether report can be received. Selecting your favorite programs from the channel list enables acquisition of the rich information by Flash (see p.171 for details).

* This is a pay service you need to subscribe to.

Before subscription



After subscription

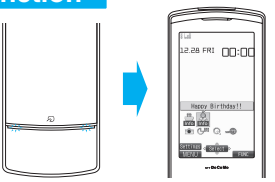


* The screens above are image. The actual screens will look different.

Remind the precious day by Illumination
"Birthday and anniversary reminder function"

● **Illumination→p.113**

The FOMA terminal reminds the birthday of your friends recorded in Phonebook or the precious anniversary added to Schedule using Illumination and Desktop icon. Reminder can be selected from several options of 1week before, 3days before, 1day before or on the day, and you do not miss the important event. Moreover, adding your birthday to My Profile congratulates Happy Birthday with image and melody.



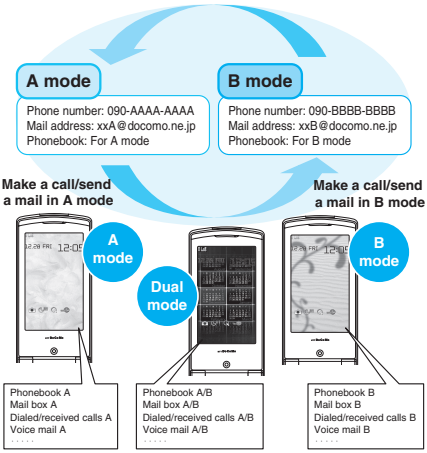
Use 2 phone numbers and e-mail addresses for your FOMA terminal

“2in1”

2in1 →p.379

You can separately use 2 phone numbers and 2 mail addresses on your FOMA terminal as if you have 2 terminals. You can manage the data in your FOMA terminal, such as Phonebook, mail boxes, Dialed calls or standby screen, separately in “A mode” and “B mode”, or all together of A/B mode in “Dual mode”.

* Subscription is required, (Charged)

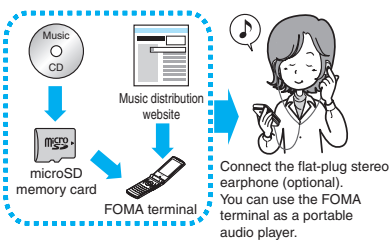


“Napster®” compatible

“Music player”

Music player →p.325

“Napster®” service provides you of copying songs downloaded from sites or on music CDs to the microSD memory card using a PC and play music on the FOMA terminal. Since “Chaku-Uta-Full®” is supported, you can download the entire track from an online music distribution site to play it. Other functions include BGM playback, which allows you to listen to music while you use other functions, display of album cover images and lyric sheets, and creation of the playlist on the FOMA terminal.



Music&Video Channel →p.320

Music program that is set for delivery is automatically downloaded at night, and you can enjoy a program using the provided music player.

Notify the arrival of your phone call with an animation before answering

“Chaku-moji”

Chaku-moji →p.58

When calling someone, you can show a message on the screen of the other party’s phone. The other party can see your business or feeling from the message before answering the call.



Precautions (ALWAYS FOLLOW THESE DIRECTIONS)

■ To ensure that you use your FOMA terminal correctly, read the Precautions carefully before use. Keep this manual after reading for future reference.

■ The precautions must be observed at all times since they contain the information intended to prevent the bodily injuries or the damage to the property.

■ The following symbols indicate the different degrees of injuries and damage that may occur if the information provided is not observed and the FOMA terminal is used incorrectly:

⚠ DANGER	Indicates that the death or serious bodily injury may result directly and immediately from the improper use.
⚠ WARNING	Indicates that the death or serious bodily injury may result from the improper use.
⚠ CAUTION	Indicates that the bodily injury and/or damage to the property may result from the improper use.

■ The following symbols indicate the specific directions:

Don't	Indicates that it is prohibited.
No disassembly	Indicates that it must not be disassembled.
No wet hands	Indicates that you must not touch it with your wet hand.
No liquids	Indicates that it must not be used near the water, which means that you must not wet it.
Do	Indicates that you must do it following the instructions.
Unplug	Indicates that you must unplug the power code from the outlet.

■ Safety Precautions are explained in the following categories:

1. Handling the FOMA terminal, Battery Pack, Adapter (including the Charger) and FOMA card (UIM) (Common) 12
2. Handling the FOMA terminal 14
3. Handling the Battery Pack 15
4. Handling the Adapter (including the Charger) 16
5. Handling the FOMA card (UIM) 17
6. Handling Mobile Phones near Electronic Medical Equipment 17

1. Handling the FOMA terminal, Battery Pack, Adapter (including the Charger) and FOMA card (UIM) (Common)

⚠DANGER



Do not use, store or leave the devices in locations subject to high temperatures, such as near the fire or heater, in direct sunlight or inside a car on a hot day.
This may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or ignite, cause the devices to malfunction or be deformed, or suffer performance loss and a reduced service life. Also, this may cause a part of the case to become hot and burn you.



Do not disassemble or rebuild. Also, do not solder the devices.
This may cause fire, injury, electric shock or malfunction.
This also may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or ignite.



Do not wet the devices.
Exposing the FOMA terminal and other devices to liquids such as water or pet urine may cause overheating, electric shock, fire, malfunction, injury, etc. Be careful where and how you use the devices.



Use the battery pack and adapter (including the charger) specified by NTT DoCoMo Group for the FOMA terminal.
Using the devices other than those specified by NTT DoCoMo Group may cause the FOMA terminal, battery pack and other devices to leak, overheat, explode, ignite or malfunction.

Battery Pack N16
Desktop Holder N15
FOMA AC Adapter 01/02
FOMA DC Adapter 01/02
Data Communications Adapter N01
FOMA AC Adapter 01 for Global Use
FOMA Dry Battery Adapter 01
FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01
FOMA Portable Charging Adapter 01

* For the information on other compatible products, contact the NTT DoCoMo shop or service counter.

⚠WARNING



Do not place the FOMA terminal, battery pack, adapters (including the charger) or FOMA card (UIM) in cooking appliances such as microwave ovens or in a pressure cooker.
This may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or ignite, cause the FOMA terminal or adapter (including the charger) to overheat, smoke or ignite, or damage the IC.



Do not shock or throw the FOMA terminal.
This may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or ignite, or cause the devices to malfunction or ignite.



Keep the conductive foreign materials (metal, pencil lead, etc.) away from the charge terminal or external connector. Do not insert those matters inside.
This may result in the short-circuit causing the FOMA terminal to ignite or malfunction.



When you are in a place such as a gas station where flammable gas is generated, turn off the FOMA terminal, or never do charging. Otherwise, catching fire may result.
Ensure that you use Osaifu-Keitai with FOMA terminal turned off when you are in the vicinity of the gas station. (When IC card lock is set, turn off the power with the lock released.)



If you find extraordinary happenings, such as an unusual odor, overheating, discoloration or deformation during the use, charge or storage, make sure to:
1. Unplug the power code from the power outlet or the cigar lighter outlet.
2. Turn off the FOMA terminal.
3. Remove the battery pack from the FOMA terminal.

Continuing to use or charge the FOMA terminal may cause it to overheat, explode, ignite or leak of battery.

⚠CAUTION



Do not leave the FOMA terminal on a slope or unstable surface.
This may fall the FOMA terminal and cause the injury or malfunction.



Keep the FOMA terminal away from the humid, dusty or hot places.
This may cause malfunction.



If your child uses the FOMA terminal, instruct him/her how to use it. Make sure that he/she always uses the FOMA terminal correctly as you instruct.
Improper usage could result in the bodily injury.



Keep the FOMA terminal out of young children's reach.
A young child may swallow it or suffer from the injury.



Pay a special attention when you use the FOMA terminal connected to the adapter (including the charger) for a long duration.
If you use i-αppli or videophone for a long time while charging the FOMA terminal, the temperature of the FOMA terminal, battery pack or adapter (including charger) may rise.
If you touch the warm part of these devices for a long period of time, it may cause redness, itch, skin irritation or low temperature burns depending on your constitution or physical condition.

2. Handling the FOMA terminal

⚠WARNING



Do not direct the infrared data port towards your or another person's eyes.
This may cause the eye injury. Do not aim or direct the infrared data port towards another infrared device as this may interfere with the operation of the device.



Do not put the FOMA terminal on the dashboard, etc. as a problem may occur due to air bag inflation.
The air bag inflation may cause the FOMA terminal to hit you or another person, which may lead to injury, malfunction, breakage, etc.



If you are wearing electronic medical equipment, do not put the FOMA terminal in your breast pocket or in the inside pocket.
Using the FOMA terminal in close proximity to electronic medical equipment may cause the equipment to malfunction.



Do not put fluids such as water or objects such as pieces of metal or flammable materials into the FOMA card (UIM) or microSD memory card slot inside of the FOMA terminal.
Such actions could cause fire, electric shock or malfunction.



Turn off the FOMA terminal in a place where it is prohibited to use the mobile phone, such as in an airplane or in a hospital.
This may affect the electric or medical equipment. If the Auto power function is set, make sure to disable the function before turning off the FOMA terminal.
Follow the instructions provided by the medical facility about using the mobile phone.
If you use the phone in an airplane, which is prohibited, you may be punished by law.



Make sure to hold the FOMA terminal off your ear and keep enough distance from it when you talk in the handsfree mode. Also, when you play games or music with an earphone/microphone connected to the FOMA terminal, adjust the volume properly.
If the volume is too high, it may cause an auditory disturbance.
Also, it may cause an accident if you have difficulty in hearing the sound of your surroundings.



If you have a weak heart, take precautions when setting the Vibrator or Ring volume.
This may affect your heart.



If you hear thunder while using the FOMA terminal outdoors, immediately turn off the FOMA terminal and take shelter in a safe location.
There is a risk of being struck by the lightning and suffering an electric shock.



Turn off the FOMA terminal near the electric equipment using the high-precision control or weak signals.
This may interfere with the operation of sensitive electronic equipment.

* Take great care on the following electric devices:

Hearing aids, implantable cardiac pacemakers, implantable cardioverter-defibrillators, and other electronic medical equipment, fire alarms, automatic doors and other equipment controlled by electronic signals.
If you use an implantable cardiac pacemaker, implantable cardioverter-defibrillator or other electronic medical equipment, contact the respective manufacturer or vendor to check whether the operation of the equipment is affected by radio waves.



If the display or camera lens broken, be careful of the broken glass or inside of the exposed FOMA terminal.
The surface of the display or camera lens is covered by a plastic panel to minimize the possibility of glass scattering. However, touching the broken display, camera lens or FOMA terminal may cause the injury.

⚠CAUTION



Do not swing the FOMA terminal by its strap or other parts.
The FOMA terminal may strike you or others around you, resulting in body injury, malfunction or damage to the FOMA terminal or other property.



If you use the motion control, be sure to check surrounding safety and hold the FOMA terminal tight. Avoid over-shaking it.
Motion control functions when you tilt and shake the FOMA terminal for playing. There is a possibility that too much shaking may cause its hitting to a person or an article, etc. and result in an accident or a damage.


Don't

Care must be taken during play with motion control not to hit a person or object by a metallic strap if you attach it to the FOMA terminal.
It cause injury, malfunction or breakage.


Don't

Do not let the FOMA terminal come close to or sandwich magnetic cards, etc. between the FOMA terminal.
The magnetic data stored on cash cards, credit cards, telephone cards, floppy disks, etc. may be erased.


Don't

Keep the FOMA terminal away from magnetized objects.
Use in close to the strong magnetism may cause improper operating signals.


Don't

If the display is broken and the liquid crystal leaks, do not take it in, draw it in or put it on your skin.
If the liquid crystal comes into your eyes or month, immediately rinse your eyes or mouth with clean water and see a doctor.
If the liquid crystal adheres to your skin or clothing, immediately wipe it off alcohol and rinse it off with water and soap.
It may cause a loss of eyesight or damage your skin.


Don't

Do not place your ear too close to the speaker while the ring tone sounds or the melody is played back.
It may cause a hearing defect.


Do

In some types of vehicle, using the FOMA terminal in the vehicle may interfere with the operation of the vehicle's electronic equipment.
Do not use the FOMA terminal if the terminal may impair the safe driving.


Do

Using the FOMA terminal may cause skin irritations such as itch, rashes or eczema. If this occurs, immediately stop using the FOMA terminal and see a doctor.
Metal components are used for the following parts.


Do

Take care not to pinch your finger or strap when opening or folding the FOMA terminal.
It cause injury or breakage.

3. Handling the Battery Pack

■ **Refer to the information shown on the battery pack label to check the type of battery pack you have.**

Display	Battery type
Li-ion	Lithium-ion

⚠DANGER


Don't

Do not let wire or other metals touch the terminal. Also, do not carry or store the battery pack with metallic necklaces, etc.
This may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or ignite.


Don't

If you have difficulty in attaching the battery pack to the FOMA terminal, do not use the excessive pressure to force the battery into place. Check that the battery pack is facing in the correct direction before you try to attach it.
This may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or ignite.


Don't

Do not throw the battery pack into a fire.
This may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or ignite.


Don't

Do not puncture the battery pack, hit it with a hammer or step on it.
This may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or ignite.


Do

If battery fluid comes into your eyes, do not rub your eyes but immediately rinse your eyes with clean water and see a doctor.
This may result in loss of eyesight.

⚠WARNING


Don't

If a malfunction is found due to an external shock such as deformation or damage by a fall, stop using it immediately.
This may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or ignite, or cause the devices to malfunction or ignite.


Do

If the battery pack is not fully charged after the specified charging time has elapsed, stop charging.
This may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or ignite.

Continued on next page

Do

If the battery pack leaks or emits an unusual odor, stop using it immediately and move it away from any flame or fire.
The battery fluid is flammable and could ignite, causing a fire or explosion.

Do

Be careful not to allow pets to bite on the battery pack.
This may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or ignite, or cause the devices to malfunction or ignite.

⚠CAUTION

Don't

Do not dispose of used battery packs with ordinary garbage.
This may cause a fire and constitute an environmental hazard. Apply insulation tape to the terminal of used battery pack and return it to the NTT DoCoMo shop or service counter, or dispose the battery pack in accordance with your local regulations.

Don't

Do not charge a wet battery pack.
This may cause the battery pack to overheat, ignite or explode.

Do

If battery fluid comes into contact with your skin or clothing, stop using the FOMA terminal immediately and rinse it off with clean water.
Battery fluid is harmful to your skin.

4. Handling the Adapter (including the Charger)

⚠WARNING

Don't

Do not use the adapter (including charger) of which the cord or power cord is damaged.
This may cause electric shock, overheat or fire.

Don't

Do not use the AC adapter or desktop holder in humid locations such as bathroom.
This may cause an electric shock.

Don't

The DC adapter must be used only for vehicles with a negative ground. Do not use the adapter in positively grounded vehicles.
This may cause a fire.

Don't

Do not touch the FOMA terminal, adapter (including charger) when you hear a crash of thunder.
There is a risk of being struck by the lightning and suffering an electric shock.

Don't

Do not short-circuit the charging terminal when the adapter or charger is plugged to the power outlet or the socket in a vehicle. Also, do not let the charging terminal contact with your body (hand, finger, etc.).
This may cause fire, malfunction, electric shock or injury.

Don't

Place the charger or desktop holder on a stable surface during charging. Also, do not cover or wrap the charger or desktop holder with clothing or bedding.
This may cause the FOMA terminal to fall out of the charger or heat to build up, resulting in a fire or malfunction.

Don't

Do not place the heavy weight object on the code of the adaptor (including Charger) or power cable.
This may cause electric shock or fire.

No wet hands

Do not touch the power cords of the adapter (including charger) or the power outlet with wet hands.
This may cause an electric shock.

Do

Use the specified power supply and voltage.
Using the adapters with incorrect voltage may cause a fire or malfunction. Use the AC adapter for global use to charge the terminal overseas.
AC adapter: AC 100V
DC adapter:
DC12V/24V (specific to vehicle with negative ground)
AC Adapter for global use:
100V to 240V AC (should be plugged to AC power outlet for home use only)

Do

If the fuse in the DC adapter blows, always replace it with the specified type of fuse.
Using the unspecified fuse may cause a fire or malfunction.
Refer to the respective manuals for the information on the specified fuse.

Do

Wipe off any dust on the plug.
This may cause a fire.


Do

When plugging the AC adapter into a power outlet, make sure that no metallic straps or other metallic objects are caught between the plug and the socket.
This may result in an electric shock, short-circuit or fire.


Do

Always grasp the plug when unplugging the adapter or charger from the power outlet or cigar lighter socket. Do not pull the cord itself with excessive force.
Do not pull the cord itself. Pulling the cord may damage the cord and cause an electric shock or fire.


Unplug

Unplug the power code from the power outlet when it will be left unused for a long period.
This may cause electrical shock, fire or malfunction.


Unplug

If any water or other liquid gets into the adapter or charger, immediately unplug it from the power outlet or socket.
This may cause an electric shock, smoke emission or fire.


Unplug

Unplug the adapter or charger from the power outlet or cigar lighter socket before cleaning.
This may cause an electric shock.

5. Handling the FOMA card (UIM)

⚠CAUTION


Do

Be careful about a cut surface when dismounting the FOMA card (IC part).
This may injure your hands or fingers.

6. Handling Mobile Phones near Electronic Medical Equipment

■ **The following precautions conform to the guidelines drawn up during the Electromagnetic Compatibility Conference Japan, regarding how to protect electronic medical equipment from radio waves emitted by mobile phones.**

⚠WARNING


Do

Observe the following in hospitals or other medical facilities:

- Do not take your FOMA terminal into operating rooms, ICUs (Intensive Care Units) or CCUs (Coronary Care Units).
- Turn off your FOMA terminal inside hospital wards.
- Turn off the FOMA terminal even if you are in a hospital lobby when electronic medical equipments are in use nearby.
- If a medical facility gives specific instructions prohibiting you from carrying or using mobile phones, follow those instructions.
- If the Auto power function is set, make sure to disable the function before turning off the FOMA terminal.


Do

Turn off the FOMA terminal in crowded places such as rush-hour trains in case somebody nearby is using an implantable cardiac pacemaker or implantable cardioverter-defibrillator.
Radio waves may affect the operation of implantable cardiac pacemakers or implantable cardioverter-defibrillators.


Do

If you use an implantable cardiac pacemaker or implantable cardioverter-defibrillator, keep the FOMA terminal at least 22 cm away from the devices.
Radio waves may affect the operation of implantable cardiac pacemakers or implantable cardioverter-defibrillators.


Do

If you use the electronic medical equipment other than implantable cardiac pacemakers or implantable cardioverter-defibrillators out of the medical facility due to the home treatment, etc, consult the respective manufacturers for the information about the effects of radio waves on the equipment.
Radio waves may affect the operations of the electronic medical equipment.

Handling with Care

General Notes

- **Do not water the devices.**
  The FOMA terminal, battery pack, adapter (including the charger) and the FOMA card (UIM) are not waterproof. Do not use them in humid locations such as bathrooms, and avoid exposing them to rain. If you carry your FOMA terminal close to your skin, sweat may cause internal components to corrode and result in a malfunction. If the problem is found to be due to moisture, it will not be covered by the warranty and in some cases may be irreparable. Even if it can be fixed, you will be charged since the damage is not covered by the warranty.
- **Wipe with a soft, dry cloth (such as a cloth for glasses).**
  - The surface of the FOMA terminal's LCD has a specific coating to improve the visibility of the color display. Rubbing the LCD of the FOMA terminal with a dry cloth to clean it may scratch the LCD surface. Handle the FOMA terminal carefully and clean it using a soft dry cloth (of a type used for eyeglasses). The LCD coating may peel off or stain if moisture or soiling is left on the surface for a long period.
  - Never use chemicals such as alcohol, thinners, benzene or detergents as these agents may erase the printing on the FOMA terminal or cause discoloration.
- **Occasionally clean the connection terminals with a dry cotton bud.**
  Soiled connection terminals may result in poor connections and loss of power. Also, as it may cause insufficient charging, clean the terminal with a dry cloth or cotton bud when it is dirty.
- **Do not place the FOMA terminal near an air conditioning vent.**
  Condensation may form due to rapid changes in temperature, and this may cause internal corrosion and malfunction.
- **Do not subject the FOMA terminal or battery pack to excessive pressure.**
  If you put the handset in a baggage with too much filler or sit down with it in a pocket, Display or the internal base may result in breakage or failure.
  Additionally, it may cause connector breakage or failure to put excessive pressure on the terminal with plugging the external cable into External connector or Earphone/microphone terminal.
- **Read the separate manuals supplied with the FOMA terminal, battery pack, adapter, charger and desktop holder carefully.**
- **Do not scrabble the display with metallic objects.**
  This may cause scratch, resulting in malfunction or damage.

Handling the FOMA Terminal

- **Avoid using the FOMA terminal in extremely high or low temperatures.**
  Use the FOMA card (UIM) within a temperature range between 5°C and 35°C with humidity between 45% and 85%.
- **Using the FOMA terminal close to ordinary phones, TVs or radios may affect the operation of such devices. Use the FOMA terminal away from such devices.**
- **It is your responsibility to keep a separate record of all data stored on your FOMA terminal.**
  Under no circumstances shall NTT DoCoMo be liable for any loss or damage to the data stored on your FOMA terminal.
- **Do not try to force the external cable plugged into or unplugged from External connector or Earphone/microphone terminal.**
  Doing so may cause malfunction or damage.
- **Do not fold the FOMA terminal with its strap caught between the folding parts.**
  Doing so may cause malfunction or damage.
- **It is normal for the FOMA terminal to become warm while being used or charged. It is not a malfunction and you can keep on using.**
- **Do not leave the camera exposed to direct sunlight.**
  This may discolor or burn the element.
- **Always fit the earphone/microphone terminal cap, external connector cap and microSD memory card slot cap before use.**
  Failing to fit these caps may cause the FOMA terminal to malfunction due to the dust or water getting in.
- **Do not use the FOMA terminal with the back cover removed.**
  This may cause the battery pack to remove, or cause malfunction or damage.
- **Do not put a thick sticker, etc. on the display surface or keys.**
  Doing so may cause malfunction.
- **Do not remove the microSD memory card or turn off the FOMA terminal when using the microSD memory card.**
  Otherwise, loss of data or malfunction may result.

Handling the Battery Pack

- **The battery pack is consumable.**
  If the battery pack does not work for enough time even when it is fully charged, it is time to exchange it. Exchange it for a specified new battery pack.
- **Charge the battery pack within the proper ambient temperature range (5°C to 35°C).**
- **Make sure to charge the battery when you use the FOMA terminal for the first time or if you have not used it for a long period of time.**
- **The available operating time of the battery pack depends on the conditions in which you use it and the condition of the battery pack itself.**

- **When the life of the battery pack is near end, the battery pack may expand a little according to the usage condition, but this is not a malfunction.**
- **Do not keep or leave the battery pack empty.**
  The performance and life of the battery pack may be deteriorated.

Handling the Adapter and Charger

- **Charge the battery pack within the proper ambient temperature range (5°C to 35°C).**
- **Do not charge the battery pack in the following places:**
  - In a humid, dusty or shaky place
  - Near your home phone, TV or radio
- **It is normal for the adapter or charger to become warm while being charged. It is not a malfunction and you can keep on using.**
- **Do not use the DC adapter to charge the battery pack when the car engine is not running.**
  This may drain the car battery.
- **If you use an electrical outlet with a disconnection prevention mechanism, follow the instructions of the user's manual of the outlet.**
- **Do not shock the adapter or charger. Do not deform the charging terminal.**
  Doing so may cause malfunction.

Handling the FOMA card (UIM)

- **Do not apply unnecessary force to attach or remove the FOMA card (UIM).**
- **It is normal for the FOMA card (UIM) to become warm while being used. It is not a malfunction and you can keep on using.**
- **The warranty does not cover damage caused by inserting the FOMA card (UIM) into some other type of IC Card reader/writer.**
- **Always keep the IC part clean.**
- **Wipe with a soft, dry cloth (such as a cloth for glasses).**
- **It is the user's responsibility to keep a separate record of all data stored on your FOMA card (UIM).**
  Under no circumstances shall NTT DoCoMo be liable for any loss or damage to the data stored on your FOMA terminal.
- **To preserve the environment, take discarded FOMA card (UIM) to the NTT DoCoMo shop or service counter.**
- **Avoid using the FOMA card (UIM) in extremely high or low temperatures.**
  Use the FOMA card (UIM) within a temperature range between 5°C and 35°C with humidity between 45% and 85%.
- **Do not damage, scratch, touch imprudently, or short circuit the IC.**
  Otherwise, loss of data or malfunction may result.
- **Be careful not to drop the FOMA card (UIM) or apply an impact to it.**
  Doing so may cause malfunction.
- **Do not bend the FOMA card (UIM) or place a heavy object on it.**
  Doing so may cause malfunction.
- **Do not insert the FOMA card (UIM) with a label or sticker attached in the FOMA terminal.**
  Doing so may cause malfunction.

Handling the FeliCa Reader/Writer

- **The FeliCa reader/writer function of the FOMA terminal uses very weak radio waves that require no licensing of radio stations.**
- **The 13.56MHz frequency band is used. If there is another reader/writer around, keep enough distance between the FOMA terminal and that reader/writer. Also, make sure that there is no radio equipment using the same frequency band nearby.**

Caution

- **Do not use the FOMA terminal that has been internally modified. Using a modified FOMA terminal constitutes a violation of the Radio Law.**
  The FOMA terminals are granted Technical Regulations Conformity Certification under the Radio Law and bear a "Technical Conformity Mark (R)" on the adhesive nameplates as evidence of conformity. Unscrewing the FOMA terminal and modifying internal components void the certification. Do not use the FOMA terminal in this state, which is illegal under the Radio Law.
- **Be careful when using the FOMA terminal while driving cars etc.**
  The penalty shall be imposed on use of a handset held in your hand while driving.
  If you are obliged to receive a call, stop the car at a secure location for dialing after you tell the caller in handsfree mode to call back.
- **Use the FeliCa reader/writer function in Japan.**
  The FeliCa reader/writer function of a FOMA terminal complies with radio standard in Japan and is certified. You may be punished if you use it overseas.
- **Use the IC card authentication function in Japan.**
  The IC card authentication function of the FOMA terminal complies with radio standard in Japan and is certified.
  You may be punished if you use it overseas.

Intellectual Property Right

Copyright and Portrait Right

It is prohibited to duplicate, modify or publicly transmit content such as text, images, music or software that was photographed using the FOMA terminal or downloaded from Internet website and that is subject to third-party copyright without the permission of the copyright folder, except where the duplication or quoting of the content for personal use is permitted under copyright law.

It may be prohibited to shoot or record the stage performance, entertainment or exhibition even if you only want to enjoy it.

Shooting a photo of someone by the FOMA terminal without his or her permission, or displaying a photo of someone shot by the FOMA terminal on the website without his or her permission is a breach of portrait right.

Trademarks

- “FOMA”, “mova”, “PushTalk”, “PushTalkPlus”, “i-mode”, “i-αppli”, “i-αppli DX”, “i-motion”, “Deco-mail”, “Chaku-motion”, “Chara-den”, “ToruCa”, “mopera”, “mopera U”, “WORLD CALL”, “Dual Network”, “FirstPass”, “visualnet”, “V-live”, “i-Channel”, “DCMX”, “iD”, “Security Scan”, “i-shot”, “i-motion mail”, “i-area”, “Short Mail”, “WORLD WING”, “Public mode”, “DoPa”, “sigmarion”, “musea”, “IMCS”, “2in1”, “Chokkan Game”, “FOMA” logo, “i-mode” logo, “i-αppli” logo, “ToruCa” logo, “DCMX” logo, “iD” logo, “WORLD WING” logo, “Music&Video Channel” logo and “HIGH-SPEED” logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of NTT DoCoMo, Inc.
- Free Dial logo mark is a registered trademark of NTT Communications Corporation.
- “Catch Phone (Call waiting service)” is a registered trademark of Nippon Telegraph and Telephone Corporation.
- McAfee® is a registered trademark or trademark of McAfee, Inc. and/or its affiliates in the US and/or other countries.
- G-GUIDE, G-GUIDE MOBILE and their logos are registered trademarks of U.S. Gemstar-TV Guide International, Inc. and/or its affiliates in Japan.
- Powered by JBlend™ Copyright 2002-2007 Aplix Corporation.
  All rights reserved.
  JBlend and JBlend-related trademarks are trademarks or registered trademarks of Aplix Corporation in Japan and other countries.
- FeliCa is a registered trademark of FeliCa Networks, Inc.
- The microSD logo is a trademark.
- “Multitask” is a registered trademark of NEC Corporation.
- QuickTime is a registered trademark of Apple Inc., in the US and other countries.
- Microsoft®, Windows®, Windows Media® and Windows Vista™ are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.
- Napster is a registered trademark of Napster, LLC. and/or its affiliates in the US and/or other countries.
- QR code is a registered trademark of Denso Wave Inc.
- Java and all Java-related trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of US Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the United States and other countries.
- T9® and T9 logo are registered trademarks of Tegic Communications, Inc. in the United States and other countries.
- T9 Text Input is patented or under patent application worldwide.
- AudioEngine™ AudioEngine LSI by YAMAHA is a trademark of Yamaha Corporation.
- “カメラでケンサク！ ERサーチ” is a trademark or registered trademark of BANDAI NETWORKS CO., LTD. and D2 Communications Inc.
- Powered By Mascot Capsule®/Micro3D Edition™ Mascot Capsule® are registered trademarks of HI CORPORATION.
- The other company names and brand names described in this manual are trademarks or registered trademarks of the respective companies.

Other settings

- This product is licensed complying with MPEG-4 Visual Patent Portfolio License, and you are permitted to use personally and for the nonprofit purpose in the following situations:
  - To record a movie based on the standard of MPEG-4 Visual (MPEG-4 Video)
  - To play MPEG-4 Video recorded by the consumer engaged in the nonprofit activities
  - To play MPEG-4 Video provided by the provider licensed by MPEG-LA

  When you use it for other purposes, such as promotion, in-house information and profit activity, contact the U.S. corporation MPEG LA, LLC.
- FeliCa is a contactless IC card technology developed by Sony Corporation. FeliCa is a registered trademark of Sony Corporation.

- Contains Flash® Lite™ and Adobe® Reader® technology by Adobe Systems Incorporated. Flash Lite copyright© 1995-2007 Adobe Macromedia Software LLC. All rights reserved. Adobe Reader copyright© 1984-2007 Adobe Systems Incorporated. All rights reserved. Adobe, Flash, Flash Lite and Reader are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and/or other countries.
- Licensed by QUALCOMM Incorporated under one or more of the following United States Patents and/or their counterparts in other nations;
  4,901,307 5,490,165 5,056,109 5,504,773 5,101,501 5,506,865 5,109,390 5,511,073 5,228,054 5,535,239 5,267,261 5,544,196 5,267,262 5,568,483 5,337,338 5,600,754 5,414,796 5,657,420 5,416,797 5,659,569 5,710,784 5,778,338
- PhotoSolid® and MovieSolid® are registered trademarks of Morpho, Inc.
- Content owners protect copyrighted intellectual properties by WMDRM (Windows Media digital rights management) technology. This product uses the WMDRM software to access WMDRM-protected contents. If the WMDRM software is unable to protect contents, the content owners request Microsoft to disable the WMDRM function of the software for playing or copying protected contents. No contents other than protected ones are affected by disabling the function. Please note that, if downloading the license to use protected contents, Microsoft may include the revocation list in the license. Content owners may request upgrading of the WMDRM software when you access the contents. If rejecting the upgrade, contents requiring the upgrade cannot be accessed.
- This product contains NetFront Sync Client of ACCESS CO., LTD.
  Copyright© 2007 ACCESS CO., LTD. All rights reserved.
  ACCESS, NetFront are trademarks or registered trademarks of ACCESS CO., LTD. in Japan and other countries.
- This product contains the module developed by Independent JPEG Group.
- This product contains NetFront Document Viewer as a document viewer function by ACCESS CO., LTD.
  ACCESS and NetFront are trademarks or registered trademarks of ACCESS CO., LTD. in Japan and/or other countries.
- This product contains IrFront of ACCESS CO., LTD. for the Infrared data exchange function.
  Copyright© 1996-2007 ACCESS CO., LTD.
  ACCESS and IrFront are trademarks or registered trademarks of ACCESS CO., LTD. in Japan and/or other countries.
- IrSimple™, IrSS™ or IrSimpleShot™ is a trademark of Infrared Data Association®.
- Full Browser is realized by Picsel Technologies.
- Picsel, Picsel Powered, Picsel Browser, Picsel Viewer, Picsel File Viewer, Picsel Document Viewer, Picsel PDF Viewer and Picsel cube logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Picsel Technologies.
- Dialog Clarity technologies are industrialized based on the license from SRS Labs, Inc.
  Dialog Clarity, SRS and ● the symbols are trademarks of SRS Labs, Inc.
- BBE M3 technology is industrialized based on the license from BBE Sound, Inc.
  BBE and BBE logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of BBE Sound in the United States and other countries.
- This product contains software licensed complying with GNU General Public License (GPL), GNU Lesser General Public License (LGPL), etc. For more details, see “readme.txt” in the “GPL・LGPL等について” folder on the bundled CD-ROM. (“readme.txt” is only available in Japanese version.)
- This product contains the font set, “FontAvenue” of NEC Corporation.
  FontAvenue is a registered trademark of NEC Corporation.
- This product is antibacterial-coated.
  Antibacterial part is the phone body (excluding the display, keys/buttons and terminals)
  Inorganic antimicrobial agent, coating, JP0122112A0016R
  The SIAA logo indicates only on the products whose quality is controlled by and information disclosed on the guidelines of the Society of Industrial Technology for Antimicrobial Articles.
- ©2007 ZENRIN DataCom CO., LTD.
  ©2007 ZENRIN CO., LTD.
- ©2007 HUDSON SOFT
- ©Disney
- ©2006 Gameloft.
- ©Primeworks
- ©FueTrek Co., Ltd.2007
- ©2007 Google
- ©Index Next Inc.

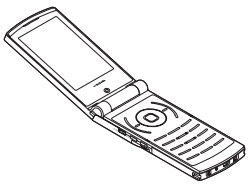
Description of Windows

- In this manual, each OS (Japanese Edition) is described as follows:
  - Windows Vista stands for Windows Vista™ (Home Basic, Home Premium, Business, Enterprise, Ultimate).
  - Windows XP stands for Microsoft® Windows® XP Professional operating system or Microsoft® Windows® XP Home Edition operating system.
  - Windows 2000 stands for Microsoft® Windows® 2000 Professional operating system.

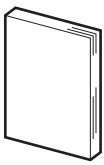
Package Contents

<Main Components>

FOMA N905iμ
(Including the warranty and Back Cover N23)

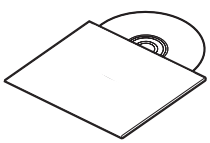


Manual for FOMA N905iμ
(This manual)



* The Quick Manual starts on p.472.

CD-ROM for FOMA N905iμ



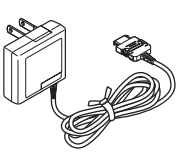
* This CD-ROM contains the “Manual for PC connection setting” and “Kuten Code List” as a PDF.

Battery Pack N16
(Including manual)

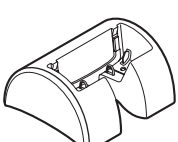


<Optional Equipment>

FOMA AC Adapter 01/02
(Including warranty and manual)



Desktop Holder N15
(Including manual)

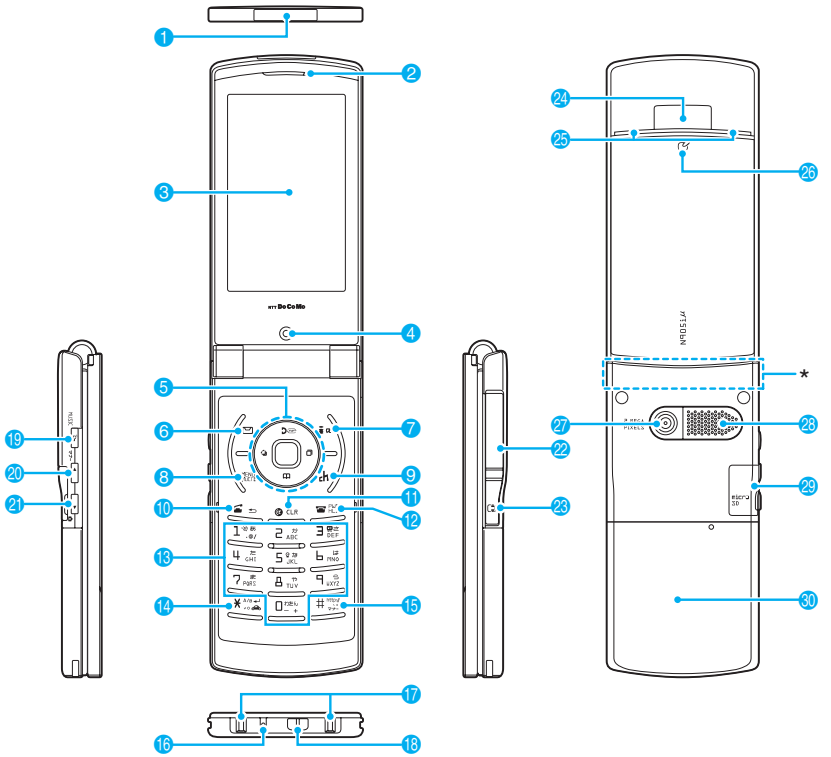


Other options and accessories→p.426

Before Using the Handset

Component Names and Functions 24
How to View the Display 26
How to View the Indicator Display (Rear Panel Display) 30
Selecting the Menu 31
About the Main Menu 34
Basic Operations on the Screens 36
Description of the Operations/Function Menus 37
Using the FOMA Card (UIM) 39
Attaching/Removing the Battery Pack 42
Charging the FOMA Terminal 43
Checking the Battery Level ..... Battery level 45
Turning the FOMA Terminal On/Off ..... Power ON/OFF 46
Switching Display into English ..... Select language 46
Setting the Defaults ..... Initial setting 46
Setting the Date and Time ..... Set main time 47
Setting the World Clock ..... Set sub clock 48
Notifying the Other Party of Your Phone Number ..... Caller ID Notification 48
Checking Your Own Phone Number ..... My Profile 48

Component Names and Functions



*: The antenna of the FOMA terminal is built-in. To make calls under better condition, do not cover the antenna part with your hands.

■Functions

1 Infrared data port→p.307

2 Earpiece

3 Display

4 Front camera

- Shoots the image of yourself using camera function
- Shoots the movie of yourself during videophone calls

5 Multi-function keys

/

- Moves the cursor or the displayed contents, etc. up or down (scrolls continuously when the key is held down)
- : Displays Choku-Den→p.96
- : Displays the search phonebook menu screen

/

- Moves the cursor to the left or right
- Scrolls the display to the previous or next screens by pages→p.36
- : Displays the Received calls record→p.56
- : Displays the Redial→p.56

- Performs the contents (selecting or setting, mainly) displayed on the software key (center bottom side of the display)→p.33

6 Function key 1

- Performs the contents displayed on the software key→p.33
- Displays the mail menu
- Makes a videophone call→p.50

⑦ **Function key 2**
- Performs the contents displayed on the software key→p.33
- Displays the i-mode menu
- Switches the character type when entering characters→p.360

⑧ **Function key 3/Menu key/Multi key**
- Performs the contents displayed on the software key→p.33
- Displays the main menu/Simple Menu.→pp.31, 35
- Displays the task change screen→p.337

⑨ **Function key 4/Channel key**
- Performs the contents (function menus, mainly) displayed on the software key→p.33
- Starting the functions set under “ch-key setting” →p.33

* By default, it displays the channel list of i-Channels.

⑩ **Start key**
- Makes voice calls→p.50
- Receives voice/videophone calls→p.63
- Returns to the previous character reading during entry in kana mode.→p.360

⑪ **Back (Clear) key**
- Goes back to one step before→p.37
- Puts a call on hold→p.67
- Deletes the entered phone number or characters→pp.50, 366

⑫ **Power/End/Response Hold key**
- Turns on the power (1 second or longer)/turns off the power (2 seconds or longer)→p.46
- Ends each function→p.37
- Ends a call→p.51
- Puts an incoming call on hold→p.67

⑬ **0 to 9 Dial keys**
- Enters phone numbers, characters and numbers

⑭ ***/Public mode (Driving mode) key**
- Sets Public mode (Driving mode) (1 second or longer)→p.67
- Switches the entered character into upper or lower case→p.364
- Enters “*” or dakuten/handakuten→p.364

⑮ **#/Manner key**
- Sets Manner mode (1 second or longer)→p.105
- Enters “#” or period, comma, etc.→p.413

⑯ **Mouthpiece/Microphone**

⑰ **Charging terminal**

⑱ **Through-hole for strap**

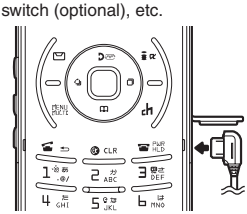
⑲ **PushTalk key**
- Use PushTalk→p.80
- Displays the PushTalk phonebook while the standby screen is displayed→p.83
- Check Missed call or New mail with the FOMA terminal folded→p.70
- Reads out the mail and alarm details →pp.30, 346
- Starts Music Player (1 second or longer)→p.331

⑳ **Volume up key/(マナー)**
- Sets Manner mode (1 second or longer)→p.105
- Checks Missed call or New mail with the FOMA terminal folded→p.30
- Raises the earpiece volume during a call→p.66
- Scrolls back the display to the previous screens by pages.→p.36
- Connects to the site set as “Home URL”→p.180

㉑ **Volume down key/(📷)**
- Displays the Photo mode screen. (1 second or longer)→p.152
- Plays Record message→p.72
- Lowers the earpiece volume during a talk.→p.66
- Scrolls down to the next view by pages.→p.36
- Reads out the current time. (Voice clock)→p.70

㉒ **External connector**
- Connects an AC adapter (optional), DC adapter (optional), FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 (optional), etc.

㉓ **Earphone/microphone terminal**
- Connects a flat-plug stereo earphone set (optional) or a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional), etc.



㉔ **Indicator display**
- Displays various information about the FOMA terminal or clock→p.30

㉕ **Incoming call lamp/Charge lamp**
- Flashes for an incoming call or received mail message→p.113
- Flashes on a birthday or anniversary→p.113
- Flashes when using a camera or the IC card function→pp.114, 152
- Lights in red while charging

㉖ **FeliCa mark**
- Reads the IC card→p.242
- iC exchange→p.309

㉗ **Rear camera**
- Shoots still images and movies
- Shoots the movie of scenery during videophone calls

㉘ **Speaker (mono)**

㉙ **microSD memory card slot**
- Used to insert the microSD memory card→p.291

㉚ **Back cover**

*: In this manual, ▼, ▲ (マナー) and ▼ (📷) are known collectively as the sidekeys.

Functions that involve holding down keys for 1 second or longer

The functions available by holding down each key for 1 second or longer are as follows:

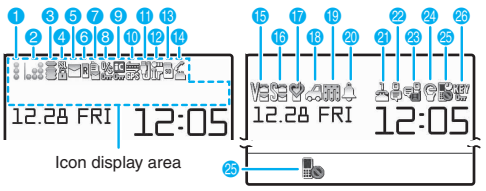
Key	Function	Refer to
	Displays the Received address list. (while on the standby screen) Reduces text size (Recv. Mail screen)	p.211
	Displays the Sent address list. (while on the standby screen) Enlarges text size (Recv. Mail screen)	p.211
	Goes back to one step before in text edition.	p.364
1	Displays current location using the GPS function. (while on the standby screen)	p.251
2	Changes the 2in1 mode. (while on the standby screen)	p.379
3	Sets the IC card lock. (while on the standby screen)	p.247
5	Switching emergency mode (when not editing text or running i-αppli)	p.110
7	Displays Font. (during standby screen)	p.114
8	Switches Privacy angle. (when not editing text or running i-αppli)	p.109
0	Enters "+" (while on the standby screen or the phone number entry screen)	p.54
*	Disables/enables sidekeys. (while on the main menu)	p.137
	Sets/Releases Public mode. (Driving mode) (while on the standby screen)	p.67
	Enters p (pause). (while editing pause dial data)	p.61
	Enters a line feed " ↵ ". (while editing text)	p.364

Key	Function	Refer to
#	Sets/Releases Manner mode. (while on the standby screen or during a call)	p.105
	Adjusts the earpiece volume. (while on the standby screen or during a call)	p.66
	Activates/Quits the music player. (while on the standby screen, etc.)	p.331
(マナー)	Sets/Releases Manner mode. (while on the standby screen)	p.105
	Mutes the microphone. (during a videophone call)	p.51
	Uses the IC card authentication. (when Dial lock/Keypad lock is set)	p.135
	Records a voice memo. (during a call)	p.349
(📷)	Displays the Photo mode shooting screen. (while on the standby screen)	p.152
	Check new messages. (while on the standby screen)	p.217
	Switches text input modes. (while editing text)	p.361
	Displays the i-αppli software list screen. (while on the standby screen)	p.229
	Changes to the main screen. (during a videophone call)	p.50

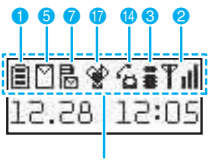
How to View the Display

- The symbols (such as , , , etc.) shown on the display and indicator display are referred to as icons.
- A calendar, etc. can be set to the display. →p.108

Display



Indicator display



■Icon display area

● The following table shows the icon images used in the display. Some icons on the indicator display may differ from those shown.

	Icon	Icon description
❶		Battery level→p.45
❷		Signal strength→p.46
	圏外	Out of service area/No radio waves →p.46
	self	Self mode→p.142
❸		i-mode in progress→p.166
		i-mode communication in progress →p.166
		Packet communication in progress (no data exchange)*1
		Packet communication in progress (sending)*1
		Packet communication in progress (receiving)*1
		Packet communication in progress (sending data)*1
		Packet communication in progress (receiving data)*1
		PushTalk call in progress→p.80
❹		SSL-compatible page displayed →p.169
❺		Unread mail→p.196
	(Red)	Inbox is full→p.196
		SMS in the FOMA card (UIM) is full →p.304
		Unread mail/SMS in the FOMA card (UIM) is full→pp.196, 304
	(Red)	Inbox is full/SMS in the FOMA card (UIM) is full→pp.196, 304
		Unread area mail→p.218
❻	R	Unread MessageR→p.216
	R (Red)	MessageR is full→p.216
	F	Unread MessageF→p.216
	F (Red)	MessageF is full→p.216
	R F	Unread MessageR/Unread MessageF→p.216
	R F (Red)	MessageR is full/MessageF is full →p.216
	R F (R:Red)	MessageR is full/Unread MessageF →p.216

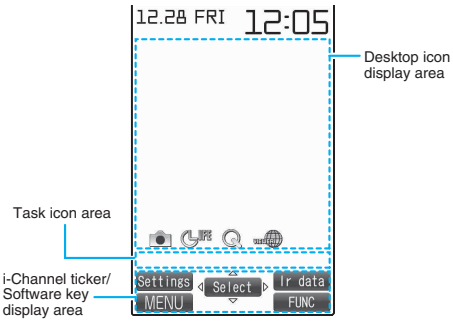
	Icon	Icon description
❻	R F (F:Red)	Unread MessageR/MessageF is full →p.216
❼		Mail kept at the i-mode Center →p.199
	(Red)	Mail at the i-mode Center is full →p.198
		"Receive option setting" is set to "ON"/Mail kept at the i-mode Center →p.197
		MessageR kept at the i-mode Center →p.217
	(Red)	MessageR at the i-mode Center is full →p.217
		MessageF kept at the i-mode Center →p.217
	(Red)	MessageF at the i-mode Center is full →p.217
❽		Dial lock→p.126
		Secret mode/Secret data only mode →p.127
		Original lock→p.130
		Original lock released temporarily →p.131
		Original lock and Secret mode/Secret data only mode→pp.130, 127
		Original lock released temporarily and Secret mode/Secret data only mode →pp.131, 127
❾		Sets the IC card lock→p.247
❿		GPS in positioning→p.250
		GPS in running Permit to send loc. (Location request to "ON")→p.256
		GPS in running Permit to send loc. (Location request to "OFF" during Permission schedule)→p.256
⓫		Communication mode set (USB cable connected)→p.302
		Communication mode set (USB cable/handsfree compatible device connected)→pp.63, 302
		Communication mode set (handsfree compatible device connected) →pp.63, 302

Continued on next page

Icon	Icon description
⑪	microSD mode set→p.302
	microSD mode set (USB cable connected)→p.302
	microSD mode set (USB cable/ handsfree compatible device connected)→pp.63, 302
	microSD mode set (handsfree compatible device connected) →pp.63, 302
	Print mode set→p.302
	Print mode set (on printer)→p.302
	Print mode set (on printer, handsfree compatible device connected) →pp.63, 302
	Print mode set (handsfree compatible device connected)→pp.63, 302
	MTP mode set→p.302
	MTP mode set (USB cable connected)→p.302
	MTP mode set (USB cable/handsfree compatible device connected) →pp.63, 302
	MTP mode set (handsfree compatible device connected)→pp.63, 302
⑫	Infrared data exchange in progress →p.307
	Infrared remote control operated →p.311
	IC card authentication in progress →p.135
	iC exchange in progress (sending/ receiving data)→p.309
⑬	microSD memory card inserted →p.291
	microSD memory card (invalid) inserted→p.291
	microSD reader/writer operated →p.301
	microSD being accessed→p.296

Icon	Icon description
⑭	During a voice call→p.51
	During 64K data communication*1 →p.386
	During a videophone call→p.51
	Switching between voice call and videophone call→pp.53, 64
⑮	Vibrator→p.102
⑯	Ring volume set to “Silent”→p.66 Mail/Msg. ring time is set to “OFF” →p.104
⑰	Manner mode→p.105
	Remote monitoring→p.77
⑱	Public mode (Driving mode)→p.67
⑲	Music&Video Channel reserved →p.320
⑳	Alarm notification function→p.345
㉑	to Voice mail message*2→p.372
㉒	to Record message*2→p.71
㉓	to Record VP message*2→p.71
㉔	Emergency mode “ON”→p.110
	Privacy angle “ON”→p.109
	Privacy angle “ON” and Emergency mode “ON”→pp.109, 110
㉕	Keypad lock set/ready→p.135
	Keypad lock is set→p.135
㉖	Side key guard is “ON”→p.137

*1 : For details on the icons, refer to the “Manual for PC connection setting” (PDF format) in the provided CD-ROM.
*2 : Only an icon appears to the available mode when 2in1 is used.



■Desktop icon display area

Icon	Icon description
New etc.	Icons providing information→p.117
etc.	Pasted desktop icons→p.115

■Task icon/i-Channel ticker

Icon	Icon description
etc.	Icons of the activated functions→p.337 Displays the status of the network in use→p.393
i-Channel ticker	The ticker for i-Channel on the standby screen→p.185

■Software key display area

See “How to use the software keys” (p.33) for details of icon meanings etc.

NOTE

- The display for the FOMA terminal adopts state-of-the-art technology; some dots (points) may not light up while others may constantly light up due to its characteristics. Note that this phenomenon is not a failure.
- Press MENU ▶“Settings”▶“Display”▶“Icons” to check the name of the icon displayed on the screen.

How to View the Indicator Display (Rear Panel Display)

Incoming calls, received mails and alarm notifications are displayed on the indicator display with messages, images or animations.

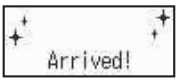
Display example



Clock (Digital 1)



Alarm ringing



Chaku-moji



Receiving call



Missed call/New mail



On hold



GPS in positioning



Emotion-expressing mail



Reading IC card



Ticker for a new i-Channel (twice)

Checking missed calls/new mails

When there is a missed call or new mail (i-mode mail, area mail and SMS), new chat mail with the FOMA terminal folded, the incoming call lamp keeps on flashing. Press [▲] (マナー), [▼] to check the information with the FOMA terminal folded.

■Checking a missed call

Press [▲] (マナー) to view received date/time/caller's name (phone number), etc.



■Checking new mail

Press [▲] (マナー) to view sender/received date and time/subject (when the mail display setting of the Indicator display is set to “ON” (default: OFF)).



* Press [▼] to display the “New mail” icon. When you press [▼] once more, the FOMA terminal reads out the sender and mail message.

NOTE

- If there are multiple missed calls or new mails, you can check the information of the latest one only.
- When the activation of the Received calls record or mail function is locked in the “Original lock”, information on the missed call or mail is not displayed but only the “Missed call” or “New mail” icon appears.

Flashing of the Incoming call lamp

- When there is a missed call, new mail or new chat mail, the incoming call lamp keeps on flashing in the color set in “Illumination”.

<Flashing color and conditions>

- The lamp does not flash when the missed info of “Illumination” is set to “OFF”.
- The lamp flashes in the default color when gradation is set in “Illumination”.
- When the color is set for the caller/sender in the phonebook, the lamp flashes in the specified color.
- The lamp does not flash in Public mode (Driving mode).

<To turn off the lamp>

When you check the information of “Missed call”, “New mail” or “New chat mail” displayed on the display or indicator display and icons disappear, the lamp is turned off.

Displaying the clock to check time

Press any sidekey with the FOMA terminal folded to turn the indicator display on and display the clock.

- When you press ▼ (📷), the clock is displayed and the current time is read out at the same time.

■**When information on missed info (p.30) is displayed**

Press ▲ (マナー) to display the time.



NOTE

- You can select the clock type (4 types) or the display time (15 seconds/30 seconds/60 seconds) in “Indicator display”. You cannot keep the clock displayed all the time.

Selecting the Menu

You can run, set, and check the FOMA terminal’s functions in a variety of ways. Mainly you can select a function from the main menu.

Following methods are available:

- Press a key assigned as a software key→p.33
- Press the assigned menu number to invoke the function →p.32
- Using the “Simple Menu”, with fewer menu items, consisting of only frequently-used functions from the main menu→p.35
- Using the “Original menu” in which you can customize your frequently-used functions→p.33

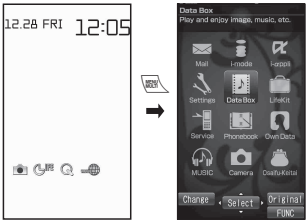
Selecting functions from the main menu

You can select the various functions of the FOMA terminal from the main menu, which is displayed when you press MENU on the standby screen. Menus are classified according to functions.→p.34

- If you select a function from the main menu, refer to “Menu Function List” (p.402).
- When changing the menu design with use of Kisekae Tool, some menu may show the different menu configuration depending on frequency in use. The other menu may not apply the numbers assigned to the menu items (menu number). In this case, change the theme to “Standard” (p.35) on the main menu or reset the menu operation history (p.110) so as to operate as described by the manual.
- If “ドコモダケ_N905iμ” is set as Kisekae Tool, selecting “基本メニュー呼び出し” (Call basic menu) in the menu enables back to the normal menu.

<Example: To set the country code for the “Int’l dial assistance”>

❶ Press MENU on the standby screen to display the main menu

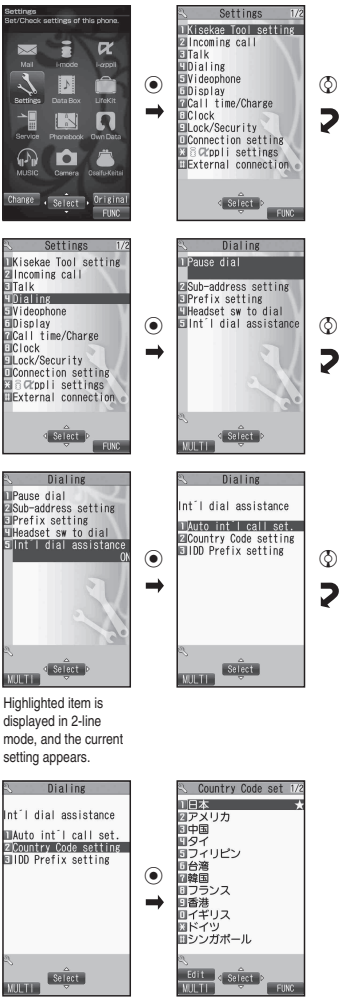


Tip

If you do not press any key for 15 seconds while the main menu is displayed, the main menu is turned off and display returns to the previous screen.

Continued on next page

2 Use ◯ to move the highlight, then press ● (Select) to select the displayed menu sequentially



Highlighted item is displayed in 2-line mode, and the current setting appears.

Tip

Holding down ◯ moves the highlight in sequence.

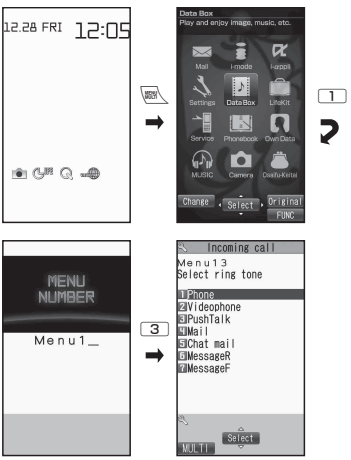
Accessing functions by selecting menu numbers

You can access functions quickly by pressing the keys pre-assigned to the menu numbers (p.402).

* Menu number can be used when setting the theme of main menu to “Standard”. →p.35

<Example: To access “Select ring tone”>

1 Press MENU/MULTI on the standby screen, then press 1 3 in sequence

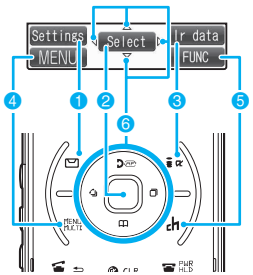


Accessing functions from the software key functions

● How to use the software keys

The screen displays the operation icons (software keys) corresponding to [✉], [●], [i-α], [MENU/MULTI], [ch], and the direction icons corresponding to [◆].

Icon (Softkey)



Function key,
Multi-function key

■To run software keys (1 to 5)

When [✉], [●], [i-α], [MENU/MULTI], [ch] are pressed, the displayed content of the corresponding software key is run.

1 includes (Settings), (Edit), (Finish), (Play), (Send), (New), etc.

2 includes (Select), (Set), (Play), (Call) etc.

3 includes (Disp SW), (Ir data), (Chrct), etc.

4 displays (Menu) and (Multi).

5 includes (Ch), (FUNC), (Exit), etc. Press while (FUNC) is displayed to display the function menu.
→p.37

* In this manual, operations related to the keys above are generally described with the software key names in the parenthesis, such as [✉] (Edit), [●] (Select), and [ch] (FUNC).

■To move the screen and scroll (6)

The icon ([◆]) only displays the directions in which movement or scrolling are possible. Press [◆] to move or scroll in that direction.

Assigning functions to software keys <ch-key setting>

You can customize the functions that are accessed by pressing [ch] while the standby display or the task change screen are displayed.

● You can choose from i-channel, camera, scheduler, music and Music&Video Channel.

1 [MENU/MULTI]▶“Settings”▶“Other settings”▶“ch-key setting”

■ To revert to the default setting

▶[ch] (FUNC)▶“Reset ch-key”

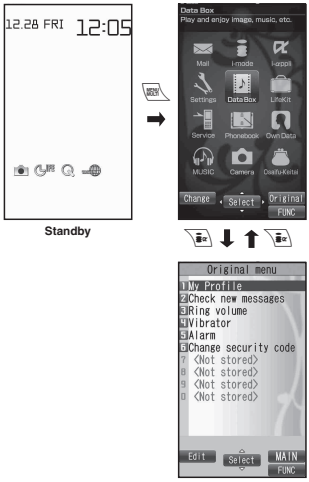
2 Select the function to assign▶“YES”

Selecting functions from the original menu

By storing your frequently used functions (p.112), you can access the menus easily.

1 Press [MENU/MULTI] on the standby screen to display the main menu, then press [i-α] (Original) in sequence

Pressing [i-α] switches between the main menu and the original menu.

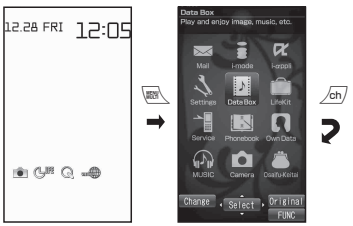


Searching menu items to access functions

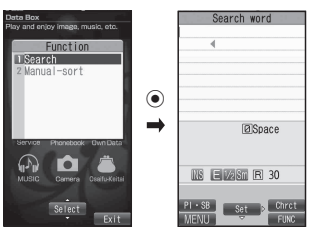
Even if you do not know the procedure to access the menu, you can still access the desired function by entering key words to search menu items.

<Example: To access “Select ring tone”>

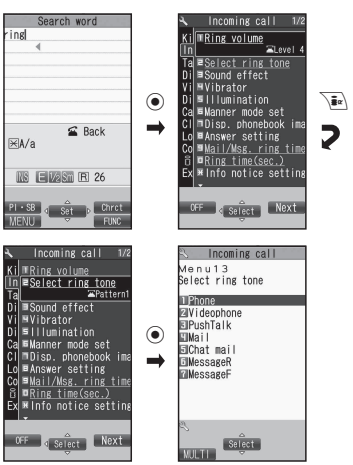
1 Press MENU/MULTI on the standby screen, then press ch (FUNC) in sequence



2 Highlight “Search”, then press ● (Select)



3 Enter “ring” and press ● (Set), then select the displayed menu



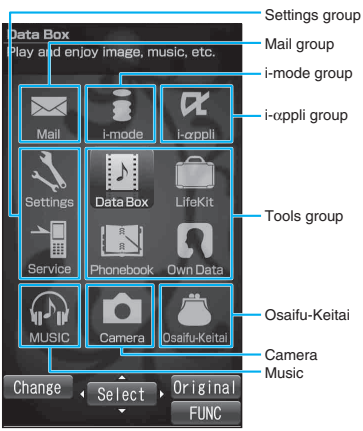
About the Main Menu

Menu group and Multitask

The main menu is subdivided into the following groups.

- You can activate up to 3 functions belonging to different groups at the same time, and switch them at any time. This is referred to as Multitask function. →p.337

<Example: When the main menu themes are set to “Standard”>



■Icon display during Multitask



Task icons in use appear.

■ Mail group

Mail

View sent/received mail, compose and send new mail.

■ i-mode group

i-mode

Connect to sites and use i-mode service.

■ i-αppli group
i-αppli
Launch and enjoy various software.
■ Tools group
Data Box
Enjoy images and music.
Phonebook
Store, search and set phonebook entries.
LifeKit
Use useful functions such as camera, alarm and data exchange.
Own Data
Check and maintain personal data and history.
■ Settings group
Settings
Specify settings for various FOMA terminal functions.
Service
Set and check network services.
■ MUSIC
MUSIC/Music
Start and set the music player and Music&Video channels.
■ Camera
Camera
Start the camera or display the image or video you shot.
■ Osaifu-Keitai
Osaifu-Keitai
Start and set Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli and Toruca.

* Items in blue in the explanation of menu groups are menu names. The display differs according to the main menu design used.

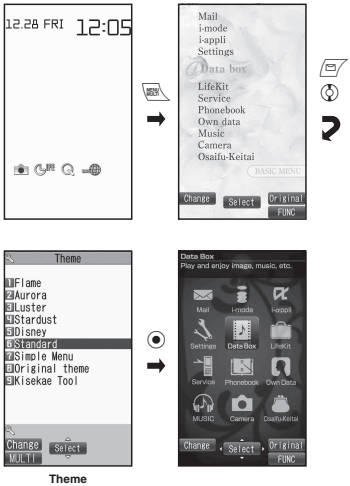
Changing the main menu

You can change the design of the main menu (style for background or icon, etc.) as you want. You can also set a picture you shot as the background. The main menu can automatically sorts its items in order of how often you use them, or you can sort them into any order that is convenient for you.

<Example: To change Main menu to “Standard”>

1 Press MENU on the standby screen, then press (Change) to select any item

Refer to “Menu display set” for details of the setting item or operation.→p.110



Theme

■ **Temporary switching of the main menu**

If you press (Change) on the Theme selection screen and make settings, the main menu will have reverted to its state from before the settings the next time it is displayed.

■ **Sorting menu items**

Press (FUNC) on the main menu to select “Manual-sort”.

When switching to Simple Menu on the Theme selection screen

The Simple Menu is the menu list which consists of frequently used menus, has large characters and is simple to use.

- Refer to “Simple Menu Function List” (p.412) when you select a function from the simple menu.
- To select a menu item which is not displayed in Simple Menu, select (Change) and select another main menu item.



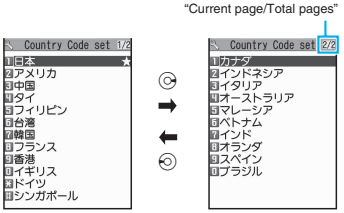
Simple menu

Basic Operations on the Screens

When a selected item appears in multiple pages

1 Press ⊙ to display other pages

To switch the page, press ⊙ (or ▲ (マナー) for the previous page and press ⊙ (or ▼ (📷)) for the next page.

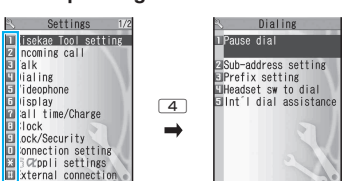


■ **To display other pages using ⊙**

Pressing ⊙ displays the previous page when the highlight is located at the top of the list, and pressing ⊙ displays the next page when the highlight is located at the bottom of the list.

Using the dial keys to select items

1 Press 0 to 9 ✱ # corresponding to the menu numbers



Key-assigned No.

Selecting "YES/NO" or "ON/OFF"

1 Press ⊙ to move the frame, then press ● (Select)



To display an image in the picture list

1 Press ⊙ to move the frame, then press ●(Disp.)



Entering a security code

Depending upon the function, a security code (p.124) entry screen may be displayed. To continue the operation, enter the security code.

1 Enter a 4 to 8 digit security code, then press ● (Set)



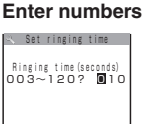
The digits of the entered security code are displayed as "_".
The detail screen of the function is displayed when the security code is successfully entered.

■ **If the entered security code is incorrect**

A message notifying that the security code is wrong is displayed. Re-enter the security code from the beginning.

Entering numbers

1 Enter numbers by pressing 0 to 9



To enter a 1-digit number or 2-digit number in a 3-digit number entry screen, press 0 twice or once before entering a digit.

■ **To enter "3"**

▶0 0 3

■ **To enter "12"**

▶0 1 2

To cancel operations, and to return to the standby screen

■ CLR

Press CLR to cancel the last operation, such as when you select the wrong menu item. Though the previous screen generally appears, another screen may appear depending on the function.

■ ☎

Press ☎ to complete operations such as settings and to return to the standby screen. Though the function is completed and the standby screen appears basically, another screen may appear depending on the current displayed screen and function. If you press ☎ during setting operation, the setting operation is canceled and the standby screen reappears.

Description of the Operations/Function Menus

Descriptions of operations

In this manual, instructions for menu operations are briefly described in almost all cases as follows:

The example of description of operations and the actual operations



①: Press MENU on the standby screen.
②: Press ● to move the highlight to the menu item in " " then press ● (Select).
③: Press ● to move the highlight to the menu item in " " then press ● (Select).
Or, press 1 to 0, ✱ and # for the menu number corresponding to the item in the double quotation marks.
④: Press ● to move the highlight.
⑤: Press the function key for the software key in parentheses.

■ **Omission of ● in the "Select" and "Set" operations**

- When a target function is selected from the main menu or list, such as examples ② and ③ above, ● (Select) is omitted.
- In the cases such as "Select an item" or "Enter your security code", ● (Select) and ● (Set) are omitted in the same way.
- When you are supposed to move to the next step without pressing ● (Select), "Highlight" is used, such as example ④ above.

■ **Omission of the descriptions after completing the operations**

- The descriptions for the operations after completing the function are omitted.

■ **Key descriptions**

- In the operation explanation in this manual, key illustrations such as ① and ⑤ above are used to indicate the operation to press the key. The key illustrations are simply described as follows:

Actual key	In this manual
1	1

- Other than ① and ⑤ in the above example, some keys are described as follows:

Key descriptions	Actual operation
# (1 second or longer)	Hold down # for 1 second or longer.
MENU 0	Press MENU on the standby screen, then press 0.

■ **Describing menus items**

When multiple menu items are described together, "/" is used between the items, as follows:

<Example: The function menu of the Choku-Den screen>

Release this/Release all……Releases one or all Choku-Den.

Function menu

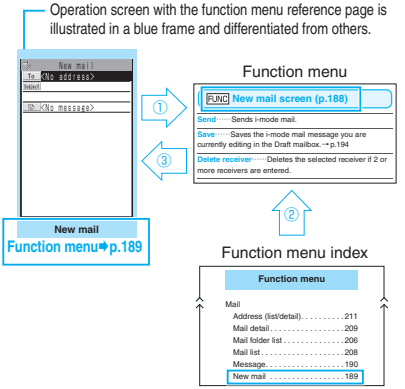
"Function Menu" is one of the menus of the FOMA terminal that can be accessed from the software key functions. The function menu is used to execute supplementary functions for each screen.
For example, it is used to delete a mail message after reading it, and to select the save folder for an image shot with the camera.

How to use the function menu

There are mainly three ways to use the function menus. Use the appropriate method depending on the situation.

① Refer to the explanation of the function menu items from the reference page stated with the operation screen.
② Refer to the explanation of the function menu items from the function menu index.
③ Find the procedure to display the operation screen from the reference page of the function menu.

Continued on next page



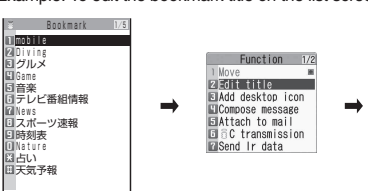
* "Function menu items" and "Function menu index" in the above illustration are only excerpts.

Operation subjects on the list screen

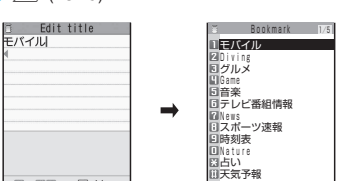
In the function menu on the list screen, either data highlighted in the list or all the data in the list is targeted by the function. For example, "Edit title" or "Delete this" targets a highlighted title or data, and "Delete all" targets all the data.

When you select a function menu which targets one data in the list, such as "Edit title" or "Delete this", highlight the data, then press ch (FUNC).

<Example: To edit the bookmark title on the list screen>



▶Highlight the bookmark ▶ch (FUNC) ▶"Edit title"

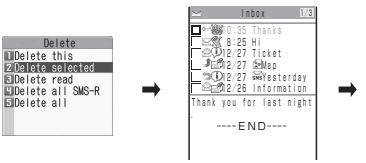


▶Edit the title▶●(Set) The bookmark title changes.

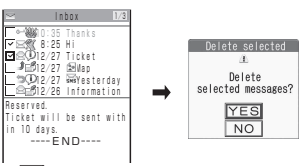
About multiple-choice

When you delete unnecessary data, protect important data or move the data you do not want to be viewed by others to the secret folder, etc., you can select not only one data or all data but also multiple data. In this case, perform the following operation.

<Example: To delete multiple mail on the received mail list screen>



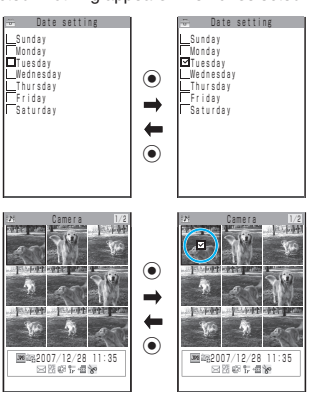
▶"Delete selected" ▶Check-mark mails to delete



▶✉ (Finish) ▶"YES"

Marking a checkbox

When you use ✣ to move the frame to the item to select and press ● (Select), the checkbox changes from ☐ to ☑. This is the selected state. Pressing ● (Select) switches between ☐ and ☑. In the picture list, ☑ appears when the item is selected. Nothing appears when unselected.



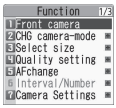
- When "FUNC" appears as a software key, pressing ch (FUNC) allows you to use "Select all" or "Release all".

Menus which switch alternately

Depending on the menu, menu items switches alternately as follows:

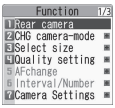
<Example 1>

Rear camera in use



<Example 2>

Front camera in use



* When the shooting screen is displayed on the FOMA terminal and “Rear camera” is used, “Front camera” appears as in <Example 1>. If you select “Front camera” at this point, the FOMA terminal switches to “Front camera” mode, and “Rear camera” appears the next time the function menu is displayed.

■Description of the menus which switch alternately

Such menus are described as “**Front camera⇔Rear camera**”.

NOTE

- When the displayed menu contains sub menus, “ ▶ ” appears on the right.
- The displayed contents of the function menu may vary or you may not be able to select the item of function menu depending on the operating function and settings. The function menu items you cannot select are displayed in gray.

Using the FOMA Card (UIM)

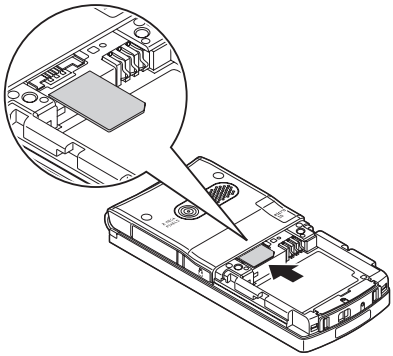
The FOMA card (UIM) is an IC card that contains private information such as your phone number. Before inserting or removing the FOMA card (UIM), first turn the power off and remove the battery pack. →p.42

Note also that when you try to insert or remove the FOMA card (UIM), keep the folded and held in your hand.

Attaching/Removing the FOMA card (UIM)

The illustration shows how to attach the FOMA card (UIM).

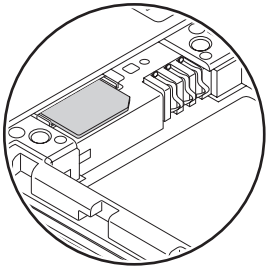
❶ Insert the FOMA card (UIM) with the IC side down as the figure below



❷ Push the FOMA card (UIM) all the way in to be fastened

When removing the FOMA card (UIM), pull straight back gently.

Properly inserted



Security codes for the FOMA card (UIM)

You can set two PIN (Personal Identification Number) codes, PIN1 code and PIN2 code, for the FOMA card. →p.124

FOMA card operational restriction function

The FOMA terminal incorporates the FOMA card operational restriction function, the security function to protect your data and files.

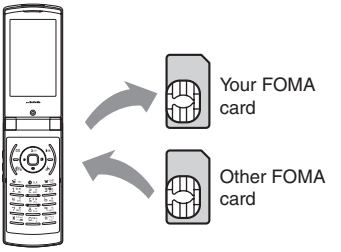
- When you download data or files from sites or receive data attached to mails, the FOMA card operational restriction is automatically set to these data and files.
- Data and files with this function set are accessible only when the same FOMA card (UIM) used when downloading these data or files is used.
- Target data and files for the FOMA card operational restriction function are as follows:
  - File attached to i-mode mail (except for ToruCa)
  - Screen memo
  - Image inserted into Deco-mail or signature
  - i-αppli (including i-αppli standby screen)
  - Image (including the animation and Flash movie)
  - Melody
  - Word/Excel/PowerPoint data
  - Image of ToruCa (detail)
  - Image downloaded from the Data Security Center
  - Programs on the Music&Video channel
  - Movable contents data
  - i-motion
  - Chara-den
  - Chaku-Uta®*/Chaku-Uta-Full®
  - PDF data
  - Kisekae Tool
  - Record Videophone message
  - Mail template including data with operational restrictions
  - Download dictionary
  - MessageR/F with attached file (melody/image)

*: "Chaku-Uta" is a registered trademark of Sony Music Entertainment, Inc.

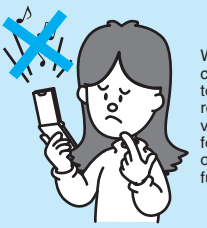
The FOMA card (UIM) that was inserted when you downloaded or received data or files is referred to as "your FOMA card (UIM)" and other FOMA cards as "other FOMA card (UIM)" hereinafter.



When the inserted FOMA card (UIM) was used to download data or receive mail, you can view or play data that follow the FOMA card operational restriction function.



Changing FOMA cards



When the inserted FOMA card (UIM) was not used to download data or receive mail, you cannot view or play data that follow the FOMA card operational restriction function.

NOTE

- If your FOMA handset has no card or if you replace the FOMA card (UIM) with other FOMA card (UIM), "" is attached to data and files with this function set and you cannot set these data to "Display setting" or "Select ring tone".
- If you remove the FOMA card (UIM) or change to other FOMA card (UIM) when data or a file with this function set is set to "Display setting" or "Select ring tone", these settings are reset to the default settings. When your FOMA card (UIM) is inserted again, the settings return to your settings.

NOTE

- Even with other FOMA card (UIM) installed, you can move or delete data or files that the FOMA card (UIM) with operational restriction function set.
- When you replace the FOMA card (UIM) on the other i-Channel compatible FOMA terminal, the i-Channel ticker is not displayed on the terminal. Also, the information may not be updated automatically. To receive the latest information, press ch to display the channel list screen. The ticker also turns on automatically.

Settings for replacing the FOMA card (UIM)

When you replace the FOMA card (UIM) inserted to the FOMA terminal with other FOMA card (UIM), the following settings are changed:

Setting	When another FOMA card (UIM) is inserted
“Select language” (p.46)	The setting stored on the newly inserted FOMA card (UIM) are applied.
“SMS center selection” (p.226)	
“SMS validity period” (p.225)	
“PIN setting” (p.125)	
“Host selection” of “Connection setting” (p.180)	
i-Channel setting (p.186)	Default setting is applied.
“Access setting” for Full Browser (p.268)	“NO” is set regardless of the previous settings.
“Cookie settings” for Full Browser (p.269)	“Invalid” is set regardless of the previous settings (Cookie information remains undeleted).
“Program settings” on the Music&Video channel (p.320)	Previous settings are invalid. Set programs again from the Music&Video Channel screen.

FOMA card functional differences

The FOMA card (UIM) (blue) has the following differences from the FOMA card (UIM) (green/white).

Function	FOMA card (blue)	FOMA card (green/white)
Max number of digits for phone number to be stored in the FOMA card phonebook	Max. 20 digits	Max. 26 digits
User certificate operation to use FirstPass	Unavailable	Available
WORLD WING	Unavailable	Available
Service Numbers	Unavailable	Available

WORLD WING

WORLD WING is the FOMA international roaming service that enables you to make and receive calls in overseas with the same mobile phone number you use in Japan with the FOMA card (UIM) (green/white) and the mobile phone which is compatible with the service.

- For the customers who have subscribed to the FOMA service on September 1, 2005 or after, a separate subscription is not necessary. However, customers who declared that they did not require this service at the FOMA service subscription or who unsubscribe from this service need a separate subscription.
- For the customers who have subscribed to the FOMA service on August 31, 2005 or before without subscribing to “WORLD WING”, a separate subscription is necessary.
- This service is not available in some payment plans.
- In case the FOMA card (UIM) (green/white) is lost or stolen in overseas, contact to DoCoMo as soon as possible and take the course of service interruption. Refer to the back of this manual for the inquiries numbers. Note that you are charged for the call and communication even after the FOMA card (UIM) (green/white) is lost or stolen.

Attaching/Removing the Battery Pack

- Make sure to turn the FOMA terminal off before removing the battery pack. Note also that when you try to insert or remove the FOMA card (UIM), keep the FOMA terminal folded and held in your hand.

Attaching

1 Remove the back cover

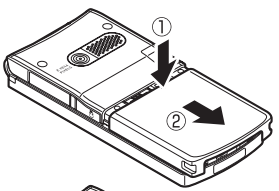
Press the catch on the back cover in direction ① and slide the back cover in direction ② to remove the back cover.

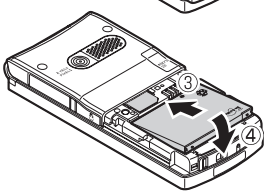
2 Attach the battery pack

Place the battery pack with the product name side facing up, attach the battery pack in direction ③ making sure that the tub of the battery pack fits the groove of the FOMA terminal (Phone), then press the battery pack down in direction ④.

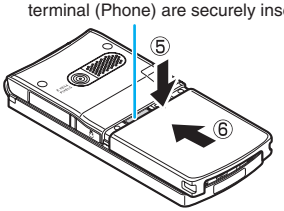
3 Attach the back cover

Lift the back cover about 3 mm and align it to the groove in the FOMA terminal (Phone). Press the catch on the back cover in direction ⑤ and slide the back cover in direction ⑥. Then press the back cover until the catch clicks shut.





Confirm that the back cover and FOMA terminal (Phone) are securely inserted.

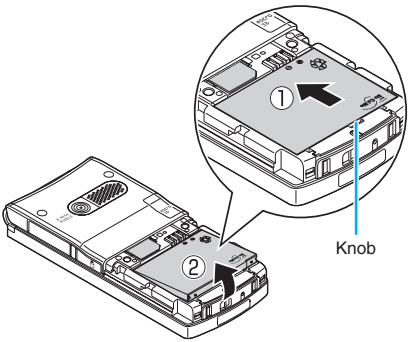


Removing

1 Remove the back cover

2 Remove the battery pack

Press the tab on the side of the battery pack in direction ①, then lift upwards in direction ② to remove the battery pack.



NOTE

- Do not use excessive force when the tip of the back cover is inserted into the FOMA terminal. The finger tab of the back cover may be broken.
- Do not remove the label that is affixed to the rear of the back cover.
- For details, refer to the manual for the Battery Pack N16.

Charging the FOMA Terminal

Getting the best out of your battery pack

Use the specified Battery Pack N16.
To use the FOMA terminal overseas, you need the FOMA AC Adapter 02/FOMA AC Adapter 01 for Global Use. Check the voltage available in the destination area or country before using the FOMA AC Adapter 02/FOMA AC Adapter 01 for Global Use.→p.426

■ Battery pack life

- The battery pack is consumable. The amount of usable time decreases every time the battery pack is recharged.
- When a fully charged battery pack only lasts half as long as it did at the time of purchase, the battery pack life is almost over, so it is recommended to replace it with a new one. When the life of the battery pack is near end, the battery pack may expand a little according to the usage condition, but this is not a malfunction.
- The battery pack life may be shortened if i-αppli or videophone is used for a long time while charging.



To protect the environment, take used battery packs to NTT DoCoMo, a DoCoMo agency, or a recycle shop.

■ Battery pack charging

- For details, refer to the manuals for the FOMA AC Adapter 01/02 (optional), FOMA AC Adapter 01 for Global Use (optional) and FOMA DC Adapter 01/02 (optional).
- FOMA AC Adapter 01 supports voltage of 100V AC only.
- FOMA AC Adapter 02 and FOMA AC Adapter 01 for Global Use support voltage from 100V AC to 240V AC, but the plug shape of the AC adapter is for 100V AC (domestic). For overseas use, the compatible conversion plug adapter is required. Do not charge the battery using the transformer for travel.
- When charging the battery pack, the battery pack must be attached to the FOMA terminal.
- You can receive calls during charging if the FOMA terminal is turned on. However, the battery level will fall during the call and the time required for charging will increase. Charging time also increases when “Charging” of “Backlight” setting is set to “All time ON”.
- When plugging in or out the connector, do it slowly and securely not to apply an excessive force.
- When you make a call or perform packet communication in a high-temperature environment, the FOMA terminal’s temperature may rise and the charging may be stopped. If this occurs, stop a running function and wait for the temperature or the FOMA terminal to fall before you retry charging.

■ Do not charge the battery pack for a long period of time (several days) with the FOMA terminal turned on

- If you charge the battery pack for a long period of time with the FOMA terminal turned on, power to the FOMA terminal will be supplied from the battery pack once charging ends. As a result, you will only be able to use the FOMA terminal for a short time and the low-voltage alarm may sound immediately. In this case, recharge the battery pack correctly. Disconnect the FOMA terminal from the AC adapter (or desktop holder) or DC adapter, then set it again for recharging.

■ Battery usage rough time (The battery duration varies depending on the charging time and the deterioration of the battery pack.)

Continuous talk time	Continuous standby time
FOAM/3G Voice: 220 min. Videophone: 110 min. GSM Voice: 190 min.	FOMA/3G Stationary (“Auto” set*): 630 hours Moving (“3G” set*): 470 hours Moving (“Auto” set*): 390 hours GSM Stationary (“Auto” set*): 290 hours

*: When switching network connections, use “3G/GSM setting” (p.397).

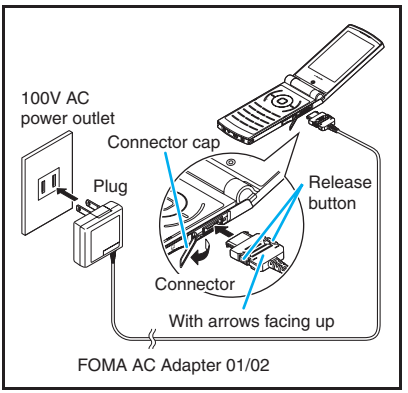
- The continuous standby time in stationary is the average usage time when the FOMA terminal is folded and standing still while radio waves can be normally received.
- The continuous standby time in moving is the average usage time when the FOMA terminal is folded under condition of “stationary”, “moving”, and “out of service area” within the area where radio waves can be normally received.
- Note that the actual continuous talk/standby time may decrease by as much as half depending on the following conditions: the battery pack charging level, the function settings, ambient environment such as temperature, the status of radio waves (out of service area or weak radio waves). i-mode Communication, i-mode or mail creation, data communication, multi-access execution, i-αppli or i-αppli standby screen activation, camera use, and

Continued on next page

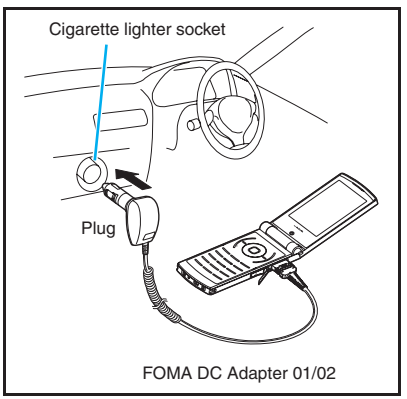
replaying movies/i-motion or music may shorten the talk (communication)/standby time.
- Depending on the network condition of the country, talk (communications) and standby times may decrease.
- When using the terminal in Japan, talk (communication) and standby time will be extended by changing the setting from “3G/GSM setting” (p.397) to “3G”.

Charging the battery pack with the AC/DC adapter

■**When using the AC adapter (optional)**



■**When using the DC adapter (optional)**



1 Open the external connector cap of the FOMA terminal

2 Plug the AC adapter/DC adapter connector horizontally into the FOMA terminal’s external connector

3 Plug the AC adapter into the outlet
Plug the AC adapter into the cigarette lighter socket in your car
Charging starts.

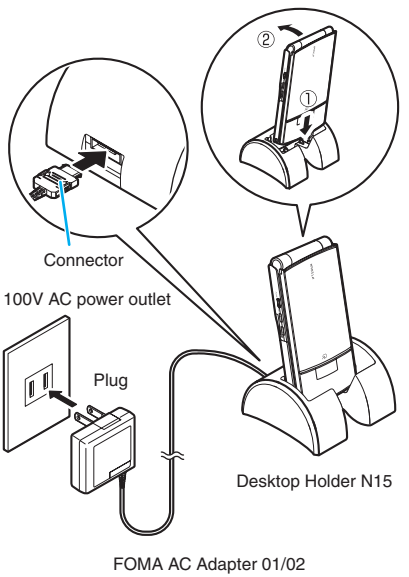
Standard charging time
Approx. 120 min.

4 When charging is completed, remove the AC adapter/DC adapter connector horizontally from the FOMA terminal while pressing the release button
Do not pull the connector with excessive force because this may cause a malfunction.

5 Unplug the AC adapter from the outlet
Unplug the DC adapter from the cigarette lighter socket in your car

6 Close the external connector cap of the FOMA terminal

Charging the battery pack with the desktop holder



1 Plug the connector of the AC adapter (optional) horizontally to the terminal on the back of the desktop holder (optional)

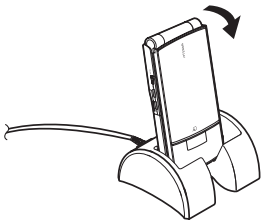
2 Plug the AC adapter into the outlet

3 Hold the desktop holder down and plug in the FOMA terminal in direction ① to infix it in direction ②

The charge lamp lights up in red during charging. The charge lamp turns off when charging ends (Full charge). If the FOMA terminal is turned on, "▮" flashes during charging and "▮" lights when charging ends.

Standard charging time
Approx. 120 min.

4 After charging is completed, hold down the desktop holder, bend the FOMA terminal in the direction of the arrow and lift it up



NOTE

- The battery pack cannot be charged separately. Always charge the battery pack while it is attached to the FOMA terminal.
- If the battery runs out, the charging lamp may not light up right away, but the charging itself has started.

<AC adapter/DC adapter>

- When the charge lamp of the FOMA terminal (Phone) and "▮" on the display disappears, and the message "Charge unusual Stop charge" is displayed, disconnect the FOMA terminal from the AC adapter or DC adapter and remove the battery pack. Then set them again for recharging. If the same error occurs again, there may be a problem or fault on the AC adapter or DC adapter. Contact the NTT DoCoMo shop or service counter.
- The DC adapter uses a 2A fuse. If the fuse (2A) blows, always use a fuse with the same specifications. Fuses (2A) are consumable items. Purchase a replacement fuse at your local car accessory shop, etc.

NOTE

<Desktop holder>

- Attach the FOMA terminal to the desktop holder securely. Also, take care not to pinch the strap.

Checking the Battery Level

<Battery level>

The indicated battery level is only a reference.

Checking the battery level with icon

When the FOMA terminal is turned on, the icon indicating the remaining battery level is automatically displayed.



▮ : Full charge.

▮ : Partial charge.

▮ : The battery is almost running out. Recharge the battery.

Checking the battery level with sound and animation

The current battery level is indicated by sound and animation.

1 MENU ▶"Settings"▶"Other settings"▶"Battery level"

The check screen is displayed, and beeps sound in accordance with the level. The battery level animation disappears in about 3 seconds.

"3 short beeps" : Full charge.
"2 short beeps" : Partial charge.
"1 short beep" : The battery is almost running out. Recharge the battery.

When the battery runs out



The screen as shown on the left appears and the low-voltage alarm sounds. The alarm sounds for about 10 seconds and the power is turned off in about 1 minute. To stop this alarm, press any key besides the side key.

NOTE

- The recharge battery screen and 3 short beeps sound during a voice call and the recharge battery screen ("カメラオフ Camera Off" message to the other party) appears during a videophone call to notify. Note that the call will be disconnected in about 20 seconds and the power turns off in about one minute.

Turning the FOMA Terminal On/Off <Power ON/OFF>

- When you start using the FOMA terminal for the first time or if it has been left unused for a long time, charge the battery.

Turning the FOMA terminal on

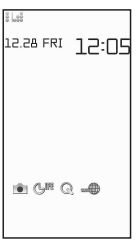
- Before turning the FOMA terminal on, make sure that the FOMA card (UIM) is inserted correctly.

1 ☎ **(1 second or longer)**

The standby screen or initial settings screen appears. If you have just attached the battery pack and you turn the FOMA terminal back on immediately after turning it off, “WAIT A MINUTE” message may appear for a short time.

■ **When “圏外” appears**

You are outside the FOMA service area or in a place where radio waves do not reach. Move to a place where the radio reception level indication such as “ ” appears. The reception level is displayed as follows:



Standby



■ **When PIN1 code entry set is set to “ON”**

The PIN1 code entry screen appears. →p.124

■ **When “All reset total cost” is set to “ON”**

The PIN2 code entry screen appears.

■ **If the Initial setting screen appears**

Specify the initial settings. → p.46

NOTE

- When you change the FOMA card (UIM), you have to enter the 4 to 8 digit security code after turning on the FOMA terminal. The standby screen appears when the security code is successfully entered. When you enter wrong security code for 5 times, the FOMA terminal turns off (however, you can turn on the FOMA terminal again).

Turning the FOMA terminal off

1 ☎ **(2 seconds or longer)**

The shutdown screen “SEE YOU” appears and the power is turned off.

Switching Display into English <Select language>

Function names and messages displayed on the display and indicator display are toggled between Japanese and English.

1 MENU ▶“各種設定”▶“ディスプレイ”▶“バイリンガル”

■ **Switch from Japanese to English**

▶”English”

■ **Switch from English to Japanese**

MENU ▶“Settings”▶“Display”▶“Select language”▶“日本語”

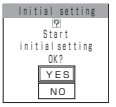
NOTE

- When a FOMA card (UIM) is inserted, the “Select language” setting is saved on the FOMA card (UIM).
- If “Select language” is set to “English”, the options are provided with “ON” and “OFF” for “Display” under “Clock display” and “Info notice setting”.
- Announcements can be played in English for some services. →p.376

Setting the Default <Initial setting>

After turning the FOMA terminal on, you can set “Set main time”, “Change security code”, “Character size”, “Permit to send loc.” and “Keypad sound” as initial settings.

1 **Initial setting screen▶“YES”**



Initial setting

2 **Set the main time**

Setting main time →p.47

3 **Change the security code**

The default setting is “0000” (four zeros).

Changing Your Security Code →p.125

4 **Character size**

Character size →p.114

5 Set whether to send location information via the GPS function

If “Permit to send loc.” is set to “ON”, enter your security code.

Setting location request→p.256

6 Set the keypad sound

Keypad sound→p.103

7 Confirm the Set auto-update description, and select “OK”

NOTE

- When you set only a part of functions, that function’s setting screen does not appear next time you turn on the FOMA terminal. When you set all functions, the initial setting screen no longer appears when you turn on the FOMA terminal.

Setting the Date and Time

<Set main time>

Set the date and time for the FOMA terminal. The terminal can be set to automatically correct the date, time and time zone. You can set the summer time if necessary.

1 MENU ▶“Settings”▶“Clock”▶“Set main time”▶“Auto time adjust”

■ To set summer time

▶“Summer time”

When set to “ON”, time is displayed with 1 hour added.

2 Select any item:

Auto time adjust

Auto……Corrects the date and time automatically. The time information is retrieved and the date and time are corrected automatically.

Manual (Date time set)……Set the time zone, date and time manually.

3 When “Auto” is selected in step 2, select any item

Auto time difference

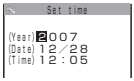
Auto……Time zone information is retrieved and the date and time for the time zone are corrected automatically.

Manual (Time zone set)……Set the time zone manually.

■ When “Manual (Date time set)” is selected

Enter the year, month, date and time.

<Example.: To set 2007, December, 28th, 12:05>



Press ● to move the highlight, then use the dial keys to enter the numbers.

Press 2, 0, 0, 7, 1, 2, 2, 8, 1, 2, 0, 5.

NOTE

- When you set the date and time, they appear on the standby screen, indicator display, etc., and you can use functions such as “Alarm” or “Schedule” which manages the date and time.
- The adjustable range of the date and time is between 00:00 on January 1, 2004 and 23:59 on December 31, 2037.

<Auto time adjust>

- The clock of the FOMA terminal is corrected based on the time and time zone information from DoCoMo network in the following cases (However, Auto time set may not be performed depending on the signal condition.):
  - When the power is on
  - When the standby screen is displayed without other function activated
  - When “圏外” turns to “” or other signal reception level indication on the standby screen and other functions are not activated
  - When charging starts on the standby screen and other functions are not activated
  - When “Auto time adjust” is set ON
- There may occur a time lag for some seconds.

Setting the World Clock
<Set sub clock>

You can display the time of a city in Japan or the world aside from the date and time set by "Set main time". You can set the summer time if necessary.

1 MENU/MULTI ▶"Settings"▶"Clock"▶"Set sub clock"▶"display method"

■ **To set summer time**
▶"Summer time"
When set to "ON", time is displayed with 1 hour added.

2 Select any item:

Auto····· Automatically display the sub-clock when using international roaming. The displayed time is the Japan time.

Always····· The time zone time selected here is always displayed on the sub-clock.
▶Select the city name to set for the time zone.
To change the city, press (Change) to change the city name displayed for the time zone. (For some time zones, the city name does not change.)

OFF·····Sub-clock is not displayed.

NOTE
- If "Size" under "Clock display" is set to "Up Small", the sub-clock is not displayed.
- When Time zone under "Set main time" is other than "GMT+9 Japan", the sub-clock displays Japanese time if this function is set to "Auto". (When "GMT+9 Japan" is set, the sub-clock is not displayed in Japan.)

Notifying the Other Party of Your Phone Number
<Caller ID Notification>

The FOMA terminal can send your phone number to the other party's phone when you make a call. Since the phone number is important information, please take care when you send your caller ID.

- You cannot operate the Caller ID Notification service when the "184" icon is displayed.

1 MENU/MULTI ▶"Service"▶"Caller ID Notification"▶Select any item

Activate/Deactivate·····Sets whether to send your caller ID or not.

Check setting·····Checks the current Caller ID Notification settings.

NOTE
- You can also set whether to notify your caller ID or not each time you make a call. →p.60
- This function is available only when the other party's phone is capable of displaying the caller ID.
- If you hear a message requesting your caller ID, make a call again after setting "Activate/Deactivate" of the Caller ID Notification to "ON".
- Set this function after initiating a PushTalk call.

Checking Your Own Phone Number
<My Profile>

You can display and check your phone number (own number) stored in your FOMA card (UIM).
- My Profile can be edited. →p.347

1 MENU/MULTI 0



NOTE
- You can easily quote the information stored in "My Profile" when entering the owner information (such as name or mail address) on websites, etc. →pp.349, 366
- The mail address of i-mode can be checked in i-mode menu▶iMenu▶English iMenu▶Options▶Mail Settings▶Confirm Mail Address.
- When 2in1 is in Dual mode, press to switch the My Profile display.
- Reset My Profile in B mode when you exchange the FOMA card (UIM) while using 2in1. →p.348

Voice/Videophone Calls

Making a Voice/Videophone Call

Making a Voice/Videophone Call 50
Switching a Voice/Videophone Call During a Call (Caller) 53
Using International Call ..... WORLD CALL 54
Using Handsfree Operation During a Call ..... Hands-free 56
Using the Redial/Dialed Calls/Received Calls Record ..... Redial/Dialed calls/Received calls 56
Using Chaku-moji ..... Chaku-moji 58
Notifying/Withholding Your Caller ID for Individual Calls 60
Sending Push Signals Quickly ..... Pause dial 61
Using the Prefix Function 62
Setting Sub-addresses When Making Calls ..... Sub-address setting 62
Setting the Alarm Used for Reconnection ..... Reconnect signal 63
Blocking Out Ambient Noise ..... Noise reduction 63
Making Handsfree Calls in the Car ..... In-car hands-free 63

Receiving a Voice/Videophone Call

Receiving a Voice/Videophone Call 63
When the Other Party Switches a Voice/Videophone Call (Caller) 64
Using the Dial Keys to Answer a Call ..... Answer setting 65
Ending/Holding Calls with the FOMA Terminal Folded ..... Setting when folded 65
Adjusting the Earpiece Volume ..... Volume 66
Adjusting the Volume of Ring Tone ..... Ring volume 66

Settings for when you cannot take calls

Holding the Ringing/Current Call ..... On hold/Holding 67
Using the Public Mode (Driving Mode) ..... Public mode (Driving mode) 67
Using the Public Mode (Power OFF) ..... Public mode (Power OFF) 69
Setting the Notification Method for Missed Calls ..... Info notice setting 70
Having the Caller Leave a Message ..... Record message 70
Having Callers Leave a Message During an Incoming Call ..... Quick message 72
Playing/Erasing Recorded Messages and Voice Memos 72

Setting the Videophone

Using Chara-den 73
Selecting the Image Sent to the Other Party 73
Setting the Hands-free Operation for Videophone Calls ..... Hands-free switch 75
Setting the Image Displayed During a Videophone Call 75
Setting for Switching Between Voice Call and Videophone Call ..... Ntfy switch-mode 76
Setting the Answer Mode When You Receive a Videophone Call During i-mode ..... V-phone while packet 76
Using the Videophone Connecting to External Devices 77
Remote Monitoring ..... Remote monitoring 77

Making a Voice/Videophone Call

1 Dial the phone number starting with the other party's area code

The "Enter phone number" screen appears.
Always start by entering the area code, even for calls within the same area.

Area code – Local code – Phone number

If the number exceeds 26 digits, last 26 digits are displayed. You can dial up to 80 digits.



Enter phone number

Function menu➡p.52

■ **To call to a mobile phone**
090－××××－××××
or
080－××××－××××

■ **To call to a PHS phone**
070－××××－××××

<When you enter a wrong number>

■ **To insert a number**
Press ⊙ to move the cursor to the number to the left of the position where you want to insert the number, then enter the number.

■ **To delete a number**
Press ⊙ to move the cursor to the number you want to delete, then press CLR.
Hold down CLR for 1 second or longer to delete all the numbers to the left of the cursor and the number in the cursor position.

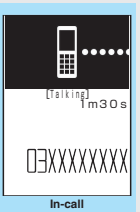
■ **To reenter the number**
Move the cursor to the beginning or end of the number and hold down CLR for 1 second or longer to return to the standby screen.

<Videophone>

■ **To make a videophone call with Chara-den**
▶ ch (FUNC)▶"Select image"▶"Chara-den"▶Select Chara-den

2 (voice call)/ (V.phone) (videophone call)

<Voice call>
The "In-call" screen appears.



In-call

■ **If you hear the busy tone**
The line is busy. Call again after a while.

■ **If you hear a message saying that the other party cannot be reached**
The other party's mobile phone or PHS phone is not turned on or is out of signal range. Call again after a while.

■ **If you hear a message requesting your caller ID**
The other party sets the Caller ID Request service to "Activate". Call again with caller ID notified.

<Videophone>
The "Videophone in-call" screen appears.
You will hear the other party's voice from the speaker and you can start talking.



Videophone in-call

Function menu➡p.52

■ **If a videophone call is not connected**→p.53

■ **To switch between camera image and substitute image**
▶ ch (FUNC)▶"Substitute image" or "My side"

■ **To send video from the rear camera**
▶● (Change)
Each time you press ● (Change), the front camera/rear camera switches.

■ **To switch the main screen**
▶● (1 second or longer)
Each time you press ● (1 second or longer), the screen switches in the following order:
Other party's image on the main screen→Your own camera image on the main screen→Display only the other party's image→Display only your own camera image

■ **To mute the voice to send (Microphone mute)**

▶[▲] (マナー) (1 second or longer)

“MUTE” appears while the voice is muted. The video image sending is continued.

To cancel muting, press [▲] (マナー) for 1 second or longer again.

■ **Switching a Voice/Videophone Call during a Call (Caller)**

“Switching a Voice/Videophone Call during a Call (Caller)”→p.53

■ **To put the current voice/videophone call on hold**

“Holding the Ringing/Current Call”→p.67

■ **When the 2in1 is in Dual mode**

The Outgoing number selection screen appears. Select a phone number.

3 To end the call, press ☎

NOTE

- When talking in View style, you can hear the other's voice, but cannot send your voice. Use Normal style.

<Voice call>

- “ ” flashes while dialing and lights up during the call.

<Videophone call>

- “ ” flashes while dialing a videophone call and lights up during the call.
- If you make a videophone call to an emergency number (110, 119 or 118) from the FOMA terminal, the call is automatically changed to a voice call.
- You cannot receive i-mode mail or a MessageR/F during a videophone call (you can receive SMS). Received mail is kept at the i-mode Center and can be retrieved using “Check new messages” after the videophone call.
- If the low-voltage alarm “Recharge battery” appears on the display during a videophone call, the other party sees the “カメラオフ Camera Off” message and the call is disconnected about 20 seconds later. If you start charging battery before the call is terminated, the videophone call continues with the image that had been displayed before the low-voltage alarm.
- Digital communication charges are still applied when the substitute image is displayed during a videophone call.

What is the Videophone

You can use the videophone call function between the terminals that support the DoCoMo videophone system.

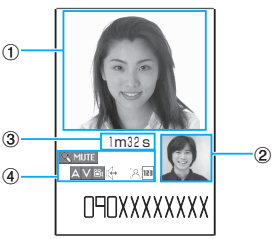
- DoCoMo videophone conforms to the 3G-324M*1 standard set down in the international 3GPP*2 standards. Your FOMA terminal cannot connect to a videophone terminal that uses a different system from DoCoMo videophones.

*1: 3G-324M
An international standard for 3rd-generation mobile videophones.

*2: 3GPP (3rd Generation Partnership Project)
A regional standardization body established to develop commonly applied technical specifications for 3rd-generation mobile communications systems (IMT-2000).

- There are 2 types of connection speed (64K (64 kbps)/32K (32 kbps)) for the videophone, but the FOMA N905iμ cannot use the videophone in 32K.

■ **How to view the videophone screen**



①Main screen (Camera image of the other party is displayed at the time of purchase)
②Sub-screen (Your own camera image is displayed at the time of purchase)
③Call duration
④Settings

: Sending or receiving voice/Transmission error
: Sending or receiving video/Transmission error
: Sending camera image/Sending substitute image
(blue) (pale blue): Handsfree ON/OFF
MUTE: Muting the microphone
: Visual check in progress
: Photo mode (Portrait/Scenery/Close-up)
: Key operation mode (DTMF mode*1/Whole action mode*2/Parts action mode*2)
: Sending Chara-den

*1 : “Send DTMF tone/DTMF tone OFF”→p.52
*2 : “Using Chara-den” →p.73

FUNC Enter phone number screen (p.50)

Notify Caller ID→p.61

Prefix numbers→p.62

Chaku-moji→p.58

Int'l call→p.55

Multi Number→p.378

Add to phonebook→p.89

Compose message*→p.188

Select image……Selects the image used during a videophone call from "Me/Chara-den".
Select "Release settings" to cancel the setting.

*: When 2in1 is in B mode, this function is not available.

FUNC Videophone in-call screen (p.50)

Petit message→p.75

Decoration→p.75

Off decoration……Deletes the displayed message or stamp.

Substitute image⇔**My side**……Switches between the camera image and the substitute image.

Rear camera⇔**Front camera**……Switches between the front and rear cameras.
This setting is only retained during the call.

Change main disp.……Changes the main display.
The screen changes in the order of "Displaying the image from the other party's camera on your main screen."→"Displaying the image from your own camera on your main screen."→"Displaying only the image from the other party's camera."→"Displaying only the image from your own camera."

Visual check⇔**Visual check off**→p.74

V.phone settings……Sets the screen for videophone call.

- **Visual prefer**……Sets the image sent to and received from the other party.
  This setting is only retained during the call.
  - **Normal** (default)……Standard setting for both quality and movement.
  - **Prefer img qual**……Sends more finely detailed video images. Best for motionless subjects.
  - **Prefer motion spd**……Sends video images with smooth movement. Best for fast-moving subjects.
- **Brightness**……Five brightness levels (-2 to 0 to +2) are available.
- **White balance**……Sets image color tones.→p.152
  This setting is also applied to the equivalent camera functions.
- **Color mode set**……Selects the image effect from "Normal/Sepia/Monochrome".
  This setting is only retained during the call.
- **Photo mode**……Sets modes suited to the scene being shot.→p.151
  This setting cannot be set for the front camera.

Chara-den set.……You can set the following when Chara-den is used. This setting cannot be set for the camera images.

- **Switch Chara-den**……Selects the character to be displayed.
- **Action List**……Checks the available actions and the corresponding keys. You can also view the action list by pressing ✳.
- **Change Action**……Changes the Action mode.
- **Switch image**……Displays your own custom image on the other party's display.→p.74

Display light……Sets lighting of backlight.

- **All time ON** (default)……Turns the backlight on all the time.
- **10 seconds ON**……Turns the backlight on for 10 seconds only.

FrontCamera Rev.……Sets whether to display your camera image as a mirror image (ON) or normal image (OFF) on the FOMA terminal during a call.

Own number……Displays your phone number during a videophone call.

Send DTMF tone⇔**DTMF tone OFF**……Sets/cancels push signal transmission mode during Chara-den.
Except for Chara-den, videophone calls are always in push signal transmission mode.

Change to voice→p.53

Loc. notification→p.260

If a videophone call is not connected

When a videophone call is not connected, the cause of the failure appears.

- The cause may not appear depending on the situation.
- Depending on the type of other party's phone or the possible lack of a network service subscription, the reason may not accurately reflect the other party's actual status.

Display	Cause
Check number then redial	The called phone number is not used
Busy	The line is busy • This message may also appear during packet communication.
Busy with packet transmission	The other party is using packet communication
Out of service area/ power off	The other party is out of service area or the phone is turned off
Set caller ID to ON	You connected without notifying your caller ID (when dialing into visualnet, etc.)
Your call is being forwarded	The call is being forwarded (A Videophone call is made when the forwarding number is for a 3G-324M-compatible videophone)
Redial using voice call	The phone for the forwarding number is not compatible with videophone calls
Please activate caller ID before dialing again	The other party sets the Caller ID request service
At the user's request, your call cannot be connected	The other party sets the Nuisance call blocking service
Upper limit has been exceeded Connection failed	The upper limit set for a Limit billing plan (Type Limit and Family Wide Limit) is exceeded
Connection failed	Set the caller ID notification to "ON" and retry • This message may also appear in other situations
Please make your call from the i-mode web page	You attempted to make a videophone call to watch V-line without browsing the i-mode official site

- If the videophone call is not connected, your call is automatically switched to a voice call when you set "Auto redial as voice" to "ON". However, the call may not be handled in this way if you call an ISDN synchronous 64K, PIAFS access point, ISDN videophone which does not support the 3G-324M standard (as of October 2007) or if you dial a wrong number. Note that call charge may be applied in some cases.

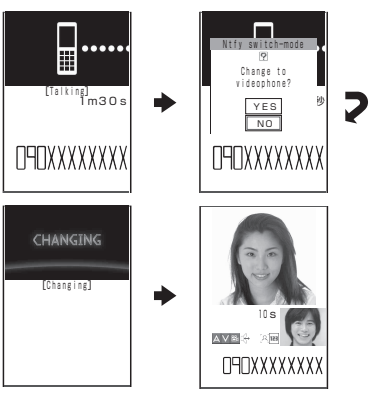
Switching a Voice/Videophone Call During a Call (Caller)

- If the handset of the other party is the FOMA terminal supporting the call switch, you can switch between the voice call and videophone call. (This function is available in communications between voice call and videophone call switchable terminals.)
- You can switch the voice call only when you are the caller.
- To switch the call, the receiver needs to set "Ntfy switch-mode" to notify the switch beforehand. →p.76
- You can switch the voice/videophone calls repeatedly.

<Example: To switch a voice call to a videophone call>

1 In-call screen (p.50)▶● (V.phone)▶"YES"

While switching, the screen which indicates that the calls are being switched appears and the voice guidance is played.



Digital communication charges apply from this screen.

■ To switch a videophone call to a voice call

▶Videophone in-call screen (p.50)▶ch (FUNC)▶"Change to voice"

NOTE

- It takes about 5 seconds to switch the calls. Note that the signal quality may affect how long it takes.
- You cannot switch the calls during calling in the following cases:
  - When the other party is holding the call
  - When the other party activates Record message
- The displayed call duration is reset to 0 second each time the calls are switched. However, after switching, if the videophone call is finished, the displayed call time is the total of voice call and videophone call. The time took for switching is excluded from the call duration.

Continued on next page

NOTE

- Depending on the other party's communication conditions or the signal quality, you may not be able to switch the calls and the call may be canceled.
- When the call is switched, the first dialed call is registered to the Redial/Dialed calls records. The first received call is registered to the Received calls record.
- You are not charged while "SWITCHING VOICE/VIDEO" appears.
- If you switch the calls, the amount of call charge displayed in "Call data" may differ from the actual one.

<When switching from voice call to videophone call>

- If the caller is using i-mode, the packet communication is canceled to switch to videophone.
- If the other party is using packet communication (including i-mode), you receive the message "No Switch" meaning you cannot switch the calls and the voice call continues.
- You cannot switch the calls when "Call Waiting" is activated.

Using International Call <WORLD CALL>

WORLD CALL is an international dialing service that can be used from DoCoMo mobile phones.
FOMA service subscribers are also subscribed to 'WORLD CALL' when they subscribe to the FOMA service. (This excludes subscribers who declared that they did not require the service.)

- "WORLD CALL" can be used to call around 240 countries and regions worldwide.
- The "WORLD CALL" is charged with your monthly call charges.
- In addition to dialing a phone number, you can make an international call by adding "+" or selecting "Int'l call" or "Prefix numbers" from the function menu in the enter phone number screen, Redial/Dialed calls screen, Received calls screen or Phonebook detail screen.
- This service is not available in some payment plans.

Changes of the procedure for international dialing

Because communication from mobile devices such as mobile phones is not covered by the "MYLINE" service, this service cannot be used to access WORLD CALL. Consequently, with the introduction of the "MYLINE" service, the procedure used to make international calls from a mobile phone has changed. Note that the conventional dialing procedure (the procedure described below with "010" removed) can no longer be used.

For additional information regarding WORLD CALL, refer to the contact information provided on the back of the manual.

"International videophone calls" can be made to users of some specific overseas 3G mobile terminals by pressing ✉ (V.phone) to make the call after using the dialing procedure below.

- See the DoCoMo website for information on accessible countries and operators.
- Depending on the other party's terminal, the image of the other party displayed on your FOMA terminal may be distorted or the connection may fail when making an international videophone.

Using dial keys to make international calls

1. **Dial the number in the following order: 009130→010→Country code→Area code (Long distance code)→The other party's phone number**
   If the area code (long distance code) begins with 0, omit the first 0. However, to call to ordinary phones in Italy, 0 is required.
2. ☎
   The international call is made.
3. **To end the call, press** ☎

Using "+" to make an international call

By using the "+", you can make international calls without dialing the IDD prefix code (e,g, 009130-010).

- As "Auto int'l call set." in "Int'l dial assistance" is set to "ON" (automatically added) at the time of purchase, the FOMA terminal automatically dials the IDD prefix code.

1. **On the standby screen, dial the following; + (0 (1 second or longer))→Country code→Area code (Long distance code)→The other party's phone number**
   If the area code (long distance code) begins with 0, omit the first 0. However, to call to ordinary phones in Italy, "0" is required.
2. ☎▶**"Dial"**
   The international call is made.

■ To make a call without converting "+" into the IDD prefix code

▶"Original phone No."

* This function is not available for your FOMA terminal.

■ To cancel the call

▶"Cancel"

Making an international call with the international dial function <Int'l call>

You can make an international call by adding a country code and IDD prefix code to the phone number.

- You can store the country codes and IDD prefix codes in "Int'l dial assistance".
- You can use the international dial function from the "Enter phone number" screen and the detail screens of "Phonebook/Received calls/Dialed calls/Redial" screens.

<Example: To use the international dial function from the enter phone number screen>

1 Enter the phone number of the other party

2 ch (FUNC)▶"Int'l call"▶Select the country code▶Select the IDD prefix code

The selected country code and IDD prefix code are added. If the area code (long distance code) begins with "0", the first "0" is automatically deleted (except when "Italy" is selected for the country code).

3

Making an international call with easy operation <Int'l dial assistance>

You can change the settings used for international calls and edit country codes. You can set the following settings:

Setting	Description
Auto int'l call set.	When you make an overseas call from Japan, the entered "+" is automatically replaced with the IDD prefix code set in this function.
Country Code setting	Edits the country name and country code used when you make an international call. 22 codes are stored at the time of purchase.
IDD Prefix setting	Stores the IDD prefix name and IDD prefix code used when you make an international call.

Setting the automatic conversion of "+"

You can set the automatic conversion of "+" when you make an international call.

1 MENU ▶"Settings"▶"Dialing"▶"Int'l dial assistance"▶"Auto int'l call set."▶"ON"

■ **When you do not convert automatically**
▶"OFF"

2 Select a country code▶Select an IDD prefix code

Editing the country code

You can store up to 22 country codes necessary for making international call overseas.
See the DoCoMo website for information on country codes.

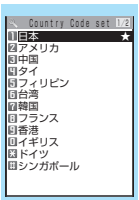
1 MENU ▶"Settings"▶"Dialing"▶"Int'l dial assistance"▶"Country Code setting"

The "Country Code setting" screen appears.

2 Highlight▶ (Edit)

3 Enter the country name▶Enter the country code

You can enter up to 8 double-byte or 16 single-byte characters for the country name and 5 digits for the country code.



Country Code setting

Function menu➡p.55

FUNC **Country Code setting screen (p.55)**

Edit……Edits the country code.

Delete……Selects the deleting method from Delete this/Delete selected/Delete all. "About multiple-choice"→p.38

Storing the IDD prefix code

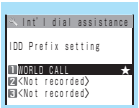
You can store up to 3 IDD prefix codes added to the beginning of the phone number when making international calls.

1 MENU ▶"Settings"▶"Dialing"▶"Int'l dial assistance"▶"IDD Prefix setting"

The "IDD Prefix setting" screen appears.

2 Highlight <Not recorded>▶ (Edit)

■ **To change the previously stored item**
▶Highlight the item to be changed▶ (Edit)



IDD Prefix setting

Function menu➡p.62

3 Enter the IDD prefix name▶Enter the IDD prefix code

You can enter up to 8 double-byte or 16 single-byte characters for the IDD prefix name and 10 digits for the IDD prefix code.

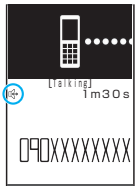
Using Handsfree Operation During a Call <Hands-free>

You can hear the other party's voice from the speaker while talking.

1 In-call screen (p.50)▶ (Handsfree On)

"Handsfree" (blue) appears and you can hear the other party's voice through a speaker during a handsfree call.

While your terminal is ringing, you can switch to handsfree operation by pressing (Handsfree On / Handsfree Off).



Voice call



Videophone call

■ **To cancel the handsfree operation**

▶Press (Handsfree Off) during a handsfree call

The handsfree operation ends, and "Handsfree" (blue) disappears in case of voice call or PushTalk.

"Handsfree" (blue) is changed to "Handsfree" (pale blue) in case of videophone.

● Notes on using the handsfree operation

It is recommended to keep a distance of about 30 cm from the FOMA terminal during a handsfree call. If the distance is longer or shorter than 30 cm, the other party may find it difficult to hear you or your voice may sound differently.

NOTE

- Other party's voice may be heard by those around you during a handsfree call. Move to an area where your call will not disturb other people before switching to a hands-free call.
- When a call is finished, the handsfree setting is canceled.

Using the Redial/Dialed Calls/ Received Calls Record <Redial/Dialed calls/Received calls>

Information on dialed or received calls, including the caller's phone number and the date and time are stored in the Redial/Dialed calls/Received calls record. You can make a call to the other party easily by using these records.

- When you make calls to the same phone number repeatedly, the latest entry is stored as the Redial record and separate entries are stored for the Dialed calls record.
- The Redial record can hold up to 30 phone numbers for voice/videophone calls or PushTalk calls.
- The Dialed calls/Received calls record stores up to 30 voice/videophone call or PushTalk call entries and 30 packet communication or 64K data communication entries.
- When the log exceeds the maximum, logs are overwritten from the oldest one.
- Redial/Dialed calls/Received calls record for PushTalk→p.81

<Example: To make a call from the Redial/Received calls list screen>

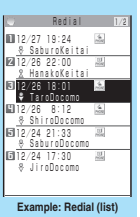
1 On the standby screen▶ (Redial)/ (Received calls)

The "Redial (list)" or "Received calls (list)" screen appears.

■ **To check the Dialed calls**

▶ (Menu/Mail)▶"Own Data"▶"Dialed calls"

The "Dialed calls (list)" screen appears.



Example: Redial (list)

Function menu➡p.58

2 Highlight the Redial/ Received calls record entry

■ **To make a call after checking the details of the Redial/Received calls record**

▶Select the Redial/ Received calls record entry

The "Redial (detail)" or "Received calls (detail)" screen appears.



Example: Redial (detail)

Function menu➡p.58

3 (voice call)/ (Y!phone) (videophone call)/ (PushTalk)

Checking the number of missed calls

■ To confirm only the missed calls from the Received calls record

▶ ▶“Own Data”▶“Received calls”

Total number of received calls, the number of missed calls and the number of unconfirmed missed calls appear.

When you select “Missed calls”, only the missed calls appears.

■ Redial/Dialed calls/Received calls record icons

Icon*1	Description
PHONE / MISS / MISS	Incoming and outgoing/missed/ unconfirmed missed voice calls
INT'L PHONE / INT'L MISS / MISS	Incoming and outgoing/missed/ unconfirmed missed international voice calls
PHONE / MISS / MISS	Incoming and outgoing/missed/ unconfirmed missed videophone calls
INT'L PHONE / INT'L MISS / MISS	Incoming and outgoing/missed/ unconfirmed missed international videophone calls
/ MISS / MISS	Incoming and outgoing/missed/ unconfirmed missed PushTalk (one-to-one) calls
/ MISS / MISS	Incoming and outgoing/missed/ unconfirmed missed PushTalk (group) calls
B *2	Incoming and outgoing calls to B mode for 2in1 setting
MSG / MSG	Recorded voice record message/ videophone message
	Received calls with Chaku-moji
PACKET / MISS / MISS	Incoming and outgoing/missed/ unconfirmed missed packet communication
64k / MISS / MISS	Incoming and outgoing/missed/ unconfirmed missed 64K data communication
REMOTE	Incoming remote observation calls
NO CONNECT	Incoming packet communication or 64K data communication that is received without external device connected
GMT	Incoming and outgoing calls when you select any zones other than “GMT+9” on the time zone regardless of “Auto time adjust” setting. When “Summer time” is set to “ON”, the World watch is displayed reflecting the setting.

*1 : Some icons may appear differently between the screens of detail and list.

*2 : Displayed only when the 2in1 is in Dual mode.

NOTE

- If you use 2in1, up to 30 records are stored for each phone number. Also, when set to Dual mode, up to 30 Redial/Dialed calls/Received calls records for both phone numbers and total of the 60 records are displayed.

<Redial/Dialed calls>

- Setting “Restrict dialing” deletes all the Redial/Dialed calls records. However, calls made after the setting are recorded in Redial/Dialed calls.
- If you make a call by selecting Multi number from the function menu, the registered name and number of the additional number are displayed under the phone number in the Redial screen (detail)/Dialed calls record screen (detail). If you make a call without using the function menu, nothing is displayed even when “Set Multi Number” is set to additional number.

<Received calls>

- When “Missed calls display” in the “Ring time(sec.)” is set to “Not display” and you receive a call of which ring tone sounded for shorter time than the time set in the “Set mute seconds”, the call is not displayed on the Received calls record.
- If the caller is using the dial-in number, a number different from the dial-in number may be displayed.
- If the caller’s phone number is not provided, the reason for the non-notification is displayed in the Received calls record.
- If the same phone number is registered in multiple phonebook entries with different names, the name retrieved by the phonebook search in the order of reading is displayed in the Received calls record. →p.92
- When you have subscribed to Multi number and make a call from the Received calls record screen, the phone call is made from the number which received the call regardless of the “Set Multi Number” setting.
- When you receive a call for additional number of Multi number, the registered name of the additional number are displayed under the phone number in the Received calls record screen (detail).

FUNC Redial/Dialed calls/Received calls screen (p.56)

Notify Caller ID[*1] →p.61

Prefix numbers[*1*2] →p.62

Chaku-moji[*1*2] →p.58

Int'l call[*1*2] →p.55

2in1/Multi Num.[*1*2*3] →pp.379, 378

Select PushTalk[*4*5]……"Redial Dialed calls and Received calls record of PushTalk" →p.81

Ring time[*6*9]……Displays the missed call record entries with the ringing times.

Add to phonebook……Selects from "Add to phonebook/Add to PushTalk [*5]/Add to PushTalk Gr[*5]" for the destination. "Adding Phonebook Entries from the Redial, Dialed Calls and Other Records" →p.90

Look-up phonebook[*2]……"Accessing the phonebook from the Redial or Dialed Calls record" →p.93

Add desktop icon →p.115

Compose message[*2*5] →p.188

Compose SMS[*2*5] →p.224

Sent address[*7*8]……Displays the sent address list.

Received address[*6]……Displays the received address list.

Select image[*2]……Selects the image used during a videophone call from "Me/Chara-den".
Select "Release settings" to cancel the setting.

Big font⇔**Standard font**[*9]……Switches the character size of the displayed name.

Delete……Selects the deleting method from "Delete this/Delete selected/Delete all". "About multiple-choice" →p.38

*1 : This function is available only for the detail screen.
*2 : Not available on the PushTalk (group) records screen.
*3 : Available only when the 2in1 is in Dual mode.
*4 : Available on the PushTalk (group) records screen.
*5 : Available only when 2in1 is in A mode or Dual mode, and selecting the record screen for the A mode.
*6 : Available only for the Received calls screen.
*7 : Available only for the Redial/Dialed calls screen.
*8 : When 2in1 is in B mode, this function is not available.
*9 : This function is available only for the list screen.

NOTE

- Selecting "Compose message" enables you to compose a mail with a mail address specified as the address when the mail address is stored in the phonebook together with the phone number. When multiple mail addresses are stored in the phonebook, the first address is specified as the address.

NOTE

- Selecting "Delete all" from the Redial/Dialed calls record deletes all the Redial and Dialed calls records. Note that selecting "Delete this" or "Delete selected" for the Redial record does not delete the entries of Dialed calls record, and selecting "Delete this" or "Delete selected" does not delete the entries of the Redial record. Use the function menu of the Dialed calls screen to delete the Dialed records and use the function menu of the Redial screen to delete the Redial record.

Using Chaku-moji <Chaku-moji>

When making a voice call or videophone call, you can send a message (Chaku-moji) to the other party to show the summary of the call, etc. beforehand.

- 5 Chaku-moji messages are stored at the time of purchase. You can change the pre-installed Chaku-moji messages.
- You can include pictographs or face symbols in Chaku-moji, and you can send a message of up to 10 characters including pictograph/symbol/double-byte character/single-byte character.
- For details on Chaku-moji and Chaku-moji-compatible models, see the DoCoMo website or refer to "Mobile Phone Users Guide (Network services)".
- The Chaku-moji is not compatible with PushTalk calls.

Making a call with a Chaku-moji message

You can add Chaku-moji when making a voice or videophone call from the "Enter phone number" screen and the detail screen of the "Phonebook" or "Redial/Dialed calls/Received calls".

<Example: To make a call with Chaku-moji from the enter phone number screen>

1 Enter phone number screen (p.50)▶ ch (FUNC)▶"Chaku-moji"▶Select any item:

Create message……Enters Chaku-moji. You can enter up to 10 characters.

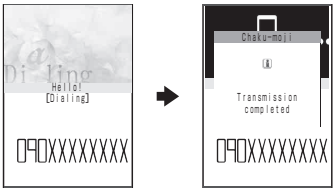
Select message……Selects from the stored Chaku-moji.
You can edit Chaku-moji by pressing ✉ (Edit) on the message selection screen.

Sent messages……Selects from the previously sent Chaku-moji. You can edit Chaku-moji by pressing ✉ (Edit) on the sent message screen.

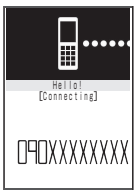
■ **To delete the entered Chaku-moji (to make a call without Chaku-moji)**

▶ch (FUNC)▶“Chaku-moji”▶“Create message”▶Clear all the entered Chaku-moji

2 (voice call)/ (V.phone) (videophone call)



When the other party’s terminal receives Chaku-moji, the result “Transmission completed” appears.



NOTE

- Sending Chaku-moji is charged. Receiving Chaku-moji is not charged.
- You can store up to 30 Chaku-moji in the sent messages record*. When you send same Chaku-moji repeatedly, only the latest one is recorded. When the entries exceed the maximum number, entries are overwritten from the oldest entry.
  *: When using 2in1, up to 30 Chaku-moji can be recorded as a sent message history in each mode. In Dual mode, both sent message histories are displayed by 30 Chaku-moji each, that is, 60 max.
- If the receiver’s terminal is under conditions such as followings, Chaku-moji cannot be sent. In this case, no sending charges apply.
  - The terminal is not compatible with Chaku-moji (“Transmission failed” appears)
  - Chaku-moji does not appear on the screen of the receiver terminal because of the “MSG display settings” on the receiver terminal (“Transmission failed” appears)
  - When Public mode (Driving mode) is set
  - The ringing time for recording message is set to 0 second.
  - “圏外” or it is turned off.

NOTE

- Depending on the signal status, sending result does not appear on the sender terminal even when the receiver terminal receives Chaku-moji. In this case, sending charges apply.
- You cannot send or receive Chaku-moji overseas.

When you receive a voice or videophone call with Chaku-moji

The Chaku-moji appears on the ringing screen. The Chaku-moji disappears when you answer the call.

- The received Chaku-moji is displayed in 3D animation.
- When the FOMA terminal is folded, the Chaku-moji appears on the indicator display.



Example: Voice call

NOTE

- Even when you receive a call whose ring tone sounded for shorter time than the time set in the “Set mute seconds” of “Ring time(sec.)”, Chaku-moji is displayed and recorded in the Received calls record.
- Some pictographs are not displayed in 3D animation.
- Depending on the status of the sender or receiver, Chaku-moji may not be displayed even if you receive a call with Chaku-moji.
- When the Original lock is set to “Chaku-moji”, Chaku-moji is not displayed even if you receive a call with Chaku-moji. In this case, Chaku-moji is stored to the Received calls record after releasing the lock.

Displaying Chaku-moji from the Received calls record

When you receive Chaku-moji, the “” icon appears on the Received calls record.

1 On the standby screen▶●▶Select the Received calls record entry with “” displayed

The “Received calls (detail)” screen appears and you can check the Chaku-moji message.

NOTE

- Even when you make a call using the Received calls record, the Chaku-moji in the record is not sent.

Editing and setting Chaku-moji

1 MENU/VAULT ▶“Service”▶“Chaku-moji”▶ **Select any item**

Create message→p.60

MSG display settings……Sets the Chaku-moji display setting when you receive a call with Chaku-moji.

- **Display all messages**……Displays all Chaku-moji messages.
- **Only number in PH-book**……Displays only the Chaku-moji messages from senders stored in the phonebook.
- **Calls with Caller ID**……Displays only the Chaku-moji messages from senders providing the caller ID.
- **Hide all messages**……Hides all Chaku-moji messages.

3D message display……Sets whether to display Chaku-moji in 3D animation.

NOTE

- “MSG display settings” is also valid on the indicator display.
- Even when “3D message display” is set to “ON”, the message does not appear in 3D animation on the indicator display,

Storing frequently used Chaku-moji

- You can store up to 30 Chaku-moji (including 5 pre-installed).

1 MENU/VAULT ▶“Service”▶“Chaku-moji”▶ **“Create message”**
The “Create message list” screen appears.

2 **Highlight <Not recorded>▶✉ (Edit)**

■ **To edit the previously stored Chaku-moji message**
▶Highlight the item to change▶✉ (Edit)



Create message list

Function menu➡p.60

3 **Enter Chaku-moji**

FUNC Create message list screen (p.60)

Edit……Edits Chaku-moji.

Delete……Selects the deleting method from “Delete this/Delete selected/Delete all”. “About multiple-choice”→p.38

NOTE

- You cannot delete the pre-installed Chaku-moji. Even when you change a pre-installed Chaku-moji and delete the Chaku-moji, it is restored to the default.

Notifying/Withholding Your Caller ID for Individual Calls

If the other party’s phone supports caller ID display, you can provide your phone number (caller ID) to display on the other party’s phone (display) when you make a voice or videophone call. Note that your caller ID is important information and care should be taken when providing it to others.

- When making a PushTalk call, the setting is disabled even if you add the “186”/“184” prefix to the other party’s phone number.

Function	Description	Ref. page
Caller ID Notification (Setting at one time)	Specifies whether other parties are notified of your caller ID whenever you make a call.	p.48
Notify Caller ID (Setting each time you make a call)	Uses function menu to specify whether your caller ID is provided or withheld each time you make a call.	p.61
“186”/“184”	Uses “186”/“184” prefixes to specify whether your caller ID is provided or withheld each time you make a call.	p.60

Adding the “186”/“184” prefix to the other party’s phone number

To provide your caller ID each time you make a call, add the “186” prefix when you dial the phone number. To withhold your caller ID, use the “184” prefix.

■**To provide your phone number**
186-(The other party’s phone number)- ☎ (voice call)/✉ (V.phone) (videophone call)

■**To withhold your phone number**
184-(The other party’s phone number)- ☎ (voice call)/✉ (V.phone) (videophone call)

NOTE

- When making an international call, the setting is disabled. Select “Notify Caller ID” from the function menu.
- If you make a call with the “186” or “184” prefix, the phone number including this prefix is recorded in the Redial/Dialed calls.

Selecting to Notify/Withhold your caller ID when making a call

<Notify Caller ID>

Select from “OFF/ON” to specify whether you provide the phone number to the other party.

- You can use the Caller ID Notification function from the “Enter phone number” screen and the detail screens of “Phonebook/Received calls/Dialed calls/Redial” screens.

<Example: To make a voice call from the Enter phone number screen>

1 Enter the phone number of the other party

2 (FUNC)▶“Notify Caller ID”▶“OFF” or “ON”

■ **To cancel the “OFF”/“ON” setting of “Notify Caller ID”**

▶“Cancel prefix”

When “Cancel prefix” is selected, the “Caller ID Notification” setting is applied.

3

Sending Push Signals Quickly

<Pause dial>

By sending push signals from the FOMA terminal, you can use services such as ticket ordering and bank balance requests.

Storing dialing data as pause dial record entries

You can store the dialing data used as push signals to Pause dial beforehand. Inserting p (pause) into the dialing data allows you to send data with a separation where a pause lies.

- You can store 1 dialing data, consisting of up to 128 characters.
- You can enter numbers from 0 to 9, the # and ✗ symbols, and p (pause) for dialing data.
- You cannot enter p (pause) in succession or at the beginning of the dialing data.

1 ▶“Settings”▶“Dialing”▶“Pause dial”

The “Pause dial” screen appears.



Function menu➡p.61

■ **If there is dialing data already stored**

The stored dialing data appears.

2 (Edit)▶Enter the dialing data

Press 0 to 9, # and ✳ to enter the dialing data.

■ **To enter p (pause)**

▶✳ (for 1 second or longer)

FUNC Pause dial screen (p.61)

Edit……Edits the dialing data.

Send pause dial……Enters the phone number of the other party and sends the dialing data.
Each time you press , the dialing data up to p (pause) is transmitted.

Delete……Deletes the stored dialing data.

Transmitting the dialing data as a pause dial

1 ▶“Settings”▶“Dialing”▶“Pause dial”▶● (Send)

2 Dial the phone number of the destination▶

The FOMA terminal calls the entered phone number and displays the dialing data up to the first p (pause) while the dialed phone is ringing. p (pause) is not displayed.

3

Each time you press , the dialing data up to p (pause) is transmitted. Once the FOMA terminal has finished sending the last number, the in-call screen reappears.

■ **To transmit all the dialing data at once**

▶ (for 1 second or longer)▶“Send at one time”

It may not be possible to send all the data at once to some recipients.

NOTE

- Some phones may be unable to receive push signals.

Using the Prefix Function

You can store the prefix numbers such as IDD prefix code (WORLD CALL = 009130-010) and 186/184 for notifying/withholding your caller ID beforehand and add these prefix numbers when you make calls.

Setting Prefix numbers <Prefix setting>

- You can store up to 7 prefix numbers.
- You can enter numbers from 0 to 9 and the #, ✗ and + symbols.

1 (MENU/MULTI)▶"Settings"▶"Dialing"▶"Prefix setting"

The "Prefix setting" screen appears.



Prefix setting

Function menu➡p.62

2 Highlight <Not recorded>▶(Edit) (Edit)

■ **To change the details of a previously stored item**

▶Highlight the item to be changed▶(Edit) (Edit)

■ **To check the details of a previously stored item**

▶Select the item to be checked

3 Enter the name to be stored

You can enter up to 8 double-byte or 16 single-byte characters.

4 Enter the numbers (prefix)

You can enter up to 10 digits.

FUNC Prefix setting screen (p.62)/IDD Prefix setting screen (p.55)

Edit	Edits the prefix number or IDD prefix code.
Delete this	Delete one prefix code.
Delete*1	Delete one IDD prefix code.
Delete all*2	Delete all prefix/IDD prefix code.

*1 : Only appears on the Prefix setting screen.
*2 : Only appears on the IDD Prefix setting screen.

Making a call with the Prefix numbers <Prefix>

- You can add the prefix numbers from the "Enter phone number" screen and the detail screens of "Phonebook/Received calls/Dialed calls/Redial" screens.

<Example: To make a voice call by adding prefix numbers from the enter phone number screen>

1 Enter the phone number of the other party

2 (ch) (FUNC)▶"Prefix numbers"▶Select the stored name▶(Call)

Setting Sub-addresses When Making Calls <Sub-address setting>

You can set "✗" in the phone number as a separator so that the numbers following "✗" are recognized as a sub-address. Sub-addresses are used in ISDN to identify calls made from specific communications devices and to select content in "V-live".

1 (MENU/MULTI)▶"Settings"▶"Dialing"▶"Sub-address setting"▶"ON"

■ **To disable the function**

▶"OFF"

NOTE

- In the following cases, "✗" does not function as a sub-address separator. The entered number including "✗" is recognized as an ordinary phone number:
  - When the "✗"is entered at the beginning of a phone number
  - When "✗" immediately follows "186"/"184" at the beginning of a phone number
  - When "✗" immediately follows a number entered using "Prefix numbers"
  - When the phone number contains "✗590#/✗591#/✗592#"

Setting the Alarm Used for Reconnection <Reconnect signal>

When the signal quality deteriorates during a voice/videophone or PushTalk call and the call drops out, the FOMA terminal will automatically reconnect the call if the signal quality quickly improves. Set the type of alarm when a call is reconnected for this function.

- The interval for reconnection varies depending on communication conditions or the signal quality. It takes about 10 seconds.

1 MENU ▶"Settings"▶"Talk"▶"Reconnect signal"▶Select an alarm tone

■ To disable alarm tone
▶"No tone"

NOTE

- Call charges apply in the interval (up to about 10 seconds) for reconnection.

Blocking Out Ambient Noise <Noise reduction>

This function suppresses ambient noise and makes it easier for the other party in a voice, videophone or PushTalk call to hear you.

1 MENU ▶"Settings"▶"Talk"▶"Noise reduction"▶"ON"

■ To cancel Noise reduction
▶"OFF"

Making Handsfree Calls in the Car <In-car hands-free>

You can make or receive voice calls with handsfree compatible devices by connecting the FOMA terminal to handsfree compatible devices such as the In-Car Hands-Free Kit 01 (optional) or a car navigation system. For information on how to use the handsfree device, refer to the manual provided with the device. The FOMA In-Car Hands-Free Cable 01 (optional) is required to use the In-Car Hands-Free Kit 01 (optional).

NOTE

- To operate from the handsfree device, set the USB mode to "Communication mode".
- The display and ring tones used for incoming calls and mail are as specified in the FOMA terminal settings.

NOTE

- When the handsfree device is set to emit the sound from the hands-free device, the ring tone still sound through the handsfree device even when the FOMA terminal is set to Manner mode or the ring volume is set to "Silent".
- When the Public mode (Driving mode) is set, operation for incoming calls and messages is as specified in the "Public mode (Driving mode)" settings.
- When the Record message is set, operation for incoming calls is as specified in the "Record message" settings.
- When the handsfree device is set to emit the sound from the FOMA terminal, operation when the FOMA terminal is folded during a call is as specified in "Setting when folded". When the hands-free device is set to emit sound from the handsfree device, folding the FOMA terminal does not affect the call status regardless of the "Setting when folded" setting.

Receiving a Voice/Videophone Call

1 **When you receive a voice/videophone call**

The ring tone sounds and the incoming call lamp flashes. The "Ringing" or "Videophone ringing" screen appears.



Ringing

Function menu➡p.64



Videophone ringing

Function menu➡p.64

■ **When you receive a call with Chaku-moji**

The Chaku-moji appears on the ringing or videophone ringing screen. You can check the topic, etc. beforehand. →p.58

■ **To put a voice/videophone call on hold while the FOMA terminal is ringing**

"Holding the Ringing/Current Call" →p.67

2 Press the call key

The "In-call" or "Videophone in-call" screen appears.
When you receive a videophone call, you can hear the other party's voice from the speaker.

Continued on next page

■ **To answer a videophone call with the substitute image**
▶● (Subst.)

■ **Operations during a videophone call**
You can perform various operations such as changing the camera image to the substitute image, changing the front camera to rear camera, muting the sound. →p.50

■ **When the other party switches a voice/videophone call during a call**
"When the Other Party Switches a Voice/Videophone Call (Caller)" →p.64

■ **To put the current voice/videophone call on hold**
"Holding the Ringing/Current Call" →p.67

3 To end the call, press ☎

Display while receiving a call

■ **When the other party's phone number is notified**
The other party's phone number appears on the screen. When the caller is stored in the phonebook, the name stored in the phonebook appears. →p.88

- If the same phone number is registered in multiple phonebook entries with different names, the first name retrieved by the phonebook search in the order of reading appears. →p.92
- If the caller is stored as secret data, the name or other information does not appear and only the phone number appears.
- When you receive a call for additional number of Multi number, the registered name of the additional number is displayed on the ringing screen.

■ **When the other party's phone number is not notified**
The reason of not notifying appears.

FUNC Ringing screen/Videophone ringing screen (p.63)

Call Rejection·····Terminates the receiving call without answering.

Call Forwarding·····Forwards the call.
The call is forwarded regardless of the "Call Forwarding" setting "Activate/Deactivate".

Voice Mail·····Connects the call to the voice mail service center.
The call is connected to the voice mail service center regardless of the "Voice Mail" setting "Activate/Deactivate".

Change Display·····Switches the display from additional number 1 or 2 to the number from which the call is forwarded. This can be selected when receiving multi number call (for additional number 1 or 2) and the call is forwarded at the same time.

NOTE

- You can receive a call using a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional). →p.355
- If you have subscribed to the Call waiting, Voice mail or Call forwarding service, activate "Set in-call arrival" and set "Incoming Call Mng" to "Answer", you will hear a short double-beep ("bibip") when you receive a call when you are already on a call.
  - In case of the Voice mail or Call forwarding service, you can answer the call by ending the current call.
  - In case of the Call waiting service, you can answer the voice call by putting the current call on hold and you can answer the videophone call by ending the current call.

<Voice call>
- You can set the incoming call management from a caller who is not stored in the phonebook. →pp.141, 141
- You can set the incoming call restriction for each phone number stored in the phonebook. →p.139

<Videophone>
- You can also answer the call by pressing ✉ (V.phone).
- Digital communication charges are still applied to the caller when the substitute image is displayed during a videophone call.
- It may take a few seconds to switch from a camera image to a substitute image (Chara-den) depending on the Chara-den.

When the Other Party Switches a Voice/Videophone Call (Caller)

When you receive a voice/videophone call, the other party can switch the call between voice call and videophone call.

- The receiver cannot switch a voice call to a videophone call.
- To switch the call, the receiver needs to set "Ntfy switch-mode" to notify the switch beforehand. →p.76
- You can use this function with the terminals compatible with voice call/videophone call switch.

<Example: When the other party switched a voice call to a videophone call>

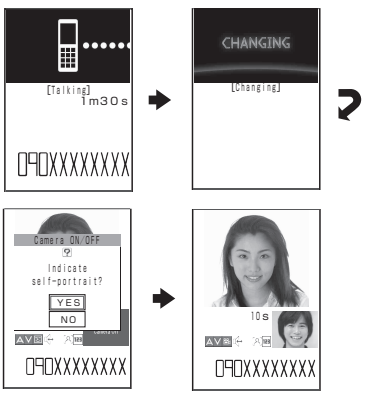
1 In-call screen (p.50)▶The other party switches to a videophone call▶“YES”

While switching, the screen which indicates that the calls are being switched appears and the voice guidance is played.
When the voice call is switched to the videophone call, the camera image is sent to the other party.

■ To send substitute image to the caller

▶“NO”

The specified substitute image is sent to the caller.



■ When the other party switched a videophone call to a voice call

▶Videophone in-call screen (p.50)▶The other party switches to a voice call
The videophone call is switched to the voice call.

Using the Dial Keys to Answer a Call

<Answer setting>

You can use this setting to turn off the ring tone or answer the phone quickly when you receive a call. This is useful when you receive a call in a situation where the ring tone may disturb people around you.

1 MENU ▶“Settings”▶“Incoming call”▶“Answer setting”▶Select any item

Any key answer……Valid for voice or PushTalk calls. You can answer the call by pressing any of the following keys:
, ● (Answer), 0 to 9, *, CLR, , , and # (マナー);
(for voice calls only); (for PushTalk calls only)

* For videophone calls, you can answer the call only by ordinary key operations (, ● (Subst.) or (V.phone).

Quick silent……Pressing any of the following keys or opening the FOMA terminal stops the incoming call reaction while the caller continues to hear the ring tone.
0 to 9, *, CLR, , , # (マナー) or (for voice calls and PushTalk calls only)
To answer the call, press , ● (Answer/ Subst.), (for unfolded FOMA terminal only), (V.phone) (for videophone calls only), (for PushTalk calls only).

OFF……You can answer the call only with the ordinary key operations.
, ● (Answer/ Subst.), (V.phone) (for videophone calls only), (for PushTalk calls only)

NOTE

- Even when “Quick silent” is set, the “Any key answer” function is used in Manner mode.
- Even when “Any key answer” or “Quick silent” is set, pressing and holding 5 (Emergency mode ON/OFF) or 8 (Privacy angle ON/OFF) for 1 second or longer disables “Any key answer” or “Quick silent” function.
- When a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected to the FOMA terminal, you can answer calls by pressing the switch on the flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch regardless of the “Answer setting” setting.
- When “Any key answer” is set and the FOMA terminal is folded, press # (マナー) to hold on the voice call. If Setting when folded is set to “Tone on”, the hold tone sounds. However, if “No tone” or “End the call” is set, no hold tone sounds.

Ending/Holding Calls with the FOMA Terminal Folded

<Setting when folded>

You can set how your FOMA terminal operates when it is folded during a voice or videophone call.

1 MENU ▶“Settings”▶“Talk”▶“Setting when folded”▶Select any item

No tone……Mutes the sound. For videophone calls, the “Substitute image” is sent to the other party. The other party does not hear the hold tone.

Continued on next page

Tone on……Puts a call on hold (holding). When the FOMA terminal is folded, the other party hears the hold tone. For videophone calls, the "Substitute image" is sent to the other party.

Speaker ON……The hold tone is sent to the other party and also plays through the speaker.

Speaker OFF……Only the other party hears the hold tone.

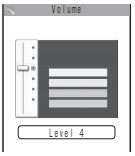
End the call……Ends the call. It is the same operation as pressing ☎.

NOTE

- When Manner mode is set, no sound is played through the speaker even if "Speaker ON" is set.
- When a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected, this function is disabled and even folding the FOMA terminal does not change the call status. However, during a videophone call using the camera image, folding the FOMA terminal switches to the substitute image.
- Even if the "Tone on" setting is selected, folding the FOMA terminal activates the "No tone" setting if "Call Waiting" is switched on.
- This function is disabled during a PushTalk call. The "Setting when folded" under "PushTalk setting" is applied.

Adjusting the Earpiece Volume <Volume>

1 On the standby screen▶○ (1 second or longer)▶Adjust the volume with ○



In-call volume

Pressing ○ (1 second or longer) displays the earpiece volume screen. If no operation is conducted for 2 seconds or longer when the earpiece volume screen is displayed, the earpiece volume screen is expired.
You can adjust the volume in 6 steps from "Level 1" (quietest) to "Level 6" (loudest).

■ **To adjust the earpiece volume during a voice call**
▶▲ (マナー)/▼ (📷)

■ **To adjust the earpiece volume during a videophone call**
▶○ or ▲ (マナー)/▼ (📷)

NOTE

- During a voice call, you can adjust the volume with ○ (1 second or longer) as in the standby mode.
- If you adjust the volume during a call, the adjusted setting is retained after you end the call.
- You can also adjust the volume during a PushTalk call or handsfree call.

Adjusting the Volume of Ring Tone <Ring volume>

You can adjust the volume of the ring tone for a incoming call, mail, chat mail or MessageR/F in 6 steps for each type of call. You can also set to silent or to gradually get louder.

1 MENU ▶"Settings"▶"Incoming call"▶"Ring volume"▶Select the item of which you want to adjust the volume
Select "Phone" to adjust the ring tone volume for voice calls and 64K data communication.
Select "Mail" to adjust the ring tone volume for i-mode mail, area mail, SMS or packet communication.

2 Use ○ to adjust the ring volume▶● (Set)

■ **To raise the volume gradually**
▶Press ○ in "Level 6"
When set to "Step", the ring volume becomes louder and louder from silent, "Level 1" to "Level 6" in every 3 seconds.

■ **To set to silent**
▶Press ○ in "Level 1"
An icon appears in the standby screen to confirm that a "Silent" ring tone is set.
: "Silent" is set for "Phone", "Videophone" and/or "PushTalk" calls.
: "Silent" is set for "Mail", "Chat Mail", "MessageR" and/or "MessageF".
: Both "" and "" are set.

NOTE

- The ring volume setting specified for "Phone" in this function is also applied to the "Select ring tone" setting for a voice call, the alarm tones for "Schedule" and "To Do list".

Holding the Ringing/Current Call <On hold/Holding>

<Example: To put the ringing call on hold>

1 While ringing▶☎



The FOMA terminal makes three rapid beeps and puts the call on hold.
The caller hears a message saying that you cannot answer at the moment and the call is held without hanging up.

■ **To put the current call on hold**
▶During a call▶CLR

■ **To end the call during answer hold/holding**
▶☎

■ **If the other party ends the call during answer hold/holding**
The call ends.

2 Press ☎ to resume the call
You can also use CLR to cancel holding when you put the current call on hold.

NOTE

- Call charges apply while putting the ringing call or current call on hold.
- If you have subscribed to "Voice Mail" or "Call Forwarding" service, selecting "Voice Mail" or "Call Forwarding" from the function menu when you receive a call either forwards the call to the voice mail service or forwarding number.

Setting the hold tone <Set hold tone>

You can set the guidance messages to the other party during on hold.

1 MENU▶"Settings"▶"Talk"▶"Set hold tone"▶Select any item

On hold tone……Sets the message played during the answer hold.

Tone 1……The following message is played in Japanese: "I can't answer the phone just now. Please wait for a few minutes or call again later."

Tone 2……The following message is played in Japanese: "I can't answer the phone just now. Please call again later."

Voice announce 1/Voice announce 2*……The message recorded using "Voice announce" is played.

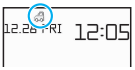
*: Not displayed if no Voice announce message has been recorded.

Using the Public Mode (Driving Mode) <Public mode (Driving mode)>

The Public mode is an automatic answering service provided to keep manner in public circumstances. During Public mode, a caller hears a message that you cannot answer the call because you are driving or you are in the place you have to refrain from calling (on the train or bus, in the theater, etc.), then the call ends.

- Public mode can only be set/released from the standby screen. (It can also be set/released when the "外" icon is displayed.)
- You can still make calls when the FOMA terminal is in Public mode.
- This function is not available during data communication.
- When you receive a call of "User unset" while Caller ID request is set to "Activate", caller ID request message is announced. (The Public mode message is not announced.)

1 On the standby screen▶✳ (for 1 second or longer)



Public mode is set and "🚗" appears.
When you receive a call, the callers hear messages "I can't answer the call because I am driving or I have to refrain from calling now. Please call back later." This announcement is given.

■ **To release the Public mode (Driving mode)**
▶On the standby screen▶✳ (for 1 second or longer)
Public mode is canceled and "🚗" disappears.

Continued on next page

NOTE

- If “Record message” is set to “ON”, Public mode takes priority and the “Record message” setting is disabled.
- The Public mode setting takes priority when Manner mode is set at the same time.
- If you make a voice call to an emergency number (110, 119 or 118) while Public mode is set, Public mode is released.
- The following tones do not sound in Public mode:
  - Ring tones for voice phone/videophone call/ PushTalk
  - Ring tone for mails
  - Ring tone for MessageR/F
  - Ring tone for chat mail
  - Alarm
  - Alarm tone of the Schedule
  - Alarm tone of the To Do list
  - Alarm tone for Notify cost limit
  - Low-voltage alarm tone
  - Charge sound
  - Software tone for i-αppli
  - Ring tone for Packet communication/64K data communication
  - Search request alarm tone for GPS function

● When Public mode (Driving mode) is set

The FOMA terminal does not ring when you receive a voice, videophone or PushTalk call. Calls are logged in the “Received calls” record as “Missed calls” record, and the “Missed call” desktop icon appears on the standby screen.

- A caller making a voice call hears a message that you cannot answer the call because you are driving or you are in the place you have to refrain from using mobile phones, then the call ends.
- A caller making a videophone call sees the Public mode video message on his or her display, then the call ends.
- The FOMA terminal does not answer the PushTalk call when receiving. “Connection failed” appears on the display of the caller’s terminal. If the number of call members is 3 or more, the members are notified that you are driving.
- When you receive a mail, the ring tone does not sound and the “New mail” desktop icon appears on the standby screen.

NOTE

- If the power is off or “圏外” is displayed in the screen, the message for “圏外” is announced instead of the Public mode message even when Public mode is set. However, in case of PushTalk calls, a “Disconnected” response is sent to the members.

● Handling of received calls when network services and Public mode (Driving mode) are set

If the FOMA terminal is set to Public mode while network services are activated, voice calls and videophone calls are handled as shown in the table below.

Service	When a voice call is received	When a videophone call is received
Voice Mail service	• Connects to the Voice mail service center after announcing the Public mode message.*	• Connects to the Voice mail service center without showing the Public mode video message.
Call Forwarding Service	• Transfers the call to the forwarding number after announcing the Public mode message.* • The Public mode message is announced or not depending on the setting of the call forwarding service.	• Transfers the videophone call to the forwarding number without showing the Public mode video message. • The connection is not established when the videophone for the forwarding number is not compatible with 3G-324M.
Call Waiting	• Ends the call after announcing the Public mode message.	• Ends the call after showing the Public mode video message.
Nuisance Call Blocking	• Ends the call after showing the message that the connection could not be established for the barred callers. • Ends the call after announcing the Public mode message for other callers.	• Ends the call after showing the video message that the connection could not be established for the barred callers. • Ends the call after showing the Public mode video message for other callers.
Caller ID Request	• Ends the call after announcing the caller ID request message for the callers who do not provide the caller ID. • Ends the call after announcing the Public mode message for the callers who provide the caller ID.	• Ends the call after showing the caller ID request video message for the callers who do not provide the caller ID. • Ends the call after showing the Public mode video message for the callers who provide the caller ID.

*: If the ring time is set to 0 second, the Public mode message is not announced and the “Voice Mail Service” or “Call Forwarding Service” is applied. In addition, they are not recorded in the “Received calls” record and “Missed call” desktop icon does not appear.

Using the Public Mode (Power OFF) <Public mode (Power OFF)>

The Public mode (Power OFF) is an automatic answering service provided to keep manner in public circumstances. During Public mode (Power OFF), a caller who made a call while the FOMA terminal is turned off hears a message that you cannot answer the call because you are in the place you have to turn off the mobile phone (in the hospital, on the airplane, around the priority seat on the train, etc.), then the call ends.

1 On the standby screen▶

[✱][2][5][2][5][1]▶[☎]

Public mode (Power OFF) is set. (Nothing changes on the standby screen.)

When you receive a call after setting Public mode (Power OFF) and turning off the FOMA terminal, the caller hears the message "The person you are calling is in an area where cell phone should not be used. Please call back later." This announcement is given.

■ To cancel the Public mode (Power OFF)

▶On the standby screen▶

[✱][2][5][2][5][0]▶[☎]

Public mode (Power OFF) is canceled.

■ To check Public mode (Power OFF) setting

▶On the standby screen▶

[✱][2][5][2][5][9]▶[☎]

You can check Public mode (Power OFF) setting.

● When Public mode (Power OFF) is set

The setting is valid until "✗25250" is dialed to released the Public mode (Power OFF). The setting is not canceled only by turning on the FOMA terminal. The Public mode (Power OFF) message is announced even when you are in an out-of-service area or where the reception is very poor.

- A caller making a voice call hears a message that you cannot answer the call because you are in the place you have to turn off the mobile phone, then the call ends.
- A caller making a videophone call sees the Public mode (Power OFF) video message on his or her display, then the call ends.
- The FOMA terminal does not answer the PushTalk call when receiving. "Connection failed" appears on the display of the caller's terminal. If the number of call members is 3 or more, the members are notified that you are disconnecting.

● Handling of received calls when network services and Public mode (Power OFF) are set

If the FOMA terminal is set to Public mode (Power OFF) while network services are activated, voice calls and videophone calls are handled as shown in the table below.

Service	When a voice call is received	When a videophone call is received
Voice Mail service	• Connects to the Voice mail service center after announcing the Public mode (Power OFF) message.*	• Connects to the Voice mail service center without showing the Public mode (Power OFF) video message.
Call Forwarding Service	• Transfers the call to the forwarding number after announcing the Public mode (Power OFF) message.* • The Public mode (Power OFF) message is announced depending on the setting of the call forwarding service.	• Transfers the videophone call to the forwarding number without showing the Public mode (Power OFF) video message. • The connection is not established when the videophone for the forwarding number is not compatible with 3G-324M.
Nuisance Call Blocking	• Ends the call after showing the message that the connection could not be established for the barred callers. • Ends the call after announcing the Public mode (Power OFF) message for other callers.	• Ends the call after showing the video message that the connection could not be established for the barred callers. • Ends the call after showing the Public mode (Power OFF) video message for other callers.
Caller ID Request	• Ends the call after announcing the caller ID request message for the callers who do not provide the caller ID. • Ends the call after announcing the Public mode (Power OFF) message for the callers who provide the caller ID.	• Ends the call after showing the caller ID request video message for the callers who do not provide the caller ID. • Ends the call after showing the Public mode (Power OFF) video message for the callers who provide the caller ID.

*: If the ring time is set to 0 second, the Public mode (Power OFF) message is not announced and the "Voice Mail Service" or "Call Forwarding Service" is applied. In addition, they are not recorded in the "Received calls" record and "Missed call" desktop icon does not appear.

Setting the Notification Method for Missed Calls

<Info notice setting>

You can set the notification method when checking a missed call or new mail (i-mode mail, area mail and SMS) using ▼ with the FOMA terminal is folded.

- The setting items and the checking operations by pressing ▼ are as follows:

■When there is a missed call, new mail, etc.

Setting	Sound and vibration*1	Illumination
ON	Notifies you of double bibip sounds “Bibip, bibip”.	Lights up for about 5 seconds in the color set in “Illumination”. When there are both missed calls and new mails, etc., the incoming call lamp flashes in the respective color with a period of 1 second*2.

■When there is no missed call, new mail, etc.

Setting	Sound and vibration*1	Illumination
ON	Notifies you of triple pip sounds “pip, pip, pip”.	Flashes for about 5 seconds in the “Color 7”.

*1 : The FOMA terminal vibrates when “Phone” in “Vibrator” is set to other than “OFF”.

*2 : If the flashing color is set to “Gradation” in the “Illumination” settings, the incoming call lamp flashes in “Color 5” for missed calls, “Color 1” for new mails, “Color 3” for new chat mails.

1 MENU ▶“Settings”▶“Incoming call”▶“Info notice setting”▶Select any item:

ON……Reports with electronic tone.*

OFF……Not read out.

*: Only Japanese language mode provides the option “ボイス” (voice) under “不在／新着確認設定” (Info notice setting), and it is available for reading out the message body when pressing ● after setting “ボイス” (voice) to “ON”.
Having the FOMA terminal read out mail→p.346

NOTE

- This function alerts you using a “YES” indication when the “Missed call”, “New mail”, “Chat mail”, etc. desktop icon is displayed on the standby screen.→p.117

NOTE

- You cannot use ▼ to check for missed calls or new mail in the following cases:
  - When Side key guard is set to “ON”
  - When playing music with the Music Player/ Music&Video Channel
- The volume set in the “Phone” in the “Ring volume” setting is used (if “Phone” is set to “Silent” or “Step”, the volume is set to “Level 2”).
- Opening the FOMA terminal during the notification stops the notification.
- If the reading of caller’s name is not stored in the phonebook or the name stored in the phonebook is not displayed, the caller’s name is not read out even if “ON” is set under “ボイス” (voice) in Japanese language mode.

Having the FOMA terminal read out the current time

When set to “ボイス” (voice), the FOMA terminal reads out the current time by pressing ▼ (📷) while it is folded (Voice clock). (Japanese language mode)

Having the Caller Leave a Message

<Record message>

When you cannot answer a voice or videophone call, this function allows you to record a message from the caller on your FOMA terminal.

- The difference between Record message and Voice mail is as follows.

Item	Record message	Voice Mail service
Recording time/ number of messages	• Voice call: Up to 20 seconds, 5 messages • Videophone call: Up to 20 seconds, 2 messages	• Voice call: Up to 3 minutes, 20 messages • Videophone call: Up to 3 minutes, 20 messages
Retention period	No limit	Up to 72 hours
Where to store	FOMA terminal	Voice Mail Service Center
Condition for playback	Inside and outside the service area	Only inside the service area
Condition for recording	• Recordable when receiving phone is turned on inside the service area • Setting “Record message” to “ON”	• Recordable even if the receiving phone is turned off inside/outside the service area • Activating the Voice Mail Service (p.372)

Setting Record message

1 MENU ▶“Settings”▶“Incoming call”▶“Record message”▶Select any item

ON……Select the desired type of answer message.

Japanese 1……“ただいま電話に出ることができません。ピーッという発信音の後に２０秒以内でお名前とご用件をお話しください。” (I can’t answer the phone just now. Please leave your name and a short message within 20 seconds after the beep. Thank you.)

Japanese 2……“せっかく電話をもらったけど、いま出られません。ピーッという発信音の後にメッセージを入れてね。” (Sorry, but I can’t take your call just now. Please leave a message after the beep. Thank you.)

English……Plays the English message: “I can’t take your call now. Please leave the message. Thank you.”

Voice announce 1/Voice announce 2*……The message recorded using “Voice announce” is played.

OFF……Cancels the “Record message” setting.

*: Not displayed if no Voice announce message has been recorded.

2 Enter the ringing time (000 to 120 seconds in 3 digits)

The record message is automatically set and “ ” and “ ” appear on the standby screen.

NOTE

- When “Voice announce 1” or “Voice announce 2” is deleted when the answer message is set to “Voice announce 1” or “Voice announce 2”, the answer message is set to “Japanese 1”.
- To give priority to “Record message” function when “Voice Mail”, “Call Forwarding” and “Record message” are set at the same time, set the ringing time of Record message shorter than that of Voice mail and Call forwarding.
- If the mute time set in “Ring time(sec.)” is longer than the ringing time set for the Record message function, the FOMA terminal switches directly to Record message without ringing first. To have the FOMA terminal ring before it records a message, make sure that the ringing time for Record message is longer than the mute time.
- You can use “Ring tone/Image” to set an answer message for each phone number or an answer message for each group.

When you receive a call with “Record message” set to “ON”

The record message activates when the set time is elapsed.

- To the caller of a voice call, the answer message is played and the recording starts.
- To the caller of a videophone call, the “Preparing” image is sent and the answer message is played, then the “Recording” image is sent and the recording starts.

■When message recording starts

- The recording screen appears. The caller’s voice can be heard through the FOMA terminal earpiece during message recording.



Example: Voice call

■To answer the voice call while recording

▶

■To answer the videophone call while recording

▶ to answer with the camera image or ● (Subst.) to answer with the substitute image

■When message recording ends



- The original screen reappears and the “Missed call” desktop icon and “Record message” desktop icon appear on the standby screen. You can check the contents by selecting the one of the desktop icons. →p.72
- Number of recordings are displayed with icons on the icon display area at the top of the screen.

to : Recorded voice messages (1 to 5)

/ : Recorded videophone messages (1 or 2)

NOTE

- When Manner mode is set, you cannot hear the caller’s voice during a message recording.
- You cannot answer another call while recording a message. The other caller hears the busy tone.

Having Callers Leave a Message During an Incoming Call <Quick message>

Even when the “Record message” function is not set to “ON”, you can record messages while receiving a call by pressing a key.

1 While ringing▶▼ (📷)

The recording of the message starts.

■ **To set the FOMA terminal to Manner mode at the same time recording is started**

▶While ringing▶ #

NOTE

- You cannot set “Record message” to “ON” with this operation.
- When you receive a voice or videophone call when the messages are full (5 messages for voice call and 2 messages for videophone call), the record message is not activated and the FOMA terminal keeps on ringing (when # is pressed, the ringing continues at the setting of “Manner mode set”).

Playing/Erasing Recorded Messages and Voice Memos

- When there is a recorded message which has not been played, “ ” (Record message) or “ ” (Record VP message) appears on the standby screen.

<Example: To check the recorded message which has not been played>

1 On the standby screen▶●▶Select “ ” (Record message) or “ ” (Record VP message)

The “Play/Erase msg.” screen or “Play/Erase VP msg.” screen appears. “★” appears for the recorded item.



Play/Erase msg.

Function menu➡p.73

■ **To play the recorded message with the menu operation**

▶ MENU ▶“LifeKit”▶“Play/Erase msg.” or “Play/Erase VP msg.”

2 Select the item to play

<Record message/Voice memo>

The FOMA terminal beeps and playback begins. When the playback ends, the FOMA terminal gives 2 short beeps and the “Play/Erase msg.” screen reappears.

You can also play the messages by pressing ▼ (📷) on the standby screen.

■ **To play the next message while playing a message**

▶▼ (📷)

Each time you press ▼ (📷), the recorded messages are played from the newest one. Voice memos are played last.

■ **To stop the playback**

▶● (Stop) or CLR

The “Play/Erase msg.” screen reappears.

<Record Videophone message>

The playback starts. When the playback ends, the “Play/Erase VP msg.” screen reappears.

■ **To play another message while playing a message**

▶◎

■ **To adjust volume while playing a message**

▶◎

■ **To switch ON/OFF of the speaker while playing a message**

▶ch (FUNC)▶“Speaker ON” or “Speaker OFF”

■ **To pause the playback**

▶● (Stop)

To resume playback, press ● (Play).

■ **To stop the playback**

▶ CLR

The “Play/Erase VP msg.” screen reappears.

■ **To make a voice/videophone or PushTalk call to the phone number displayed while playing a message**

▶ (voice call)/ (Y!phone) (videophone call)/▼ (PushTalk)

Only the PushTalk call (one-to-one) is available.

■ **To erase the playing message**

▶ch (FUNC)▶“Erase”▶“YES”

NOTE

- When 2in1 is in A mode or B mode, “★” does not appear for the recorded message recorded in the unused phone number. When set to “Dual mode”, “★” appears for the recorded message recorded in the both phone numbers.

FUNC **Play/Erase msg. screen (voice/video) (p.72)**

Play……Plays the message.

Delete this……Erases one recorded message or voice memo.

Delete rec. msg.*……Erases all the recorded messages. Voice memos are not erased.

Delete all……Erases all the recorded messages and voice memos.

*: Available only with the Play/Erase msg. screen.

Using Chara-den

This function sends a cartoon character instead of your own image when you make a videophone call. “What is Chara-den”→p.285

- You can display your favorite Chara-den if you set “Substitutive image” of “Select image” to “Chara-den” beforehand.
  You can also use Chara-den by setting Chara-den in the phonebook or Ring tone/Image.
- To switch from the camera image to Chara-den during a videophone call, select “Substitute image” from the function menu.

1 When you receive a videophone call

● (Subst.)

2 Control your character by pressing the dial keys



Chara-den

Pressing a dial key makes the character perform the action assigned to that key.

■ **To check the action list**

▶ ✳

You can also use ⊕ to select an action and perform that action.

■ **To switch the action mode**

▶ ch (FUNC)▶“Chara-den set.”▶“Change Action”

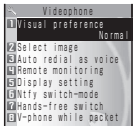
“Whole action” and “Parts action” switches.

“Using Chara-den characters”→p.285

Selecting the Image Sent to the Other Party

1 MENU ▶“Settings”▶“Videophone”

The “Videophone settings” screen appears.



Videophone settings

2 Select any item:

Visual preference……Sets the visual preference for videophone call.

- **Normal** (default)……Standard setting for both quality and movement.
- **Prefer img qual**……Sends more finely detailed video images. Best for motionless subjects.
- **Prefer motion spd**……Sends video images with smooth movement. Best for fast-moving subjects.

Select image→p.74

Auto redial as voice……Sets the operation performed when a videophone call fails to connect.

- **ON**……If a videophone call cannot be connected, it is automatically switched to a voice call.
- **OFF** (default)……A message is displayed notifying that you could not connect to a videophone call, and the display returns to the standby screen.

Remote monitoring→p.77

Display setting→p.75

Ntfy switch-mode→p.76

Hands-free switch→p.75

V-phone while packet→p.76

● “Setting the image sent during videophone calls” <Select image>

You can select the image sent instead of the camera image.

- You can set a JPEG image whose file size is 100K bytes or less and not larger than 854 dots wide × 854 dots high, or a GIF image whose file size is 100K bytes or less and not larger than 854 dots wide × 480 dots high or 480 dots wide × 854 dots high (except for the files with restrictions).
- The setting in this function is still retained after the videophone call ends.

1 Videophone settings screen (p.73)▶“Select image”▶Select any item:

On hold……Sets the image sent for a call on answer hold.

Holding……Sets the image sent while holding a call.

Substitute image……Sets the image sent as a substitute image.

Record message……You can set the image sent while recording videophone messages.

Preparing……You can set the image sent while preparing for recording videophone messages.

Voice memo……Sets the image sent while recording the voice memo.

2 Select the image to be sent:

Pre-installed……Sends only a message.

Original……Sends an image and a message.
To change the image, select an image from My picture from “Change setting” of the function menu.

Chara-den*……Sends the image selected in “Substitute image”.
Function menu of Chara-den list screen→p.286
Priority order for Chara-den setting→p.90
To change the Chara-den, select an image from Chara-den list from “Change setting” of the function menu.

*: This setting is available only when “Substitute image” is selected.

■Messages to be sent

For answer hold: “応答保留中 On Hold”
For holding: “保留 Holding”
For sending the substitute image:
“カメラオフ Camera Off”
For recording videophone message:
“伝言メモ録画中 Recording”
For preparing videophone message:
“伝言メモ準備中 Preparing”
For voice calls:
“音声メモ録音中 Recording Voice only”

NOTE

<Visual preference>
- If the signal quality deteriorates during a videophone call, the image may become grainy or patchy regardless of the settings in “Visual preference”.

<Select image>
- When you delete the original still image, the “Pre-installed” image is displayed (sent) to the other party.
- When the Chara-den character set as the substitute image is deleted and the “Chara-den” substitute image cannot be displayed, the pre-installed “Beans” is sent. If you delete the pre-installed “Beans”, the “Pre-installed” substitute still image is sent.

<Auto redial as voice>
- When a videophone call is switched and redialed as a voice call, the call is charged as a voice call and digital communication charges are not applied.
- When a call is redialed, only the voice call records are logged in the “Redial/Dialed calls” record.
- Even if “Auto redial as voice” is set to “ON”, it may not be possible to redial due to the conditions of the network or the other party, such as busy.

Checking your appearance during a videophone call <Visual check>

1 Videophone in-call screen (p.50)▶ch (FUNC)▶“Visual check”

You can use the image from the front camera to check your appearance.
“” is displayed during a visual check.
A substitute image is sent to the other party.

2 ch (FUNC)▶“Visual check off”

Visual check ends and the screen returns to the state before the visual check.

Enlarging the image to be sent

During a videophone call, you can enlarge the image of yourself that is sent to the other party.

- If you are sending the image captured by the rear camera, you can enlarge the image by up to 4× (in 16 steps). The image shot using the front camera can be enlarged by up to 2× (in 2 steps).
- If you switch between the front and rear cameras during a videophone call, the respective zoom settings are retained. When a videophone call ends, the image reverts to normal scale.
- You cannot enlarge the image when you are sending a substitute image.

1 During a videophone call▶Press ⊙ to zoom in or out

Setting the Hands-free Operation for Videophone Calls <Hands-free switch>

You can set the FOMA terminal to switch to handsfree mode automatically when starting a videophone call.

1 Videophone settings screen (p.73)▶"Hands-free switch"▶"ON"

■ **Not to switch the mode**
▶"OFF"

■ **To cancel the handsfree mode during a videophone call**
▶✉ (Off)

NOTE

- The FOMA terminal does not switch to handsfree mode automatically in the following cases even when "Hands-free switch" is set to "ON":
  - While Manner mode is set
  - When a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected (however, the microphone operation follows the "Select microphone" setting)
  - When holding a call or Record message is activated for the incoming call

Setting the Image Displayed During a Videophone Call

Setting the image to be displayed on the main screen and how to display a camera image <Display setting>

You can set the image displayed on the main display or how to display your own camera image.

1 Videophone settings screen (p.73)▶"Display setting"▶Select any item:

Main display……Selects the main display for the videophone call from "Other side/My side". "Other side" displays the camera image of the other party and "My side" displays your own camera image on the main display.

Front camera Reverse……Sets whether to display your camera image as a mirror image (ON) or normal image (OFF) on the FOMA terminal during a call.

Decorating the videophone screen <Decoration>

You can decorate the videophone screen (image from your own camera) with stamps or frames.

1 Videophone in-call screen (p.50)▶ch (FUNC)▶"Decoration"▶Select any item:

Frame……Selects a frame.

Stamp……Selects a stamp and sets the position to paste.

■ **To remove a frame or stamp**
Select "OFF decoration" from the function menu of the videophone in-call screen.

NOTE

- When "Front camera Reverse" is set to "OFF", an image is displayed in normal display, and you can read stamps such as characters correctly.

Sending a message during a videophone call (with a camera image displayed) <Petit message>

1 Videophone in-call screen (p.50)▶ch (FUNC)▶"Petit message"▶Enter a message
The message appears. The message automatically disappears after about 15 seconds.
You can enter up to 16 double-byte characters for a message.

■ **To cancel message entry**
▶Erase the entire message▶CLR

■ **To erase a message manually after displaying it**
▶CLR (for 1 second or longer)
You can also erase a message by selecting "Off decoration" from the function menu.

NOTE

- When "Front camera Reverse" is set to "OFF", a message is displayed in normal display, and you can read characters correctly.

Setting for Switching Between Voice Call and Videophone Call <Ntfy switch-mode>

You can set whether to notify the other party that your FOMA terminal supports the switch between a voice call and a videophone call.

- The other party can switch between a videophone call and a voice call when set to “Indication ON”, but the other party cannot switch the call when set to “Indication OFF”.
- You cannot set this function during a call or while “圏外” appears.

1 Videophone settings screen (p.73)▶“Ntfy switch-mode”▶Select any item:

Indication ON……Notifies the other party that your FOMA terminal supports the switch between voice call and videophone call.

Indication OFF……Does not notify the other party that your FOMA terminal supports the switch between voice call and videophone call.

Check Indication……Displays the “Ntfy switch-mode” setting.

Setting the Answer Mode When You Receive a Videophone Call During i-mode <V-phone while packet>

- As the multi access function cannot be used for videophone, incoming videophone calls during i-mode communication or while sending or receiving mails are handled according to this setting. →p.422

1 Videophone settings screen (p.73)▶“V-phone while packet”▶Select any item:

V-phone priority……Switches to the videophone ringing screen. When you answer the incoming videophone, i-mode communication is disconnected.

Packet downld priority……Rejects the incoming videophone call.

V-phone answerphone……If you have subscribed to the “Voice Mail” service, the videophone call is connected to the Voice Mail service center regardless of the “Activate/Deactivate” setting of “Voice Mail”. If you have not subscribed to the “Call Forwarding” service, the incoming videophone calls are handled as the “Packet downld priority”.

Call forwarding……If you have subscribed to the “Call Forwarding” service, the videophone call is forwarded to the destination number set for the “Call Forwarding” service regardless of the “Activate/Deactivate” setting of “Call Forwarding”. If you have not subscribed to the “Call Forwarding” service, the incoming videophone calls are handled as the “Packet downld priority”.

NOTE

- Even when set to “V-phone priority”, you cannot answer the videophone call if you are using multi access such as using the i-mode communication during a voice call.
- When set to “Packet downld priority”, “V-phone answerphone” or “Call forwarding”, the received videophone calls are recorded as “Missed calls” in the “Received calls”.
- Even when set to “V-phone priority” or “Packet downld priority”, “Voice Mail” or “Call Forwarding” service is activated if the ring time for the “Voice Mail” or “Call Forwarding” service is set to 0 second.

Receiving a videophone call during i-mode communication

When “V-phone while packet” is set to “V-phone priority”, you can receive a videophone call during i-mode communication or while sending or receiving mails.

1 When you receive a videophone call during i-mode communication, press ☎

■ To answer using the substitute image

▶● (Subst.)

The i-mode communication is disconnected and the videophone in-call screen appears.

2 To end the call, press ☎

■To continue i-mode communication

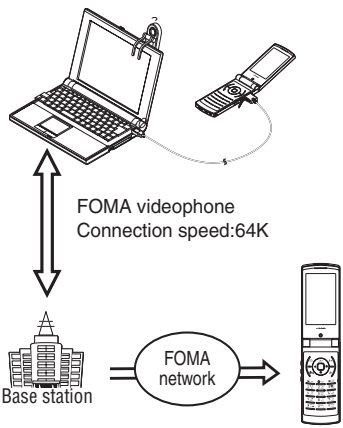
Even when “V-phone while packet” is set to “V-phone priority”, you can continue the i-mode communication by selecting “Call Rejection”, “Call Forwarding” or “Voice Mail” from the function menu of the videophone ringing screen.

Using the Videophone Connecting to External Devices

You can make or receive videophone calls from external devices such as the PC by connecting to the FOMA terminal with the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 (optional).
To use this function, you have to install a videophone application on the dedicated external device or PC and prepare commercially available devices such as an earphone/microphone and USB compatible Web camera.

- Set the USB mode setting to “Communication mode”. There is no specific settings for connecting external devices.
- For details on the operational environment, settings, operations of the videophone application, refer to the manuals supplied with the external terminals.
- “ドコモテレビ電話ソフト (DoCoMo Videophone Software)” (Japanese) is available as the application which is compatible with this function. You can download the Software from the website of DoCoMo Videophone Software (Japanese). (For details of the PC operating environment, etc., refer to the support website.)

http://videophonesoft.nttdocomo.co.jp/



NOTE

- You cannot make a videophone call from the external device during a voice call.

NOTE

- When you have subscribed to any service of Call waiting, Voice Mail, Call Forwarding, and you receive a videophone call from an external device during a voice call, you can answer the call after ending the current call. When you receive a voice call, videophone call or 64K data communication during a videophone call from the external device, you can answer these calls in the same way.

Remote Monitoring

<Remote monitoring>

Remote monitoring is only available between FOMA terminals or between a FOMA terminal and a phone equipped with a 3G-324M-compatible videophone function. The FOMA N905iμ can be used as either the dialing or receiving phone for remote monitoring.

Preparing the receiving phone

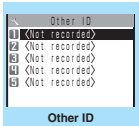
Set the phone number of the dialing phone (Other ID) and the delay until remote monitoring begins (Ringing time) on the phone performing the remote monitoring (receiving phone).

- Up to 5 IDs can be stored.

1 Videophone settings screen (p.73)▶“Remote monitoring”▶Enter your security code▶“Other ID”

“Other ID” appears.

2 “<Not recorded>”▶Enter the phone number to be monitored as Other ID



Function menu➡p.78

■ **To change the previously stored Other ID**

▶Select ID you want to change

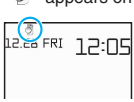
3 Press CLR to return to the remote monitoring screen

4 “Ringing time”▶Enter the ring time (003 to 120 seconds in 3 digits)

The ringing time is set.

5 “Set”▶“ON”

“5” appears on the standby screen.



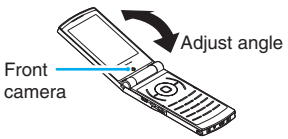
■ **To turn remote monitoring off**

▶“OFF”

Continued on next page

6 Position the FOMA terminal

In remote monitoring, the image from the front camera is sent to the dialing phone.
Put the receiving FOMA terminal on the monitoring position, ensuring that it is switched on and unfolded.
If it is left folded, only the voice is sent and the camera image is not sent. The substitute image is sent with "カメラオフ Camera Off" written on the image.



NOTE

- When positioning the FOMA terminal, set "Videophone" in "Vibrator" to "OFF" to prevent the FOMA terminal from moving when receiving calls.
- If the ringing time set for "Voice Mail" or "Call Forwarding" on the receiver side is shorter than the ringing time set for remote monitoring, "Voice Mail" or "Call forwarding" takes priority.

FUNC Other ID screen (p.77)

Look-up address……Enters the address referring to the phonebook, Dialed and Received calls records.

Delete this/Delete all……Deletes one or all Other ID(s). When all IDs are deleted, the "Set" setting is set to "OFF".

Starting/ending the remote monitoring

- To perform remote monitoring, you should always make a videophone call with caller ID (phone number) notification provided from the FOMA terminal registered as Other ID on the receiving phone.
- When the FOMA terminal is used to receive the remote monitoring, images and sound from the dialing phone are both played.

1 Make a videophone call to the receiving phone



Dialing phone

After the ringing time set on the receiving phone has elapsed, remote monitoring begins.
The video image from the receiving phone is displayed and the sound comes from the speaker on the dialing phone.

■ To answer a videophone call (with camera image) on the receiving phone without triggering remote monitoring

▶Press ☎ before the set ringing time has elapsed
To answer with a substitute image, press ●(Subst.).

2 To end the call, press ☎

The call duration is displayed and remote monitoring ends.
You can also end remote monitoring by pressing ☎ on the receiving phone.

NOTE

- Calls from the phone number stored in the Remote monitoring settings can be received as a remote monitoring call even when Dial lock or Omakase Lock is set.
- If caller ID notification is not provided, the call is received as a normal videophone call and not as a remote monitoring call.
- Remote monitoring cannot be performed if any of the following functions is set at the same time:
  - Public mode (Driving mode)
  - Manner mode
  - Call rejection/acceptation*
  - Reject unknown*

  *: When "Call acceptation" is set for a phone number other than ID or "Call rejection" is set for ID, or when "Reject unknown" is set and ID is not stored in the phonebook.
- Specific ring tone for Remote monitoring is used and cannot be modified.
- Ring tone is played at the volume set in "Videophone" in "Ring volume" (if the ring volume is set to "Silent", "Level 1" or "Step", the volume is set to "Level 2").
- When receiving a call for remote monitoring, the flashing color is set to "Gradation" and the flashing pattern is set to "Wave", regardless of the "Illumination" settings.
- You cannot put the call on hold while receiving a call for remote monitoring. Press ☎ to end the call.
- You cannot switch cameras from the receiver during remote monitoring.

Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones. Improper use of the FOMA terminal in ways that constitute a serious public nuisance may be punishable under laws or ordinances intended to prevent such behavior (privacy protection laws, etc.).

PushTalk

What is PushTalk? 80
Making a PushTalk Call ..... Make PushTalk 80
Adding a Member During a PushTalk Call 82
Receiving a PushTalk Call ..... Receive PushTalk 82
Adding an Entry to the PushTalk Phonebook ..... Add to PushTalk phonebook 83
Using the PushTalk Phonebook to Make a PushTalk Call 84
Deleting an Entry from the PushTalk Phonebook ..... Delete PushTalk 85
Making the PushTalk Settings..... PushTalk setting 86

What is PushTalk?

Press the PushTalk key (📱) to open the PushTalk phonebook. You can talk with one or more parties (up to 5 people including yourself) simply by selecting the parties and then pressing 📱. The PushTalk charge will apply each time you press 📱.

- For details of PushTalk and supported models, refer to the DoCoMo website or the "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network Services]".

PushTalkPlus

*: A separate subscription is required.

You can use PushTalk communication to talk with one more parties (up to 20 people including yourself). You can use PushTalk more conveniently e.g. use the shared phonebook on the network or check the member status.

- For more details about how to use the PushTalkPlus, etc., see the guide you receive at the time of subscription.

Making a PushTalk Call

<Make PushTalk>

1 Enter the phone number of the other party▶📱



PushTalk talking

- When the other party answers the call, the participation tone sounds and the PushTalk talking screen appears.
- When the other party answers, his/her voice comes out of the speaker.

■ To talk with multiple members

Use the PushTalk phonebook and dial. →p.84

■ To cancel the handsfree operation

▶✉ (Off)

You can set not to answer with handsfree operation with "Hands-free setting" (p.86) of PushTalk setting.

2 Keep holding 📱 to speak in your turn

- The start tone sounds indicating that you have the right to speak now, then you can speak.
- An error tone sounds if you cannot get the right to speak, e.g. while another member is speaking.
- Releasing 📱 makes the release tone and another participant can speak now.
- When a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected, you can speak while holding down the switch on the flat-plug earphone/microphone.
- When a member leave the PushTalk (ends the call), a confirmation tone sounds.

■ To add a member

You can call other members during conversation even after starting the PushTalk. →p.82

3 To end the call, press ☎

The members hear the confirmation tone.

■ To join the PushTalk after leaving

If other members continue a PushTalk call after you leave the call, you can rejoin the call in progress. →p.81

NOTE

<Making a call>

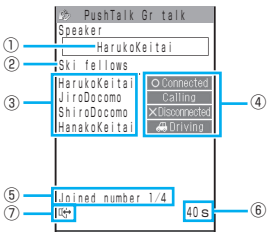
- You can also make a PushTalk call using the normal phonebook, Redial/Dialed call/Received calls records or Phone To function. Display a phone number or highlight a phone number in the list, then press 📱. "Redial, Dialed calls and Received calls records of PushTalk" →p.81
- Caller ID notification when making a PushTalk call follows the setting of "Caller ID Notification" (p.48).
- When "Caller ID setting" is set to "ON", phone numbers of the caller and all members are notified to all the members who received the PushTalk call (including the members added during the PushTalk call). If it is set to "OFF", the names of the speaker and other participating members are displayed as "User unset" on the "PushTalk talking" screen of all members who received the call.
- You cannot make a PushTalk call during a voice call, videophone call or data communication.
- Making a PushTalk call during mode communication disconnects the i-mode communication. Making a PushTalk call while running an i-αppli causes the i-αppli to be exited.
- When receiving a videophone call, PushTalk call or 64K data communication during a PushTalk call, the missed record will be logged and the current PushTalk call will continue.
- The time is limited for speaking each time you have the right. When the time is about to elapse, a confirmation tone sounds and then the right expires.
- If nobody gets the right to speak for a given time, the PushTalk call ends.
- When a participant presses 📱 and a confirmation tone sounds, the speaker is charged for the PushTalk charge (each time he/she has the right to speak).
- The PushTalk call is unavailable for an emergency call (110, 119, 118).
- When 2in1 is set to Dual mode, the outgoing number selection screen is displayed. Select the number for Number A.
- When 2in1 is set to B mode, PushTalk is not available.

NOTE

<Ending a call>

- If “Setting when folded” (p.86) is set to “End the call”, a PushTalk call ends when the FOMA terminal is folded. When a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected, however, communication continues.
- Pressing the switch of a connected flat-plug earphone/microphone (optional) cannot end a PushTalk call.

Guide to the PushTalk talking screen



①Current speakers name*1
(“Myself” appears when you are speaking, or “?” when the speaker is unknown.)
②Group name specified at the time of dialing (It is left blank if a group is not specified.)
③Participant names (excluding yourself)*1
④Status of members*2
Calling: Calling the party
Connected: The party is participating
Disconnected: There is no response from the party, or the party hung up. Otherwise, the party’s terminal is out of range or turned off.
Driving: The party’s terminal is in Public mode (Driving mode)
⑤Number of participants (excluding yourself)
⑥Time elapsed after starting the PushTalk call
⑦Hands-free ON

*1 : If the caller sets “Caller ID Notification” (p.48) or “Set Caller ID” (p.85) to “ON”, the name stored in the phonebook appears. If the participant is not stored in the phonebook, the phone number appears. If the caller sets “Caller ID setting” or “Set Caller ID” to “OFF”, “User unset” appears on the receivers.
*2 : “Calling”, “Driving” and “Disconnected” appear only if 3 or more people are talking.

Joining a PushTalk call in progress

Follow the step below to join a PushTalk call in progress later on if you left the call or if you make a “Disconnected” response while receiving the PushTalk call:

<Example: Joining a PushTalk call in progress from Redial>

1 Redial screen (p.56)▶Highlight a PushTalk call▶
If a PushTalk call is continued, the PushTalk talking screen appears.

Redial, Dialed calls and Received calls records of PushTalk

- The PushTalk records of Redial, Dialed calls and Received calls are logged separately for one-to-one calls and for group calls.
- A group call is saved as 1 record to the Redial, Dialed calls or Received calls.
- The following are the functions that can be launched from each record:

Item	One-to-one call record (, MISS, etc.)	Group call record (, MISS, etc.)
Make a one-to-one PushTalk call	○	○*1
Make a group PushTalk call	×	○*2
Make a voice/videophone call	○	×
Add to the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook	○	○

*1 : Selecting “Select PushTalk” from the Redial/Dialed calls/Received calls function menu and then selecting only one member will result in a one-to-one call.
*2 : You can make a call to the same members, or select members in the group.

NOTE

- Redial during a talk among two or more people is only updated if you redial the same parties from the Redial/Dialed calls and it is saved as another redial if even a receiving party is different.

Adding a Member During a PushTalk Call

You can add other members during a PushTalk call.

- Participants other than the caller cannot add a member during a PushTalk call.

1 During a PushTalk call▶ (Add)▶Select any item:

Phonebook……Selects a phone number from the phonebook of the FOMA terminal or of the FOMA card (UIM).

PushTalk phonebook……Selects a member from the PushTalk phonebook. You can also select a member from a group by displaying a group list. Using the PushTalk Phonebook to Make a PushTalk Call→p.84

Redial/Received calls……Selects a record from the Redial/Received calls records.

■ To select a member from the group PushTalk record

▶Display a record list▶Select the group PushTalk record▶● (Select)▶Use ◯ to select a checkbox (□)▶ (Finish)

Direct input……Enters a phone number.

2 (Dial)

A PushTalk call is made to the added members.
When you make a PushTalk call, their names appear on the PushTalk talking screen.



NOTE

- The number of people who can talk at the same time is up to 5 including the caller. Members can be added until the number of called members becomes 4. If 4 members are already being called, a non-participating member can be called again but a new member cannot be added.
- When 5 participants join the PushTalk call, no more members can be added. Even if one of the participants disconnects the call, new member cannot be added.
- The added members are not recorded to the callers Redial/Dialed calls record and the other participants Received calls record.
- A user using a phone with no function of adding members can also be added. However, the added members do not appear on the screen of a phone with no function of adding members and a tone does not sound when the user joins or leaves a PushTalk call. The caller who uses a phone with no function of adding members cannot add a member.

NOTE

- When 2in1 is set to Dual mode and a member is added from "Enter client", the outgoing number selection screen is displayed. Select the number for Number A.

Receiving a PushTalk Call

<Receive PushTalk>

Answer and join an incoming PushTalk call.

- Receiving a PushTalk call rings a tone, flashes the incoming call lamp and displays the "PushTalk call" screen.
- The "PushTalk call" screen displays the names of the caller and other members (in case of group call).

1 A PushTalk call incoming▶

and ● (Answer) are also available to answer the call.
Answering the call sounds the participation tone and the "PushTalk call" screen appears.



- When a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected, you can answer the PushTalk call by holding down the switch on the flat-plug earphone/microphone.

■ To reject the call (To make a "Disconnected" response)

▶Press while receiving a call

Even if you make a "Disconnected" response to an incoming call, you can join the call later on if other members keep talking.→p.81

■ To answer an incoming PushTalk call automatically

Set "Auto answer setting" (p.86) of the PushTalk setting to "ON".

2 To join the PushTalk call

Proceed to step 2 of "Making a PushTalk Call" (p.80).

NOTE

- Pressing (), # disconnects an incoming call "Quick message" is unavailable. Doing so causes a "Disconnected" response.
- The FOMA terminal does not ring and the incoming call lamp does not flash when the Public mode (Driving mode) is set. If the call is one-to-many, "Driving" appears on the other members' screens indicating that you are driving.
- If the FOMA terminal is folded, you can press to answer in handsfree mode.

NOTE

- When receiving a PushTalk call, pressing ☎ does not allow "On hold". Doing so causes a "Disconnected" response.
- A "Disconnected" response will be made to a call from a phone number specified in "Call rejection" or "Reject unknown".
- Members added during a PushTalk call appear on the "PushTalk talking" screen, but are not logged to the "Group calls ( )" on Received calls.
- You cannot answer an incoming PushTalk call during a voice call, videophone call, PushTalk call or data communication. If the current call is a voice call or PushTalk call, the missed calls record is logged.
- If a PushTalk call is received during i-mode communication, the operation follows the "Set i-mode arrival act" settings. →p.180

Adding an Entry to the PushTalk Phonebook

<Add to PushTalk phonebook>

Copy members (phone numbers, etc.) stored in the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook to the PushTalk phonebook.

- Up to 1,000 members can be added.

1 On the standby screen▶

The PushTalk phonebook screen (p.84) appears.

2 (New)▶"View phonebook"▶ Search for an entry to add

How to search phonebook →p.92

■ To enter directly

▶(New)▶"Direct input"▶Add an entry



Member list

3 Display the Phonebook detail screen▶ Use ◎ to select a phone number to add

A screen appears asking whether to add to the PushTalk phonebook.

■ To add from the phonebook list screen

▶Highlight a phone number to add▶(Finish)

If two or more phone numbers are stored in the phonebook entry, the first phone number is added to the PushTalk phonebook.

4 "YES"

A new member is added to the member list.

■ If a phone number is already stored in the selected memory number

A message appears asking whether to overwrite the existing one. Select "YES" to overwrite.

NOTE

- Members in the member list appear as follows:
  - When a member is registered to the member list or added to the group, the registered/added member appears on the top.
  - When you display the PushTalk phonebook screen, the members appear in last-used order.
- When 2in1 is set to B mode, the PushTalk phonebook is not available.

Adding a member to a group

A group created with members in the PushTalk phonebook is useful when you want to make a group call.

● Creating a group

Up to 10 groups can be created. A group name can contain up to 10 double-byte or 21 single-byte characters.

1 PushTalk phonebook screen (p.84)▶ch (FUNC)▶"Group setting"▶"Compose group"

2 Enter a group name

A new group name is added to the group list.

● Adding a member to the group

Add a member to the member list beforehand. →p.83
A group can contain up to 19 members, but a call can be made to only up to 4 members of the group.

<Example: To add from the group list>

1 On the group list▶Highlight a group to add▶ch (FUNC)▶"Group setting"▶"Add member"

The Select group member screen appears.

2 Use ◎ to select a checkbox (☐)▶ (Finish)

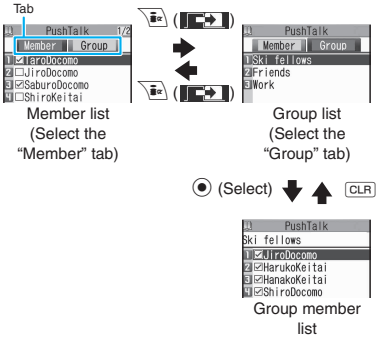
The selected member is added to the group.

NOTE

- Group members appear as follows:
  - When a member is added to the group, the added member appears on the top.
  - When you display the PushTalk phonebook screen then the group member list, the members appear in last-used order.

Continued on next page

PushTalk phonebook list switching



Member list (Select the "Member" tab)

Group list (Select the "Group" tab)

Group member list

NOTE

- You can use ⊙ to switch pages within the same tab.

Adding to the PushTalk phonebook from the Redial, Dialed calls and other records

You can add a member and group from "Received calls/Dialed calls/Redial" screens.

<Example: To add newly to a PushTalk group from "Received calls" of voice calls>

1 Received calls screen (detail) (p.56)▶ ch (FUNC)▶"Add to phonebook"

2 "Add to PushTalk Gr"

■ **To use the Redial/Dialed/Received calls record of PushTalk calls (group calls)**

▶Use ⊙ to select a checkbox (☐)

■ **To add a PushTalk member**

▶"Add to PushTalk"

■ **To add to the FOMA terminal (Phone) or the FOMA card (UIM)**

▶"Add to phonebook"

"Adding Phonebook Entries from the Redial, Dialed Calls and Other Records"→p.90

3 "New"▶Add to a phonebook

■ **To add to an existing phonebook entry**

▶"Add"▶Search for a phonebook entry to add▶Display the phonebook detail screen▶⊙ (Select)▶Add to a phonebook▶"YES"

4 Select a group

■ **To add a new group**

▶"<New>"▶Enter a group name

NOTE

- If a phone number cannot be added to the PushTalk phonebook from the Redial/Dialed calls/Received calls of PushTalk (group calls), "" appears.

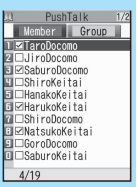
Using the PushTalk Phonebook to Make a PushTalk Call

Select members from the PushTalk phonebook and make a PushTalk call.

- You can make a call to a maximum of 4 members.

1 On the standby screen▶

The "PushTalk phonebook" screen appears.



PushTalk phonebook

Function menu➡p.85

2 Use ⊙ to select a checkbox (☐)▶

1 to 0 are available to select the corresponding checkboxes.

When one of the other parties answers the call, the participation tone sounds and the "PushTalk talking" screen appears.

Proceed to step 2 of "Making a PushTalk Call" (p.80).



PushTalk talking

■ **To check the selected members**

▶Before pressing to make a call, press ch (FUNC)▶"Members to call"

NOTE

- If all the other members receiving the call are "Disconnected", the PushTalk call will end.
- When "Caller ID Notification" (p.48) or "Set Caller ID" (p.85) is set to "ON", phone numbers of all members are notified to all the members who received the PushTalk call (including the members added during the PushTalk call). Be careful when notifying the phone number because it is your important information.

Making a PushTalk call from a PushTalk group

1 On the group list▶Highlight a group to call▶[i]

A call is made to all the members of the highlighted group.

■ **When the group contains members you do not want to call**

▶Select a group▶Use ◎ to deselect the member you do not want to call▶[i]

FUNC PushTalk phonebook screen (p.84)

- The options are available depend on the member list, group list, group member list or selected tab.

New……Adds an entry to the PushTalk phonebook.

View phonebook……Searches for a phone number from the FOMA terminal (phone) phonebook then adds it to the PushTalk phonebook.

Direct input……Adds a new entry to the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook. The phone number is automatically added to the PushTalk phonebook.

Set Caller ID……Select “ON” or “OFF” for whether to notify calling members of all members (including added members) phone numbers.
When “Cancel prefix” is selected, the “Caller ID Notification” setting is applied.

Members to call……Displays a list of members.

PushTalk setting……Makes the PushTalk settings. →p.86

Network connection……Connects to the network to use the “PushTalkPlus”. →p.80
Only a PushTalkPlus subscriber can use this function.

Sort……Uses the method to sort the lists.*

Group setting……Creates a new group, adds a member to the group, or edits a group name. →p.83

Release all……Deselects all members in the member list/group member list.

No. of PushTalk……Checks the number of members, the number of groups and the number of members stored in each group.
To change displays, use ◎, [i] (マナー) and [i] (📷).

Delete →p.85

*: Sorting in Reading order is unavailable in the group list.

NOTE

<Set Caller ID>

- When caller ID settings for PushTalk call are duplicated, the priority is assigned as follows:
  ①Set Caller ID ②Caller ID Setting

Deleting an Entry from the PushTalk Phonebook

<Delete PushTalk>

Delete a member, group or group member from the PushTalk Phonebook.

1 Display a list to delete

Member list: Display when deleting a member from the PushTalk phonebook.
Group list: Display when deleting a group.
Group member list: Display when deleting a member from a group.
“Switching the PushTalk phonebook list” →p.84

2 ch (FUNC)▶“Delete”▶Select any item:

Delete this……Deletes a member/group/group member highlighted in step 1. When deleting a member from a member list, select whether to delete the PushTalk phonebook entry only or to delete the phonebook entry on the FOMA terminal as well.

Delete selected/Delete all……Delete multiple or all members/groups/group members.
“About multiple-choice” →p.38

NOTE

- When a member is deleted from the member list, the member is deleted from all the registered groups.
- Even when a group is deleted, members registered to the group are not deleted from the member list.
- Even when group members are deleted, they are deleted only from the displayed group. When deleted members are registered to other groups, they are not deleted from these groups.

Making the PushTalk Settings

<PushTalk setting>

Make the PushTalk settings.

1 PushTalk phonebook screen (p.84)▶ ch (FUNC)▶"PushTalk setting"▶ Select any item:

Auto answer setting (default: OFF)……Select "ON"/"OFF" to set whether to answer an incoming PushTalk call automatically.
Setting to "ON" sets the handsfree ON when answering automatically no matter whether the FOMA terminal is folded, causing the voices to come out of the speaker.

Ring time setting (default: 30 seconds)……Sets the ring time (01-60 seconds) when you receive a PushTalk call. When the specified time has elapsed, a "Disconnected" response is automatically made and the ring tone stops.

Setting when folded……Selects an operation to be performed when the FOMA terminal is folded during a PushTalk call.

Speaker talk (default)……Continues a call in handsfree mode. When the FOMA terminal is opened, the status reverts to before it was folded.

End the call……Ends a call. It is the same operation as pressing ☎.

PushTalk arrival act……Sets how to deal with an incoming voice call while making/receiving a PushTalk call or during a PushTalk call.

Answer (default)……Moves to the incoming voice call screen. The incoming voice call screen does not appear while making/receiving a PushTalk call.

■When you answer the voice call with ☎ during a PushTalk call

The PushTalk call ends, and the Voice in-call screen appears.

■To continue a PushTalk call ▶The voice call ringing screen▶ ch (FUNC)▶Select "Call Rejection", Call Forwarding or Voice Mail

Call Rejection……Rejects an incoming voice call.

Voice Mail……If you have subscribed to the service, videophone is connected to the Voice Mail service center regardless of the "Activate"/"Deactivate" setting of "Voice Mail". If not subscribed, "Answer" works.

Call Forwarding……If you have subscribed to the Call Forwarding service, call is forwarded regardless of the "Activate"/"Deactivate" setting of "Call forwarding". If not subscribed, "Answer" works.

Hands-free setting (default: ON)……Sets whether to automatically set handsfree on each time you make a PushTalk call.

NOTE

<Auto answer setting>
- The "ON" setting is unavailable in the Manner mode.
- While the Public mode (Driving mode) is set, you cannot answer an incoming call regardless of the "Auto answer setting", but the participants will know that you are driving.
- If "PushTalk" under "Auto answer setting" is set to "ON", this setting is disabled.
- If set to "ON", this setting has priority over "Ring time setting" (p.86) under PushTalk setting.

<Ring time setting>
- When a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected, priority is given to the shorter time setting of between "Ring time setting" and "Auto answer setting". If a ring time with the same during is set, "Ring time setting" takes precedence.

<Setting when folded>
- This setting is available only for PushTalk. It does not follow "Setting when folded" of a voice call and videophone call.
- If "Speaker talk" is set, folding the FOMA terminal sets handsfree ON regardless of the Manner mode setting.
- If a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected, this function is disabled and even folding the FOMA terminal does not change the call status.

<Hands-free setting>
- If a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected, this function is disabled and does not automatically set handsfree on.
- In Manner mode, it is "OFF" regardless of "Hands-free setting".

Phonebook

Phonebooks Available with the FOMA Terminal 88
Adding Information to the Phonebook ..... Add to phonebook 89
Adding Phonebook Entries from the Redial, Dialed Calls and Other Records 90
Renaming Groups..... Group setting 91
Making a Call from the Phonebook..... Search phonebook 91
Editing the Phonebook..... Edit phonebook 94
Deleting a Phonebook Entry ..... Delete data 95
Checking the Phonebook Storage Status..... No. of phonebook 95
Setting Different FOMA Terminal Actions for Each Phone Number and Mail Address ..... Ring tone/Image 95
Using Choku-Den ..... Choku-Den 96
Using Dialing Shortcuts ..... Two-touch dialing 98
Storing the Phonebook at the Data Security Center..... Data security serv. 98

Phonebooks Available with the FOMA Terminal

Your FOMA terminal contains two phonebooks. One is the phonebook in the FOMA terminal (Phone) itself, for which you can set a range of functions, and the other is the UIM (FOMA card) phonebook, which can also be used in other FOMA terminals. Each phonebook can be used differently depending on the purpose.

- Besides, you can use the "PushTalk" phonebook for PushTalk calls. You can create the PushTalk phonebook using the stored data on the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook.

Differences between the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook and UIM (FOMA card) phonebook

■Data stored

Stored data	FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook	UIM phonebook
Number of entries	Up to 1,000 entries	Up to 50 entries
Group	Categorized into No group, or groups from 01 to 19.	Categorized into No group, or groups from 01 to 10.
Phone number storage	The phonebook can hold up to 4,000 phone numbers in total with up to 4 numbers per entry	Only 1 number can be stored per entry
	You can select from 23 icons	"☎" is automatically assigned
E-mail address storage	The phonebook can hold up to 3,000 e-mail addresses in total with up to 3 addresses per entry	Only 1 address can be stored per entry
	You can select from 5 icons	"📱✉" is automatically assigned
Image storage	1 still image and 1 "Chara-Den" character can be stored per entry, up to a total of 100 entries for the whole phonebook	—
Other data storage	Each phonebook entry can include the 1 contact's name, reading, postal code, street address, location information, birthday and memo	The contact's name and reading can be stored

■Features of the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook

The following utility functions can be used with entries stored in the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook:

- "Choku-Den"→p.96
- "Two-touch dialing"→p.98
- "Ring tone/Image"→p.95
- "Restrictions"→p.139
- Storing as secret data→p.127
- Secret code setting→p.94
- Adding members to the PushTalk phonebook→p.83

■Features of the UIM phonebook

As phonebook entries are stored on the FOMA card (UIM), you can transfer your phonebook entries to another FOMA terminal simply by switching the FOMA card (UIM). This makes the UIM phonebook very useful when you use multiple FOMA terminal in different locations.

Displaying names

■Voice and videophone calls



When receiving a call with caller ID notified from someone who is stored in the phonebook, the phone number and caller's name is displayed.



When a still image is stored in the phonebook, the image is displayed. However, depending on the size and amount of data of the stored image, it may take time to display the image. The caller's name is also displayed in the "Received calls", "Dialed calls" and "Redial" records.

NOTE

- When you receive a call and the phone number and still image are stored in the phonebook, if the size of the still image is larger than the displayed area set in "Calling" under "Display setting", the width and length of the image is reduced at the same ratio. If it is smaller than the image screen area, it is centered on the screen.

■i-mode mail and SMS

When you receive i-mode mail or SMS from someone who is stored in the phonebook, his/her name is displayed in the Received mail list/detail screen. When you send i-mode mail or SMS to that person, his/her name is also displayed in the Sent mail list/detail screen. The person's name also appears in the "Received address" or "Sent address".

Adding Information to the Phonebook <Add to phonebook>

You can select from the FOMA terminal (Phone), FOMA terminal (Phone) + PushTalk phonebook or FOMA card (UIM) to add entries to.

- The entry cannot be stored unless the "Name" field is filled.
- You can add only information of "Group", "Phone number" and "Mail address" except for "Name" and "Reading" to the UIM phonebook.

1 MENU/MULTI ch ▶"Phonebook"▶"Phonebook"▶ (FUNC)▶"Add to phonebook"▶ **Select a phonebook▶Enter a name**

■ **When the entry is to be stored on the "Phone" or "Phone + PushTalk"**

You can enter kanji characters, hiragana, katakana, alphabets, numbers, symbols and pictographs. You can enter up to 16 double-byte or 32 single-byte characters.

■ **When the entry is to be stored on the "UIM"**

You can enter kanji characters, hiragana, katakana, alphabets, numbers, symbols. You can enter up to 10 double-byte or 21 single-byte alphanumeric characters (including some single-byte symbols).

2 Check the reading▶● (Set)

■ **When the reading is incorrect**

Correct the reading using katakana (single-byte for "Phone" or "Phone + PushTalk" and double-byte for "UIM"), single-byte alphabet, numbers and symbols. You can store up to 32 single-byte characters for "Phone" or "Phone + PushTalk" and 12 double-byte or 25 single-byte alphanumeric characters only (including some single-byte symbols) for "UIM".

3 Select any item:

Group·····Selects a group number among "Group 01-19" for "Phone" or "Phone + PushTalk", or among "Group 01-10" for "UIM". If no group is selected, the entry is automatically assigned to "Group 00".

Phone number·····Enters the phone number.

- Also select the icon for "Phone" or "Phone + PushTalk". You can enter up to 26 digits for the phone number.
  Once you have stored the first phone number, the "<Not stored>" option appears in the phonebook edit screen. Select this option to store an additional phone number.
- You can enter the phone number up to 20 digits for a blue FOMA card (UIM), and 26 digits for a green/white FOMA card (UIM).

Mail address·····Enters the e-mail address. You can enter up to 50 single-byte alphabets, numbers and symbols. Also select the icon for "Phone" or "Phone + PushTalk". Once you have stored the first e-mail address, the "<Not stored>" option appears in the phonebook edit screen. Select this option to store an additional e-mail address.

Address·····Enters the ZIP code and street address. Enter the 7 single-byte numbers for ZIP codes. You can enter up to 50 double-byte or 100 single-byte kanji characters, hiragana, katakana, alphabets, numbers and pictographs.

Location information·····Stores the location information after selecting from "From position loc./From location history/From image".
Select "Location info detail" to check the stored latitude, longitude, geodetic system (Datum) and accuracy.
Select "Delete location info" to delete the stored location information.

Birthday·····Select "Enter birthday" to enter birthday (year, month and day). Any year from 1800 to 2099 can be set.
Select "Reminder" to select "1week before", "3days before", "1day before" and/or "On the day".
Illumination flashes and desktop icon appears at 0:00 on the selected day. →pp.113, 117

Memorandums·····Enters a memo (short note). You can enter up to 100 double-byte or 200 single-byte characters which include kanji characters, hiragana, katakana, alphabets, numbers and pictographs.

Set image·····Shoots or selects the image displayed when you receive a call from the contact.

Chara-den·····Selects the "Chara-den" character displayed as the substitute image for videophone calls.

Memory No.·····Memory numbers are automatically* assigned when an entry is stored in the phonebook, but can be changed to any number between 000 and 999.

*: Assigned to the available number between 010 to 999 from the smallest number. However, no number is available from 010 to 999, it is assigned to the available number between 000 to 009.

4 Press (Finish)

■ **When the entry is to be stored on the "Phone + PushTalk"**

When 1 phone number is added, that number is added to the PushTalk phonebook.
When multiple phone numbers are added, select a phone number to be added to the PushTalk phonebook. You can add the PushTalk phone number or store the PushTalk group on the PushTalk phonebook. "Adding an Entry to the PushTalk Phonebook" →p.83

Continued on next page

NOTE

- Phonebook entries stored using symbols or pictographs may not be displayed correctly when data are transferred by the infrared communication, etc.
- Enter the correct domain when storing e-mail addresses. The domain is the part of the address that follows the "@" symbol.
  However, if the contact's e-mail address is in the "[phone number]@docomo.ne.jp" format, store just the phone number as the e-mail address.
- Depending on the "2in1 setting", Phonebook 2in1 setting is set as follows. The setting of "Phonebook 2in1 setting" (A/B/AB) is displayed on the Phonebook list screen or Phonebook detail screen when 2in1 mode is in Dual mode. However, when attaching the phonebook to a mail or copying it to the UIM phonebook, Phonebook 2in1 setting is not to be sent.

mode	Phonebook 2in1 setting
Dual mode	A
A mode	A
B mode	B
OFF	A

You can change the Phonebook 2in1 setting in "2in1 setting".
"Using 2in1"→p.380



Phonebook list



Phonebook detail

<Chara-den settings priority sequence>

- The priority order for Chara-den settings is as follows:
  ①Chara-den set in the Ring tone/Image
  ②Chara-den set in the Ring tone/Image for group
  ③Chara-den stored in the phonebook entry
  ④Substitutive image in Select image

When phonebook editing is interrupted

1 MENU/MULTI/ch ▶"Phonebook"▶"Phonebook"▶(FUNC)▶"Add to phonebook"▶Select a phonebook▶"Recall"



You can resume editing the phonebook entry which is stopped being edited because of the emit of the low-voltage alarm or activation of a task of Tool groups using Multitask, etc.

When you are re-editing the entry, if you cancel editing without storing the changes, the data being edited is erased.

■ **To add a new phonebook entry**
▶"New"

Adding Phonebook Entries from the Redial, Dialed Calls and Other Records

You can add information to the phonebook from the "Received calls", "Dialed calls", "Redial", "Received address", "Sent address", "Text reader", Site screen or enter phone number screen, etc.

<Example: Adding information from the "Received calls" record to the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook>

1 Received calls screen (p.56)▶ch (FUNC)▶"Add to phonebook"

2 "Add to phonebook"

■ **To use the Redial/Dialed/Received calls record of PushTalk calls (group calls)**
▶Select a party (phone number) to add to the phonebook

■ **To add to the PushTalk phonebook**
▶"Add to PushTalk" or "Add to PushTalk Gr"
"Adding to the PushTalk phonebook from the Redial, Dialed calls and other records"→p.84

3 "Phone"

■ **To add to the FOMA terminal (Phone) + PushTalk phonebook**
▶"Phone + PushTalk"

■ **To add to the FOMA card (UIM)**
▶"UIM"

4 "Add"▶Search for the phonebook entry to add the information
Searching the phonebook Member list→p.92

■ **To add a new phonebook entry**
▶"New"

■ **To add information to the UIM**
▶"New" or "Overwrite"

5 Display the phonebook detail screen▶● (select)
Phone number is automatically entered and the phonebook editing screen appears.
Editing the phonebook→p.94

6 After completing the changes, press (Finish)

■ **If a message appears asking whether to overwrite existing data**

▶"YES"

NOTE

- Notify Caller ID setting ("ON" or "OFF") in the "Dialed calls" and "Redial" records is not stored in the phonebook.

Renaming Groups <Group setting>

You can assign your stored phonebook entries to groups according to the contact role ("Work", "Friends", etc.) or by hobby ("Baseball", "Football", etc.). This allows you to use the phonebook as if it were divided into different volumes according to purpose.

- The table below shows the groups that you can rename and the number of characters that can be stored.

Phonebook	Renamable groups	Max. No. of characters
FOMA terminal (Phone)	Groups 01 to 19	10 double-byte or 21 single-byte
FOMA card	Groups 01 to 10	10 double-byte or 21 single-byte

- "No Group" cannot be renamed.

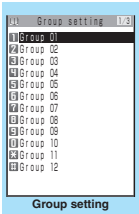
1 (MENU) ▶"Phonebook"▶"Phonebook"▶ (ch) (FUNC)▶"Group setting"

The "Group setting" screen appears.

2 Select a group▶Enter the new group name

The " " icon appears next to UIM groups.

If the same name is used for groups on the FOMA terminal (Phone) and UIM, they are displayed as separate groups.



Group setting

Function menu➡p.91

FUNC Group setting screen (p.91)

Edit group name……Edits the group name.

Ring tone/Image→p.95

Reset group name……The changed group name is reset to the default name assigned at the time of purchase.

NOTE

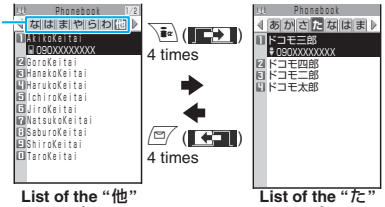
- Resetting the group name does not clear the "Ring tone/Image" for group setting.

Making a Call from the Phonebook <Search phonebook>

You can make a call by searching for the phonebook entry from the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook or the FOMA card (UIM) phonebook.

- When tabs appear on the phonebook list screen, you can switch the display as follows:

<Example: To switch tabs from "他 (Others)" to "Ta-column" in the Alphabet display>



List of the "他" tab

List of the "た" tab

NOTE

- You can use ⊙ to switch pages within the same tab.

Searching for the phonebook entry of the person you want to make a call

1 (MENU) ▶"Phonebook"▶"Phonebook"

The "Phonebook list" screen appears.



Phonebook list

Function menu➡p.93

■ **To make a voice call from the list screen**

▶Highlight the phonebook entry you want to call▶

If the phonebook entry contains multiple phone numbers, the call is made to the first phone number stored for that entry.

■ **To switch the tab type**

▶(ch) (FUNC)▶"Change Display"

Select the tab from "Alphabet/Memory No./Group".



Alphabet



Memory No.



Group

Continued on next page

2 Select the phonebook entry you want

The “Phonebook detail” screen appears.



Phonebook detail

Function menu➡p.93

3 or (V.phone)

Press to make a voice call and (V.phone) to make a videophone call to the currently displayed phone number.

■ **When the phonebook entry contains multiple phone numbers**

Use to display a different phone number.

NOTE

- Pressing during a call displays the group search screen and pressing displays the column search screen.

Searching for the phonebook entry by specifying the search method

You can search for a phonebook entry using any of 8 search criteria; reading, name, phone number, e-mail address, memory number, group or “column” in Japanese phonetics (あ, か, さ, た, な, etc.) or all.

■ **Viewing the search results**

Except for memory number search, search results are displayed in the sequence shown below based on the reading entered when the entry was stored.

Japanese syllabled (reading beginning with space, ア, ァ, イ, ィ, ……ン)
↓
Alphabets (A, a, B, b, ……Z, z)
↓
Numbers (0 to 9)
↓
Symbols
↓
Entries without reading

1 On the standby screen▶▶Select the search method

■ **To display your preferred search method first**

▶Highlight the search method that you want to display first▶ (Prefer)▶“OK”

A star “★” appears next to the preferred search method.

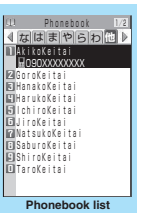
The next time you search the phonebook, pressing on the standby screen will display the phonebook search screen with your preferred method displayed first.

■ **To cancel your preferred search method setting**

▶On the standby screen▶▶CLR▶Highlight the search method with the star “★”▶ (Reset)

2 Search the phonebook

When the search ends, the “Phonebook list” screen that meets the searching conditions appears. “ ” is displayed for the UIM phonebook entries on the search result list screen.



Phonebook list

Function menu➡p.93

■ **Search reading**

▶Enter a part of the reading▶ or

Enter the reading of the person’s family name followed by the first name. You do not need to enter the entire name.

■ **Search name**

▶Enter a part of the name▶ or

Enter the person’s family name followed by the first name. You do not need to enter the entire name.

■ **Search phone No.**

▶Enter a part of the phone number▶ or

Enter some digits numbers of the phone number. You can also search the phone number by entering a part of the phone number and press on the “Enter phone number” screen (p.50).

■ **Search e-mail**

▶Enter a part of the e-mail address▶ or

■ **Search memory No.**

▶Enter the 3-digit memory number

You cannot search the UIM phonebook by memory number.

■ **Search group**

▶Select the desired group

Note that the phonebook uses different groups from the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook.

■ **Search column**

▶Press the key for the “column” (tab) you want to search

1: “あ” column tab
2: “か” column tab
3: “さ” column tab
4: “た” column tab
5: “な” column tab
6: “は” column tab
7: “ま” column tab
8: “や” column tab

9: “ら” column tab
0: “わ” column tab
*: “他” column tab

■ **Search all**
All the stored phonebook entries are displayed in alphabetical order.

Accessing the phonebook from the Redial or Dialed Calls record

You can make a call or send a mail by accessing the stored phonebook detail screen from the “Received calls”, “Dialed calls”, “Redial”, “Received address” or “Sent address” screen.

<Example: To quote phonebook from the “Received calls” record of a voice call>

1 Received calls screen (p.56)▶ ch (FUNC)▶“Look-up phonebook”
The “Phonebook detail” screen appears.

FUNC Phonebook list screen (p.91)

Add to phonebook→p.89

Connect to Center……Stores the phonebook data at the DoCoMo Data Security Center.→p.98

Sort*1……Sorts the phonebook list in a selected criteria.

Change Display……Changes the tab display. Select the tab from “Alphabet/Memory No./Group”.

Ring tone/Image→p.96

Restrictions→p.140

Group setting→p.91

Copy to microSD*2→p.298
- When “Copy all” is selected, you can select whether to copy the My Profile data in addition to the phonebook data.
- When selecting “Copy all” or “Copy selected”, information on the PushTalk phonebook is also copied.

iC transmission*3→p.309

iC trans. all→p.310

Send Ir data*3→p.307

Send all Ir data→p.308

No. of phonebook→p.95

Attach to mail*3……Displays a new mail screen with the phonebook data attached.

Big font⇔Standard font……Switches the displayed font size between “Big font/Standard font”.

Birthday reminder*4……Display a list of phonebook entries with birthday “Reminder” set.

microSD phonebook⇔Original phonebook……Refers to the phonebook in the microSD memory card or the FOMA terminal (Phone).

Delete data……Selects the deleting method from “Delete this/Delete selected/Delete all”.
“About multiple-choice”→p.38
- Delete all deletes the phonebook on the FOMA card (UIM).
- When the phonebook entries are stored on the PushTalk phonebook or the Choku-Den, the entries deleted from the member list and group member list of the PushTalk phonebook or the Choku-Den.

*1 : Unavailable during tab display.
*2 : Only “Copy all” is available for the UIM phonebook.
*3 : Unavailable for the UIM phonebook.
*4 : Unavailable when “Reminder” is not set.

FUNC Phonebook detail screen (p.92)

Edit phonebook→p.94

Notify Caller ID→p.61

Chaku-moji→p.58

Dial setting

Prefix numbers→p.62

Int’l call→p.55

2in1/Multi Num.*1→pp.379, 378

Select image……Selects the image used during a videophone call from “My side/Chara-den”.
Select “Release settings” to cancel the setting.

Ring tone/Image*2→p.95

Restrictions*2→p.139

Move to top*2……Moves the displayed phone number/mail address to the top when multiple phone numbers/mail addresses are stored in one phonebook entry.

Add to PushTalk*2*3→p.83

Add to Choku-Den*2→p.97

Add desktop icon→p.115

Compose message*3→p.188

Attach to mail*2*3……Displays a new mail screen with the phonebook data attached.

Compose SMS*3→p.224

iC transmission*2→p.309

iC trans. all→p.310

Send Ir data*2→p.307

Send all Ir data→p.308

Copy to microSD*2→p.298

Continued on next page

Copy

Name……Copies the name. The copied name can be pasted into input and other screens. "Pasting text"→p.367

Phone number[*4]……Copies the phone number. The copied phone number can be pasted into input and other screens. "Pasting text"→p.367

Secret code[*2]→p.94

Set code……Sets the secret code (4 digits).

Check code……Confirms the set secret code.

Release settings……Cancels the set secret code.

Set secret[*2*5]→p.127

Copy to UIM[*6]→p.304

Run i-αppli[*2]……Displays the list of GPS-compatible i-αppli.

Read a map[*2]……Connects to the i-mode site and displays the map around the location from the location information.

Paste to mail[*2*3]……Displays a new mail screen with a location information URL stored in the phonebook pasted.

Big font⇔Standard font……Switches the displayed font size between "Big font/Standard font".

Delete data→p.95

*1 : "2in1" is available only when 2in1 mode is in Dual mode.
*2 : Unavailable for the UIM phonebook.
*3 : When 2in1 is in B mode, this function is not available.
*4 : Depending on the selected item, one of "Mail address/Address/Location information/Birthday/Memorandums" appears.
*5 : "Release secret" when referring to the phonebook of the secret data.
*6 : "Copy from UIM" when referring to the UIM phonebook.

NOTE

<Add to PushTalk>
- When stored to the PushTalk phonebook, "P" appears on the phonebook detail screen, and "★" appears on the function menu.

<Add to Choku-Den>
- When stored to Choku-Den, "★" appears on the function menu.

Secret code

When the mail address of the other party is "[phone number]@docomo.ne.jp" and he/she sets a secret code, you have to specify "[phone number + secret code]@docomo.ne.jp" as the e-mail address.
There are 2 ways to send an e-mail to such a destination.

① Set a secret code for the phonebook entry from the phonebook detail screen function menu (when referring to the mail address, the secret code is automatically added to the mail address in the phonebook).
② Store the mail address with a secret code in the phonebook.

NOTE
- Secret code settings are valid only to mail addresses in "[phone number]@docomo.ne.jp" or "phone number" format.
- You cannot set secret codes for the UIM phonebook.

Editing the Phonebook

<Edit phonebook>

① Phonebook detail screen (p.92)▶ch (FUNC)▶"Edit phonebook"▶Edit the respective items

Edit the required items using the procedure used in "Add to phonebook".
Adding information to the phonebook→p.89

■ To store in a new memory number

▶Select "No"▶Enter a memory number (000 to 999) that has not already been stored.
The original phonebook entry is left in its pre-edited state and the edited entry is stored as a new phonebook entry with a different memory number.

② After editing, press (Finish)▶"YES"

■ To add information to the UIM

▶(Finish)▶"Overwrite" or "Add"
Selecting "Overwrite" stores the edited information.
Selecting "Add" leaves the original phonebook entry unchanged and stores the edited entry as a new phonebook entry.

NOTE
- When the edited entry is stored to the PushTalk phonebook or Choku-Den, the PushTalk phonebook or Choku-Den is also changed.

NOTE

- When changing the memory number, if the original entry is stored to the PushTalk member list or group list, or stored to Choku-Den that settings are not applied to the changed entry.

Deleting a Phonebook Entry

<Delete data>

1 Phonebook detail screen (p.92)▶ ch (FUNC)▶"Delete data"▶Select any item:

Delete phone No.* ·····Deletes the selected phone number (e-mail address, address, location information, birthday, memorandums, image or "Chara-den" character).

Delete this ·····Deletes the phonebook entry.

*: Depending on the selected item, one of "Delete mail add./Delete address/Delete loc. info/Delete birthday/Delete memorandums/Delete image/Delete Chara-den" appears.

NOTE

- If you delete a phone number or mail address in the phonebook entry in which multiple phone numbers or mail addresses are stored, the order of the subsequent phone numbers or mail addresses moves up.

Checking the Phonebook Storage Status

<No. of phonebook>

1 Phonebook list screen (p.91)▶ ch (FUNC)▶"No. of phonebook"

■ Phone (the phonebook stored on the FOMA terminal)

Phonebook : Displays the number of entries stored in the phonebook.
Number of stored data/1,000 (storage limit)

Secret : Displays the number of entries stored as secret data. This can only be displayed in "Secret mode" or "Secret data only mode".

Image : Displays the number of images stored in the phonebook.
Number of stored data/100 (storage limit)

Chara-den : Displays the number of "Chara-den" characters stored in the phonebook.
Number of stored data/100 (storage limit)

Birthday remind : The number of birthday "Reminder" entries in the phonebook
Number of entries/100 (max.)

■ UIM (the phonebook stored on the FOMA card (UIM))

Phonebook : Displays the number of entries stored in the phonebook.
Number of stored data/50 (storage limit)

Setting Different FOMA Terminal Actions for Each Phone Number and Mail Address

<Ring tone/Image>

You can set different ring tones or answer messages for the Record message depending on groups, phone numbers or e-mail address in the phonebook. This function is useful when you want to distinguish the caller only by the ring tone.

- You cannot set this setting for "No Group" on the FOMA terminal (Phone) or the phonebook or groups on the FOMA card (UIM).
- You cannot set this setting for the phonebook stored as the secret data.
- Ring tone/Image is disabled when the caller does not notify the phone number (caller ID). It is recommended to set the "Caller ID Request" service.

1 Phonebook detail screen (p.92)▶ ch (FUNC)▶"Ring tone/Image"

The "Ring tone/Image setting" screen appears. "★" appears next to the selected function.
The available functions vary depending on the item selected in the phonebook detail screen.



Ring tone/Image

■ To set this function for each group

▶"Group setting" screen (p.91)▶ ch (FUNC)▶"Ring tone/Image"

2 Select the item to distinguish

Select the item from "Voice call (recv.)/V.phone (dial/recv.)/Mail (recv.)".

- When "Mail (recv.)" is selected, this function is applied not only i-mode mail but SMS.

3 Select any item:

"★" appears next to the selected function.

■ To deselect a selected function

▶Highlight the function with "★"▶ (Reset)
The function is deselected and the star "★" disappears.

Continued on next page

Ring tone[*1]……Sets ring tones to distinguish the caller of the phone or sender of mail.
"Changing the Ring Tone"→p.100

Image[*1*2]……Sets images to distinguish the caller of the phone.
"Changing the Display"→p.107

Chara-den setup[*3]……Selects Chara-den to be displayed as the substitute image for videophone calls.

Illumination[*1]……Sets the incoming call lamp flashing patterns to distinguish the caller of the phone or sender of mail.
"Setting the Flashing Mode of the Incoming Call Lamp for Incoming Calls"→p.113

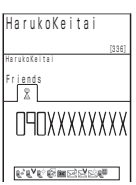
Vibrator[*1]……Sets vibration patterns to distinguish the caller of the phone or sender of mail.
"Setting the Vibration to Notify You of Incoming Calls"→p.102

Answer message[*2]……Changes the answer message used when record message[*4] or quick message starts up depending on the caller. "Having the Caller Leave a Message"→p.70

*1 : You can also distinguish the incoming 64K data communication.
*2 : Available only when "Voice call (recv.)" or "V.phone (dial/recv.)" is selected.
*3 : Available only when "V.phone (dial/recv.)" is selected.
*4 : You need to set "Record message" to "ON" beforehand.

■When you set Ring tone/Image

An icon appears in the phonebook detail screen indicating that each item is set.



: Ring tone (voice/videophone call)
: Ring tone (mail)
: Illumination (voice/videophone call)
: Illumination (mail)
: Vibration (voice/videophone call)
: Vibration (mail)
: Image (voice/videophone call)
: Answer message (voice/videophone call)
: Chara-den (videophone call)

NOTE

- The FOMA terminal uses the "Mail (recv.)" set for a phone number when you receive an SMS or when the sender's e-mail address is "[phone-number]@docomo.ne.jp".

NOTE

- These functions can also be set for groups that contain phonebook entries stored as secret data. However, group utility settings are disabled for mail or calls received from contacts stored as secret data.
- Refer to the following pages for the priority when the Ring tone/Image settings and other settings for incoming calls, etc. are duplicated.
  - Ring tone priority→p.101
  - Vibrator priority→p.102
  - Image priority→p.108
  - Incoming call lamp priority→p.114

Checking the Ring tone/Image settings

You can check the phonebook entries or groups set in Ring tone/Image by function or item.

1 Phonebook list screen (p.91)▶ ch (FUNC)▶"Ring tone/Image"

The "Ring tone/Image" screen appears.
"★" appears next to the items to which this function is set.

2 Select the function or item with "★"▶Highlight the function or item with "★"▶ ch (FUNC)▶Select any item:

Check settings……Checks the settings.
▶Highlight the function or item with "★"*▶Check the phonebook or group which is set

Release settings……Releases all the settings of the functions marked with "★".

*: The number of the selected items (the number of times ● is pressed) varies depending on the function or setting specified.

Using Choku-Den <Choku-Den>

By storing frequently used phonebook to Choku-Den, you can make a call or send a mail quickly.

- You can store up to 5 Choku-Den by quoting the stored data (such as phone number) from the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook.
- When mail addresses are stored to Choku-Den, you can compose i-mode mail or chat mail to all the members easily.
- You cannot use this function in Secret data only mode.
- You can use this function in Secret mode, but you cannot add the phonebook stored as secret data to Choku-Den.

Adding to Choku-Den

1 MENU/HOLD ▶**“Own Data”▶“Choku-Den”**

The “Choku-Den” screen appears.

Alternatively, press ⊙ on the standby screen to display the screen.

If data are stored, the smallest tab No. appears.



Choku-Den

Function menu➡p.97

■ **To change the saved folder**

▶Move the tab using the ⊙

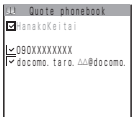
Alternatively, use 1 to 5.

2 ✉ **(Store)▶Search the phonebook**

How to search phonebook →p.92

3 ● **(Select)**

The “Quote phonebook” screen appears.



Quote phonebook

4 **Use ⊙ to select a checkbox (☐)**

When multiple phone numbers or mail addresses are stored, select only number/mail address to store.

When a checkbox (☐) is selected, other phone numbers or mail addresses are displayed in gray and the checkbox can not be selected. To select another checkbox, release the selected checkbox first.

5 **Press ✉ (Finish)**

The name, selected phone number and mail address in the phonebook are added to Choku-Den.

NOTE

- The setting of “Phonebook 2in1 setting” is displayed on the Choku-Den screen when 2in1 mode is in Dual mode.
- An image stored in the phonebook entry is also added to the Choku-Den entry.

Making a call/composing a mail from Choku-Den

<Example: To make a call>

1 **On the standby screen▶⊙**

The “Choku-Den” screen (p.97) appears.



2 **Display the Choku-Den screen to make a call with ⊙**

Alternatively, press 1 to 5 to open the corresponding tab.

3 **Highlight “CALL” with ⊙▶● (Select)**

■ **To compose a mail**

▶Highlight “MAIL” with ⊙▶● (Select)

The new mail screen with the mail address entered to the address appears. “Composing and Sending i-mode Mail”→p.188

■ **To make a videophone call**

▶Use ⊙ to highlight “VIDEO PHONE”▶● (Select)

FUNC Choku-Den screen (p.97)

Store⇔Edit……Store Choku-Den entry, or edit an existing entry.→p.97

Image……Changing the image displayed in Choku-Den by selecting an image from “My picture”.

Broadcast mail*……Displays the new mail screen with all mail addresses stored to Choku-Den are entered to the address.“Composing and Sending i-mode Mail”→p.188

Broadcast chat*……Displays the chat screen with all mail addresses stored to Choku-Den are entered to the chat members.

“Sending and Receiving Chat Mail”→p.219

Release this/Release all……Release one or all Choku-Den.

*: When 2in1 is in B mode, this function is not available.

NOTE

- Even when you release Choku-Den, the phonebook entry of the FOMA terminal (Phone) is not deleted.

Using Dialing Shortcuts

<Two-touch dialing>

By assigning memory numbers “000” to “009” to phone numbers in the phonebook, you can call those phone numbers only by pressing one of 0 to 9 (last digit of the memory number) and .

1 0 to 9 ▶ (voice call)/ (V.phone) (videophone call)/ (PushTalk)

This operation is available only for “one-to-one call”.

NOTE

- If the phonebook entry contains multiple phone numbers, the call is made to the first phone number stored for that entry.

Storing the Phonebook at the Data Security Center

<Data security serv.>

You can store the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook at the DoCoMo Data Security Center. The stored phonebook can be restored to the FOMA terminal or updated by connecting to the Data Security Center.

- Data security service is a pay service you need to apply for. If you have not subscribed to the service and try to connect to the Data Security Center, the notification screen appears.
- You cannot use the Data security service when “ ” appears.
- For details on how to use the Data security service, refer to “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode] FOMA version”.

1 MENU/VAULT ▶“LifeKit”▶“Data security serv.”▶“Connect to Center”

■ **To set about sending images in the phonebook**

▶“Sndg img in Phonebook”▶“ON” (default: “OFF”)

The images stored in the phonebook are also stored at the Data Security Center.

2 Enter your security code▶“YES”

The FOMA terminal connects to the Data Security Center to start saving the phonebook.

3 (Finish)

NOTE

- You cannot store the phonebook stored in the FOMA card (UIM) at the Data Security Center.

NOTE

- Note that a phonebook entry with a image which exceeds 100K bytes cannot be stored or updated.

Restoring/updating the phonebook

The phonebook data stored at the Data Security Center can be stored on the FOMA terminal from the site of the Data Security Center.

You can also edit the phonebook data stored at the Data Security Center from a PC, etc.

For details on how to use, refer to “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode] FOMA version”.

NOTE

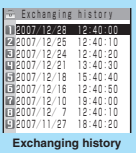
- Automatic update is not performed when another function is activated while updating the phonebook.
- When the phonebook is not updated, it is notified with “ ” desktop icon.
- When you restore the phonebook data stored at the Data Security Center to the FOMA terminal, icons stored with phone number or mail address may be replaced with “ ” or “ ”.

Checking the communication log with the Data Security Center

- You can check up to 30 communication logs. When the log exceeds the maximum, logs are overwritten from the oldest one.
- On the communication log detail screen, the transmission results, dates, transmission details, data sizes, sending results to the Data Security Center, reception results of the mobile phone and number of data files left in the Data Security Center appear.

1 MENU/VAULT ▶“LifeKit”▶“Data security serv.”▶“Exchanging history”

The “Exchanging history” screen appears.



Exchanging history

Function menu➡p.98

2 Select the communication log item

FUNC Exchanging history screen (p.98)

Delete this/Delete selected/Delete all……Select the deleting method. “About multiple-choice”→p.38

Sound/Screen/Light Settings

Sound Settings

Changing the Ring Tone ... Select ring tone 100
Setting Sound Effect for Ring Tones and Melodies ... Sound effect 102
Setting the Vibration to Notify You of Incoming Calls ... Vibrator 102
Changing the Ring Tone ... Melody Call setting 103
Setting the Keypad Tone ... Keypad sound 103
Setting the Notification Tone and Illumination for GPS Function ... 103
Setting the Confirmation Tone for Charging ... Charge sound 104
Setting the Clock Alarm Tone ... Clock Alarm Tone set 104
Setting the FOMA Terminal to Warn You before a Call Drops Out ... Quality alarm 104
Setting the Ring Time for Incoming Mail ... Mail/Msg. ring time 104
Enabling the Tone to Ring through the Headset and Speaker ... Headset usage setting 104
Switching Off the FOMA Terminal's Tone ... Manner mode 105
Modifying Manner Mode ... Manner mode set 105

Screen/Light Settings

Changing the Display ... Display setting 107
Displaying Phonebook Images When You Receive Calls ... Disp. phonebook image 109
Setting the Color for Incoming Call Display ... Disp. call/receive No. 109
Preventing Others from Peeping the Screen ... Privacy angle 109
Setting the Display and Keypad Lighting ... Backlight 109
Changing the Display Design ... Display design 110
Changing the Menu Display ... 110
Setting the Display Mode of the Indicator Display ... Indicator display 112
Setting Illumination Flash for Closing/Birthday/Anniversary ... Illumination 113
Setting the Flashing Mode of the Incoming Call Lamp for Incoming Calls ... Illumination 113
Setting the Flashing Mode of the Incoming Call Lamp during Calls ... Illumination in talk 114
Setting the Illumination/Vibrator for IC Card Function ... IC card notice set 114
Changing the Font ... Font 114
Setting the Clock Display ... Clock display 115
Using Desktop Icons ... Desktop icon 115
Displaying Desktop Icon Messages for New Mail in 3D Animation ... 3D display setting 119
Selecting the Icons to Display on the Standby Screen ... Icons setting 119
Setting the Kisekae Tool ... Kisekae Tool setting 120

Changing the Ring Tone

<Select ring tone>

You can set different ring tones to notify you when you receive a voice/videophone or PushTalk call, mail, chat mail or MessageR/F. You can also set the ring tone for specified phone number, mail address or group of phonebook respectively. →p.95

● Guide to the melody list →p.288

1 MENU ▶"Settings"▶"Incoming call"▶"Select ring tone"▶Select the item to which you want to set the ring tone

When "Phone" is selected, the ring tone for voice calls and 64K data communication is set.
When "Mail" is selected, the ring tone for i-mode mails, SMS and packet communication is set.

2 "Select ring tone"▶Select any item:

Melody·····Select "Pre-installed" to select the pre-installed ring tone or melody. Select "Inbox" or the folder you created to select the melody downloaded from i-mode sites, etc.

i-motion·····Select "Pre-installed" to select the pre-installed Chaku-motion. Select "Inbox", "Camera", "Movable contents" or the folder you created to select an i-motion/Chaku-Uta® downloaded to the FOMA terminal or a movie (i-motion) shot using the camera.
When you receive a call, the video or sound for the selected i-motion is played (Chaku-motion).

Music·····Select "Pre-installed" to select the pre-installed Chaku-Uta-Full®. Select "Inbox", "Movable contents" or the folder you created to select the Chaku-Uta-Full® downloaded to the FOMA terminal. Set any item from the following when the Chaku-Uta-Full® contains the portion where the ring tone is specified by the provider:

Fullsong ring tone·····Sets the whole song as the ring tone.

Point ring tone·····Sets a part of the song as the ring tone.

■When you select a folder other than "Movable contents"
▶Use ⊙ to specify the portion (displayed in orange) to set as the ring tone▶● (Set)

■When you select "Movable contents"
▶Use ⊙ to specify the portion (displayed in orange) to set as the ring tone▶● (Set)▶"YES"▶Select the folder

Voice announce·····Selects the message recorded using "Voice announce".
"Recording and Playing Alarm Tones and On Hold Tones"
→p.350

Random melody·····Selects a folder containing stored melodies. When you receive a call or message, one of the melodies stored in the folder played at random.

OFF·····The FOMA terminal plays no ring tone.

3 Select ring tone

When you select a melody, the FOMA terminal plays the melody.
Press 📞, #, ✉, or 📖 to stop the melody playback.

■Pre-installed ring tones, melodies and alarms

Display	3D sound compatible
Melody 1	×
Melody 2	×
Melody 3	×
Melody 4	×
Melody 5	○
Melody 6	×
Melody 7	○
Alarm 1	×
Alarm 2	×
Alarm 3	×
Alarm 4	×
Alarm 5	×
Alarm 6	×
Alarm 7	×
Alarm 8	×
Alarm 9	×
Alarm 10	×
Alarm 11	×

■**Pre-installed Chaku-motion**
Kaleidoscope

■**Pre-installed Chaku-Uta-Full®**
Cosmic Globe

NOTE

- You cannot set an i-motion with only a video as the ring tone.
- Only an i-motion with only a voice (i-motion with no video such as a singer's voice) can be set as a ring tone for PushTalk.
- Some cannot be set for i-motion or Chaku-Uta-Full®.
- Even if the movie/i-motion can be set as Chaku-motion or image displayed for incoming calls, you cannot set these movie/i-motion in the following cases:
  - When the movie/i-motion is transferred to a PC or other FOMA terminal through infrared data exchange function, iC exchange function or "DoCoMo keitai datalink" (p.389), then returned to the FOMA terminal
  - When the movie/i-motion is copied from a microSD memory card to the FOMA terminal (including the case that the movie/i-motion is copied from the FOMA terminal to a microSD memory card, then copied to the FOMA terminal)
- When you select the i-motion in the Movable contents folder, the selected i-motion is moved to the Inbox folder of "i-motion".
- When you select the Chaku-Uta-Full® in the Movable contents folder and "Fullsong ring tone" is set, the selected Chaku-Uta-Full® is moved to the Inbox folder of "Music". When "Point ring tone" is set, the selected portion is clipped as an i-motion and stored in the folder of "i-motion".
- When you set Chaku-Uta-Full® stored on the FOMA terminal as a ring tone with "Point ring tone", it is not clipped as an i-motion and the selected portion is set to the ring tone.
- The ring tone is played at the volume set in "Ring volume" while selecting the ring tone. If "Ring volume" is set to "Silent", there is no sound.
- If you set an i-motion that includes both video and sound as the ring tone and receiving display, the FOMA terminal plays the i-motion set as the ring tone.
- If you set something other than an i-motion that includes both video and sound as the ring tone and then set an i-motion that includes both video and sound as the receiving display, the FOMA terminal plays the i-motion set as the receiving display.
- When the i-motion is set to the ring tone of mail, the default ring tone of "Mail" is used for the ring tone of packet communication. The special screen appears when packet communication is received regardless of the incoming screen settings.

NOTE

- When you set Chaku-Uta-Full® which contains the jacket image as the ring tone, the jacket image is not displayed when you receive a call.
- When multiple mails or MessageR/F are received at the same time, the operation of the ring tone becomes as follows:

Received contents	Operation of the ring tone
Multiple mails are received	The ring tone set for the last received mail is used. If a chat mail is contained, the ring tone set for the chat mail is used.
MessageR/F are received at the same time	The ring tone set for MessageR is used.
Mail and MessageR/F are received at the same time	The ring tone set for the last received mail is used. If a chat mail is contained, the ring tone set for the chat mail is used.

<Ring tone priority for incoming calls>

- When the ring tone settings for incoming calls are duplicated, the priority is assigned as follows:
  ① Ring tones for Multi Number (Additional Number1, 2)
  ② Separate ring tones/images, videophone ring tone
  ③ Group ring tones/images, videophone ring tone
  ④ Ring tone to B mode for 2in1 setting
  ⑤ Ring tone for Select ring tone/Kisekae Tool setting

*: The priority is assigned as follows between ② above (ring tone/image) and ③ group ring tone/image) .
① i-motion for voice/VP ring tone
② i-motion for receive display setting
③ i-motion for voice/videophone ring tone (i-motion with no video, such as a singer's voice), melody or Chaku-Uta-Full®

<Ring tone priority for mails (including SMS)>

- When the ring tone settings for mails are duplicated, the priority is assigned as follows:
  ① Mail ring tone for ring tones/images
  ② Mail ring tone for group ring tones/images
  ③ Ring tone for Select ring tone/Kisekae Tool setting

Setting Sound Effect for Ring Tones and Melodies <Sound effect>

Use this function to get richer fuller sound when the FOMA terminal plays melodies, ring tones for voice, videophone and PushTalk calls, sound effects and i-motion sound with the stereo earphone set (optional) connected.

1 MENU ▶"Settings"▶"Incoming call"▶"Sound effect"▶"Stereo&3D sound"▶"ON"

■ Not to set the sound effect

▶"OFF"

● What is 3D sound?

The 3D sound function uses the stereo earphones set to produce 3-dimensional and resonating sound. This function allows you to enjoy i-αppli games and melody playback with richer and more realistic sound.

- The 3D effect differs depending on the individual. If the 3D sound bothers you, set "Sound effect" to "OFF".

● When playing an i-motion with sound effects

When you play an i-motion with sound effects, stereo sound played through earphones is enhanced by effects that provide a natural-sounding 3D sound field and rich low tones as well as clearly defined voice and music audio.

- i-motion programs with sound effects can be identified by the icon shown on the movie list screen.→p.275

NOTE

- Sound effect does not work for sounds coming through in-built speaker even if this function is set to "ON".
- Sound effect is disabled for ring tone/melody alarm tone with the stereo earphone set (optional) connected when "Headset usage setting" is set to "Headset+speaker", and enable when set to "Headset only".

Setting the Vibration to Notify You of Incoming Calls <Vibrator>

You can set different vibration patterns to notify you when you receive a voice call, videophone call, PushTalk, mail, Chat Mail or MessageR/F.

1 MENU ▶"Settings"▶"Incoming call"▶"Vibrator"▶Select the item to which you want to set the vibrator

Select "Phone" to set the vibration for voice calls and 64K data communication.

Select "Mail" to set the vibration for i-mode mail, area mail, SMS and packet communication.

2 Select the vibration pattern:

Pattern 1 to Pattern 3……Vibrates in each pattern. When you switch the highlighted item while selecting an item, the FOMA terminal vibrates in the highlighted pattern.

Melody linkage……The FOMA terminal vibrates in a pattern matched to the melody set as the ring tone.

OFF……The FOMA terminal does not vibrate.

■Icons on the standby display while setting the vibration pattern

: The vibration starts when receiving either voice, videophone or PushTalk calls.

: The vibration starts when receiving either mail/chat mail/MessageR/F.

: Both "" and "" are set.

NOTE

- When the vibration is set, take care that the vibration does not move the FOMA terminal towards fire (e.g. on a space heater) or cause it to fall off a table, etc.
- Even when "Melody linkage" is selected, the FOMA terminal not always vibrates to the melody. When no vibration pattern is set for the melody or when an i-motion or Chaku-Uta-Full® is set as the ring tone, the FOMA terminal vibrates in pattern 2.
- When receiving Area Mail, Vibrator links to the beep sound regardless of this setting.

<Vibrator priority>

- When the vibrator settings are duplicated, the priority is assigned as follows:
  ① Setting vibration for ring tone/image
  ② Setting vibration for group ring tone/image
  ③ Vibrator setting

Changing the Ring Tone

<Melody Call setting>

You can change the melody heard as a ring tone by the other party who calls you.

1 MENU/MULTI ▶“Settings”▶“Incoming call”▶“Melody Call setting”▶“YES”

Connect to the i-mode site for melody call. Connecting to the i-mode site incurs packet communication charges. However, there is no packet communication charge for the setting site.

Follow the instructions on the screen to make settings.

■ **To avoid melody call setting**

▶“NO”

NOTE

- If the other party called you by videophone or PushTalk, they will not hear the melody.

Setting the Keypad Tone

<Keypad sound>

- Setting this function to “OFF” also disables the following tones:
  - All warning tones
  - Low battery indicator tone
  - The tone for beginning volume adjustment
  - The alarm snooze cancellation tone
- The keypad sound is played at the level set in “Volume” during a call, and fixed at the same level while not talking on the phone.

1 MENU/MULTI ▶“Settings”▶“Other settings”▶“Keypad sound”▶“ON”

■ **To disable the sound**

▶“OFF”

Setting the Notification Tone and Illumination for GPS Function

Set the notification tone and illumination for Position location, Location notification and request.

- If “Permit to send loc.” under “Request menu” is set to “ON” and the Public mode (Driving mode) is set, the location information is sent without operations of notification tone, vibrator and illumination.

Setting the notification tone/vibrator

1 MENU/MULTI ▶“LifeKit”▶“GPS”▶“GPS settings”▶“Tone/Vibrator”

2 **Select any item:**

Ring volume……Select the item to adjust the volume, then use ◯ to adjust the volume.

Select ring tone……Select the item to set the notification tone, then select from “Melody/OFF (no notification tone)”.

Vibrator……Select the item to set the vibrator, then select from “Pattern 1 to 3/Melody linkage/OFF (no vibration)”. When “Melody linkage” is selected, the FOMA terminal vibrates to the pattern of the melody set as the notification tone.

Ring time……Select the item to set the ring time, then select from “ON/OFF (no notification)”. When “ON” is selected, enter the ring time (from 01 to 30 seconds in 2 digits)*.

*: For location request/confirm every time, input a 2-digit number in the range 01-20.

Setting the illumination

1 MENU/MULTI ▶“LifeKit”▶“GPS”▶“GPS settings”▶“Illumination”

2 **Select an item to set▶Select any item:**

Color 1 to 7……The lamp flashes in the selected color.

Gradation……The lamp lights in the order from Color 1 to 7.

OFF……The lamp does not flash. “OFF” cannot be set when “Loc. request/permit” or “Loc. request/confirm” is selected.

Setting the Confirmation Tone for Charging <Charge sound>

This function sets to emit a short double-beep (“bibip”) when charging starts and ends.

- The confirmation tone does not sound regardless of the setting specified in this function when:
  - When a screen other than the stand-by screen is displayed
  - Dialing
  - While receiving a call
  - Voice/Videophone/PushTalk call in progress
  - With Manner mode set
  - With Public mode (Driving mode) set
  - During data communication
  - With the FOMA terminal turned off

1 MENU ▶**“Settings”▶“Other settings”▶“Charge sound”▶“ON”**

■ **To disable the sound**
▶“OFF”

Setting the Clock Alarm Tone <Clock Alarm Tone set>

You can change the clock alarm tone for the alarm, schedule and To Do list.

1 MENU ▶**“Settings”▶“Clock”▶“Clock Alarm Tone set”▶Select any item:**
Select the alarm tone from “Melody/i-motion/Music/Voice announce”.

■ **To disable alarm tone**
▶“OFF”

Setting the FOMA Terminal to Warn You before a Call Drops Out <Quality alarm>

The FOMA terminal emits an alarm tone to warn you that the signal quality is deteriorating and the call is likely to drop out.

- The call may drop out without a warning tone if the signal quality worsens very quickly.

1 MENU ▶**“Settings”▶“Talk”▶“Quality alarm”▶Select an alarm tone**
Select the alarm tone from “High tone/Low tone”.

■ **To disable alarm tone**
▶“No tone”

Setting the Ring Time for Incoming Mail <Mail/Msg. ring time>

You can set a ring time when you receive mail, chat mail or a MessageR/F.

1 MENU ▶**“Settings”▶“Incoming call”▶“Mail/Msg. ring time”▶Select the item to which you want to set the ring time**
Select “Mail” to set the ring time for i-mode mail, area mail and SMS.

2 **“ON”▶Enter the ring time (01 to 30 seconds in 2 digits)**

■ **To turn off the ring tone**
▶“OFF”
If the vibrator is set to operate, it will not vibrate.

Enabling the Tone to Ring through the Headset and Speaker <Headset usage setting>

You can set the FOMA terminal to play the ring tone or alarm notification through the earphones and speaker when a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected.

1 MENU ▶**“Settings”▶“External connection”▶“Headset usage setting”▶“Headset+speaker” or “Headset only”**

NOTE

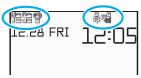
- Sound effect is disabled for ring tone/melody alarm tone with the stereo earphone set (optional) connected when this function is set to “Headset+speaker”, and enable when set to “Headset only”.
- If “Ring volume” is set to “Silent”, there is no ring tone from the earphone or from the speaker.
- In Manner mode, the ring tone will sound as specified by this function, except when “Phone vol.” and “Mail vol.” are set to “Silent”. However, in Manner mode (Manner mode, Super silent), the ring tone only sounds from the earphone.

Switching Off the FOMA Terminal's Tone <Manner mode>

You can set the FOMA terminal not to play the ring tones or keypad tones through the speaker with a single key operation.

- "When you set Manner mode"→p.106
- In "Manner mode set", you can select "Manner mode/Super silent/Original" as the FOMA terminal operation mode when Manner mode is set.

1 On the standby screen▶# (1 second or longer) or ▲(マナー) (1 second or longer)



During conversation, Manner mode can also be set by pressing # for one second or longer.
The FOMA terminal is set to Manner mode, " " appears, and the information specified in "Manner mode set" is displayed.

: The FOMA terminal notifies you using "Vibrator"

, , : "Ring volume" is set to "Silent"

to , to : "Record message" and "Record VP message" are set to record messages (The number indicates the number of recorded messages)

During a call, the FOMA terminal emits a short double-beep ("bibip") and a message appears notifying you that Manner mode is set.

■ To cancel Manner mode

▶On the standby screen▶# (1 second or longer) or ▲(マナー) (1 second or longer)
During conversation, Manner mode can also be released by pressing # for one second or longer.
Manner mode is canceled and " " disappears.
During a call, the FOMA terminal emits a short double-beep ("bibip") and a message appears notifying you that Manner mode is canceled.

NOTE

- Even when set to Manner mode, the FOMA terminal still plays the shutter sound and auto focus sound of the camera.

NOTE

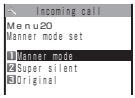
- When the vibrator is set, take care that the vibration does not move the FOMA terminal towards fire (e.g. on a space heater) or cause it to fall off a table, etc.

Modifying Manner Mode <Manner mode set>

You can select the FOMA terminal operations used in Manner mode.

1 MENU▶"Settings"▶"Incoming call"▶"Manner mode set"

The "Manner mode set" screen appears.



Manner mode set

2 Select any item:

Manner mode……Mutes all tones played through the speaker and uses vibration to notify you of incoming calls, etc. However, confirmation tones played through earpiece (the tone played when ▼ (📷) is pressed to play/erase a voice memo or memo) are not muted.

Super silent……Mutes all tones played through the speaker and confirmation tones played through the earpiece and uses vibration to notify you of incoming calls, etc.

Original……Allows you to specify the Manner mode settings to your own preferences.
"Original manner"→p.105

Original manner

- The following are the default settings of the "Original" manner mode:
  - Record msg.: OFF
  - Vibrator: ON
  - Phone vol.: Silent
  - Mail vol.: Silent
  - Alarm vol.: Silent
  - i-αppli vol.: Silent
  - VM tone: ON
  - Keypad sound: OFF
  - Mic sensitiv.: Up
  - LVA tone: OFF

1 Manner mode set screen (p.105)▶"Original"▶Select any item:

Record msg.→p.70

Vibrator→p.102

Continued on next page

Phone vol.……Sets the ring tone volume for voice/videophone, PushTalk calls and 64K data communication. →p.66

Mail vol.……Sets the ring tone volume for mail, chat mail, packet communication and MessageR/F. →p.66

Alarm vol. →p.339

i-αppli vol. →p.231
However, “Step” cannot be set.

VM tone……Sets confirmation tones for “Record msg.”, “Voice memo”, etc.

Keypad sound →p.103

Mic sensitiv……Selects from “Normal/Up” for the microphone sensitivity during calls.

LVA tone……Sets the low-voltage alarm.
“When the battery runs out” →p.45

2 **(Finish)**

■When you set Manner mode

The table below lists the settings for each type of Manner mode:

Item	Manner mode	Super silent	Original (displays the Original manner mode settings)
Record message activation	OFF		“Record msg.” setting
Vibrator	ON		“Vibrator” setting
Ring volume for voice/videophone, PushTalk calls and 64K data communication	Silent		“Phone vol.” setting
Ring volume for mail, chat mail, packet communication and MessageR/F	Silent		“Mail vol.” setting
Alarm volume (including snooze function)	Silent		“Alarm vol.” setting
i-αppli volume	Silent		“i-αppli vol.” setting
Schedule/To Do List/Cost limit alarm volume	Silent		“Phone vol.” setting
Activation and completion tones for recorded messages, voice memos, etc.	ON	OFF	“VM tone” setting
Keypad sound	OFF		“Keypad sound” setting
Microphone sensitivity during calls	Up		“Mic sensitiv.” setting
Holding tone	Silent		“Phone vol.” setting Played at “Level 1” when set to other than “Silent”
On hold tone	Silent		“Phone vol.” setting Played at “Level 2” when set to “Step”
Low-voltage alarm	OFF		“LVA tone” setting Even when “Phone vol.” is set to “Silent”, the low-voltage alarm sounds at “Level 1” when “LVA tone” is set to “ON”.
Reading out received mails	“Phone” setting of “Ring volume” Played at “Level 2” when set to “Silent” or “Step” Valid only when “Read out message” in the function menu of the received mail detail screen is selected		
Missed call/new mail confirmation tones when the FOMA terminal is folded	Silent		“Phone vol.” setting Played at “Level 2” when set to “Step”
ToruCa acquisition tone	Silent		“Phone vol.” setting Played at “Level 4” when set to “Step”
Tone and alarm for comfirming the current location (GPS function)	Silent		All tones are not played regardless of the “Original” setting

■ When earphones are connected

The table below lists the settings applied when earphones are connected:

Item	Manner mode	Super silent	Original (displays the Original manner mode settings)
Reading out received mails and contents of To Do list/Schedule	“Phone” setting of “Ring volume” Played at “Level 2” when set to “Silent” or “Step”		
Voice clock (during standby or snooze) and missed call/new mail confirmation tones when the FOMA terminal is folded	“Phone” setting of “Ring volume” Played at “Level 2” when set to “Silent” or “Step”		“Phone vol.” setting Played at “Level 2” when set to “Step”
Music player volume	Volume setting of the music player (p.329)		

NOTE

- The record message function set in “Original” starts up after the ringing time set in “Record message” (p.70) (when set to “OFF”, the recording starts after 13 seconds).
- If the microphone sensitivity during calls is set to “Up”, the volume of the voice heard by the other party raises even if you speak quietly. The microphone sensitivity is set to “Normal” when shooting movies in “Camera” mode.

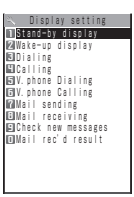
Changing the Display

<Display setting>

You can also set the still images you shot or downloaded images as the standby screen, dialing/calling screen, etc.

1 MENU/MOJI ▶“Settings”▶“Display”▶“Display setting”

The “Display setting” screen appears.



Display setting

2 Select any item:

Stand-by display·····“Changing the standby screen image”→p.108

Wake-up display·····Specifies a message or image displayed when the FOMA terminal is turned on.

OFF·····No image is displayed.

Message·····Enters a message. You can enter up to 50 double-byte or 100 single-byte characters.

My picture·····Selects an image to be displayed from My picture.

Dialing/Calling/V.phone Dialing/V.phone Calling/Mail sending/Mail receiving·····Sets the image displayed when making/receiving voice/videophone calls or sending/receiving mails (i-mode mails and SMS).

- Selects an image displayed while dialing or mail sending from My picture.
- Select “Select calling disp.”, then select the image from My picture or i-motion*.
- i-motion cannot be selected for the received mail screen.

Check new messages/Mail rec’d result·····Selects the image displayed for “Check new messages” (i-mode mails and messages), “Check new SMS” or Mail receiving image from My picture.

*: When you select the i-motion in the Movable contents folder, the content is moved to the Inbox folder of the FOMA terminal, then set.

NOTE

- An i-motion with sound only (an i-motion with no video, such as a singer’s voice) cannot be specified as the receiving display.
- Some cannot be specified for i-motion.
- Flash movies can be set in the Select calling disp./Select receiving disp., but the ring tone used is the tone set in “Select ring tone”.
- Even if the movie/i-motion can be set as Chaku-motion or image displayed for incoming calls, you cannot set these movie/i-motion when they are transferred or copied to the FOMA terminal from a PC, other FOMA terminal or microSD memory card.
- If you set an i-motion that includes both video and sound as the ring tone and receiving display, the FOMA terminal plays the i-motion set as the ring tone.

Continued on next page

NOTE

- If you set something other than an i-motion that includes both video and sound as the ring tone and then set an i-motion that includes both video and sound as the receiving display, the FOMA terminal plays the i-motion set as the receiving display.

<Image priority>

- When the image settings for incoming calls are duplicated, the priority is assigned as follows:
  ① Receive display for ring tones/images
  ② Receive display for group ring tones/images
  ③ Still image for Add to phonebook
  ④ Receive display for 2in1 B mode
  ⑤ i-motion for Select ring tone
  ⑥ Display setting/Kisekae Tool setting
  *: The priority is assigned as follows between ① above (ring tone/image) and ② group ring tone/image).
  ① i-motion for voice/VP ring tone
  ② i-motion, still image, image for Receive display

<Priority sequence for standby screen>

- Priority is assigned as follows when standby screen settings are duplicated:
  ① i-αppli standby screen
  ② Display setting/Kisekae Tool setting

Changing the standby screen image

- This function sets the standby screen when 2in1 is in A mode or "2in1 setting" is set to OFF. The settings are not applied when set to "B mode" or "Dual mode". Set "Standby display" of "2in1 setting".

1 Display setting screen (p.107)▶"Stand-by display"▶Select any item:

OFF[*1]……No image is displayed.

Calendar……Sets a calendar.

Background……For the background image for the calendar, selects one from My picture.

No background[*1]……Displays the calendar only.

My picture……Selects the standby screen image.

i-motion[*1*2]……Selects the i-motion to be displayed on the standby screen.

i-αppli display[*1]……Sets the i-αppli standby screen. →p.238
When the i-αppli standby screen is set, a star "★" is displayed.

Random display[*3]……Displays an image in the specified folder at random each time you open the FOMA terminal or the standby screen.

*1 : Steps 2 and beyond are not required.
*2 : When you select the i-motion in the Movable contents folder, the content is moved to the Inbox folder of the FOMA terminal, then set.
*3 : Step 3 is not required.

2 Select any item:

Centering disp.……Displays the image in the center of the screen.

Fit in disp.……Scales down or enlarges the image until the height or width of the image fits to the screen.

Arrange disp.……Displays images from upper left side in order.

Full-screen disp.……Enlarges or trims the image until the image fully fits to the screen.

3 Check the image▶● (Set)

NOTE

- Display setting cannot be changed depending on the selected image type.
- If video or i-motion has been set for the standby screen, i-motion is played when the FOMA terminal is opened.
- When a flash movie or animation is set as the standby screen, the movie or animation is played when the following operations are performed (no sound):
  - Open the FOMA terminal
  - Press CLR on the standby screen
  - Redisplay the standby screen

● When you set the calendar for the standby screen

The calendar appears on the standby screen. You can quickly and easily refer to previous or next calendar dates or activate the schedule.

■To check the adjacent months on the calendar

Press ● on the standby screen to select the desktop icons or calendar. After using ◎ to highlight the calendar, press ● (Select). The desktop icons disappear and you can check the calendar of previous or next month with ◎.

■To activate the schedule function

When the calendar of the previous or the next month can be displayed with ◎ or ◎, press ● (Select) to launch the schedule function and store a scheduled event for the displayed month.

Displaying Phonebook Images When You Receive Calls <Disp. phonebook image>

You can display a still image when receiving a voice/videophone call from a phone number of which still image is stored in the phonebook.

1 MENU ▶“Settings”▶“Incoming call”▶“Disp. phonebook image”▶“ON”

■ **Not to display the image**
▶“OFF”

NOTE

- Refer to p.108 when the calling image settings are duplicated.
- Depending on the priority as well as the combination of receiving screen and ring tone, either the receiving screen or the ring tone may revert to the default setting.
- If the caller does not notify the caller ID, the image is not displayed.

Setting the Color for Incoming Call Display <Disp. call/receive No.>

You can display names, phone numbers or mail address on the Redial/Received calls screen or sent/received address list screen with their font color changed.

1 MENU ▶“Settings”▶“Incoming call”▶“Disp. call/receive No.”▶Select a color

■ **To revert to the default setting**
▶ (Reset)

NOTE

- Press (Change) to switch the number of colors to be selected from 16 to 256. The pallet of 16 colors and 256 colors switches each time you press (Change).
- When you use 2in1, information of Number A/Address A are displayed in the color set in this function. To display the information of Number B/Address B in different color, set “Disp. call/receive No.” of “2in1 setting”.

Preventing Others from Peeping at the Screen <Privacy angle>

You can make it difficult for others to see the contents on the display.

1 8 (1 second or longer)
The privacy angle is set and “ ” appears.

■ **To release the mail security**
▶8 (for 1 second or longer)
The privacy angle is released and “ ” disappears.

NOTE

- Privacy angle cannot be set/released while editing text or running i-αppli.

Setting the Display and Keypad Lighting <Backlight>

1 MENU ▶“Settings”▶“Display”▶“Backlight”▶Select any item:

Lighting……Selects the normal backlight operation and Power saver mode from “ON/OFF”.
Enter the waiting time for the Power saver mode (01 to 20 minutes in 2 digits) when you set the Power saver mode to “ON”.
- If you set the Power saver mode to “ON”, the standby screen turns off when the specified waiting time has elapsed (Power saver mode). If any key is pressed during the Power saver mode, the Power saver mode is canceled.

Charging……Selects the backlight operation during charging from “Standard/All time ON”.
When set to “Standard”, the backlight lights up with the setting of Lighting “ON” (not enter power saver mode).
When set to “All time ON”, the backlight of the screen lights up all the time (when there is no operation for about 10 seconds, the brightness is set to “Dark”).

Area……Selects the lighting area of the backlight form “LCD+Keys/LCD”.

Brightness……Select the level of backlight brightness “Bright”, “Middle” or “Dark”.

Set Power saver modes for all functions as a batch (Emergency mode)

When Emergency mode is set, all brightness, sound and screen functions are set to their Power saving modes simultaneously. This is an effective setting for conserving remaining battery life.

- The functions below have their usage limited or their settings changed while Emergency mode is set.
  - Lighting-related: Lighting settings, Indicator display, Illumination in talk, Closed illum.
  - Sound-related: Sound effects, Read out message setting, i-motion automatic replay settings, sound effects settings (i-mode), keypad sounds
  - Screen-related: Settings of Display setting/Color pattern and i-channel ticker display

1 5 (1 second or longer)

Emergency mode is set and " " appears.

■ To release the mail security

▶5 (for 1 second or longer)

Emergency mode is canceled and " " disappears.

NOTE

- Emergency mode deactivates when powering on/off.
- Emergency mode cannot be set or released while editing text or running i-αppli.
- When "Lighting" is set to "ON", the backlight turns on when a call is received and lights for about 10 seconds when you turn the FOMA terminal on, press one of the keys, unfold the FOMA terminal. The backlight also stays on while using the camera or playing a movie/i-motion. If you select "OFF", the backlight does not turn on. However, the backlight turns on during movie shooting regardless of the "Lighting" setting.
- Even if Emergency mode is set, the function settings do not change. Even if settings are changed from various functions, the operation of Emergency mode is not affected.
- When the FOMA terminal is opened and Power saver mode activates, in Multi-function key flashes.

Changing the Display Design

<Display design>

You can change the text and background, as well as the background for the software keys.

1 MENU ▶"Settings"▶"Display"▶"Display design"▶Select any item:

Color pattern……Selects the color pattern from Light Gray, Golden Yellow, Opal Blue, Bourgogne, Red and Black.*

Icon pattern……Selects the design for the battery icon and antenna icon from Basic, Crest, Opal, Stardust and Disney.

Soft key……Selects the background pattern for the software keys from Gray, Red and Gold.*

*: The selected pattern appears on the display during the setting.

NOTE

- There are some screens or functions that are not affected by the changes made to the settings of this function, such as i-mode sites.

Changing the Menu Display

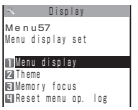
Setting the menu display mode

<Menu display set>

You can change the display of the branch settings (functions) of "Settings" and the main menu design. You can also set the last one function of the Main Menu and Simple Menu.

1 MENU ▶"Settings"▶"Display"▶"Menu display set"

The "Menu display set" screen appears.



Menu display set

2 Select any item:

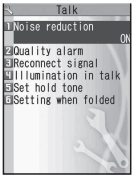
Menu display……Selects the display mode for the branch settings from "List/Detail".

Theme……Selects the selection screen backgrounds and icons in the main menu from Flame, Aurora, Luster, Stardust, Disney, Basic Icon, Light Menu, Original theme and Kisekae Tool. Refer to "Changing the main menu" screen (p.111) concerning original themes, and "Kisekae Tool setting" (p.120) concerning the Kisekae tool.

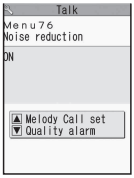
Memory focus……Sets whether to highlight the last selected item when the Main Menu or Simple Menu is redisplayed (Last one function).

Reset menu op. log*……Resets the history of menu operations for automatically sorted menus (p.35).

■Menu displays



"List"



"Detail"

■Themes



"Flame"



"Aurora"



"Luster"



"Stardust"



"Disney"



"Standard"



"Simple Menu"

Changing the main menu screen

You can change the icons and background image used on the main setting selection screen (main menu).

❶ Menu display set screen (p.110)▶"Theme"▶"Original theme"

The "Original theme" screen appears.



Original theme

Function menu➡p.111

❷ Select any item:

Mail/i-mode/i-αppli/Settings/Data box/LifeKit/Network service/Phonebook/Own data/MUSIC/Camera/Osaifu-Keitai……Selects the icon images for the main menu from My picture.

Background image……Selects the background image for the main menu from My picture.

NOTE

- 100KB-or-larger image cannot be set.
- Images larger than the display area are compressed without changing the aspect ratio. If small and fit in the area when double-sized, the image is double-sized and centered. If not, the image is centered as is.

FUNC Original theme screen (p.111)

- This setting is displayed only when you change the Original theme setting.

Reset……Restores the changed main menu icon or background image to the default settings.

All reset……Restores all the main menu icons and background image to the default settings.

Creating an original menu

<Original menu>

You can store the frequently used functions as "Original menu" and easily call them up.→p.33

- You can store up to 10 original menu entries.
- You can set the main menu of "Mail", "i-mode" or "i-αppli" or each item under "Settings", "Data box", "LifeKit", "Network service", "Phonebook", "Own data", "MUSIC", "Camera" and "Osaifu-Keitai" as the Original menu.
- You cannot store the same function twice.

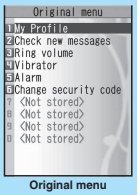
1 MENU/MULTI ▶ i-α **(Original)**

The "Original menu" screen appears.

2 Highlight <Not stored> ▶ ✉ (Edit)▶Use ⊕ to select the function

■ **To change the previously stored function**

▶Highlight the item with the stored function



Original menu

Function menu➡p.112

FUNC Original menu screen (p.112)

Add to org. menu……Creates an original menu.

Sort……Press ⊕ to move the highlighted menu then sort the original menu.

Add desktop icon→p.115

Reset org. menu……Restores the menu to the default settings.

Release……Removes one function from the original menu.

Release all……Removes all the stored functions from the original menu.

Setting the Display Mode of the Indicator Display

<Indicator display>

You can set how to display messages or clock for the indicator display.

- "How to View the Indicator Display (Rear Panel Display)"→p.30

1 MENU/MULTI ▶**"Settings"▶"Display"▶"Indicator display"▶"ON"**

■ **To display nothing on the indicator display**

▶"OFF"

2 Select any item:

Disp. clock only……Specifies whether to display the clock only (ON/OFF). When set to "ON", messages for incoming calls and animations such as alarm notifications are not displayed.

Clock type……Selects from "Digital 1 to 4" for the clock display.

Called……Sets whether to display the other party's phone number (name) or not, while receiving calls (ON/OFF).

Mail……Sets whether to display the sender, date and time, subject or not, when receiving a mail (ON/OFF).

Connection……Sets whether to display an image or animation while sending/receiving voice/videophone or PushTalk calls, Infrared/iC exchange, data communication or IC authentication is in progress (ON/OFF).

Background i-αppli……Sets whether to display the i-αppli for the indicator display or not (ON/OFF).

Display time……Selects the display time for the indicator display from "15 seconds/30 seconds/60 seconds".

3 ✉ **(Finish)**

NOTE

- When receiving a phone/videophone call with a Chaku-moji, the Chaku-moji appears on the indicator display after receiving indication, and after indication (the Chaku-moji and receiving indication appears alternately). However, when "Called" is set to "OFF" in this function, the Chaku-moji does not appear.

Setting Illumination Flash for Closing/Birthday/Anniversary

<Illumination>

Set illumination flash color/pattern for the FOMA terminal closing, Phonebook birthday or Schedule anniversary in “Reminder”.

- Phonebook birthday→p.89
- Schedule anniversary→p.342

1 MENU ▶“Settings”▶“Other settings”▶“Illumination”▶Select any item:

Closed illum.……Set whether to flash illumination when the FOMA terminal is closed (ON/OFF).

Birthday reminder……Set whether to flash illumination for Phonebook birthday reminder (ON/OFF).

Anniversary remind……Set whether to flash illumination for Schedule anniversary reminder (ON/OFF).

2 Select any item:

Set illumination……Select flash color for illumination. Illumination lights in the highlighted item (color).
Color 1 to 7: Lights in each color.

Set pattern……Select from “Normal” to “Random” for illumination flash pattern. Illumination flashes in the highlighted item (pattern).

NOTE

- Birthday/Anniversary reminder reminds you of the day by illumination flash and desktop icon (p.117). Illumination flashes at 0:00 on the day, and afterwards flashes every hour until the desktop icon is selected.
- Closed illumination/Birthday reminder/Anniversary reminder illuminations flash twice in the set pattern.

Setting the Flashing Mode of the Incoming Call Lamp for Incoming Calls

<Illumination>

You can set the color and pattern (flashing pattern) with which the incoming call lamp flashes when you receive voice, videophone or PushTalk calls, mail, chat mail or MessageR/F.

- You can set different flashing colors respectively for incoming calls and messages from specific phone numbers, e-mail addresses and groups.→p.95

1 MENU ▶“Settings”▶“Incoming call”▶“Illumination”▶Select any item:

Set color……Selects the flash color of the incoming call lamp from “Phone/Videophone/PushTalk/Mail/Chat mail/MessageR/MessageF”.
When you switch the highlighted item while selecting an item, the incoming call lamp lights up in the highlighted color. Color 1 to 7 : The lamp flashes by the selected color.
Gradation: The lamp flashes by the colors of 1 to 7 in the order.
When “Mail” is selected, the ring tone for i-mode mails, SMS and packet communication is set.

Set pattern……Selects the incoming call lamp flashing pattern from “Normal to Random/Melody linkage”.

Missed info……Sets whether to keep on flashing the incoming call lamp when a missed call or new mail (i-mode mail, chat mail, area mail and SMS) icon is displayed on the screen (The interval of flashing becomes longer in Power saver mode).

NOTE

- If “Pattern 1 to 4” is set as the Ring tone, the incoming call lamp flashes to the ring tone regardless of the settings of this function.
- If “Melody linkage” is set and no vibration pattern is stored for melody linkage in the ring tones, the “Wave” pattern is used for Chaku-motion or Chaku-Uta-Full®.
- Area Mail Illumination works as follows:
  - Flash color: Red (Color 5)
  - Pattern: Flashes in “Wave” when beep sounds, and follows this function’s settings when new mail tone sounds.

Continued on next page

NOTE

- When multiple mails or MessageR/F are received at the same time, the operation of the incoming call lamp becomes as follows:

Received contents	Operations of the incoming call lamp
Multiple mails are received	The incoming call lamp setting for the last received mail is used. If a chat mail is contained, the incoming call lamp set for the chat mail is used.
MessageR/F are received at the same time	The incoming call lamp setting for MessageR is used.
Mail and MessageR/F are received at the same time	The incoming call lamp setting for the last received mail is used. If a chat mail is contained, the incoming call lamp set for the chat mail is used.

<Incoming call lamp priority>

- When the incoming call lamp settings are duplicated, the priority is assigned as follows:
  ① Illumination for ring tones/images
  ② Illumination for group ring tones/images
  ③ Illumination setting

Setting the Flashing Mode of the Incoming Call Lamp during Calls <Illumination in talk>

You can set the flashing mode of the incoming call lamp during a voice, videophone or PushTalk call.

1 MENU ▶"Settings"▶"Talk"▶"Illumination in talk"▶Select any item:

OFF……The lamp does not flash.

Color 1 to 7……The lamp flashes by the selected color.

Gradation 1……The color changes while flashing.

Gradation 2……The color changes while lighting.

Gradation 3……The flashing pattern of quick color change is repeated.

Setting the Illumination/ Vibrator for IC Card Function <IC card notice set>

Set illumination/vibrator notification setting for IC card function.

1 MENU ▶"Osaifu-Keitai"▶"Setting"▶"IC card notice set"▶Select any item:

Illumination……Set illumination light.

Vibrator……Set vibrator.

Changing the Font <Font>

You can change the characters viewed on the display to your favorite font (typeface).

1 MENU ▶"Settings"▶"Display"▶"Font"▶Select any item:

Font type……Selects "Gothic" or "Ming-cho". A text sample of the highlighted font appears on the bottom of the screen.

Thickness……Selects the thickness from "Thin/ Bold". A text sample of the highlighted thickness appears on the bottom of the screen.

Character size……Sets the character size of the following screens:
Text entry (edit) screen, mail detail screen, MessageR/F detail screen, websites, screen memo, phonebook list screen, phonebook detail screen, My Profile screen, Full Browser screen

Standard/X-large……Sets "Standard" or "X-large".

Separate setting……Sets the character size of the character entry, mail, i-mode, Full Browser, phonebook, dialed calls and i-channel ticker screens individually.
A sample text of the highlighted character size appears on the bottom of the screen.

NOTE

- Only standard font sizes can be set in "Full brw." in "Separate setting" in "Character size". You cannot change the Viewer type font size. →p.265

Setting the Clock Display

<Clock display>

You can set the language mode (Japanese or English) of days, and the display size or color of the clock. You can also set not to display the date or time on the main clock.

- In the screens other than standby screen, only the time is displayed in small size at the top of the display, regardless of this setting.

1 MENU ▶"Settings"▶"Clock"▶"Clock display"▶Select any item:

Display……Selects from "ON/OFF". When set to "OFF", date and time are not displayed.

Size

Big……Displays the date and time in large size.

Small……Displays the date and time in small size.

Up Small……Displays only the time in small size at the top.

Color……Selects the character color from "Black/White".

Using Desktop Icons

<Desktop icon>

Pasting frequently phone numbers and functions to the standby screen as desktop icons provides a quick and simple way of accessing those numbers and functions.

- Followings can be pasted to the standby screen as desktop icons:

Category	Displayed icons (types)	Icon title*1
Access data	(Phone number)	Name stored in the phonebook (phone number if no name is stored)
	(Mail address)	Name stored in the phonebook (Mail address if no name is stored)*2
	(SMS address)	Name stored in the phonebook (phone number if no name is stored)*2
	(i-mode)	i-mode page title (URL excluding "http://" if no title is stored) URL excluding "https://"
	(Full Browser)	Full Browser page title (URL excluding "http://" if no title is stored) URL excluding "https://"
	(Melody)*3	Melody title ("Melody" if no title is stored)
	(Image)*3	Image title ("Image" if no title is stored)
	(Movie or i-motion)*3	Movie or i-motion title ("i-motion" if no title is stored)
	(Chara-den)	Chara-den title ("Chara-den" if no title is stored)
	(PDF document)	PDF document title ("Document" if no title is stored)
	(i-αppli software)	Software name
	(GPS)	Title of Location notification ("Location notification" if no title is stored)

Continued on next page

Category	Displayed icons (types)	Icon title*1
Access function*4	(Photo mode) (Movie mode) (Voice mode) (To Do list) (Schedule) (Text memo) (Text reader) (Bar code reader) (i-Channel) (Music&Video Channel) (Music) (Receive Ir data) (Dictionary) (Original menu) (Viewer type menu) (Life history viewer) (Quick Search) (One-touch multi window) (One-touch multi window (FB)) (Calculator)	Respective function name (same as the “type” on the left)
Access folder	(Inbox folder)	Folder title (“Folder” if no title is stored)

*1: When a desktop icon is selected, only the first 11 double-byte or 22 single-byte characters of the title are displayed.
*2: The name is not displayed when it is pasted from the mail detail screen.
*3: The pre-installed melodies, images, i-motions or original animations cannot be pasted on the desktop.
*4: You cannot paste the desktop icons of the same function more than one.

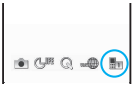
Pasting desktop icons

Select “Add desktop icon” from the function menu on the screen of the function you want to paste, the list screen or the detail screen of the data.

- You can paste up to 15 desktop icons for Theme 1 to 3 respectively.

<Example: Pasting a phone number from the phonebook>

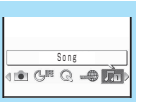
“Add desktop icon” in the Function menu (Phonebook detail screen)→p.93



Using desktop icons to retrieve data or functions

1 On the standby screen▶●

The “Desktop icon” screen appears, and you can select a desktop icon. The title of the highlighted desktop icon is displayed in the balloon.



Desktop icon

Function menu➡p.117

■ **Setting desktop display**

▶ (Settings)

Setting menu of “Desktop icon” screen→p.117

2 Use ⊕ to select the desktop icon

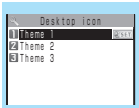
■ **If there are 6 or more desktop icons stored**

The “◀▶” appears on the left or right of the screen. You can use ⊕ to scroll through the icons.

Changing the theme of desktop icons on the standby screen

1 MENU ▶“Settings”▶“Display”▶“Desktop icon”

The “Theme selection” screen appears. The “SET” appears for the theme that is set.



Theme selection

Function menu➡p.117

2 **Select a theme▶“YES”**

When adding desktop icons (p.116) after this procedure, you can paste icons for the selected theme.

■ **To check the theme contents**

▶Highlight the theme▶ (Detail)

The “Desktop” screen appears.

Function menu of “Desktop” screen→p.117

FUNC SET Desktop icon screen (p.116)/ Theme selection screen (p.117)/Desktop screen (p.117)

- As available functions are different between Desktop icon screen, Theme selection screen and Desktop screen, displayed items vary.

Change desktop……Changes the theme of desktop icons.

Display setting……Selects “Display always” or “Display at use”. When “Display at use” is selected, the desktop icons are displayed only when ● is used on the standby screen.

Stand-by display……Changes image for the standby screen.→p.108

Kisekae Tool set.……Sets the Kisekae Tool.→p.120

ch-key setting……Assigns functions to software keys.→p.33

Set time……Sets the clock display for the standby screen.→p.115

Create icon…… Selects the icon to paste from the function name list, then selects the theme.

Sort……Changes the position of desktop icons.

Edit title……You can enter up to 16 double-byte or 32 single-byte characters for the icon title, and 11 double-byte or 22 single-byte characters for the theme.

CHG icon image……Selects “Select icon image” or “Default icon image”. Icons can be changed if “Select icon image” is selected. If “Default icon image” is selected, the icons revert to their defaults.

Icon Info setting……Displays the icon title, type, contents, etc.

Copy……Selects from “Copy this/Copy selected/Copy all” and copies the ions to another theme.
“About multiple-choice”→p.38

Move……Selects from “Move this/Move selected/Move all” and moves the icons to another theme.
“About multiple-choice”→p.38

Reset desktop……Restores the settings to the default settings (“Photo mode”, “Life history viewer”, “Quick Search” and “Viewer type menu” only).

Original menu……Displays the Original menu.→p.112

Delete……Selects the deleting method from “Delete this/Delete selected/Delete all”.
“About multiple-choice”→p.38

Desktop icons that provide information

icon	Information provided	Display after operation/Start content
New	Notifies you that you received a new mail. When the icon is highlighted, the Emotion-expressing mail icon which reflects its contents and the pictograph included in the mail subject are displayed in 3D animation. The mail subject is also displayed.→pp.119, 197	Displays the latest received mail detail screen.
R/F New	Notifies you that you received a new message. When the icon is highlighted, the pictograph containing the subject of the message is displayed in a 3D animation. The mail subject is also displayed.→pp.119, 216	Displays the latest received mail detail screen.
CHAT	Notifies you that you received a new chat mail. When the icon is highlighted, the Emotion-expressing mail icon which reflects its contents is displayed in 3D animation, then “Chat Mail” appears.→pp.119, 215	Displays the Chat screen.

Continued on next page

icon	Information provided	Display after operation/Start content
	Notifies you that you received a new ToruCa.	Displays the ToruCa list screen which contains the latest ToruCa.
	Notifies you that you have a missed call. When the icon is selected, the number of missed calls is displayed.	Displays the “Missed calls” record.
	Notifies you that you have a recorded message of voice calls.	Launches “Play/ Erase msg.”.
	Notifies you that you have a recorded message of videophone.	Launches “Play/ Erase VP msg.”
	Notifies you that you have a voice mail message in the Voice Mail Service Center.	Launches “Voice Mail”.
	Notifies you that the alarm, schedule or To Do list could not be notified.	Displays the last alarm information that could not be notified.
	Notifies you that the i-αppli could not be launched automatically.	Displays the “Auto start info” screen.
	Notifies you that the i-αppli standby screen shut down due to an error.	Displays the security error history.
	Notifies that there is a software update notice.	Starts “Software Update”.
	Notifies that software update succeeded.	Displays the Update results screen after you enter your security code.
	Notifies that the software update failed.	
	Notifies the time at which installation begins.	Displays the install content preview screen.
	Notifies that My Profile birthday has come.	Shows the birthday image screen.
	Notifies that the day specified in Phonebook Birthday reminder has come.	Shows the Birthday reminder list screen.
	Notifies that the day specified in Schedule Anniversary reminder has come.	Shows the Anniversary reminder list screen.

icon	Information provided	Display after operation/Start content
	Notifies you that the cumulative charge exceeds the limit you specified.	Displays the alarm information of “Notice designate calls” after you enter your security code.
	Notifies you that the automatic updating of the pattern data for the scanning function has been successful.	Displays the automatic updating result of the pattern data for the scanning function.
	Notifies that the update could not be performed normally. Or, notifies you that the new pattern data for the scanning function has been released.	Displays a screen advising you to run a pattern data update for the scan function.
	Notifies you that the Dual mode for Data security service could not be updated.	Displays the screen that allows you to connect to the Data Security Center after you enter your security code.
	Notifies you that you have received a request for providing the location information of GPS function.	Displays the Location history screen.
	Notifies you that response from the location request succeeded without operation.	
	Notifies you that response from the location request failed without operation.	
	Notifies you that downloading the Music&Video Channel program has been completed.	Displays the Music&Video Channel screen.
	Notifies you that downloading the Music&Video Channel program has failed.	

NOTE

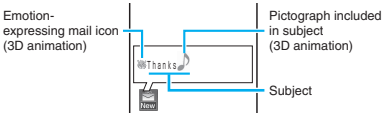
- The desktop icon that provides information disappears when it is called from each function or when it is performed.
- To erase the display of the desktop icon that provides information, hold down CLR for 1 second or longer (there are some types of icon that you cannot erase).

Displaying Desktop Icon Messages for New Mail in 3D Animation

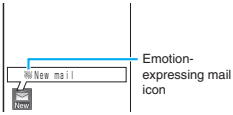
<3D display setting>

You can display the desktop icon for the new mail, messages or chat mail in 3D animation when highlighting the icon.

- The first 22 double-byte or 44 single-byte characters (max.) of the subject are displayed for the new mail or new message.
- The notified information when the new mail, message or chat mail desktop icon is highlighted →p.117
- Emotion-expressing mail icon →p.197



New mail
(when set to "ON")



New mail
(when set to "OFF")

1 MENU/MULTI ▶"Settings"▶"Display"▶"3D display setting"▶"ON"

■ To disable 3D animation

▶"OFF"

NOTE

- When you receive a new mail, message or chat mail to be saved on the Inbox or folder with a lock setting, the Emotion-expressing mail icon, the 3D animation for pictographs or the subject are not displayed, but only "New mail", "New message" or "New chat mail" appears even if you highlight the desktop icon.
- When the subject of a new mail or message is "No title" or SMS is received, the Emotion-expressing mail icon which reflects the mail contents is displayed and "New mail" or "New message" appears when the desktop icon is highlighted.

Selecting the Icons to Display on the Standby Screen

<Icons setting>

You can set ⊕ to use for selecting the icons, date or time displayed on the standby screen.

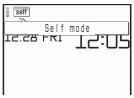
1 MENU/MULTI ▶"Settings"▶"Display"▶"Icons setting"▶"ON"

■ To make icons not selectable

▶"OFF"

Selecting displayed icons

1 On the standby screen▶●▶Highlight the icon with ⊕



The title of the highlighted icon is displayed.

2 ● (Select)

The setting screen for the selected icon, etc. is displayed.

■ Selectable icon/display and the displayed contents after the selection

Selectable icon/ display	After selected
	Displays "Display design"
	Displays "Display design"
self	Displays the screen for releasing "Self mode"
(Red) (Red)	Displays the unread mail list
	Displays the "Inbox"
R (Red) F (Red)	Displays "MessageR" or "MessageF"
R F (R,F:Red) R F (R:Red) R F (F:Red)	Displays the screen for selecting "MessageR" or "MessageF"
	Displays the unread mail list

Continued on next page

Selectable icon/ display	After selected
(Red) (Red) (Red)	Performs “Check new messages”
	Displays the “Lock function selection” screen
	Displays the screen for releasing “IC card lock setting”
	Displays “Permit to send loc.”
	Displays “USB mode setting”
	Displays the screen for selecting “Vibrator” or “Mail/ Msg. ring time”
	• Normal mode (when Manner mode is not set) Displays the screen for selecting “Ring volume” or “Mail/Msg. ring time” • Manner mode, Super silent mode Displays the message that the setting is not available • Original manner mode Displays the screen for selecting “Original” and “Mail/ Msg. ring time”
	Displays “Manner mode set”
	Displays “Remote monitoring”
	Displays the screen for selecting “Schedule”, “Alarm” and “To Do list”.
to	Displays “Voice Mail”
, to	Displays a message notifying that nothing is recorded. Or, displays “Play/Erase voice msg.”
	Displays a message notifying that nothing is recorded. Or, displays “Play/Erase VP msg.”
	Displays “Privacy angle”
	Displays the screen for setting “Keypad lock”
	Displays “Side key guard”

Selectable icon/ display	After selected
Date	Displays “Schedule” Displays “Set main time” when the time is not set
Main clock	Displays “Alarm” Displays “Set main time” when the time is not set
Sub clock	Displays “Set sub clock”
	Switches and displays the active tasks

Setting the Kisekae Tool

<Kisekae Tool setting>

You can change various designs of the FOMA terminal such as screens and ring tones all at once with the Kisekae Tool package.

- By default, a total of seven packages are registered, including data corresponding to the terminal body color, “Disney”, “拡大メニュー” and “ドコモダケ_N905iμ”.
- You can download the Kisekae Tool package from sites.→p.178
  The downloaded packages are stored in Data Box and you can check the contents.→p.273
- The following items can be set all at once.
  - “Display setting”
  - “Select ring tone”
  - “GPS settings” - “Tone/Vibrator” - “Select ring tone*”
  - “Clock Alarm Tone set”
  - “Menu display set” - “Theme”
  - “Change skin” of the music player
  - “i-Channel” - “i-Channel setting” - “Ticker color setting”
  - “Clock display”
  - “Indicator display” - “Clock type*”
  - “Display design”
  - “Illumination”
  - “Illumination” - “Closed illum.”

*: Not available for “拡大メニュー”, “ドコモダケ_N905iμ” and Kisekae Tool package ( ) downloaded from sites.
Only available for data with “ ”.

- When 2in1 is active, Kisekae Tool setting in any mode applies to all modes, phone numbers and mail addresses except the following:
  - Only A mode for Stand-by display, Calling and V.phone Calling
  - Only Number A for incoming voice call ring tone and incoming videophone call ring tone
  - Only Address A for mail receiving ring tone
- Main Menu can be customized depending on the package; e.g. menu automatically changes according to usage frequency, or set sub menus manually and separately.
- If this function is used to change menu design, the menu tree may change according to usage frequency. Also, some menu-assigned numbers (Menu No.) do not apply. In this case, operation descriptions in this manual are not available. Set the main menu theme to "Standard" (p.35), or reset menu operation logs (p.110).

Setting a package

- If you store the current settings to "お気に入り" (Favorites) before setting all at once, you can restore the stored setting later.→p.121

1 MENU ▶"Settings"▶"Kisekae Tool setting"

The "Kisekae Tool set list" screen appears.



Kisekae Tool set list

Function menu➡p.121

2 **Select an item▶"YES"**

No item is set in "お気に入り" (Favorites) at the time of purchase.

■ **To check the settings**

▶Highlight an item▶ (Detail)▶Highlight an item▶ (Play)

■ **To use i-mode to search for packages**

▶"Search by i-mode"

NOTE

- Items to be changed vary depending on the package.
- When a package is set, the color of "Disp. call/receive No." may be changed.
- When "Ring tone/Image" is set or an image is set in a phonebook entry, those settings have precedence over this function.
- If a package is set and then the items set all at once are respectively set using other functions, the latter settings have priority.
- If "ドコモダケ _N905iμ" is selected, main and sub menus appear in Japanese.

FUNC Kisekae Tool set list screen (p.121)

Edit title……Edits the title. You can enter up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters.

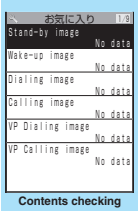
Check Setting info……Checks the settings.

Reset Setting info……Deletes "お気に入り" (Favorites) settings.

Storing the current setting to "お気に入り" (Favorites)

1 **Kisekae Tool set list screen (p.121)▶Highlight "お気に入り (Favorites)"▶ (Detail)**

The "Contents checking" screen appears.
"No data" appears for items with no settings.



Contents checking

Function menu➡p.122

2 ch **(FUNC)▶"Take Setting info"▶"YES"**

● Changing "お気に入り" (Favorites) settings

You can change the items stored in "お気に入り" (Favorites) on the contents checking screen.

1 **Contents checking screen (p.121)▶Select an item▶Change the setting**

NOTE

- "i-αppli stand-by display" settings are not stored to "Stand-by image" in "お気に入り" (Favorites).
- If an image, i-motion or melody stored in "お気に入り" (Favorites) is deleted, it is also deleted from "お気に入り" (Favorites) and "No data" appears.

FUNC Contents checking screen (p.121)

Set all[*1]**/Finish**[*2]……Sets to the currently displayed items all at once.

Take Setting info[*2]……Retains the current settings and stores in “お気に入り” (Favorites).

Reset Setting info[*2]……Deletes settings stored in “お気に入り” (Favorites) and set all items to “No data”.

*1 : Only “拡大メニュー”, “ドコモダケ_N905iμ” and Kisekae Tool package ( ) downloaded from sites can be used.

*2 : Appears on the contents checking screen of “ ” data.

Security Settings

About Your Security Codes

Security Codes Used on the FOMA Terminal 124
Changing Your Security Code ..... Change security code 125
Setting Your PIN Codes ..... PIN setting 125
Releasing PIN Lock 125

Restricting the Phone Controls and Functions

Lock Functions 125
Preventing Others from Using Your Terminal ..... Dial lock/Omakase Lock 126
Preventing Others from Viewing Your Phonebook or Schedule Data ..... Secret mode/Secret data only mode 127
Preventing Others from Viewing Data ..... Secret folder 129
Preventing Others from Viewing Your Personal Information or Performing the Phone/Mail Operations ..... Original lock 130
Locking the Key Operation Automatically ..... Keypad lock 134
Using the IC Card Authentication ..... IC card authentic. 135
Disabling the External Keys ..... Side key guard 137
Using Face Authentication ..... Face authentication 137

Restricting Incoming and Outgoing Calls or Transmissions

Preventing Unwanted Mail Display ..... Mail box lock/Folder lock 138
Restricting Incoming and Outgoing Calls for Specific Phone Numbers ..... Restrictions 139
Rejecting Calls from Unidentified Callers ..... Call setting w/o ID 140
Muting Ring Tones for Callers Not Stored in the Phonebook ..... Ring time(sec.) 141
Rejecting Calls from Callers Not Stored in the Phonebook ..... Reject unknown 141
Disabling Making/Receiving Calls, etc. ..... Self mode 142

Other Security Settings

Data Security Service ..... Data Security Service 142
Other Security Settings 143

Security Codes Used on the FOMA Terminal

To make the FOMA terminal more convenient and secure, some functions require the security code. In addition to the security code for various FOMA terminal operations, you also have the Network security code for accessing network services and the i-mode password. Make use of the FOMA terminal using an appropriate security code according to the purpose.

Notes on the security codes

- Avoid using a readily predictable number such as “birthday”, “part of the phone number”, “street address number or room number”, “1111” and “1234”. Make sure to make a note of the security code you set in case you forget it.
- Take great care not to disclose your security code to others. If your security code is disclosed to others and abused, NTT DoCoMo shall have no liability for any damage due to any unauthorized use of it.
- DoCoMo by no means inquire your security code.
- If you forget any of your security codes, you must bring your official identification providing that you are the subscriber (such as a driver’s license), the FOMA terminal, and the FOMA card (UIM) with you to an NTT DoCoMo service counter. For details, contact the inquiries number provided on the back of this manual.

■Security Code

The security code is set to “0000” (4 zeros) at the time of purchase, but you can change it afterwards by yourself. →p.125

When the security code screen appears, enter the 4 to 8 digit security code and press ● (Set).

- The entered security code is displayed as “_” and the numbers are not displayed.
- When you enter a wrong security code or enter nothing for about 15 seconds, a warning tone sounds and a warning message appears.

■Network Security Code

The network security code is a 4-digit number required for using the DoCoMo e-site or various network services. You can set any number at the time of subscription but you can change it afterwards by yourself.

If you have the “DoCoMo ID/Password” for general PC support site “My DoCoMo”, you can change the network security code from your PC.

You can also change it by yourself using i-mode, from Applications and Procedures on the DoCoMo e-site.

* For details of “My DoCoMo” and “DoCoMo e-site”, see the inside of the back cover of this manual.

■i-mode Password

The 4-digit “i-mode Password” is required when registering/unregistering My Menu, subscribing to/unsubscribing from the message service or the pay services of i-mode (There may be other passwords set independently by the information service providers).

The i-mode password is set to “0000” (4 zeros) at the time of subscription, but you can change it afterwards by yourself.

You can change the password using i-mode, by selecting ▶iMenu▶English iMenu ▶Options ▶Change i-mode Password.

■PIN1 Code and PIN2 Code

You can set two security codes of PIN1 code and PIN2 code for the FOMA card (UIM).

These security codes are set to “0000” (4 zeros) at the time of subscription, but you can change them afterwards by yourself. →p.125

PIN1 code is a 4 to 8 digit number (code) you enter each time you insert the FOMA card (UIM) to the FOMA terminal or you turn on the FOMA terminal. This code identifies you as the user and is designed to prevent improper use of your FOMA card (UIM) by others. When the PIN1 code entry set is set to “ON”, entering the PIN1 code enables you to make and receive calls and use the functions of the FOMA terminal.

The PIN2 code is a 4 to 8 digit number that is used for resetting the total call charges, using or requesting the user certificates, etc.

* When you purchase a new FOMA terminal and insert your current FOMA card (UIM), use the PIN1 and PIN2 codes you set to the current card.

When the PIN1 or PIN2 code entry screen appears, enter the 4 to 8 digit PIN1/PIN2 code and press ● (Set).

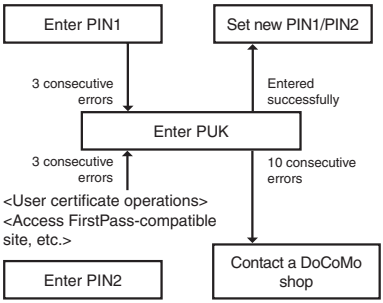
- The entered PIN1/PIN2 code is displayed as “_”.
- If you enter a wrong PIN1/PIN2 code three times consecutively, the PIN1/PIN2 code is locked and cannot be used anymore. (The remaining number of times for the entry appears on the screen.) When you enter the correct PIN1/PIN2 code, the number of times for entry is reset to 3.

■PIN Unlock Code (PUK Code)

The PIN unlock code (PUK code) is an 8-digit number for releasing the lock of PIN1/PIN2 code. You cannot change the PUK code.

● If you enter a wrong PUK code ten times consecutively, the FOMA card (UIM) is locked.

<When powering on>



Changing Your Security Code

<Change security code>

1 MENU ▶“Settings”▶“Lock/Security”▶“Change security code”▶Enter the current security code▶Enter new 4 to 8 digit security code▶“Yes”

Setting Your PIN Codes

<PIN setting>

You can set PIN1 code and PIN2 code for your FOMA card (UIM). PIN1 code and PIN2 code→p.124

● PIN1 code, PIN2 code and PIN1 code entry set are recorded to the FOMA card (UIM).

● To change your PIN1 code, select “ON” in “PIN1 code entry set”.

1 MENU ▶“Settings”▶“Lock/Security”▶“PIN setting”▶Enter your security code▶Select any item:

Change PIN1 code……Enter the current PIN1 code (4 to 8 digits) and enter the new PIN1 code twice (once for confirmation).

Change PIN2 code……Enter the current PIN2 code (4 to 8 digits) and enter the new PIN2 code twice (once for confirmation).

PIN1 code entry set……Sets whether the PIN1 code is input when you turn the FOMA terminal on or not (ON/OFF).

Releasing PIN Lock

If you enter incorrect PIN1 code or PIN2 code 3 times in a row, you must unlock the locked PIN1 code or PIN2 code then set a new PIN1 code or PIN2 code.

<Example: To unlock your PIN1 code>

1 Enter the 8 digit PUK code



2 Enter a new 4 to 8 digit PIN1 code▶Enter the new 4 to 8 digit PIN1 code again

Lock Functions

Purpose	Function
To prevent others from using your FOMA terminal	Dial lock/ Omakase Lock
To prevent others from viewing data in your “Phonebook” or “Schedule” by setting them not to be displayed	Secret mode/Secret data only mode
To prevent others from viewing images or mails by setting them not to be displayed	Secret folder
To prevent others from viewing or altering your personal information. To restrict making or receiving phone or PushTalk calls or sending or receiving mails	Original lock
To lock the key operations automatically	Keypad lock
To release lock using a contactless IC card	IC card authentic.
To prevent inadvertent use of the external keys	Side key guard
To release lock using the face authentication function	Face authentication
To set lock for mail folders to prevent others from viewing your mails	Mail box lock/ Folder lock
To restrict calls to/from specific phone numbers stored in the phonebook to prevent private calls or nuisance calls	Restrictions
To reject calls from unidentified callers	Call setting w/o ID

Continued on next page

Purpose	Function
To prevent accidentally making calls using Received calls record to nuisance calls of which ring time is short and number is not stored in the phonebook	Ring time(sec.)
To reject calls from callers not stored in the phonebook	Reject unknown
To use the FOMA terminal without being bothered by incoming voice, videophone or PushTalk calls	Self mode

Preventing Others from Using Your Terminal

<Dial lock/Omakase Lock>

To lock your FOMA terminal to prevent others from using, you can set “Dial lock” that can be set on the FOMA terminal and “Omakase Lock” that can be set remotely.

- Dial lock or Omakase Lock is not released even when the power is turned off.

Available operations and functions when Dial lock or Omakase Lock is set

Function	Dial lock	Omakase Lock
Turning the FOMA Terminal on/off	○	○
Calling emergency numbers (110, 119 or 118)	○	×
Setting/releasing Dial lock	○	×
Setting/releasing Omakase Lock	○	○
Receiving a voice or videophone call*	○	○
Receiving remote monitoring calls	○	○
Updating the Data Security Service data	○	×
Providing location information using the GPS function (providing location information to a third party set for the location request service such as DoCoMo’s “imadoco search”)	○	○
Using functions other than the above	×	×

○: Available ×: Unavailable

*: You cannot make voice calls, videophone calls and PushTalk calls. Even when receiving a PushTalk call, no incoming call operation is performed and the call is recorded as a missed call. You cannot receive calls when Public mode (Driving mode) is set.

- When Dial lock or Omakase Lock is set, no alarm notification is given at the time set in “Alarm”, “Schedule” or “To Do list”. Once Dial lock or Omakase Lock is released, the “Missed alarm” desktop icon appears on the standby screen.
- When Dial lock or Omakase Lock is set, the icons pasted on the desktop are not displayed. Once Dial lock or Omakase Lock is released, these icons reappear.
- Even when you receive calls from the callers stored in the phonebook, only the phone numbers are displayed when Dial lock or Omakase Lock is set.
- Calls received when Dial lock or Omakase Lock is set are recorded in “Received calls”.

Operating the FOMA terminal to set Dial lock

1 MENU ▶“Settings”▶“Lock/Security”▶“Lock”▶Enter your security code▶“Dial lock”

Operations during Dial lock

- “Dial lock” and “ ” appear on the screen. IC card lock is also set to “ON” and IC card functions become unavailable (Dial lock can be released using the IC card authentication function).



Dial lock active

- “Dial lock” appears on the indicator display.
- You can still receive MessageR/F, i-mode mail, SMS or chat mail automatically when Dial lock is set, but the receiving screen or reception results screen does not appear. Once Dial lock is released, the icon for the received message/mail appears on the standby screen.
  - Even when Dial lock is set, you can receive Area Mail automatically and reception results appear on the standby screen.

Releasing Dial lock

- If you fail to release Dial lock 5 times in a row, the FOMA terminal turns off. However, you can turn it on again.

1 Enter your security code on the screen when Dial lock is set▶●

Dial lock is released and “ ” disappears.

■ To release the lock using the IC card authentication

“Using the IC Card Authentication”→p.135

NOTE

- Even when Dial lock is released, "IC" does not disappear if IC card lock is set.
- Even if an incorrect security code is input while releasing Dial lock, no error message appears. Press ☎ and input a correct security code again.

Using Omakase Lock

This service enables you to lock the FOMA terminal with remote operation by contacting DoCoMo or from My DoCoMo when you lost your FOMA terminal. This protects your valuable privacy and Osaifu-Keitai. You can release the lock by calling DoCoMo, etc.

* Omakase lock charges apply. If subscribed during temporary suspension of use, no charges apply.
* If "Permit to send loc." is set to "ON", GPS location request is accepted while Omakase lock is active.

Call Center (for setting/releasing Omakase Lock)

0120-524-360 (Operating time: 24 hours a day) (only in Japanese)

* My DoCoMo is also available to set/release Omakase Lock via a PC, etc.

* For details on Omakase Lock, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Procedures and After-Sales Service]" or contact the inquiries number provided on the back of this manual.

Operations during Omakase Lock



- "おまかせロック中です" appears on the display and indicator display.
- Omakase Lock is the service to lock the FOMA terminal in which the FOMA card (UIM) you subscribed to is inserted.
- When Omakase Lock is set, all the key operations except for answering voice/videophone calls and turning on/off the FOMA terminal, and other functions (including IC card) become unavailable.
- When Omakase Lock is set, you can receive voice/videophone calls, but in this case, only the phone number is displayed on the screen and not the name or image stored in the phonebook.
- Mails received when Omakase Lock is set are kept at i-mode center.
- You can turn the FOMA terminal on/off, but Omakase Lock is not released even when the power is turned off.
- The FOMA card (UIM) and microSD memory card remain unlocked.

NOTE

- When other function is activated, the function is terminated and the FOMA terminal is locked (the editing data may be canceled before terminating).
- You can set Omakase Lock even when other lock function is set. In this case, releasing Omakase Lock returns to the lock setting before Omakase Lock is set (however, Secret or Secret data only mode are released).
- Lock is not set when:
  - The FOMA terminal is turned off or out of the service area
  - "外" appears on the FOMA terminal because Self mode is set or data exchange via Infrared data exchange or cable connection is in progress, etc.
- The lock is not set if you subscribed to the "Dual Network" service and are using the mova service.
- Omakase Lock is the service to lock the FOMA terminal by the request from the subscriber of the FOMA card (UIM) inserted in the FOMA terminal. The FOMA terminal is locked if the subscriber requests even if the subscriber and the user of the FOMA terminal are different.
- The lock can be released only when the same FOMA card (UIM) which was used when the lock was set is inserted in the FOMA terminal. If the lock cannot be released, contact the inquiries number provided on the back of this manual.
- If the FOMA terminal is on voice or videophone call when you try to release Omakase Lock, the lock is released after the call ends.

Preventing Others from Viewing Your Phonebook or Schedule Data

<Secret mode/Secret data only mode>

When the phonebook or schedule entries are stored in Secret or Secret data only mode, these entries are stored as secret data and are not displayed in normal mode. To display the secret data, set the FOMA terminal to Secret mode (displays all data including the secret data) or Secret data only mode (displays only the secret data).

- You can also store the data in "My picture", "i-motion", "Received mails", "Sent mails" and "Bookmark" in the secret folder to prevent others from viewing the data. →p.129

Setting to Secret or Secret data only mode

1 MENU/UNLOCK ▶**“Settings”▶“Lock/Security”▶“Secret mode”/“Secret data only mode”▶Enter your security code**

When set to Secret mode, “ S ” appears.

When set to Secret data only mode, the number of secret data is displayed for about 2 seconds, then “ S ” flashes.

Icons displayed when another lock function is set at the same time→p.27

Storing/viewing the Secret data and setting the Secret data back to normal data

- You cannot set phonebook entries as secret data on the FOMA card (UIM).
- When making or receiving voice/videophone calls or PushTalk during secret mode or secret data only mode, set mode is released even if you do not answer the call.
- The operations of “Phonebook” and “Schedule” in Secret or Secret data only mode are the same as when Secret or Secret data only mode is not set.

■Setting phonebook entries or schedule entries as secret data

Store the information in Secret or Secret data only mode.

Adding information to the phonebook→p.89

Adding information to your schedule→p.340

■Setting the stored phonebook entries as secret data

Select “Set secret” from the function menu of the phonebook detail screen.

If you set the phonebook entry stored to Choku-Den as a secret data, the entry is deleted from Choku-Den.

■Viewing the secret data

Set the FOMA terminal to Secret or Secret data only mode, then view the phonebook or schedule.

How to search the phonebook→p.92

Checking your schedule→p.342

■Setting the secret data back to normal data

Set the FOMA terminal to Secret or Secret data only mode, display the “Phonebook detail” screen (p.92) or “Schedule list” screen (p.342), then select “Release secret” from the function menu.

Canceling Secret or Secret data only mode

1 In Secret or Secret data only mode, ☎

Secret or Secret data only mode is canceled and “ S ” disappears.

Alternatively, press MENU/UNLOCK ▶“Settings”▶“Lock/Security”▶“Secret mode” or “Secret data only mode”

NOTE

- When a secret data is highlighted in the list screen during Secret mode or when the detail screen of a secret data is displayed, the lighting of “ S ” changes to flashing.
- “Phonebook” or “Schedule” entries stored as secret data can only be retrieved, modified, deleted or referred in Secret or Secret data only mode. When the FOMA terminal is in normal mode, you will be notified of schedule events stored as secret data by an alarm, but no alarm message is displayed.
- If the caller of the incoming call is stored as secret data and notifies the caller ID, the stored name or image is not displayed and only the phone number is displayed. Only the phone number is displayed in “Received calls” record. Setting Secret mode or Secret data only mode displays the name stored in the “Received calls” record.
- If the Secret mode or Secret data only mode is released when you receive mail from a sender stored as secret data, not the name but the mail address is displayed. The mail address is not stored in “Received address” record.
- If you modify your “Phonebook” or “Schedule” in Secret mode, the modified data becomes secret data. If you modify the phonebook, all the items stored under the modified memory number become secret data.
- If “Dial lock/Omakase Lock” is set at the same time with “Secret mode” or “Secret data only mode”, releasing “Dial lock/Omakase Lock” also cancels “Secret mode” or “Secret data only mode”.
- When you make a call or send a mail using the phonebook stored as a secret data, it is not recorded in the “Redial”, “Dialed calls” or “Sent address” records.
- Birthday reminder does not work for a phonebook entry stored as a secret data.

Preventing Others from Viewing Data <Secret folder>

You can store images, movies, i-motion, received mail, sent mail, and bookmarks you want to prevent others from viewing data, using Secret folder which is displayed only in Secret mode or Secret data only mode.

- You can store the data stored in the FOMA terminal only.
- The maximum number of data records that can be stored in each secret folder is as follows:

My picture	i-motion	Received mail
Approx. 100 (Approx. 2M bytes)	Approx. 10 (Approx. 10M bytes)	Approx. 100 (Approx. 1.2M bytes)

Sent mail	Bookmark (i-mode)	Bookmark (Full Browser)
Approx. 100 (Approx. 1.2M bytes)	Approx. 10 (Approx. 3K bytes)	Approx. 10 (Approx. 6K bytes)

* The data may not be able to be stored up to the maximum number depending on the file size of each data.

<Example: To store an image in My picture into the Secret folder>

1 Switch the FOMA terminal to Secret mode or Secret data only mode

"Preventing Others from Viewing Your Phonebook or Schedule Data"→p.127

2 Image list screen (p.274)▶Use ⊛ to move the frame of the image▶ ch (FUNC)▶"Keep in secret"

NOTE

- The Secret folder is already prepared for the FOMA terminal. You cannot create another Secret folder, or delete or rename the existing Secret folder.
- If the secret/secret data only mode is canceled by an incoming call, etc. while displaying the data in the secret folder, the screen returns to the list screen of each folder.

<Received mail> <Sent mail>

- Chat mails stored in the Secret folder are not displayed in the chat screen even in Secret or Secret data only mode.
- When you receive the SMS report for the SMS stored in the Secret folder, you cannot select "Disp. SMS report" from the function menu of the SMS detail screen. You can display the SMS report by selecting "Disp. SMS report" from the function menu after putting out the message from the Secret folder.

NOTE

<Desktop icon>

- When the image, movie or i-motion pasted as a desktop icon is stored in the Secret folder, it is not displayed even when the desktop icon is selected.
- Even when the Bookmark, received mail or sent mail pasted as a desktop icon is stored in the Secret folder, normal operation is performed when the desktop icon is selected.

Function menu of the Secret folder

Some functions for the folder or data in the folder are restricted in the Secret folder. The table below shows the available functions on the folder list screen, the data list screen, and the data detail screen. For information on "Put out", refer to "Changing a secret data to normal data" (p.130).

■Function menu when the Secret folder is highlighted on the folder list screen

My picture (p.302)	i-motion (p.302)
Add folder Delete all image*1 Memory info	Add folder Delete all*1 Memory info

Received mail/Sent mail (p.206)	Bookmark (p.173)
Add folder No. of messages*1 Open folder iC trans. all*1 Send all Ir data*1 CopyAll to microSD*1 Delete read*1*2 Delete all*1*3	Add folder No. of bookmarks*1 iC trans. all*1*4 Send all Ir data*1*4 CopyAll to microSD*1*4 Delete all*1

*1 : The data in the Secret folder are not included.
*2 : Only displayed in the inbox folder list screen.
*3 : Sent mail all deleted in the Outbox list screen.
*4 : Not displayed for the Viewer type bookmark.

■Function menu (Data list screen)

My picture (p.277)	i-motion (p.283)
Display image Image info Memory info Title name*1 Delete Put out	i-motion info Memory info List setting Delete Put out

Continued on next page

Received mail/Sent mail (p.208)	Bookmark (p.173)
Color coding List setting Protect*2 Unprotect*2 Protect ON/OFF*3 Unprotect all*3 Mail info*2 No. of messages Delete Put out	No. of bookmarks Delete Put out

*1 : If you select the Title name, “Picture” is displayed. By default, Picture is displayed.
*2 : Only displayed in the Inbox folder list screen.
*3 : Only displayed in the Outbox folder list screen.

■**Function menu (Data detail screen)**

My picture (p.277)	i-motion (p.330)
Image info Set image disp. Normal*1 Retry Delete this	Action setting Play menu Detail Info Select file Help

Received mail/Sent mail (p.209)
Protect ON/OFF Quick Search*2 Scroll Font size Delete Put out

*1 : “Full screen” is selected in Normal mode.
*2 : Available only with the received mail detail screen.

Changing a secret data to normal data

To change the secret data back to normal data, move the data from the Secret folder to another folder.

<Example: To return an image from the Secret folder of My picture to normal data>

1 Switch the FOMA terminal to Secret mode or Secret data only mode
“Preventing Others from Viewing Your Phonebook or Schedule Data”→p.127

2 Folder list screen (p.274)▶“Secret”▶Move the frame to an image▶ch (FUNC)▶“Put out”

3 Select a folder

NOTE
- If you put out a mail message from the Secret folder, the mail turns into a normal mail message. Therefore, an old mail message may be deleted when new mail messages are sent or received. It is recommended to protect the mail message before putting it out from the Secret folder.

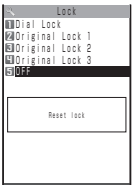
Preventing Others from Viewing Your Personal Information or Performing the Phone/Mail Operations <Original lock>

You can lock the functions which use your personal information such as mails and phonebook to prevent others from viewing these information or altering improperly. You can also restrict making or receiving voice/videophone or PushTalk calls, and sending i-mode mails or SMS.
- You can store the function or data you want to lock to Original lock 1 to 3 individually depending on the usage or purpose.
- Original lock is not released even when the power is turned off.

Activating Original lock

1 MENU▶“Settings”▶“Lock/Security”▶“Lock”▶Enter your security code
The “Lock selection” screen appears.

2 Select Original lock 1 to 3
The lock is activated and the function or data to be locked is locked.
“ ” appears on the screen.
Icons displayed when another lock function is set at the same time →p.27



Lock selection

■ **To change the function or data to be locked**
“Customizing the function or data to be locked” →p.134

■ **To edit the title**
▶Highlight one of Original lock 1 to 3▶ch (FUNC)▶“Edit title”▶Enter the title

■ **To release Original lock**
▶“OFF”

Operations during Original lock

If you try to use the locked function or data when Original lock is set, you are asked to enter your security code.

- If you enter your security code, the lock is deactivated temporarily and you can use the locked function or data (you cannot use the functions of "Dial/sending mail" and "Incoming/Mail disp." when the lock is released temporarily). When you exit from the activated function and return to the standby screen, the lock is activated again.

<Example: To view an i-mode mail when Original lock is set>

1 On the standby screen▶

2 Enter your security code

Original lock is released temporarily and the mail menu appears.

3 Read an i-mode Mail

4 Exit the mail menu and return to the standby screen

Original lock is activated and "" appears on the screen.

Functions and data you can lock

- Functions and data you can lock are as follows. You can specify (customize) whether to lock or not for each group and item. →p.134

Category	Group	Function	Operations when locked/Notes
Data disp. Edit del.	Mail	Mail	Locks the mail function. • Mail boxes cannot be displayed. • Mails cannot be composed or sent. • Even if you press with the FOMA terminal folded, the FOMA terminal does not read out messages. • Area Mail can be read.
		Mail member	Locks the activation of each function.
		Chat group	
	i-mode	i-mode	Locks the i-mode function. • i-mode, Full Browser and i-Channel, etc are unavailable. • Ticker of i-Channel is not displayed. • Quick search is not available.
		Bookmark	Locks the i-mode and Full Browser bookmark list displays.
	i-αppli	i-αppli	Locks the display of i-αppli menu or IC card list. Also, all the i-αppli (including the pre-installed i-αppli) cannot be activated. • IC card function cannot be locked with this function. • When the i-αppli standby screen is set, the i-αppli standby screen is deactivated when the lock is set. If an image shot by the camera or downloaded is set before the i-αppli standby screen, the image reappears. However, if the image is locked, the default image appears. If the pre-installed image is set before the i-αppli standby screen, the image reappears.
	ToruCa	ToruCa	Locks the display of ToruCa list screen. The ToruCa acquisition is available with a reader/writer unit even when the lock is set. Once the lock is released, the "New ToruCa" desktop icon appears.

Continued on next page

Category	Group	Function	Operations when locked/Notes
Data disp. Edit del.	Multi-media	My picture	Locks the activation of each function. Also, data cannot be accessed from other functions. • If the data to be locked is set as the ring tone, receiving screen, standby screen, etc., the default settings are used when the lock is set. • When “My picture” or “Chara-den” is to be locked and an substitute image is sent for a videophone call when the lock is set, the “Pre-installed” substitute image is sent.
		Music	
		i-motion	
		Melody	
		Kisekae Tool	
		My document	
		Chara-den	
		Document viewer	
		Voice announce	
		Music&Video Channel	Locks the activation of each function. • Music&Video Channel programs can be downloaded even when the lock is set.
		Camera	
		Bar code reader	
		Text reader	
	Schedule	Schedule	Locks the activation of each function. Also, alarm notification is not given even when the set time is reached. • The alarm notification is not given when the lock is set and “Missed alarm” desktop icon appears. • When “Schedule” is to be locked and the calendar is set on the standby screen, the schedule function cannot be activated from the calendar on the standby screen when the lock is set.
		Alarm	
		To Do list	
	Memo	Play/Erase msg.	Locks the activation of each function. You cannot check “Record message” or “Record VP message” even if you press [V] with the FOMA terminal folded.
		Play/Erase VP msg.	
		Voice memo	Locks the activation of each function.
		Voice memo (in-call)	
	Phonebook	Phonebook/ Choku-Den	Locks the activation of the phonebook, PushTalk phonebook and Choku-Den. Also, the phonebook cannot be accessed in any situation (this affects many other functions which use the phonebook). • Only the phone number is displayed on the dialing/receiving screen of the voice/videophone even if the other party is stored on the phonebook. Also, mail address is displayed on the new mail display instead of the stored name of the sender. • When “MSG display settings” of “Chaku-moji” is set to “Only number in PH-book”, a Chaku-moji message is not displayed in the receiving screen. • Only the phone number is displayed on the “Received calls”, “Dialed calls” and “Redial” records even when the other party is stored in the phonebook. • On the mail list and detail screen, the mail address is displayed instead of the name stored in the phonebook. • You cannot set “Reject unknown” at the same time. • “Call rejection”, “Call acceptation”, “Call Forwarding” and “Voice Mail” settings are deactivated. • Even if you press [V] with the FOMA terminal folded, the FOMA terminal does not read out the caller or sender’s name of “Missed calls”, “New mail”, “Chat mail” or “Record message”.

Category	Group	Function	Operations when locked/Notes
Data disp. Edit del.	Phonebook	My profile	Locks the activation of “My profile”.
		Dialed calls	Locks the activation of “Dialed calls”, “Redial” and “Sent address”.
		Received calls	Locks the activation of “Received calls” and “Received address”. • Even if you press [9] with the FOMA terminal folded, you cannot check missed calls.
	Other settings	Text memo	Locks the activation of text memo.
		Notice designate calls	No alarm notification is given even when the specified upper cost limit is exceeded. • Once the lock is released, the “Notice designate calls” desktop icon appears on the standby screen. • “Notice designate calls” setting can be performed because this operation is not locked with this function.
		Chaku-moji	Locks the usage of “Chaku-moji”. • You can send messages with Chaku-moji using the function menu of “Create message”.
Dial/ sending mail	Keypad dial	Keypad dial	Voice/Videophone/PushTalk calls cannot be made by entering a phone number directly or via received call records of unregistered parties (Can be made via Phonebook or Received/Redial/Dialed call records of registered parties). • You cannot add or edit phonebook entries, perform UIM operation or copy the phonebook from the microSD memory card. • You can directly dial and make voice calls to emergency numbers (110, 119 and 118).
	Sending mail	Input add by keypad	i-mode mail/SMS cannot be sent by entering an address directly (Phonebook, Redial/Dialed call records, Send address list, Received call records of registered parties, and Received address list are available). • You cannot add or edit phonebook entries, perform UIM operation or copy the phonebook from the microSD memory card. • You cannot use an unregistered address in Received calls, Received address, Mail member or Chat group as a mail address to compose a mail. • All the chat members except for “Own” are deleted. • All the addresses of the mails in Draft are deleted. Also, all the mails in Draft with addresses only are deleted.
		Sending mail	You cannot send i-mode mails or SMS. • You cannot use chat mails.
Incoming/ Mail disp.	Incoming call		Rejects incoming voice calls, videophone calls, PushTalk calls or packet communication. No reaction is made and these are recorded as missed calls. • Once the lock is released, the “Missed call” desktop icon appears on the standby screen.
	Disp. recv. mail/msg.		You can still receive MessageR/F, i-mode mail, chat mail or SMS automatically, but the receiving screen or reception results screen does not appear. Also, there is no ring tone or other reaction when a call comes in and you are not notified of a received call. • Even when Dial lock is set, you can receive Area Mail automatically and reception results appear on the screen. • Once the lock is released, the “New mail”, “Chat mail” or “New message” desktop icon appears on the standby screen. • You cannot use chat mails.
GPS	GPS		Locks the activation of the GPS function. • Location can be provided to a third party set for location request services such as DoCoMo’s “imadoco search”.

NOTE

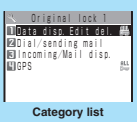
- When the data to be locked are pasted as “Desktop icon” on the standby screen, these desktop icons are not displayed when the lock is set.

Customizing the function or data to be locked

- You can store particular settings such as “locking the phonebook only” or “restricting the outgoing calls/mails only” to Original lock 1 to 3 individually depending on the usage or purpose.
- You can set (customize) the lock by each category, group or function. →p.131
- The contents of the lock you set (customize) are retained even when Original lock is set or released.

1 Lock selection screen (p.130)▶Highlight one of Original lock 1 to 3▶ (Detail)

The “Category list” screen appears.
“ ” appears when any item in the category is to be locked and “ALL” appears when all items are to be locked.

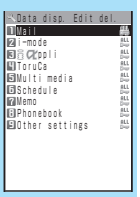


Category list

Function menu➡p.134

2 Select the category you want to change the setting

The “Group list” screen appears.
“ ” appears when any item in the group is to be locked and “ALL” appears when all items are to be locked.



Group list

Function menu➡p.134

3 Select the group you want to change the setting

The “Function list” screen appears.

4 Use ◉ to select □ (checkbox)▶ (Finish)

The checked (☑) item is to be locked.
Deselect items you do not want to lock.



Function list

Function menu➡p.134

5 (Finish)▶ (Finish)▶● (Set)

The number of times you press (Finish) varies depending on the category.

FUNC Category list screen (p.134)/ Group list screen (p.134)

Select……Selects all items in the highlighted item.

Release……Deselects all items in the highlighted item.

Select all……Selects all items in the displayed item.

Release all……Deselects all items in the displayed item.

FUNC Function list screen (p.134)

Select all……Selects all the displayed items.

Release all……Deselects all the displayed items.

Locking the Key Operation Automatically <Keypad lock>

You can lock the key operations automatically when the FOMA terminal is folded or no operation is performed for a certain period of time.

- Illumination flashes in blue while in Keypad lock.
- Keypad lock is not released even when the power is turned off.

Setting Keypad lock

1 MENU ▶“Settings”▶“Lock/Security”▶“Keypad lock”▶Enter your security code▶Select any item:

After folded

ON……Locks automatically when the FOMA terminal is folded.

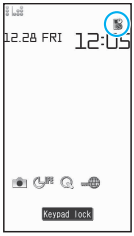
OFF……Does not lock when the FOMA terminal is folded.

Timer……Selects the setting from “OFF/ON after 1 minute/ON after 5 minutes/ON after 15 minutes/ON after 30 minutes”. For example, when set to “ON after 5 minutes”, the lock is set automatically after no operation is performed for 5 minutes. When set to “OFF”, timer is deactivated and no lock is set.

2 Press (Finish)

Operations during Keypad lock

- "Keypad lock" and "" appear on the screen when the Keypad lock is set.
- While Keypad lock is active, all key operations are disabled except answering voice/videophone/PushTalk calls, powering on/off, IC card authentication, Keypad unlock by Face authentication, and (マナー) operations (check for missed calls/new mail).



- While in Keypad lock, the FOMA terminal receives MessageR/F, i-mode mail, SMS, Chat mail and Area Mail, but you cannot view the contents or use the read out mail function by pressing .
  - Even when Dial lock is set, you can receive Area Mail automatically and reception results appear on the screen.
- Even when Keypad lock is set, "Alarm", "Schedule" or "To Do list" alarm is given.
- If operations can be performed when the above messages or mail are received or alarm notification is given while Keypad lock is set, "" appears on the screen.

NOTE

- Even when keypad lock is set, you can directly dial and make voice calls to emergency numbers (110, 119 and 118).
- The lock may not be set during a call, data communication (such as i-mode) or playback of melody/i-motion/music, or when activating the camera, etc.

Releasing Keypad lock temporarily

1 Enter your security code on the screen when Keypad lock is set▶●

■ **To release the lock temporarily using the Face authentication**

"Using Face authentication to temporarily release Keypad lock"→p.138

■ **To release the lock temporarily using the IC Card Authentication**

"Using the IC card authentication to release Dial lock/Keypad lock"→p.136

Using the IC Card Authentication <IC card authentic.>

You can release Dial lock or Keypad lock or you can perform the user authentication without entering your security code on the screen which requires your security code entry only by placing the FOMA terminal on a FeliCa-compatible contactless IC card (external IC card).

- You can use the IC card authentication even when IC card lock is set.
- You can store up to 2 contactless IC cards.

Activating the IC card authentication

You can store the contactless IC card to enable the user authentication.

1 MENU▶"Settings"▶"Lock/Security"▶"IC card authentic."▶Enter your security code

The "IC card authentic." screen appears.



IC card authentication

2 "ON"▶"OK"

■ **To activate the stored contactless IC card**
▶"ON"

■ **To deactivate the IC card authentication**
▶"OFF" ▶"YES" or "NO"

3 Place the contactless IC card on the FeliCa mark "" on the FOMA terminal

"" disappears when the card is stored.

FUNC **IC card authentication screen (p.135)**

New ext. IC card……Stores up to 2 contactless IC cards. If 2 cards are already stored, delete the old data to store the card.

Del. ext. IC card……Deletes the contactless IC card data.

Using the IC card authentication to release Dial lock/Keypad lock

● "" appears after the following operation and you can release the lock by the user authentication only by placing the contactless IC card stored with this function on the FeliCa mark on the FOMA terminal.

1 Open the FOMA terminal when Dial lock/Keypad lock is set

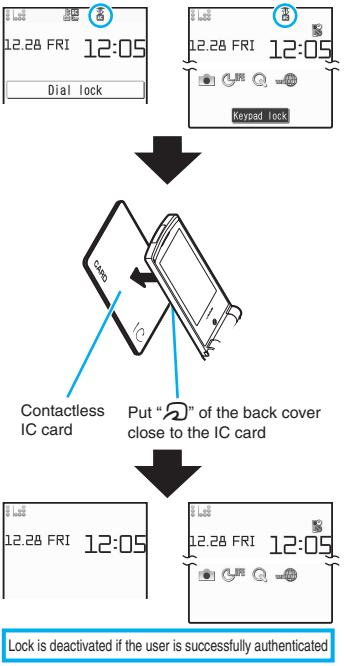
"" appears on the screen and the user authentication is enabled for 10 seconds. Pressing (@auth.) on the standby screen also enables the user authentication.

■ To release the lock with the FOMA terminal folded

▶Pressing (マナー) (1 second or longer) enables the user authentication for 10 seconds.

2 Place the contactless IC card on the FeliCa mark "" on the FOMA terminal

The lock is released when the user authentication is performed successfully.

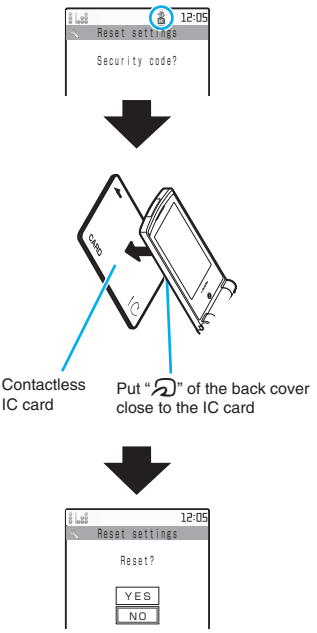


Lock is deactivated if the user is successfully authenticated

* Put the IC card close as illustrated. Authentication may be unsuccessful depending on the IC card. In this case, wave the card

Using the IC card authentication when entering your security code

● "" appears automatically when the security code entry screen appears and the user authentication is enabled for 10 seconds. If you place the contactless IC card stored with this function on the FeliCa mark on the FOMA terminal, the user authentication is performed and you can perform the intended operation.



Security code entry changes to another screen if the user is successfully authenticated

* Put the IC card close as illustrated. Authentication may be unsuccessful depending on the IC card. In this case, wave the card.

NOTE

- When using the IC card authentication, Illumination/Vibrator plays following "IC card notice set".
- The FOMA terminal may have difficulty in authentication depending on the IC card.
- When using the IC card authentication, hold the contactless IC card and the FOMA terminal with your hands.

NOTE

- If you use the contactless IC card not stored with this function for the user authentication, the user authentication fails. If you fail 5 times in sequence, the IC card authentication is deactivated and the authentication can be performed only with the security code. After the authentication with your security code is performed successfully, you can use the IC card authentication again.

Disabling the External Keys

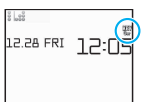
<Side key guard>

You can disable the functions of external keys (▼, ▲ (マナー), ▼ (📷)) when the FOMA terminal is folded.

- In the following situations, the external keys are enabled regardless of this setting:
  - When the FOMA terminal is opened
  - When a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional), etc. is connected
  - When a PC or printer is connected to the external connecter and "USB", "SD" or "USB" appears on the screen

1 MENU ▶ ✳ (1 second or longer)

The external keys operations are disabled (when the FOMA terminal is folded) and "KEY" appears.



■ **To enable the external keys when the FOMA terminal is folded**

▶Repeat step 1

"KEY" disappears.

Using Face Authentication

<Face authentication>

Take a photo of your face to identify you when activating/releasing the following functions. Store a name of the image as a keyword used in case that the authentication fails.

- Release Keypad lock
- Release IC card lock
- Activate Reset settings
- Activate Initialize
- Activate Face authentication

- If the front camera is dirty, operation may fail. Wipe off the dirt with a soft cloth before using.
- The identification quality depends on the face status. The quality may be improved with the following measures:

Conditions to lower the identification quality	Measures
There is a big contrast between bright and dark parts because the light is too strong or you are under incandescent light in a dark place, etc.	Move to a place where the face is evenly lighted.
The light shines on your face and the whole face looks white.	
Hair, glasses, mask, etc. hides the characteristics of your face (eyes, nose, mouth, eyebrows, etc.).	Do up your hair or take off your glasses or mask so that your eyes, nose, mouth and eyebrows can be seen clearly.

- The face authentication technology does not guarantee complete identification. NTT DoCoMo shall not be liable for any loss or damage to you arising from use by a third party or authentication failure.

1 MENU ▶"Settings"▶"Lock/Security"▶"Face authentication"▶Enter your security code

2 "ON"▶"OK"

The "New image" screen appears. Read the displayed cautions carefully.



Face authentication

Function menu➡p.138

■ **To enable stored image**

▶"ON"

■ **To cancel Face authentication**

▶"OFF" ▶"YES" or "NO"

3 Adjust your eyes to the guide frame▶● (Record)▶● (Save)

The shot is repeated three times and each shot is saved. If the save or shot is not completed, or finished before shooting 3 images, the already saved shot is deleted, so that no image is stored. When 3 shots are completely saved, the "Edit image name" screen appears.



New image

■ **To cancel shooting halfway**

▶CLR▶"YES"

Continued on next page

4 Enter an image name▶“YES”

The entered image name is used as a keyword when the authentication fails.
An image name can contain 2 to 8 double-byte or 4 to 16 single-byte characters.

■ **To edit an image name**

▶Select “NO” or an image name

5 Use ◎ to select ☐ (checkbox)▶ (Finish)

The checked (☑) items are subject to Face authentication. Deselect items for which you do not want to use Face authentication.

FUNC **Face authentication screen (p.137)**

New image……Stores images.

Edit image name……Edits the image name.

Delete image……Deletes images.

Function to reset……Selects the function to release using Face authentication. “About multiple-choice”→p.38

NOTE

- Keep a separate note of the stored image name, which is required when the authentication fails. To prevent others from knowing it, use a character combination that cannot be easily guessed.

● Using Face authentication to release Keypad lock temporarily

If you have stored an image for “Face authentication” and selected “Keypad lock” for “Function to reset”, Face authentication is performed to identify that you are the owner of the FOMA terminal when releasing the lock.

- If the face authentication fails, enter the image name stored as a keyword for “Face authentication” to release the lock.
- To use Face authentication to release IC card lock →p.247

1 On the standby screen▶ (auth.)

2 Position your face so that the whole appears on the display

■ **If the face authentication fails**

▶Enter the image name▶“OK”



3 Enter your security code

The Keypad lock is released temporarily.

Preventing Unwanted Mail Display <Mail box lock/Folder lock>

This function allows you to lock your Inbox, Outbox, Draft mailboxes or other folders so that their contents cannot be viewed by other people without your approval. Boxes or folders locked cannot be opened without entering a security code.

- Once you enter your security code, it remains valid until the mail task is finished, and you can open mail folders without security code even if the mail box is locked.
- The “” icon appears next to locked mailboxes.
- For locked folders, icons such as “” or “” appear before the folder name on the folder list screen.
- When the lock is set to box or folder, mail addresses for which the lock is set are not recorded in the Sent address and Received address lists.

Setting lock for individual mailboxes

1 ▶“Mail Setting”▶“Mail box lock”▶Enter your security code

2 Use ◎ to select a checkbox (☐)

The selected mailbox is ticked.
To deselect the ticked mailbox, select it again.

3 (Finish)

Setting lock for individual folders

1 Inbox/Outbox folder list screen (pp.202, 204)▶Highlight the folder to lock▶ ch (FUNC)▶“Folder lock”▶Enter your security code▶“YES”

■ **To release the lock**

▶Repeat step 1

Restricting Incoming and Outgoing Calls for Specific Phone Numbers <Restrictions>

You can restrict incoming and outgoing calls for each phone number stored in the Phonebook to prevent personal phone calls or nuisance calls.

- You can specify restrictions for up to 20 phone numbers in each directory.
- You cannot set Restrictions for the FOMA card (UIM) phonebook.
- This function is applied to only calls of which caller ID is notified. It is recommended to set “Caller ID request” or “Call setting w/o ID” at the same time.
- You cannot set Call rejection and Call acceptation to the same phone number, or Call forwarding and Voice mail to the same number.
- These settings cannot be used for phonebook entries stored in “Secret” or “Secret data only” mode.
- If you set restrictions for the phone number and then edit or delete that phone number, the restrictions on the selected function are released (however, when “Restrict dialing” is set, you cannot edit or delete the phonebook).
- The setting of “Restrict dialing”, “Call rejection” and “Call acceptation” are also applied to the PushTalk phonebook.

Setting restrictions on dialing and receiving for phone numbers

1 Phonebook detail screen (p.92)▶ ch (FUNC)▶“Restrictions”▶Enter your security code▶Select any item:

Restrict dialing……Restricts outgoing calls to the phone numbers that are not specified. To make a call to the specified phone number, call the number from the phonebook.

Call rejection……Restricts incoming calls from the specified phone number.

Call acceptation……Restricts incoming calls from the phone numbers that are not specified.

Call Forwarding……Forwards incoming calls from the specified phone number regardless of the Call forwarding service setting (Activate/Deactivate).

Voice Mail……Transfers incoming calls from the specified phone number to the Voice mail service center regardless of the Voice mail service setting (Activate/Deactivate).

A star “★” appears next to the selected function.

■ To deselect a selected function

▶Select the function with the star “★”

The function is deselected and the star “★” disappears.

■ To set restrictions on both dialing and receiving for multiple phone numbers

▶Press CLR twice to return to the phonebook list screen▶Select the target entry▶Repeat step 1

Once you press ☎ to return to the standby screen after setting Restrict dialing, you cannot add further Restrictions. To add more restrictions, release Restrictions that have already been set for the phone number and then set the Restrictions again including the unrestricted phone number.

When Restrict dialing is set

- You cannot dial including the specified phone numbers using the Dialed calls and Received calls records. Also, you cannot call numbers other than the specified ones, add to, edit or delete phonebook, exchange data between the FOMA terminal (Phone) and the FOMA card (UIM), or operate phonebook by “UIM operation”.
- The current records of Redial/Dialed calls and Sent address list are deleted after setting the Restrict dialing. However, you can dial or send mails using the records of Redial/Dialed calls or Sent address list that have been stored after setting.

NOTE

- When using 2in1, each Incoming Call mngmt. varies as follows depending on the combination of the mode and Phonebook 2in1 setting:
  - Applies to phone numbers specified in A/Common setting Phonebook in A mode.
  - Applies to phone numbers specified in B/Common setting Phonebook in B mode.
  - Applies to phone numbers specified in all phonebook entries in Dual mode.

  If Restrict dialing is enabled, a call can only be made to a specified phone number regardless of the 2in1 mode.

<Restrict dialing>

- You can still make calls to emergency numbers (110, 119 and 118) when the Restrict dialing is set.

Continued on next page

NOTE

<Call rejection> <Call acceptation>

- The FOMA terminal receives i-mode mail and SMS regardless of the settings of these functions.
- If you receive a call from a number that is specified on Call rejection or from a number that is not specified on Call acceptation, the number is recorded as “Missed calls” in the received calls records and the “Missed call” desktop icon is displayed on the standby screen.
- If you receive a call from a phone number for which Call rejection is set or from a phone number other than the number for which Call acceptation is set, the call is rejected even when the “Voice Mail” and “Call Forwarding” services are “Activate”. However, if the FOMA terminal is turned off or “圏外”or if the ringing time set for “Voice Mail” or “Call Forwarding” is 0 (zero) second, “Voice Mail” or “Call Forwarding” is enabled.

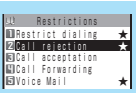
<Call Forwarding> <Voice Mail>

- If you receive a call from the specified phone number, the FOMA terminal rings for about 1 second and the call is forwarded to the designated number or connected to the Voice mail service center.
- If no call forwarding number is designated or if you have not subscribed to the “Call Forwarding” or “Voice Mail” service, calls from the specified phone number are handled as missed calls.

Checking restrictions settings

1 Phonebook list screen (p.91)▶ ch (FUNC)▶“Restrictions”▶Enter your security code

The “Restrictions” icon is displayed.



Restrictions

Function menu➡p.140

FUNC Restrictions screen (p.140)

Check settings……Displays a list of the phonebook entries for which the function is set.

Release settings……Releases the function and the star “★” disappears.

Rejecting Calls from Unidentified Callers

<Call setting w/o ID>

You can accept or reject voice, videophone and PushTalk calls from callers who do not provide the caller ID depending on the reason for no caller ID.

1 MENU▶“Settings”▶“Lock/Security”▶“Call setting w/o ID”▶Enter your security code▶Select any item:

Unknown……Specifies whether to accept or reject calls from callers who are unable to provide the caller ID, such as calls from overseas or calls from ordinary phones sent via a call forwarding service. Some phone companies provide caller IDs.

Payphone……Specifies whether to accept or reject calls dialed from pay phones.

User unset……Specifies whether to accept or reject calls made by callers who withhold their caller IDs.

2 “Accept” or “Reject”

■ **When “Accept” is selected**

▶“Select ring tone” or “Select calling disp.”

- Select the ring tone from “Same as ring tone/ Melody/i-motion/Music/Voice announce/ Random melody/OFF” for “Select ring tone” (when “Same as ring tone” is selected, the “Phone” setting of “Select ring tone” is used).
- Select the calling display from “Same as display/My picture/i-motion” for “Select calling disp.” (when “Same as display” is selected, the “Calling” setting of “Display setting” is used).

■ **When “Reject” is selected**

The call is rejected and the other party hears the on-hold tone.

NOTE

- The ring tone or calling display selected in this function is the setting for voice phone calls without caller ID. When you receive videophone calls without the caller ID, “Videophone” of “Select ring tone” or “V.phone Calling” of “Display setting” is used. When you receive PushTalk calls without the caller ID, “PushTalk” of “Select ring tone” is used.
- When you receive a call from a caller who is set to “Reject”, the call is rejected even when “Voice Mail” or “Call Forwarding” service is set to “Activate”. However, if the FOMA terminal is turned off or “圏外.” or if the ringing time set for “Voice Mail” or “Call Forwarding” is 0 (zero) second, “Voice Mail” or “Call Forwarding” is enabled.

NOTE

- The FOMA terminal receives i-mode mail and SMS regardless of this function.

Muting Ring Tones for Callers Not Stored in the Phonebook

<Ring time(sec.)>

You can set the mute period for the ring tone for voice, videophone and PushTalk calls from the phone number which is not stored in the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook or UIM phonebook (Set mute seconds). You can prevent accidentally dialing numbers, such as nuisance calls that only ring for a short period from Received calls record.

- "Set mute seconds" also works when you receive voice, videophone or PushTalk call without caller ID or when there is another incoming call during a voice, videophone or PushTalk call.
- You cannot set "Set mute seconds" when "Reject unknown" is set to "Reject".

1 MENU ▶"Settings"▶"Incoming call"▶"Ring time(sec.)"▶Select any item:

Set mute seconds

ON……Enters the time for which the ring tone is muted before starting up (01 to 99 seconds).

OFF……Sets the time for which the ring tone is muted before starting up to 0 second.

Missed calls display……Specifies whether to record received calls for which no ring tone sounded to the missed calls record.

NOTE

- When you receive a call from someone who is stored in the phonebook as a secret data, the FOMA terminal operates as specified in this function.
- If the mute time is longer than the ringing time for the Record message function, the FOMA terminal switches directly to Record message without ringing first. To have the FOMA terminal ring before it records a message, make sure that the ringing time for Record message is longer than the mute time. The same applies to the ringing times for Voice Mail, Call Forwarding and Automatic answer setting.

Rejecting Calls from Callers Not Stored in the Phonebook

<Reject unknown>

You can reject calls from phone numbers that are not stored in the FOMA terminal (Phone) or FOMA card (UIM) phonebook.

- This function is applied to only calls of which caller ID is notified. It is recommended to set "Caller ID request" or "Call setting w/o ID" at the same time.
- You cannot set "Reject unknown" when "Set mute seconds" of "Ring time(sec.)" is set to "ON".

1 MENU ▶"Settings"▶"Lock/Security"▶"Reject unknown"▶Enter your security code▶"Reject"

■ To receive a call from a caller who is not stored in the phonebook

▶"Accept"

NOTE

- When you receive a call from someone who is stored in the phonebook as a secret data, the call is not rejected regardless of this setting.
- When "Reject" is selected in this function, the caller hears the busy tone even if you have activated "Voice Mail" or "Call Forwarding". However, if the FOMA terminal is turned off or " " or if the ringing time set for "Voice Mail" or "Call Forwarding" is 0 (zero) second, the caller does not hear the busy tone and is connected to the "Voice Mail service center" or the forwarding number.
- The FOMA terminal receives i-mode mail and SMS regardless of this function.
- When using 2in1, Reject unknown works as follows depending on the mode:
  - Rejects phone numbers other than A/Common setting Phonebook in A mode.
  - Rejects phone numbers other than B/Common setting Phonebook in B mode.
  - Rejects all phone numbers other than phonebook entries in Dual mode.

Disabling Making/Receiving Calls, etc. <Self mode>

You can set the FOMA terminal not to make or receive voice, videophone or PushTalk calls, use i-mode, or send or receive mails. This is useful when you want to use the FOMA terminal without worrying about interruptions such as incoming voice, videophone or PushTalk calls.

- You can make voice calls to emergency numbers (110, 119 and 118) even when Self mode is set. Note that making a voice call at an emergency number cancels Self mode.

1 MENU ▶**"Settings"▶"Lock/Security"▶"Self mode"▶"YES"**

Self mode is set and "self" appears.

■ **To cancel Self mode**

▶Repeat step 1

Self mode is canceled and "self" disappears.

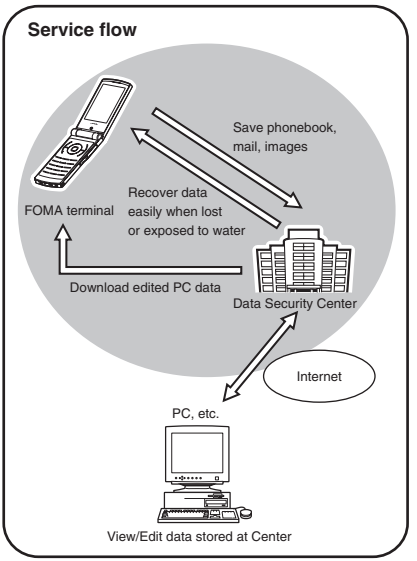
When Self mode is set

- Received voice or videophone calls are not recorded in the "Received calls" record and the "Missed call" desktop icon also does not appear on the standby screen.
- MessageR/F or i-mode mails sent to you are kept at the i-mode center and SMS are kept at the SMS center.
- The caller of the voice or videophone call is notified with a guidance or message that the FOMA terminal is in out of signal range or is turned off. When you use the "Voice Mail" or "Call Forwarding" service, you can use the same service provided when the FOMA terminal is turned off.
- If the PushTalk call is made, a "Disconnected" response is sent to the members.
- Data exchange via Infrared data exchange/iC exchange or OBEX, packet communication or 64K data communication with a PC connected, user authentication by IC card authentication are also unavailable. However, you can read and write data on the IC card using the Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli.

Data Security Service <Data Security Service>

Data Security Service is a service which enables you to back up the phonebook, images and mails stored on your FOMA terminal (hereinafter referred to as "stored data") to the DoCoMo Data Security Center. Even if you lost the stored data by losing your FOMA terminal or getting it wet, you can use the i-mode to restore the data stored at the Data Security Center to your new FOMA terminal. Phonebook data on the FOMA terminal and at Data Security Center can be updated automatically and periodically. Besides, you can easily edit the stored data at the Data Security Center on My DoCoMo page on your PC and save the edited data on the FOMA terminal.

* For details on how to use the Data Security Service, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".



- Data Security Service is a pay service you need subscription (you need to subscribe to i-mode service in advance).
- Refer to the following pages for storing operations of Data Security Service:
  - "Storing the Phonebook at the Data Security Center" →p.98
  - "Storing mails at the Data Security Center" →p.209

• “Storing images at the Data Security Center” →p.278

Other Security Settings

Apart from those explained in this chapter, there are functions/services relating to security settings as shown below.

Purpose	Function/ Service name	Ref. page
To prevent others from using the IC card functions	IC card lock setting	p.247
To avoid “nuisance phone calls” such as prank phone calls or unsolicited sales phone calls	Nuisance Call Blk	p.375
To reject calls that has no caller ID	Caller ID Request	p.375
To send data securely by using the user certificate service * Only available on sites that support FirstPass	FirstPass	p.181
To update FOMA terminal software when necessary	Software Update	p.443
To protect the FOMA terminal against malicious data	Scanning function	p.449
To accept only necessary mails when receiving i-mode mails	Receive option	p.197
To leave/hear the information about the safety using i-mode at the time of disaster	“i-mode Disaster Message Board” service	Refer to “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode] FOMA version”
To change/confirm your mail address	Change/ Confirm Mail Address	
To reject mails with URLs	Spam mail prevention (Reject Mail with URL)	
To accept/reject mail from specified domain	Spam Mail Prevention (Reject/ Receive Mail Settings)	
To accept/reject i-mode mail only		
To accept/reject mail from specified address		
To reject SMS	Spam Mail Prevention (SMS Rejection Settings)	Refer to “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode] FOMA version”
To reject i-mode mail from senders who have already sent 200 or more messages from the same i-mode mobile phone in the same day	Reject Mass i-mode Mail Senders	
To reject advertisements	Reject Unsolicited Ad Mail	
To restrict the size of received mail	Limit Mail Size	
To check the status of the mail function settings	Confirm Settings	
To temporarily stop the mail function	Suspend Mail	
To check the approximate location of the lost mobile phone	Keitai-Osagashi Service	

NOTE

- Be careful when calling back to the numbers you do not know. In particular, sending your caller ID to the unknown party may cause unnecessary problems.

<Nuisance Call Blk priority sequence>

- Priority is assigned when Nuisance Call Blk function is set at the same time:
  ①Nuisance Call Blk service
  ②Reject unknown or Ring time(sec.)/Call setting w/o ID/Call rejection

Camera

Before Using the Camera 146
Shooting Still Images ..... Photo mode 152
Shooting Movies ..... Movie mode 156
Capturing Important Scenes ..... Chance capture 158
Using Voice Mode ..... Voice mode 158
Changing the Shooting Settings 158
Using the Bar Code Reader ..... Bar code reader 159
Scanning Text ..... Text reader 162

Copyright Information

Take care not to infringe on the copyrights when you duplicate or edit the images you shot or recorded using the FOMA terminal. Also take care not to infringe on the portrait rights by using or altering another person's portrait without his or her permission. It may be prohibited to shoot or record the stage performance, entertainment or exhibition even if you only want to enjoy it personally.

Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones.

Before Using the Camera

You can use the FOMA terminal's built-in camera to shoot photos (still images) and movies.

- You cannot activate the camera function or shoot images when the FOMA terminal is folded.

Using the camera

To set to camera mode

There are 4 ways as follows:

① Select the desktop icon ( ) on the standby screen
② Press ▼ (📷) (for 1 second or longer) on the standby screen
③ Select "Camera" from the main menu or Light Menu
④ Select "Camera" from "LifeKit" on the main menu.

- When there is no key operation for more than about 3 minutes, the camera mode ends automatically.

NOTE

- To paste the desktop icon again after deleting, select "Camera" in step ③ or ④ above and press ch (FUNC) to select "Add desktop icon".

To switch between the rear camera and front camera

Press ch (FUNC) in the shooting screen, then select "Front camera" or "Rear camera" from the function menu.

■Rear camera

This camera is useful for taking pictures of other people, animals or scenery. What you see is what you get on the screen (Normal display: photographed as it is displayed on the screen). The close-up mode is available for the rear camera. →p.146

You can also use the Auto focus function to shoot still images. →p.152

■Front camera

Use this camera to take a picture of yourself. The image is displayed as if you are looking in the mirror (Mirror display). The shot image is reversed from the displayed image.

Close-up

- To take close-up photos, select "Close-up" from "Photo mode" (p.151) under "Camera Settings". The camera is focused on an object approximately 10 cm away from the rear lens.

When using the camera

■Notes on shooting

- The camera of the FOMA terminal is made with the extremely high-precision technology. However, it may include lines or spots that look dark or bright. Noises such as white lines may also appear on the photographed images particularly when shooting in very poorly lit locations.
- Before shooting, wipe the lens clean with a soft cloth. Fingerprints or grease spots on the lens could prevent the camera from focusing properly and cause blurred images.
- Take care not to press the lens with excessive force when folding the FOMA terminal. This may cause malfunction.
- Image quality may be adversely affected if the FOMA terminal is left in a hot location for a long period of time.
- When activating the rear camera, you may hear machine noise. However, this is not malfunction.
- The color tones and brightness levels in still images and movies shot may differ from those of the actual object.
- Do not leave the camera under the direct sunlight for a long period of time or shoot the sun or a powerful lamp directly. This could lead to the discoloration of the photographed images or cause the camera to malfunction.
- Take care that your fingers, hair, or the strap do not cover the lens when you shoot images.
- The shooting uses a large amount of the battery. It is recommended to turn off the camera immediately after you finish shooting. The screen may look dark or blurred if you shoot images when the battery is low.
- You cannot change or delete the volume of the shutter sound, Auto timer tone and AF lock sound.
- When shooting a still image, keep the FOMA terminal steady until it emits the shutter sound and finishes loading the shot image.
- When you take pictures indoors, flickering may appear due to the effect of fluorescent lighting, etc. In such situations, setting "Flicker reduction" to the power supply frequency for the region may help to reduce flicker.
- After you display the shooting screen, switch the camera modes or change the camera settings, it may take time for the brightness or color tone to adapt.

■**Flashing of the incoming illumination**

- The Illumination lights up or flashes as follows when shooting images:
  - In shooting screen: Flashes in red (about 1.5 seconds interval)
  - Shooting still images, shooting continuously: Lights in blue (about 3 seconds)
  - Shooting movies, recording in Voice mode: Flashes in red (with a period of about 1 second)
  - Auto timer activated: Flashes in blue→p.159

■**Saving the still images, movies, etc. you shot**

- The images, movies, etc. are saved in the folder specified in “Select to save”.
- You can save the still images, movies, etc. you shot automatically when “Auto save set” is set to “ON”.
- If the battery is low, you may not be able to save the still images, movies, etc. you shot.
- If the FOMA terminal is turned off or the battery pack is removed while saving the files, incomplete files may be saved.

■**When the shooting is interrupted**

- Shooting is interrupted when you receive a voice/videophone/PushTalk call or 64K data communication, or alarm notification (Alarm, Schedule or To Do list), or operate other functions.
  - When shooting images continuously or shooting movies, the shooting is interrupted and respective screens appear. When you exit from these screens, the camera screen reappears so that you can save the data you shot before receiving calls or alarm notification.
  - When adjusting the zoom or brightness of the camera, the adjusting setting is set and the screen returns to the camera menu.
  - The Auto timer is canceled.
- Shooting is not interrupted in the following cases:
  - When you receive mails or MessageR/F when using the camera (including the case that the shooting screen appears), the reception result screen does not appear and the shooting mode continues regardless of the “Receiving setting”.
  - When “Alarm setting” is set to “Operation preferred”, you can continue the shooting, make settings or operate the Auto timer without interruption even when the alarm specified time is reached.

■**When using the microSD memory card**

- When saving the data on the microSD memory card, “  ” flashes. Do not remove the microSD memory card during this period. This may cause a malfunction to the FOMA terminal or microSD memory card.
- When “microSD” is selected in “Select to save” and there is no folder in the microSD memory card, a folder is created automatically.
- If the number of files in the microSD folder selected in “Select to save” has reached the maximum, you cannot set to the folder.

Number of stored items and shooting time

Still images and video shot by the FOMA N905iμ can be stored in the terminal or on a microSD memory card.

- The approximate numbers of still images shot by the FOMA N905iμ that can be stored (saved) are as shown in Table 1 (p.148).
- Table 2 shows the approximate shooting time for a movie (p.148).

Continued on next page

[Table 1] The approximate number of still images that can be saved by destination to save
(The number of images are approximate number.)

Quality setting	2M	1M	Screen*1	VGA	CIF	Screen*2	QVGA V.	QCIF	Sub QCIF
Destination: N905iμ (Phone)									
Super Fine	339	339	407	407	994	1,000	1,000	1,000	1,000
Fine	407	407	1,000	1,000	1,000	1,000	1,000	1,000	1,000
Normal	668	668	1,000	1,000	1,000	1,000	1,000	1,000	1,000
Destination: microSD (64M bytes)									
Super Fine	99	99	118	118	291	542	542	948	948
Fine	118	118	542	542	948	948	948	1,897	1,897
Normal	189	189	948	948	1,265	1,265	1,265	3,795	3,795

• The number of images that can be saved varies depending on the shooting environment, etc.
*1 : W480 x H854 dots
*2 : W240 x H427 dots

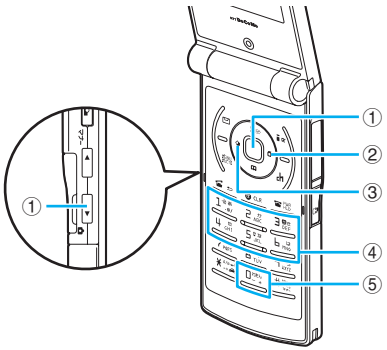
[Table 2] The approximate shooting time that can be saved by destination to save
(The time is the approximate time.)

Image Size	File size	Movie type set	Available shooting time for a single movie				Available total shooting time			
			Quality setting				Quality setting			
			Long dur. mode	Normal	Fine mode	Super Fine mode	Long dur. mode	Normal	Fine mode	Super Fine mode
Destination: N905iμ (Phone)										
VGA	2MB	Normal	31s	16s	8s	5s	51min.	27min.	13min.	500s
		Video	32s	16s	8s	5s	53min.	27min.	13min.	500s
		Voice	22min.				2,200min.			
Wide (640×360)	2MB	Normal	41s	21s	10s	7s	68min.	35min.	16min.	11min.
		Video	43s	21s	10s	7s	71min.	35min.	16min.	11min.
		Voice	22min.				2,200min.			
QVGA	2MB	Normal	80s	33s	16s	8s	133min.	55min.	27min.	13min.
		Video	85s	34s	16s	8s	141min.	56min.	27min.	13min.
		Voice	22min.				2,200min.			
QCIF	500KB	Normal	103s	52s	20s	15s	686min.	346min.	133min.	100min.
		Video	125s	63s	21s	16s	833min.	420min.	140min.	106min.
		Voice	328s				2,133min.			
	2MB	Normal	423s	215s	80s	61s	705min.	358min.	133min.	101min.
		Video	512s	256s	85s	64s	853min.	426min.	141min.	106min.
		Voice	22min.				2,200min.			
Sub QCIF	500KB	Normal	179s	66s	29s	20s	1,193min.	440min.	193min.	133min.
		Video	250s	83s	31s	21s	1,666min.	553min.	206min.	140min.
		Voice	328s				2,133min.			
	2MB	Normal	12min.	272s	117s	80s	1,200min.	453min.	195min.	133min.
		Video	17min.	341s	128s	85s	1,700min.	568min.	213min.	141min.
		Voice	22min.				2,200min.			
Destination: microSD (64M bytes)										
VGA	2MB	Normal	32s	16s	8s	5s	17min.	512s	256s	160s
		Video	32s	16s	8s	5s	17min.	512s	256s	160s
		Voice	22min.				704min.			
	Long time	Normal	16s	518s	261s	174s	16min.	518s	264s	174s
		Video	17s	524s	262s	175s	17min.	524s	262s	175s
		Voice	120min.				704min.			
Wide (640×360)	2MB	Normal	42min.	21s	10s	7s	22min.	11min.	320s	224s
		Video	43min.	21s	10s	7s	22min.	11min.	320s	224s
		Voice	22min.				704min.			
	Long time	Normal	22min.	11min.	325s	217s	22min.	11min.	325s	217s
		Video	22min.	11min.	328s	218s	22min.	11min.	328s	218s
		Voice	120min.				704min.			

Image Size	File size	Movie type set	Available shooting time for a single movie				Available total shooting time			
			Quality setting				Quality setting			
			Long dur. mode	Normal	Fine mode	Super Fine mode	Long dur. mode	Normal	Fine mode	Super Fine mode
QVGA	2MB	Normal	82s	33s	16s	8s	43min.	17min.	512s	256s
		Video	85s	34s	16s	8s	45min.	18min.	512s	256s
		Voice	22min.				704min.			
	Long time	Normal	43min.	17min.	518s	261s	43min.	17min.	518s	261s
		Video	45min.	18min.	524s	262s	45min.	18min.	524s	262s
		Voice	120min.				704min.			
QCIF	500KB	Normal	103s	52s	20s	15s	225min.	114min.	42min.	32min.
		Video	125s	63s	21s	16s	273min.	136min.	45min.	34min.
		Voice	328s				704min.			
	2MB	Normal	423s	215s	80s	61s	225min.	114min.	42min.	32min.
		Video	512s	256s	85s	64s	273min.	136min.	45min.	34min.
		Voice	22min.				704min.			
	Long time	Normal	120min.	114min.	42min.	32min.	225min.	114min.	42min.	32min.
		Video	120min.	120min.	45min.	34min.	273min.	136min.	45min.	34min.
		Voice	120min.				704min.			
Sub QCIF	500KB	Normal	176s	66s	29s	20s	384min.	145min.	62min.	42min.
		Video	250s	83s	31s	21s	546min.	182min.	68min.	45min.
		Voice	328s				704min.			
	2MB	Normal	12min.	272s	117s	80s	384min.	145min.	62min.	42min.
		Video	17min.	341s	128s	85s	546min.	182min.	68min.	45min.
		Voice	22min.				704min.			
	Long time	Normal	120min.	120min.	62min.	42min.	384min.	145min.	62min.	42min.
		Video	120min.	120min.	68min.	45min.	546min.	182min.	68min.	45min.
		Voice	120min.				704min.			

- The time is the approximate time that can be shot with the file size.
- The available shooting time varies depending on the shooting environment, etc.

Key operation for camera mode



① (●)/[▼] (📷): Shutter
② ⟳: Zoom (telephoto)
③ ⟲: Zoom (wide angle)

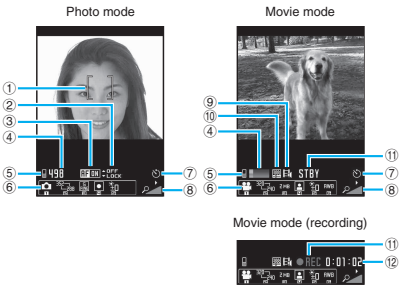
④ [1] to [6]: Displays the following shooting menu respectively
- [1]: CHG camera-mode
- [2]: Select size
- [3]: Quality setting or File size setting
- [4]: Photo mode
- [5]: Brightness
- [6]: White balance

●Some menus are not displayed, depending on the camera mode.

⑤ [0]: Displays the explanation of the keys

Guide to the shooting screen

The shooting screens display the icons of the Camera settings. Each icon means as follows:



① **Focus frame (p.152)**

……Auto focus frame (AFchange: “ON”)

- White: Before focusing
- Dotted white: Focusing
- Green: Focused
- Dotted red: Focusing failed

② **AF operation guidance (p.152)**

OFF LOCK ……Operation guidance for AFchange and focus lock

③ **Auto focus status (p.152)**

AF ON ……AFchange is set to “ON”

AF OFF ……AFchange is set to “OFF”

④ **Remaining storage count/Memory info**[*1]

123 ……Storage capacity

- White: 11 or more
- Yellow: 10 or less
- Red: No memory available

…… The available capacity that can be saved against the total capacity

- Blue: 500K bytes or more remaining
- Yellow: Less than 500K bytes remaining
- Red: No memory available[*2]

*1 : The displayed count and the capacity are only an approximate figure. This icon does not appear when the destination to save is set to microSD and no microSD memory card is inserted.

*2 : Shooting is available except when shooting movies with “File size” set to “Long time”. The shot is saved or overwrites the data in the FOMA terminal (Phone)/microSD memory card after shooting.

⑤ **Select to save (pp.153, 157)**

SD ……The destination set to save (FOMA terminal (Phone)/microSD memory card)

⑥ **Shooting menu (p.151)**

……The settings of the shooting menu

⑦ **Auto timer (p.159)**

……The Auto timer is set

⑧ **Zoom (p.158)**

……The zoom settings

⑨ **Movie type set (p.157)**

……Normal (Video and Voice)

……Video

……Voice

⑩ **Quality setting (p.157)**

……Long dur. mode

……Normal

……Fine mode

……Super Fine mode

⑪ **Shooting status**

REC ……Movie shooting

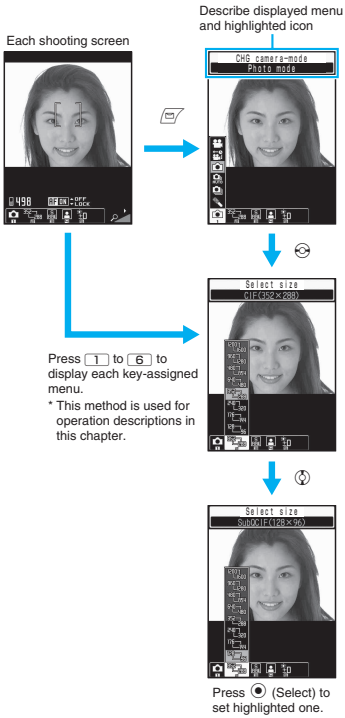
STBY ……Movie shooting standby

⑫ **Shooting time**

0:03:38 ……Remaining time (hour: minutes: seconds)

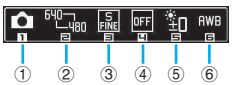
Selecting the shooting menu

When you display the shooting menu on the screen, you can set various settings only by selecting icons.



Icons and settings of the shooting menu

- The selectable items are different depending on the camera mode.
- Some menus are unavailable depending on the shooting condition (when using the camera from other function such as mail function, when using a front camera, etc.)



① **CHG camera-mode**

- Movie mode……p.156
- Chance capture……p.158
- Photo mode……p.152
- A-Continuous mode……p.154
- M-Continuous mode……p.154
- Voice mode……p.158

② **Select size**

Photo mode

(Default: Screen (240 × 427) for the front camera, Screen (480 × 854) for the rear camera)

1200 1600 ~ 128 96 ……2M (1,200 × 1,600) - SubQCIF (128 × 96)

480 480 / 240 240 …… JAVA (480 × 480)*/ JAVA (240 × 240)*

*: Displayed only when the camera is launched from i-αppli.

Movie mode (Default: QCIF)

640 480 ~ 128 96 ……VGA (640 × 480) - SubQCIF (128 × 96)

③ **Quality setting/File size setting**

Photo mode (Quality setting)

(Default: Super Fine)

- S FINE Super Fine……Super Fine mode (File size: large)
- FINE Fine……Fine mode (File size: medium)
- NORM Normal……Normal mode (File size: small)

Movie mode (File size setting)

(Default: 2MB or smaller)

- 500 KB 500KB……Up to 500K bytes
- 2 MB 2MB……Up to 2M bytes
- FILE Long time……Long time (microSD only)

④ **Photo mode**

Photo mode (Default: Auto)

Movie mode (Default: Portrait)

- Auto……Automatic shooting mode
- Portrait……Suitable for shooting portraits
- Scenery…… Suitable for shooting scenery (including night views)
- Close-up……Suitable for close-up shooting
- Sports mode…… Suitable for shooting moving objects
- Night mode…… Suitable for shooting portraits, etc. in the dark
- OFF OFF……Turns off the shooting effects

* Only “Portrait”, “Scenery” or “Close-up” can be set for Movie mode.
* Only “Portrait”, “Night mode” or “OFF” can be set for the front camera in Photo mode.

Continued on next page

* The setting is fixed to “Portrait” for the front camera in Movie mode.
* When you use and end the videophone, Photo mode changes to “Portrait” regardless of mode set before talking.

⑤ **Brightness** (±0 is the default setting when you launch the camera)
/ / / / ……Brightness of the image (+2/+1/±0/-1/-2)

⑥ **White balance** (Default: Auto)
In Photo mode, this can be set only when “Photo mode” is set to “OFF”.
AWB Auto……Compensates the tone automatically
Fine…… Suitable for shooting outside on a sunny day
Cloudy……Suitable for shooting outside on a cloudy day or in the shade
Light bulb……Suitable for shooting under incandescent light
Fluorescent lamp……Suitable for shooting under fluorescent light

Shooting Still Images
<Photo mode>

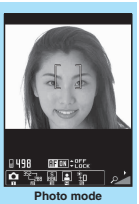
● When the camera is activated, Auto focus is set to “ON”.
“Auto focus shooting”→p.152

Shooting

1 On the standby screen▶●▶Select “ ”

The “Photo mode shooting” screen appears.

■ **To shoot with Focus fixed**
▶⏱
Auto focus changes to OFF (AF OFF).
Auto focus switches between ON/OFF each time you press ⏱.


Photo mode
Function menu➡p.153

2 Point the camera at the object ▶● (Record)

The “Photo mode check” screen appears.


Photo mode check
Function menu➡p.153

■ **To shoot images with Auto focus lock**
▶Confirm that the Auto focus is ON (AF ON)▶Position the object you want to focus on in the center of the focus frame and press ○ ▶Move the focus frame to the center of the picture and press ● (Record)
When the focus lock is completed, the focus frame becomes green and auto focus sound is played.
If the focus lock fails, the focus lock becomes dotted red. Press ○ again to retry the focus lock.

■ **To retake the shot**
▶CLR▶“YES”

3 ● (Save)

NOTE
● Image quality may be degraded by the image size.

● Auto focus shooting

The Auto focus function is available when you shoot still images with the rear camera.

■ **Auto focus shooting (Auto focus ON)**
When you release the shutter, the focus is automatically adjusted on the object in the center of the screen. When the shutter is pressed, the focus frame changes to dotted white line and the focus is adjusted. When the image is focused, the focus frame turns into green and the image is shot. When the image is not focused properly, the focus frame turns into dotted red line and the image is shot.

■ **Focus fixed (Auto focus OFF)**
Shoots images without using the auto focus.
You can quickly shoot a still image without missing the shutter chance.

■ **Shooting still images with AF lock (Auto focus ON)**
When an object you want to shoot is off-centered on the screen, you can manually focus on the object and change the composition.

NOTE

- Keep a distance of at least 10 cm from an object when using the auto focus function.
- The object may not be properly focused when:
  - It is dark
  - The object is poorly contrasted (there is little difference between brightness and darkness)
  - There are close objects and remote objects seen through the lens
  - There is a light or similar feature in the shooting area
  - The object is moving
  - You are moving the FOMA terminal
- It may take some time to lock the focus.

Photo mode shooting screen FUNC (p.152)/Continuous shooting screen (p.154)

Front camera⇔Rear camera[*1]……Switches between front camera and rear camera.

CHG camera-mode……Changes the camera mode.

Select size/Quality setting……Sets the same setting as the shooting menu (p.151).

AFchange[*2]……Turns on/off the auto focus on the rear camera.

Interval/Number[*3] ……Sets the shooting interval and the number of images you want to take in the continuous mode. →p.155

Camera Settings

Photo mode……Sets the same setting as the shooting menu (p.151).

Brightness……Adjusts the brightness for shooting in 5 steps "-2 - ±0 - +2" using ⊙.
The brightness is automatically specified if you do not press any key for 2 seconds.
"±0" is the default setting when you launch the camera.

White balance……Sets the same setting as the shooting menu (p.152).

Color mode set……Selects the effect for the movie from "Normal/Sepia/Monochrome".

Flicker[*2] ……Avoids flicker on the photographed images. Selects from "Auto/Mode 1(50Hz)/Mode 2(60Hz)".

Shutter sound (Default: Sound 1)……Sets the shutter sound.

Auto timer →p.159

Select frame……Sets the frame for superimposed images. →p.156

Auto save set

ON……Saves the image automatically to the folder specified in "Select to save" without displaying the Image checking screen when you shoot an image.

OFF (default)……Displays the image checking screen when you shoot an image.

Select to save (Default: "Camera" on Phone)……Sets the folder to save the shot image.

File restriction (Default: File unrestricted)……Specifies whether to allow redistribution of the shot image. →p.276

Memory info……Displays the image storage capacity.

Help……Displays the shooting guide.

Attach location

From position loc.……Acquires your current location information and adds it to the image.

From loc. history……Adds the location information retrieved from the Location history to the image.

Loc. info detail……Checks the details of the added location information (date and time, latitude, longitude and geodetic system).

Delete loc. Info……Deletes the added location information.

*1 : This function is available only for Photo mode shooting screen.
*2 : Cannot be operated/set for the front camera.
*3 : This function is available only for the continuous shooting screen.

NOTE

<Photo mode>
- The auto focus function is unavailable when shooting in "Sports mode" or "Night mode".

<Shutter sound>
- When Manner mode is set ("VM tone" set to "OFF"), the FOMA terminal does not play the shutter sound for confirmation.
- You cannot set the downloaded melody as the shutter sound. In addition, you cannot change the volume of the shutter sound.

<Memory info>
- The displayed data size is only an approximation.

Photo mode checking screen FUNC (p.152)

Save……Saves the images to the folder specified in "Select to save".

Mirror save……Inverts the left and right of the displayed image and saves the image to the folder specified in the "Select to save" setting.

Continued on next page

Compose message*……"Composing an i -mode mail message or Deco-mail message using the still image" →p.156
You can also compose an i-mode mail or Deco-mail by pressing ✉ (MAIL) on the Photo mode checking screen.

Edit image……Adds a frame or effect to the image. "Editing Images"→p.280

Set as display……Sets the still image to the standby screen, etc.
"Changing the Display"→p.107
"Setting the image sent during videophone calls"→p.74

Change frame……"Shooting framed images"→p.156

Mirror display⇔Normal display……Selects the checking screen display from Normal display or Mirror display.

Select to save (Default: "Camera" on Phone)……Sets the folder to save the shot image.

File restriction (Default: File unrestricted)……Specifies whether to allow redistribution of the shot image.→p.276

Attach location

- **From position loc.**……Acquires your current location information and adds it to the image.
- **From loc. history**……Adds the location information retrieved from the Location history to the image.
- **Loc. info detail**……Checks the details of the added location information (date and time, latitude, longitude and geodetic system).
- **Delete loc. Info**……Deletes the added location information.

Cancel……Deletes the photographed image and returns to the photo mode shooting screen.

*: When 2in1 is in B mode, this function is not available.

NOTE

<Edit image>
- Selecting "Edit image" changes the display to the Normal display.
- Images larger than 1M (1,280 × 960) cannot be edited.

<Set as display>
- Images larger than 1M (960 × 1,280) cannot be set as display. If the file size exceeds 100K bytes, the image cannot be set other than Stand-by display or Wake-up display.
- The still images to be set to the standby screen are saved to the folder set in "Select to save". However, when set to "microSD", the images are saved to the Camera folder under My pictures of the FOMA terminal (Phone) (the images are not saved on the microSD memory card).

Shooting continuously <Continuous mode>

You can shoot up to 20 still images continuously using the rear camera. There are two types of continuous shooting: A-Continuous mode (Auto) and M-Continuous mode (Manual).
- A-Continuous mode enables you to set the number of images and the interval. Once you release the shutter, the FOMA terminal automatically shoots images at the set interval. The Auto focus function is available only for the first shot in the A-continuous mode. The second and subsequent shots are shot with the focus point placed for the first shot.
- M-Continuous mode enables you to shoot images for the set number, releasing the shutter for one by one. You can change the auto focus settings for each shot while shooting in M-continuous mode.
- Images can be shot with sizes of CIF (352 × 288), Screen (240 × 427), QVGA V. (240 × 320), QCIF (176 × 144), and SubQCIF (128 × 96).
- You can enjoy the continuously shot images as an animation after putting them into an original animation.
- Opening or folding the FOMA terminal terminates continuous shooting.

1 Photo mode screen (p.152)▶ 1▶"AUTO" or "M"

The "Continuous mode" screen appears.

Shot number/ Max. shot count



Continuous mode (Ex.: Manual)

Function menu➡p.153

■ **To shoot with Focus fixed**
▶⏱
Auto focus changes to OFF (AF OFF).
Auto focus switches between ON/OFF each time you press ⏱.

2 Point the camera at the object▶● (Cont./Record)

■ **To shoot images with Auto focus lock**
"Shooting" Step 2→p.152

■ **To stop continuous shooting**
A-Continuous mode:
▶☎▶"NO"
M-Continuous mode: ▶CLR
The shooting is finished and the continuous mode check screen appears.



Continuous mode check

Function menu➡p.155

■ **To select the image to save**

Select the image to save before step 3.

▶Use ⊕ to move the frame to the image that you want to save▶● (Select)

"☑" is attached to the selected image.

Repeat the step to select images.

To cancel selection, select the image to cancel.

"☑" disappears.

■ **To check the images in detail**

▶Use ⊕ to move the frame to the image you want to check▶✉ (Detail)

Use ⊕ to change the image to check.

■ **To save only 1 still image displayed in detail**

▶● (Save)



Continuous mode detail check

Function menu➡p.156

3 ch (FUNC)▶Select the saving method

Select "Store selection", "Store all" or "Store all & anime".→p.155

The image is saved to the folder specified in "Select to save".

If you select "Store selection", the "Continuous shooting check" screen appears excluding the saved image after saving the image.

- Press 📷 (🖼 BLU) briefly (less than 1s) on the continuous shooting check screen to select and save. Press 📷 (BLU) or 📷 (🖼 BLU) for 1 second or longer to save all.

NOTE

- If you shoot strong light or moving object in A-Continuous mode, the interval may become longer than the specified one.

● Setting the shooting interval and number of images

1 Continuous mode screen (p.154)▶ ch (FUNC)▶"Interval/Number"▶ Select any item:

Shot interval (Default: 0.5 seconds)……Selects the interval for shooting images from "0.5/1.0/2.0 (seconds)".

Cannot be set for M-Continuous mode.

Shot number (Default: 5)……Sets the number of images (05 to 20 images in 2 digits).

The maximum number of images varies by the image size. When the image size is CIF (352 × 288), the number of shots is automatically set to 4 and cannot be set. You can set only 5 to 10 images when the image size is Screen (240 × 427), QVGA V. (240 × 320).

2 After setting is finished, press CLR▶ CLR

The continuous mode screen reappears.

FUNC Continuous mode check screen (p.154)

Store selection……Saves the still image marked with a checkbox (☑).

Store all……Saves all the still images in normal or mirror display.

Store all & anime……Saves all the still images you shot in normal or mirror display, and stores as the Original animation.

Select this……Selects the still image indicated by the frame and marks the checkbox of the image (☑).

Select all……Selects all the still images you shot and marks the checkboxes of the images (☑).

Release this……Releases the still image indicated by the frame and releases the checkbox of the image (☑).

Release all……Releases all the still images and releases the checkboxes of the images (☑).

Mirror display⇔Normal display……Selects the checking screen display from Normal display or Mirror display.

Select to save (Default: "Camera" on Phone)……Sets the folder to save the shot image.

File restriction (Default: File unrestricted)……Specifies whether to allow redistribution of the image with ☑.→p.276

Restriction all (Default: File unrestricted)……Specifies whether to allow redistribution of all the shot images.→p.276

Attach location

- **From position loc.**……Acquires your current location information and adds it to the image.
- **From loc. history**……Adds the location information retrieved from the Location history to the image.
- **Loc. info detail**……Checks the details of the added location information (date and time, latitude, longitude and geodetic system).
- **Delete loc. Info**……Deletes the added location information.

Cancel……Deletes all the photographed images and returns to the continuous shooting screen.

NOTE

<Store all & anime>

- When "Select to save" is set to "microSD", the images are saved to the Camera folder under My pictures of the FOMA terminal (Phone) (the images are not saved on the microSD memory card).

FUNC Continuous shooting detail check screen (p.155)

Save……Saves the images to the folder specified in "Select to save".

Mirror save……Inverts the left and right of the displayed image and saves the image to the folder specified in the "Select to save" setting.

Compose message*……"Composing an i-mode mail message or Deco-mail message using the still image"→p.156
You can also compose an i-mode mail or Deco-mail by pressing ✉ on the Continuous shooting detail checking screen.

Mirror display⇔Normal display……Selects the checking screen display from Normal display or Mirror display.

File restriction (Default: File unrestricted)……Specifies whether to allow redistribution of the shot image.→p.276

*: When 2in1 is in B mode, this function is not available.

Shooting framed images

<Framed photography>

- This function can be used when the image size is Screen (480 × 854), VGA (640 × 480), CIF (352 × 288), Screen (240 × 427), QVGA.V (240 × 320), QCIF (176 × 144), SubQCIF (128 × 96).
- You can use the downloaded frames in addition to the pre-installed ones.

1 Photo mode screen (p.152)▶ch (FUNC)▶"Select frame"▶Select a frame

■ **To cancel the framed image**
▶"OFF"

2 Point the camera at the object▶● (Record)
The "Frame shooting check" screen appears.

■ **To change the frame before saving**
▶ch (FUNC)▶"Change frame"

3 ● (Save)

Composing an i-mode mail message or Deco-mail message using the still image

You can compose an i-mode mail message with the still image you shot attached or insert the still image into the Deco-mail message body.

1 Photo mode check screen (p.152)▶✉ (MAIL)▶Select any item:

Attach image*1

Attach mail……Attaches the image without changing the image size.

QVGA scale down……Attaches the image by changing the image and file size without changing the aspect ratio.

Insert image*2

Insert mail*3……Inserts the image without changing the image size.

SubQCIF scale down……Inserts the image by changing the image and file size without changing the aspect ratio.

*1 : When the image is shot with the image size smaller than QVGA V. (240 × 320), the selection screen of "Attach mail/QVGA scale down" does not appear.
*2 : When the image is shot with the image size of SubQCIF (128 × 96), the selection screen of "Insert mail/SubQCIF scale down" does not appear.
*3 : Cannot be selected when the image size is other than QCIF (176 × 144).

2 Compose the message
Composing and sending i-mode mail→p.188
Composing and sending Deco-mail→p.190

NOTE
- When 2in1 is in B mode, this function is not available.

Shooting Movies

<Movie mode>

- When "File size" is set to "Long time", the shooting ends after saving the shot movie on the microSD memory card.
- The shooting time varies by the conditions.
- You cannot shoot a movie while you are talking on the phone.
- Opening or folding the FOMA terminal terminates movie shooting.

1 Photo mode screen (p.152)▶1▶"🎬"

The "Movie mode" screen appears.



Movie mode
Function menu➡p.157

2 Point the camera at the object▶● (Record)
The shooting starts.
You can zoom in/out during the shooting.

■ **If the file size reaches the limit specified in File size**

▶“OK”

The movie mode checking screen appears.

3 ● **(Stop)**

The shooting terminates and the “Movie mode check” screen appears.



Movie mode check

Function menu➡p.158

■ **To play the movie you shot**

▶ (Play)

■ **To create i-mode mail with the recorded video attached**

▶ (MAIL)▶Compose and send i-mode mail →p.188

■ **To retake the shot**

▶CLR▶“YES”

4 ● **(Save)**

NOTE

- If you perform a key operation such as zoom in/out during the shooting, the operation sound may be recorded.

FUNC Movie mode shooting screen (p.156)

Front camera⇔Rear camera……Switches between front camera and rear camera.

CHG camera-mode……Changes the camera mode.

Select size/File size……Sets the same setting as the shooting menu (p.151).

Quality setting (Default: Normal)……Selects the quality and duration for shooting movies from “Long dur. mode/Normal/Fine mode/Super Fine mode”.
When set to “Long dur. mode”, the shooting time becomes the longest but the image quality becomes the lowest. Contrary, when set to “Super Fine mode”, the image quality becomes the highest but the shooting time becomes the shortest.

Camera Settings

Photo mode*……Sets the same setting as the shooting menu (p.151).

Brightness……Adjusts the brightness for shooting in 5 steps “-2 - ±0 - +2” using ⊙.
The brightness is automatically specified if you do not press any key for 2 seconds.
“±0” is the default setting when you launch the camera.

White balance……Sets the same setting as the shooting menu (p.152).

Color mode set……Selects the effect for the movie from “Normal/Sepia/Monochrome”.

Flicker*……Avoids flicker on the photographed images. Selects from “Auto/Mode 1(50Hz)/Mode 2(60Hz)”.

Shutter sound (Default: Sound 1)……Sets the shutter sound.

Auto timer→p.159

Movie type set

Normal (when the camera is launched)……Records video and voice.

Video……Shoots a movie without any voice.

Voice……Records voice without movies.

Auto save set

ON……Saves the movie automatically to the folder specified in “Select to save” without displaying the checking screen when you shoot a movie.

OFF (default)……Displays the image checking screen when you shoot.

Select to save (Default: “Camera” on Phone)……Sets the folder to save the shot movie or movie with voice only. When saving the movie on the microSD memory card, movie with video is saved in “SD Video folder” and movie with voice only is saved in “Multi media folder”.

File restriction (Default: File unrestricted)……Specifies whether to allow redistribution of the shot movie.→p.276

Memory info……Displays the movie storage capacity.

Help……Displays the guide for shooting movies.

*: Cannot be operated/set for the front camera.

NOTE

<Photo mode>
- The Photo mode is fixed to the Portrait for the front camera.

<Shutter sound>
- When Manner mode is set (“VM tone” set to “OFF”), the FOMA terminal does not play the shutter sound for confirmation.
- You cannot set the downloaded melody as the shutter sound. In addition, you cannot change the volume of the shutter sound.

<Memory info>
- The displayed amount of data is only an approximation.

FUNC Movie mode checking screen (p.157)

Play……Plays the movie you shot.

Save……Saves the movie to the folder specified in "Select to save".

Compose message*……Composes an i-mode mail with the shot movie attached. →p.188

Set as stand-by……Sets the shot movie to the standby screen.

Edit title……Edits the movie title. You can enter up to 9 double-byte or 18 single-byte characters.

Select to save (Default: "Camera" on Phone)……Sets the folder to save the shot movie or movie with voice only. When saving the movie on the microSD memory card, movie with video is saved in "SD Video folder" and movie with voice only is saved in "Multi media folder".

File restriction (Default: File unrestricted)……Specifies whether to allow redistribution of the shot movie. →p.276

Cancel……Deletes the movie and returns to the movie mode screen.

*: When 2in1 is in B mode, this function is not available.

NOTE

<Set as stand-by>

- The movie to set to the standby screen is saved to the folder set in "Select to save". However, when set to "microSD", the movie is saved to the Camera folder under i-motion of the FOMA terminal (Phone).

Capturing Important Scenes <Chance capture>

Even if the available shooting time is reached when shooting a movie, you can continue the shooting until the scene you want to shoot comes.

- The movie you shot is saved for the available shooting time (the default is approx. 3 minutes and 38 seconds) from the end of the movie with the starting point reset to fit that time. The movie shot before that time is not saved.

1 **Photo mode shooting screen (p.152)▶ 1 ▶"[icon]"**

2 **Point the camera at the object▶ ● (Record)**
The shooting starts.
You can zoom in/out during the shooting.
After the available shooting time is reached, the remaining time display flashes.

3 **● (Stop)**
The shooting is finished.

4 **● (Save)**

Using Voice Mode <Voice mode>

You can record your voice without movies.

1 **Photo mode shooting screen (p.152)▶ 1 ▶"[icon]"**
The "Recording start" screen appears.
Function menu of the movie mode screen →p.157

2 **● (Record)**
The recording starts.

3 **● (Stop)**
The recording finished. The "Recording check" screen appears.
Function menu of the movie mode checking screen →p.158

4 **● (Save)**

Changing the Shooting Settings

You can change the camera settings such as the zoom or auto-timer.

Using the zoom

Using the zoom enables you to adjust the image being shot to your desired size.

- For the maximum zoom by image size, see **Table 3** (p.159).
- The zoom is digital.

1 **Each shooting screen▶Use ⊙ to adjust the zoom**
⊙:Zooms in by one step each time you press the key.
⊙:Zooms out by one step to 1× (default) each time you press the key.

NOTE

- "1×" is the default setting when you launch the camera. Changing the image size or camera mode also changes the zoom to "1×".

[Table 3] Maximum zoom rate for each image size

Camera type	Image size	Maximum zoom	
		Photo mode	Movie mode
Rear Camera	2M (1,200 × 1,600) 1M (960 × 1,280)	—	
	Screen (480 × 854)	Approx. 1.8× (16 steps)	—
	VGA (640 × 480)	Approx. 1.8× (16 steps)	
	Wide (640 × 360)	—	Approx. 1.8× (16 steps)
	Java (480 × 480)*	Approx. 2.4× (16 steps)	—
	CIF (352 × 288)	Approx. 3.3× (16 steps)	
	Screen (240 × 427)	Approx. 3.7× (16 steps)	
	QVGA V. (240 × 320)	Approx. 4.9× (16 steps)	
	QVGA (320 × 240)	—	Approx. 3.7× (16 steps)
	JAVA (240 × 240)*	Approx. 4.9× (16 steps)	—
	QCIF (176 × 144)	Approx. 6.7× (16 steps)	
	SubQCIF (128 × 96)	Approx. 9.1× (16 steps)	
Front Camera	VGA (640 × 480)	—	
	Wide (640 × 360)		
	JAVA (480 × 480)*		
	CIF (352 × 288)	Approx. 1.8× (2 steps)	—
	Screen (240 × 427)	—	
	QVGA V. (240 × 320)	Approx. 1.5× (2 steps)	—
	QVGA (320 × 240)	—	Approx. 2.0× (2 steps)
	JAVA (240 × 240)*	—	
	QCIF (176 × 144)	Approx. 2.0× (2 steps)	
	SubQCIF (126 × 96)		

*: Displayed only when the camera is launched from i-αppli.

Using the auto timer

- The Auto timer is reset to “OFF” each time you finish shooting.

1 On each shooting screen▶ch (FUNC)▶“Auto timer”▶“ON”▶Enter the time for the Auto timer (01 to 15 seconds in 2 digits)▶● (Set)

You can also enter the time for the Auto timer by pressing ⏲.

“10 seconds” is the default setting.

If you set the Auto timer

“⏲” appears on the screen to indicate that the Auto timer is set. Pressing ● (Record) plays the Auto timer tone and the Auto timer starts.



The illumination flashes in blue and “⏲” on the screen, ▭ also flashes.

The countdown tone sounds about 5 seconds before the shooting. The incoming call lamp flashes rapidly.

■ To cancel the Auto timer settings

▶ch (FUNC)▶“Auto timer”▶“OFF”

■ To stop the timer while it is running

▶✉ (Quit) or CLR

NOTE

- During the Auto timer countdown, you can shoot manually by pressing ● (Record).
- The Auto timer cannot be used in M-Continuous shooting.
- When shooting with AF lock function, focus the object before activating the Auto timer.

Using the Bar Code Reader

<Bar code reader>

The FOMA terminal can scan JAN codes and QR codes using the rear camera. The scanned data can be used for displaying/copying text, using the functions of Phone To/AV Phone To, Mail To, Web To, i-αppli To, or adding to bookmark/phonebook especially in QR code. The FOMA terminal can also scan the image, melody or ToruCa data to play or save.

- The FOMA terminal can save up to 5 scanned data.
- Hold the FOMA terminal firmly to ensure that it does not shake during the scanning.
- When scanning bar codes, use the rear camera and hold the FOMA terminal about 10 cm away from the scanned code.

Continued on next page

■**JAN codes and QR codes**

●JAN code



A bar code consisting of vertical lines (bars) of various widths and spaces to represent numbers. The FOMA terminal can scan 8-digit (JAN8) and 13-digit (JAN13) bar codes.

* When the FOMA terminal scans the JAN code on the right above, it is displayed as “4942857113068”.

●QR code



A type of two-dimensional codes consisting of the horizontal and vertical patterns to represent numbers, alphabets, kanji, kana or pictographs. Some QR codes express images or melodies. Some data are divided into several QR codes.

* When the FOMA terminal scans the QR code on the right above, it is displayed as 株式会社NTTドコモ (NTT DoCoMo, Inc.).

Scanning codes

1 MENU/HELP▶**“LifeKit”▶“Bar code reader”**

2 Position the JAN code or QR code inside the recognition field

The scanning starts automatically.

The recognition field is expressed using “ ⌜, ⌝, ⌞, ⌟ ” at the corners of the screen. Focus the JAN code or QR code so that the entire code is displayed as big as possible inside the recognition field.



Function menu ➡p.160

It may take time to scan the data.

■**To cancel the scanning**

▶● (Quit)▶“OK”

■**To adjust the zoom**

○: Zooms in.

○: Returns to default.

■**To use auto focus**

▶✉ (AF)

The focus frame changes as follows during scanning:

- White: Before focusing
- Dotted white: Focusing
- Green: Focused
- Dotted red: Focusing failed

■**To scan the data consisting of several QR codes**

▶“OK”▶● (Read)▶Position the QR code inside the recognition field

The FOMA terminal can scan up to 16 QR codes expressing one data.

3 Check the scanned data

■**To discard the scanned data**

▶CLR▶“YES”

4 ch **(FUNC)▶“Store”▶“YES”▶“OK”**

The scanned data is saved.

NOTE

- The FOMA terminal cannot scan a code if it is not a JAN code or QR code. You may be unable to scan some bar code, depending on the size.
- The FOMA terminal may fail to scan the code, depending on the scratch, stain, damage, print quality, the reflection of light or the QR code version.
- You can also run the Bar code reader from the text editing screen. The scanned data is entered in the screen.
- In some cases it may not be possible to save the read image, depending on its image size and file size.
- You cannot save the scanned data to the microSD memory card.

FUNC **Scanning screen (p.160)**

Reading data list……“Using the scanned data”→p.160

Add desktop icon→p.115

Using the scanned data

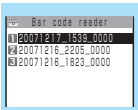
- You can use the following scanned data:

Item	Description
Add to phonebook	Stores the name, reading, phone number, mail address, birthday, postal code, address and memo to the phonebook→p.89
Compose message	Composes an i-mode mail message with the recipient address, subject and message already entered→p.188
Add bookmark	Stores the URL and title to the Bookmark →p.173
Activate i-αppli	Runs the specified i-αppli →p.229
Melody icon	Plays the melody→p.288
Phone number	Calls the number or create SMS using the Phone To (AV Phone To) function →p.178

Item	Description
ToruCa icon	Displays the ToruCa→p.245
Mail address	Composes an i-mode mail message using the Mail To function→p.179
URL	Accesses the site using the Web To function→p.179

1 Scanning screen (p.160)▶ ch (FUNC)▶“Reading data list”

The “Reading data list” screen appears.

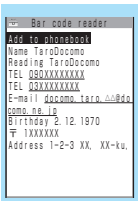


Reading data list

Function menu➡p.161

2 Select the scanned data

The “Reading data detail” screen appears.



Reading data detail

Function menu➡p.161

3 Select any of the displayed items

NOTE

- If the data you want to scan contains characters that cannot be read by the Bar code reader, those characters are converted to spaces (blanks).
- The title of the scanned data will be:
  - Title: yyyymmdd_hhmm_xxxx (Year/month/day_time_4-digit number)
    If the same date and time are set for more than once, the 4-digit numbers are assigned to the data in numerical order.

FUNC Reading data list screen (p.161)

Edit title……Edits the title of the data. You can enter up to 9 double-byte or 18 single-byte characters.

Result……Displays the Bar code reader reading data detail screen.

Delete this/Delete all……Deletes one or all scanned data.

FUNC Reading data detail screen (p.161)

Store……Saves the reading data.

Display list……Displays the Reading data list screen. If the displayed data is not stored yet, a message appears asking whether to delete the data.

Internet……Accesses the site when the URL is highlighted. “Web To function”→p.179

Compose message*……Composes an i-mode mail with the reading data entered when “Compose message” is highlighted.
When the mail address is highlighted, an i-mode mail with the address entered is composed.

Dialing……Calls the phone number when it is highlighted. “Phone To function”→p.178

Add to phonebook……Stores the scanned data to the phonebook when “Add to phonebook” is highlighted.
When a phone number is highlighted, it is stored to the phonebook.
When a mail address is highlighted, it is stored to the phonebook.
“Adding Information to the Phonebook”→p.89

Add bookmark……Stores the reading data to Bookmark when “Add bookmark” is highlighted.
When a URL is highlighted, it is stored to Bookmark.
“Adding bookmarks”→p.173

Save image……Stores the image data to My picture in the Data box.
If you do not set the image to the standby screen, select “NO” after selecting the folder.

Save melody……Stores the melody data to Melody in the Data box.
If you do not set the melody to the ring tone, select “NO” after selecting the folder.

Save ToruCa……Stores the ToruCa to the ToruCa folder.

Start i-αppli……Runs the i-αppli specified in the scanned data when “Start i-αppli” is highlighted.

Copy……Copies the text included in the scanned data. “Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text”→p.367

*: When 2in1 is in B mode, this function is not available.

NOTE

<Internet> <Add bookmark>

- You cannot use the Web To function or add a bookmark if there are unusable characters in the URL.

<Compose message>

- The address cannot be entered if it includes characters that cannot be entered.

Continued on next page

NOTE

<Dialing>

- As the image settings for videophone are not retained after the dialing or talking is finished, set this item each time you make a call.

Scanning Text <Text reader>

Using the camera, the FOMA terminal can scan printed text then add the scanned text data as a phonebook entry or bookmark, or use the data to compose a mail. You can also make a call or access website using the data.

- The FOMA terminal can save up to 8 scanned data.
- Hold the FOMA terminal firmly to ensure that it does not shake during the scanning.
- When scanning text, hold the rear camera about 10 cm away from the text.
- The FOMA terminal can scan vertically written Japanese text.

■Scanning mode

The following are the scan modes. Select the mode suitable for the data to scan:

Item	Description
Card read	Scans the name, phone number, mail address, postal code, address and memo printed on the business card to add to the phonebook.
Compose message	Composes an i-mode message with the scanned recipient address, subject and message entered.
URL	Scans URL, and accesses the site or adds the URL to bookmark.
Mail address	Scans the mail address and composes an i-mode message.
Phone number	Scans the phone number and makes a call.
Free Memo	Scans Japanese or English text to save to Text memo.

■The number of characters that can be scanned

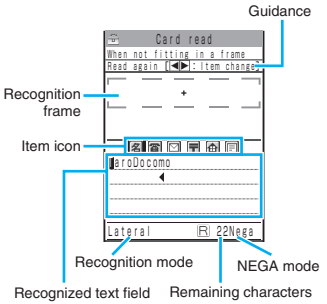
The following table shows the maximum number of characters that can be scanned for each item:

Item		Maximum number of characters that can be scanned
Card read	Name	16 in double-byte, 32 in single-byte
	Phone number	26 in single-byte numbers including #, ＊, +, p (pause), (,), -
	Mail address	50 in single-byte alphabets, numbers and symbols
	Postal code	7 in single-byte
	Address	50 in double-byte, 100 in single-byte
	Memo	100 in double-byte, 200 in single-byte
Compose message	Receiver	50 in single-byte alphabets, numbers and symbols
	Subject	100 in double-byte, 200 in single-byte
	Message	128 in double-byte, 256 in single-byte
URL		256 in single-byte alphabets, numbers and symbols
Mail address		256 in single-byte alphabets, numbers and symbols
Phone number		256 in single-byte numbers including #, (,), -
Free memo		128 in double-byte, 256 in single-byte
Dictionary*	Japanese	32 in double-byte, 64 in single-byte
	English	64 in single-byte

*: This option is available when the text reader is launched from Dictionary.

■Guide to the scanning screen

<Example: Card read mode>



Guidance : Displays the operation.
Recognition frame: Displays the recognition field.
Item icon : Displays the item to scan.
Card read mode: “Name/phone number/mail address/postal code/address/memo”
Compose message mode: “Receiver/subject/message”
Recognized text field: Displays the scanned text (The guidance appears on some screens).
Recognition mode: Displays the recognition mode used for scanning “Kanji (lateral writing/vertical writing)/postal code/phone number/mail address/URL”.

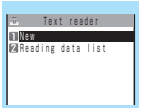
Remaining characters:
Displays the remaining number of single-byte characters that can be scanned.
NEGA mode : Appears if the NEGA/POSI mode is set to Negative fix.

Scanning text

<Example: To scan text in Card read mode>

1 MENU ▶“LifeKit”▶“Text reader”

The “Text reader” screen appears.



Text reader

Function menu➡p.164

2 “New”

The “Scanning mode selection” screen appears.
“Scanning mode”→p.162

3 “Card read”

The “Text reader scanning” screen appears.
The shooting mode is automatically set to “Close-up” for the rear camera.



Text reader scanning

Function menu➡p.164

4 Use ◎ to select the icon for the item to scan▶Display the text in the recognition field

Focus the text so that the entire text appears as large as possible inside the recognition field.
If the recognition field cannot display the whole text, the text can be scanned several times.

■ **To adjust the zoom**

ⓘ: Changes from “Normal” to “Large”.
ⓠ: Returns from “Large” to “Normal”.

5 ● (Read)

The FOMA terminal scans the text, and the recognized text appears in red.

■ **To rescan the text**

▶CLR▶“YES”

If the screen does not display the entire text, press ✣ or 4 (マナー), 6 (📷) to check.
Pressing ✉ (Store) stores the scanned text, and then the text data detail screen appears.

The following are the two methods to edit the scanned text:

To select the character to edit

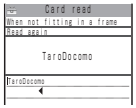
▶Use ◎ to highlight the character to edit▶Press the candidate No.
Use ✳ to change the cases between upper and lower if it can be changed.



Conversion candidates

To edit in the text editing

▶ch (FUNC)▶“Edit”▶Edit the text
The text can be edited in the typical text editing.
To return to the candidate selection, press ch (FUNC) and select “Select recog. data”.
Go on to Step 6 when you finish editing.



6 ● (Set)

The entry is fixed as the text.

■ **To scan the remaining text**

▶Repeat Steps 4 to 6
Ensure that the last two or more characters of the scanned text are included in the recognition field.

■ **To scan another item**

▶Use ◎ to select the icon for the item to scan
▶Repeat Steps 4 to 6
In Card read mode, you can scan up to 4 phone numbers and up to 3 mail addresses.

7 ch (FUNC)▶“Store”

The Reading data detail screen appears. Press CLR to return to the Reading data list screen.

NOTE

- Do not move the FOMA terminal while the “Processing” message appears on the screen.
- The FOMA terminal cannot recognize handwritten characters. If the text is faxed or copied, if the fonts are decorated, if the character spaces are not fixed, or if the fonts and background cannot be easily distinguished, the FOMA terminal may fail to recognize the text. Also, the FOMA terminal may not recognize the text correctly depending on the ambient lighting.

FUNC **Text reader screen (p.163)**

Add desktop icon→p.115

Using the text data

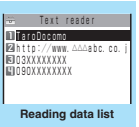
● You can use the following scanned data:

Item	Description
Add to phonebook	Adds the name, phone number, mail address, postal code, address and memo to the phonebook→p.89
Compose message	Composes an i-mode mail with the recipient address, subject and message entered→p.188

* Select any displayed item such as Phone number or Mail address to edit the data.

1 MENU/MULTI ▶"LifeKit"▶"Text reader"▶"Reading data list"

The "Reading data list" screen appears.



Reading data list

Function menu➡p.164

2 Select the scanned data

The "Reading data detail" screen appears.



Reading data detail

Function menu➡p.164

3 Select any of the displayed items

FUNC **Text reader scanning screen (p.163)/Reading data list screen (p.164)/Reading data detail screen (p.164)**

Edit*1 ……Edits the scanned text.

Store*2……Saves the reading data.

Internet……Accesses the site of the scanned URL in URL mode. "Web To function"→p.179

Compose message*3……Displays the New mail screen with the reading data entered and composes i-mode mail. The entered data varies depending on the displayed reading data or screen.

Dialing……Calls the phone number or create SMS in Phone number mode. "Phone To function"→p.178

Add to phonebook……Adds the scanned data to the phonebook. The stored data varies depending on the displayed reading data or screen.

Add bookmark……Add the URL to the Bookmark in URL mode.

Search phonebook……Searches the phonebook using the scanned data.
You cannot search the phonebook on the scanning screen, in Card read mode or in Compose message mode.

Add to memo……Adds the scanned data to Text memo. You cannot store the scanned data in Card read mode or in Compose message mode.

Reading mode set*2……Selects the scanning mode from "Card read/Compose message/URL/Mail address/Phone number/Free memo".

NEGA/POSI mode*2……Sets the type of printing.

- **Auto setting**……Automatically sets positive or negative.
- **Positive fix**……Suitable for printing dark text on a light background.
- **Negative fix**……Suitable for printing light text on a dark background.

Guidance OFF⇔**Guidance ON***2……Sets whether to display the guidance or not.

Vertical writing⇔**Lateral writing***2……Selects vertical writing or lateral writing for the Japanese text to scan.

Display detail*4……Displays the Reading data detail screen.

Display List*5……Displays the Reading data list screen.

Copy*6……Copies the text included in the scanned data.

Delete this/Delete all*6……Deletes one or all scanned data.

*1 : Unavailable on the Reading data list screen.
*2 : Available only on the Scanning screen.
*3 : When 2in1 is in B mode, this function is not available.
*4 : Available only on the Reading data list screen.
*5 : Available only on the Reading data detail screen.
*6 : Unavailable on the Scanning screen.

NOTE

● As the image settings for videophone are not retained after the dialing or talking is finished, set this item each time you make a call.

i-mode/i-motion/i-Channel

What is i-mode? 166
Displaying i-mode Menu ..... i-mode menu 166

Viewing sites

Viewing a Site 167
Viewing and Using Sites 170
Registering My Menu Entries ..... My Menu 171
Changing Your i-mode Password ..... Change i-mode Password 172
Viewing Websites ..... Internet connection 172
Accessing Websites and Sites Quickly ..... Bookmark 173
Connecting to Multiple Pages Consecutively ..... One-touch mlt win. 174
Saving Site Content ..... Screen memo 174

Downloading images and melodies from sites

Downloading Charged Contents 175
Downloading Images from Sites and Messages ..... Save image 176
Downloading Melodies from Sites ..... i-melody 176
Downloading PDF Data from Sites 176
Downloading Chara-den Characters from Sites 177
Downloading Kisekae Tool from Sites 178
Downloading Data Files from Sites 178
Downloading ToruCa from Sites 178

i-mode utility functions

Using the Phone To, Mail To and Web To Functions ..... Phone To/Mail To/Web To functions 178

Setting i-mode

Specifying Your i-mode Settings 179

Using certificates

Using SSL Certificates 181
Setting FirstPass 181
Changing the Certificate Host 183

Using i-motion

What is i-motion? 183
Downloading i-motion ..... Download i-motion 183
Setting Whether to Play an i-motion Automatically ..... i-motion auto-replay 184

Using i-Channel

What is i-Channel? 185
Viewing Sites from the Channel List 185
Setting i-Channel ..... i-Channel setting 186

What is i-mode?

The i-mode service enables you to use an i-mode-compatible FOMA terminal (i-mode terminal) display to access online services such as i-mode mail, connecting to the Internet and sites (programs), etc.

- i-mode is a pay service you need to apply for.
- For details on how to use i-mode, refer to “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode] FOMA version”.

■Notes on using i-mode

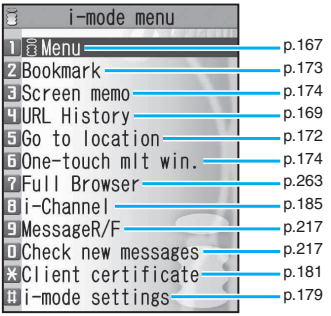
- Contents on sites (programs) or Internet websites are normally protected by copyright laws. The loaded documents, pictures, and other data from these sites (programs) or websites to your i-mode terminal is permitted only when intended for your personal use only. No data may be copied in part or in whole, whether modified or not, for resale or redistribution without the consent of the copyright holder.
- Note also that when the FOMA card (UIM) is replaced or the mobile phone is turned on with no FOMA card (UIM) inserted, some types of mobile phone may be incapable of viewing or playing melodies, images and movies downloaded from sites, files attached to sent or received mail (images, movies or melodies), Screen memo and MessageR/F.
- If a file with restrictions on viewing and playback imposed by the FOMA card (UIM) is set as the standby screen or as a ring tone, the FOMA terminal operates under the default settings if the FOMA card (UIM) is replaced or the FOMA terminal is turned on without the FOMA card (UIM) inserted.

Displaying i-mode Menu

<i-mode menu>

Starting i-mode

1 The “i-mode menu” screen appears.



■ When “圏外” is displayed

You are outside the FOMA service area or in a place where radio waves do not reach.
Move to a place where the radio reception level indication such as “” appears.

■ When “” is flashing

This icon flashes while the communication with the i-mode Center is in progress.

■ When “” is flashing

This icon flashes when you are receiving i-mode service (during i-mode).

NOTE

- The i-mode service area is the same as the FOMA service area (the area in which calls can be made and received).

Viewing the iMenu screen

1 ▶“iMenu”

The FOMA terminal connects to the i-mode Center and the “iMenu” screen appears.

■ **To cancel the download of pages**

▶CLR



i-mode menu

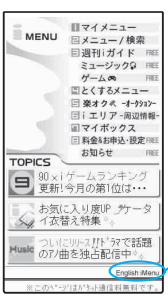


iMenu

iMenu in English

English iMenu is available.

1 ▶“iMenu”▶**Scroll down to the bottom to select “English iMenu”**





Select “日本語” to return to the Japanese display.

NOTE

- English iMenu is not available for とくするメニュー (tokusuru menu), 楽オク (Rakuten-auction), iエリア (i-area), マイボックス (My Box) and お知らせ (News).
- Generally, the What's New site is updated every other Monday.
- English iMenu sites differ from Japanese version.

Exiting i-mode

1 **Press ☎ during i-mode▶“YES”**

After “ ” blinks, “ ” disappears.

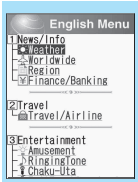
Viewing a Site

You can access the services provided by IPs (information service provider). (You may need a subscription.)

1 ▶“iMenu”▶“English iMenu”

2 **“Menu List”▶Select a site to display the site screen you want to view**

The “Site” screen appears.



Site

Function menu➡p.168

NOTE

- Some sites may require you to pay additional information fee.
- The number of colors displayed on certain sites exceeds the maximum number of colors that the FOMA terminal can display. For this reason, the site may not appear as intended.
- On some i-mode-compatible site and websites, some characters may be difficult or impossible to see due to the selected colors.
- When a site requests track information on tracks played on the user's cellular phone, the confirmation screen is displayed for the transmission of track information. Select “Yes” to transmit information on tracks played on the user's cellular phone (track name, artist name, when played). The transmitted track information is used for purposes such as information providers (IP) provision of customized information to the user.

● Scroll function

When you are viewing a page on a site and the text or a list does not fit in the screen, you can scroll up or down to view the rest of the text.

- ◎: Scrolls down
- ◎: Scrolls up
- ▼ (📷): Scrolls down by screens
- ▲ (マナー): Scrolls up by screens

• Scroll setting→p.179

● “みんなNらんど” (Japanese)

You can download and save i-αppli, dictionary, Template from “みんなNらんど” of iMenu that can be used on your FOMA terminal and use them for various purposes.
To restore pre-installed i-αppli, PDF data, Decorate PI and other content after deleting it, download it from “みんなNらんど”. Packet communication charges are applied for the download.
The procedure for connecting to “みんなNらんど” is as follows:

- Select “iMenu” → “メニュー／検索” → “ケータイ電話メーカー ” → “みんなNらんど” in order
- Scan the QR code on the right and select the displayed URL →p.160

● Mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers

If you select an item while a site or website is displayed on the FOMA terminal, a message may appear notifying you that the mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers will be sent.

- The disclosure notification message is always displayed before your mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers are sent. Such information is never sent automatically.

NOTE

- The sent information “mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers” is used by the IP (information service provider) to classify customers and provide customized services for you and to confirm that you can use the content the IP is offering.
- The “mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) manufacture numbers” is sent to the IP (information service provider) via the internet and may be disclosed to the third party as a result. However, this operation does not disclose your phone number, address, age and gender to the IP (information service provider), etc.

FUNC Sites screen (p.167)

Add bookmark→p.173

Bookmark→p.173

Add screen memo→p.174

Screen memo list→p.175

Save image→p.176

Quick Search→p.339

URL History→p.169

Window

- **Open new window**……“Using multi window” →p.171
- **Close window**……Closes the displayed window.
- **Change window**……Switches windows when multiple websites are open.
- **i-Channel**→p.185

Enter URL……Enters a URL to connect to the website.

Add to phonebook→p.171

Add desktop icon……Pastes a URL of the displayed page as a desktop icon.→p.115

Save schedule……Stores a scheduled event while browsing the page.
“Adding schedule entries”→p.340

Refer dictionary……Starts the dictionary.→p.353

Home

- **Set as home URL**……Stores the URL of the displayed page as home URL. You can only store 1 URL as the home URL.
- **Display home**……Displays the page stored as the home URL.
  To use this function, set “Home URL” as “ON”.
  →p.180

Reload……Refreshes the page.

Compose message*……Composes i-mode mail or Deco-mail with a URL for the page pasted into the message or the image pasted/attached.

iMenu……Displays the iMenu screen.

Site info

- **Title**……Displays the page title to check.
- **URL**……Displays the page URL to check. If the entire URL does not appear, press ● (Select), then use ◎ to move the cursor to check the rest of the URL. Pressing ● (Select) again hides the cursor.
- **Certificate**……Displays the contents of the SSL certificate when the page is compatible with SSL.

Site settings

- **Replay**……Plays the Flash movie or animation on the page again from the beginning.
- **Set image disp.**……Sets whether to display the images on the page or not. When set to “OFF”, “ ” appears instead of the image which is not displayed.
- **Sound effect**……Sets whether to play the Flash movie sound effect or not (ON/OFF).
- **Change CHR code**……Changes the character code to redisplay the page that is not displayed correctly.

Switch to FB……Switches to the Standard type of Full Browser to display a website that cannot be displayed in i-mode. →p.265

*: When 2in1 is in B mode, this function is not available.

NOTE

<Home>
- If a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected to the FOMA terminal, pressing the switch in the standby screen will also display the site set as the home.

<Certificate>
- When certificates are displayed, the screen scrolls at the regular speed regardless of the "Scroll" setting.

<Change CHR code>
- If text is not displayed correctly, repeat the procedure. Note that when you perform the procedure for the 4th time, the site is displayed in the original character code setting.
- Some sites may not be displayed correctly even when the character code is changed.
- If you change the character code when a site is displayed correctly, the site may not be displayed correctly.

Displaying SSL pages

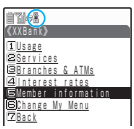
To view SSL pages, the following certificates are required:
- CA certificate: Issued by an certification organization and stored in your FOMA terminal at the time of purchase.
- DoCoMo CA certificate: Required for connecting to the FirstPass center and stored in the FOMA card (UIM) (green/white).
- User certificate: Downloaded from the FirstPass center by selecting "Client certificate" in the i-mode menu and stored in the FOMA card (UIM) (green/white).

1 Display an SSL page

The SSL page and the "SSL" icon appear.

■ To cancel the authentication

▶"Cancel"



SSL page

2 Move from the SSL page to an ordinary page▶"YES"

SSL communication ends and the "SSL" icon disappears.

NOTE
- The message "This site is not certified Do you connect?" may appear when you attempt to open an SSL page. This message appears when the SSL certificate for the page has expired or is not supported. In this case, you can continue to view the page by selecting "YES". However, you may not be able to safely send your personal information such as your credit card number or contacts.

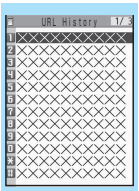
Re-connecting to a previously displayed site <URL History>

Up to 30 previously displayed sites are displayed in URL History. You can reconnect to previously displayed sites using "URL History".

1 ▶"URL History"

The "URL History" screen appears.

2 Select history



URL History

Function menu➡p.169

NOTE
- Once the URL History contains 30 entries, the oldest entry is automatically replaced as each new entry is added.

FUNC URL History screen (p.169)

Add bookmark→p.173

URL……Displays the bookmarked URLs.

Delete……Selects the deleting method from Delete this/Delete selected/Delete all. About multiple-choice→p.38

Viewing and Using Sites

This section describes the operations for viewing sites or websites.

Image

- The FOMA N905iμ can display GIF and JPEG format images and Flash movies (p.171). However, the FOMA terminal may be unable to display some images regardless of the format.
- When a Flash movie is displayed, the display operation may differ from that on a normal site.
- When a Flash movie is saved to data box, screen memo, microSD memory card or elsewhere and replayed, its viewing may differ according to the saved location.
- You can specify whether or not images are displayed in “Set image disp.”

■Icons for the image

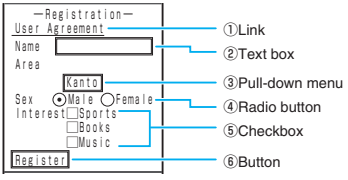
(color): Displayed while an image is loaded or when “OFF” is selected in the “Set image disp.” setting

: Displayed when image loading failed

(B/W): Displayed when an image cannot be loaded

Selecting links and other options

When you are using i-mode, you may need to perform operations such as those described below.



①Link
Select the item to proceed to the linked page.

②Text box
You can enter text directly. When you select a text box, the text entry screen appears.

③Pull-down menu
You can select one option from the list of selectable options. Only a part of the selectable options is displayed but hidden options appear as a list when you select the pull-down menu.

④Radio button
You can select only one option. ⊙ indicates a selected radio button.

⑤Checkbox
You can select multiple options from a range of options. ☑ indicates a selected checkbox.

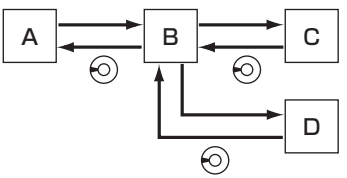
⑥Button
When you select a button, the function assigned to the button is activated.

Jumping to previous/next pages

Up to 30 pages per window (and up to 100 pages for all windows) can be held in cache, and viewed by moving back and forward through cached pages.

1 Press ○ to jump back to the previous page or ○ to jump forward to the next page

■When the page display sequence is “A”, “B”, “C”, “B” and “D”



■To display the pages stored in cache

- Cache refers to an area of memory on the FOMA terminal itself in which data from sites or Internet websites you have visited is temporarily stored. If you press ○ to move to another page while you are viewing a site or website, the FOMA terminal displays the page stored in cache rather than connecting to the i-mode Center and accessing the page on the actual site. However, if the cache is full or if the page is set to always display the latest information, the FOMA terminal connects to the site even when you press ○. Also, even when the page is stored in the cache, if the date and time information for that page has been updated, the FOMA terminal connects to the site and displays the latest data.
- When site data is loaded from cache, the text and settings you entered on previous visits is not displayed.
- The cache is cleared when you exit i-mode.
- When you download SSL-compatible pages from cache, the message appears indicating that the SSL page will be displayed.

Reloading data

You can refresh the displayed page.

1 Sites screen (p.167)▶ch (FUNC)▶ “Reload”

Using multi window

Up to five Internet homepages and other sites (up to six if i-channel is included) can be opened consecutively.

- The pages that are opened are displayed one by one.

1 While a page is open, press ch (FUNC) ▶“Window”▶“Open new window”▶ Select any item:

Link……Opens the selected link (highlighted).

Bookmark……Displays the websites registered as bookmarks.

Enter URL……Enters a URL to display the website.

Display home……Displays a website registered as home URL.

The selected website opens with a new window.

■ **To switch the website to display**

▶✉ (▭)

■ **To close an opened website**

▶CLR

NOTE

- You cannot arrange the opened websites side-by-side.
- You can also open a new window by ▭ (Open).

Adding phone numbers and e-mail addresses to the phonebook

<Add to phonebook>

You can add a phone number or e-mail address displayed on a site page or screen memo to your phonebook.

<Example: When adding a phone number displayed on a site page>

1 Sites screen (p.167)▶ch (FUNC) ▶“Add to phonebook”▶“YES”▶Add the phone number to phonebook

Adding information to the phonebook→ p.89

If the name, reading and mail address are attached to phone number, they are also entered to the phonebook together with phone number. Enter remains of necessary items and then save to the phonebook.

Operating the Flash movies

Flash is an animation technique supported by the FOMA terminal that uses both images and sound. Flash gives you access to a wide range of animations and visually exciting sites. You can also download a Flash movie to your FOMA terminal and set it as the standby screen.

- A Flash playing error prevents successful completion of the saving.
- Note that if you play a Flash movie to which vibration is set, your FOMA terminal vibrates regardless of the “Vibrator” setting.
- Some Flash movies may not run correctly.
- You may also be able to control a Flash movie even when “◁⇕▷” does not appear at the bottom of the screen.
- Flash movies are not displayed if you select “OFF” in “Set image disp.”.
- Selecting “Accept” in “Use phone information” allows you to use the FOMA terminal data (time, date, reception level, battery level, ring volume, language, model type and model info).

NOTE

- Some Flash movies use sound effects. To run a Flash movie without the sound effects, select “Sound effect” and then select “OFF”. Even if “Vibrator” is set to “Melody linkage”, this setting is invalid for sound effects of Flash movie.
- When a Flash movie is set as a screen such as standby by using “Display setting”, the sound effects or vibrator that are set in the Flash movie do not run. The Replay function is unavailable.→p.168
- When some Flash movies are saved or saved as a screen memo, part of the images may not be saved or they may otherwise differ from the way they appear on the site.

Registering My Menu Entries

<My Menu>

My Menu provides you with a quick and convenient way to connect to frequently visited sites.

- You can register up to 45 sites in My Menu.
- Some sites cannot be registered to My Menu.
- To connect quickly to a website, use “Bookmark”.

1 Sites screen (p.167)▶“My Menu Registration”▶Select the “Input password” box▶Enter your i-mode password▶“OK”

i-mode Password→ p.172

Continued on next page

NOTE

- Charged sites in Menu List are automatically registered to My Menu after subscription.

Viewing sites registered to My Menu

1 ▶“iMenu”▶“English iMenu”▶“My Menu”▶Select the site

Changing Your i-mode Password <Change i-mode Password>

You need a 4-digit “i-mode Password” to register or unregistered sites in My Menu, to subscribe to or unsubscribe to message services and to set your mail preferences.

- Until you change the i-mode password, it is set to “0000” (four zeros) by default. You can change your i-mode password at any time from your FOMA terminal.
- Take particular care not to disclose your i-mode password to others.
- If you forget your i-mode password, the registered service subscriber must take a form of identification (such as a driver’s license) to an NTT DoCoMo service counter to reset your i-mode password to “0000” (four zeros).

1 ▶“iMenu”▶“English iMenu”▶“Options”▶“Change i-mode Password”

2 **Select the “Current Password” box▶Enter your current i-mode password**
The numbers of the entered password are displayed as “*”.

3 **Select the “New Password” box▶Enter the new i-mode password**
Enter a 4-digit number as your i-mode password.

4 **Select the “New Password (Confirmation)” box▶Enter the new i-mode password again**
Enter the number you entered in step 3.

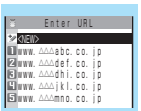
5 **“Select”**
■ **If you enter incorrect “Current Password”**
A message appears saying that your i-mode password is incorrect.
■ **If you enter different numbers in “New Password” and “New Password (Confirmation)”**
A message appears saying that your i-mode password does not match.

Viewing Websites <Internet connection>

This function allows you to view website by entering its URL.

- Websites that are not i-mode-compliant may not be displayed properly.
- A website may be displayed differently in your terminal from when it is viewed on PC.
- You can view websites designed for a PC in Full Browser

1 ▶“Go to location”▶“Enter URL”
The “URL list” screen appears.



URL list

Function menu➡p.172

2 **“<NEW>”▶Enter URL▶“OK”**
■ **If you enter no URL or a URL that does not begin with “http://” or “https://”**
A message appears saying that the URL is incorrect.

NOTE

- You can enter a URL up to 256 single-byte characters long including “http://” or “https://”.

Viewing sites from the URL history

The FOMA terminal records the last 10 URLs you entered in the URL history.

1 ▶“Go to location”▶“Enter URL”

2 **Select URL▶“OK”**
■ **To edit the selected URL**
▶Select the “Internet address” box▶Edit URL

NOTE

- Once the URL history contains 10 entries, the oldest entry is automatically replaced as each new entry is added.
- When you enter URLs and connect to sites, visits to the same URL are logged as separate entries.

FUNC **URL list screen (p.172)**

Add desktop icon→p.115

Compose message*……Composes an i-mode mail with the URL pasted in the message.

Set as home URL……Stores a URL as your home URL. You can only store 1 URL as your home URL.

Delete……Selects the deleting method from Delete this/Delete selected/Delete all. About multiple-choice→p.38

*: When 2in1 is in B mode, this function is not available.

Accessing Websites and Sites Quickly <Bookmark>

Adding frequently visited websites or sites to your Bookmarks folders allows you to access those sites quickly and easily.

- You can change the titles of your bookmarks and organize the bookmarks into categories by using folders.
- Of the bookmarked sites, up to five can be connected consecutively.→p.174

Adding bookmarks

- You can bookmark up to 100 sites.
- You can enter up to 256 single-byte characters for URL of each stored bookmark .
- Some sites cannot be bookmarked.

<Example: While displaying a site>

1 Sites screen (p.167)▶ch (FUNC)▶"Add bookmark"▶"YES"▶Select a folder

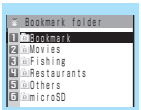
NOTE

- Bookmark titles can consist of up to 12 double-byte or 24 single-byte characters. Longer titles are truncated when the bookmark is added. If no title is given, the URL is displayed (excluding "http://" or "https://").

Using a bookmark to access a site or website

1 ▶"Bookmark"

The "Bookmark folder list" screen appears.
When the FOMA terminal is in Secret mode or Secret data only mode, the Secret folder is also displayed.



Bookmark folder list

Function menu➡p.173

2 Select a folder

The "Bookmark list" screen appears.

3 Select a bookmark



Bookmark list

Function menu➡p.173

FUNC Bookmark folder list screen (p.173)

- You cannot rename or delete the "Bookmark" folder already created on the FOMA terminal at the time of purchase.

Add folder……Enters a folder name to add a folder. You can add up to 9 folders. You can enter up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters.

Edit folder name……Edits the folder name of the added folder. You can enter up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters.

Sort folder……Selects the position to move to and rearranges the folders.

No. of bookmarks……Displays the total number of bookmarks in all the folders.

iC trans. all→p.310

Send all Ir data→p.308

Copy All to microSD→p.298

Delete folder……Deletes the folder and bookmarks in the folder.

Delete all……Deletes all the bookmarks. However, the bookmark folders are not deleted.

NOTE

<No. of bookmarks>

The number of data in the microSD folder and Secret folder are not displayed.

FUNC Bookmark list screen (p.173)

Move……Selects from "Move this/Move selected/Move all" and moves the bookmark to the other folder you select."About multiple-choice"→p.38

Edit title……Edits the title. You can enter up to 12 double-byte or 24 single-byte characters.

Add desktop icon→p.115

Compose message[*1]……Composes an i-mode mail with the URL pasted in the message.

Continued on next page

Attach to mail[*1]……Composes an i-mode mail with a bookmark attached.

iC transmission→p.309

Send Ir data→p.307

Copy to microSD→p.298

Set mlt win.⇔**Rel. mlt win.**……Register/cancel One-touch multi window.→p.174

Set as home URL……Stores a URL as your home URL. You can only store 1 URL as your home URL.

Copy URL……Copies a bookmarked URL.
▶Use ⊕ to place the cursor before first character to be copied▶● (Start)▶Use ⊕ to highlight last character to be copied▶● (End)
You can paste the copied URL to the text entry (editing) screen.→p.367

No. of bookmarks……Displays the total number of bookmarks in the folder.

Delete……Selects the deleting method from Delete this/Delete selected/Delete all. About multiple-choice→p.38

Keep in secret⇔**Put out**[*2]……"Preventing Others from Viewing Data"→p.129

Bookmark info[*3]……Displays the bookmark information.

*1 : When 2in1 is in B mode, this function is not available.
*2 : Can only be used in Secret or Secret data only mode.
*3 : Used only for bookmarks stored on the microSD memory card.

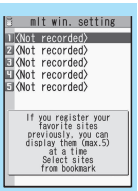
Connecting to Multiple Pages Consecutively <One-touch mlt win.>

Of the bookmarked sites, this can connect to up to five consecutively.

Register the site to connect to

1 **▶"i-mode settings"▶"mlt win. setting"**
The "mlt win. setting" screen appears.

2 **Select the destination ▶Select the bookmark**



mlt win. setting
Function menu➡p.174

FUNC mlt win. setting screen (p.174)

Release this……Deletes the selected bookmark from the One-touch mlt win.

Release all……Delete all from One-touch mlt win.

Sort……Sort the registration order.

Add desktop icon→p.115

Site info……Displays the title and URL of the displayed website.

NOTE
- The registered icon (☆) is displayed for bookmarks registered to One-touch mlt win.

Connect consecutively to the registered sites

1 **▶"One-touch mlt win."**
The registered sites are displayed in multi window.

Saving Site Content <Screen memo>

When you have found some useful information (travel information, etc.), you can save the displayed page on your FOMA terminal as a screen memo for later reference.
- You can save up to 100 screen memos. However, the number you can actually save varies depending on the amount of data on each saved page.

Saving a screen memo

1 **Sites screen (p.167)▶ch (FUNC)▶"Add screen memo"▶"YES"**

NOTE
- When you save a screen memo of an SSL page, the SSL certificate for that page is also saved.
- If you save the same page twice, it is saved as a new screen memo and is not replaced with the earlier save.
- If you save a site in which an item is already entered in a radio button, checkbox, text box, pull-down menu or selection box as a screen memo, you cannot view the item when displaying the screen memo.
- When you save a screen such as the data acquisition screen, the data for that screen is saved along with the screen. However, the data acquisition screen for i-motion or Chaku-Uta-Full® with set playback period cannot be saved as a screen memo.

Displaying a screen memo

1 ▶“Screen memo”

The “Screen memo list” screen appears.



Screen memo list

Function menu➡p.175

2 **Select a screen memo**

The “Screen memo detail” screen appears.



Screen memo detail

Function menu➡p.175

NOTE

- Information on the screen memo is the one stored and may differ from the latest one.

FUNC Screen memo list screen (p.175)

Edit title……Edits the title. You can enter up to 11 double-byte or 22 single-byte characters.

Protect ON/OFF……Protects or unprotects screen memo. Protected memo titles are marked with “ ”. The “ ” icon disappears when the protection is released.

No. of memos……Displays the numbers of stored and protected screen memos respectively.

Delete……Selects the deleting method from Delete this/Delete selected/Delete all. “About multiple-choice”→p.38

NOTE

<Protect ON/OFF>

- Up to 50 screen memos can be protected. However, the number of screen memos you can protect varies depending on the data size.

FUNC Screen memo detail screen (p.175)

Save image……Saves the images displayed in a screen memo.→p.176

Add to phonebook……Adds the phone number and e-mail address displayed on the screen memo to the Phonebook.
“Adding Information to the Phonebook”→p.89

Edit title……Edits the title of the screen memo. You can enter up to 11 double-byte or 22 single-byte characters.

Protect ON/OFF……Protects or unprotects screen memo. Protected memo titles are marked with “ ”. The “ ” icon disappears when the protection is released.

Quick Search→p.339

Compose message*……Composes i-mode mail and Deco-mail with the URL for a screen memo pasted into the message or the image pasted/attached.

Save schedule……Stores a scheduled event by browsing the screen memos.

Refer dictionary……Starts the dictionary.→p.353

URL……Displays and checks the screen memo URL.

Certificate……Displays the SSL certificate details when the screen memo is SSL-compatible.

Sound effect……Specifies whether the settings for Flash movie sound effects are enabled or not (ON/OFF).

Replay……Plays the Flash movie or animation in the screen memo again from the beginning.

Delete……Deletes the screen memo.

*: When 2in1 is in B mode, this function is not available.

Downloading Charged Contents

Some sites may charge you for downloading contents (images, melodies or Chaku-Uta-Full®). When you try to download charged contents, a confirmation message for the purchase and the i-mode password entry screen appears.

NOTE

- A notification message appears when you try to download improper data, etc.
- You cannot download the contents if more than 2 minutes have passed before starting downloading after you enter the i-mode password. Enter the i-mode password again.

Downloading Images from Sites and Messages <Save image>

You can save an image, background image or animation displayed or attached to the currently displayed site, screen memo, i-mode mail or MessageR/F, then set the saved image in screens such as standby screen or wake-up display.

- You can store up to 1,000 images including the Decomail-pictures, Decorate PI and shot still images (the number of images you can actually store may be reduced depending on the file size).

<Example: When saving a normal image displayed on a site page>

1 Sites screen (p.167)▶ch (FUNC)▶"Save image"▶"Normal image"▶Select an image▶"YES"▶Select a folder

Position the frame ▭ over the image to be saved.

■ **To save the background image**

▶"Save image"▶"Background image"▶"YES"▶Select a folder

2 "YES"▶Select an item

■ **When you do not set the image to the standby screen, etc.**

▶"NO"

NOTE

- When 2in1 is set to Dual mode or B mode, and also "Stand-by display" is set to other than "Same as Number A", the saved image cannot be set to the standby screen. The screen for A mode or OFF in 2in1 mode is applied.
- If an image can be used for Decorate PI, it is automatically saved to the "My Picture" or "Decorate PI" folder.

Downloading Melodies from Sites <i-melody>

You can set your favorite song, the latest hit song downloaded from a site or a stored melody attached to an i-mode mail as a ring tone on your FOMA terminal.

- You can store up to 400 melodies (the number of melodies you can actually store may be reduced depending on the file size).

<Example: Storing a melody downloaded from a site>

1 Sites screen (p.167)▶Select a melody▶"Save"▶"YES"▶Select a folder

■ **To play a melody**

▶"Play"

■ **To display melody information**

▶"Property"

2 "YES"▶Select an item

■ **When you do not set the melody to the ring tone, etc.**

▶"NO"

NOTE

- Downloaded melodies may be subject to restrictions such that only a pre-designated part of the melody can be played. While a melody of this type is played in full when played back on the FOMA terminal, when it is set as a ring tone, only the designated section is played.

Downloading PDF Data from Sites

You can download a PDF-formatted data from a website and display it on your FOMA terminal.

- You can store up to 400 PDF data on the FOMA terminal (the number of data you can actually store may be reduced depending on the file size).

1 Sites screen (p.167)▶Select a PDF data file

The "PDF data" screen (p.311) appears.

Operation for viewing a PDF document→p.314

* When a PDF file that enables you to download the specified pages is selected, the first downloaded page appears. The subsequent pages are downloaded when you move to those pages.

■ **To cancel the download**

▶✉ (Quit) or CLR

When the message asking whether to save the partly downloaded data appears, select "YES" to save it. In this case, you can download the remaining data later.→p.177

■ **If the password entry screen appears**

Enter the password set to the PDF data.

■ **To save the PDF data**

▶ch (FUNC)▶"Save"▶"YES"▶Select a folder

For a PDF data that requires download of all data, all the pages are saved. For a PDF data that enables you to download the specified

pages, the data (pages) downloaded so far are saved. You can download the remaining pages later.→p.177

■ **To close the view of PDF data**

▶CLR

When the PDF data is not saved, the message asking whether to close the PDF appears. To save the PDF data, select “NO”.

Downloading remaining PDF data after downloading partially

When you have saved partly downloaded PDF data, you can download the remaining pages (data) later. The ways of downloading vary depending on the status of downloaded PDF data.

● For partially downloaded (by page) PDF data ((pale blue))

1 PDF list screen (p.311)▶Select a PDF file to view

The message notifying that downloading will resume appears and then the “PDF data” screen (p.311) appears.

Operation for viewing a PDF document→p.314

2 (Tool)▶Press ◀ ▶ on toolbar to view pages not downloaded

Connected to the site to download the pages.

■ **To specify the page number you want to download**

▶Select page number display on the toolbar ▶Enter the page number you want to view

■ **To download all the remaining data at a time**

▶ch (FUNC)▶“DL remaining data”▶“YES”

■ **To save the PDF data**

▶ch (FUNC)▶“Save”▶“YES”

The document including newly downloaded pages is saved.

● For PDF data that could only be downloaded partially < (pale blue), (pale blue)>

1 PDF list screen (p.311)▶Select a PDF file to view

Before the document is displayed, the message asking whether to download all the remaining data appears.

2 “YES”

Connected to the site and downloading of all the remaining data starts. After the downloading is completed, the “PDF data” screen (p.311) appears (some documents may not be viewable even if the download is finished successfully).

■ **To save the PDF data**

▶ch (FUNC)▶“Save”▶“YES”

NOTE

- It may take a long time to display some PDF data.
- PDF data may not be properly displayed if it contains formats unsupported by PDF viewer or complicated designs.
- Note that the communication fee for downloading large amounts of data will be expensive.
- If you attempt to download a PDF file larger than 500K bytes, the confirmation message asking whether to download the file appears.
- You cannot download a PDF file whose size is unknown or larger than 2M bytes.
- When the PDF data that you try to download has the same definition file (information file for defining PDF) as the PDF data stored in the FOMA terminal or microSD memory card, they are recognized as the same data. Consequently, the PDF data will not be downloaded and the saved PDF data will be displayed.
- PDF data saved in microSD memory card is named using the original file name (up to 29 double-byte, 59 single-byte characters). If there are overlapped with the file names of PDF data in microSD memory card, the file name will be saved as the original file name followed by three-digit numerals.

Downloading Chara-den Characters from Sites

You can download your favorite Chara-den characters from sites.

- You can save up to 10 Chara-den characters, including the pre-installed characters.

1 Sites screen (p.167)▶Select Chara-den ▶“Save”▶“YES”

■ **To view a Chara-den character**

▶“Play”

How to control a Chara-den character→p.285

■ **To display Chara-den information**

▶“Property”

NOTE

- To restore the Chara-den pre-installed in the FOMA terminal after deleting it, download it from “みんなNらんど”. Packet communication charges are applied for the download.→p.168

Downloading Kisekae Tool from Sites

You can download Kisekae Tool packages from i-mode sites and save them on your FOMA terminal.

- You can save up to 100 Kisekae Tool packages, including the pre-installed ones (the number of packages that can be saved may be less depending on the size of Kisekae Tool data).

1 Sites screen (p.167)▶Select a Kisekae Tool package

■ **To cancel the download**

▶CLR

You can resume downloading if the message asking whether to do it appears.

Selecting "NO" allows you to save the partly downloaded data.

2 "Save"▶"YES"

■ **To check the Kisekae Tool package**

▶"Preview"

■ **To display the Kisekae Tool package information**

▶"Property"

NOTE

- To restore the pre-installed Kisekae Tool after deleting it, download it from "みんなNらんど". Packet communication charges are applied for the download. →p.168

Downloading Data Files from Sites

You can enormously expand the range of uses for your FOMA terminal by downloading additional data files such as dictionaries, Decomail-pictures, Auto Decomail-pictures, Template files from sites.

- You can store up to 5 dictionaries, 1,000 images such as Decomail-pictures and Auto Decomail-pictures including still images you shot, 45 Template including the pre-installed data (the number of data you can actually store may be reduced depending on the file size of the stored data).

<Example: Downloading a dictionary file from a site>

1 Sites screen (p.167)▶Select a data file▶"Save"▶"YES"

■ **To display dictionary information**

▶"Property"

■ **When the dictionaries are full**

▶Select the dictionary to delete▶"YES"

The selected dictionary is overwritten and new dictionary is saved.

NOTE

- The title used for a template with no title is "YYYY/MM/DD hh:mm" (Y = year, M = month, D = day, h = hour, m = minute).
- You may not be able to download data file depending on sites or the file size.

Downloading ToruCa from Sites

You can download the ToruCa from sites and save it.

- You can save up to 100 ToruCa.

1 Sites screen (p.167)▶Select a ToruCa

2 "Save"▶"YES"▶Select a folder

Using the Phone To, Mail To and Web To Functions

<Phone To/Mail To/Web To functions>

These functions provide quick and simple procedures for making voice/videophone/PushTalk calls/sending mail or viewing websites using information (phone numbers, e-mail addresses, URLs, etc.) displayed in mail or on a site.

- In some cases, mail and sites send from personal computers etc. may not be usable.
- These functions are not available on the Chat Mail screen.

Phone To function

You can make a voice call, videophone call, PushTalk call to a phone number displayed on a site, in a mail or PDF data etc.

- When used for videophone calls, this function is referred to as the AV Phone To function.
- You can enter up to 26 digits as a phone number.

<Example: Making a voice call to a number displayed on a site>

1 Sites screen (p.167)▶Select a phone number

■ **When 2in1 is in Dual mode**

The Outgoing number selection screen appears. Select a phone number.

2 **“Voice phone”**

■ **To make a videophone call**
▶“V. phone”

■ **To make a PushTalk call**
▶“PushTalk dial”

3 **“Dial”**

■ **To withhold your caller ID when “Activate/Deactivate” is set to “ON”**
▶“Notify Caller ID”▶“Don’t notify”

■ **To provide your caller ID when “Activate/Deactivate” is set to “OFF”**
▶“Notify Caller ID”▶“Notify Caller”

■ **To follow the setting of “Caller ID Notification”**
▶“Notify Caller ID”▶“Cancel prefix”

NOTE

- You may be able to use the Phone To function not only with numbers which indicate a phone number but also with an item which includes a phone number information such as “Contact us”.

Mail To function

You can send a mail using a mail address with which website, mail, PDF data, etc. provide.

- You cannot use the Mail To function when draft mails are full.
- You may not be able to use the Mail To function when 2 or more e-mail addresses are displayed in sequence.
- You can enter up to 50 single-byte characters as an e-mail address.
- When 2in1 is in B mode, this function is not available.

<Example: Sending mail from the sites screen>

1 **Sites screen (p.167)▶Select a mail address▶Compose and send an i-mode mail**
“Composing and Sending i-mode Mail”→p.188

NOTE

- You may use the Mail To function with the item in which a mail address is not indicated but linked (e.g. “Please contact here”).

Web To function

You can view the website of a URL displayed on a site, in a mail, PDF data or the Full Browser screen.

- You can enter up to 512 single-byte characters as a URL.
- When a location information URL (indicated by “ ” at the beginning of a URL) is pasted into a message body, selecting the URL displays a surrounding map based on the location information.

<Example: Displaying other website from the sites screen>

1 **Sites screen (p.167)▶Select a URL**

NOTE

- You may use the Web To function with the item in which a URL is not indicated but linked (e.g. “for more information”).

Specifying Your i-mode Settings

1 **▶“i-mode settings”**
The “i-mode settings” screen appears.



i-mode settings

2 **Select any item:**

Scroll……Sets the scrolling speed and link display of the detail screen for a site, screen memo or MessageR/F.

> **Speed** (default: High speed)……Selects the scrolling speed from “High speed/Low speed”.
>
> **During scroll in focus** (default: OFF)……Sets whether to highlight the linked pages while scrolling.

Font size (default: Standard)……Selects the character size of the list/detail screen for a screen memo, MessageR/F or a page on a site, from “Small/Standard/Large/X-large”.

Set image disp. (default: ON)……Sets whether the detail screen for screen memos and pages on a site are displayed or not. If you select “OFF”, the “ ” icon will be displayed instead of the images not to be displayed. The Flash movies do not appear.

Continued on next page

i-motion auto-replay (default: ON)→p.184

Auto-display setting (default: MessageR preferred)……Sets the automatic display of MessageR/F.

Start attachment (auto) (default: ON)……Sets whether the attached/pasted melody automatically plays when opening the MessageR/F.

Use phone information (default: Accept)→p.181

Message list display (default: 2 lines)……Sets the number of lines in the message list screen.

Home URL……Sets use of the home URL display function. When set to "Valid", pressing [▲] (マナー) on the standby screen displays the screen of the stored URL. You can enter URLs of up to 256 single-byte characters.

- **Invalid** (default)……Disables the home URL display setting.
- **Valid**……Enables the home URL display setting.
  Select the Home URL field and enter a URL to be stored.

Sound effect (default: ON)……Sets whether to play the sound effects for the Flash movies in a site page or screen memo.

Set i-mode arrival act (default: PushTalk preferred)……Sets whether to answer an incoming PushTalk call during i-mode communication.

Open tab setting (default: Open at the back side)……When a page opens in a new window, set whether it replaces the current display (opens in front) or leaves the original display in place (opens back side).

mlt win. setting→p.174

Check settings……Displays the settings set in "i-mode settings".

Reset……Resets the settings specified in "i-mode settings" to the default settings.

NOTE

<Sound effect>
- Even if sound effects are set to "ON", some Flash movies may not make any sound.

<Set i-mode arrival act>
- If "i-mode preferred" is selected, the received PushTalk call is not recorded on the Received calls record.

Setting the connection timeout <Set connection timeout>

This option sets time-out duration for which the FOMA terminal automatically stops trying to connect when a site is busy and there is no response.

1 [MENU/MULTI]▶"Settings"▶"Connection setting"▶"Set connection timeout"▶Select any item:

- **60 seconds** (default)……Automatically stops connecting if there is no response for 60 seconds.
- **90 seconds**……Automatically stops connecting if there is no response for 90 seconds.
- **Unlimited**……Does not automatically stop connecting.

Setting a host different from i-mode host (ISP connection) <Host selection>

*** There is normally no need to change this setting.**

You need to select a different host when you want to use a service other than i-mode. If you change the host to a host other than i-mode, you cannot use i-mode or i-mode mail.
- You can store up to 10 hosts other than "i-mode".

1 [MENU/MULTI]▶"Settings"▶"Connection setting"▶"Host selection"▶Highlight "<Not recorded>"▶[✉] (Edit)▶Enter your security code▶Select any item:

- **Host name**……Sets the host name. You can enter up to 9 double-byte or 18 single-byte characters.
- **Host number**……Sets the host number. You can enter up to 99 single-byte characters.
- **Host address**……Sets the host address. You can enter up to 30 single-byte characters.
- **Host address2**……Sets the host address2. You can enter up to 30 single-byte characters.

2 [✉] (Finish)

NOTE
- Note that costs of packet communication while you are connected to a host other than i-mode are not covered by "Pake-Houdai" or "Pake-Houdai Full" deal.
- When you change the host, the ticker of i-Channel is turned off. The ticker is turned on again automatically when the information is updated automatically or when [ch] is pressed to receive the latest information.

NOTE

- After changing the host, the i-Channel information may not be updated automatically. To receive the latest information, press ch to display the channel list screen.

Specifying whether to use terminal data in Flash movies

<Use phone information>

Use this function to specify whether terminal data is used when a Flash movie is running.

- The terminal data may be used depending on the particular Flash movie. To enable Flash movies to use the terminal data, set “Accept” for “Use phone information” under “i-mode settings”. The default setting is “Accept”. Such movies may use the following types of terminal data:
  - Battery level
  - Signal strength
  - Date and time
  - Ring volume setting
  - Select language
  - Model data

1 i-mode settings screen (p.179)▶“Use phone information”▶“Accept” or “Reject”

Using SSL Certificates

You can check the details of an SSL certificate or to set to valid/invalid.

1 MENU/HOLD▶“Settings”▶“Connection setting”▶“Certificate”

2 Select a certificate▶Check the details

■ To validate or invalidate SSL certificates

▶Highlight a certificate▶ch (FUNC)▶“Valid/Invalid”

NOTE

- The “” icon appears when you select “Valid”. The “” icon appears when you select “Invalid”.
- If you select “Invalid”, you cannot view SSL pages with that SSL certificate.

Setting FirstPass

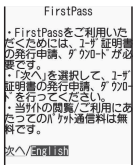
User certificates prove that the user is a proper FOMA service subscriber. Downloaded user certificates are saved on your FOMA card (UIM) and enable you to access client authentication-compliant sites.

Connect to the FirstPass Center

Follow the procedure below to request and download the user certificate.

- You can request a user certificate or download from the FirstPass Center.
- User certificates cannot be used with the FOMA card (blue).
- The FirstPass cannot be used overseas.
- To connect to the FirstPass Center, you must first set the date and time on your FOMA terminal. →p.47
- The screens and procedures used at the FirstPass Center are subject to change.

1 i▶“Client certificate”▶Check the description▶“English”



2 “Request your certificate”

■ If you are using FirstPass for the first time

Select “The usage regulation (Japanese only)” and carefully read the information provided.

■ To apply invalidation

Select “Other settings” and then select “Revoke your certificate”.

Enter your PIN2 code and then proceed as directed by the on-screen instructions.

3 Check the description▶“Continue”

4 Enter the PIN2 code

PIN2 code →p.124

5 Check the message▶“Download”▶Check the description▶“Continue”▶“Menu”

The confirmation message appears.

The FirstPass menu screen reappears after the downloading is completed.

Continued on next page

NOTE

- Packet communication charge for connection to the FirstPass Center is free.
- Before using the FirstPass Center, select “The usage regulation (Japanese only)” and read the information carefully.
- You cannot use the following function during connection to the FirstPass Center.
  - Sending or receiving i-mode mail (sending and receiving SMS is available)
  - Check new messages (Check new SMS is available)
  - Reception of MessageR/F
  - Downloading attached files of mails manually
  - Web To function
  - PushTalk
- Always send a certificate request before downloading a new or updated user certificate. You cannot download a certificate without first requesting the certificate.
- Once an application for user certificate invalidation has been completed, you can no longer access FirstPass-compliant sites that require that user certificate.
- If you use FirstPass after completion of invalidation, apply issue for the user certification again and download it.

Using a user certificate to connect to a site

1 Sites screen (p.167)▶Confirm user certificate transmission▶“YES”▶Enter your PIN2 code

NOTE

- The Packet communication charge of connecting to FirstPass-compliant sites is covered by the Pake-Houdai or Pake-Houdai Full deal.
- FirstPass is also available in Full Browser. However, the packet communication charge for connecting to FirstPass-compliant sites in Full Browser is not covered by the Pake-Houdai or Pake-Houdai Full deal.
- If you connect to a FirstPass-compliant site without a user certificate, or if your user certificate has expired, a message appears informing you of that fact. You can still connect to the site and view subsequent pages by selecting “YES” in some cases, but note that it may not be safe to send your personal information (credit card number, contact details, etc.) To disconnect, select “NO”, then reconnect the site after downloading the user certificate from the FirstPass Center.

■Notes on using FirstPass

- FirstPass is DoCoMo digital authentication service. Using FirstPass enables the client authentication in which the site authenticates the FOMA terminal.
- FirstPass can be used either when the FOMA terminal is directly connected to the Internet or when it is connected via a PC. When the FOMA terminal is connected to the Internet via a PC, the FirstPass PC software included in the provided CD-ROM for FOMA N905iμ is required.
  For more information, refer to the PDF-format “FirstPassManual” contained in the “FirstPassPCSoft” folder on the CD-ROM. (The “FirstPassManual” is in Japanese only.)
  To view the PDF-format “FirstPassManual”, you will need Adobe® Reader®.
  If this software is not installed on your PC, install the Adobe® Reader® in the provided CD-ROM to view the file.
  Refer to the help of the Adobe® Reader® for details on how to use it.
- When requesting a user certificate, carefully read and agree to the “The usage regulation” of FirstPass displayed on your screen before proceeding with your request.
- To use a user certificate, you will need to enter your PIN2 code (p.124). Take great care to prevent unauthorized persons from using your FOMA card (UIM) or PIN2 code since all the actions performed subsequent to PIN2 code entry will be assumed to have been performed by you.
- If your FOMA card (UIM) is lost or stolen, you can have your user certificates invalidated at NTT DoCoMo Information counter on the back cover of this manual.
- NTT DoCoMo is not responsible for and accepts no liability whatsoever regarding the sites or the content provided by FirstPass-compliant sites. Any disputes are to be resolved between the customer and the FirstPass-compliant site.
- NTT DoCoMo and its authentication company provide no guarantee regarding security or secrecy in the use of FirstPass and SSL certificates. Such certificates are used entirely at the discretion of the user.

Changing the Certificate Host

*** There is normally no need to change this setting.**

You can set the host for downloading the user certificate.

1 MENU ▶"Settings"▶"Connection setting"▶"Certificate host"

2 Highlight "<Not recorded>"▶ (Edit)▶Enter your security code ▶Select any item:

Default URL……Sets the URL of the initial screen for the host. You can enter up to 100 single-byte characters.

Host number……Sets the host number. You can enter up to 99 single-byte characters.

3 (Finish)

NOTE

- To change a stored "User setting host", use the same procedure for storing.
- To delete a stored "User setting host", select "Delete" from the function menu.

What is i-motion?

i-motion is a file containing video, voice and music data. It can be downloaded from an i-motion site to your FOMA terminal. You can also set an i-motion as a ring tone. Chaku-motion→p.100

● i-motion types

i-motion can be broadly divided into 2 types as follows. The type of the i-motion you downloaded depends on the site or data.

Type		Description
Type	Playback type	
Standard type (Can be saved*)	Playback after downloading (Up to 10M bytes)	Plays the i-motion after downloading all the data.
	Playback while downloading (Up to 10M bytes)	Plays the i-motion while downloading the i-motion data.
Streaming type (Cannot be saved)	Playback while downloading (Up to 10M bytes)	Plays the i-motion while downloading the i-motion data. As the data is discarded after the playback, you cannot repeat playback or save the i-motion to the FOMA terminal.

*: May not be saved depending on the i-motion.

Downloading i-motion

<Download i-motion>

1 Sites screen (p.167)▶Select i-motion

When data downloading is completed, the "Data acquisition" screen appears.

■ To cancel downloading

▶CLR

■ Standard type i-motion

You can set whether to play the i-motion automatically while downloading by the "i-motion auto-replay" setting. However, some i-motions may be played after downloading.

■ Streaming type i-motion

When "Replay streaming?" appears

- Select "YES" to start playback. Select "NO" to return to the site screen.
- To cancel playback after selecting "YES", press CLR.

2 "Play"

Plays the downloaded i-motion.

"Operations on the music player screen"→p.329



Data acquisition

Function menu ➡p.184

NOTE

- Some sites and i-motion do not allow downloading or the playback during the download.
- For standard type i-motions, the downloading itself continues even if the playback is stopped during downloading.

Continued on next page

NOTE

- Some i-motion is restricted to be played. "🕒" is displayed at the beginning of the title for the i-motion with restrictions on the play count, period or time limit. The i-motion restricted on the playback period cannot be played before or after the period. If the battery pack is removed from the FOMA terminal for a long period of time, the date and time settings stored on the FOMA terminal may be reset. In this case i-motion restricted on the playback period or time limit cannot be played.
  i-motion information→p.283
- Some i-motion cannot be correctly played.
- The playback while downloading may be interrupted or the images may be distorted due to the signal reception. You can repeat the playback of the standard type i-motion but you cannot repeat the playback of the streaming type i-motion.

FUNC Data acquisition screen (p.183)

Add screen memo……Saves the data acquisition screen to the screen memo."Saving a screen memo"→p.174

Certificate……Displays the contents of the SSL certificate when the page is compatible with SSL.

NOTE

- You can also play an i-motion from a "screen memo" after saving the data acquisition screen as a screen memo.
  However, you cannot save the data acquisition screen of:
  - i-motion restricted to be played
  - Streaming type i-motion
  - Incomplete i-motion

Saving i-motion

When "Save" can be selected on the data acquisition screen, you can set the i-motion to ring tone or standby screen.

- Some i-motion cannot be saved on the FOMA terminal.
- You can save up to 100 i-motion, including the movies shot by the camera. The maximum number of i-motion that can be saved varies depending on the amount of the i-motion data.
- i-motion folder→p.273

1 Data acquisition screen (p.183)▶"Save"▶"YES"

■ To cancel the saving

▶"NO"

Returns to the data acquisition screen without saving the i-motion.

2 Select a folder

NOTE

- An i-motion without title is listed as "movieXXX" (XXX are numbers).

Viewing i-motion details

You can check the details of the i-motion, including the title, file size and replay restrictions.

1 Data acquisition screen (p.183)▶"Property"

The i-motion info screen appears. Use ⊙ to scroll the display up or down to check the details such as the remaining count of the replay, the playback period and the time limit.

Setting Whether to Play an i-motion Automatically

<i-motion auto-replay>

- You can set whether to play an i-motion automatically when:
  - Downloading i-motion from the site screen
  - Displaying the Screen memo of the data acquisition screen
- "i-motion auto-replay" setting is activated only for the standard type i-motion. The streaming type i-motion is played back automatically regardless of this setting.
  i-motion types→p.183

1 i-mode settings screen (p.179)▶"i-motion auto-replay"▶Select any item:

ON (default)…… Automatically plays the i-motion after downloading. Some i-motion is played while downloading.

OFF……Displays the data acquisition screen without playing the i-motion automatically after downloading.

What is i-Channel?

i-Channel is a service that DoCoMo and IPs (information service provider) send news and weather information to i-Channel-compatible terminal as graphical information.
You can receive information at a set interval, display the ticker of the latest information on the standby screen, and display it on the channel list screen by pressing the i-Channel key (ch) (p.185). You can also select favorite channels on the channel list screen to receive rich, detailed information.
i-Channel is a pay service you need to apply for. (An i-mode contract is necessary for application.)

Channels have two types: “Basic channels” and “Favorite channels”. “Basic channels” are provided by NTT DoCoMo and pre-installed so that you can use i-Channel as soon as your subscription begins. When you automatically update information on “Basic Channel”, the packet communication charges will not apply. “Favorite channel” is provided by IPs (information service providers) other than NTT DoCoMo, and you can register your favorite channels. The packet communication fee to auto-update information for “Favorite channel” is not included in the i-Channel service fees. However, packet communication charges for viewing detailed information for both “Basic channel” and “Favorite channel” from the channel list are not included in the i-Channel service fees.

Note that the packet communication fee to auto-update information for basic channels during international roaming is not included in the i-Channel service fees.

For details, refer to “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode] FOMA version”.

This service provides only Japanese programs.

Ticker on the standby screen/indicator display

If you have subscribed to i-Channel, the information is displayed on the standby screen or indicator display as a ticker when the information is received.

- “” flashes while i-Channel information is being delivered.
- You can set the ticker display with “i-Channel setting”. →p.186



NOTE

- Ticker is displayed even when i-motion or i-αppli standby screen is set on the standby screen. Ticker is also displayed when the Self mode is set.
- The ticker does not appear when the FOMA card (UIM) is not inserted, when Public mode (Driving mode) is set or in Power saver mode.

Viewing Sites from the Channel List

You can display channel list screen to access information sites of i-Channel.
You can display up to 15 channels including both “Basic channel” and “Favorite channel” on the channel list.

1 On the standby screen▶ch

The “Channel list” screen appears.
Assigning functions to software keys →p.33


Channel list
Function menu➡p.186

■ When the channel list displaying from i-mode menu

▶“i-Channel”▶“i-Channel list”

2 Select channel item

NOTE

- Information may be received when the channel list screen is displayed in some cases.

Continued on next page

NOTE

- When information is received, the ring tone will not sound, and the vibrator does not vibrate. Also, the incoming call lamp does not flash.

FUNC Channel list screen (p.185)

Add desktop icon→p.115

Replay……Displays the channel list screen from the beginning.

Sound effect……Sets whether to play the sound effect of the channel list screen or not (ON/OFF).

Window

Open new window……"Using multi window" →p.171

Close window……Closes the displayed window.

Change window……Switches windows when multiple websites are open.

Quick Search→p.339

NOTE

- The setting of "Sound effect" set on the channel list screen is applied to "Sound effect" of "i-mode settings".

Setting i-Channel <i-Channel setting>

You can set whether i-Channel information is displayed on the standby screen as a ticker or not. You can also set the scroll speed and color of the ticker on the standby screen.

- When the "Ticker display setting" is set to "ON", the standby screen displays a ticker repeatedly. When it is set to "Receiving", the standby screen displays a ticker only twice when information is newly received.
- Selecting "ON" for the indicator display displays a ticker as follows:
  - Setting the Ticker display setting to "ON" displays a ticker twice on the indicator display each time the latest information is delivered or the FOMA terminal is folded.
  - Setting the Ticker display setting to "Receiving" displays a ticker twice when the latest information is delivered.
  - The Power saver mode is not set while a ticker appears on the indicator display.

1 i▶"i-Channel"▶"i-Channel setting"▶Select any item:

Ticker display setting (default: Display, OFF) …… Sets whether the ticker for channel information is displayed on the standby screen (ON/Receiving/OFF).
When set to "ON" or "Receiving", set whether to display the ticker on the indicator display (ON/OFF) when the FOMA terminal is folded.

Ticker speed setting (default: Normal)……Selects the ticker scrolling speed from "Normal/High/Low".

Ticker color setting……Selects the ticker color.*

Ticker size setting (default: Standard)……Selects the ticker size from "Small/Standard/Large".

*: When you switch the highlighted item while selecting an item, the highlighted ticker color appears on the screen.

NOTE

- The i-Channel setting cannot be changed in Public mode (Driving mode), at the time of purchase (i-Channel not set) or if the FOMA card (UIM) is not inserted, etc.

<Ticker display setting>

- The ticker display setting remains when you unsubscribe from i-Channel or when you unsubscribe from i-mode service before unsubscribing from i-Channel, but tickers will not be displayed automatically.
- Settings are retained for each mode of 2in1.

Resetting i-Channel <Reset i-Channel>

You can reset the i-Channel settings to the defaults set at the time of purchase.

1 i▶"i-Channel"▶"Reset i-Channel"▶Enter your security code▶"YES"

NOTE

- After reset, i-Channel tickers are not displayed. The ticker is turned on again automatically when the information is updated automatically or when ch is pressed to receive the latest information.

Mail

What is i-mode Mail? 188
Displaying Mail Menu ..... Mail menu 188

Composing i-mode mail/Deco-mail

Composing and Sending i-mode Mail ..... Compose message/Send 188
Composing Deco-mail ..... Deco-mail 190
Composing Auto Deco-mail ..... Auto Deco-mail 192
Using Templates to Create Deco-mail 192
Attaching Files ..... Attach file 193
Saving i-mode Mail to Send Later ..... Save i-mode mail 194
Storing Addresses in Mailing Lists 195

Receiving and using i-mode mail

When You Receive i-mode Mail ..... Auto receive mail 196
Receiving i-mode Mail Selectively ..... Receive option 197
Checking for i-mode Mail ..... Check new messages 198
Replying to i-mode Mail ..... Reply to mail 199
Forwarding i-mode Mail to Other Recipients ..... Forward mail 199
Adding Mail Addresses to Phonebook 200
Downloading Attached Files Selectively 200
Checking and Saving Files Attached to i-mode Mail 201

Using mail boxes

Displaying Mail in the Inbox and Outbox ..... Inbox/Outbox 202

Using mail records

Using Mail Records ..... Sent address list/Received address list 210

Specifying mail settings

Setting up the FOMA Terminal Mail Functions ..... Mail Setting 211

Using the message services

When You Receive a Message ..... Receive message 216
Checking for Messages ..... Check new messages 217
Viewing Messages in the Message Box ..... MessageR/F 217

Using Area Mail

What is Early Warning “AreaMail”? 218
When You Receive Early Warning “AreaMail” ..... Area Mail reception 218
Setting Early Warning “AreaMail” ..... Area Mail setting 219

Using chat mail

Sending and Receiving Chat Mail ..... Send/Receive chat mail 219
Storing Chat Members in a Chat Group 223
Setting up Chat Mail ..... Chat 224

Use SMS

Composing and Sending SMS (Short Message) ..... Compose/Send SMS 224
When You Receive an SMS Message ..... Receive SMS 225
Checking for SMS ..... Check new SMS 226
Specifying SMS Settings ..... Set SMS 226

What is i-mode Mail?

The mail function provided on the FOMA terminal enables you to send and receive i-mode mail and SMS.
To use i-mode mail, you must first subscribe to the "i-mode" service.
How to send and receive i-mode mail→pp.188, 196

- You can send and receive SMS (text) with other FOMA terminals without subscribing to i-mode. How to send and receive SMS→pp.224, 225

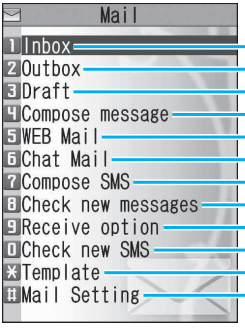
● i-mode mail

Subscribing to i-mode enables you to send and receive e-mail messages via the Internet as well as between i-mode terminals.
In addition to the message body, you can attach up to 10 files (JPEG image, ToruCa data, PDF data etc.) within the total of 2M bytes. As the FOMA terminal is compatible with Deco-mail and provides many pre-installed Decorate PI that can be inserted to mails like pictographs, you can compose and send expressive mail not only by changing the character color, size, or background color of the message body.

- For details on how to use i-mode mail, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

Displaying Mail Menu <Mail menu>

1 ✉
The "Mail menu" screen appears.



*: Connect to the WEB mail site and compose or send mails from Address B. For more details, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [2in1]".

Composing and Sending i-mode Mail <Compose message/Send>

Use this procedure to compose and send a new i-mode mail message.

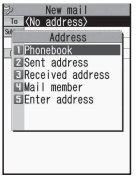
- You can change the size and color of the text used in the message body, assign actions to the text and insert images, lines and other decorative features. Deco-mail →p.190
- Compose SMS/Send: You can store up to 400 sent mails (i-mode mail and SMS) (the number of mails you can actually store may be reduced depending on the file size).

1 ✉▶**"Compose message"**
The "New mail" screen appears.



New mail
Function menu➡p.189

2 "To <No address>"
The selection menu for address appears.



3 **Enter an address**

■ **Searching in the phonebook**
▶"Phonebook"▶Search the phonebook (p.92)▶Select a mail address in the phonebook detail screen

■ **Searching in the address list**
▶"Sent address" or "Received address"▶Select a mail address

■ **Using Mail member**
▶"Mail member"▶Select a mail member
For information on mail member→p.195

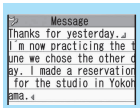
■ **Entering an address directly**
▶"Enter address"▶Enter an address
You can enter up to 50 single-byte alphabets, numbers or symbols for a mail address.

When you enter a mail address, the new mail address field is displayed below the filled field. You can enter other mail addresses and send a same mail message to multiple recipients. You can enter up to 5 mail addresses.

4 “Subject”
The “Subject” screen appears.

5 **Enter a subject**
You can enter up to 100 double-byte or 200 single-byte characters.

6 “ <No message>”
The “Message” screen appears.



Message

Function menu➡p.190, 365

7 **Enter the message body**
You can enter up to 5,000 double-byte characters.
You can also insert a line feed (hard return) while editing the message. You can also insert a line feed by pressing ⓞ at the end of a sentence. A line feed is counted as 1 double-byte character and displayed as “ ↵ ”. Spaces are also counted in the same way as characters.
You can compose and send the Deco-mail. →p.190
You can use templates to compose and send the Deco-mail. →p.192

8 **Check the message▶ (Send)**
When you enter the message, the number of bytes of the message appears on the upper right corner of the message.
An animation appears while sending a mail. After sending a mail, select “OK” to return to the mail menu screen.



■ **To cancel the transmission**
▶ (Stop) or CLR (1 second or longer)
Depending on the timing, the i-mode mail may be sent.

■ **When you are requested to send the mail again**
▶“YES”

Composing i-mode mail from the phonebook screen

Locate and display an e-mail address stored in the phonebook and then press ● (MAIL).
How to search the phonebook →p.92
The currently displayed mail address is pasted into the address field in the new mail screen.

Decorate PI

On the N905iμ, you can enter the Decorate PI in the mail message in the same way as entering pictographs. Decorate PI is an image which fulfills certain conditions including moving pictograph, and you can download Decorate PI from websites (p.176), in addition to the pre-installed Decorate PI.
- Mails with Decorate PI are handled as Deco-mails.

NOTE
- If the storage capacity for sent mails is full when you send a mail, mails are deleted from the oldest one (protected mails and mails in the Secret folder are not deleted).
- Some phones may be unable to receive push signals.
- When you use pictographs in the subject or message body and send the mail to the devices of other mobile phone companies (au/SoftBank/Tu-Ka), the pictographs are automatically converted to similar ones on the other party’s device. However, pictographs may not be displayed properly depending on the model or functions of the other party’s mobile phone. If the pictographs you use are not available in other party’s mobile phone, the pictographs are automatically converted to text or “ ”.
- When the recipient address is a phone number and the number is preceded by the “184” or “186” prefix, a message appears asking whether to delete the prefix before sending the mail when you try to send i-mode mail.
- Depending on the signal quality, the recipient may not be able to display the text correctly. Also, the “Transmission failed” message may appear even after the message has been sent.
- When 2in1 is in B mode, you cannot compose and send i-mode mail.

FUNC New mail screen (p.188)

Send……Sends i-mode mail.

Save……Saves the i-mode mail message you are currently editing in the Draft mailbox. →p.194

Delete receiver……Deletes the selected receiver if 2 or more receivers are entered.

Change rcv. type……Changes the address type with an address highlighted.

To……The recipient’s address. The mail address entered in the “To” field is displayed in other recipient’s terminals.

Cc……Broadcasts address. The mail address entered in the Cc field are also displayed to the other recipients. Select this option to send copies of the message sent to the address in the To field to other addresses.

Continued on next page

Bcc……Broadcasts address. The mail address entered in the Bcc field are not displayed to the other recipients.

Template……"Using Templates to Create Deco-mail" →p.192

Attach file……Attaches a file such as a melody, image or i-motion to an i-mode mail. "Attaching Files"→p.193

Activate camera

Photo mode……Activates the camera function to shoot images. "Shooting Still Images"→p.152

Movie mode……Activates the camera function to shoot movies. "Shooting Movies"→p.156

Delete att. file/Del all att. files……Deletes one or all attached file(s).

Add header……Pastes a header into the i-mode mail message.

Add signature……Pastes your signature into the i-mode mail message.

Erase message……Erases the message body in the current i-mode mail message.

Delete……Deletes the current i-mode mail message.

NOTE

<Change rcv. type>

- E-mail addresses entered in the "To" and "Cc" fields are usually displayed to the recipient. However, depending on the terminal device and mail software used by the recipient, the e-mail addresses may not be displayed.

FUNC Message screen (p.189)

- For functions other than the following, refer to the function menu of the "Text entry (edit)" screen (p.365).

Decorate mail……"Decoration menus"→p.191

Select area……You can decorate, copy or cut the selected text.→p.367

Load template……"Using Templates to Create Deco-mail" →p.192

Activate camera……Shoots the image to insert into the mail.→p.152

Quick Search→p.339

Paste location……Pastes the location information URL into the message body.

From position loc.……Acquires and pastes the current location information.

From loc. history……Pastes the location information from checked history.

From phonebook……Searches the phonebook and pastes the location information stored on the phonebook.

From My Profile……Pastes the location information stored on the My Profile.

From image……Pastes the location information attached to the image.

Property……Displays the file name and size of an image inserted into the message when the cursor is at the left of the image.

Undo……Returns the entered text or message decoration to its status in the previous step.

Preview……Displays a preview of the message.

NOTE

<Activate camera>

- The size of the images shot using the camera function is set to SubQCIF (128 × 96).

<Paste location>

- When the location information URL is pasted into the message, "▷" is prefixed to the location information URL.
- The number of characters of the pasted location information URL is counted as the number of characters of the message.

<Undo>

- After you select "Undo" and return the text or message decoration to its one previous step, you cannot cancel "Undo".

Composing Deco-mail

<Deco-mail>

The Deco-mail function allows you to make your i-mode mail (text mail) more visually appealing and exciting by changing the size and color of the text, the background color, assigning actions to text, and inserting lines or images into your message.

- If you decorate the message, you can enter fewer characters than in the i-mode mail which is not decorated (text mail).
- When decorating text, you can enter text while decorating or you can decorate text after entering.

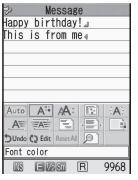
1 Message screen (p.189)▶ ▶Use ⊕ to move the frame to select the decoration menu

The "Decoration menu" appears.

Decoration menu→p.191

■ Decorating text while entering

Decorated text is entered after decoration menu is selected.



Decoration menu

■ **Decorating the entered text**

Select [Edit] from the decoration menu, specify the text you want to decorate and select a decorating menu. The specified text is decorated.

2 Press [ch] (Exit) to close decoration menu

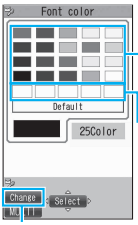
NOTE

- If you forward received Deco-mail or quote Deco-mail in a reply, inserted images and decorations appear as quoted in the message.
- If you quote or forward Deco-mail that includes an image that cannot be sent as mail, the image is deleted.
- When you send Deco-mail exceeding 10,000 bytes to a terminal that does not support Deco-mail, or to a terminal that supports Deco-mail other than the following models*, the receiving terminal receives a mail that includes URL for viewing the Deco-mail. However, some terminals that do not support Deco-mail may receive only the message with no URL for viewing the Deco-mail.

  *: 905i Series, 904i Series, 903i Series, 704i Series (excluding P704iμ), 703i Series (excluding P703iμ)

Decoration menus

- When decoration applied by lines (ticker/swing/inserting line/alignment) is selected, a line feed is automatically inserted when the menu is selected.
- You can combine multiple decorations (example: changing the color and size of characters and making them blink).

Menu	Description
Auto *1	"Composing Auto Deco-mail"→p.192
	Changes the character color. You can select the pallet of 25 colors or 256 colors. <25 colors>  Use ◎ to select frame and select color. Latest 5 colors selected from 256 color palette appear at the bottom. Press [Change] to toggle 25 and 256 colors.
	Selects the character size from / / (Large/Medium/Small).

Menu	Description	
*1	Selects the image to insert from My picture folder.	
/ /	Makes characters blink, ticker or swing.	
	Begin / End *1	"Starts" or "Ends" the decoration.
	Select / Reset *2	"Sets" or "Releases" the decoration of specified area.
	Selects the character alignment position from / / (Left/Center/Right).	
*1	Inserts a line.	
*1	Changes the background color of the message. Select the background color from the pallet in the same way as the font color.	
Undo	Returns the entered character or message decoration 1 step back.	
Edit *1	Decorates the entered characters, or sets/releases the decoration.	
Reset *2	Releases the decoration.	
Reset All *1	Releases all the decoration.	
	Displays the preview screen of the decoration.	

*1 : Cannot be selected in the decoration menu when [Edit] is selected.
*2 : Available in the decoration menu only when [Edit] is selected.

NOTE

<Font color/Background color>

- Pictographs are also displayed in the specified color. To return them to their original color, select "[Edit]", specify the area to be changed and then select "[Reset]". However, you cannot specify the character color of Decorate PI.

<Font size>

- You cannot change the size of Decorate PI.

<Insert image>

- You can insert up to 20 files, up to 90K bytes, of JPEG or GIF images, or Decorate PI regardless of the number of bytes of the message body or the file size of the attached file (the maximum number depends on the file size).
- If you insert multiple copies of the same image, they are handled as 1 image. However, if you save or send an image once and then edit the image and insert it again, it is handled as a separate image.
- If you insert an animation, the animation stops once a set time has elapsed.

Continued on next page

NOTE

<Blink/Ticker/Swing>

- Blinking, ticker subtitling or swinging stops once a set time has elapsed.

<Edit decoration>

- If you insert a new character in the decorated characters, the decorations are also applied to the newly entered character.
- Even if you delete the decorated text, the decoration data itself may be retained and the number of characters that can be entered may be reduced. You should remove the decorations and then delete the text. Also, if you hold down CLR for 1 second or longer, all the characters and decoration data are deleted.

Composing Auto Deco-mail

<Auto Deco-mail>

The FOMA terminal detects the emotion from the mail text and automatically converts the mail to Deco-mail with most suitable decorations, such as pictographs and face marks.

- You can decorate your mail to express up to 2 emotions.
- When you download Auto Decomail-picture from websites (p.178), these pictures are also used for automatic conversion.

1 Message screen (p.189)▶Enter the message body▶

2 Press ● to move the frame and select "Auto"

5 decoration patterns are created.

3 Select one of the decoration patterns▶● (Set)

The decoration pattern switches each time you press (Next).

Press ch (PI ON/OFF) to toggle the display of pictograms and face marks on and off and also to switch the decoration patterns.

■ To edit the decoration

You can change the decoration by pressing (Edit).→p.190

NOTE

- You cannot create Auto Deco-mail when the message body exceeds 1,000 bytes.
- Depending on the message text, the Deco-mail image displayed may not match the contents.

Using Templates to Create Deco-mail

You can create Deco-mail by using pre-installed templates. A template is a form for Deco-mail to which the layout and the ornament are already set. By using a template, Deco-mail can be created and transmitted easily.

- You can download templates from sites.→p.178
- You can edit a template with the function menu of the template preview screen.→p.193
- The decoration information is already included in the templates. Consequently, the number of characters that can be entered are fewer than for text mail.
- When you try to use a template in the following cases, a message appears asking whether to delete the edited content in the message:
  - When text is already entered in the mail message
  - When the header or signature is automatically inserted
  - When there is an attached file

1 New mail screen (p.188)▶Enter an address and a subject▶ch (FUNC)▶"Template"▶"Load template"▶Select a template

2 ● (Select)▶Edit a message

After you apply the template, you can still edit a message. You can also use "Decorate mail" (p.190) to add arrangement of decorative features.

3 Check the message▶ (Send)

Saving a template

You can save the Deco-mail you are composing as a template.

- You can save up to 45 templates. (Data size may affect the template counts to be saved.)
- If the message has any attached file other than inserted images, the file is deleted and the message is saved as template.
- When the Deco-mail consists of only text, you cannot save the mail as a template.
- Templates are saved in "Template" in the Mail menu.

1 Compose a Deco-mail (p.190)▶ch (FUNC)▶"Template"▶"Save template"▶"YES"

NOTE

- The subject of the message being composed is used as the template title. If no subject is entered, "YYYY/MM/DD hh:mm" is used as the title (Y: year, M: month, D: day, h: hour, m: minute).

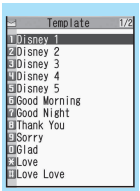
Viewing the template preview

1 ▶"Template"

The "Template list" screen appears.

■ **To use i-mode to search for templates**

▶"Search by i-mode"

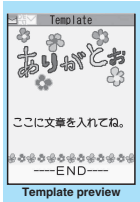


Template

Function menu➡p.193

2 **Select a template**

The "Template preview" screen appears.



Template preview

Function menu➡p.193

FUNC Template list screen (p.193)

Compose message……"Using Templates to Create Deco-mail"→p.193

Sort……Sorts the templates in a selected criteria.

Edit title……Edits the title of the template. You can enter up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters.

Info……Displays the template size, save date and whether or not it includes images.

No. of messages……Displays the number of saved templates.

Delete……Selects the deleting method from "Delete this/Delete selected/Delete all". "About multiple-choice"→p.38

FUNC Template preview screen (p.193)

Compose message……"Using Templates to Create Deco-mail"→p.193

Edit……Edits the template.

Save insert image……Selects the image inserted to the Template and saves it on the My picture folder. If the image can be set as the standby screen, you can select whether to set it as the standby screen or not after saving it.

NOTE

- When 2in1 is in B mode, the templates are not available.

<Edit>

- The title used when the template is saved as a separate file is "YYYY/MM/DD hh:mm" (Y: year, M: month, D: day, h: hour, m: minute).

Attaching Files <Attach file>

You can send i-mode mails with files attached.

- You can attach the following files:
  - Image (still image, image)
  - SWF Flash movie
  - movie, i-motion
  - Melody
  - PDF data
  - Documents in the microSD memory card
  - ToruCa, ToruCa (detail)
  - Phonebook entry
  - My Profile data
  - Schedule or To Do list entry
  - Bookmark
  - Other files in the microSD memory card

1 **New mail screen (p.188)▶ch (FUNC)▶"Attach file"▶Select any item:**

Image/i-motion/Melody/PDF……Selects a folder on the Phone or microSD, and then selects the file to attach.
The number of selecting folders varies depending on the selected device (Phone/microSD).

Document……Selects a document data on the microSD memory card.

ToruCa……Selects a folder on the Phone or microSD, and then selects the file to attach.
The number of selecting folders varies depending on the selected device (Phone/microSD).

Phonebook……Selects the phonebook on the Phone or microSD, and then searches for a phonebook entry (selects a folder for microSD) to select the file to attach.
Searching the phonebook→p.92

My Profile……Attaches the My Profile data.

Schedule……Selects the Schedule or To Do list, and then selects the file to attach.

Continued on next page

Bookmark……Selects the bookmark on the Phone (i-mode/Full Browser) or microSD, and then selects the file to attach.

Other……Selects other files in the microSD memory card.

■ To send an image to a mova terminal as i-shot

You can send a mail attached with an image to a mova terminal as i-shot.

When you send a mail to a mova terminal, you can attach only 1 JPEG image. If you attach a GIF image downloaded from sites, etc., the attached file is deleted and only the message reaches the recipient.

When you send mail to a mova terminal, unless the recipient has set the incoming message length, he or she can only receive a message up to 184 double-byte characters (369 bytes) long. If the recipient has set the incoming message length, the recipient can receive a message up to 2,000 double-byte characters including the i-shot URL (where the image is kept).

2 Compose and send an i-mode mail

■ To check the attached file

▶Select a file

You cannot play melodies which exceed 100K bytes or SWF-format Flash images.

■ To delete the attached file

▶Highlight the file▶ch (FUNC)▶“Delete att. file”▶“YES”

To delete all the attached files when multiple files are attached, select “Del all att. files”.

For details of the subsequent procedure, see “Composing and Sending i-mode Mail” (p.188).

NOTE

- You can attach up to 10 files, up to 2M bytes regardless of the number of bytes of the message body or the file size of the inserted image (the maximum number depends on the file size). When attaching ToruCa, you can attach ToruCa up to 1K bytes and ToruCa (detail) up to 100K bytes for 1 case.
- You cannot attach a file which is forbidden to be sent as a mail attachment or output from your FOMA terminal.
- You can attach images or movies shot with the camera even if “File restriction” is set to “File restricted”.
- If you send an attached file which is not supported by the receiving terminal, the attached file may be deleted automatically at the i-mode Center. In this case, the “添付ファイル削除” (Attached file deleted) message is added to the mail message.

NOTE

- If an image selected for “Image” is larger than QVGA (320 dots wide × 240 dots high) or QVGA V. (240 dots wide × 320 dots high), “Attach image” appears and you can select “Attach mail” or “QVGA scale down”.
- Depending on the recipient’s mobile phone model, sent image may be displayed incorrectly or may not be displayed. A coarse image may also be displayed.
- When you send an i-motion mail to the terminal which is not compatible with the i-motion mail (i-motion attached i-mode mail), the recipient receives a mail with the URL for viewing the i-motion and can view the i-motion by selecting the URL.
- When you send an i-motion mail, depending on the recipient’s mobile phone model, movies may not be received or displayed correctly, may be choppy or converted to continuous still images for viewing. When sending a mail to a terminal other than those listed below*, it is recommended to set “File size” to “500KB”, “Select size” to “QCIF (176 × 144)” and “Quality setting” to “Fine mode” when shooting movies.

  *: 905i Series, 904i Series, 903i Series, 704i Series (excluding P704iμ), 703i Series (excluding P703iμ)

  Playing movies→p.282
- If the recipient is not FOMA N905iμ, melodies you send may not be played correctly.

Saving i-mode Mail to Send Later

<Save i-mode mail>

You can save the composing mail on the FOMA terminal temporarily, then edit and send the saved mail afterwards.

Saving i-mode mail

- The Draft mailbox can hold up to 20 i-mode mail and SMS in total (The number of storable mail may decrease depending on the data size).
- You cannot compose i-mode mail when draft mails are full.

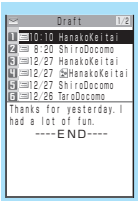
1 New mail screen (p.188)▶ch (FUNC)▶“Save”

If there is no character in the address, subject, or message body, the mail cannot be saved. However, if there is an attached file, the mail can be saved even when no text is entered.

Sending draft i-mode mail

1 ▶“Draft”

The “Draft mail list” screen appears.



Draft mail list

Function menu➡p.195

2 **Select a mail▶Edit the address, subject or message body and then send the mail**

NOTE

- When 2in1 is in B mode, you cannot display the Draft mail list screen.

FUNC Draft mail list screen (p.195)

List setting……Selects a mail-list format from “Subject/Name/Address”.

iC transmission→p.309

Send Ir data→p.307

iC trans. all→p.310

Send all Ir data→p.308

Copy to microSD→p.298

No. of messages……Displays the number of mails in the Draft mailbox.

Store in Center→p.209

Delete……Selects the deleting method from “Delete this/Delete selected/Delete all”. “About multiple-choice”→p.38

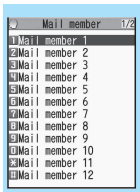
Storing Addresses in Mailing Lists

By storing addresses in the mailing list, you can easily enter multiple addresses only by selecting the mailing list when composing i-mode mail.

- You can store up to 20 mailing lists with up to 5 e-mail addresses in each list.

1 MENU/MULTI ▶“Own Data”▶“Mail member”

The “Mail member list” screen appears.

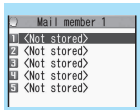


Mail member list

Function menu➡p.195

2 **Select a mail member**

The “Mail member detail” screen appears.



Mail member detail

Function menu➡p.195

3 **Highlight “<Not stored>”▶ (Edit)▶Enter the mail address**

You can enter up to 50 single-byte characters. To store more e-mail addresses, repeat step 3.

FUNC Mail member list screen (p.195)

Compose message……Composes an i-mode mail message with the members of the mailing list pasted into the recipients field.

Edit member name……Edits the name of the mailing list. You can enter up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters.

Reset member name……Resets the mailing list name to the default name.

FUNC Mail member detail screen (p.195)

Edit address……Edits the e-mail address. You can enter up to 50 single-byte characters.

Look-up address……Enters the e-mail address by browsing the phonebook, sent address list or received address list.

Continued on next page

Delete this/Delete all……Deletes one or all mail member(s).

When You Receive i-mode Mail

<Auto receive mail>

When the FOMA terminal is in a service area, i-mode mail is automatically sent to the FOMA terminal from the i-mode Center.

- You can store up to 1,000 received mails (i-mode mail and SMS) (the number of mails you can actually store may be reduced depending on the file size).

Displaying new messages automatically

[1] The “Mail receiving” screen appears when the reception of i-mode mail starts and the “Received result” screen appears when the reception is finished.



- “ ” flashes while receiving a message and “ ” stops flashing and lights up when the reception is finished.
- The volume of the ring tone is set to the same volume set at “Mail” of “Ring volume”.

[2] The number of received mail or MessageR/F appears on the received result screen.

- The displayed number of mails includes the number of SMS.
- When you select “Mail” on the received result screen, the mail list screen (pp.202, 204) appears.
- If no operation is performed for about 15 seconds, the previous screen reappears. The display duration may vary depending on the “Mail/Msg. ring time” setting.

■ When you receive an i-shot service mail

If you receive an i-shot service mail sent from a mova terminal, images arrive as attached files.

■ When you receive a mail exceeds 100K bytes

You cannot automatically receive a mail which exceeds 100K bytes including attached files.
You can download the attached file which exceeds 100K bytes manually from the i-mode Center.→p.200

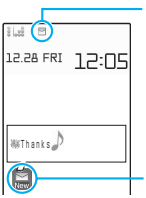
NOTE

- If the storage capacity for received mails is full when you receive a mail, mails are deleted from the mails in the trash box and oldest read mails (unread or protected mails and mails in the Secret folder are not deleted).
- When the FOMA terminal cannot receive any more mails (because it is full with unread and protected mails), (red)/ (red) appears. Read the unread mails or unprotect the unnecessary mails.
- When 2in1 is in A mode or B mode and a mail arrives only at the unused address, the “Mail Receiving...” screen appears, but the received result screen and “ ” do not appear. In addition, the mail ring tone does not sound.
- If you receive an i-mode mail from a terminal capable of specifying “To”, “Cc” and “Bcc” recipients, refer to the mail detail screen to see whether your own address is in the “To”, “Cc” or “Bcc” field.
→pp.202, 205
- If you receive an i-mode mail when the standby screen is not displayed and “Operation preferred” is set in “Receiving setting”, the FOMA terminal does not ring. When “Alarm preferred” is selected, the FOMA terminal plays the ring tone and displays the reception results screen.

Viewing new i-mode mail

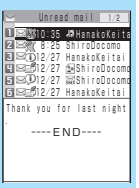
1 On the standby screen▶●▶Select “ ”

New



■ To display the unread mail list

▶On the standby screen▶●▶Use ✣ to select “ ”
The “Unread mail list” screen appears.



Unread mail

Function menu➡p.208

NOTE

- Characters that cannot be displayed appear as spaces.

NOTE

- If the number of characters in the i-mode mail message body exceeds the maximum number of characters that can be received, either "/" or "//" is inserted at the end of the message and the remaining portion is automatically deleted.
- If the size of received i-mode mail exceeds the size set in "Limit Mail Size", the pasted data is deleted at the i-mode Center and you cannot download it.
- If you receive decorated mail (HTML mail) from a PC, the decorations may not be displayed correctly.

Emotion-expressing mail

An icon pops up and displays the emotion matching the contents of the received mail.
You can also specify the icon for the received mails containing the specified keywords.



Emotion-expressing mail icon





- The following are the icons for the emotion-expressing mail:

Icon	Meaning	Icon	Meaning	Icon	Meaning
	Hurry		Advice		OK
	Love		Fight		Reply
	Hate you		Question		Information
	Happy		Join		Anger
	Remark		Sad		Important
	Fun		Note		Icon unsupported*
	Surprise				

*: The "Icon unsupported" icon is displayed for the following mails, etc.:
- Mails forwarded by Infrared data exchange, iC exchange, etc.
- Mails retrieved from the Data Security Center
- SMS copied or moved from the FOMA card (UIM)
- SMS in the FOMA card (UIM)
- Mails copied from the microSD memory card

- You can specify whether to display icons in "Emotion/Keyword" (p.215).
- The following three types of icons are used for displaying keyword information.
  You can specify the settings of "Keyword" in "Emotion/Keyword" (p.215).



- If the received mail contains an emotion-expressing mail icon or multiple keywords, the following priority applies:
  ①Keyword 1 ②Keyword 2
  ③Keyword 3 ④Disp emotion
- You can pick up the messages with the specified emotion-expressing mail icon by using the filter function. → p.208

NOTE

- Depending on the mail, the icon displayed may not match the contents.
- The reception date and time, subject and the message up to 1,000 bytes (500 double-byte characters) from the beginning are searched for determining an appropriate emotion-expressing mail icon. The subject and all the message texts are searched for "Keyword" icons.
- When you receive two mails or more at the same time, only the icon for the newest mail is displayed on the received result screen and as a popup on desktop.

Receiving i-mode Mail Selectively <Receive option>

You can check the subject of i-mode mail kept at the i-mode Center, then select the mail to receive or delete the mail at the i-mode Center without receiving.

- To use this function, set "Receive option setting" to "ON" beforehand. When set to "ON", you cannot receive i-mode mail automatically.

When mail arrives

When the FOMA terminal notifies you of mail received from the i-mode Center, a message appears saying that mail is kept at the i-mode Center, and "" icon is displayed at the top of the screen. Neither "" nor "" is displayed. When you confirm the message and press any key, the message and icon disappear.

Receiving mail selectively

1 ▶“Receive option”

You can also access “Receive option” as follows:

- ▶“iMenu”▶“メニュー／検索” (Menu/search)▶“メール選択受信” (Receive option)

■ If “Receive option setting” is set to “OFF”

A message appears asking whether you want to enable mail receive options. Select “Receive option setting” to specify the “Receive option” setting. When you set the receive option to “ON”, the Mail menu screen reappears.

2 Select and set option for each item of i-mode mail

受信 (Accept): Accepts the selected mail.
削除 (Delete): Deletes the selected mail.
保留 (Hold): Leaves the selected mail at the i-mode Center.
Use “Check new messages” to receive the mail.

■ To delete all mails

▶“削除” (Delete) at the bottom of the page▶“決定” (OK)

■ When there are multiple pages of mail

▶“前ページ” (Previous page) or “次ページ” (Next page)▶Move to other pages and select the mail to be accepted

When you view the 2nd page, your selections on the 1st page remain valid.

The meanings of the icons displayed after “サイズ (size): XXX バイト (bytes)” are as follows:

: Image file attached
: Melody file attached
: i-motion attached
: ToruCa attached
: Other file attached

3 “受信／削除” (Receive/Delete)▶“決定” (OK)

The completion screen appears and mail reception begins.

■ To cancel selective reception

▶“キャンセル” (Cancel)

■ When there are multiple pages of mail

Selecting “受信／削除” (Receive/Delete) midway through the pages applies your options (hold, receive or delete) to the mail up to the selected page and mail on the remaining pages remains kept at the i-mode Center.

NOTE

- If you use “Check new messages”, all messages are received even if “Receive option setting” is set to “ON”. Deselect “Mail” in “Set check new messages” if you do not want to receive any mail.
- If you display the receive option screen, the “ ” icon disappears even when you do not receive or delete mail.
  The “ ” icon also disappears if you turn the FOMA terminal off or display the mail screen.
- When 2in1 is in B mode, you cannot launch the Receive option.

Checking for i-mode Mail

<Check new messages>

The i-mode mail messages which the FOMA terminal could not receive are kept at the i-mode Center. You can receive the kept mail messages by checking for i-mode mail at the i-mode Center.

- i-mode mail messages are kept at the i-mode Center in the following cases:
  - When the FOMA terminal is turned off
  - When “圏外” is displayed
  - When the Inbox is full
  - When “Receive option setting” is set to “ON”
  - During a videophone call/remote monitoring
  - When Self mode is set
  - During a PushTalk call
  - When connecting to the FirstPass Center
- Use “Set check new messages” to specify which items are checked for.

1 (1 second or longer)

The check new messages screen appears.

You can also check new messages by following procedures.

- ▶“Check new messages”
- ▶“Check new messages”

The FOMA terminal checks for “Mail”→“MessageR”→“MessageF”.

The “ ”, “R” and “F” icons flash during checking, and the “Checking...” message appears on the screen. The FOMA terminal then receives your i-mode mail and MessageR/F.

■ To cancel the inquiry

▶ (Quit) or CLR (1 second or longer) during the inquiry

When you cancel an inquiry, depending on the timing of the cancellation you may still receive the i-mode mail and MessageR/F.

2 Check for new i-mode mails, MessageR/F▶“Back”

NOTE

- Depending on the signal reception status, you cannot check for new mails or the checking may be canceled.
- Even when there is i-mode mail kept at the i-mode Center, the "" icon may not be displayed if the mail arrived at the Center while the FOMA terminal was turned off or the "圏外" was displayed.

Replying to i-mode Mail <Reply to mail>

You can send a reply to an i-mode mail message. When replying, you can either compose a new message or quote the body of the received message in your reply.

Replying by composing a new message

1 Received mail list screen (pp.202, 204)/ Received mail detail screen (pp.202, 205)▶ (Reply)▶Edit the subject and message body and send it

■ To reply to the sender of mail with multiple addresses

▶"Reply"▶"To sender"

■ To reply to the sender and all addresses of mail with multiple addresses

▶"Reply"▶"To all"

If replies cannot be sent to the sender, all the addresses, including the other broadcast addresses, are deleted from the displayed mail reply screen.

If the list of broadcast addresses includes some to which replies cannot be sent, these addresses to which replies cannot be sent are deleted from the displayed mail reply screen.

After the mail has been sent, the "" icon changes to "".

NOTE

- When 2in1 is in B mode or Dual mode, you cannot reply an i-mode mail sent to Address B.

Replying by quoting the received message

You can quote the received i-mode mail in your reply.

1 Received mail detail screen (pp.202, 205)▶ (FUNC)▶"Reply with quote"▶Edit the subject and message body and send it

■ To reply to the sender of mail with multiple addresses

▶"Reply with quote"▶"To sender"

■ To reply to the sender and all addresses of mail with multiple addresses

▶"Reply with quote"▶"To all"

The message in the received i-mode mail is quoted in the body of the reply.

A single quotation symbol (">" by default) is displayed at the start of the quoted message in the reply. Quotation symbols are not displayed at the beginning of each line.

To edit the quotation symbol→p.213

After the mail has been sent, the "" icon changes to "".

NOTE

- When data such as a melody or specification for activating i-αppli is pasted into the mail message, the pasted data is deleted.
- When 2in1 is in B mode or Dual mode, you cannot reply with quote to an i-mode mail sent to Address B.

Forwarding i-mode Mail to Other Recipients <Forward mail>

You can forward i-mode mail you have received to other people.

1 Received mail detail screen (pp.202, 205)▶ (FUNC)▶"Forward"▶" To <No address>"▶Enter an address

For detailed information on entering addresses →p.188

You can edit the subject and message body. You can forward i-mode mail consisting of up to a total of 5,000 double-byte characters including the received message body and any additional messages, headers and signatures.

2 (Send)

After the mail has been sent, the "" icon changes to "".

NOTE

- If the file which is prohibited to be attached to mails or output from the FOMA terminal is attached to or pasted, the file and its information are deleted.
- When data such as a melody or specification for activating i-αppli is pasted into the mail message, the pasted data is deleted.
- When there is any attached file whose downloading is not completed, the file is not attached.→p.200

Continued on next page

NOTE

- When 2in1 is in B mode, you cannot forward the mail.
- When 2in1 is in Dual mode, a forwarded mail to Address B is saved as an Address A mail.

Adding Mail Addresses to Phonebook

You can add the e-mail address or phone number of the sender of received mail to your phonebook.

- For the received SMS message, the sender's phone number is stored in the Phonebook as a phone number.

<Example: Adding the sender's e-mail address to the phonebook>

1 Received mail detail screen (pp.202, 205)▶ch (FUNC)▶"Save address"

■ **When there are multiple e-mail addresses to be added**

▶On the e-mail address selection screen, select the e-mail address you want to add

■ **To add a recipient e-mail address or phone number in a sent i-mode mail**

▶Sent mail detail screen▶ch (FUNC)▶"Save address"

If the mail is sent to multiple addresses, select the e-mail address to be added from the displayed list of e-mail addresses.

■ **To add an e-mail address or phone number included in the body of sent or received i-mode mail**

▶Sent mail detail screen/Received mail detail screen▶Highlight an e-mail address or phone number you want to add▶ch (FUNC)▶"Add to phonebook"

2 "YES"▶"Phone"▶"New"

The add new phonebook entry screen appears with the entered information displayed. Enter the required items and store the entry.

■ **To add information to the UIM phonebook**

▶"YES"▶"UIM"

When you add information to the UIM phonebook, "Overwrite" is displayed as the storage method instead of "Add".

Adding information to the phonebook→p.89

Downloading Attached Files Selectively

When the size of a mail including the message body, inserted images and attached files exceeds 100K bytes, you cannot receive the attached files automatically when you receive the mail. In this case, you need to download the attached files manually.

- You also have to download the files manually for the files that are not checked in "Prefer attachment".
- On the received mail detail screen, " " appears when the attached file is not downloaded and " " appears when the attached file is downloaded halfway.

1 Received mail detail screen (pp.202, 205)▶Select the attached file with " " or " " icon

Data downloading begins.

When data downloading is completed, the screen about data downloading completion appears.

■ **To cancel downloading**

▶ (Quit)

The data downloaded halfway is saved. In this case, you can download the remaining data by repeating step 1.

2 After downloading the data, contents of the data is displayed according to the file type of the attached file

NOTE

- When there is any attached file whose downloading is not completed, the data retention period of the attached file is displayed on the "Received mail detail" screen (pp.202, 205). When all the attached files are downloaded, the retention period disappears from the screen. You cannot download the attached file whose retention period is expired.
- When the storage capacity of Inbox is exceeded when you receive an attached file, the received mails are deleted automatically according to the size of the attached file (many received mails may be deleted depending on the size of the attached file). Note that unread or protected received mails and received mails in Secret folder are not deleted. It is recommended to protect mails you want to keep.→p.208

Checking and Saving Files Attached to i-mode Mail

You can check and save the data attached to or pasted into received i-mode mail.

- When you select an attached file whose downloading has not completed, the downloading starts.
- You cannot save the attached file whose downloading has not completed. To save the data, download the data beforehand. →p.200

Saving melodies <Save melody>

You can save a melody (,) attached to or pasted into received i-mode mail to the FOMA terminal.

- You cannot play a melody during a call.
- If the sender is not FOMA N905iμ, the received melodies may not be played correctly.

1 Received mail detail screen (pp.202, 205)▶Highlight the melody▶ ch (FUNC)▶"Save data"▶"YES"▶Select a folder

■ **To stop the melody**
▶ , , 0 to 9, *, #,

2 "YES"▶Select an item

■ **When you do not set the melody to the ring tone, etc.**
▶"NO"

NOTE

- If there are multiple pasted files, you may not be able to view the pasted files themselves.
- To prevent melodies from playing automatically when you open mail, set "Start attachment (auto)" to "OFF".

Saving images <Save image>

You can save images ( ) attached to or pasted into received i-mode mail.

Saving inserted image →p.209

1 Received mail detail screen (pp.202, 205)▶Move frame on image▶ ch (FUNC)▶"Save data"▶"YES"▶Select a folder

■ **To change image display to file name display**
▶Select an image
To return to the image display, select the file name.

2 "YES"▶Select an item

■ **When you do not set the image to the standby screen, etc.**
▶"NO"

Saving i-motion <Save i-motion>

You can save the i-motion ( ) attached to received i-mode mail.

- You cannot play an i-motion during a call.

1 Received mail detail screen (pp.202, 205)▶Highlight i-motion▶ ch (FUNC)▶"Save data"▶"YES"▶Select a folder

Saving ToruCa <Save ToruCa>

You can save the ToruCa and ToruCa (detail) ( ) attached to received i-mode mail.

1 Received mail detail screen (pp.202, 205)▶Select a ToruCa
The ToruCa appears.

2 (Save)▶Select a folder
▶You can also save the data by selecting "Save data" from the function menu.

Saving the PDF data and document

You can save the PDF data (PDF) or document ( ) attached to received i-mode mail.

1 Received mail detail screen (pp.202, 205)▶Select a file
The PDF data or document appears.
Operation for viewing PDF data or document →p.314

2 ch (FUNC)▶"Save"▶"YES"▶Select a folder

- Documents can only be saved to the microSD memory card.
- If there is no folder in the microSD memory card, a folder is created automatically and there is no need to select one.

■ **To return to the received mail detail screen**
▶CLR

Saving the tool data

You can save the tool data (phonebook, schedule or bookmark) ( ) attached to received i-mode mail.

<Example: Saving the schedule>

1 Received mail detail screen (pp.202, 205)▶Select a file

The information of schedule appears.
You can also view the data by selecting “Save data” from the function menu.

2 ● (Save)

■ **Phonebook**

▶● (Save)▶Select the destination

For details of the subsequent procedure when you select “Phone”, “Phone + PushTalk” or “UIM”, refer to “Add to phonebook” (p.89).

■ **Bookmark**

▶● (Select)▶Select the destination

For i-mode, “i-mode Browser” and “microSD” can be selected. For the Full Browser, “Full Browser” and “microSD” can be selected.

NOTE

- You cannot save the schedule on the microSD memory card.
- When you save a file containing multiple items of data on the FOMA terminal, only the first data is saved (when you save the data on the microSD memory card, all the data is saved).

Saving other files

You can save other files ( ) attached to received i-mode mail.

- Other files are automatically saved to the “Other” folder on the microSD memory card. When the data is saved, the file name is changed. →p.293

1 Received mail detail screen (pp.202, 205)▶Highlight another file▶ (FUNC)▶“Save data”▶“YES”

Displaying Mail in the Inbox and Outbox <Inbox/Outbox>

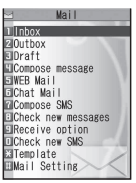
- The FOMA terminal can store up to 1,000 received i-mode mail and SMS in total and up to 400 sent i-mode mail and SMS in total.
- You can protect up to 1,000 received mails and 200 sent mails.
- The number of the messages the FOMA terminal can store or protect varies depending on the data size. When data with large file size is stored, the number decreases.

Reading i-mode mail messages

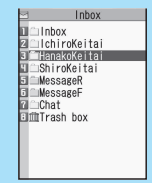
<Example: Reading a received mail message>

1 ▶“Inbox”▶Select a folder▶Select a mail

The Secret folder is displayed in the folder list screen when the FOMA terminal is in Secret mode or Secret data only mode.



Mail menu



Inbox folder list

Function menu➡p.206



Received mail list

Function menu➡p.208



Received mail detail

Function menu➡p.209

■ **To view the previous or next mail**

▶Mail detail screen▶

Press CLR to return to the mail list screen.

NOTE

- On the received mail detail screen, you can have the FOMA terminal read out the mail message. →p.210
- When 2in1 is in B mode, you cannot display the Outbox mail folder list screen.

Changing the mail character size or list display mode

Changing the mail character size

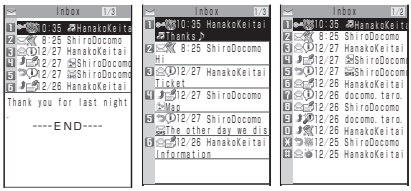
- On the mail detail screen, you can change the size of the text in the message body by pressing for 1 second or longer.

NOTE

- When you change the display mode with the above keypad operation, the settings of “Mail” of “Character size” in “Font” and “Font size” also changes.

Changing the mail list screen display mode (1line+body/1 line/2 lines)

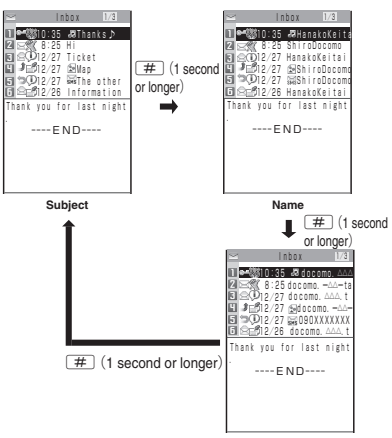
- You can switch among 1line+body display, 1 line display and 2 line display using the “Mail list disp.” setting in “Mail Setting” in the Mail menu.



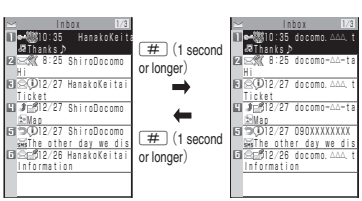
1 line+body　2 lines　1 line

Changing the mail list screen display mode (Name/Address/Subject)

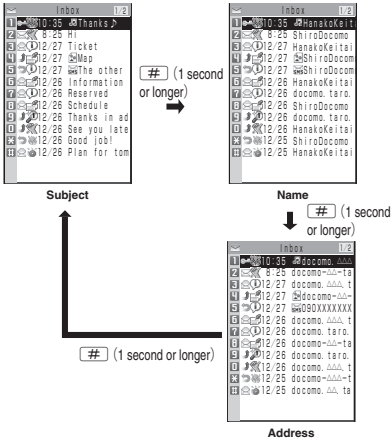
- In the mail list screen, you can switch between displaying mail by recipient or sender, by e-mail address or phone number, and by subject.
- If the name of the recipient or sender is stored in the phonebook, his or her name can also be displayed.
- Mail list screen (1line+body mode)



- Mail list screen (2 line mode)



- Mail list screen (1 line mode)



NOTE

- You can also change the display mode by selecting “List setting” from the function menu of the mail list screen, then selecting “Subject”, “Name”, or “Address”.
- In some cases, the title/name/address area may not be displayed.

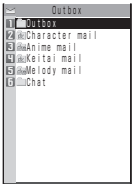
Backlight function

- When you open the FOMA terminal, press a key or send or receive an i-mode mail or SMS, the FOMA terminal’s backlight is turned on for about 10 seconds (The time for which the backlight stays on varies depending on “Mail/Msg. ring time” setting). However, when an i-mode mail or SMS is displayed, the time for which the backlight stays on varies depending on the length of the message.
- The backlight does not turn on if “Lighting” is set to “OFF” in “Backlight”.

Guide to the mail folder list screen



Inbox folder list



Outbox folder list

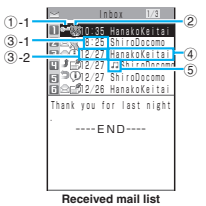
Icon	Description
	Normal folder
	Mail-linked i-αppli folder
	Trash box folder
	Secret folder

: Contains unread mail

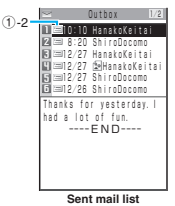
: When folder lock is set

: Auto-sort (p.207) set

Guide to the mail list screens



Received mail list



Sent mail list

①Mail status

①-1 Received mail

Icon	Description
	Unread mail
	Read mail
	Read and protected mail
	Forwarded mail
	Replied-to mail

: Protected

①-2 Sent mail

Icon	Description
	Mail to one recipient
	Mail to multiple recipients (broadcast mail)

: Protected

: Failed to send some mails

: Failed to send

②Mail contents

Icon	Description
etc.	Emotion-expressing mail →p.197

③Message sent/received time and date

③-1 The time is displayed for mail sent/received today

③-2 The date is displayed for mail sent/received yesterday or earlier

④Sender/recipient or subject

When there is no subject, “No title” is displayed.
For SMS, the message header is displayed (“SMS report” is displayed for an SMS report).
For area mail, the message header is displayed.
For Voice mail notices, “Noticecall” is displayed.
For the number of voice mail messages, “Noticecall Videophone” is displayed.

⑤Mail type, attached file information

Icon	Description
SMS	SMS in the FOMA terminal
	SMS in the FOMA card
	SMS with SMS report received
	Area mail
*	Mail to Address B of 2in1
GMT	Mail with time zone corrected
	Mail with attached melodies
	Mail with attached or pasted images
	Mail with an attached i-motion
	Mail with attached ToruCa or ToruCa (detail)
PDF	Mail with attached PDF data
	Mail with attached Tool data (phonebook, schedule or bookmark)

Icon	Description
	Mail with attached documents
	Mail with attached Other files
	An i-αppli can be launched from the message body
	An i-αppli cannot be launched from the message body (the mail is moved to the Secret folder)
	Mails sent/received by a mail-linked i-αppli
	Mail with undownloaded attached file →p.200
	Mail with incomplete attached file →p.200
	Mail with undownloadable attached file
	Mail with multiple attached files or mixture of attached files and pasted files
	Mail with multiple pasted data (also displayed when the data is pasted along with i-αppli To)
	Mail with the FOMA card operational restriction function (you use the FOMA card different from the one used when the mail is sent/received)

*: Displayed only when the 2in1 is in Dual mode

: Attached file is deleted (For ToruCa or Flash Movie, it is also displayed when the attached file is deleted by the scanning function)

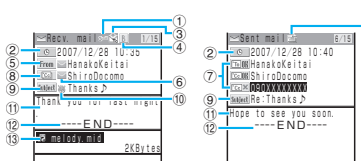
: Some of the multiple files are deleted

: All the multiple files are deleted

NOTE

- When you view i-mode mail with an attached image in the received mail detail screen or sent mail detail screen, the screen switches between image display and file name display each time you move the frame to the image and press ● (Select).
- When 2in1 is in A mode or B mode, a mail arrived at the unused address is not displayed.

Guide to the mail detail screens



Received mail detail　　Sent mail detail

①Mail status
Refer to ① of "Guide to the mail list" screen (p.204)

②Mail sent/received time and date

③Recipient type (Received mail)

Icon	Description
To Cc Bcc	The recipient type addressed by the sender →p.189

④Mail address information of the 2in1 setting

Icon	Description
B*	Mail to Address B of 2in1

*: Displayed only when 2in1 is in Dual mode

⑤Sender (Received mail)

Icon	Description
From Fm	The name or e-mail address of the sender

: Cannot reply-to

⑥Icon stored in the phonebook
When the mail address or phone number is stored in the phonebook, the icon stored in the phonebook is displayed.

⑦Recipient and recipient type (Sent mail)

Icon	Description
To OK Cc OK Bcc OK / To Cc Bcc	The name, e-mail address of the recipient and the recipient type →p.189

: Failed to send

⑧Recipient and recipient type of broadcast mail (Received mail)
Up to 4 recipients can be displayed.

Icon	Description
To Cc / To Cc	The names, e-mail addresses of the recipients except yourself and the recipient type for broadcast mail →p.189

: Cannot reply-to

⑨Subject
If there is no subject, "No Title" is displayed.
For received SMS, "SMS" ("" when the SMS is on the FOMA card (UIM)) is displayed and "SMS" ("SMS report" for an SMS report) is displayed as the subject.
When an SMS report has been received, "" is also displayed.
For Area Mail, Area Mail is displayed.

Continued on next page

⑩Mail contents (Received mail)

Icon	Description
 etc.	Emotion-expressing mail→p.197

⑪Message body

⑫Displayed at the end of the message body

⑬Attached file information
The file name and file size are also displayed.

Icon	Description
	Pasted melody (Invalid melody is displayed as text in the message body)
	Invalid inserted image

* Other than the above icons, the same icons as on the list screen may appear in some cases. For details of these icons, see the description in "⑤ Mail type, attached file information" in p.204.

NOTE

- In the following cases, the e-mail address is displayed instead of "Name", even when the phone number or e-mail address is stored in the phonebook:
  - When "Restrict dialing" is set and the phone number is not designated in the "Restrict dialing" setting
  - When the FOMA terminal is in Secret data only mode and the phone number or e-mail address is not stored as secret data
  - When the FOMA terminal is not in Secret or Secret data only mode and the phone number or e-mail address is stored as secret data
  - When 2in1 is set to A mode and the phonebook is set to B mode, or the mode is set to B mode and the phonebook is set to A mode

FUNC Mail folder list screen (pp.202, 204)

- You can add up to 22 folders.
- You cannot delete, sort or rename the Inbox, Outbox, MessageR, MessageF, Chat, Trash box and Secret folders that are already installed on the FOMA terminal at the time of purchase. You cannot use the Auto-sort function with these folders either.

Add folder……Adds a folder and sets the Auto-sort for the new folder. Also, set whether to add the same folder to the Inbox/Outbox.
"Automatic sorting settings"→p.207

Auto-sort→p.207

Edit folder name……Edits the folder name of the added folder. You can enter up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters.

Folder lock ……Sets folder lock/release.
"Setting security for individual folders"→p.138

Sort folder……Selects the position to move to and rearranges the folder.

No. of messages……Displays the number of messages, unread messages and protected messages in all the folders.

Open folder……Displays a list of the mails in a folder.

Add desktop icon*→p.115

iC trans. all→p.310

Send all Ir data→p.308

CopyAll to microSD→p.298

Delete folder……Deletes a folder.

Delete read*……Deletes all the read mails.

Delete all……Deletes all mails.

*: This function is available only for the Inbox folder list screen.

NOTE

<Add folder>
- When you download a mail-linked i-αppli, an i-αppli mail folder is automatically created (up to 5).

<Sort folder>
- You cannot run Sort folder when only one folder is added.

<Memory info>
- You cannot check the number of the following i-mode mail or SMS messages.
  - Messages in the Secret folder
  - Messages set not to be displayed in the 2in1 setting
- You cannot check the number of MessageR/F messages.

<iC trans. all> <Send all Ir data> <CopyAll to microSD>
- These functions do not apply to MessageR/F.

<Delete folder>
- You cannot delete an i-αppli mail folder if there is a corresponding mail-linked i-αppli. You can delete an i-αppli mail folder if there is no corresponding software, but the folder created in the Inbox folder screen or Outbox folder screen is also deleted.
- If you delete a folder that is specified in the "Auto-sort" settings, the automatic sorting setting for that folder is also canceled.

<Delete read>
- The following i-mode mail or SMS messages will not be deleted.
  - Protected messages
  - Messages in the Secret folder
  - Messages set not to be displayed in the 2in1 setting
- MessageR/F are not deleted.

NOTE

<Delete all (on the Outbox folder screen)>

- You cannot delete SMS or i-mode mail messages that are protected or mail messages in the Secret folder.

<Delete all (on the Inbox folder screen)>

- This option also deletes unread mail. However, this option does not delete SMS or i-mode mail messages that are protected or mail messages in the Secret folder.
- MessageR/F are not deleted.

Auto-sort settings

You can sort mail messages into the specified folders by the senders mail address, recipients mail address, subject, message that cannot be replied, etc.

- You can set a total of 700 e-mail addresses, phone numbers, phonebook groups or mailing lists for automatic sorting in all the folders in the Inbox and Outbox. You can set multiple e-mail addresses, phone numbers, phonebook groups or mailing lists for the same folder. Only one subject can be set for each folder.
- If received or sent mail meets multiple sort criteria, the priority of the Auto-sort settings is assigned as follows. Note that mail for mail-linked i-αppli is sorted into the respective dedicated folder regardless of the Auto-sort settings. Unless "Sort all" is specified, chat mail is always sorted into the Chat folder regardless of the Auto-sort setting.
  ① Sort all ② Subject sort ③ Reply/Send impossible ④ Mail address/Phone number ⑤ Mail member ⑥ Phonebook group
- Mail received or sent before the Auto-sort settings are specified remain stored in their original folders.

1 Folder list screen (pp.202, 204)▶ Highlight the destination folder▶ ch (FUNC)▶"Auto-sort"

2 Select any item:

When the sorting is already set, the setting is displayed. Press ch (FUNC) again.

■ When Original lock is set to the Phonebook or mail members

The group name is displayed as "Group" and the mail members are displayed as "Mail member".

Address sort……Sets an e-mail address as an Auto-sort criteria.

Look-up address……Sets the e-mail address by browsing the phonebook, received address list or sent address list.

Look-up group……Sets the group of the phonebook.

Look-up member……Sets the mail member.

Enter address……Sets a mail addresses by entering it.

Subject sort……Sets a subject as an Auto-sort criteria.

Reply impossible (Send impossible)……Sets an e-mail address to which you cannot reply or you could not send a mail as an Auto-sort criteria.

Sort all……This can only be set for mail-linked i-αppli folders. Sorts all mails into a mail-linked i-αppli folder.

Edit addr/subj……Edits a previously specified e-mail address or mail subject.

List setting……Selects the list format of mail addresses that will be automatically sorted from "Name/Address".

Release……Releases the Auto-sort criteria by selecting "Release this/Release selected/Release all". "About multiple-choice"→p.38

NOTE

- The mails sent as broadcast message are searched for the sorting criteria in the order of first, second... address entered.
- When using 2in1 and activating auto-sort, set one of these conditions: "Look-up address" (Phonebook/Received address list/Sent address list), "Look-up member", "Enter address", "Subject sort", "Reply impossible", "Sort all", "Edit addr/subj".
- "Address sort", "Subject sort" and "Reply impossible" cannot be used with area mail.

<Address sort (Look-up group)>

- When you set address sort (look-up group) to the mail address stored as secret data and receive mail from the address, the mail is stored in the "Inbox" folder when the FOMA terminal is not in Secret or Secret data only mode and stored in the sorting destination folder when the FOMA terminal is in Secret or Secret data only mode.

<Address sort (Enter address)>

- Ensure that the e-mail address domain (the part that follows the @ symbol) is entered correctly. However, if the address format is "[phone number]@docomo.ne.jp", simply enter the phone number.

<Subject sort>

- If the subject meets the sort criteria for multiple folders, the mail is sorted into the folder closest to the Inbox or Outbox folder.
- You cannot use this function to sort i-mode mail that has no subject entered and is displayed as "No title" even if you set "No title" as a sort criteria.
- You cannot use this option to sort SMS.

Continued on next page

NOTE

<Reply impossible>
- You cannot use this option to sort SMS reports.
- “Reply impossible” can only be set for 1 folder of Inbox.

<Send impossible>
- “Send impossible” can only be set for 1 folder of Inbox.

<Sort all>
- You cannot use this option to sort SMS reports or SMS received directly to the FOMA card (UIM).
- “Sort all” can only be set for 1 i-αppli mail folder for received and sent i-αppli mail respectively.

<List setting>
- You can also switch between the “Name” and “Address” by pressing [#] in the Auto-sort settings screen.

FUNC Mail list screen (pp.202, 204)

Reply[*1]……“Replying by composing a new message” →p.199

Edit[*2]……Edits the recipient, subject or message body of the sent mail. Press [✉] (Send) to send the mail.

Move……Selects from “Move this/Move selected/Move all” and moves the mail to the other folder you select. “About multiple-choice”→p.38

Search mail……Searches for mail using a specified sender/receiver or subject.

Search sender[*1]**/Search receiver**[*2]……Specifies the mail address by browsing the Phonebook, received address list or sent address list or searches the mail address by entering characters directly.

Search subject……Enters a subject to search.

Display all……Returns the search and sort displays or displays that use filter functions to their original display settings (all “Chronological”).

Sort……Sorts the mail in a selected criteria.

Filter……Displays only the mails which meet the selected criteria.

Color coding……Sets the color coding for the mail from “Default (black)/Red/Blue”.

List setting……Selects a mail-list format from “Subject/Name/Address”.

Read all[*1]……Marks all the unread mail in the folder as read.

Protect[*1]……Selects the protecting method from “Protect this/Protect selected/Protect all”. “About multiple-choice”→p.38

Unprotect[*1]……Selects the unprotecting method from Unprotect this/Unprotect selected/Unprotect all. “About multiple-choice”→p.38

Protect ON/OFF[*2]……Protects or unprotects mail.

Unprotect all[*2]……Unprotects all protected mails.

iC transmission→p.309

Send Ir data→p.307

Copy to microSD→p.298

UIM operation……“Moving or copying SMS (Short message) from the mail screen”→p.304

Mail info[*1]……Displays information such as the sender without opening the i-mode mail.

No. of messages……Displays the total number of mails in the folder.

Store in Center→p.209

Move trash box[*1]……Moves the mail to the Trash box folder. “About multiple-choice”→p.38

Delete……Selects the deleting method from “Delete this/Delete selected/Delete all”. “About multiple-choice”→p.38
- For received mails you can delete only read mails or SMS reports at once by selecting “Delete read/Delete all SMS-R”.

Keep in secret⇔Put out[*3]……Selects the setting from “Keep this/Keep selected/Keep all”. “About multiple-choice”→p.38 “Preventing Others from Viewing Data”→p.129

*1 : Available only with the received mail list screen.
*2 : Available only with the sent mail list screen.
*3 : This can only be used in Secret or Secret data only mode.

FUNC Unread mail list screen (p.196)

Reply……“Replying by composing a new message” →p.199

List setting……Selects a mail-list format from “Subject/Name/Address”.

Protect ON/OFF……Protects or unprotects mail.

Delete this……Deletes one mail.

NOTE

<Search mail>
- You can also search the results of a search.
- You cannot use this function to search i-mode mail that has no subject entered and is displayed as “No title” even if you set “No title” as a criteria for searching by subject.

NOTE

<Sort> <Filter>

- The sort display and filter function can be used together. For example, to view only the unread mail in the received mail list screen in chronological order, select “Chronological” in the sort menu and then “Unread” in the Filter menu.
- When you exit from the mail list screen, the sort display and filter function are canceled.

<Color coding>

- You can also change the color coding by pressing ✳ (for 1 second or longer) in the mail list screen.

<Read all>

- If you view mail with the filter function and then select “Read all”, only the currently displayed mail is marked as read.

<Protect ON/OFF>

- A mail that is not displayed by the setting of 2in1 is not targeted for setting of “Protect all” nor “Unprotect all” even if either of them is selected.
  Even if Protect All is selected, it does not apply to area mail.

<Move trash box>

- This option moves mail to the Trash box folder. Mail moved to the Trash box folder is not deleted immediately and can be retrieved and returned to another folder until it is deleted. Once the Inbox is full, mail in the Trash box folder is the first mail to be deleted as new mail arrives.
- If you move unread mail to the Trash box folder, it is marked as read.

<Keep in secret> <Put out>

- A mail that is not displayed by the setting of 2in1 is not targeted for setting of “Keep all” nor “Put out all” even if either of them is selected.

● Storing mails at the Data Security Center

You can store i-mode mails and SMS stored in the FOMA terminal at the Data Security Center.

- Data Security Service is a pay service you need to apply for. If you have not subscribed to the service and try to connect to the Data Security Center, the notification screen appears.

1 Saved mail list screen (p.195) or Mail list screen (pp.202, 204)▶ch (FUNC)▶“Store in Center”▶Use ◉ to select □ (checkbox)▶✉ (Finish)

You can select up to 10 mails.

2 Enter your security code▶“YES”

The FOMA terminal connects to the Data Security Center to start saving the mails.

3 ✉ (Finish)

NOTE

- You cannot store SMS stored in the FOMA card at the Data Security Center.
- When saving mails with attached files, the attached files are deleted.
- When saving received mails in which images prohibited to be output from the FOMA terminal are pasted into, these images are deleted.
- The setting of “Color coding” in the mail list screen is not saved.

■To restore the mail

The mail data stored at the Data Security Center can be stored on the FOMA terminal from the site of the Data Security Center. For details on how to use, refer to “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode] FOMA version”.

FUNC Mail detail screen (pp.202, 205)

Reply[*1][*2]……“Replying by composing a new message”→p.199

Reply with quote[*1][*2]……“Replying by quoting the received message”→p.199

Forward[*1][*2]……“Forwarding i-mode Mail to Other Recipients”→p.199

Edit[*3]……Edits the recipient, subject or message body of the sent mail. Press ✉ (Send) to send the mail.

Resend[*3]……Resends the message.

Protect ON/OFF……Protects or unprotects mail.

Move……Selects the destination folder to move a mail message to the folder.

Copy……Copies the message body, subject or e-mail address. The copied word can be pasted into text entry screens, etc.
“Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text”→p.367

Quick Search[*1]→p.339

Save address/Add to phonebook……“Adding Mail Addresses to Phonebook”→p.200

Save data……“Checking and Saving Files Attached to i-mode Mail”→p.201

Save insert image……Selects the image inserted to the Deco-mail and saves it in the My picture folder. After saving the image, you can specify whether to set it as the standby screen.

Add desktop icon……Pastes the sender/recipients address as a desktop icon.→p.115

Save template……Saves an i-mode mail as a template. “Saving a template”→p.192

Refer dictionary……Starts the dictionary.→p.353

Continued on next page

Property……Selects an image to display the file name and size of an image inserted into the message in Deco-mail.

Read out message[*1]→p.210

Chat[*1]……Launches chat mail.→p.219

Disp. SMS report[*3]……Displays the SMS report for an SMS.

iC transmission→p.309

Send Ir data→p.307

Copy to microSD→p.298

UIM operation……"Moving or copying SMS from the mail screen"→p.304

Scroll (Default: 1 line)……Selects the number of scrolling lines in a screen from "1 line/3 lines/5 lines".

Font size (default: Standard)……Selects the font size from "X-small/Small/Standard/Large/X-large".

Delete att. file/Del all att. files……Deletes one or all attached file(s).

Move trash box[*1]……Moves the mail to the Trash box folder.

Delete……Deletes a mail.

Keep in secret⇔Put out[*4]……"Preventing Others from Viewing Data"→p.129

*1 : Available only with the received mail detail screen.
*2 : When 2in1 is in B mode, this function is not available.
*3 : Available only with the sent mail detail screen.
*4 : Available only in Secret or Secret data only mode.

NOTE

<Delete att. file> <Del all att. files>

- You cannot delete the data pasted into the message body or undownloadable file ( ).

● Having the FOMA terminal read out mail

The FOMA terminal reads out received mail (i-mode mail or SMS) with the specified voice.

- You can set the voice used to read out with "Read out setting".

1 Mail detail screen (pp.202, 205)▶ ch (FUNC)▶"Read out message"

■ To cancel reading out

▶● (Stop)

Press ● (Play) again to start over reading out.

■ To end reading out

▶✉ (Exit)

NOTE

- The FOMA terminal reads out mails at the volume level set in "Phone" in "Ring volume". When set to "Silent" or "Step", messages are read out at the "Level 2" volume.

NOTE

- While a message is being read out, an image appears in the upper half of the screen. When the sent address and image of the received mail are stored in the phonebook, the stored image appears.
- You can use ▼ to have the FOMA terminal read out mail.→p.346
- While a message is being read out, press ⓕ, ▲ (マナー), or ▼ (📷) to scroll the message. Press 5 for 1 second or longer to turn Emergency mode on or off, and press 8 for 1 second or longer to turn the Privacy angle function ON or OFF. Pressing any of other keys cancels reading out.
- If you receive a call while a message is being read out, reading out is canceled and the ringing screen appears.
- If you receive a new mail or message while a message is being read out, the setting in "Receiving setting" is applied. When the specified alarm time is reached while a message is being read out, the setting in "Alarm setting" is applied.
- The FOMA terminal cannot read out following mail:
  - SMS report
  - Mail or Deco-mail without message
  - Mail only including attached melodies or URLs for an i-αppli activation
- The FOMA terminal cannot read out mail in the following cases:
  - During a voice call
  - During PushTalk call or 64K data communication
  - Music Player running
- The FOMA terminal may not be able to read out mails received from PCs.

Using Mail Records

<Sent address list/Received address list>

When you send or receive mail, destination addresses are recorded in the Sent address list and sender addresses are recorded in the Received address list. You can send mail by selecting an address from these address lists. Different icons are used for the i-mode mail and SMS address lists so that you can quickly distinguish the record types.

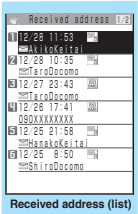
- Up to 30 i-mode mail address or SMS phone number entries can be stored in the respective Sent address and Received address lists. However, up to 60 received addresses can be stored if you use 2in1.
- When mail security is set to Inbox or Outbox, the mail address is not recorded in the address list.

Checking an address list

<Example: Viewing the received address screen>

1 On the standby screen▶○ (for 1 second or longer)

The “Received address screen (list)” appears.



Received address (list)

Function menu➡p.211

■ **To display the sent address screen (list)**

▶○ (1 second or longer)

2 Select a sender

The “Received address screen (detail)” appears.



Received address (detail)

Function menu➡p.211

3 Check the details

NOTE

- The following icons are used in the sent address screens (list/detail):
  - : i-mode mail transmission successful
  - : i-mode mail transmission failed
  - : SMS transmission successful
  - : SMS transmission failed
- The following icons are used in the received address screens (list/detail):
  - : i-mode mail received
  - : SMS received
- Turning the FOMA terminal off or deleting sent or received mail messages does not delete the entries in the address lists. You should delete the record entries themselves to prevent others from viewing them.
- When 2in1 is set to A mode or B mode, up to 30 message histories arrived at or sent from the used address are displayed. However, if set to B mode, the Sent address list screen cannot be displayed.

FUNC Address screen (list/detail) (p.211)

Add to phonebook……“Adding Mail Addresses to Phonebook”→p.200

Look-up phonebook……Displays the detail screen of the phonebook in which the mail address is stored.

Add desktop icon→p.115

Compose message[*1]……Composes an i-mode mail message with the e-mail address pasted into the recipients field.

Dialing……Uses the Phone To/AV Phone To function to make a voice/videophone/PushTalk call for the phone number in the phonebook entry that contains the e-mail address.→p.178

Received calls[*2]……Switches to the Received calls record screen.→p.56

Redial[*3]……Switches to the Redial screen.→p.56

Big font⇔Standard font……Switches the font size between “Big font/Standard font”.

Delete……Selects the deleting method from “Delete this/Delete selected/Delete all”.
“About multiple-choice”→p.38

*1 : When an SMS is selected, this option changes to “Compose SMS”, which composes an SMS with the phone number pasted in as the recipient.
“Composing and Sending SMS”→p.224

*2 : This function is available only for the received address screens (list/detail).

*3 : This function is available only for the sent address screens (list/detail). “Dialed calls” appears when opening the Sent address screen from dialed calls.

Setting up the FOMA Terminal Mail Functions <Mail Setting>

1 ▶“Mail Setting”

The “Mail setting” screen appears.



Mail Setting

2 Select any item:

Scroll (default: 1 line)……Selects the number of lines that are scrolled when you press ⊙ on the mail detail screen, from “1 line/3 lines/5 lines”.

Continued on next page

Font size (default: Standard)……Selects the font size for the mail detail screen from “X-small/Small/Standard/Large/X-large”.

Mail list disp. (default: 1line+body)……Sets the number of lines and item to be displayed on the mail list screen. Select the lines to display from “2 lines/1 line/1line+body” and the format from “Subject/Name/Address”.

Message display……Sets the position from which to start displaying the message body.

- **Standard** (default)……Displays the message from the headers onwards (date and time received/sent).
- **From message**……Displays the message from the message body onwards.

Start attachment(auto) (default: ON)……Sets whether to automatically play the attached or pasted melody when opening an i-mode mail.

Header/Signature……“Editing Headers, Signatures and Quotation Marks”→p.213

Mail box lock……“Setting locks for individual mailboxes”→p.138

Receiving setting……Sets whether to give display priority to the receiving and received result screen if a mail or MessageR/F is received while you are using the FOMA terminal.

- **Alarm preferred** (default)……Displays the receiving and received result screen.
- **Operation preferred**……Gives priority to the screen being used rather than displaying the receiving and received result screen.

Receive option setting……Sets whether to receive mail selectively.

- **ON**……Does not automatically receive mail.
- **OFF** (default)……Receives mail automatically.

Prefer attachment (default: all selected)……Selects the attached file type to receive at the time you receive the mail from “Image/i-motion/Melody/PDF/ToruCa/Tool data/Other”.
“About multiple-choice”→p.38

Read out setting→p.213

Chat→p.224

Emotion/Keyword→p.215

SMS settings

- **SMS report request** (detail: OFF)……Sets whether to request an SMS report after sending an SMS.
- **SMS validity period** (default: 3 days)……Selects the storage period of the sent SMS kept at the SMS center from “None/1 day/2 days/3 days”. When set to “None”, SMS messages are not stored at the SMS center.
- **SMS input character** (default: Japanese (70 char.))……Sets the SMS body character input method. When set to Japanese, you can enter up to 70 characters regardless of double-byte or single-byte. When set to English, you can enter up to 160 single-byte alphanumeric characters.

Area Mail setting→p.219

Check settings……Allows you to check the settings specified in “Mail Setting”.

Reset……Resets the settings specified in “Mail Setting” to the default settings.

NOTE

- When 2in1 is in B mode, you cannot select “Mail Setting”.

<Font size>

- When set to “X-large”, “Mail list disp.” is automatically set to “2 lines”.

<Receiving setting>

- When you are receiving/sending a voice call, during a voice call or using functions such as an i-αppli or the camera, the receiving and received result screen may not appear when you receive mail or MessageR/F even when set to “Alarm preferred”.
- When 2in1 is in A mode or B mode and a mail arrives only at the unused mail address, the receiving screen appears, but the received result screen does not appear even when set to “Alarm preferred”.

<Receive option setting>

- This option applies to i-mode mail only. SMS and MessageR/F are received automatically regardless of this setting.

<Prefer attachment>

- To check the contents of the file, you have to download the file manually afterwards.→p.200
- When the checkbox of “Tool data” is not checked, you cannot receive the phonebook, schedule or bookmark.
- When deselecting “Other”, you cannot receive the document either.

Editing Headers, Signatures and Quotation Marks

By storing text to be inserted at the beginning of a message body (header) and your name or other information to be added at the end (signature) in advance, you can easily paste these information into an i-mode mail message. You can also edit a symbol or comment (quotation mark) at the beginning of quoted text when you reply to received mail by quoting the original message.

1. **Mail Setting screen (p.211)▶"Header/Signature"**
2. **"Edit header" or "Edit signature"▶● (Edit)**

   ■ **To edit the quotation marks**
   ▶"Edit Quotation marks"
3. **Enter the header or signature▶ (Finish)**

   You can enter up to 5,000 double-byte or 10,000 single-byte characters for the header and signature, and you can enter up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters for the quotation marks.

   ■ **To enter the quotation marks**
   ▶Enter the quotation marks

   ■ **To decorate the header or signature**
   You can decorate the header or signature.
   →p.190
4. **"Insert setting"▶Select the checkbox of "Header" and/or "Signature"▶ (Finish)**

   ■ **When you do not add the header or signature automatically**
   ▶Deselect the "Header" or "Signature" checkbox

NOTE

- Even if you select the "Header" or "Signature" checkbox, the header or signature is not pasted into template, chat screen or i-mode mail composed from an i-mode mail-linked i-αppli.

Specifying which items are checked for in Center inquiries

<Set check new messages>

You can select the items checked for when you send an inquiry to the i-mode Center by "Check new messages". You can specify whether to check for "Mail" (i-mode mail), "MessageR" and/or "MessageF".

- A deselected checkbox (□) denotes that the FOMA terminal will not check for that item.

1. **MENU▶"Settings"▶"Connection setting"▶"Set check new messages"**
2. **Use ○ to select □ (checkbox)▶ (Finish)**

Setting the voice to read out received mail

<Read out setting>

Messages written in English are read out in alphabetic reading.

You can set the voice to read out or whether to read out mail or not when F is pressed.

1. **Mail Setting screen (p.211)▶"Read out setting"**
2. **"Select voice"▶Select voice to read**
   "Female 1" is the default setting.
3. **"Read out received mail"▶"ON" or "OFF"**
   "ON" is the default setting.

● Reading out rules

The read out message function generally follows the following rules when reading out received mail.

■ **Symbols, special characters and pictographs**
Symbols, special characters and pictographs are not read out, except for certain symbols.

* The FOMA terminal may not correctly read out sentences that include symbols, special characters and pictographs.

■ **Numbers**
The FOMA terminal reads out numbers up to 16 digits long.
Example: 1234→"Sen nihyaku sanju yon"

Continued on next page

■Amount of money

If a currency symbol (e.g. “￥” (single-byte or double-byte)) is placed at the beginning of a number up to 16 digits long, the FOMA terminal reads out the number as amount of money.

If commas (,) are used as a delimiting character in an input string, the FOMA will recognize the string as amount of money only if the commas are used every 3 digits.

Example: ￥12345 ┐ “Ichiman nisen
￥12,345 ┘ sanbyaku yonjuu goen”

■Phone number

If numbers are delimited by hyphens (-) or parentheses (()) in the following patterns, the FOMA terminal reads them out as phone numbers but not as sequences of digits. The FOMA terminal will also read numbers preceded by “Tel:” as phone numbers.

Example: Tel: 0120-102-001→ Teru zeroichinizero ichizeroni zerozeroichi

Land line		
XX-XXXX-XXXX	XXX-XXX-XXXX XXXX-XX-XXXX	XXXXX-X-XXXX
(XX)XXXX-XXXX	(XXX)XXX-XXXX (XXXX)XX-XXXX	(XXXXX)X-XXXX
XX(XXXX)XXXX	XXX(XXX)XXXX XXXX(XX)XXXX	XXXXX(X)XXXX
XXXX-XXXX	XXX-XXXX XX-XXXX	X-XXXX
Mobile phone		
XXX-XXXX-XXXX	XXXX-XXX-XXXX (XXX)XXXX-XXXX	(XXXX)XXX-XXXX
XXX(XXXX)XXXX	XXXX(XXX)XXXX	
Toll-free		
XXXX-XXX-XXX	XXXX-XXXXXX	

* “X” indicates a number.

■Time

Numbers separated by a colon (:) are read out as time.* If the hour component is a 1- or 2-digit number and the minute component is a 2-digit number, the number is read out as time. If “AM” or “PM” is added before or after the number, it is read out before the number.

“Hour”:“Minute” (“Hour” = 0 to 29:“Minute” = 00 to 59) Example: 23:15→“Nijusanji jugofun”
AM “Hour”:“Minute” or “Hour”:“Minute” AM (“Hour” = 0 to 12:“Minute” = 00 to 59) Example: AM 5:05→“Gozen goji gofun”
PM “Hour”:“Minute” or “Hour”:“Minute” PM (“Hour” = 0 to 12:“Minute” = 00 to 59) Example: PM 5:05→“Gogo goji gofun”

* The time entered in the format of “Hour”:“Minute”:“Second” (e.g. 23:15:10) is not read out.

■Date

Numbers separated by a slash (/) or a period (.) are read out as date. If “M”, “T”, “S” or “H” (upper case) is inserted before a date, the corresponding (Japanese) era name is read out.

“Year”/“Month”/“Day” or “Year”.“Month”.“Day” (“Year” = 0 to 9999; “Month” = 1 to 12; “Day” = 1 to 31) Example: 2006/12/5 ┐ “Nisenrokunen jyunigatsu itsuka” 2006/12/05 2006.12.5 2006.12.05 ┘
“M” “Year”/“Month”/“Day” or “M” “Year”.“Month”.“Day” (“Year” = 0 to 99; “Month” = 1 to 12; “Day” = 1 to 31) Example: M10/04/20→“Meiji junen shigatsu hatsuka”
“T” “Year”/“Month”/“Day” or “T” “Year”.“Month”.“Day” (“Year” = 0 to 99; “Month” = 1 to 12; “Day” = 1 to 31) Example: T8.10.15→“Taishou hachinen jugatsu jugonichi”
“S” “Year”/“Month”/“Day” or “S” “Year”.“Month”.“Day” (“Year” = 0 to 99; “Month” = 1 to 12; “Day” = 1 to 31) Example: S50.3.6→“Shouwa gojunen sangatsu muika”
“H” “Year”/“Month”/“Day” or “H” “Year”.“Month”.“Day” (“Year” = 0 to 99; “Month” = 1 to 12; “Day” = 1 to 31) Example: H17.10.3→“Heisei junananen jugatsu mikka”

- The above formats for numbers, amount of money, phone numbers, time and date are also used for double-byte characters.
- When amount of money, phone numbers, time or date are read out and the string read out is immediately preceded or followed by any of the characters listed below, the numbers will not be delimited correctly. If you want to have the FOMA terminal read out amount of money, phone numbers, time or date correctly, it is recommended to use a space as the delimiting character before and after the string.
  “0 to 9”, “A to Z (upper case)”, “:”, “￥”, “/”, “.”, “-” (double-byte or single-byte)

■Symbol

The FOMA terminal can read out the following symbols. (These symbols are read out as follows when used with numbers.)

$ (dollars)→doru	% (percent)→paasento
￥ (yen)→en	° (degrees)→do
℃ (degrees)→do	￥ (yen)→en
$ (dollars)→doru	% (percent)→paasento
ミリ (mm)→miri	キロ (kilograms)→kiro
センチ (cm)→senchi	メートル (meters)→meetoru
グラム (grams)→guramu	トン (tons)→ton
アール (ares)→aaru	ヘクタール (hectares)→hekutaaru
リットル (liters)→rittoru	ワット (watts)→watto

カロリー(calories)→karorii	ドル(dollars)→doru
セント(cents)→sento	パーセント(percent)→paasento
ミリバール(millibars)→miribaaru	ページ(pages)→peeji
㎜(millimeters)→mirimeetoru	㎝(centimeters)→senchimeetoru
㎞(kilometers)→kiromeetoru	㎎(milligrams)→miriguramu
㎏(kilograms)→kiroguramu	㏄(cc)→siisii
㎡(square meters)→heihoumeetoru	

■**Other settings**

- Alphabetic characters are read out in alphabet reading, but may be read otherwise in certain combinations.
- Depending on the content of a sentence or description (especially geographic names or proper nouns), the FOMA terminal may not read out the sentence or may read it out incorrectly.
- The voice used to read out is different from natural voice. The pronunciation or accent may be difficult to understand in some cases.
- The FOMA terminal separates sentences to read out when there is punctuation marks (periods and commas), line feeds and spaces, except when a period (.) or comma (,) is preceded and/or followed by numbers. When there is no delimiting punctuation in the text, the sentences are separated automatically. Depending on the sentences, it may take time before the FOMA terminal starts reading out. The FOMA terminal may read out incorrectly when there are Chinese characters. To ensure that the content of the mail is read out correctly, it is recommended to ask people you frequently correspond to follow the following guidelines:
  - Create message using katakana for nouns, especially and proper nouns such as geographic names and personal names.
  - Create message using punctuation marks.

Setting emotion-expressing mails

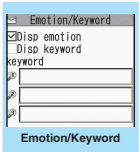
<Emotion/Keyword>

You can specify whether to display the Disp emotion mail icons when receiving i-mode mails, chat mails or SMS. You can also set this function to use icons for notifying you of the received mails containing the keywords specified.

●"Emotion-expressing mail"→p.197

1 **Mail Setting screen (p.211)▶"Emotion/Keyword"**

The "Emotion/Keyword" screen appears.



Emotion/Keyword

Function menu➡p.215

■ **When "Emotion" is used**

▶Select the checkbox (☐) of "Disp emotion"

The checkbox is checked (☑), and emotion-expressing mail icon is displayed when you receive a mail.

■ **When "Keyword" is used**

▶Select the checkbox (☐) of "Disp keyword"▶Enter one keyword or more

The checkbox is checked (☑), and when you receive a mail containing the strings entered in "keyword", the corresponding keyword information icon (①, ②, ③) is displayed. Enter at least one keyword (you can enter up to 3 keywords of 15 double-byte or 30 single-byte characters).

2 **(Finish)**

FUNC **Emotion/Keyword screen (p.215)**

Delete keyword/Delete all keyword……Deletes one or all keyword(s).

NOTE

- Changing or deleting the keywords also deletes the corresponding keyword icons displayed on received mail list screen, etc.

When You Receive a Message

<Receive message>

When the FOMA terminal is in a service area, MessageR/F are automatically sent to the FOMA terminal from the i-mode Center.

- You can store up to 100 MessageR/F respectively on the FOMA terminal (the number of messages you can actually store may be reduced depending on the file size).

Displaying new messages automatically

- You can set the FOMA terminal to display the detail screen of MessageR/F automatically with "Message auto-display".

[1] The "Message receiving" screen appears while receiving a message and the "Received result" screen appears when the reception is finished.



- "R" or "F" flashes while receiving a message.

■ To cancel the reception

▶ (Stop) or CLR (1 second or longer)

However, a message may be received depending on the timing of the cancellation.

[2] The number of received mail or MessageR/F appears on the received result screen.

- When you select "MessageR" or "MessageF" on the received result screen, the message list screen (p.217) appears.

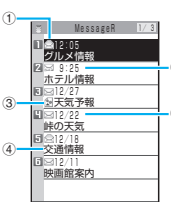
[3] If no operation is performed for about 15 seconds while the received result screen is displayed, the "Detail" screen of MessageR/F appears.

- The duration for displaying the received result screen may vary depending on the "Mail/Msg. ring time" setting.
- The detail screen of MessageR/F is displayed automatically when the message is received on the standby screen.
- If no operation is performed for about 15 seconds while the detail screen is displayed, the standby screen reappears. However, if you use operations such as scrolling, the detail screen continues to be displayed.

NOTE

- If the storage capacity for messages is full when you receive a message, read messages are deleted from the oldest one (unread or protected messages are not deleted).
- When the FOMA terminal cannot receive any more messages (because it is full with unread or protected messages), R (red)/ F (red) appears (R (red), F (R: red), R F (F: red) may appear to display the 2 conditions simultaneously). Read the unread messages or unprotect the unnecessary messages.
- When the i-mode Center keeps messages, R / F appears. Perform "Check new messages" to receive messages. When the messages kept at the i-mode Center are full, R (red)/ F (red) appears.
- Received MessageR/F are not automatically displayed when displaying other than the standby screen, an i-αppli is running, Public mode (Driving mode) is set, Dial lock is set, or when Original lock is set to "i-mode" or "Disp. recv. mail/msg."

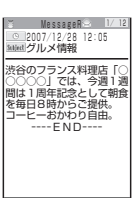
How to view the MessageR/F screens



List (2 lines)



List (1 line)



Detail

①Message status

Icon	Description
	Unread Message
	Read Message
	Read and protected Message

: Protected

②Message received time and date
②-1 The time is displayed for Message received today
②-2 The date is displayed for Message received yesterday or earlier

③Attached file information
<List screen>

Icon	Description
	Message with an attached or pasted melody
	Message with an attached image
	Message with an attached ToruCa
	Message with multiple attached or pasted data

 : One or more data is invalid

 : Invalid data

 : Deleted by the scanning function

<Detail screen>

Icon	Description
	Pasted melody

 : Invalid data

④Subject

Checking for Messages
<Check new messages>

The messages that the FOMA terminal could not receive are kept at the i-mode Center. You can receive the kept messages by checking for messages.

- i-mode mail messages are kept at the i-mode Center in the following cases:
  - When the FOMA terminal is turned off
  - When "圏外" is displayed
  - When the message boxes are full
  - During a videophone call/remote monitoring
  - When Self mode is set
  - During a PushTalk call
  - When connecting to the FirstPass Center
- Use "Set check new messages" to specify which items are checked for.

1 (1 second or longer)
The check new messages screen appears.
You can also check new messages by following procedures below.
- ▶"Check new messages"
- ▶"Check new messages"

The FOMA terminal checks for "Mail"→"MessageR"→"MessageF".

The "", "R" and "F" icons flash during checking, and the "Checking..." message appears on the screen. The FOMA terminal then receives your i-mode mail and MessageR/F. The numbers of the newly received i-mode mails or MessageR/F are displayed.

■ To cancel the inquiry

▶ (Quit) or CLR (1 second or longer) during the inquiry
Even when you cancel an inquiry, depending on the timing of the cancellation you may still receive the i-mode mail and MessageR/F.

2 Check for the numbers of the new i-mode mails, MessageR/F messages ▶"Back"

NOTE

- The table below shows the maximum number of MessageR/F that can be kept at the i-mode Center and the maximum storage period.

Type	Maximum number	Maximum storage period
MessageR	300	72 hours
MessageF	300	72 hours

Once the maximum number of stored messages is reached, messages are deleted as a new message arrives, starting with the oldest message.

Viewing Messages in the Message Box
<MessageR/F>

- When a MessageR/F from the i-mode Center arrives on the FOMA terminal, the "R" or "F" icon appears at the top of the screen.

1 ▶"Inbox"▶"MessageR" or "MessageF"
The "Message list" screen appears.
Press CLR on the message list screen to open i-mode menu. The received mail folder list screen does not reappear.



Message list
Function menu➡p.218

Continued on next page

2 Select a message

The “Message detail” screen appears.
To display the next or previous message in the message detail screen, press ⊙.
In the message detail screen, press CLR to return to the message list screen.



Message detail

Function menu➡p.218

FUNC Message list screen (p.217)

Display all……The original display (all items displayed in reverse chronological order) is reverted from a sorted or filtered display.

Sort……Sorts the messages in a selected criteria.

Filter……Displays only the messages which meet the selected criteria.

Protect ON/OFF……Protects or unprotects MessageR/F.

Unprotect all……Unprotects all the protected MessageR/F.

No. of messages……Displays the number of stored MessageR/F, unread messages and protected messages.

Delete……Selects the deleting method from “Delete this/Delete selected/Delete read/Delete all”.
“About multiple-choice”→p.38
- When selecting “Delete read”, you can delete only the read messages at once.

NOTE

<Sort> <Filter>
- The sort display and filter function can be used together. For example, if you want to display the unread messages in chronological order, select “Chronological ↓” in the sort menu, then select “Unread” in the filter menu.
- When you exit from the MessageR/F list screen, the sort and filter are canceled.

FUNC Message detail screen (p.218)

Add to phonebook……Adds the phone number and e-mail address displayed on MessageR/F to the phonebook.→p.89

Save melody……Saves a melody attached to MessageR/F.

Save image……Saves an image attached to MessageR/F.

Save ToruCa……Saves a ToruCa attached to MessageR/F.

Quick Search→p.339

Protect ON/OFF……Protects or unprotects MessageR/F.

Delete……Deletes the MessageR/F.

NOTE

<Save melody>
- Some saved melodies may not play correctly.

What is Early Warning “AreaMail”? (To Be Provided)

Area Mail is a service which receives information such as emergency earthquake alerts distributed by the Meteorological Agency.
- You can receive area mail without subscribing to i-mode.
- Make the receiving setting for Area Mail reception.
  “Setting Area Mail”→p.219
  Area Mail cannot be received regardless of the receiving setting in the following cases:
  - During international roaming
  - Omakase lock active
  - Self-mode active
- It may be impossible to receive Area Mail in circumstances such as the following.
  - During a videophone call
  - During data communication

When You Receive Early Warning “AreaMail”

<Area Mail reception>

When the FOMA terminal is in a service area, area mail is automatically sent to the FOMA terminal.
- When an Area Mail message has been received, “[icon]” is displayed at the top of the screen.
- Received Area Mail is stored in the Inbox.
- You can save up to 100 Area Mail messages in the FOMA terminal.

When receiving Area Mail messaging an emergency

When an Area Mail is received, the “Content notification” screen is displayed and notice is given by buzzer and vibration.
Press ●, CLR, or ☎ to return to the previous screen.
- The volume of the buzzer cannot be adjusted. However, it can be turned on and off, and the duration can be adjusted, from “Beep setting” under “Area Mail setting”.
  If buzzer sound is switched off, an Area Mail ring tone sounds.

● Vibration pattern links to the beep sound when sounding the buzzer. When soudning Area Mail ring tone, it follows the setting of “Mail” under “Vibrator”.

● When you receive an Area Mail containing other than an emergency earthquake warning

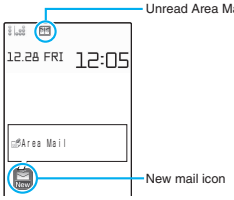
When an Area Mail is received, the “Area Mail received” screen or the “Content notification” screen is displayed and the Area Mail ring tone sounds. The previous screen returns if no operation is performed in the “Area Mail received” screen for a certain time, or if any key is pressed. Press ●, CLR, or ☎ in the “Content notification” screen to return to the previous screen. The distributor decided whether the “Area Mail received” screen or the “Content notification” screen is displayed.

NOTE

- The volume of the ring tone is set to the same volume set at “Mail” of “Ring volume”.
- If an Area Mail is received while an i-αppli or camera function is being used, there may not be any display on the “Content notification” screen or the “Area Mail Received” screen.

Display new Area Mail

1 On the standby screen▶●▶Select “ New ”



■ To display the unread mail list

▶On the standby screen▶●▶Use ✣ to select “ ”

The “Unread mail list” screen appears.

NOTE

- On the Mail list screen, “エリアメール” (Area mail) is displayed as the sender of the received area mail and the message header is displayed as the subject.
- If the storage capacity for area mails is full when you receive an area mail, mails are deleted starting from the area mails in the trash box, the oldest read area mails and the oldest unread area mails.

Setting Early Warning “AreaMail” <Area Mail setting>

Make settings related to Area Mail reception.

1 Mail Setting screen (p.211)▶“Area Mail setting”

The “Area Mail setting” screen is displayed.



Area Mail setting

2 Select any item:

Receive setting (Default: No)……Sets whether or not to receive area mail.
The confirmation message asking whether or not you want to use area mail is displayed. Read the warning carefully, then select “① Yes” or “② No”.

Beep setting

Beep setting (Default: ON)……Switches the buzzer on or off.

Beep time (Default: 10s)……Sets the beep time, in the range 1 to 30s.

Receive entry……Registers an area mail name and message ID for information you wish to receive other than emergency information. On the Receive entry screen, select “Not recorded” and enter your security code, then input “Area Mail name”, “Message ID”. Emergency information are received regardless of entry.

Sending and Receiving Chat Mail <Send/Receive chat mail>

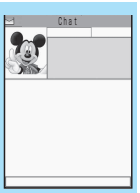
You can exchange mail with several people just as if you were having a normal conversation.

- You cannot launch chat mail in the following cases:
  - When “ON” is selected in “Receive option setting”
  - When your Inbox is full of saved mails
  - When 2in1 is in B mode
  - When original lock is set on for “Sending mail” or for “Disp. recv. mail/msg.”
- The communication fee for sending chat mail to several people is the same as sending a mail with multiple recipients.
- You can set a ring tone specifically for Chat Mail. When you receive multiple items of mail that includes chat mail, the FOMA terminal emits the ring tone set for chat mail.

Continued on next page

1 ▶“Chat Mail”

The “Chat” screen appears. Members of the last chat are set for the chat member.



Chat

Function menu➡p.221

■ To set chat members

You have to set chat members when you activate chat for the first time after the purchase or when you start chat with members different from the last chat members.

“Setting chat members”→p.221

■ To activate chat from the chat group list screen

You can activate chat by setting the chat group members to chat members.

▶Chat member list screen (p.223)▶ ch (FUNC)▶“Active chat”

2 ● (Select)▶Enter your message

You can send up to 250 double-byte or 500 single-byte characters from the chat screen.

3 After entering the message, ● (Set)

The entered message is displayed in the message entry area.

■ To select receiver

When you select “Select receiver” from the function menu, you can select members to send the chat mail or members not to send the chat mail.

4 (Send)

When the chat mail is sent, the message in the message entry area is deleted and moved to the latest message area.

■ If message transmission failed

The message in the latest message area turns gray. As the message in the message entry area remains undeleted, you can resend the failed chat mail.

5 Exchange chat mails

When you receive a reply to the mail you sent, it is displayed in the latest message area and the message displayed in the latest message area until then moves to the message records area.

■ To send your message

Repeat steps 2 to 4.

6 To end chat session, ☎

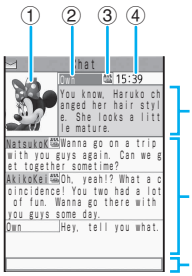
Confirmation message about deleting read chat mails appears.

NOTE

- Attached and pasted files are not displayed.
- Sent and received chat mail is stored in the Chat folder. To resend chat mail, send it from the Chat folder.
- Chat mail displayed in the chat screen is marked as read in the Chat folder.
- If you receive ordinary i-mode mail while chat mail is running, the received result screen does not appear.

Basics of chat

■ Chat screen



Latest message area

Displays the latest message including yours. When the message is so long that the whole message cannot be displayed, an icon such as “▶” appears so that you can check the message by switching pages with ⊙.

① Image: You can set whether to display the image or not (ON/OFF). You can also set the image of members.

② Member name: You can edit the member name with the function menu of the group member list screen.

③ Broadcast mail icon: Indicates whether the chat mail is sent for multiple members or only for you.

④ Sent/received date and time

Message records area

Older messages are displayed under the newer messages. When the message is so long that the whole message cannot be displayed, “▶▶” appears. You can check the message by scrolling the message to the latest message area with ⊙.

Message entry area

Message you entered is displayed here. Pressing ● (Select) displays the text entry (edit) screen and you can edit the message.

■ **Glossary for chat**

Chat member: Members you exchange chat mails. You can set the chat members directly, or change by groups from chat groups or by members from the mail members.

Chat group: Groups in which the proposed chat members are stored. You can change the members by selecting any member from any group.

Group member: Chat members stored in chat groups.

FUNC Chat screen (p.220)

Send……Sends chat mail.

Select receiver……Selects a receiver for chat mail. “About multiple-choice”→p.38

Chat member……Set chat members. →p.221

Broadcast address……Adding broadcast mail recipients to chat members. →p.221

Refresh……Receives the chat mail kept at the i-mode Center.

View first line……Displays the most recent message in the latest message area.

View last line……Displays the oldest message in the latest message area.

Quit……Quits chat.

Delete read……Deletes the read and unprotected chat mail you have sent and received.

NOTE

<Quit>
- When you quit chat, unsent Chat Mails are deleted.
- Chat Mails that could not be sent are stored in the Chat folder of “Outbox”.
- When closing the chat screen, you can delete all Chat Mails. Chat mails in chat folder are also deleted in this case. However, protected chat mails are not deleted.

<Delete read>
- This option also deletes chat mail that could not be sent.

Adding broadcast mail recipients to chat members

When a received chat mail has multiple destinations (broadcast mail), these destinations can be added in the chat members.
- You can use this function only with the broadcast mail from the FOMA terminal which supports the chat mail function.

1 Chat screen (p.220)▶ch (FUNC)▶“Broadcast address”▶“YES”▶Use ◎ to select a checkbox (□)▶✉ (Finish)

■ **When all the addresses are for chat members**

▶“Broadcast address”▶“OK”

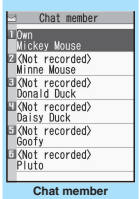
Setting chat members

<Chat member settings>

You can set members you want to chat with.
- You can store 5 chat members except yourself.

1 ✉▶“Chat Mail”▶ch (FUNC)▶“Chat member”

The “Chat member” screen appears.



Chat member

Function menu➡p.221

2 Enter the chat member

■ **To enter the mail address directly**

▶Highlight the chat member▶● (Select)
Alternatively, highlight a member, open the function menu and select “Edit”.

■ **To enter the member by referring to the address**

▶Highlight the chat member▶ch (FUNC)▶“Refer address”

FUNC Chat member screen (p.221)

Edit……Edits the e-mail addresses of chat member’s other than yourself. You can enter up to 50 single-byte characters.

Refer address……Enters the chat members mail address from the phonebook, sent address list or received address list.

Continued on next page

Change member→p.222

Add chat group……Sets the current chat members as a chat group.

Display setting……Displays the details of the chat member settings.

Delete/Delete all……Deletes one or all chat member(s) other than yourself.

NOTE

<Edit>

- When the same e-mail address is stored in a chat group, the member's name is displayed. When the e-mail address is not stored in the chat group, the displayed contents depend on whether the e-mail address is stored in the phonebook. When the e-mail address is stored, the stored name is displayed up to 4 double-byte or 8 single-byte characters from the beginning. When the e-mail address is not stored, the e-mail address is displayed up to 8 single-byte characters from the beginning.

● Changing chat members

1 Chat member screen (p.221)/Group member list screen (p.223)▶ ch (FUNC)▶"Change member"▶ Select any item:

Chat group*

Group list……Selects a chat group to change entire chat members in units of chat groups.

Member list……Changes chat members by selecting members from all the chat groups. "About multiple-choice"→p.38

Mail member……Selects a mail member to replace the chat member with it.

*: Only available on the Chat member screen.

When you receive chat mail in standby mode

<Chat mail recv.>

If you receive chat mail while chat mail is not running, the "CHAT" icon appears on the FOMA terminal's standby screen. Selecting this icon launches chat mail.

- The FOMA terminal recognizes mail as Chat mail when it meets the following criteria:
  - The subject line includes "チャットメール" (all double-byte or all single-byte characters).
  - The sender's or recipient's e-mail address is stored as a chat member or chat group.
  - When it is not Deco-mail, SMS, mail-linked i-αppli mail nor mail to Address B of 2in1.
- Chat mail can display up to 250 double-byte characters.
- If a file is attached to a received chat mail, only the message body is displayed in the chat mail screen.

1 On the standby screen▶●▶Select "CHAT"

■ When the sender is not stored as a chat member

▶"YES"

A message appears asking whether to delete the chat members and launch chat mail. Select "YES" to change the current chat members and launch chat mail.

■ To remain the currently specified chat members

▶"NO"

The current chat member settings are retained and the Mail menu screen appears.

2 Begin chat session

Received chat mail appears in the latest message area. If you have not deleted chat mail, it appears in the message record area in reverse chronological order.

Cases that chat members are changed

When you select "CHAT" on the standby screen or when you select "Chat" from the function menu of the received mail detail screen, chat members or recipients change as follows:

■When the sender is set to the chat member

Chat members of the last chat are set directly. However, "Select receiver" setting varies depending on how you launched chat.

- When you launch chat from the received mail detail screen, members other than the sender are not set as chat members.
- When you select "CHAT" and the sender is not set to the recipient, the sender is added to the recipient according to the "Select receiver" setting.

■When the sender is not set to the chat member

- When the sender is stored in a chat group, all the members in the chat group in which the sender is stored are set to the chat members. However, members other than the sender are not set to the recipients.
- When the sender is not stored in a chat group, only the sender is set to the chat member.

Storing Chat Members in a Chat Group

Storing proposed chat members in a chat group beforehand simplifies the task of setting chat members.

- You can store up to 5 members in a chat group. You do not need to store yourself.
- You can store up to 5 chat groups.
- You cannot store the same chat member in more than 1 chat group.
- When you store a chat member in a chat group, you can edit that member's name and set an image for him or her.

1 MENU ▶"Own Data"▶"Chat group"

The "Chat group list" screen appears.



Chat group

Function menu➡p.223

2 Select a chat group

The "Group member list" screen appears.



Group member list

Function menu➡p.223

3 Highlight "<Not stored>"▶ (Edit) ▶Enter the mail address

You can enter up to 50 single-byte characters. To store more e-mail addresses, repeat step 3.

■ To enter a mail address from the phonebook, etc.

Select "<Not stored>" to enter an e-mail address by searching for it from the phonebook, sent address list or received address list.

NOTE

- If the mail address of the member you want to store is "[phone number]@docomo.ne.jp", enter the phone number only. In other cases, you can either enter the part following @ symbol or not.

NOTE

- The first 8 single-byte characters of the stored e-mail address are set as the member name. If the stored e-mail address is also stored in the phonebook, the first 4 double-byte or 8 single-byte characters of the name stored in the phonebook are set. The stored image is also set if it is stored on the phonebook.

FUNC Chat group list screen (p.223)

Active chat……Sets the chat group as the chat members and launches chat mail.

Edit group name……Edits the group name. You can enter up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters.

Reset group name……Resets the group name to the default.

FUNC Group member list screen (p.223)

Edit……Edits the e-mail address of group member's. You can enter up to 50 single-byte characters.

Refer address……Enters the group member's mail address from the phonebook, sent address list or received address list.

Change member……Replaces the group member with the mail member.

Member setting

Name……Edits a member name. You can enter up to 4 double-byte or 8 single-byte characters.

Image……Selects the image displayed for each member on the chat screen from My picture.

Voice (default: Female 1)……Selects a voice to be used for reading chat mail in the chat screen.

Delete this/Delete all……Deletes one or all group member(s).

NOTE

<Change member>

- You cannot change the mail member if the mail address is the same as the group member who is already stored.

Setting up Chat Mail <Chat>

1 Mail Setting screen (p.211)▶“Chat”▶Select any item:

Sound setting (default: Alarm 1)·····Selects the sound for new received or sent chat mail in the chat screen.
Select “OFF” to deactivate sound.

Chat image (default: ON)·····Sets whether to display an image in the latest message area.

Read out chat (default: OFF)·····Sets whether to read out new chat mail on the chat screen.

User setting

Name·····Enters your own name. You can enter up to 4 double-byte or 8 single-byte characters.

Image·····Selects the image you want to display on the chat screen from My picture.

Voice (default: Female 1)·····Selects a voice to be used for reading chat mail in the chat screen.

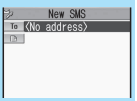
NOTE

<Sound setting>
- The notification tone does not sound when you receive chat mail from someone who is not a stored chat member.

Composing and Sending SMS (Short Message) <Compose/Send SMS>

- Your SMS address is your “subscriber mobile phone number”.
- This service allows you to exchange text messages with subscribers to overseas carriers other than DoCoMo. For information on the supported country and the supported overseas carriers, refer to the DoCoMo website.

1 ▶“Compose SMS”
The “New SMS” screen appears.



New SMS
Function menu➡p.225

2 “To <No address>”
The selection menu for address appears.



3 Enter an address
You can only enter 1 SMS address.

■ **Searching in the phonebook**
▶“Phonebook”▶Search the phonebook (p.92)▶Select a mail address in the phonebook detail screen

■ **Searching in the address list**
▶“Sent address” or “Received address”▶Select a mail address

■ **Entering an address directly**
▶“Enter address”▶Enter an address
You can enter up to 21 single-byte characters for an address.

■ **If the recipient is using an overseas carrier other than DoCoMo**
▶+ (0 (1 second or longer)), the country code, the other party’s mobile phone number
If the mobile phone number begins with zero (0), omit the zero.
You can also send SMS by entering “010”, the country code, the other party’s mobile phone number in this order. (To reply to received SMS from overseas, enter “010”.)

4 “ ”
The “Message/SMS” screen appears.

5 Enter the message body
The numbers and types of characters that can be entered are as specified in the “SMS input character” settings. When set to “Japanese”, you can enter up to 70 characters regardless of double-byte or single-byte. When set to “English”, you can enter up to 160 single-byte alphanumeric characters and symbols. Spaces are also counted in the same way as characters.



Message/SMS

6 (Send)
An animation is displayed while the SMS is being sent.
Editing sent and unsent SMS→pp.208, 209

NOTE

- You cannot send SMS to the entered address when:
  - The address contains the characters other than numbers, "✗" or "#"
  - The address contains "+" except for the head of the address
  - The address contains a space
- Depending on the signal quality, types of characters or device of the other party, the recipient may not be able to display the text correctly.
- Even when "Caller ID Notification" is set to "OFF", your caller ID is provided to the recipient during SMS transmission.
- You can insert a line feed while editing the message text. The line feed symbol is counted as 2 characters in Japanese input mode and as 1 character in English input mode.
- You cannot send an SMS from the additional number of multi number. Set the multi number setting to the basic number.
- When 2in1 is in B mode, you cannot compose and send SMS.

SMS reports <SMS report request>

If "ON" is selected in "SMS report request", you receive an SMS report after you send an SMS. SMS reports are saved in the Inbox, and the SMS reports are saved along with the sent SMS so that you can check whether the message successfully reached the recipient.

Display an SMS with an SMS report ( ) and select "Disp. SMS report" from the function menu.

You can also view an SMS report by selecting the SMS report in the received mail list screen. SMS reports are indicated by "SMS report" in the subject line.

FUNC New SMS screen (p.224)

Send……Sends an SMS.

Preview……Allows you to check the SMS recipient and message before sending it.

Save……Saves the SMS you are currently editing in the Draft mailbox. The Draft mailbox can store up to 20 SMS and i-mode mail in total. You can send saved SMS later.

SMS report req.*……Sets whether to request an SMS report after sending an SMS.

- **ON**……SMS report is delivered after SMS transmissions.
- **OFF** (default)……No SMS report is delivered after SMS transmissions.

SMS valid. per.* (default: 3 days)……Selects the storage period of the sent SMS kept at the SMS center from "None/1 day/2 days/3 days". When set to "None", the SMS is resent and deleted when set time elapses.

SMS input char.*……Sets the SMS body character input method.

- **Japanese** (default)……You can enter up to 70 characters regardless of double-byte or single-byte.
- **English**……You can enter up to 160 single-byte alphanumeric characters.

Erase message……Only the message body is deleted.

Delete……Deletes the SMS being edited.

*: This setting is available for only 1 SMS. To retain the setting to all SMS, set in "Mail Setting" (p.211).

NOTE

- If you set "SMS input char.", "SMS report req." or "SMS valid. per." in the Mail Setting screen, the setting is retained when the FOMA terminal is turned off. However, the "SMS input char.", "SMS report req." or "SMS valid. per." set in the function menu is only valid for the current SMS.

When You Receive an SMS Message <Receive SMS>

When the FOMA terminal is in a service area, SMS is automatically sent to the FOMA terminal from the SMS Center.

- The operations when an SMS is received are the same as when an i-mode mail is received. Also, the storage capacity and the operation when the storage capacity for received mails becomes full are the same as i-mode mail. →p.196

NOTE

- If you receive Short Mail sent from a mova terminal, etc., the sender's phone number is displayed. If the caller ID is not provided, the reason is displayed.

Viewing received SMS

- The top of the message body is quoted for the SMS title on the received mail list screen.
- "SMS report" is displayed as the subject for received SMS reports.
- For Voice Mail notices, "Noticecall voicemail" is displayed. For the number of voice mail messages notices, "Noticecall Videophone" is displayed as the subject of the Received mail list screen.

Continued on next page

1 On the standby screen▶● ▶Select “ ” New



■ To display the unread mail list

▶On the standby screen▶● ▶Use ◆ to select “ ”

The “Unread mail list” screen appears.



Unread mail list

Function menu➡p.208

NOTE

- If a received SMS includes double-byte characters that are not listed in the Kuten code list, those characters are displayed as blanks (spaces). For the Kuten code list, refer to the PDF format “Kuten Code List” in the provided CD-ROM.
- Pressing ● (Select) while the displayed SMS sender is highlighted enables you to make a voice, videophone or PushTalk call or compose an SMS to that number. (Phone To/AV Phone To/Mail To function)→p.178

Forwarding and replying to received SMS

You can forward an SMS and send a reply to the sender.

- You cannot enter a subject.

“Replying by composing a new message”→p.199

NOTE

- You cannot reply to an SMS when the sender has withheld his or her caller ID (User unset) or is sending from a pay phone (Payphone) or a phone that does not support caller ID notification (Not supported).
- If you reply to or forward an SMS on the FOMA card (UIM), the “ ” remains on the received mail list screen and received mail detail screen and the “ ”/“ ” icon does not appear.
- When 2in1 is in B mode or Dual mode, you cannot reply an SMS sent to Number B.

Checking for SMS <Check new SMS>

The SMS that are not received by the FOMA terminal are kept at the SMS Center. You can receive the kept SMS by checking new SMS.

- SMS are kept in the following cases:
  - When the FOMA terminal is turned off
  - When “ 圏外 ” is displayed
  - When the Inbox is full
  - When Self mode is set

1 ▶“Check new SMS”

“SMS Checking” appears while you check for new SMS. Once the FOMA terminal has sent the inquiry, the message informing that the inquiry has done appears. Press ● (Select). The automatic receiving starts if the center keeps any SMS. The automatic receiving may not start immediately after inquiry.

Specifying SMS Settings <Set SMS>

Specifying the SMS center settings

* There is normally no need to change this setting.

Use this setting to specify whether the FOMA terminal uses the DoCoMo SMS Center or another providers SMS center for SMS.

1 MENU ▶“Settings”▶“Connection setting”▶“SMS center selection”▶ Select any item:

DoCoMo……Uses the DoCoMo SMS Center.

User setting……Enters SMS centers address , then selects from “International/Unknown” to use the other SMS center.

Reset……Deletes the “User setting” data and resets the setting to “DoCoMo”.

NOTE

- If the entered SMS Center address includes “#” or “✱”, you cannot select “International”.

Other SMS settings

Refer to “SMS settings” on the Mail Setting screen (p.212) for other SMS settings.

- SMS report request
- SMS validity period
- SMS input character

i-αppli

What is an i-αppli? 228
Downloading i-αppli from Sites 228
Launching an i-αppli 229
Launching i-αppli Automatically 236
Launching an i-αppli from a Site or Mail ..... i-αppli To function 237
Setting the i-αppli Standby Screen ..... Set i-αppli stand-by 238
Organizing i-αppli 239

What is an i-αppli?

By downloading i-αppli from sites, you can make your i-mode-compliant FOMA terminal (i-mode terminal) convenience more. For example, you can download a range of games to an i-mode terminal and there are other i-αppli that enables you to store data from the i-αppli directly into the phonebook or your schedule and i-αppli linked to Data box that enables you to save or download images.

- For details on i-αppli, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

Downloading i-αppli from Sites

You can download software from an i-mode site and run the software on your FOMA terminal.

- The FOMA terminal can store up to 200 downloaded software applications (up to 5 mail-connected i-αppli). The maximum number of software applications that can be saved varies depending on the data size. The number includes partly downloaded i-αppli.
- When you download a mail-connected i-αppli, folders for the mail-connected i-αppli are automatically created in the Inbox and Outbox folder lists. The folder names are assigned by the downloaded mail-connected i-αppli and cannot be changed. However, when Original lock is set to the i-αppli, the folder name is set to "i-αppli".
- If there are already 5 dedicated folders for mail-connected i-αppli, delete one or more of the existing dedicated folders for mail-connected i-αppli to create some available space for the new download.
- You cannot download a mail-connected i-αppli if you have already saved a mail-connected i-αppli that uses the same Inbox and Outbox folders.
- You cannot download mail-connected i-αppli while Mail box lock is set. Release Mail box lock.
- Mail sent and received using a mail-connected i-αppli is automatically sorted into the dedicated folders created when that mail-connected i-αppli was downloaded. You can also manually sort received mails.
- If you delete a mail-connected i-αppli without deleting its folders and then download the mail-connected i-αppli again, the undeleted folders can be reused. Alternatively, you can delete the undeleted folders and create new folders. If you neither use the undeleted folders nor create new folders, you cannot download the mail-connected i-αppli.
- When you try to download a charged i-αppli, a confirmation message appears. →p.175

❶ Select software

Press ● (Select) when downloading is completed and the "Completed" message appears. For the software that is immediately launched from the site, the software starts up without displaying a completion message.

■ To cancel data downloading in progress

▶During downloading▶● (Cancel) or CLR

■ When the software setting screen appears

▶Set the software▶"YES"

Software settings →p.230

❷ "YES"

When you launch the software, "" appears at the bottom of the screen. If an i-αppli DX starts up, "" appears.

■ Not to launch the software

▶"NO"

● Downloading the remaining data of partially downloaded i-αppli

When you select i-αppli which is downloaded partially ( ) on the "Software list" screen (p.229) or "IC card content" screen (p.243), a confirmation message about downloading the remaining data appears. When you download and save all data, the partially saved data are deleted.

- When the remaining data is invalid or in other cases, you cannot download the data. In this case, downloading the data deletes the partially saved data.

● Downloading the remaining data of i-αppli with management information only

You cannot use the data in the IC card when using "iC transfer service" (p.242) and corresponding Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli is not downloaded. In this case, the i-αppli is displayed as i-αppli ( ) with management information only on the "Software list" screen (p.229) or "IC card content" screen (p.243).

- When you select an i-αppli with management information only, confirmation message about downloading the remaining data of the i-αppli with management information appears. When you select "YES", you can download the remaining data (the data is downloaded automatically or the site for downloading the data appears depending on the i-αppli).

NOTE

- Some i-αppli software automatically opens communication after being downloaded. You can set your terminal not to automatically communicate by using “Network setting” in “Software setting”.
- If you download an i-αppli that uses the terminal data (the stored information or mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) manufacture numbers) or an i-αppli DX, a message appears notifying that the i-αppli uses the terminal data. When you select “YES”, your terminal information is sent to the IP (information service provider) via the internet and may be disclosed to the third party as a result.
- Depending on the data storage capacity of the IC card, you may not be able to download a Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli even when there is capacity available in the software storage area. Follow the confirmation screen, delete the displayed software and download again. You may not be able to delete the software depending on the software type you are going to download. Depending on the software, the software itself is deleted after the software is launched and data in the IC card is deleted.
- When 2in1 is set to B mode, the confirmation screen for launching a software may not appear after download, depending on the i–αppli.

Viewing i-αppli information during downloading

<Disp. Software info>

You can specify whether the software information is displayed for checking when downloading software.

1 MENU ▶“Settings”▶“i-αppli settings”▶“Disp. Software info”▶“Display”

■ **Not to check information**

▶“Not display”

Launching an i-αppli

Launching an i-αppli

1 i-αppli **(For 1 second or longer)**

The “Software list” screen appears.

■ **When you search i-αppli by i-mode**

▶“Search by i-mode”



Software list

2 **Select software**

Function menu➡p.230

Quitting an i-αppli

1 CLR **(1 second or longer) or** ☎▶**“YES”**

■ **For software developers**

When an i-αppli software is created and does not run correctly, the trace information can be accessed for reference.

Select in order of MENU ▶“i-αppli”▶“i-αppli action info”▶“Trace info”. The trace information is displayed in the order in which actions occurred. You can copy the trace information by selecting “Copy info” from the function menu. To delete the trace information, select “Delete info” from the function menu.

NOTE

- If you receive a voice, videophone or PushTalk call while launching a software, the software is paused. The software screen reappears when the call ends. However, the setting of “V-phone while packet” is applied during i-αppli communication.
- The i-αppli mail used with mail-connected i-αppli may not be displayed correctly.
- Do not remove the battery pack while software is running. The data or information used until the time may not be saved.
- You can save the data you use (i-αppli data (microSD)) to the microSD memory card depending on the software.
- Some i-αppli allows you to use the Phone To (AV Phone To) or Web To function from the i-αppli. However, you cannot use these functions from the i-αppli standby screen. (You can use these functions when an i–αppli is activated.)

Continued on next page

NOTE

- Images used in i-αppli* and data you enter may be automatically sent to the server via the Internet.
  *: Images used in i-αppli refers to images shot by the camera activated by a camera-linked i-αppli, images retrieved using an i-αppli Infrared data exchange or iC exchange function, images downloaded by an i-αppli from an i-mode site or website or images loaded by an i-αppli from Data box.
- If the memory used to store trace information is full, the oldest entry is overwritten.
- Some i-αppli software applications may not make sounds.
- If the camera is activated from an i-αppli, the shot images are saved and used as part of the i-αppli.
- You can use an i-αppli to activate the Bar code reader and read JAN codes and QR codes. The read data are used by the software.
- With some software applications, the IP (information service provider) may access software stored on your FOMA terminal and directly disable the use of the software. In this case, you can no longer launch, upgrade or set the software as the standby screen. You can only delete the software or view the software information. To use the software again, you have to contact the IP and have them send an instruction to re-enable the software.
- With some software applications, the IP (information service provider) may send data to software stored on your FOMA terminal.
- When an IP (information service provider) sends a disable or re-enable instruction or other data to software stored on your FOMA terminal, the " 彡 " icon flashes. No communication charges are applied in this case.
- When 2in1 is set to B mode or Dual mode, you may not be able to launch, operate or set an i-αppli depending on the i-αppli.
- You cannot launch an i-αppli:
  • While an image is edited
  • While an i-motion or Chaku-Uta Full® is downloaded
- Some i-αppli may be displayed on the landscape screen or the full-screen depending on the software.
- The battery level indicated by an icon may be different from the actual one depending on i-αppli viewed in full scale.

FUNC **Software list screen (p.229)/ IC card content screen (p.243)**

Software setting……Specifies the software settings. Press [✉] (Finish) to finish the setting operation.

Stand-by display→p.238

Network set……Sets whether to communicate when an i-αppli is launched. When "Confirm every session" is selected, you can select whether to communicate every time you launch an i-αppli.

Stand-by net……Sets whether the i-αppli set as standby screen communicates.

Icon info……Specifies whether the use of unread mail or message icon information is permitted when an i-αppli is running.

Change mld./img.……Specifies whether to allow the ring tones for phone calls, mail and messages, images such as those used in the standby screen or when mail is sent or received or menu icon to be changed when an i-αppli DX is running. When "ON" is set, the ring tone, image or menu icon is automatically changed. When "Check every session" is set, you can select whether to change the ring tone or image every time an i-αppli attempt to change such item automatically.

See P.book/hist.……Sets whether to allow the application to look up the phonebook, the latest Dialed and Received calls records, and the latest unread mail when an i-αppli DX is running.
When "ON" is set, the phonebook and records are automatically looked up.

Location usage……Sets whether to permit the acquisition of location information when an i-αppli DX is launched.
When "Yes" is set, the location information will be automatically acquired.

Power saver……Sets whether the Power saver mode set to "ON" during i-αppli is activated. Sets whether to pause the i-αppli when the FOMA terminal is folded or whether to pause the i-αppli according to "Backlight" in "Settings" when no operation or communication of the FOMA terminal occurred during i-αppli is activated.

Software info→p.231

Upgrade→p.239

List setting……Selects a list format from "Title image+ icon/icon/software name".

Set i-αppli To→p.237

Auto-start time→p.236

Add desktop icon→p.115

Move to microSD……Moves one i-αppli on the FOMA terminal to the microSD memory card.
"Displaying the i-αppli in the microSD memory card"→p.239

Memory info……Displays the storage capacity of i-αppli.

Delete……Selects the deleting method from "Delete this/ Delete selected/Delete all"."About multiple-choice"→p.38

NOTE

<Software setting (Network set)>

- If you specify "OFF", note that you may not be able to receive timely information.

NOTE

<Software setting (Icon info)>

- If you set this function to “ON”, as information about whether there are unread messages and mail, icons for in/out of service area, the battery level and the status of manner mode are sent to the IP (information service provider) via the Internet in the same way as your mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers, there is a possibility that the information may be disclosed to the third party.
- If this function is set to “OFF”, some i-αppli that require the icon information may not work.

<Software setting (Power saver)>

- If “After folded” is set to “ON”, the application is paused when the FOMA terminal is folded. Note that you may not be able to receive information timely when this function is set.
- If “Timer” is set to “ON”, the application is paused according to “Backlight” in “Settings” when no operation or communication of the FOMA terminal occurred during i-αppli is activated. Note that you may not be able to receive information timely when this function is set.

<Delete>

- When deleting a mail-connected i-αppli, a message appears asking if you also delete the corresponding dedicated folder for the mail-connected i-αppli. Select “NO” to delete only the software and select “YES” to delete the folder at the same time. However, even when you select “YES”, you cannot delete the folder dedicated for the mail-connected i-αppli if it is being used, if the folder is locked, or if the folder contains a protected mail.
- Depending on the Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli, the software itself is deleted after the software is launched and data in the IC card is deleted. After selecting “Delete this” for this kind of software, launch and delete the data in the IC card following the confirmation screen, then delete the software itself. Since “Delete selected” or “Delete all” cannot launch the software, delete the data before deleting the software.
- Some Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli cannot be deleted.
- When 2in1 is in B mode, some i-αppli cannot be deleted.

<Move to microSD>

- Even if i-αppli in the FOMA terminal (Phone) is moved to the microSD memory card, the i-αppli data that remains there is not deleted.
- Even if mail-connected i-αppli is moved to the microSD memory card, the mail-connected i-αppli folder in the FOMA terminal (Phone) is not deleted.
- Use “Software info” (p.231) to check whether the i-αppli data will be saved to the microSD memory card from the software.

Adjusting the volume of i-αppli

<i-αppli vol.>

You can adjust the volume of i-αppli.

1 MENU ▶“Settings”▶“i-αppli settings”▶“i-αppli vol.”

2 Adjust the volume

NOTE

- You can set the volume depending on the software. However, when “i-αppli vol.” is set to “Silent”, there is no sound regardless of the volume setting of the software.
- When Manner mode is set, the volume of the i-αppli is set to the Manner mode setting. When Original manner mode is set, the volume of the i-αppli is played at the “i-αppli vol.” setting of Manner mode.

Checking the information for i-αppli

1 Software list screen (p.229)▶ch (FUNC)▶“Software info”▶Check the software information

NOTE

- The software name displayed by this function cannot be changed.
- On the software list screen, software types and settings can be checked by the following icons.

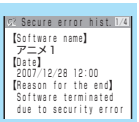
: i-αppli DX
: Mail-connected i-αppli
: “Auto start time” is set
: “Set i-αppli stand-by” is set
: “Auto start time” and “Set i-αppli stand-by” are set
: “i-αppli To setting” can be set
: “Set i-αppli stand-by” can be set
: “i-αppli To setting” and “Set i-αppli stand-by” can be set
: Software downloaded from an SSL-compatible page
: Software whose data can be saved to the microSD memory card→p.239
: Partially downloaded i-αppli
: Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli→p.242
: i-αppli only with management information →p.228
: GPS i-αppli

Checking the security error history

When an i-αppli or i-αppli DX attempts to launch a function that is not permitted to run, a security error occurs and the details of the error are recorded in the security error history.

1 MENU/HIST ▶**“i-αppli”**▶**“i-αppli action info”**▶**“Security error history”**

The “Security error history” screen appears.



Security error history

2 **Check the details**

Function menu➡p.232

FUNC **Security error history screen (p.232)**

Copy info……Copies the security error details.

Delete info……Deletes the security error details.

Launching software from another software

You can launch a software from the currently active software. Downloading software that launches the specified software enables you to launch that software without returning to the software list screen.

- If the software to be launched is not specified, specify the software.
- If the software to be launched is specified but is not stored on the FOMA terminal, you must download the software beforehand.

1 **Select an item for launching software**

Pre-installed software

14 types of software are pre-installed at the time of purchase.

- Note that looking at the display for extended periods of time may cause eye strain.
- Use in a bright place.

● 絶対視覚 (Absolute Vision)

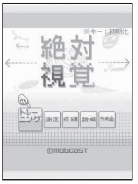
This is the game in which you test and train your “absolute vision” ability to determine at once what is right from information obtained with your eyes. This game offers the following five types of training menus: “長” (long), “大” (large), “色” (color), “測” (measure), and “写” (copy).

1 **Software list screen (p.229)▶“絶対視覚” (Absolute Vision)**

■ **To exit the game**
▶“やめる” (EXIT)

■ **To adjust the volume**
▶ ( )

■ **To display detailed procedure**
▶“説明” (How to play)



2 **“トレーニング” (Training)**

The game starts.

Warning

- This application is a game that you play by tilting or shaking the FOMA terminal.
  There is a possibility that too much shaking of it may cause its hitting to a person or an article, etc. and result in an accident or a damage.
  When playing with the FOMA terminal, please firmly grip it, and do not shake it beyond necessity, while confirming the surrounding's safety.

● PLATINUM SURIKI

SURIKI is a number placement game. Place a numerical digit 1-9 in each cell (block). Each row column and 3 × 3 block in a thick frame can contain only one instance of each number.

1 **Software list screen (p.229)▶“PLATINUM SURIKI”▶ (YES)**

■ **To exit the game**
▶“終了” (Exit)▶ (YES)

■ **To mute the sound**
▶“オプション” (Options)▶“サウンド：オン” (Sound: On)

■ **To show how to play**
▶“チュートリアル” (Tutorial)



2 “数力をプレイ” (Play SURIKI)

3 Select level▶ (OK)
The game starts.

■ **To resume the game**
▶ (YES)

● デコメをつくろう (Create Deco-mail)

You can easily create Decorate PI that can be used as pictographs on i-mode mails. You can also create an original signature and save as an image.

1 Software list screen (p.229)▶“デコメをつくろう” (Create Deco-mail)

■ **To exit the application**
▶ (終了(Exit))



2 “デコメ絵文字” (Decorate PI)
Create a Decorate PI.

■ **To create original signature**
▶“ネームプレート” (Name plate)

■ **To display detailed procedure**
▶“ヘルプ！” (Help!)

● 海外旅行便利ツール (Handy tool for overseas travel)

When you want to convert currency or check for a lost property on your business or your overseas travel, this tool is convenient.

1 Software list screen (p.229)▶“海外旅行便利ツール” (Handy tool for overseas travel)

■ **To exit the application**
▶ (終了(Exit))
▶“はい” (YES)

■ **To adjust the volume**
“Adjusting the volume of i-αppli”→p.231

2 Select an item



● しゃべって翻訳 for N (Shabette Honyaku for N)

If you speak Japanese or English used mainly on your travel at a microphone, this software will display the translated sentences.

1 Software list screen (p.229)▶“しゃべって翻訳_N” (Shabette Honyaku_N)

■ **To exit the application**
▶ (終了(Exit))▶“はい” (YES)



2 “翻訳” (Translate)
If only you speak in front of the microphone following instructions displayed on the screen, you will find the translated sentences on the screen.

■ **To display detailed procedure**
▶“メニュー” (Menu)▶“チュートリアル” (Tutorial)

■ **To display in English**
▶ (En/英)

● モバイルGoogleマップN (Mobile Google map N)

Interactive maps, aerial photos and rich shopping stores or service information are ready for your enjoyment. Zoom-in, zoom-out and scroll are easy to go. You can look up the detail map or local information of 16 countries or more over the world, including United States and Europe.

- For first time use, you should agree with the terms of service.

1 Software list screen (p.229)▶“モバイルGoogleマップN” (Mobile Google map N)

■ **To exit the application**
▶ (メニュー)▶“終了” (Exit)

■ **To view details**
▶ (メニュー)▶“ヘルプ” (Help)



● カメラでケンサク！ (Camera de kensaku! ER search)

This software enables you to easily acquire information about shopping, campaigns, etc. by shooting items such as images of magazines, TV commercials, CD sleeves or logos and sending them.

1 Software list screen (p.229)▶“カメラでケンサク！ ERサーチ” (Camera de kensaku! ER search)

■ **To display detailed procedure**

▶ (ヘルプ(Help))



2 Select “検索START!” (Start search)▶Select a genre▶“カメラ起動” (Activate camera)

3 Shoot an object▶“OK”

The characteristics of the shot image* are sent, and the search result screen of the related information appears. If there are some candidates, the candidate list screen appears.

*: The characteristics stated above refer to the numerical values of the image characteristics.

4 Select an item on the search result screen▶“YES”

Website appears.

● 地図アプリ (Map i-αppli)

Refer to p.251 for “地図アプリ” (Map i-αppli).

● iD 設定アプリ (iD setting application)

“iD”, e-money without charge, is a service that you can shop with simple Osaifu-Keitai or “iD”-embedded credit card held over. No signature is required. Easy and handy shopping is on your side. Cashing service is also available depending on the credit card company.

- To use “iD”, you have to apply for each company issuing iD-supported credit card and own Osaifu-Keitai or “iD”-embedded credit card with completion of setting the iD application and card application provided by the relevant company.
- To use “iD” through Osaifu-Keitai, launch iD application and agree with “ご利用上の注意” (Usage Notes). After completing the option settings of iD application, download or start the card application and set the options of it.



* The above is a screen image. The actual screen may look different.

- Annual fee or other cost for iD service varies depending on the card company.
- Packet communication fee is charged to download iD and the card applications.
- See “iD” i-mode site for more detail.

  i-mode site (Japanese) : ▶iMenu▶“メニュー／検索” (Menu/search)▶“iD”

● DCMXクレジットアプリ (DCMX credit application)

DCMX is the iD-compatible credit service provided by the NTT DoCoMo group. DCMX is categorized into DCMX mini that will offer a monthly credit line of 10,000 yen, and DCMX that offers the higher limit than DCMX mini while earning DoCoMo Point. You can easily apply for “DCMX mini” from this application and start the mobile credit service immediately.



* The above is a screen image. The actual screen may look different.

■ **Function**

Application/Audit*1

↓

Set card information

↓

Use
No complicated charging! Wave your mobile phone over a reader in a store, and enjoy shopping without your signature*3.

Check*2
Check the bill and balance of this month with the application!

Change
Use this application for card update or model change!

*1: A simple audit will be performed online at the time of application. Applications for other than DCMX mini will be connected to the application page on i-mode.

*2: The check function is only available for DCMX mini.

*3: Security code entry may be required.

● See the DCMX i-mode site for details on the service contents or how to apply.
i-mode site (Japanese) :
iMenu▶DCMX iD

■Information

- When you launch this application for the first time, agree with “ご利用上の注意” (Notes on using the application).
- Packet communication charges are applied for settings or operations.

■Notes on Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli

- NTT DoCoMo accepts no liability whatsoever regarding the information set on the IC card.

● Gガイド番組表リモコン (G-GUIDE EPG Remote Control)

This is a useful monthly-charge-free application containing the program guide and AV remote control function. You can obtain digital, analog, or BS digital TV program information easily anywhere at any time. You can check the program title, contents of program and start/end time, etc.
If you are interested in some program, you can set timer recording via the Internet to record the program on the DVD recorder (a DVD hard disk recorder compatible with the online timer recording function is required. To use this function, you need initial settings on this application).
You can also search for the program information with keywords such as TV program genre or your favorite personality. Moreover, the remote control is possible for TV/Video/DVD player (some models do not support this function).

- When you use this application for the first time, agree to the license agreement and set the default settings.
- Packet communication charges will apply.
- When using this software overseas, set “Set main time” to the Japanese time.
- For details on Gガイド番組表リモコン (G-GUIDE EPG Remote Control), refer to “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode] FOMA version”.



* The above is a screen image. The actual screen may look different. The displayed TV guide corresponds to the area where you live.

■Online timer recording

If you have a DVD recorder compatible with the online timer recording, you can set timer recording from the program guide of this application via the Internet while you are away from your house. To use online timer recording, you need initial settings on this application.

- Initial settings
  ① Perform the Internet connection setting on the DVD recorder (refer to the manual supplied with the DVD recorder).
  ② Launch this application. When you select “リモート録画予約” (Online timer recording) on メニュー (Menu), instructions appear. Follow the instructions to perform initial settings.
- Timer recording
  After initial settings completes, specify the program and select リモート録画予約 (Online timer recording) from the menu. You can connect to the DVD player set with this application and set the timer recording.
- You are charged for packet communication.

NOTE

- When 2in1 is in B mode, this function is not available.
- NTT DoCoMo accepts no liability whatsoever regarding the information set on the FOMA terminal.

● FOMA通信環境確認アプリ (FOMA communication speed checker)

The FOMA通信環境確認アプリ (FOMA communication speed checker) is the application program which confirms whether the FOMA terminal can use FOMA High-speed area.

- When you use the FOMA通信環境確認アプリ (FOMA communication speed checker), agree with “ご利用上の注意” (Notes on use).



* The above is a screen image. The actual screen may look different.

NOTE

- Depending on the conditions of the network (for example, those of the weather, airwave, and network traffic), different results or results indicating out of service range may be displayed even at the same place and time period.
- If you use another function while using this application, correct confirmation may be not possible.

● i アプリバンキング (i-αppli banking)

This i-αppli enables you to use easy mobile banking. Mobile banking is a service that you can check your bank balance or account activity, or you can transfer money at any time and any place by using a mobile phone. You can open account up to 2 banks, only by entering the password you have set when launching the i-αppli.

- To use the mobile banking service, a bank account of the banking facility and application to the mobile banking service is required.
- You are charged for the packet communication.
- For details on i-αppli banking, refer to “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode] FOMA version”.
- For details, see the i-mode site.
  i-mode site (Japanese) :
  i▶iMenu▶“メニュー／検索” (Menu/search)▶“モバイルバンキング” (Mobile banking)▶“ｉアプリバンキング” (i-αppli banking)



* The above is a screen image. The actual screen may look different.

● 楽オク出品アプリ2 (Rakuten auction)

楽オク出品アプリ2 (Rakuten Auction application 2) is a useful application that you can easily sell goods at Rakuten Auction site. It provides a guidance display for new users who use the i-αppli for the first time. There are helpful functions such as shooting/editing a photo or saving the history, and you can bring goods to the auction in a shorter time than from a site.

- You need to agree to “利用規約” (Terms and conditions) before you use i-αppli for the first time.
- Packet communication is charged.
- For more information, refer to “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode] FOMA version”.
- Member subscription and auctioneer registration to Rakuten are required to sell goods on Rakuten Auction.
- For details, see i-mode site (Japanese).
  i-mode site: i▶iMenu▶楽オク-オークション- (Rakuten Auction)



* The above is a screen image. The actual screen may look different.

Launching i-αppli Automatically

You can set the software to launch automatically at the specified date and time or interval of time.

Enabling automatic launching

<Auto-start set>

- You can set 3 automatic startup times for each application.

1 MENU▶“i-αppli”▶“Auto-start set”▶“ON” or “OFF”

Setting the launch date/time

<Auto-start time>

You can specify the date and time to launch the software automatically.

- Software does not start up automatically in the following cases:
  - When the FOMA terminal is turned off
  - When another function is running
  - During a call
  - During communication
  - When the software updating schedule, an alarm, schedule or To Do list is set for the same time as automatic launching
  - If the time to launch is set within 10 minutes after the same application is automatically launched for the last time

1 **Software list screen (p.229)▶ch (FUNC)▶“Auto-start time”▶Use ◎ to select a checkbox (☐)**

■ To enable the time interval set for the software

▶Check the “Time interval set” checkbox

■ To set the launch date and time

▶Check the “Start time set” checkbox

2 **✉ (Finish)▶Set the launch date and time**

■ To set the launch date and time

▶Select a date and time▶Enter the launch date and time

■ To set the automatic launch repetition

▶Select the repeat setting item▶“Daily” or “Weekly”

If you select “Weekly”, use ◎ to select a checkbox (☐) and press ✉ (Finish).

3 Press (Finish)

Checking whether an i-αppli launched automatically

You can check whether an i-αppli automatically started up at the specified time.

- You can also check for the software whose launching from the IC card function failed.

1 ▶"i-αppli"▶"i-αppli action info"▶"Auto-start info"

The screen displays information such as the software name, the automatic launch time and whether or not the software was launched. "Start ○" indicates that the software started up automatically, "Start ×" indicates that it did not start up automatically and "Start −" indicates that the time for automatic launch has not yet been reached.

NOTE

- If the software could not be launched automatically, the " " (Not run soft) icon appears on the standby screen. Select the icon to view the Auto-start info screen. Select the software to launch it. Desktop icons that provide information →p.117
- The information is also stored when the application could not be launched automatically because you are using i-mode or running another software.

Launching an i-αppli from a Site or Mail <i-αppli To function>

You can launch an i-αppli from a function other than i-αppli, such as an i-mode site or mail.

Enabling software launching with i-αppli To <Set i-αppli To>

You can specify whether i-αppli software can be launched from i-mode sites, mail, the Infrared data exchange function, Bar code reader, IC card function or ToruCa.

- This setting can be specified separately for each software application.

1 Software list screen (p.229)▶ (FUNC)▶"Set i-αppli To"

2 Use to select a checkbox (□)▶ (Finish)

Launching i-αppli from a site

When an i-αppli software launch specification is displayed on an i-mode site, this setting allows the software to be launched from the site.

- This function cannot be used with some sites.

1 Sites screen (p.167)▶Select an item for launching the software▶"YES"

NOTE

- Unlike ordinary i-αppli, some i-αppli software is immediately launched from an i-mode site.
  - These i-αppli are not stored on the FOMA terminal after downloading from i-mode sites, and do not appear in the software list screen either. Some i-αppli software cannot be stored on the FOMA terminal.

Launching i-αppli from a mail

When an i-αppli software launch specification is pasted into a received i-mode mail, this setting allows the software to be launched from the i-mode mail.

1 Received mail detail screen (p.202, 205)▶Select an item for launching the software▶"YES"

NOTE

- i-αppli launch specification cannot be quoted even when you reply with a quote or forward the i-mode mail. You cannot quote a launch specification of an i-αppli by forwarding mail using the Infrared data exchange function or DoCoMo keitai datalink (p.389), etc.

Launching i-αppli from other functions

You can launch i-αppli from various functions such as Infrared data exchange function, Bar code reader, IC card function or ToruCa.

■Infrared data exchange function

When the FOMA terminal received the i-αppli launching signal while Infrared data exchange, i-αppli software launches.

■Bar code reader

When the data scanned by the Bar code reader contains an i-αppli software launch specification, you can launch the software from the Bar code reader.

■IC card function

You can launch the software by holding the FeliCa mark on the FOMA terminal over the reader/writer unit.

Continued on next page

■ToruCa

When an i-αppli software launch specification is pasted into an acquired ToruCa, you can launch the software from ToruCa.

NOTE

<IC card function>

- Software is not launched in the following cases:
  - When another function is running
  - During a call
  - When the software you want to launch cannot be found

Setting the i-αppli Standby Screen <Set i-αppli stand-by>

You can set a selected i-αppli software as the standby screen.

- Some software applications cannot be set as the standby screen.

1 Software list screen (p.229)▶ (Set) ▶"Stand-by display"▶"ON"▶ (Finish)

NOTE

- Only 1 i-αppli can be set as the i-αppli standby screen.
- If software that communicates is set as the standby screen, it may not run correctly when problems such as poor signal quality occur.
- If you select "OFF" for "Stand-by net" in "Software setting", note that you may not be able to receive timely information.
- If "Dial lock" or "Original lock" is set or 2in1 is set to B mode or Dual mode while the i-αppli standby screen is displayed, the i-αppli standby screen ends. If "Dial lock" or "Original lock" is released or 2in1 is set to A mode, the i-αppli standby screen reappears.
- The standby screen set in "Stand-by display" under "Display setting" gets priority over the i-αppli standby screen when switching the task to go to the standby screen.

Activating the i-αppli standby screen

You can activate the software set as the i-αppli standby screen.

1 On the i-αppli standby screen▶CLR

The i-αppli is activated and a flashing " " or " " icon appears to flash at the bottom of the screen.

Deactivating the i-αppli standby screen <Deactivating the i-αppli standby screen>

● Deactivating the i-αppli standby screen while running an i-αppli

1 While running an i-αppli▶CLR (1 second or longer) or ☎▶ Select any item:

Cancel……Returns to the screen of running the i-αppli standby screen.

End……Returns to the i-αppli standby screen.

Terminate……Deactivates the setting of the i-αppli standby screen.

● Deactivating the i-αppli standby screen while it is displayed

1 MENU▶"Settings"▶"i-αppli settings"▶"End stand-by display"

2 "Terminate"▶"Yes"

■ **To cancel deactivating**

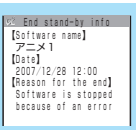
▶"End"

Checking the i-αppli standby screen exit information

If an error occurs that causes the i-αppli standby screen to be deactivated, you can check the recorded information on the name of the software in which the error occurred, the time of the error and the reason.

1 MENU▶"i-αppli"▶"i-αppli action info"▶"End stand-by info"

The "End stand-by info" screen appears.



End stand-by info

Function menu➡p.238

FUNC End stand-by info screen (p.238)

Copy info……Copies the contents of the end stand-by info screen.

Delete info……Deletes the contents of the end stand-by info screen.

NOTE

- No information is recorded if the i-αppli standby screen ends normally (at normal exit).

Organizing i-αppli

Upgrading i-αppli <Upgrade>

You can upgrade downloaded software when a new version is available on the site.

1. **Software list screen (p.229)▶ ch (FUNC)▶"Upgrade"▶"YES"**

NOTE

- You cannot upgrade mail-connected i-αppli that rename mail folders in the following cases:
  - When Mail box lock is set
  - When Folder lock is set
  - Inbox or Outbox mail folder for the mail-connected i-αppli to be upgraded is being used

Displaying the i-αppli in the microSD memory card <microSD software list>

You can display the i-αppli list stored on the microSD memory card.

1. MENU ▶**"i-αppli"▶"microSD"▶"microSD software"**
   The "microSD software" screen appears.

FUNC microSD software screen

- On the microSD software list screen, you can display the software information, move i-αppli to the FOMA terminal (Phone), or delete i-αppli from the following function menus.
- The i-αppli icon using the microSD memory card appears.

Software info……Displays the software information of the i-αppli stored on the microSD memory card.

Move to phone……Moves one i-αppli and i-αppli data on the microSD memory card to the FOMA terminal.

Memory info……Displays the storage capacity of i-αppli.

Delete……Selects the deleting method from "Delete this/Delete selected/Delete all". "About multiple-choice"→p.38

NOTE

- You cannot launch i-αppli from the microSD software list screen.
- You may not be able to use the i-αppli saved on the microSD memory card from the other FOMA terminal.

NOTE

- When i-αppli in the microSD memory card is moved to the FOMA terminal (Phone), the i-αppli data in the microSD memory card is moved along with the i-αppli.
- Use "Software info" (p.231) to check whether the i-αppli data in the microSD memory card will be moved to the FOMA terminal (Phone) from the software.

Displaying the i-αppli data in the microSD memory card <microSD data>

You can display the folder name list of the i-αppli data (microSD) stored on the microSD memory card.

1. MENU ▶**"i-αppli"▶"microSD"▶"microSD data"**
   The "microSD data" screen appears.

FUNC microSD data screen

- On the microSD data list screen, you can display the data information or delete data from the following function menus.

Display info.→p.239

Delete this/Delete selected/Delete all……Select the deletion method."About multiple-choice"→p.38

NOTE

- You may not be able to use the i-αppli data saved on the microSD memory card from the software on the other FOMA terminal.
- Use "Software info" (p.231) to check whether the i-αppli data will be saved to the microSD memory card from the software.

Data information

Item	Contents
Maker	Displays the maker of the i-αppli. (When there is no information, "None" appears)
Available Software	Displays the i-αppli software name for which the microSD memory card can be used (When there is no information, "None" appears)
Use saved data	Displays whether there is a reason the i-αppli cannot use the microSD memory card "None" appears if there is at least one "Reason" and "ON" appears if there is no reason

Continued on next page

Item	Contents	
Reason	Software restriction	Displayed when no i-αppli is available*
	UIM restriction	Displayed when the FOMA card (UIM) is different from the used one*
	Model restriction	Displayed when the i-αppli data was used on other series than FOMA N905iμ*
	Series restriction	Displayed when the i-αppli data was used on other series than the following models* • 905i series

*: Displayed in gray when there is no reason that the i-αppli cannot use the microSD memory card.

Osaifu-Keitai/ToruCa

What is Osaifu-Keitai? 242
What is iC Transfer Service? 242
Launching Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli 242
What is ToruCa? ..... ToruCa 243
Acquiring ToruCa ..... Acquire ToruCa 244
Viewing ToruCa ..... ToruCa viewer 245
Making the ToruCa Settings ..... ToruCa settings 246
Setting the Illumination/Vibrator for IC Card Function ..... IC card notice set 247
Locking the IC Card Function ..... IC card lock 247

What is Osaifu-Keitai?

“Osaifu-Keitai” refers to a useful IC card function of an i-mode terminal (i-mode FeliCa) or to an i-mode terminal equipped with an IC card.
FeliCa is a type of contactless IC card technology that allows you to read/write data simply by holding the Osaifu-Keitai over a reader/writer unit.
You can pay using electronic cash by holding the Osaifu-Keitai over a reader/writer unit of a store, or use the Osaifu-Keitai as a plane ticket or point card.
Osaifu-Keitai makes mobile phones useful more and more. Osaifu-Keitai is more useful than existing FeliCa-compatible contactless IC card in that you can even transmit electronic cash into the IC card of your Osaifu-Keitai or check the account balance or transaction history.

* To use the Osaifu-Keitai-compatible service, you need to specify settings with i-αppli that supports IC card function (IC application) (Contact IP (Information service provider) for details).
* For details on how to use, refer to “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode] FOMA version”.

- Due to malfunction of the Osaifu-Keitai, data on the IC card may be erased or altered (NTT DoCoMo cannot receive the Osaifu-Keitai with data remained when repairing, you will be asked to erase data by yourself). For supports such as reissue or restore of data or temporary keeping or transferring data, use the backup service of IP (Information service provider) except for transferring data using iC transfer service. It is depended on the service whether Backup service is available or compatible with iC transfer service, or usage condition (necessary procedure or charge), confirm them on the IP beforehand. Make sure to use the service which provides backup service for important data.
- By malfunction or model change, etc, or under no circumstances shall NTT DoCoMo be held liable for any loss of or damage to data stored on the IC card, or any loss concerned with Osaifu-Keitai service.
- If you lose or be stolen of your Osaifu-Keitai, immediately contact the provider of the Osaifu-Keitai service you use for measures. You can use Dial lock, Omakase Lock and IC card lock for this FOMA terminal. →pp.126, 247

What is iC Transfer Service?

iC transfer service*1 is a service that allows you to move all the IC card data*2 to a new Osaifu-Keitai*3 when replacing or repairing the Osaifu-Keitai. Once you move the IC card data, you can start using the Osaifu-Keitai services easily by downloading the Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli.
iC transfer service is available at a NTT DoCoMo shop or service counter.
For details, refer to “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode] FOMA version”.

*1 : Service charge is required for the iC transfer service (except for some services). A packet communication charge is applied for downloading the Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli and for other settings.
*2 : Some of the Osaifu-Keitai services are not supported by iC transfer service. Data of the unsupported services will be deleted when using the iC transfer service. Use the backup service of the each Osaifu-Keitai service or delete the service data beforehand.
*3 : iC transfer service is available only when the new Osaifu-Keitai supports iC transfer service.

Launching Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli

You can launch the Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli from the software list screen. You can use the Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli to read and write the data in the IC card to use useful functions such as charging electronic money or ticket, or browsing the balance and transaction history on the FOMA terminal.

- Take great care not to disclose your security code and passwords of each service to others.
- The reading/writing of the data from the software to the IC card is interrupted in the following cases. In this case, the read/written data is discarded. The operation after the call varies depending on the service.
  - If you receive a call while launching i-αppli
  - If the battery fails
- When you launch the Osaifu-Keitai iappli for the first time or when downloading the Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli, a message “Matches the FOMA card information and the IC card” appears. After this, you cannot use the IC card function unless the matched FOMA card (UIM) is inserted.
  If you use another FOMA card (UIM), you cannot use the IC card functions unless you insert the matched FOMA card (UIM) and delete all the Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli first.

1 **(1 second or longer)**
The “Software list” screen appears.

2 **Select the Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli**
The Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli is launched.

● Displaying the Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli on the IC card content screen

1 **▶“Osaifu-Keitai”▶“IC card content”**
The “IC card content” screen appears.



IC card content

■ To launch the software
▶Select the software to launch

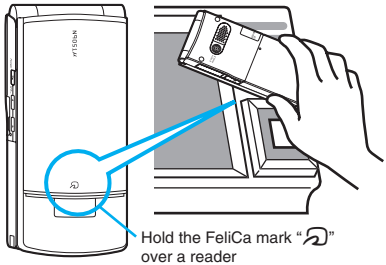
Function menu➡p.230

NOTE
- When 2in1 is set to B mode, you cannot launch an i-αppli which uses the mail function.

Using the Osaifu-Keitai

By holding the FeliCa mark “” on the FOMA terminal over the reader/writer unit, you can pay with the electronic cash or use the FOMA terminal as a ticket. These functions can be used without launching the software.
- Though you cannot launch the Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli during a call, you can use the Osaifu-Keitai by holding the FeliCa mark over the reader/writer unit.

1 **Hold the FeliCa mark “” over the reader/writer unit to use the service you want**
When using Osaifu-Keitai, Vibrator/Illumination plays following “IC card notice set”.


Hold the FeliCa mark “” over a reader

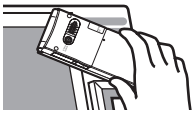
NOTE
- You can use the IC card function by holding the FeliCa mark over the reader/writer unit even when the FOMA terminal is turned off or the battery is low (You cannot launch the Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli). However, you may not be able to use the IC card function when the battery pack is not attached, the battery pack is attached but not used for a long period of time, or when the FOMA terminal is left uncharged after the battery alarm sounds, so be sure to charge the battery pack.
- Do not shock the FOMA terminal when holding the FeliCa mark over a reader/writer unit.
- If the FeliCa mark is not recognized, hold the FOMA terminal close to the reader/writer section of the unit, move the FOMA terminal back and forth and around to be parallel to the reader/writer unit.
- You may not be able to download, version upgrade or uninstall some Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli when IC card lock is set.
- The Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli may be launched when you hold the FeliCa mark over the reader/writer unit.

What is ToruCa? <ToruCa>

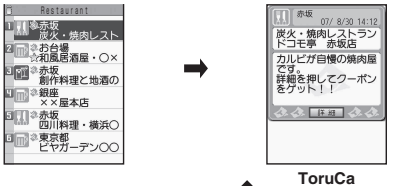
ToruCa is the electronic card that can be acquired via Osaifu-Keitai, which can be used as an flyer, restaurant card, coupon, etc.
ToruCa can be acquired via a reader/writer unit or websites, and can be easily exchanged via mail, Infrared data exchange or microSD memory card.
- The acquired ToruCa is stored in “ToruCa” of “Osaifu-Keitai” menu.
- This function is available with ToruCa-compatible models. For details, refer to “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode] FOMA version”.

Continued on next page

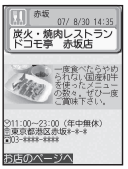
ToruCa usage flow



Hold Osaifu-Keitai over a reader to acquire ToruCa



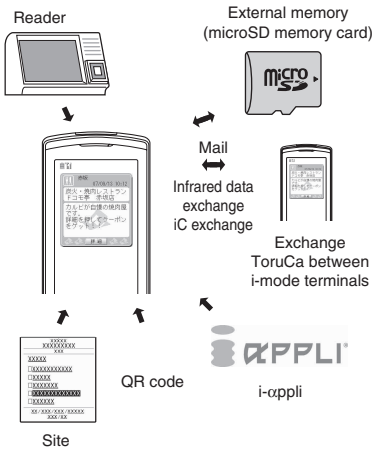
ToruCa



ToruCa (detail)

Select ToruCa from the list. Press “詳細” (detail) button to display details.

How to acquire ToruCa



NOTE

- Packet communication charge is applied when acquiring ToruCa or ToruCa (detail) from sites.

NOTE

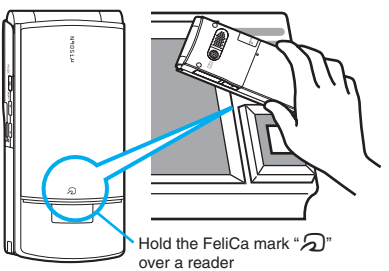
- Depending on settings of the IP (Information service provider), some ToruCa cannot be updated or redistributed using a mail or Infrared data exchange.

Acquiring ToruCa <Acquire ToruCa>

You can acquire ToruCa from the reader/writer unit.

1 Hold the FeliCa mark “” on the FOMA terminal over the reader/writer unit

Vibrator/Illumination plays following “IC card notice set”, the ToruCa acquisition tone sounds, and the acquired ToruCa/ToruCa (detail) appears for about 15 seconds.



Hold the FeliCa mark “” over a reader

NOTE

- Acquired ToruCa is not displayed when another function is activated.
- You can save up to 100* ToruCa on the ToruCa folder. You can save up to 1K bytes for 1 ToruCa. You can save up to 100K bytes for 1 ToruCa (detail).
  *: You can save up to 20 ToruCa separately in the used ToruCa folder.
- You cannot change the ToruCa acquisition tone. The volume is set to the same volume set at “Phone” of “Ring volume”. When set to “Step”, the tone sounds at the volume of “Level 4”.
- You cannot acquire ToruCa from the reader/writer unit when IC card lock or Omakase Lock is set.

Viewing ToruCa <ToruCa viewer>

1 MENU/HOLD ▶“Osaifu-Keitai”▶“ToruCa”
The “ToruCa folder list” screen appears.

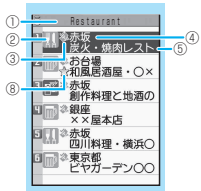


ToruCa folder list

Function menu➡p.245

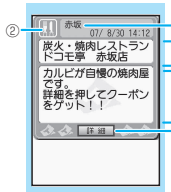
2 **Select a folder▶Select ToruCa**
The “ToruCa display” screen appears.

● Guide to the ToruCa list screens/ToruCa display screen



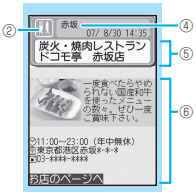
ToruCa list

Function menu➡p.246



ToruCa display (ToruCa)

Function menu➡p.246



ToruCa display (ToruCa (detail))

Function menu➡p.246

①Folder title
②ToruCa category icon
③ToruCa status

: Unread ToruCa

: Read ToruCa

: Expired ToruCa

④Location, etc. (index)
⑤ToruCa title
⑥ToruCa contents (you can also use the Phone To, Mail To, Web To or i-αppli To* function).
*: Available with ToruCa (detail) only

⑦Acquire ToruCa (detail)
⑧Icon indicating registration in My favorite

NOTE

- You may not be able to use the Phone To, Mail To, Web To or i-αppli To function depending on ToruCa.

FUNC ToruCa folder list screen (p.245)

Add folder……Enters a folder name to add a folder.
You can create up to 20 folders on the FOMA terminal. For the folders on the FOMA terminal, you can enter up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters. For the folders on the microSD memory card, you can enter up to 31 double-byte or 63 single-byte characters.

Edit folder name[*1]……Edits the folder name of the added folder.
For the folders on the FOMA terminal, you can enter up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters. For the folders on the microSD memory card, you can enter up to 31 double-byte or 63 single-byte characters.

☆ Mark list[*2*3]……Displays the list of ToruCa registered in My favorite.

Search all[*2*3]……Displays the corresponding ToruCa list by selecting the item (index/title) and entering the text to search.

Filter all[*2*3]……Displays only the ToruCa which meets the selected criteria.

Display all[*2*3]……Returns the search all or filter all result display to the original display.

iC trans. all[*2*3]→p.310

Send all Ir data[*2*3]→p.308

Delete folder[*1]……Deletes the folder.

No. of ToruCa[*3]……Displays the number of ToruCa stored on the FOMA terminal.

Delete all……Deletes all the ToruCa stored on the FOMA terminal.

*1 : You cannot perform “Edit folder name” and “Delete folder” with the folder other than the user-created folders.
*2 : Unavailable with the folder in the “microSD” folder.
*3 : Except for the data in the “microSD” and “used ToruCa” folders.

FUNC ToruCa list screen (p.245)

Move[*1*5]……Selects from “Move this/Move selected/Move all” and moves ToruCa to the other folder you select. “About multiple-choice”→p.38

Copy[*1*5]……Selects from “Copy this/Copy selected/Copy all” and copies the ToruCa on the other folder you selected. “About multiple-choice”→p.38

Mark list[*2*5]……Displays the list of ToruCa registered in My favorite.

Mark/Reset[*2]……Registers/cancels ToruCa in My favorite.

Search[*2*5]……Displays the corresponding ToruCa list by selecting the item (index/title) and entering the text to search.

Disp all in folder[*2*5]……Returns the search, sort or filter result display to the original display.

- When “Search all”, “Filter all” or “Display all” is performed on the ToruCa folder list screen, this item is displays as “Display all”.

Sort[*2*5]……Sorts ToruCa under the selected criteria.

Filter[*2*5]……Displays only the ToruCa which meets the selected criteria.

Compose message[*1*3]……Composes an i-mode mail with ToruCa attached.

iC transmission[*2]→p.309

Send Ir data[*2]→p.307

Copy to microSD[*2]→p.298

Copy to phone[*4]→p.299

No. of ToruCa[*1]……Displays the number of ToruCa saved in the FOMA terminal.

ToruCa info[*1]……Displays the ToruCa information.

Delete[*5]……Selects the deleting method from “Delete this/Delete selected/Delete all”. “About multiple-choice”→p.38

*1 : Unavailable in the “used ToruCa” folder.
*2 : Unavailable in the “microSD” and “Used ToruCa” folders.
*3 : When 2in1 is in B mode, this function is not available.
*4 : Available only for ToruCa stored on the microSD memory card.
*5 : Not available when the “Mark list” is selected in the ToruCa folder screen or ToruCa list screen.

FUNC ToruCa display screen (p.245)

Move[*5]……Selects the destination folder to move a ToruCa to the folder.

Copy[*5]……Selects the destination folder to copy a ToruCa to the folder.

Compose message[*1]……Composes an i-mode mail with ToruCa attached.

iC transmission[*2]→p.309

Send Ir data[*2]→p.307

Copy to microSD[*2]→p.298

Copy to phone[*3]→p.299

Update[*2*4]……Updates ToruCa (detail) information.

Save image[*2*4]……Saves the ToruCa (detail) image. Selects the setting from “Normal image/Background image”.

Add to phonebook[*2]……Stores the phone number or mail address displayed on ToruCa.→p.89

Replay[*2*4]……Plays the Flash movie or animation of ToruCa (detail) again from the beginning.

Delete[*5]……Deletes 1 ToruCa.

*1 : When 2in1 is in B mode, this function is not available.
*2 : Unavailable in the “microSD” folder.
*3 : Available only for ToruCa stored on the microSD memory card.
*4 : Displayed only when ToruCa (detail) stored on the FOMA terminal is displayed.
*5 : Not available if “Mark list” is selected on the ToruCa folder screen or Toruca list screen.

NOTE

- You may not be able to perform copying, attaching ToruCa to mail, iC transmission, sending Ir data, copying to the microSD memory card or updating depending on ToruCa.

Making the ToruCa Settings

<ToruCa settings>

1 MENU ▶“Osaifu-Keitai”▶“Setting”▶“ToruCa settings”▶Select any item:

Receive from R/W……Sets whether to acquire (Accept) ToruCa or not (Reject) when holding the FeliCa mark over a reader/writer unit.
“Accept” checks the FOMA terminal for ToruCa duplication (except ToruCa in “Used ToruCa” or expired one) on the acquisition.

Auto reading setting……Sets whether to automatically read the available ToruCa when holding the FOMA terminal over the reader/writer unit to use ToruCa.
“ON” moves ToruCa to “Used ToruCa” after recognizing the available ToruCa cards (except ToruCa in “Used ToruCa” or expired one) automatically on the FOMA terminal.

Scroll……Selects the number of scrolling lines in a screen from “1 line/3 lines/5 lines”.

NOTE

<Receive from R/W>

- When the Repetition check is set to “Yes”, you cannot acquire the same ToruCa. If you want to acquire the same ToruCa, set to “No”. The default setting is “Yes”.

<Auto reading setting>

- If you hold the FOMA terminal over the reader/writer when set to “OFF”, a confirmation message about using the auto reading function or a message that the auto reading is not available may appear. To use ToruCa, select “YES” and set this function to “ON”.

Setting the Illumination/ Vibrator for IC Card Function

<IC card notice set>

Set illumination/vibrator notification setting for IC card function.

1 MENU ▶“Osaifu-Keitai”▶“Setting”▶“IC card notice set”▶Select any item:

Illumination……Set illumination light.

Vibrator……Set vibrator.

Locking the IC Card Function

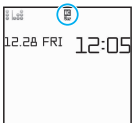
<IC card lock>

You can lock the IC card function to prevent others from using the IC card functions without your consent.

- IC card lock is not released even when the power is turned off.

1 On the standby screen▶3 (1 second or longer)

IC card lock is set and “ ” appears.



■ To release the IC card lock

▶3 (1 second or longer)

▶Enter your security code

IC card lock is released and “ ” disappears.

NOTE

- When you remove the battery pack, IC card lock is set automatically. In this case, attaching the battery pack automatically release IC card lock.
- IC card lock is not released even when the power is turned off because the battery runs out when IC card lock is set.

Locking the IC card function when the power is turned off

<IC lock (power-off)>

You can lock the IC card function to disable the Osaifu-Keitai when the power is turned off.

1 MENU ▶“Osaifu-Keitai”▶“IC card lock setting”▶Enter your security code▶“IC lock (power-off)”▶Select any item:

Maintain……Keeps the same IC card lock setting as before turning off the power.

IC card lock ON……The IC card function is locked regardless of the IC card lock setting.

Using Face authentication to release IC lock

If you have registered an image for “Face authentication” and selected “IC card lock” for “Function to reset”, an authentication of read face data is performed to identify the user.

- If the face authentication fails, enter the image name stored as a keyword for Face authentication to release the lock.
- “Using Face Authentication”→p.137

1 On the standby screen▶3 (1 second or longer)

2 Position your face so that the whole appears on the display

■ If the face authentication fails

▶Enter the image name▶OK



3 Enter your security code

IC card lock is released and “ ” disappears.

GPS Function

Using the GPS Function 250
Checking Your Current Location ..... Position location 250
Position Settings ..... Position settings 251
Using GPS i-αppli ..... GPS i-αppli 251
Providing Current Location Information on Request ..... Location request 256
Notifying the Current Location Information ..... Location notification 259
Viewing Location History ..... Location history 260
Using Location Information on a Site, ToruCa, etc. 261

Using the GPS Function

- GPS operation continues even if you have incoming call or mail message.
- Under no circumstances shall NTT DoCoMo be held liable for any loss or damage, due to loss of opportunity such as positioning (communicating) result check, resulting from external causes such as failure, malfunction or battery death of the FOMA terminal or blackout.
- The FOMA terminal cannot be used to navigate an aircraft, vehicle, person, etc. Under no circumstances shall NTT DoCoMo be held liable for any loss or damage resulting from use of location information.
- The FOMA terminal cannot be used as an accurate positioning GPS device. Under no circumstances shall NTT DoCoMo be held liable for any loss or damage arising from positioning error.
- Position location, Location request and Location notification are not available under the following conditions:

Function	Condition
Position location	When "圏外" appears, during a videophone call, in Self mode, in Keypad lock, in Dial lock, in Omakase Lock, when the FOMA card (UIM) is not inserted
Location notification	When "圏外" appears, in Self mode, in Keypad lock, in Dial lock, in Omakase Lock, when the FOMA card (UIM) is not inserted
Location request	When "圏外" appears, during positioning, in Self mode, when the FOMA card (UIM) is not inserted

NOTE

- You may need to subscribe to i-mode.
- GPS is operated by the U.S. Department of Defense. Depending on the defense of the United States, the GPS radio waves may be controlled (accuracy deterioration, radio wave interference, etc.).
- GPS uses radio signals broadcast by satellites. The FOMA terminal cannot or hardly can receive the radio waves under the following conditions:
  - In or under a building
  - In a tunnel, under the ground or water
  - In a bag or box
  - Buildings or houses crowded
  - In a jungle
  - Near a high pressure line
  - In a car or train
  - Bad weather such as heavy rain or snow
  - Some interference (person, thing, etc.) around the mobile phone
  - A hand covering the display, control keys, microphone, speaker, etc. of the mobile phone

NOTE

In these cases, the error of the location information may be larger than 300m.

- GPS satellites are always moving. Even in the same environment, the signal reception is always varying. A large error may occur, or location may not be positioned.
- You cannot use GPS function when your FOMA terminal is out of service area (or abroad).

Checking Your Current Location <Position location>

Determine your current location and obtain location information. The obtained location information can be used to view the current location on a map or use GPS i-αppli.

- Packet communications charges do not apply for positioning. However, separate packet communication charges apply, e.g. if you open a map from location information.

1 MENU/VIA-ET1 ▶"LifeKit"▶"GPS"
"GPS menu" screen appears.



GPS menu

2 **"Position location"**
The "Positioning result" screen appears.

■ **To cancel positioning**
▶ (Cancel) or CLR

■ **To use location information retrieved during positioning**
▶Positioning▶● (Use)



Positioning result

Accuracy★★★: Almost accurate (Error: less than 50m)
Accuracy★★☆: Relatively accurate (Error: less than 300m)
Accuracy★☆☆: Rough (Error: larger than 300m).
The Accuracy is only intended as an approximate guide. The actual positioning may vary depending on the ambient signal status, etc.

■ **To retrieve location information**
▶ (Retry)
Location information is retrieved in Quality mode.

3 Select any item:

Read a Map[*1]……Connects to the i-mode site and displays the map around the location from the location information.

Run i-αppli……Displays a list of GPS-compatible i-αppli programs.

Paste to mail[*2*3]……Composes an new mail with the URL of the location information pasted into the i-mode mail message.

Add to phonebook……Adds location information to the phonebook.

Attach to image……Selects an image, then adds location information to the image.

*1 : After viewing a map, you can use "i-area" to check surrounding area information. For details on "i-area", see DoCoMo website.
*2 : When 2in1 is in B mode, this function is not available.
*3 : Location information URL can be displayed only on i-mode compatible terminals.

NOTE

- Pressing 1 for 1 second or longer on the standby screen also obtains location information. In this case, the item set in "GPS button setting" (p.251) is automatically selected.

Position Settings <Position settings>

GPS button setting

Specify a function to be run automatically when 1 is pressed for 1 second or longer on the standby screen.

1 GPS menu screen (p.250)▶"GPS settings"

"GPS settings" screen appears.



GPS settings

2 "Position settings"▶"GPS button setting"▶Select a function to be run automatically

Select a function to be run automatically from the same items as step 3 of "Checking Your Current Location" (p.251).
You can also set to select a function each time you press 1 without selecting a function to be run automatically. In this case, select "Check every position".

Setting the Positioning mode

1 GPS settings screen (p.251)▶"Position settings"▶"Positioning mode"▶Select any item:

Standard mode……Gives priority to positioning fast.

Quality mode……Positions slowly. The result is more accurate than in Standard mode. The accuracy may not be high depending on the radio wave conditions, etc.

Using GPS i-αppli <GPS i-αppli>

Run a GPS-compatible i-αppli program. Location information can be used after obtaining it.

- If you use GPS-compatible i-αppli program, location information is sent to the program's information provider.
- To use the GPS function with a GPS-compatible i-αppli program, set "Location usage setting" to "Yes" for the program.

1 GPS menu screen (p.250)▶"i-αppli"
GPS-compatible i-αppli program list appears.

2 Select i-αppli
"Launching an i-αppli"→p.229

NOTE

- When 2in1 is in B mode, this function is not available.

Using 地図アプリ (Map i-αppli)

For the pre-installed "地図アプリ", you can use the GPS function and map to view the map of the current location or specified location, check the peripheral information, and perform navigation for vehicles, walk, or cars to the destination.
You can use the transfer guide easily through voice input.

- You are charged for the packet communication. For this software, use of Pake-Houdai/Pack-Houdai Full is recommended.
- To restore this software after deletion, download from "ｉエリアー周辺情報ー" (i-area -Surrounding area information-).
- Since this software is a mail-linked application, it is not available if 2in1 is in the B mode.
- We are not liable for accuracy and immediacy of the map and route information.
- During driving, a person other than the driver must operate the software.

● Basic service and additional service

This software provides the basic service and additional service.

Basic service: Service provided by DoCoMo free of charge

Additional service: Pay service provided by ZENRIN DataCom

The additional services other than traffic information are available free of charge for 90 days from the first launch of this software.

To use additional services thereafter, membership registration (charged) for "ゼンリン地図＋ナビ" (ZENRIN Map + Navi) provided by ZENRIN DataCom is necessary.

If you register membership during the use of this software, you need not download the software again. This software can be used as it is.

Menu	Description	Up to 90 days	91st day and later
今いる場所 (Positioning)	• Use GPS to view the current location or mail the map. • You can leave your footstep of the current location and check the path you moved through or view everyone's footsteps.	Free	Free
周辺を調べる (Search around)	• Check information including shops (iD-accepted shop as well) or facilities around the current or specified location, and acquire coupons from gourmet information. • Check information of peripheral weather or parking lot.	Free	Free
地図を見る (View Map)	• Enter a free word, genre, address, or telephone number to view the map.	Free	Free
	• Check the map of the location stored in this software, the server, or phonebook or the location you previously searched. • Saving location into the server shares its information in PC.	Free	Charged
ナビをする (Navigation)	• Navigate to the destination by a means of all transportation including vehicle, walk and car. • Easy navigate to a home you marked.	Free	Charged
乗換案内 (Transfer guide)	• Check transfer and timetable of the train. • Check the train route by map and set the alarm before departure.	Free	Charged
おしゃべり検索 (Voice announce search)	• Check surrounding area information or view map simply through voice input.	Free	Free
	• Start the transfer guidance simply through voice input.	Free	Charged
設定／直感★ (Setting/ intuition ★)	• Tilt the FOMA terminal to move the 3D map or normal map.	Free	Free
	• Check the settings and usage of map view and navigation view.	Free	Free

● Screen and operation for the TOP menu of "地図アプリ"

- The screens shown here are for reference only and may look different from the actual screens.
- Upon the initial activation, the terms of service and precautions on use are displayed.

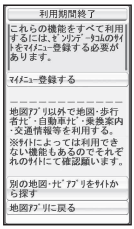


Top menu

Menu list appears on the front top screen. Closing menu returns to the last map accessed.

■**If 91 days elapse without membership registration**

Message appears to notify limitation of the available function and make inquiry for subscription when using this software first time on 91st day or later.
The similar messages are displayed when the additional service menu is selected.



* Subscribe on the website of "ゼンリン地図＋ナビ" (ZENRIN Map+Navi) using this software when you register as a member.

● Map view and operations

■**Map view**



©ZENRIN DataCom CO.,LTD. 2007

■**Key operations in map view**

Key	Action
(メニュー (Menu))	Displays menu screen.
●	Displays easy access menu
(拡縮 (Zoom))	A scale slide bar appears. Press ⓘ and ⓖ to zoom in and out, respectively. Press (閉じる) to set the scale and clear up the slide bar.
✥	Moves the map vertically and horizontally.
CLR	Closes menu screen or returns to the location accessed last.
＊	Rotates the map counterclockwise.
0	Sets the north of the map to the north.
＃	Rotates the map clockwise.

■**Key operations in the easy access menu**

Key	Action
ⓘ (周辺を調べる (Search around))	Checks information on the focused area of the map shown and the surrounding area as well.
ⓖ (ココへナビ (Here))	Searches for a route from a specified starting location to the center of the displayed map.
ⓜ (ココを送信 (Send here))	Fires off the URL of the displayed map.
ⓒ (ココを登録 (Save here))	Saves location information on the center of the map into this software, the server or phonebook. Saving location into the server enables you to share its information in PC as well.
● (地図へ (To map))	Exits the easy access menu.
1 (3D パノラマ (Panorama))	Displays the point that allows you to browse the 3D crossing or panorama image. When the point is selected, you can view the 3D crossing and panorama image.
2 (ビル テナント (Tenant))	Displays buildings in the area and allows you to check the tenants by clicking.

● Screen and operation for the search result for surrounding area information

- The screens shown here are for reference only and may look different from the actual screens.
- The screen and operation are provided when the search result is displayed with the map but not provided as a result of selection from the list.

■**Search result screen for surrounding area information**



©ZENRIN DataCom CO.,LTD. 2007

Continued on next page

■**Key operation in the search result screen for surrounding area information**

●If the cursor does not hit the shop, etc. as the search result, the easy access menu appears.

Key	Operation
●	Checks detail information of the search result.
◆	Moves the map vertically and horizontally.
5	Re-searches with the displayed map as the center.
4	Checks the previous search result.
6	Checks the next search result.
／(メニュー(Menu))	Displays menu screen.
(拡縮(Zoom))	The scale slide bar appears. Press ⓒ to display a wider range, or ⓘ to display the detailed map. Press (閉じる) to set the scale and clear up the slide bar.

● Searching for a route to guide (navigate) you to the destination with voice and image.

Set the start and destination to search for a route. Displays the route for walk, public transport, and cars. After the route is found, you will be guided (navigated) to the destination with sound and screen.

❶ TOP menu screen (p.252)▶“ナビをする”(Navigate)▶“ナビをする”(Navigate)▶“出発地”(Start)▶Set the starting location from the items below

現在地 (GPS) (Here (GPS))……Positions and sets the current location.

フリーワード検索 (By keyword)……Searches by keyword.

地図上で指定 (From map)……Sets the starting location with map.

TEL／〒検索 (By number/code)……Searches by phone number or zip code.

住所一覧から (From address list)……Selects an address.

ジャンルから (From genre)……Selects a genre.

履歴から (From history)……Selects from previously viewed maps.

登録地点から (From marked point)……Sets from the location information stored in this software, the server, or phonebook.

自宅 (Home)……Sets location information on your home.

出発地の確認 (Check)……Checks information on the starting location.

❷ “目的地” (Destination)▶Set the destination as in Step 1

❸ “時間指定” (Time specified)▶Select any item:

現時刻で指定 (Current time)……Checks the route using the current time.

出発時刻指定 (Start time)……Sets the start time to check the route.

到着時刻指定 (Arrival time)……Sets the arrival time to check the route.

終電を利用 (Last train)……Checks the route with the last train of the day.

❹ “条件設定” (Condition)▶Select any item▶“上記で設定” (Set above)

乗換条件 (Transfer)……Selects transfer selection criteria from “早い／安い／楽々” (Fast/Cheap/Easy).

徒歩ルート (Walking route)……Selects route selection criteria from “おまかせ／屋根多い／階段少ない” (Recommended/Many roofs/Less up-and-down).

特急利用 (Express)……Selects whether to use an express if the total distance of the route is 100km or shorter.

通常利用車種 (Vehicle type)……Selects the vehicle type to be used.

❺ “ルートを検索する” (Search route)

Using a variety of navigation “で検索” (Search by) and a car navigation “のみで検索” (Search only by car), you can search and find the route. As a search result, a route (up to 6 routes) are displayed. If there is another transfer route, the characteristics of the route are indicated.

Route Level	Meaning
早 (Fast)	Takes a short time
安 (Cheap)	Low cost
楽 (Easy)	Fewer transfer times
オススメ (Recommended)	Meets the above three conditions
有料 (Toll)	Uses toll road (car)
一般 (Open)	Uses open road (car)

■ **To register the route**

▶“ルートを登録” (Register route)

6 Select the route▶“ナビ・ルート確認” (Check navigated route)▶“ナビ／ナビ（省電力）” (Navi/Navi (power saving))

Starts navigation to the destination.

■ **To check the route**

▶“ルート確認” (Check route)

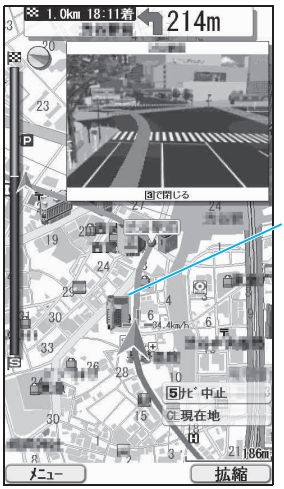
■ **To check the time table**

▶“時刻表” (Timetable)

● Screen and operation for Route (car)/ Navigation (car) view

- The screens shown here are for reference only and may look different from the actual screens.

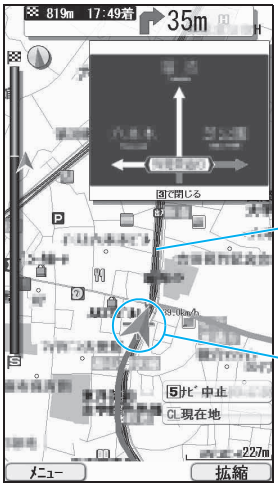
■ **Route (car) view**



Shows the route to the destination.

©ZENRIN DataCom CO.,LTD. 2007

■ **Navigation (car)**



Shows the route to the destination.

Shows the current location and travelling direction.

©ZENRIN DataCom CO.,LTD. 2007

■ **Key operations in navigation**

Key	Action
(メニュー (Menu))	Exits navigation and shows the top menu screen.
●	Shows easy access menu
(拡縮 (Zoom))	A scale slide bar appears. Press ⊙ and ⊙ to zoom in and out, respectively. Press (閉じる) to set the scale and clear up the slide bar.
✣	Moves on the map in all directions.
CLR	Returns to the current location.
2	Changes to the crossing mode.
5	Stops or starts navigation.
*	Rotates the map counterclockwise.
0	Sets the north of the map to the north.
#	Rotates the map clockwise.

■ **Key operations in the easy access menu screen**

Key	Action
⊙ (結果&設定 (Result & Set))	Displays the route search result (time, cost, etc.) or sets navigation
⊙ (経由地を設定 (Route set))	Searches the route to the destination adding up to three transit points.
⊙ (リルート (Reroute))	Refreshes the route search to the destination from the current location.

Continued on next page

Key	Action
● (地図へ (To map))	Exits the easy access menu.
1 (ルート消去 (Route clear))	Clears the route map displayed.
2 (📟 モード切替 (Mode change))	Changes to the crossing mode.

Using voice announce search

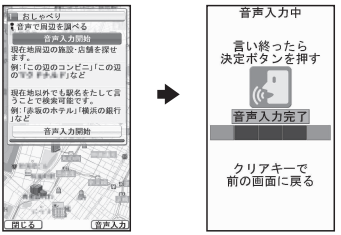
The voice announce menu enables voice input to simply check surrounding area information and transfer guidance, or view a map.

<Example: To use the voice announce search for surrounding area information>

1 TOP menu screen (p.252)▶“おしゃべり検索” (Voice announce search)▶“周辺を調べる” (Check surrounding area)

2 Voice input guidance screen▶“音声入力開始” (Voice input start)

After the voice input screen appears, the microphone screen appears. Enter the desired peripheral information through voice input.



3 Recognizes voice and displays the confirmation window.

■ **When recognition is incorrect**

▶“音声再入力” (re-entry)



Example: “**この辺のコンビニ**” (Nearest convenience store)

Using settings/help

1 TOP menu screen (p.252)▶“設定／直感★” (Setting/intuition)▶“設定・ヘルプ” (Setting/help)▶Select any item:

会員情報確認 (Membership information)……Checks your subscription state to “ゼンリン🏠地図+ナビ” (ZENRIN Map+Navi).

基本設定 (Basic settings)……Sets the options including the map view color and font size over software.

ナビ設定 (Navigation settings)……Sets the options including re-routing and volume of the voice guidance over navigation.

自宅設定 (Home)……Sets the home location.

履歴系クリア (Clear history)……Clears the history of a map or navigation.

使い方の説明／よくある質問／利用規約 (Usage/FAQ/Terms of service)……Shows usage, FAQ and terms of service.

Providing Current Location Information on Request

<Location request>

Set the location information to be provided when it is requested by a third party set for location request services such as DoCoMo “imadoco search”.

- To use a location request service, a subscription to the service provider may be required. The service charges may apply.
- To use a location request service, you need to set “Permit to send loc.” under “Request menu” (p.256) to “ON”. It may be required to make the setting for each service.
- To use a location request service, see the service provider or DoCoMo website.

NOTE

- This function is available only for Number A, regardless of the mode in 2in1. If the other party searches for Number B, the location information is not provided and the other party receives a notification indicating that the search is failed.

Accepting/rejecting location request

Set whether to provide the current location information when it is requested by the other party.

1 GPS settings screen (p.251)▶“Request menu”▶“Permit to send loc.”▶Enter your security code▶Select any item:

ON/OFF……Sets permission for providing location information on request.

Permission schedule*

Start time……Enters start time.

End time……Enters end time.

Repeat……Selects from “1 time/Daily/Select day”.

Term of validity……Sets “Start date” and “End date” under “Repeat”.

*: Operations when you set the period to accept location request→p.257

NOTE

- If Permit to send loc. is set to “ON”, location information may be sent to the requestor even if you do not operate the FOMA terminal.
- If the same time is set to Start time and End time, the following will apply:
  - When Term of validity and Repeat are not set: Location request is accepted for 24 hours from the set time.
  - When Term of validity is set: Location request is accepted until the end time of the day after “End date”.
  - When “Select day” is set under Repeat: Location request is accepted until the end time of the day after the specified day of the week.

Operations when you set the period to accept location request

<Example 1: Current time “2007/12/28 12:05”, Start time 14:00, End time 21:00>

Repeat	Term of validity	Period for location request
Setting OFF	—	2007/12/28 14:00 ～ 2007/12/28 21:00
Daily	Start date: 2008/1/3 End date: 2008/1/9	Every day from 2008/1/3 to 2008/1/9 14:00～21:00
	Start date: 2007/12/24 End date: 2008/1/9	Every day from 2007/12/28 to 2008/1/9 14:00～21:00
	OFF	Since 2007/12/28 Daily 14:00～21:00
Day of the week specified	Start date: 2008/1/3 End date: 2008/1/9	2008/1/3 to 2008/1/9 Specified day of the week 14:00～21:00
	Start date: 2007/12/24 End date: 2008/1/9	2007/12/28 to 2008/1/9 Specified day of the week 14:00～21:00
	OFF	Since 2007/12/28 Specified day of the week 14:00～21:00

<Example 2: Current time “2007/12/28 12:05”, Start time 10:00, End time 21:00>

Repeat	Term of validity	Period for location request
Setting OFF	—	2007/12/28 12:05 ～ 2007/12/28 21:00
Daily	Start date: 2008/1/3 End date: 2008/1/9	Every day from 2008/1/3 to 2008/1/9 10:00～21:00
	Start date: 2007/12/24 End date: 2008/1/9	Every day from 2007/12/28 to 2008/1/9 10:00 to 21:00 (12:05 to 21:00 on 12/28)
	OFF	Since 2007/12/28 Daily 10:00 to 21:00 (12:05 to 21:00 on 12/28)
Day of the week specified	Start date: 2008/1/3 End date: 2008/1/9	2008/1/3 to 2008/1/9 Specified day of the week 10:00～21:00
	Start date: 2007/12/24 End date: 2008/1/9	2007/12/28 to 2008/1/9 Specified day of the week 10:00 to 21:00 (12:05 to 21:00 on 12/28)
	OFF	Since 2007/12/28 Specified day of the week 10:00 to 21:00 (12:05 to 21:00 on 12/28)

<Example 3: Current time “2007/12/28 12:05”, Start time 14:00, End time 10:00>

Repeat	Term of validity	Period for location request
Setting OFF	—	2007/12/28 14:00 ～ 2007/12/29 10:00

Continued on next page

Repeat	Term of validity	Period for location request
Daily	Start date: 2008/1/3 End date: 2008/1/9	2008/1/3～ 2008/1/9 14:00 to next 10:00
	Start date: 2007/12/24 End date: 2008/1/9	2007/12/28～ 2008/1/9 14:00 to next 10:00
	OFF	Since 2007/12/28 14:00 to next 10:00
Day specified	Start date: 2008/1/3 End date: 2008/1/9	2008/1/3～ 2008/1/9 Specified day 14:00 to next 10:00
	Start date: 2007/12/24 End date: 2008/1/9	2007/12/28～ 2008/1/9 Specified day 14:00 to next 10:00
	OFF	Since 2007/12/28 Specified day 14:00 to next 10:00

Setting Positioning mode for Request menu

1 GPS settings screen (p.251)▶“Request menu”▶“Positioning mode”▶Select any item:

Standard mode……Gives priority to positioning fast.

Quality mode……Positions slowly. The result is more accurate than in Standard mode. The accuracy may not be high depending on the radio wave conditions, etc.

Setting the host

* There is normally no need to change this setting.

Set the host accessed for “Service settings”.

1 GPS settings screen (p.251)▶“Request menu”▶“Host selection”▶Select a host

■ To add a host

▶Highlight “<Not recorded>”▶ (Edit)▶Enter your security code▶Enter “Host name” and “Host address”▶ (Finish)

■ To edit a host

▶Highlight an item to edit▶ (Edit)▶Enter your security code▶Enter “Host name” and “Host address”▶ (Finish)

■ To delete a host

▶Highlight an item to delete▶ (FUNC)▶“Delete”▶Enter your security code▶“YES”

Making Service settings

Access a host set in “Setting the host” (p.258) and make the settings for location request.

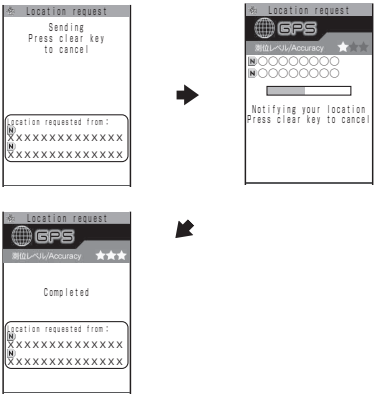
1 GPS settings screen (p.251)▶“Request menu”▶“Service settings”▶Make the settings

For how to make the settings, contact the service provider (only in Japanese).

● If location information is requested

If location information is requested by the other party, the current location is positioned and the information is provided to the party.

- If the settings for each service are set to confirm every time before sending, a confirmation message appears.



NOTE

- Location information may not reach the service provided depending on the radio wave status, etc.
- The destination may not be displayed on the screen.

NOTE

- In Public mode (Driving mode), the following will apply:
  - If the settings for each service are set to confirm every time before sending, location information is not provided on request.
  - If the settings for each service are set to accept location request, the ring tone, vibrator and illumination do not work but the screen appears and location information is provided.
- When the party using imadoco kantan search requests for location information
  - Each time a request is made, the location request confirmation window appears. If "YES" is selected, the rough positioning result is immediately reported to the party. After "YES" is selected, the GPS positioning screen appears. After positioning, the high-accuracy positioning result is reported.
  - Even though the location request is interrupted after "YES" is selected, the rough positioning result is immediately reported to the party. In this case, it is recorded in the location history but location information is not displayed.
  - For imadoco kantan search, see DoCoMo website.

Notifying the Current Location Information

<Location notification>

Show your current location information to service providers, etc. supporting location notification.

- Charges apply to use of the location notification function.
- To use a service supporting location notification, a subscription to the service provider may be required. The service charges may apply.
- To use the location notification function, see the service provider or DoCoMo website.

NOTE

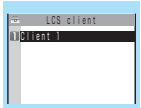
- This function notifies the location information by Number A, regardless of the mode in 2in1.

Registering a party to notify of location information <Register LCS client>

- Up to 5 clients can be stored.
- No client is stored at the time of purchase.

1 GPS settings screen (p.251)▶"Notification menu"▶"Register LCS client"▶"LCS client"

The "LCS client" screen appears.



LCS client

Function menu➡p.259

2 (New)▶Select any item

Service client name*……Enters a client name.

Service client ID……Enters an ID specified by the service provider.

Phone number*……Enters a client phone number.

Notify at dialing……Selects from "Yes/No/Confirm each calling" to set how to notify a registered client of location information when you make a voice/videophone call to the client. If your caller ID is not notified, location information is not notified.

*: The item can be quoted from a phonebook entry. ▶ch (FUNC)▶Refer to phonebook▶Select a phonebook entry

3 (Finish)

FUNC LCS client screen (p.259)

New……"Registering a party to notify of location information".→p.259

Edit……Edits the LCS client.

Add desktop icon→p.115

Copy to microSD……Copies the LCS client to a microSD memory card. "About multiple-choice"→p.38

iC transmission→p.309

Send Ir data→p.307

iC trans. all→p.310

Send all Ir data→p.308

Add to phonebook……Adds the name and phone number of the LCS client to the phonebook.

Delete……Selects the deleting method from "Delete this/Delete selected/Delete all". "About multiple-choice"→p.38

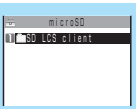
● Managing clients on a microSD memory card

You can check the contents of "LCS client" copied from the FOMA terminal to a microSD memory card as well as performing various functions in the function menu.

Continued on next page

1 GPS settings screen (p.251)▶“Notification menu”▶“Register LCS client”▶“microSD”

The “microSD client folder” screen appears.

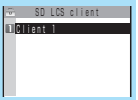


microSD client folder

Function menu➡p.260

2 Select a folder

The “microSD client list” screen appears.

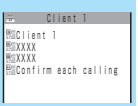


microSD client detail

Function menu➡p.260

3 Select a client

The “microSD client detail” screen appears.



microSD client detail

Function menu➡p.260

FUNC microSD client folder screen (p.260)

Add folder……Enters a folder name to add a folder.

Edit folder name……Edits a folder name.

Delete folder……Deletes a folder.

FUNC microSD client list screen (p.260)/microSD client detail screen (p.260)

Move*1……Selects from “Move this/Move selected/Move all”, then selects a destination folder and moves the client to another folder. “About multiple-choice”→p.38

Copy……Selects from “Copy this/Copy selected/Copy all”, then selects a destination folder and copies the client to another folder. “About multiple-choice”→p.38

Copy to phone*2……Selects a client then copies to the phone. “About multiple-choice”→p.38

microSD info*3……Displays the amounts of available space and data stored on the microSD memory card.

Delete……Selects the deleting method from “Delete this/Delete selected/Delete all”. “About multiple-choice”→p.38

*1: Only one client is moved on the client detail screen.
*2: Only one client is copied on the client detail screen.
*3: It is unavailable in Continuous mode.

Selecting a party to notify of location information <Location notification>

1 GPS menu screen (p.250)▶“Location notification”▶Select a client

The current location is positioned and the information is notified.

■ **To enter a client directly**

▶“Enter client ID”▶Enter a client ID▶“Set”

NOTE

- Even if the latitude and longitude are stored in “Location history” (p.260), the information may not have reached the other party depending on the radio wave status.
- The location information may be reported to the other party depending on the timing even though the canceling operation is performed while the current location is being notified.

Setting Positioning mode for Location notification

1 GPS settings screen (p.251)▶“Notification menu”▶“Positioning mode”▶Select any item:

Standard mode……Gives priority to positioning fast.

Quality mode……Positions slowly. The result is more accurate than in Standard mode. The accuracy may not be high depending on the radio wave conditions, etc.

Viewing Location History <Location history>

You can display the Location history such as current position, location request and LCS client.

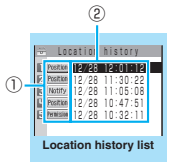
- Up to 50 location logs can be recorded. When the log exceeds the maximum, logs are overwritten from the oldest one.

1 GPS menu screen (p.250)▶“Location history”

“Location history list” screen appears.

- Select an item from “Location history list” screen, and “Location history detail” screen appears.

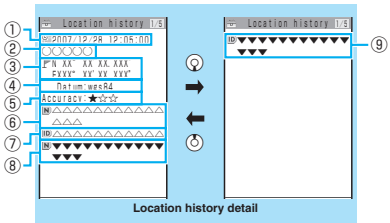
■Guide to the Location history list screen



Function menu➡p.261

① The function name
Position : Position location
Notify : Location notification
Permission : Location request
② The date and time

■Guide to the Location history detail screen



Function menu➡p.261

① The date and time
② The function name
③ The latitude (N) and longitude (E) of the location (described in degrees, minutes and seconds)
④ wgs84 (World Geodetic System datum*)
⑤ The positioning accuracy
⑥ The client name of the notification or the recipient name of the request
⑦ The client ID of the notification or the recipient ID of the request
⑧ The requestor name of the request
⑨ The requestor ID of the request

*: A reference point used for describing a point on the earths surface, in latitude and longitude

NOTE

- On a location request, the name of the other party who sends the location request is displayed, by searching from the phonebook for each mode of 2in1.
- The displayed accuracy is only an approximation. It may be different from the actual error.
- If positioning fails, the log cannot be used for any functions other than “Dialing requestor”, “Mail to requestor” and “Delete”.
- Even if the latitude and longitude are displayed in a location history log, the information may not have reached the recipient or requestor depending on the radio wave status.
- The latitude, longitude, and positioning level recorded in the location history may be different from those which were sent to the requestor or client depending on the radio wave condition, etc.

Location history list screen FUNC (p.261)/Location history detail screen (p.261)

Read a Map……Accesses the i-mode site and displays the peripheral map, etc. using the location information.

Run i-αppli……Displays a list of GPS-compatible i-αppli programs.

Paste to mail*……Pastes the location information URL into an i-mode message to compose a new message.

Dialing requestor……Makes a call if the requestor ID is a phone number. “Phone To function”→p.178

Mail to requestor*……Displays the New mail screen with the mail address entered if the requestor ID is a mail address.

Add to phonebook……Adds location information to the phonebook.

Attach to image……Selects an image, then adds location information to the image.

Delete……Selects the deleting method from “Delete this/Delete selected/Delete all”. “About multiple-choice”→p.38

*: When 2in1 is in B mode, this function is not available.

Using Location Information on a Site, ToruCa, etc.

Select a link that can be used to send location information or a link with location information added on a site, ToruCa, etc., and you can send or use the location information.

● Sending location information

1 Site screen (p.167)▶Select a link that can be used to send location information▶Select any item:

From position loc.……Obtains and sends the current location information.

From loc. history……Sends location information from a log.

From phonebook……Searches for a phonebook entry and sends location information stored in the entry.

● Using location information

1 Site screen (p.167)▶Select a link with location information added▶Select any item:

Run i-αppli……Displays a list of GPS-compatible i-αppli programs (that can use location information).

Read a Map……Accesses the i-mode site and displays the peripheral map, etc. using the location information.

Paste to mail*……Pastes the location information URL into an i-mode message to compose a new message.

*: When 2in1 is in B mode, this function is not available.

Full Browser

Displaying Website Designed for PC ..... Full Browser 264
Setting the Full Browser ..... Viewer type settings/Standard type setting 268
Cookie 269
Referer 270

Home URL, bookmark and other data registered in Full Browser are not available for i-mode. Furthermore, the settings performed in Full Browser are invalid for i-mode.

Displaying Website Designed for PC <Full Browser>

You can enjoy viewing websites designed for PC with the Full Browser function. Some websites incompatible with i-mode can be displayed correctly.

- The following two types are available for Full Browser.
  - Viewer type: Use the function for zooming in/out a website page or perform the toolbar operations. →p.265
  - Standard type: Save images or use the multi window function. →p.265
- Some websites may not be displayed or be displayed incorrectly.
- Note that the communication charge can become expensive if large volumes of data is acquired by viewing websites containing many image data or downloading files. For details on how to use, refer to “Mobile Phone Users Guide [i-mode] FOMA version”.
- Use Standard type to save an image from an Internet website. →p.267
- You can view a website composed of frames*1. You can also select a frame to display it with Standard type. →p.266
- When you display a website with frames with Viewer type, the page may not be displayed properly. The icon indicating that an SSL page is currently displayed may not appear if some frames in the page are not compatible with SSL.
- You can view SSL/TLS*2-compliant websites in Full Browser.

*1 : The “frame” used in this chapter refers to each of separated sections that constitute a website page and differs from that used for framed photography.

*2 : SSL and TSL are authentication/encryption technology to protect your privacy in data transmissions. Data sent to or received from a SSL/TSL page is encrypted to prevent hackers from eavesdropping data, site spoofing or altering, thus making credit card transactions and the sending of personal information (e.g. address) safer.

Displaying a website

1 i▶“Full Browser”▶“Viewer type” or “Standard type”

■ **“Add desktop icon” for Viewer type**

You can select “Add desktop icon” by highlighting “Viewer type” and pressing ch (FUNC).

2 Select any item:

Home[*1]……Displays a website with the URL registered as home URL.

Bookmark……Displays the website registered as bookmark.

Last URL[*2]……Displays the website you visited last. →p.268

Enter URL[*1]……Enters a URL to display the website.

Viewer type settings[*2] →p.268

URL History[*3] →p.169

One-touch mlt win.[*3]……Connects to the website registered for One-touch mlt win.. →p.174

Standard type setting[*3] →p.268

*1 : You can make settings or operate Viewer type/Standard type separately.

*2 : Available only for Viewer type.

*3 : Available only for Standard type.

■ **When the confirmation message asking whether to use Full Browser appears**

The default setting of “Access setting” (setting whether to use Full Browser) is “OFF”.

When “OFF” is set for “Access setting”, the confirmation message asking whether to use Full Browser appears. Read the given notes carefully and perform the setting.

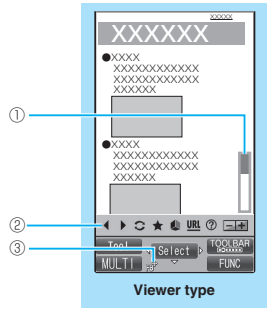
When you select “Yes” on the confirmation message, “ON” is set for “Access setting” (p.268) and the setting will be retained.

NOTE

- You cannot save a page displayed in Full Browser as a screen memo.
- Websites displayed in Full Browser cannot be viewed in i-mode.
- The Full Browser does not support Flash movies and PDF.
- You cannot view the home URL site in Full Browser even when pressing 4 (マナー) on the standby screen.
- Be sure to insert the FOMA card (UIM) before setting “Access setting”.
- When “Access setting” is set to “ON” and the FOMA card (UIM) is replaced, the “Access setting” changes to “OFF”.

Full Browser screen

Guide to the Viewer type screen



Viewer type

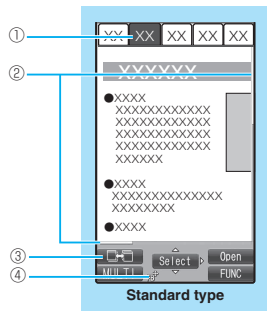
Function menu➡p.267

①View position
Current position in the displayed website→p.267

② ◀ ▶ ↻ ★ URL ? Toolbar

③ FB or iMODE
Appears during connection to the Internet with Full Browser.
"iMODE" displayed in original layout

Guide to the Standard type screen



Standard type

Function menu➡p.267

①Tab
- Title of the displayed website (if there is no title, the URL is displayed)
- As many tabs as the number of websites displayed simultaneously.

②Scroll bar
Current position of the displayed website
(The Scroll bar is not displayed at mobile layout)

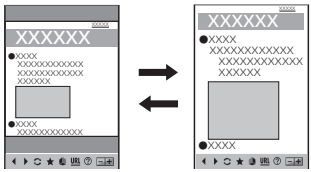
③ Change window icon
Pressing ✉ ( ) switches pages when multiple websites are open.

④ FB or iMODE
Appears during connection to the Internet with Full Browser. ("FB" is displayed in the mobile layout.)

Layout

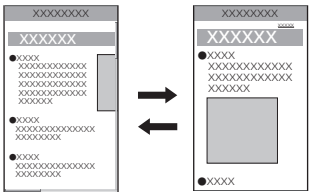
You can switch the display mode between Original layout and Mobile layout for each of the Viewer type and Standard type screens.

<Viewer type>



Original Mobile

<Standard type>



Original Mobile

■Original layout
Viewer type: Shows the site page on the window fit size to the FOMA terminal. When zooming in, you can scroll up/down and right/left to view the website. When zooming out, you can view the whole website page at a time.
Standard type: Websites are displayed in the similar size to the display of 800 dots wide x 600 dots high on a PC. You can view the area not displayed on the screen by scrolling vertically and horizontally.

■Mobile layout
Websites are displayed in the width of a FOMA terminal display. Only vertical scrolling is required for viewing websites.

Continued on next page

■**Switching the display mode**

The display mode switches between Original layout and Mobile layout each time you select “Change disp. mode” from the function menu.

You can also use the toolbar in Viewer type.

- The default mode can be set in “Display Mode setting” (p.268) of “Viewer type settings” or “Standard type setting”.
- The display mode is retained when Full Browser is exit. The same display mode is applied when each type is activated next time.

Operations on the Full Browser screen

● Scrolling

Key	Description
●	Scrolls to the direction that the key is pressed. Holding the key scrolls the screen continuously in the same direction.
▼ (📷) ▲ (マナー)	Scrolls up or down by screens.
▲ (マナー) (1 second or longer) ▼ (📷) (1 second or longer)	

● Guide to the toolbar

The toolbar is available only for Viewer type screen.

(Tool): Switches view/close of the toolbar

(TOOLBAR): Switches the website operation and toolbar operation.

Icon	Description
◀	Returns to the previous page that has been acquired in cache.
▶	Goes to the next page that has been acquired in cache.
🔄	You can refresh the displayed page.
★	Displays the Bookmark folder list screen.
	Switches the display mode.
URL	Enters a URL to display a website. Use ● to select characters, etc. to enter.
?	Displays a description of an operation assigned to a key.
−+	Zooms in/out the display size of a site.

● Useful keys for the Full Browser screen

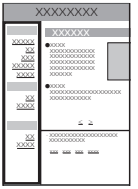
Key	Description
1	Zooms out * Zoom-out of character size in Mobile layout for Standard type.
2 *1	“Displaying a desired portion of the entire page”→p.268
3	Zooms in * Zoom-in of character size in Mobile layout for Standard type.
4	Returns to the previous page that has been acquired in cache.
5	Displays the Bookmark folder list screen.
6	Goes to the next page that has been acquired in cache.
7 *2	Displays or clears the entire image (view position) of the enlarged website on the lower right side of the screen.
9 *3	Displays or releases on the landscape screen (returns to the portrait screen).
0	Displays a description of an operation assigned to a key.

*1 : Available only in Original layout for Standard type.
*2 : Available only for Viewer type.
*3 : Not available for mobile layout of Standard type.

● Displaying a page composed of frames

For standard type, you can view websites composed of frames that are designed for PC.

1 Standard type screen (p.265)▶Display a website composed of frames



2 Select a frame with ⊕ then ● (Select)
The selected frame appears.



■ **To return to the all frames screen**
▶CLR

NOTE
- For a website including several frames, all the frames may not be displayed (resulting in frames without characters or images).

● Uploading images

You can upload JPEG or GIF images stored in your FOMA terminal to websites depending on websites.
- Procedure for uploading images depends on websites. Follow the procedure described on the website you visit.

NOTE
- You cannot upload multiple images that exceed 80K bytes in total or data in which the selected image and other data exceed 100K bytes in total.
- Some websites may not support uploading function.
- You cannot upload images that are not allowed to be output to a device outside the FOMA terminal.

FUNC Viewer type screen (p.265)/ Standard type screen (p.265)

History back……Goes back one page from the current page.

History forward……Returns to the page that had been displayed before performing "History back".

Add bookmark……Adds the website to the bookmark. Up to 100 websites including the Viewer type and Standard type can be added.

Bookmark……Opens the Bookmark folder list screen. 3 (including secret folders) to 12 Bookmark folders can be created.

Enter URL……Enters a URL to display the website.

Change side mode ⇔ **Release side mode***4……Displays the website in landscape screen or release the landscape screen (return to the portrait screen).

Change disp. mode……Switches between "Original layout" and "Mobile layout".

View pos. display ⇔ **Clear view pos.***1……Displays the entire image of the enlarged website on the lower right side of the screen. The currently displayed position is indicated in red so that you can check where you are viewing on the website page.

Home

> **Set as home URL**……Registers the URL of the displayed website as the home URL. Only one URL can be stored.
>
> **Display home**……Displays a website registered as home URL.

Replay*2……Plays an animation in the displayed website from the beginning.

Reload……Refreshes the displayed website.

Change CHR code*2……Changes the character code to redisplay a website that is not displayed correctly. New communication may be established.

Site info

> **Title**……Displays the title of the displayed website.
>
> **URL**……Displays the URL of the displayed website.
>
> **Certificate**……Displays the SSL/TLS certificate details when the displayed website supports SSL/TLS.

Set image disp.*2 (default: ON)……Set whether to display images. When "OFF" is set, "" appears instead of images.

Referer setting*2 (default: Valid)→p.270

Cookie settings*2 (default: Valid)→p.269

Delete cookies*2→p.270

Help……Displays a description of an operation assigned to a key.

Save image*3……Saves the image of the page being displayed.

Quick Search*3→p.339

URL History*3→p.169

Zoom ⇔ **Change font size***3

> **Zoom**……This function is displayed for Original layout. Selects the zoom factor of display size from "250%/200%/150%/100%/60%/Page size fitting". "Displaying a desired portion of the entire page" →p.268
>
> **Change font size**……This function is displayed for Mobile layout. Selects the character size from "Small/Standard/Large/X-large".

Continued on next page

Window[*3]

Open new window……"Using multi window" →p.171

Close window……Closes the displayed window.

Change window……Switches windows when multiple websites are open.

All frames[*3]……Returns from the selected frame to All frames.

Compose message[*3]……Pastes the URL of the displayed website to compose an i-mode message.

Add desktop icon[*3]→p.115

Browser settings[*3]……For the Standard type, this menu contains "Replay/Set image disp./Referer setting/Cookie settings/Delete cookies/Change CHR code".

*1 : Available only for Viewer type.
*2 : The Standard type lays out in "Browser settings".
*3 : Available only for Standard type.
*4 : Not available for mobile layout of Standard type.

NOTE

<Save image>

- PNG and BMP images are automatically saved in an "OUDXXX" (XXX are numerals) folder under the "OTHER" folder of the microSD memory card.

Displaying a desired portion of the entire page

You can view a desired portion of the entire website in Original layout mode for Standard type.

1 Standard type screen (p.265)▶ ch (FUNC)▶"Zoom"▶"Page size fitting"

The entire page is displayed with a zoom factor of 60%.

2 Use ⊕ to move the frame▶● (Select)

The selected portion appears. It is displayed in the same size as before "Page size fitting" was selected.

Reconnecting to the last displayed page <Last URL>

Each time a page is displayed, the URL being displayed is saved as "Last URL". When the Full Browser is exited, the URL of the page that was displayed last is saves as "Last URL". You can reconnect to the website displayed for the last time using the Last URL.

1 ✉▶"Full Browser"▶"Viewer type"▶"Last URL"▶"YES"

NOTE

- The current URL is not saved to Last URL if:
  - You accessed the page from Bookmark under the Secret folder.

Setting the Full Browser <Viewer type settings/Standard type setting>

- Changes in the Viewer type setting or Standard type setting are separately retained.

1 ✉▶"Full Browser"▶"Viewer type" or "Standard type"▶"Viewer type settings" or "Standard type setting"▶Select any item:

Access setting (default: No)……Sets whether to use "Viewer type" or "Standard type".

Home URL (Default: Google (http://www.google.co.jp))……Sets the home URL.

Scroll……Selects the scroll speed from "High speed/Low speed" for Viewer type. (Default: High speed)
For standard type, select any item:

- **Speed** (default: High speed)……Selects the scrolling speed from High speed/Low speed.
- **During scroll in focus** (default: OFF)……Sets whether to highlight the linked pages while scrolling.

Set image disp. (default: ON)……Set whether to display images. When "OFF" is set, "🖼" appears instead of images.

Cookie settings (default: Valid)→p.269

Delete cookies→p.270

Referer setting (default: Send)→p.270

Display mode setting……Select from "Original layout/Mobile layout" for Viewer type. (Default: Original layout)
For standard type, select any item:

Original layout (default: 100%)……Selects the screen display from “250%/200%/150%/100%/60%”.

Mobile layout (default: Standard)……Selects a character size from “Small/Standard/Large/X-large”.

Script setting (default: Valid)……Sets whether to enable JavaScript*1 when a website is displayed. Some websites may be displayed incorrectly unless “Script setting” is set to “Valid”.

Check Viewer type set.*2……Checks the “Viewer type settings”.

Reset last URL*2……Clears the stored last URL.

Reset Viewer type set.*2……Resets “Viewer type settings” to default.

Window open guard*3 (default: Invalid)……Sets whether to open a new window automatically with JavaScript*1. Setting to “Valid” does not open a window automatically.

Open tab setting*3 (default: Open at the back side)……Sets whether to open a new window by changing the display (foreground) or leaving the original display (background).

mlt win. setting*3……Registers/releases activation at a time. →p.174

Check Std. type set.*3……Checks the “Standard type setting”.

Reset Std. type set.*3……Resets “Standard type setting” to default.

*1 : JavaScript is a programming language that can be included on web pages to make them more interactive.
*2 : Available only for Viewer type.
*3 : Available only for Standard type.

Cookie

Using Cookie* enables you to effectively access the websites that you have seen once.

*: Cookie is the mechanism for temporarily saving the date you accessed the website, number of accesses and your other information. The information is sent from server, saved temporarily in your FOMA terminal and used for contents service.
If Cookie is sent, the information such as date you accessed the website and number of accesses is also sent to the site. Please note that NTT DoCoMo is not responsible for any reveal of your information to third parties because of sending Cookie.
However, some websites and contents services require you to validate the Cookie settings for their correct display and use.

- Viewer type and Standard type can be set individually.

Setting Cookie

1 i-αx ▶“Full Browser”▶“Viewer type” or “Standard type”▶“Viewer type settings” or “Standard type setting”▶“Cookie settings”▶Select any item:

Valid……Always enables Cookie.
No confirmation is made when Cookie is sent or received.

Invalid……Always disables Cookie.

Notify(sending)……Enables you to choose whether to send Cookie every time you connect to a page. No confirmation is made when Cookie is received and the information is saved in your FOMA terminal.

Notify(receiving)……Enables you to choose whether to receive Cookie every time you connect to a page. No confirmation is made when Cookie is sent.

Notify(send/recv.)……Enables you to choose whether to send or receive Cookie every time you connect to a page.

NOTE

- Cookies are deleted in the ascending order of no use when the number and size of Cookies exceed the maximum limit.
- Resetting the settings of Viewer type or Standard type deletes Cookies for each type respectively.

Deleting Cookie

You can delete the Cookies for Viewer type or Standard type stored in your FOMA terminal.

1 i▶**“Full Browser”▶“Viewer type” or “Standard type”▶“Viewer type settings” or “Standard type setting”▶“Delete cookies”▶Enter your security code▶“YES”**

All the Cookies for Viewer type or Standard type stored in your FOMA terminal are deleted. (You cannot delete them separately.)

Referer

You can set whether to send Referer*.

*: Referer is information of source link. Sending Referer transfers information such as the page from which you access the site.
Please note that NTT DoCoMo is not responsible for any reveal of your information to third parties because of sending Referer.
However, you may not access the linked pages in some websites unless Referer is sent.

- Viewer type and Standard type can be set individually.

Setting Referer

1 i▶**“Full Browser”▶“Viewer type” or “Standard type”▶“Viewer type settings” or “Standard type setting”▶“Referer setting”▶Select any item:**

Send	Sends Referer.
Unsend	Does not send Referer.
Notify	Confirms whether to send Referer.

Data Display/Edit/Management

Data Box 272

Mastering still images

Displaying the Stored Images ..... My picture 274
Edit Still Images ..... Edit image 280

Mastering movies

Play movies/i-motion ..... i-motion 282
Edit Movies ..... Edit i-motion 284

Mastering Chara-den

What is Chara-den? 285
Saving Chara-den character as Image or Movie ..... Rec. Chara-den 286

Mastering melodies

Playing Melodies ..... Melody 288

Mastering Kisekae Tool

Managing the Kisekae Tool ..... Kisekae Tool 290

Mastering Memory Cards

microSD Memory Card 291
Displaying the Data in the microSD Memory Card 296
Exchanging the Data Between the microSD Memory Card and FOMA Terminal 298
Moving the Copyrighted Data among the microSD Memory Card and FOMA Terminal ..... Movable contents 300
Managing the microSD Memory Card 301
Using the FOMA Terminal as a microSD Reader/Writer 301

Mastering various data

Working with Folders and Files 302
Managing the Phonebook and SMS on the FOMA Card (UIM) ..... UIM operation 304

Transferring data with Infrared data exchange/iC exchange/cable connection

Infrared Data Exchange/iC Exchange 305
Forwarding Data with Infrared Data Exchange ..... Infrared data exchange 307
Forwarding Data with iC Exchange ..... iC exchange 309
Forwarding Data by Cable Connection ..... OBEX 310
Barring Phonebook Image Forwarding ..... Forwarding image 311
Using the Infrared Remote Control Function 311

Mastering PDF/Document viewer

Viewing PDF Data ..... My document 311
Viewing Documents ..... Document viewer 313
PDF Data Screen/Document view Screen 314

Printing still images

Printing Stored Images ..... PictBridge print 317

Data Box

In Data box, still images and movies shot using the FOMA terminals camera or data downloaded from mails or websites are saved.

■**Folder contents**

- Following items and folders are prepared and you can categorize the data into the folders depending on the file type.

Folder	Contents
My picture	
Inbox	You can select this folder to save still images shot using the FOMA terminal's camera, as well as images retrieved from websites, mail messages or the barcode reader. Images copied from the microSD memory card or forwarded by infrared data exchange are automatically saved to this folder.
Camera	You can select this folder to save same images as Inbox. Images shot with Chara-den shooting are automatically saved to this folder.
Decomail-picture	Images for Decomail use are pre-installed. Can be selected as well as Inbox to save images.
Decorate PI*1	Decorate PI are pre-installed. Decorate PI downloaded from website, attached to mails or copied from the microSD memory card are saved.
Auto Decomail	Images downloaded from sites for Auto Deco-mail are categorized into emotions.
Pre-installed	Standby screens, wakeup images and animations are pre-installed.
Secret*2	Save the images you want to prevent others from viewing.
User-created folder*3	You can select this folder to save same images as Inbox.
Original animation	Animations created from continuous shooting and original animations are stored.

Folder		Contents
micro SD	Picture	Shot still images, images copied from the FOMA terminal, and JPEG or GIF images saved from a PC to the microSD memory card are saved.
	Decorate PI*1	Decorate PI copied from the FOMA terminal or stored on the microSD memory card from a PC are saved.
	Image Box	GIF animations and SWF-format Flash images copied from the FOMA terminal, and JPEG images, GIF animations and SWF-format Flash images stored on the microSD memory card from a PC, are saved.
Frame		Frames are pre-installed. Frames retrieved from websites or from ToruCa are automatically saved to this folder.
Stamp		Marker stamps are pre-installed. Stamps retrieved from websites and ToruCa are automatically saved to this folder.
Music		
Playlist		Playlists created on the FOMA terminal are saved.
Inbox		You can select this folder to save music data.
SD-Audio		Music data transferred from a PC to the microSD memory card is saved.
WMA		
Movable contents		Music data moved from the FOMA terminal to the microSD memory card is saved.
Pre-installed		Music data is pre-installed.
User-created folder*3		You can select this folder to save same the music data as Inbox.
Music&Video Channel		
Delivery Program		Saved programs are displayed.
User-created folder*3		These folders can be selected for saving programs moved from delivery programs.

Folder		Contents
i-motion		
Inbox		You can select this folder to save movies shot using the FOMA terminals camera, movies and i-motion retrieved from websites or mails. Movies or i-motion copied or moved from the microSD memory card or forwarded by infrared data exchange are automatically saved to this folder.
Camera		You can select this folder to save same movies and i-motion as Inbox. Movies shot with Chara-den shooting are automatically saved to this folder.
Pre-installed		i-motion content is pre-installed.
Secret*2		Save the movies and i-motion you want to prevent others from viewing.
User-created folder*3		You can select this folder to save same movies and i-motion as Inbox.
micro SD	SD Video*4	Movies you shot, movies/i-motion copied from the FOMA terminal or movies stored on the microSD memory card from a PC are saved.
	Multi media*5	
Movable contents		Movie and i-motion data moved from the FOMA terminal to the microSD memory card is saved.
Playlist		This folder is used for playing a movie playlist. →p.284
Melody		
Inbox		You can select this folder to save images retrieved from sites, mail or barcode reader. Melodies copied from the microSD memory card or forwarded by infrared data exchange are automatically saved to this folder.
Pre-installed		Melodies and sound effects are pre-installed.
User-created folder*3		You can select this folder to save same melodies as Inbox.
Voice announce		Voice recorded using the voice announce function is automatically saved to this folder.
microSD		Melodies copied from the FOMA terminal or stored on the microSD memory card from a PC are saved.
Playlist		This folder is used for playing a melody playlist. →p.289

Folder	Contents
My document	
Inbox	PDF data is pre-installed. You can select this folder to save PDF data retrieved from websites or mails. PDF files copied from the microSD memory card or forwarded by infrared data exchange are automatically saved to this folder.
User-created folder*3	You can select this folder to save the PDF data as Inbox.
microSD	PDF data copied from the FOMA terminal or stored on the microSD memory card from a PC are saved.
Chara-den	
Chara-den data is pre-installed. Chara-den retrieved from websites are automatically saved to this folder.	
Kisekae Tool	
Packages are pre-installed. Packages retrieved from websites are automatically saved to this folder.	
Document viewer	
microSD	Documents retrieved from mails or stored on the microSD memory card from a PC are saved.

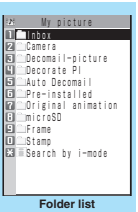
*1 : You can save only Decorate PI (20 dots wide × 20 dots high, no file restriction) to this folder.
*2 : Displayed only in Secret or Secret data only mode.
*3 : You can create up to 20 folders with “Add folder”. Enter the folder name when using “Add folder”. You can change the folder name afterwards using “Edit folder name”.
*4 : Movies/i-motion with video are saved.
*5 : Video or i-motion consisting of sound without image (including AAC-format music data) are saved.

Displaying the Stored Images
<My picture>

Still images shot using the FOMA terminals camera or downloaded from websites can be displayed in My picture of the Data box.

1 MENU/MULTI ▶“Data Box”▶“My picture”

The “Folder list” screen appears.
Contents of the My picture folder→p.272



Folder list

Function menu➡p.302

2 Select a folder

The “Image list screen (Picture list)” appears.
Image list screen→p.274

■ **To use i-mode to search for images**
▶“Search by i-mode”



Image list

Function menu➡p.277

3 Select an image

The “My picture” screen appears.
Use ◎ to display the previous or next image.

■ **When switching between Normal mode and Fullscreen**
▶ (Normal/Full)
In Fullscreen, screen display is oriented to landscape or portrait to match the size of the image.


My picture

Function menu➡p.277

■ **To zoom in an image**
▶● ( )
The image is zoomed in/out by one step each time you press (+)/ (-).
If the image does not fit in the screen, use ✣ to scroll the image.
To return to the original zoom, press ● (Back).

NOTE

- Following images cannot be displayed:
  - An image which exceeds 2M bytes
  - An image whose width or height exceeds 2,592 dots or total number of dots exceeds 592 × 1,944 dots
  - JPEG or GIF images with total number of dots exceeding 854 × 480
- While displaying in the large size, you cannot change to the previous or next image by using ◎ or display the function menu.
- Original animation, GIF-formatted animation or Flash movie cannot be displayed in the large size.
- Flash movies are played at the volume set in “Phone” in the “Ring volume” settings (if “Step” is set, Flash movies are played at the “Level 2” volume).

Guide to the Picture list and Title list

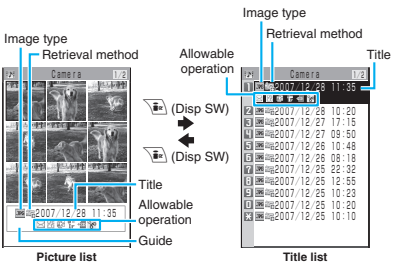
Setting the Image list display mode
<Viewer settings>

1 MENU/MULTI ▶“Settings”▶“Display”▶“Viewer settings”▶Select any item

Picture (default)……Changes to the picture list.

Title……Changes to the title list.

Guide to the Picture list/Title list



■**Picture**
Nine images are displayed on the screen.
* Original animations are always listed by title name.

■**Title**
Eleven images are displayed in the title list on the screen.

■Image type icons

icon	Description
	JPEG format image
	GIF format image
	GIF (IFM) frame, marker stamp
	SWF Flash movie
	MP4 movie/i-motion
(Blue note)	MP4 i-motion with sound effect
(Orange note)	ASF i-motion
	MP4 i-motion with playback restriction
	MP4 format i-motion with sound effect and playback restriction
	Partially downloaded i-motion
(Green note)	i-motion that can be moved to the FOMA terminal (Phone)
(Blue note)	Sound effected i-motion that can be moved to the FOMA terminal (Phone)
	i-motion that is prohibited to move to the FOMA terminal (Phone)
	AFD Chara-den
	Image to which FOMA card operational restriction applies

: Data that are file-restricted or not allowed to be attached to mails or output from the FOMA terminal

: i-motion with playback restriction (" " turns to " " when the playback count, period or limit expires)

: Movable only when the FOMA card (UIM) being used was also used to save the i-motion

: Movable only when the model and FOMA card (UIM) being used were also used to save the i-motion

■Retrieval method icons

icon	Description
No icon	Pre-installed data
	Data downloaded from site, mail, ToruCa or retrieved from i-αppli
	Data you shot with camera
	Data acquired via Infrared data exchange, iC exchange, the microSD memory card, Bar code reader or PC
	Downloaded frames and marker stamps
	Chara-den shots
	Data clipped from a PDF document

■Settings icon

icon	Description
QVGA	QVGA-size movie/i-motion data. Appears only in folders for i-motion.
VGA	VGA-size movie/i-motion data. Appears only in folders for i-motion.
	Can be attached to i-mode mail (2M bytes or smaller)
	Can be inserted into Deco-mail
	Can be set to the screen*
	Can be specified as Ring tone*
	Contains location information
	Can be transferred via Infrared data exchange and iC transmission*
	Can be copied to the microSD memory card*
	Can be edited*
	i-motion data that can be moved to the microSD memory card*
	Larger than 10M bytes (10M bytes is not included). Only displayed in the microSD folder.

*: Does not appear for the microSD folder.

: Movable only when the FOMA card (UIM) being used was also used to save the i-motion

: Movable only when the model and FOMA card (UIM) being used were also used to save the i-motion

Continued on next page

■File format

Folder	File format
My picture	
Inbox	JPEG, GIF, SWF
Camera	
Decomail-picture	
Decorate PI	JPEG, GIF
Auto Decomail	
Pre-installed	JPEG, SWF
Secret	JPEG, GIF, SWF
User-created folder	
Original animation	—
microSD	JPEG, GIF, SWF
Frame	IFM
Stamp	
Music	
Playlist	—
Inbox	3GP
SD-Audio	SA1
WMA	WMA
Movable contents	SB2
Pre-installed	3GP
User-created folder	
Music&Video Channel	
Delivery Program	3GP, MP4
User-created folder	
i-motion	
Inbox	MP4
Camera	
Pre-installed	
Secret	
User-created folder	
microSD	MP4, ASF (ASF is for playback only)
Movable content	SB1
Playlist	—
Melody	
Inbox	SMF, MFi
Pre-installed	MFi
User-created folder	SMF, MFi
Voice announce	—
microSD	SMF, MFi
Playlist	—
My document	
Inbox	PDF
User-created folder	
microSD	
Chara-den	
—	AFD
Kisekae Tool	
—	UCM, UCP
Document viewer	
microSD	Word, Excel, PowerPoint

■Titles and file names

- Still images or movies you shot are automatically titled and named.

Title : yyyy/mm/dd hh:mm (Year/Month/Day Time*)
File name : yyyymmddhhmmxxx
Date and time*
(3-digit number is added in the xxx part for still image)

*: The time when the still image is saved or when the movie shooting is finished is used. Note that the time when the movie is saved is used if the “Auto save set” is set to “OFF”.

- Original titles are assigned to downloaded i-motion and Chara-den characters.
- The file names and titles are the same for downloaded images.
- The title is displayed on the Image list screen of the FOMA terminal.
- The file name is displayed when the data is transmitted to PC.
- If the file name contains an inappropriate character, the file is automatically renamed to “imagexxx” or “moviexxx”.

■File restriction

This setting specifies whether you allow the receiver’s FOMA terminal to redistribute (attach or forward) the image or movie you shot or melody when attaching it to a mail. When set to “File unrestricted”, the receiver can redistribute the file freely. However, when set to “File restricted”, the receiver cannot redistribute the file.

- You can change the file restriction setting after saving the image or movie.→pp.277, 283, 289

FUNC Image list screen (p.274)/My picture screen (p.274)

- The available functions vary depending on the folders, which means that the items listed in the function menu are different.

Edit image→p.280

Edit title[*1]……Edits the title of the image.
You can enter up to 9 double-byte or 18 single-byte characters (you can enter up to 18 double-byte or 36 single-byte characters for the microSD memory card).

Display image[*1]……Displays the image (displays the My picture screen).

Set as display……Sets the image for screens such as the standby screen.
★ appears next to the selected item.
"Changing the Display"→p.107
"Setting the image sent during videophone calls"→p.74

Image info……The file name of the image, the date and time it was saved, and other information are displayed.

Location info

- **Read a Map**……Accesses an i-mode site via location information contained in the selected image and displays the peripheral map, etc.
- **Paste to mail**[*2]……Pastes location information contained in the image into a mail message.
- **Run i-αppli**……Displays a list of GPS-compatible i-αppli programs.
- **Add to phonebook**……Adds location information contained in the image to a phonebook entry.
- **From position loc.**……Acquires your current location information and adds it to the image.
- **From loc. history**……Adds the location information from a log to the image.
- **Loc. info detail**……Checks location information contained in the image.
- **Delete loc. info**……Deletes location information contained in the image.

Compose message[*2]……Composes an i-mode mail by selecting either attaching the still image or inserting it in the message.
"Changing image size to compose an i-mode mail or Deco-mail"→ p.278

iC transmission→p.309

Send Ir data, IrSS→p.307

Set image disp.[*3]…… Sets the image display size.

- **Normal** (default)……Matches display size to image size.
- **Fit in display**……Enlarges the movie to the display size, regardless of the image size.

Normal⇔**Fullscreen**[*3]……Set the image display method.
If Full sreen is used, the display switches to landscape or portrait orientation, to match the dimensions of the image. In Normal mode, the display is portrait.

Add desktop icon→p.115

Copy to microSD→p.298

Add image to PB……Saves the image to the phonebook.→p.89

Edit file name[*1]……Edits the file name of the image.
You can enter up to 36 single-byte alphanumeric characters and symbols ("-" and "_"only).

File restriction[*1]……Specifies whether to allow the redistribution of the saved image.→p.276

Move[*1]……Selects from "Move this/Move selected/Move all" and moves the image to the other folder you select.
"About multiple-choice"→p.38

Memory info[*1]……Shows information on image storage capacity etc. (Secret storage capacity is not included in the capacity of the FOMA terminal).

Sort[*1]……Sorts images in a selected criteria.

Title name⇔**Picture**[*1]……Switches between Title name list and Picture list.

Composite image[*1]→p.279

Retry[*3]……Replays the displayed animation from the beginning.

PictBridge print→p.317

Store in Center[*1]→p.278

Delete[*1]……Selects the deleting method from "Delete this/Delete selected/Delete all". "About multiple-choice"→p.38

Delete this[*3]……Deletes one image.

Keep in secret⇔**Put out**[*1*4]……"Preventing Others from Viewing Data"→p.129

Copy to phone[*5]→p.299

DPOF setting[*5]→p.318

Copy[*1*5]……"Copying the data to the different folder in the microSD memory card"→p.300

*1 : Available only with the Image list screen.
*2 : When 2in1 is in B mode, this function is not available.
*3 : Available only with the My picture screen.
*4 : This only only be used in Secret or Secret data only mode.
*5 : Used only for images stored on the microSD memory card.

Continued on next page

NOTE

<Edit title>
- You may not be able to edit the title when there is not enough space on the microSD memory card.
- You cannot edit the titles of the pre-installed images.

<Set as display>
- You can set the images in Inbox, Camera or User-created folder to the following screens:
  - Standby screen, wake-up display
  - Dialing/calling screens of voice or videophone calls
  - Mail sending/receiving/checking/received result
  - Answer hold/on hold/substitute image/record message/preparing message/voice memo for videophone calls
- You cannot specify the following images to the screens:
  - An image whose width or height is larger than 854 dots
  - An image whose file size exceeds 100K bytes (except for standby and wake-up display)

<Normal>/<Fullscreen>
- GIF animation/SWF Flash movie displays do not change when the modes change.

<Add image to PB>
- You can add an image whose size is 100K bytes or smaller and whose width or height is 854 dots or smaller.
- You cannot add images other than JPEG or GIF.

<Edit file name>
- You can edit the names of the following images:
  - Pre-installed images
  - A still image of Chara-den character with “Rec. File Restriction”
  - Images that is prohibited to be output from your FOMA terminal
- You cannot use single-byte spaces for file names.

<File restriction>
- You cannot restrict an image if it is:
  - Neither JPEG nor GIF
  - A still image of Chara-den character with “Rec. File Restriction”

<Sort>
- “By source” sorts the movies or i-motion in the following order.
  ①Downloaded images or images acquired from i-αppli or ToruCa
  ②Still images shot by the camera
  ③Images retrieved using Infrared data exchange, iC exchange or from microSD memory card, etc.
  ④Chara-den shots
  ⑤Images clipped out of PDF documents
  ⑥Pre-installed images

● Storing images at the Data Security Center

You can store images, etc. stored in the FOMA terminal at the Data Security Center.
- Data Security Service is a pay service you need to apply for. If you have not subscribed to the service and try to connect to the Data Security Center, the notification screen appears.

1 Image list screen (p.274)▶ch (FUNC)▶“Store in Center”▶Use ⊕ to select an image▶✉ (Finish)
You can select up to 10 images.

2 Enter your security code▶“YES”
The FOMA terminal connects to the Data Security Center to start saving the images.

3 ✉ (Finish)

NOTE
- You cannot save images when the file size for a image exceeds 100K bytes, when it is prohibited to be output from the FOMA terminal, pre-installed Decomail-picture or Decorate PI.

■To restore images

The image data stored at the Data Security Center can be stored on the FOMA terminal from the site of the Data Security Center. For details on how to use, refer to “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode] FOMA version.

● Changing image size to compose an i-mode mail or Deco-mail

You can attach the saved still image to an i-mode mail message or insert it in a Deco-mail message.

1 Image list screen (p.274)▶ch (FUNC)▶“Compose message”▶Select any item:

Attach image……Attaches the image that is not larger than 240 dots wide × 320 dots high or 320 dots wide × 240 dots high. Select any of the following item to attach an image that is larger than the image described above.

Attach mail……Attaches the image without changing the image size.

QVGA scale down……Attaches image by reducing its image size to 240 dots wide × 320 dots high or 320 dots wide × 240 dots high or smaller without changing its aspect ratio.

Insert image……Inserts the image that is smaller than 96 dots wide × 128 dots high or 128 dots wide × 96 dots high and its file size is 90K bytes or less to the Deco-mail message. Select any of the following item to attach an image that is larger than the image described above.

Insert mail……Inserts image by reducing its file size to 90K bytes or less without changing the image size.

SubQCIF scale down……Inserts image by reducing its image size to 96 dots wide × 128 dots high or 128 dots wide × 96 dots high without changing its aspect ratio. Also, changes the file size if its file size is larger than the maximum.

2 Check the edited image▶● (Set)▶Compose message

■ **When you select Attach mail/Insert mail**
There is no checking operation of the image.
"Composing and Sending i-mode Mail"→p.188
"Composing Deco-mail"→p.190

● Making a composite image from 4 images

- You cannot set images if the width or height is larger than 352 dots wide × 288 dots high, except the following sizes:
  - VGA (640 × 480), VGA Vert. (480 × 640)
  - Screen (240 × 427)
  - CIF Vert. (288 × 352)
  - QVGA Vert. (240 × 320)

1 Image list screen (p.274)▶ch (FUNC)▶"Composite image"

2 Select the position▶Select a folder▶Select an image▶Repeat the step to select 4 images

■ **To cancel the specified image**
▶Select the image to cancel▶"Release this" on the folder selection screen

3 (Finish)▶● (Save)

■ **To retry creating the composite image**
▶ (Cancel)

NOTE

- You can check the framed image by pressing (Play) on the selection screen.

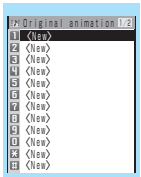
Creating animations <Original animation>

You can create an animated cartoon made of up to 20 frames using stored images.

- You can specify JPEG images which are 854 dots wide × 854 dots high or smaller as an original animation.
- You can create up to 20 animations.

1 MENU▶"Data Box"▶"My picture"▶"Original animation"

The "Original animation list" screen appears.



Original animation list

Function menu➡p.279

2 "<New>"

3 Select a frame▶Select a folder▶Select an image▶Repeat the step to specify images

■ **To cancel the specified image**
▶Select the frame to cancel▶"Release this" on the folder selection screen

4 (Finish)

FUNC Original animation list screen (p.279)

Edit title……Edits the title of the original animation. You can enter up to 9 double-byte or 18 single-byte characters.

Org. animation……Newly creates Original animation when "<New>" is highlighted.
Edits the original animation when the existing one is highlighted.

Display image……Plays the original animation (Displays the original animation playback screen).

Set as display……Selects the item to which the original animation is set.

Image info……Checks the destination to save the original animation set in "Set as display".
If there is no setting, "No set" is displayed.

Release animation……Cancels the original animation.

Playing the original animation

1 Original animation list screen (p.279)▶ Select an original animation

The “Original animation playback” screen appears. If there are two original animations or more, use ⊙ to play the previous or next animation.



Original animation playback

Function menu➡p.280

FUNC Original animation playback screen (p.280)

Set as display……Selects the item to which the image is set.

Set image disp.……Set how to display images that are smaller than the image display area.

- **Normal** (default)……Display at real size.
- **Fit in display**……Enlarge to display at screen size.

Retry……Replay the animation from the beginning.

Edit Still Images <Edit image>

You can edit the still images you shot, etc.

- The followings are the contents and size you can edit:

Editing contents	Image size (before editing)
Frame • Add a frame to the image. →p.281	Up to 854 dots wide × 480 dots high*1 Up to 480 dots wide × 854 dots high*1
Retouch • Add effects to the image, such as sepia tone. →p.281	Up to 854 dots wide × 480 dots high Up to 480 dots wide × 854 dots high
Marker stamp • Add hearts or other marker stamps to the image. →p.281	2,592 dots wide × 1,944 dots high*2 1,944 dots wide × 2,592 dots high*2
Character stamp • Add stamps of input text to the image. →p.282	2,304 dots wide × 1,728 dots high*2 1,728 dots wide × 2,304 dots high*2
Trim away • Crop the image to the size you prefer. →p.282	2,048 dots wide × 1,536 dots high*2 1,536 dots wide × 2,048 dots high*2
Brightness • Adjust the brightness of the image. →p.281	1,616 dots wide × 1,212 dots high*2 1,212 dots wide × 1,616 dots high*2
Rotate • Rotate the image 90° left or right, or 180°. →p.281	1,600 dots wide × 1,200 dots high*2 1,200 dots wide × 1,600 dots high*2
Change size • Resize the image. →p.281	1,280 dots wide × 960 dots high*2 960 dots wide × 1,280 dots high*2 Up to 854 dots wide × 480 dots high*3 Up to 480 dots wide × 854 dots high*3
Correct backlight • Clarify parts of the image that are dark due to backlight. →p.281	Up to 854 dots wide × 480 dots high Up to 480 dots wide × 854 dots high
Refresh skin tone • Correct the skin-tone areas for a more beautiful image. →p.281	

*1 : Images other than the following cannot be framed: 480 dots wide × 854 dots high, 854 dots wide × 480 dots high, 480 dots wide × 640 dots high, 640 dots wide × 480 dots high, 352 dots wide × 288 dots high, 288 dots wide × 352 dots high, 240 dots wide × 320 dots high, 320 dots wide × 240 dots high, 240 dots wide × 427 dots high, 427 dots wide × 240 dots high, 176 dots wide × 144 dots high, 144 dots wide × 176 dots high, 128 dots wide × 96 dots high, 96 dots wide × 128 dots high.

*2 : Editable after reducing to 640 dots wide × 480 dots high or 480 dots wide × 640 dots high.
*3 : Some editing methods may not be performed due to the image size (size before editing).

- When “Edit image” is selected in the photo mode checking screen function menu, only the “Frame”, “Retouch”, “Refresh skin tone” and “Correct backlight” are available.
- Only images with “ ” can be edited.

1 My picture screen (p.274)▶ch (FUNC)▶“Edit image”▶Select any item

Frame→p.281

Retouch……Apply effects to the image.

- **Sharp**……Give the image a sharper feel.
- **Blur**……Give the image a softer feel.
- **Sepia**……Sepia tone the image.
- **Emboss**……Apply a raised relief effect to the image.
- **Negative**……Convert to a negative image.
- **Horizontal flip**……Reflect the image, left to right.

Marker stamp→p.281

Character stamp→p.282

Trim away→p.282

Brightness……Use ⊕ to adjust brightness through 5 steps, -2~+/-0~+2.

Rotate……Select the angle of rotation of the image, from 90° right, 90° left and 180°.

Change size……Select the changed size of the image. The image is enlarged or reduced to fit in the selected size keeping the aspect ratio. Numbers in parentheses displayed in the menu is the size in dots (width × height).

Correct backlight……Clarify parts of the image that are dark due to backlight.

Refresh skin tone……Correct the skin-tone areas for a more beautiful image.

Compose message*1 *2……Resize the image to create i-mode mail or Deco-mail→p.278

Save*1……Saves the edited image.

*1 : This function is available after editing an image.
*2 : When 2in1 is in B mode, this function is not available.

2 Check the edited image▶● (Set)

3 ● (Save)▶“YES” or “NO”

Selecting “YES” overwrites the original image. Selecting “NO” saves a new image to the folder where the original is stored.

NOTE

- Editing repeatedly may impair the image quality or increase the file size.

● Adding frames

- You can use the downloaded frames in addition to the pre-installed ones.

1 My picture screen (p.274)▶ch (FUNC)▶“Edit image”▶“Frame”▶Select a frame

The image is displayed in the selected frame. Use ⊕ to change to another frame.

■ **To rotate the frame 180°**

▶✉ (Rotate)

■ **To cancel the selected frame**

▶ch (FUNC)▶“Cancel”

NOTE

- If the size of the image that has been trimmed or resized is the same as that of the frame, the image can be framed.

● Pasting marker stamps

- You can use the downloaded marker stamps in addition to the pre-installed ones.
- You can rotate, enlarge or reduce marker stamps.

1 My picture screen (p.274)▶ch (FUNC)▶“Edit image”▶“Marker stamp”▶Select Marker stamp

■ **To edit a marker stamp**

▶ch (FUNC)▶Select any item:

90° to right……Rotates 90° clockwise.

90° to left……Rotates 90° counterclockwise.

180°……Rotates 180°.

Scale up……Doubles the size.

Scale down……Reduces the size to half.

2 Adjust the marker stamp position with ⊕▶● (Put)

■ **To paste another marker stamp**

▶✉ (Add)▶Repeat steps 1 to 2

Continued on next page

NOTE

- You can only use downloaded stamps of 240 dots wide × 240 dots high or smaller. The stamps larger than the above size are handled as GIF images.
- You can repeatedly enlarge or reduce a marker stamp.

Pasting character stamps

- You can enter up to 1 to 15 double-byte or 3 to 30 single-byte characters as a stamp. The number of characters that can be entered differs depending on the image size and character size.
- You can change the character stamp color, font and size.

1 My picture screen (p.274)▶ch (FUNC)▶"Edit image"▶"Character stamp"▶Enter text

■ **To edit a character stamp**

▶ch (FUNC)▶Select any item:

Character input……Enters the text.

Character color……Sets the color.
To use another color palette, press ✉ (Change).

Font type……Selects "Gothic" or "Ming-cho".

Font size……Selects the size from "Enlargement size/Standard size/Reduction size".

2 Adjust the character stamp position with ⊕▶● (Put)

NOTE

- The font thickness is specified in the "Font" setting.

Trimming

1 My picture screen (p.274)▶ch (FUNC)▶"Edit image"▶"Trim away"▶Select the image size for trimming

Numbers in parentheses displayed in the menu is the size in dots (width × height).

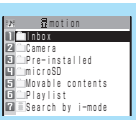
2 Adjust the position to trim with ⊕▶● (Set)

Play movies/i-motion <i-motion>

The music player (p.325) plays recorded movies, i-motion content acquired from i-mode sites or Internet pages, etc.

1 MENU▶"Data Box"▶"i-motion"

The "Folder list" screen appears.
i-motion folder→p.273



Folder list

Function menu➡p.302

2 Select a folder

The "Movie list (Preview)" screen appears.
Movie list screen→p.283

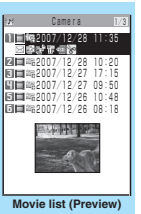
■ **To use i-mode to search for i-motion**

▶"Search by i-mode"

■ **For partly downloaded i-motion**

A confirmation message about downloading the remaining data appears.
You cannot play the i-motion unless you download the rest of the data.

- Selecting "YES" starts downloading of the rest of the data.
- Selecting "NO" redisplays the Movie list screen.



Movie list (Preview)

Function menu➡p.283

3 Select a movie

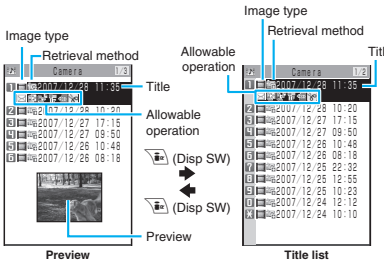
The "Music player" screen appears and the movie playback starts.
"Guide to music player screen"→p.328
"Operations on the music player screen"→p.329

NOTE

- A movie may not be properly played if it was not shot with FOMA N905iμ.
- You can start playback from the point the playback was stopped last time when you receive a call during playback or when the playback is stopped by CLR or ☎. However, the playback may not start the precise point the playback was stopped last time.
- For some i-motions, you can also select a chapter to play.

Viewing the Preview display/title list

- Image type icons, acquisition method icons, item icons which can be set→p.275
- Titles and file names→p.276



■Preview screen

The screen displays 6 movies listed by title and a preview image from the selected movie under the title list.

Preview images are not displayed for movies with no video, such as a sound only i-motion (an i-motion with no video, such as a singer's voice).

■Title list

Eleven images are displayed in the title list on the screen.

FUNC Movie List screen (p.282)

- The usable functions vary according to the selected folder, so the items displayed in the function menu also vary.

Edit i-motion→p.284

Edit title……Edit the title of the movie. You can enter up to 9 double-byte or 18 single-byte characters (You can enter up to 18 double-byte or 36 single-byte characters for the microSD memory card).

Select ring tone……Set the movie sound as a ring tone.→p.100

Stand-by display……Set the movie as a stand-by display.

i-motion info……Displays the i-motion file name, replay restrictions, whether movement to microSD is possible, etc.

Compose message[*1]……Attach a movie to compose an i-mode mail.→p.188

iC transmission→p.309

Send Ir data→p.307

Copy to microSD→p.298

Move to microSD→p.300

Move……Select Move this/Move selected/Move all, then select the destination folder to move the movie to another folder. About multiple-choice→p.38

Add desktop icon→p.115

Edit file name……Edit the file name of the movie. You can enter up to 36 single-byte alphanumeric characters and symbols ("-" and "_" only).

File restriction……Set whether a saved movie can be redistributed.→p.276

Reset title……Reset a changed title to the original.

Memory info……Display the movie storage capacity etc. (FOMA terminal capacity does not include secret capacity).

Sort……Sort the videos according to the selected terms.

List setting……Select how to display the list of movies. The displayed menu differs on the FOMA terminal and microSD memory card.

Delete……Select from Delete this/Delete selected/Delete all. About multiple-choice→p.38

Keep in secret⇔Put out[*2]……Make various data non-displayable→p.129

Copy to phone[*3]→p.299

Move to phone[*4]→p.300

Copy[*3]……Copying the data to the different folder in the microSD memory card→p.300

*1 : This function is unavailable when 2in1 mode is in B mode.
*2 : It can only be used when in Secret mode or Secret data only mode.
*3 : Used only for movies stored on the microSD memory card.
*4 : Only usable for movies stored on the movable contents folder.

NOTE

<Select ring tone>

- You can only set a movie or i-motion with the Set as ring tone "Available". Refer to the "i-motion info" to check whether it is "Available" or "Unavailable".
- If a movie larger than VGA (640 × 480) is set as a ring tone, an i-motion image does not appear on the screen.
- You cannot set the following movie or i-motion to the ring tone:
  - A movie or i-motion without audio
  - i-motion with the playback restriction

<Stand-by display>

- You cannot set the movie to the standby screen when:
  - The movie or i-motion is voice only
  - i-motion with Replay restriction
  - The size of the movie is larger than QVGA (320 × 240)

Continued on next page

NOTE

<Memory info>
- The displayed amount of data is only an approximation.

<Sort>
- "By source" sorts the movies or i-motion in the following order. Movies or i-motion with the same retrieval icon are arranged in the order in which they were displayed before you selected "By source".
  ①Downloaded i-motion or i-motion retrieved from i-αppli, etc.
  ②Movies shot by camera
  ③Movies retrieved using Infrared data exchange, iC exchange or from microSD memory card, etc.
  ④Chara-den shots

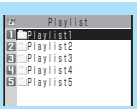
Playing movies in your preferred order <Movie playlist playback>

You can select and store up to 25 movies or i-motion to play multiple movies in sequence.
- There are 5 Playlist folders.

1 Folder list screen (p.282)▶Select "Playlist"

The "Playlist" screen appears.

2 Highlight the playlist folder to register▶ch (FUNC)▶"Edit playlist"



Playlist

Function menu➡p.284

3 Select the number to register▶Select the folder▶Select the movie▶Repeat the operation to register

■ **To release the added movie**
▶Select the movie to cancel▶"Release this" on the Folder Selection screen▶"YES"

4 (Finish)

The i-motion Playlist folder list screen appears. Selecting the Playlist folder starts the playback of the playlist and the stored movie is played repeatedly.

FUNC Playlist Folder List screen (p.284)

Edit playlist……Start editing a playlist. You can edit a playlist which is already set.

Release playlist……Delete the registered movies and cancel the playlist.

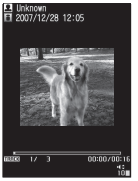
Edit Movies <Edit i-motion>

- Only movies with "✂" can be edited.

<Example: Movie list screen for Inbox, Camera or User-created folders>

1 Movie List screen (p.282)▶ch (FUNC)▶"Edit i-motion"

The "Edit i-motion" screen appears.



Edit i-motion

2 ch (FUNC)▶Select any item

Trim i-motion→p.284

Compose message*……Composes an i-mode mail with a movie attached.

File restriction……Specifies whether to allow the redistribution of the trimmed movie with "Trim i-motion".→p.276

*: When 2in1 is in B mode, this function is not available.

NOTE
- You cannot use the Multitask function while editing movies.
- Editing may impair the movie quality.

Trimming a part of the movie

1 Edit i-motion screen (p.284)▶ch (FUNC)▶"Trim i-motion"

2 "Any size" or "500KB"▶✉ (Start)

Trimming starts.

■ **To start trimming at a scene mid-way through the movie**
▶● (Play)▶● (Stop) when it is the first frame you want to trim▶✉ (Start)

3 Press ● (Stop) when it is the last frame you want to trim▶✉ (End)

■ **When "500KB" is selected**
Trimming stops automatically when the 500kB limit, or the end of the movie, is reached.

4 The clipped movie is played

Play stops automatically at the end.

5 ● (Set)▶● (Save)▶“YES”

NOTE

- A movie whose size is larger than QCIF (176 × 144) cannot be trimmed away.

What is Chara-den?

You can send a cartoon character to your party’s FOMA terminal in a videophone call instead of the image from your own FOMA terminal camera.

Displaying Chara-den

- Downloading “Chara-den” characters→p.177

1 MENU/MOJI ▶“Data Box”▶“Chara-den”

The “Chara-den list” screen appears.



Chara-den list

Function menu➡p.286

2 **Select Chara-den**

The “Chara-den player” screen appears.



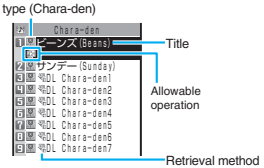
Chara-den player

Function menu➡p.286

Guide to the Chara-den list

- The icons for image types, retrieval methods and the available settings→p.275
- Titles and file names→p.276

Image type (Chara-den)



Using Chara-den characters

This function allows you to play a Chara-den character by selecting from pre-installed actions.

1 **Chara-den player screen (p.285)▶ Using Chara-den characters**

■ **To check the action list**

▶✳

The actions displayed in the list differ depending on the type of character.

The number such as “1” or “#1” displayed on the right of the action indicates that pressing that key during the Chara-den playback will perform the corresponding action.

<To check the action details>

▶Highlight the action▶✉ (Detail)▶Check the details▶ch (Exit)

■ **To change the Action mode**

▶✉ (Parts/Whole)

This command switches to Parts action mode when  is displayed and to Whole action mode when  is displayed.

 (Whole): The action mode in which the entire Chara-den character moves to express feelings.

 (Parts): The action mode in which the parts of the Chara-den character (head, hands, feet, etc.) move.

■ **To use the keypad to select actions during the Chara-den playback**

The keypad keys that can be pressed to make the displayed character perform actions are as follows:

“Whole” : 1 digit number on the right side of the action name (1 to 9) or #1 to #9

“Parts” : 2 digit number on the right side of the action name (11 to 99)

<Example: Select “怒る” (Anger) in Whole action mode>

* The Chara-den is displayed normally (not in mirror).

✉ (Whole) ➡  4 ➡ 

Continued on next page

<Example: Select Face zoom up in Parts action mode>



■ To have the character's mouth synchronize your voice

Some Chara-den characters can move the mouth synchronizing your voice as if it is talking. If you use the Function menu or press the key to make the character perform an action, the character performs the selected action rather than moving its mouth.

FUNC Chara-den list screen (p.285)/ Chara-den player screen (p.285)

Chara-den call……Makes a videophone call with the Chara-den character as the substitute image.
Use ⊛ to search for a phone number from the Received calls, Redial or phonebook on the Chara-den dialing screen.

Substitute image……Sets the Chara-den character as the substitute image for videophone calls.

Rec. Chara-den →p.286

Edit title*1……Edits the title of the Chara-den.
You can enter up to 18 double-byte or 36 single-byte characters.

Switch Chara-den*2……Selects the Chara-den to display.

Action List*2……Displays the action list.

Change Action*2……Changes the Action mode.

Chara-den info……The file name of the Chara-den, the date and time it was saved, and other information are displayed.

Memory info*1……Displays the Chara-den storage capacity.

Add desktop icon →p.115

Set image disp.

Normal……Displays the image in the actual size.

Fit in display (default)……Enlarges the image to the display size.

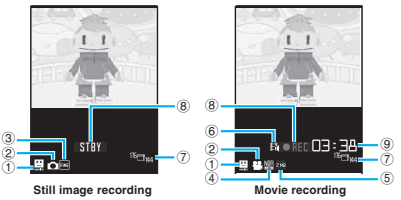
Reset title*1……Resets the title to the default.

Delete*1……Selects the deleting method from "Delete this/ Delete selected/Delete all". "About multiple-choice" →p.38

*1 : Available only with the Chara-den list screen.
*2 : Available only with the Chara-den player screen.

Saving Chara-den character as Image or Movie <Rec. Chara-den>

■ Guide to the Rec. Chara-den screen



①Currently selected action mode
: Whole
: Parts
②Shooting mode
: Photo mode
: Movie mode
③Setting of "Storage setting" (Image)
: Normal
: Fine
: Super fine
④Setting of "Storage setting" (Movie)
: Normal
: Prefer img qual
: Prefer time
: Prefer motion spd
⑤Setting of "File size setting"
: 500KB
: 2MB
⑥Setting of "Movie type set"
: Video + voice
: Video
⑦Indicates the size selected in "Select size"
: QCIF (176 × 144)
: Small (117 × 96)
⑧Shooting status
: Stand-by
: Shooting
⑨Remaining shooting time in the "min:sec" format (not displayed until shooting starts)

Shooting still images

1 Chara-den player screen (p.285)▶ ch (FUNC)▶"Rec. Chara-den"

The "Rec. Chara-den (image)" screen appears.



Rec. Chara-den (image)

Function menu➡p.287

2 Perform an action▶ ⦿ (Record)

Operation of actions→p.285

■ **To perform a Parts action**

▶✉ (Parts)

■ **To compose an i-mode message with a shot image attached/inserted**

▶✉▶"Attach image" or "Insert image"

■ **To retake the shot**

▶CLR

3 ⦿ (Save)

The shot image is saved to the Camera folder under My picture.

Shooting movies

1 Rec. Chara-den (image) screen (p.287)▶ ch (FUNC)▶"Movie mode"

The "Rec. Chara-den (movie)" screen appears.



Rec. Chara-den (movie)

Function menu➡p.287

2 ⦿ (Record)▶ Perform an action

Operation of actions→p.285

■ **To perform a Parts action**

▶✉ (Parts)

3 ⦿ (Stop)

■ **To compose an i-mode message with the recorded movie attached**

▶✉

■ **To check the movie**

▶ch (FUNC)▶"Check w/ playing"

■ **To retake the shot**

▶CLR

4 ⦿ (Save)

The movie is saved to the Camera folder under i-motion.

NOTE

- The image size (QCIF (176 × 144)) cannot be changed.

NOTE

- Performing an action during shooting may record keypad sounds.

FUNC Rec. Chara-den screen (p.287)

Switch Chara-den……Changes a Chara-den character to shoot.

Substitute image……Sets the Chara-den character as the substitute image for videophone calls.

Action List……Displays the Action list.

Change Action……Changes the Action mode.

Set image disp.

- **Normal**……Displays the image in the actual size.
- **Fit in display** (default)……Enlarges the image to the display size.

Movie mode⇔Photo mode……Switches between Movie mode and Photo mode.

Select size[*1]……Sets the size of character to shoot. Numbers in parentheses displayed in the menu is the size in dots (width × height).

Movie type set[*2]

- **Video + voice** (default)……Shoots a movie including sound.
- **Video**……Shoots a movie without any voice.

Storage setting[*2]

- **Normal** (default)……Shoots a movie with the normal quality and duration.
- **Prefer img qual**……Select this option to shoot a movie with higher quality. The available shooting time is shorter than for Normal.
- **Prefer time**……Select this option to shoot a long movie. The quality is not as high as for Normal.
- **Prefer motion spd**……Select this option to shoot a movie with smoother motion.

Storage setting[*1]……Selects the quality for image shooting from "Normal/Fine/Super Fine".

File size setting[*2]

- **500KB**……You can shoot up to 500K bytes.
- **2MB** (default)……You can shoot up to 2M bytes.

*1 : Available only in the Photo mode.
*2 : Available only in the Movie mode.

NOTE

<Switch Chara-den>

- Changing a Chara-den character sets the action mode to Whole.

Playing Melodies <Melody>

You can play the pre-installed melodies, sound effects or the melodies downloaded from the sites in the “Melody” folder of Data box.

1 MENU/UNLOCK ▶“Data Box”▶“Melody”

The “Folder list” screen appears.
Contents in the Melody folder→p.273



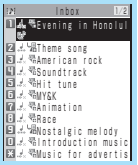
Folder list

Function menu➡p.302

2 Select a folder

The “Melody list” screen appears.
Guide to the melody list →p.288

■ **To use i-mode to search for melodies**
▶“Search by i-mode”



Melody list

Function menu➡p.289

3 Select a melody

The “Melody” screen appears and the melody playback begins.
“Operation during the melody playback”→p.289



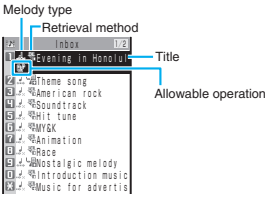
Melody

Function menu➡p.289

NOTE

- Melodies are played at the volume set in “Phone” under the “Ring volume” settings (played at “Level 2” when “Silent” or “Step” is set).

Guide to the Melody list



■Melody type icon

icon	Icon description
	MFi/SMF melody

: Data that are file-restricted or not allowed to be attached to mails or output from the FOMA terminal

■Retrieval method icons

icon	Icon description
No icon	Pre-installed melody
	Melody downloaded from sites
	Melody retrieved through the Infrared data exchange, iC exchange, microSD memory card, Bar code reader or PC

■Settings icon

icon	Icon description
	Can be attached to i-mode mail (2M bytes or smaller)
	Can be specified as Ring tone
	Can be transmitted via infrared data exchange or iC exchange
	Can be copied to the microSD memory card

■Titles and file names

Original titles are assigned to downloaded melodies. The title is listed on the Melody list screen of the FOMA terminal.
The file name is displayed when the data is transmitted to PC.
If the file name contains an inappropriate character, it is turned to “melodyxxx” (xxx: 3-digit number).
The 3-digit number at the end of the file name is a serial number assigned to distinguish the file from other files.

Operation during the melody playback

You can use the following operations during the melody playback:

Key operation	Operation
◎	Plays the previous or next melody
ⓘ (▲(マナー)), ⓖ (▼(📷))	Adjusts volume*1*2
0 to 9, ＊, ＃, ☎, ✉, ●, 📠	Stop playback
CLR	End

*1 : After adjusting the volume, press ● (Set) or wait for about 2 seconds to turn the display to the melody screen.
*2 : When the melody is finished, the volume is restored to the level specified in “Ring volume”.

FUNC Melody list screen (p.288)/ Melody screen (p.288)

- The function menu varies depending on the folder containing the melody.

Edit title*1……Edits the title of the melody.
You can enter up to 25 double-byte or 50 single-byte characters.

Edit file name*1……Edits the file name of the melody.
You can enter up to 36 single-byte alphanumeric characters and symbols (“-” and “_” only).

Play melody*1……Plays the melody (Displays Melody screen).

Ring tone……Selects the item to which the melody is set.

File restriction*1……Specifies whether to allow the redistribution of the saved melody. →p.276

Set repeat play*2……Repeats the playback of the melody in the same folder.

Add desktop icon →p.115

Compose message*3……Composes an i-mode mail message with the melody attached. →p.188

iC transmission*1 →p.309

Send Ir data*1 →p.307

Copy to microSD →p.298

Copy to phone*4 →p.299

Melody info……The file name of the melody, the date and time it was saved, and other information are displayed.

Memory info*1……Displays the melody storage capacity.

Copy*4……“Copying the data to the different folder in the microSD memory card” →p.300

Reset title*1……Resets the title to the default.

Sort*1……Sorts melodies in a selected criteria.

Move*1……Selects from “Move this/Move selected/Move all” and moves the melody to the other folder you select. “About multiple-choice” →p.38

Delete*1……Selects the deleting method from “Delete this/Delete selected/Delete all”. “About multiple-choice” →p.38

*1 : Available only with the melody list screen.
*2 : Available only with the melody screen.
*3 : When 2in1 is in B mode, this function is not available.
*4 : Used only for melodies stored on the microSD memory card.

NOTE

<Edit file name>
- You cannot edit the file name of the file-restricted melody. However, you can edit the file name of the melody received by the Infrared data exchange, iC exchange or OBEX.

<Ring tone>
- Some melodies may have restrictions so that only a designated part of the melody will be played. When such melodies are set as a ring tone, only the designated part can be played. Play the melody from the Melody in Data box to play all the parts of the melody.

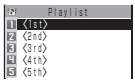
<Sort>
- “By source” sorts the PDF documents in the following order. Melodies with the same retrieval icon are arranged in the order in which they were displayed before you selected “By source”:
  ①Melody downloaded from website or melody retrieved from i-αppli
  ②Melodies retrieved using Infrared data exchange, iC exchange or from microSD memory card, etc.

● Playing melodies in your preferred order <Melody play playlist>

You can select and register up to 10 melodies, and play them in sequence.

1 Folder list screen (p.288)▶Highlight “Playlist”▶ch (FUNC)▶“Edit playlist”▶Select the number to which the melody is to be added▶Select a folder▶Select a melody▶Repeat the procedure

■ **To release the added melody**
▶Select the melody to release▶Select “Release this” on the folder selection screen



Continued on next page

2 (Finish)

The “Folder list” screen appears.

Selecting the Playlist folder starts the playback of the playlist and the stored melodies are played repeatedly.

NOTE

- Changing the title/file name of added melody or deleting data releases the playlist playback.

Managing Kisekae Tool

<Kisekae Tool>

Check the packages of Kisekae Tool downloaded from sites.

- “拡大メニュー” and “ドコモダケ_N905iμ” are stored at the time of purchase.
- Downloading from sites→p.178

1 MENU ▶“Data Box”▶“Kisekae Tool”

The “Package list” screen appears.

Package list screen→p.290



Package

Function menu➡p.290

■ **To use i-mode to search for packages**

▶“Search by i-mode”

2 **Select a package**

■ **To set the package**

▶ch (FUNC)▶“Set all”

Kisekae Tool package settings→p.120

■ **When you select a partially downloaded package**

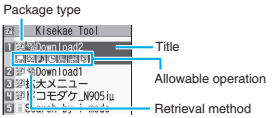
When you attempt to open a partially downloaded package, due to interruption at data acquisition, etc., a message appears asking whether to download the remaining data. To download the remaining data, follow the message to download the data.

When the remaining data is downloaded, the partially downloaded data will be deleted. If the remaining data is invalid, the data downloading cannot be completed. However, if you download the data in this case, partially stored invalid data will be deleted.

NOTE

- Sound-related items such as ring tone are played at the volume set in “Ring volume” while checking. No sound is played when set to “Silent”. In case of i-motion, when set to “Silent”, sound plays at “Level 2”.

Guide to the package list



■ **Package type icon**

icon	Description
	All the data have been downloaded
	Only a part of the data has been downloaded
	Subject to the FOMA card operational restriction function

■ **Retrieval method icons**

icon	Description
No icon	Pre-installed data
	Downloaded data

■ **Settings icon**

icon	Description
STBY	Stand-by display, Wake-up display
	Other than the above
	Ring tone or clock alarm tone
	Menu*
	Clock display
Color	Color pattern
Icon	Icons such as battery icon
	Background to the Music Player playback screen
	Illumination

*: If the package contains large-font menus, “ ” appears.

FUNC Package list screen(p.290)

Set all……“Setting the Kisekae Tool”→p.120

Edit title……Edits the package title.
You can enter up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters.

Kisekae Tool info……The file name of the package, the date and time it was saved, and other information are displayed.

Reset title……Resets the title to the default.

Reset screen/sound……Reset items that can be set simultaneously (p.120) to default.

Memory Info……Displays the Kisekae Tool storage capacity.

Sort……Sorts packages by the specified criteria.

Delete……Selects the deleting method from “Delete this/Delete selected/Delete all”.
“About multiple-choice”→p.38

microSD Memory Card

N905iμ supports microSD memory cards with up to 2G-byte (commercially available) (As of October, 2007). Visit the following website for the latest operation check information such as the manufacturer or the capacity of the microSD memory card. Note that the microSD card which is not listed on the website may not be operated on the FOMA terminal.

- For i-mode:
  To connect to “みんなNらんど”→p.168
- For PC (only in Japanese):
  http://www.n-keitai.com/

Note that the information on the website is only the result of the operation check and does not guarantee all the operations.

Notes on handling

* Make sure to format the microSD memory card on the FOMA N905iμ. You may not be able to use the microSD memory card formatted on the other terminal or PC.→p.301

- Insert or remove the microSD memory card after turning off the FOMA terminal.
- Do not paste a label or sticker on the microSD memory card.
- It is your responsibility to keep a separate record of all data saved on the microSD memory card. Under no circumstances shall NTT DoCoMo be liable for any loss or alternation to the saved data.

Inserting/removing the microSD memory card

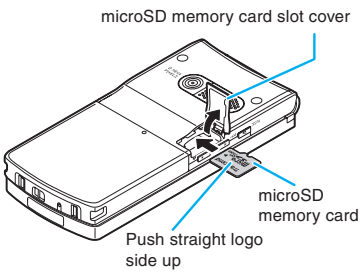
Attaching

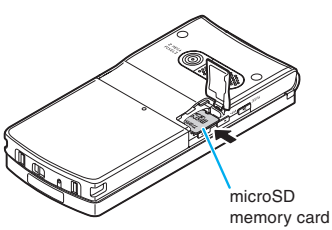
Turn off the FOMA terminal before inserting the microSD memory card.

1 Open the cap of the microSD memory card slot

2 Insert the microSD memory card into the microSD memory card slot and push it until it locks into the place

Insert the microSD memory card straight and slowly with the printed side up.
When fully inserted, the card is locked in the place.





3 Close the cap of the microSD memory card slot

When you turn on the FOMA terminal after inserting the microSD memory card, “ ” appears on the screen.

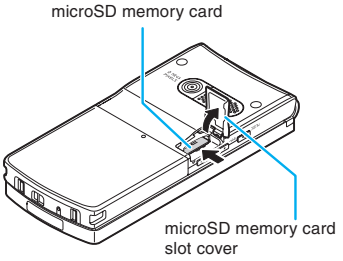
Removing

Turn off the FOMA terminal before removing the microSD memory card.

1 Open the cap of the microSD memory card slot

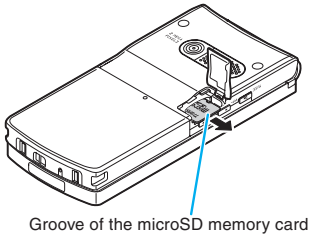
2 Lightly push the microSD memory card in

When you push the microSD memory card in and release, the card pops up slightly.
Note that the card may fly out of the slot.



3 Slowly pull the microSD memory card out of the slot

Grip the groove of the microSD memory card and slowly pull the card out.



4 Close the cap of the microSD memory card slot

NOTE

- Do not insert or remove the microSD memory card with the FOMA terminal turned on. Doing so may damage the microSD memory card or the data on the card.
- Note that the microSD memory card may fly out of the slot when inserting or removing the microSD memory card.

NOTE

- When you remove the microSD memory card, make sure to keep the card in the supplied protective case. You may not be able to use the microSD memory card if the card is kept in different protective case.
- Make sure to insert or remove the microSD memory card straightly in the right direction (inserting the microSD memory card at an angle may damage the card).
- It may take long to read or write data for the first time after the microSD memory card is inserted.

Folder tree on the microSD Memory Card

When you copy the data from the FOMA terminal to the microSD memory card, folders are created as shown in the Table1 (p.294) and the data are stored on the respective folders. The folder name and file names are set automatically as shown in the Table1.

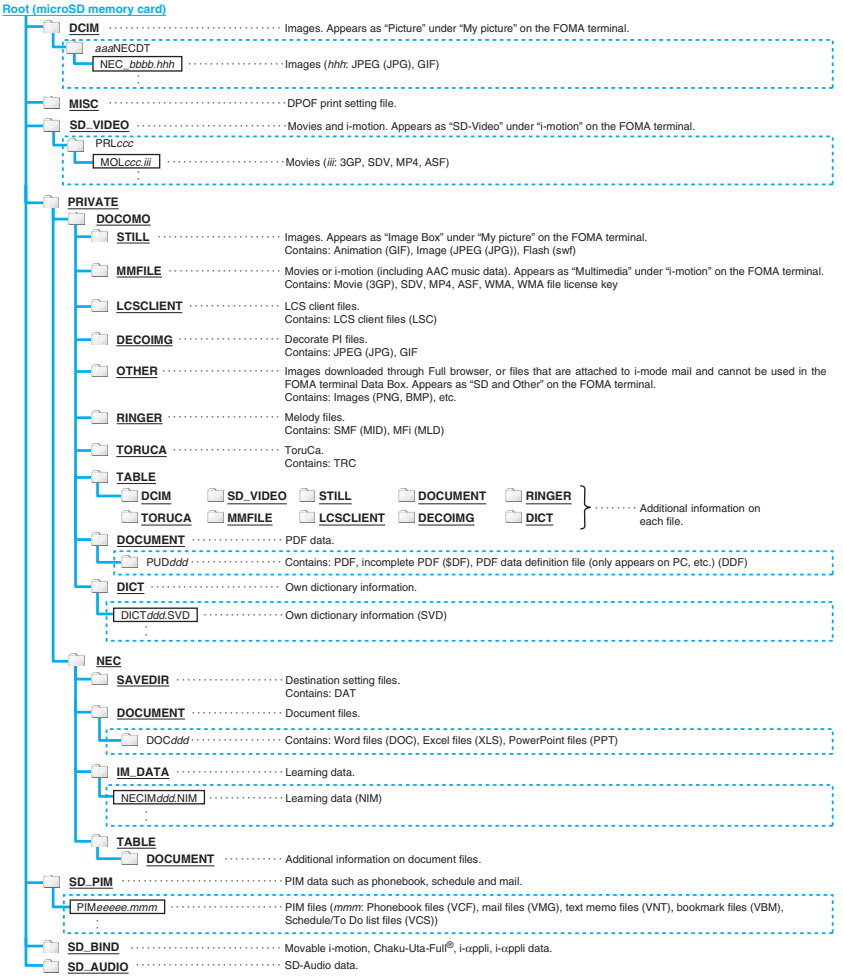
- When you write data on the microSD memory card from a PC, etc., you have to set the folder tree and file names as shown in the Table1.

NOTE

- When you copy multiple data to the SD_PIM folder, the data is automatically named with year/month/day/hour/minute (yyyy/mm/dd hh:mm).
- You can save a movie with video from a PC to the MMFILE folder, but you cannot play the movie on the FOMA terminal.
- A file edited on a PC then saved to the microSD memory card may not be displayed or played correctly on the FOMA N905iμ if you use characters different from the folder/file names shown on p.294.
- File names of documents/PDF data copied to a microSD memory card remain unchanged (up to single-byte 59 characters/double-byte 29 characters). If a file name is the same as that of an existing file stored in the microSD memory card, a 3-digit number will be added to the original file name.
- When the microSD memory card is formatted and SDVIDEO.DAT, MMFILE.DAT or DCIM.DAT file is deleted, the settings of the destination folder are canceled. In this case, reset the setting of “Select to save”. The setting is not canceled when the FOMA terminal is turned off or the microSD memory card is inserted or removed.
- Do not delete or move folders in the microSD memory card on a PC.
  Doing so may prevent FOMA N905iμ from reading the microSD memory card.
- You may not be able to display or play the data on the microSD memory card stored from the other device. Also, you may not be able to display or play the data on the microSD memory card stored from the FOMA terminal on the other device.
- Before purchasing the microSD memory card reader/writer or PC card adapter, ask the manufacturer of the microSD memory card if it is available for the FOMA N905iμ.
- The microSD memory card formatted on a device other than the FOMA N905iμ may not function correctly.

Continued on next page

Table 1: microSD memory card folder tree and files (extension)



* English italic characters in the table without explanation indicate the following single-byte alphanumeric characters.
aaa: 100 to 999 *bbbb*: 0001 to 9999 *ddd*: 001 to 999 *eeeee*: 00001 to 65535 (decimal numbers)
ccc: 001 to FFF (hexadecimal)

* Follow the rules of ( ) when writing data from a PC etc. to a microSD memory card, and when modifying data on the card. Use of different characters could prevent the file from being displayed or played.

Number of files that can be stored on the microSD memory card

The number of files that can be stored on the microSD memory card varies depending on the memory capacity of the microSD memory card. The maximum number of files that can be stored in 1 folder and the maximum number of folders are as follows:

Folder name	Maximum number of folders	Maximum number of files that can be stored in 1 folder
DCIM	900	9,999
SD_VIDEO	4,095	4,095
SD_PIM	1	65,535
STILL	999	9,999
MMFILE	999	9,999
LCSCLIENT	999	999
DECOIMG	999	9,999
OTHER	999	999
RINGER	999	9,999
TORUCA	999	999
DOCUMENT	999	999
DICT	1	999
IM_DATA	1	999

- You can save more files by changing the copy location by adding folders. However, you may not be able to store the data to the maximum number depending on the file size.
- You can check the memory capacity and available capacity of the microSD memory card from the function menu of the “Categories” screen, but the displayed memory capacity is smaller than the memory capacity indicated on the microSD memory card.
- You can not copy or move the data when the space is not enough on the microSD memory card. Insert another microSD memory card or delete unnecessary data.
- When the microSD memory card is full, you cannot add folders or edit titles for still image, image, movies or i-motion. Perform the operation after deleting unnecessary data.
- Music data cannot be copied from the FOMA terminal to the microSD memory card.
- When the number of files in the destination folder has reached the maximum:
  - When copying the data to other than SD-PIM, a new folder is created automatically and the data is stored in the folder. However, a folder is not created automatically when storing a still image directly on the microSD memory card after shooting with the camera.
  - When copying the data to SD-PIM, a message that the folder is full appears and you cannot copy the data to the microSD memory card.

Data that can be exchanged between the FOMA terminal and the microSD memory card

■PIM data such as the phonebook or mail

Data type	Details
Phonebook	Name, reading, phone number, e-mail address, memo, street address, birthday Image, Location info, Memory number*1, Secret store*2*3, Group number*3, Group name*3, PushTalk phone number*3, PushTalk group number*4, PushTalk group name*4
Schedule	Date (from), Date (to), Summary, Contents, Secret store*2, category*5, Alarm, Repeat
To Do list	Contents, Category*6, Completion date, Period, Change status, Priority, Alarm
Text memo	Make date, Last modify date, Category, Contents
Received mail*7, Sent mail*7, Draft mail	Unread/Read, Message type, Saved in, Sender, Receiver, Title, Receive/Send date, Message, Attach
Bookmark*7*8	URL, title
Learning data	Learning records for kana-kanji conversion, word prediction and T9 input.
Own dictionary	Word, reading

*1 : Can be copied by “Copy all”. When copied by “Copy & add all”, if the same memory No. is not empty, the data is saved to an empty No.
*2 : Secret store indicated whether the data is stored as a secret data.
*3 : Can be copied by “Copy all”.
*4 : Can be copied by “Copy & overwrite”.
*5 : Category is the icon information set in the schedule.
*6 : Category is the category set in the To Do list.
*7 : Folders (folder names) can be transferred by copying all the received mails, sent mails or bookmarks.
*8 : When copied from the microSD memory card to the FOMA terminal, i-mode bookmarks are stored in the “Bookmark” folder of “i-mode menu”. Full Browser bookmarks are saved to the “Bookmark” folder under “Full brw.”.

Continued on next page

■Data in the Data box

Data type	Details
Still image	JPEG, GIF and SWF data in the Inbox, Camera, Decomail-picture, Decorate PI, Auto Decomail. microSD or user created folder
Movie	MP4 data in the Inbox, Camera, microSD or user created folder
Melody	MFi/SMF melody in the Inbox, microSD or user created folder
PDF data	PDF data in the Inbox, microSD or user-created folder

■Other data

Data type	Details
ToruCa	ToruCa in the ToruCa, microSD or user created folder
LCS client	Service client name, Service client ID, Phone number, Notify at dialing

NOTE

- If a schedule with a user icon is copied, the “Category” information is not copied.

Displaying the Data in the microSD Memory Card

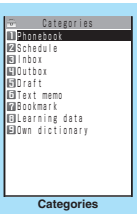
Displaying the SD-PIM data in the microSD memory card

<microSD manager>

You can display the SD-PIM data such as phonebook, schedule, mail or bookmarks which is saved on the microSD memory card.

1 MENU/MULTI ▶“LifeKit”▶“microSD manager”

The “Categories” screen appears.

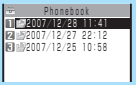


Categories

Function menu➡p.296

2 Select an item

The “File list” screen appears.

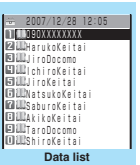


File list

Function menu➡p.297

3 Select a file

The “Data list” screen appears.

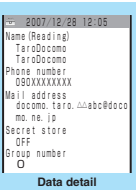


Data list

Function menu➡p.297

4 Select a data

The “Data detail” screen appears.



Data detail

Function menu➡p.297

NOTE

- While running microSD management or displaying the data details, you cannot launch another function.
- “” appears for a bookmark added on the i-mode browser screen, and “FB” for the one added on the Full Browser screen.
- Deco-mails are displayed without decorations.
- The data list/data detail screen cannot be displayed for learning data.

FUNC Categories screen (p.296)

microSD info→p.301

Copy from phone……Copies all the item data to the microSD memory card.

- For “Schedule”, you can select from “Schedule/To Do list/All”.
- For “Bookmark”, you can select from “i-mode brw./Full brw./All”.

microSD format→p.301

Check microSD……Checks the microSD memory card. Checking the microSD memory card may fix errors.

NOTE

<Check microSD>

- Do not remove the microSD memory card during checking the microSD memory card. This may cause a malfunction to the FOMA terminal or microSD memory card.
- You cannot check the unformatted or incompatible microSD memory card.
- " " flashes during Check microSD.
- When you press (Cancel) or while checking the microSD memory card, the checking is canceled and " " appears.
- When the checking of microSD memory card is interrupted, some data may remain to be recovered. In this case, check the microSD memory card again.
- It may take time to check the microSD memory card depending on the amount of data on the microSD memory card.
- The data may not be recovered depending on the microSD memory card.
- When you check the microSD memory card, the titles of the data in the microSD memory card are renamed to the file names.
  Titles and file names→pp.276, 288

FUNC File list screen (p.296)

Edit title……Edits the file title.
You can enter up to 15 double-byte or 31 single-byte characters.

Copy & add/Copy & overwrite*……"Copying the SD-PIM data to the FOMA terminal"→p.299

Copy from phone……Copies all the item data to the microSD memory card.

- For "Schedule", you can select from "Schedule/To Do list/All".
- For "Bookmark", you can select from "i-mode browser/Full Browser/All".

microSD info……Displays the amount of available space and data stored on the microSD memory card.

Delete……Selects the deleting method from "Delete this/Delete selected/Delete all". "About multiple-choice"→p.38

*: "Copy & Add" cannot be used for learning data.

FUNC Data list screen (p.296)/Data detail screen (p.296)

Copy & add this/Copy & add all/Copy & OW all*……

- "Copy & add this" copies one data additionally.
- "Copy & add all" is the same function as "Copy & add this" of the function menu of the file list screen.
- "Copy & OW all" is the same function as "Copy & OW this" of the function menu of the file list screen.

"Copying the SD-PIM data to the FOMA terminal"→p.299

microSD info……Checks the amount of available space and data stored on the microSD memory card.

*: "Copy & add all" and "Copy & OW all" functions are available only for the data list screen.

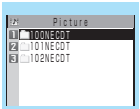
Displaying other data in the microSD memory card

You can display the data in the Data box such as images, i-motion or melodies stored on the microSD memory card.

<Example: To display an image in My picture>

1 Folder list screen (p.274)▶"microSD"▶"Picture", "Decorate PI" or "Image Box"

The "microSD folder list" screen appears.



Ex. microSD folder list (Picture)

Function menu➡p.303

2 Select a folder▶Select an image

Exchanging the Data Between the microSD Memory Card and FOMA Terminal

Copying the data on the FOMA terminal to the microSD memory card

● Copying the data such as the phonebook to the microSD memory card

You can save the phonebook, schedule, To Do list, text memo, mail or bookmarks stored on the FOMA terminal to the microSD memory card.

1 List screen of the data (such as the phonebook list screen)▶ch (FUNC)▶ “Copy to microSD”▶Select any item:

Copy this/Copy selected/Copy all*……Selects the copying method.
“About multiple-choice”→p.38

*: Only the data in the folder can be copied for copying all the received mails, sent mails or bookmarks. To copy all the data, select “CopyAll to microSD” from the function menu of the folder list screen.

■Function menu of the detail screen

The function of “Copy to microSD” on the detail screen is same as “Copy this” of the list screen.

■Function menu of the category screen

The function menu “Copy from phone” of the category list (p.296) is same as “Copy all” of the list screen of the phonebook, schedule, To Do list, draft mail or text memo. Similarly, this function is same as “CopyAll to microSD” of the folder list screen of received mail, sent mail or bookmark.

NOTE

- When you copy the mail with an i-αppli software launch specification, the information about launching i-αppli in the mail is deleted.
- When you copy one secret data (phonebook or schedule), the secret setting is released when saved.
- When you copy all the data to the microSD memory card, secret data (phonebook or schedule) are also copied. However, the data in the secret folder are not copied.
- When one phonebook data is copied, PushTalk phonebook data are not copied.
- When you copy mails, the attached files may be deleted depending on the file type.
- To copy all the items in My Profile, use “Display all”, then copy them.

● Copying the data such as images to the microSD memory card

You can copy the data in the Inbox, Camera or user created folder to the microSD memory card.

1 List screen of the data (such as the image list screen)▶ch (FUNC)▶ “Copy to microSD”▶Select any item:

Copy this/Copy selected/Copy all……Selects the copying method, then selects the destination folder to copy the data to the folder of microSD memory card. “About multiple-choice”→p.38

NOTE

- You cannot copy the data to the microSD memory card in the following cases:
  - Pre-installed data
  - The data prohibited to be output from your FOMA terminal
  - When the space is not enough on the microSD memory card
  - When the microSD memory card is incompatible
  - When an error occurred to the microSD memory card
  - When the microSD memory card is being inserted
  - A still image/movie of Chara-den character with “Rec. File Restriction”
  - Partially downloaded data (i-motion, PDF)
- When you receive a call, mail or alarm notification while copying still images or movies to the microSD memory card, the copying to the microSD memory card is interrupted.
- When the destination folder is full, a new folder is created automatically and the data is stored in the folder.

<Copy image>

- The file name is set as follows after copied:
  - File name: NEC_mmmm (mmmm = 0001 to 9999)
- You cannot copy the data to the microSD memory card in the following cases:
  - Images other than JPEG, GIF or SWF
  - The file size exceeds 2M bytes when copied
- The file size may increase when copied to the microSD memory card.

<Copy movie>

- The file name is set as follows after copied:
  - File name: MOLxxx (xxx = 001 to FFF: in hexadecimal)

Copying the data on the microSD memory card to the FOMA terminal

Copying the SD-PIM data to the FOMA terminal

You can copy and add/overwrite the phonebook, schedule, mail, bookmarks, etc. stored on the microSD memory card to the FOMA terminal.

- When you copy and overwrite the schedule, the To Do list data is also copied and overwritten (when only one of these data is stored, only the stored data is overwritten).
- Note that when you copy and overwrite data (Copy & OW this/Copy & OW selected/Copy & OW all), the data stored on the FOMA terminal before copying are erased and replaced by the data in the selected microSD memory card.
  Check if there is an important data before copying and overwriting the data.

1 File list screen (p.296)▶ch (FUNC)▶ "Copy & add" or "Copy & overwrite"▶ Select any item:

Copy & add this/Copy & OW this……Copies and adds/overwrites all the data of a file.

Copy & add selected/Copy & OW selected…… Copies and adds/overwrites all the data of the selected file. "About multiple-choice"→p.38

Copy & add all/Copy & OW all……Copies and adds/overwrites all the data of all the files.

■ For character input learn data
Only "Copy & overwrite" is possible. Also, it is not possible to select "Copy & OW this/Copy & OW select/Copy & OW all" in that case.

■Function menu of the data list screen/data detail screen

- "Copy & add all" and "Copy & OW all" on the data list screen (p.296) are the same functions as "Copy & add this" and "Copy & OW this" of the file list screen.
- "Copy & add this" of the data list screen/data detail screen (p.296) copies the selected one data additionally.

NOTE

- You cannot copy the phonebook data when "Restrict dialing" is set.
- If Copy & add (Copy & add this/Copy & add selected/Copy & add all) or Copy & overwrite (Copy & OW this/Copy & OW selected/Copy & OW all) is selected from the file list screen/data list screen/data detail screen, PushTalk phonebook are also copied.

NOTE

- If Copy & add (Copy & add this/Copy & add selected/Copy & add all) is selected from the file list screen/data list screen/data detail screen and group names on the microSD memory card differ from the one of the FOMA terminal, the data is saved to "No Group" in the phonebook.
- When the Outbox is full, copying one sent mail from the data list screen/data detail screen overwrites the oldest unprotected mail.
- When the Inbox is full, copying one received mail from the data list screen/data detail screen overwrites the oldest unprotected mail.

Copying the data such as images to the FOMA terminal

You can copy the data such as images stored on the microSD memory card to the Inbox folder of the FOMA terminal (Decorate PI are stored in Decorate PI folder).

1 List screen of the data (such as the image list screen)▶ch (FUNC)▶ "Copy to phone"▶Select any item:

Copy this/Copy selected/Copy all……Selects the copying method.
"About multiple-choice"→p.38

NOTE

- When you receive a call, mail or alarm notification while copying still images, the copying continues. When you receive a call, mail or alarm notification while copying movies, the copying is interrupted.

<Copy image>

- Following images cannot be copied:
  - SWF-format Flash images exceeding 100K bytes
  - An image which exceeds 2M bytes
  - An image whose width or height exceeds 2,592 dots or total number of dots exceeds 2,592 × 1,944 dots.
  - A progressive JPEG/GIF image whose width or height exceeds 854 dots or total number of dots exceeds 854 × 480 dots.

<Copy movie>

- You cannot copy a movie in the following cases:
  - Movies other than MP4
  - MP4 movies that cannot be played
  - Movies whose file size exceeds 10M bytes
  - * You may not be able to copy the movie in other cases depending on the movie.

<Copy PDF>

- PDF data larger than 2M bytes cannot be copied.

Copying the data to the different folder in the microSD memory card

You can copy the data in the microSD memory card to the different folder in the microSD memory card.

- You have to create a destination folder beforehand. →p.303

1 List screen of the data (such as the image list screen)▶ch (FUNC)▶"Copy"▶Select any item:

Copy this/Copy selected/Copy all……Selects the copying method, then selects the destination folder to copy the data to the other folder. "About multiple-choice"→p.38

NOTE

- Do not remove the microSD memory card until the coping completes. This may cause a malfunction to the FOMA terminal or microSD memory card.

Moving the Copyrighted Data among the microSD Memory Card and FOMA Terminal

<Movable contents>

You can move the movable i-motion or Chaku-Uta-Full® with copyrights.

Moving the data on the FOMA terminal to the microSD memory card

- Moved i-motion is saved to the Movable contents folder (p.273) under i-motion.
- The moved Chaku-Uta-Full® are saved to the Movable contents folder (p.272) under Music.

1 Movie list screen (p.282)/Music list screen (p.326)▶ch (FUNC)▶"Move to microSD"▶Select any item:

Move this……**▶Select the destination folder▶"Select this folder"**

Move selected……**▶Select the destination folder▶"Select this folder"▶Use ⊕ to select a checkbox (□)▶✉ (Finish)▶"YES"**

Move all……**▶Enter your security code▶Select the destination folder▶"Select this folder"▶"YES"**

Moving the data on the microSD memory card to the FOMA terminal

- The moved i-motion are stored to the Inbox folder of i-motion.
- The moved Chaku-Uta-Full® are stored to the Inbox of Music.

1 Folder list screen (pp.282, 326)▶"Movable contents"▶Select a folder▶"View files"

The "Movie list" screen (p.282)/"Music list" screen (p.326) appears.

2 ch (FUNC)▶"Move to phone"▶Select any item:

Move this/Move selected/Move all……Selects the moving method. "About multiple-choice"→p.38

NOTE

- Do not remove the microSD memory card while moving the data. This may cause a malfunction to the FOMA terminal or microSD memory card.
- To check whether the i-motion or Chaku-Uta-Full® can be moved, see "i-motion info" (p.283), "Music information" (p.327) or Icons (pp.275, 326).

Managing the microSD Memory Card

Formatting the microSD memory card enables you to use the card on the FOMA terminal or check the usage status.

Formatting the microSD memory card

*** Make sure to format the microSD memory card on the FOMA N905iμ. You may not be able to use the microSD memory card formatted on the other terminal or PC.**

- When the memory card is formatted, all the stored data are deleted. Check if there is an important data before formatting.

1 Categories screen (p.296)▶ ch (FUNC)▶"microSD format"▶Enter your security code▶"YES"

NOTE

- Do not remove the microSD memory card while formatting. This may cause a malfunction to the FOMA terminal or microSD memory card.
- Data stored on the microSD memory card are not guaranteed if formatting is interrupted.

Checking the microSD memory card usage status

You can display the amount of available space and data stored on the microSD memory card.

- Number of files that can be stored on the microSD memory card→p.295

1 Categories screen (p.296)▶ ch (FUNC)▶"microSD info"

Using the FOMA Terminal as a microSD Reader/Writer

You can connect the FOMA terminal to a PC with the microSD memory card inserted and read/write the data in the microSD memory card.

- To use the FOMA terminal as a microSD reader/writer, following devices are required.

Item	Description
Cable	FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 (optional)
PC	PC with USB port (compliant with the Universal Serial Bus Specification Rev1.1) compatible with the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 (optional)
Supported OS	Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Vista (Japanese editions)

1 USB mode setting screen (p.302)▶"microSD mode"

When set to "microSD mode", " " appears.

2 Connect the FOMA terminal and a PC with the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01

" " appears when the microSD memory card is inserted and the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 is connected during the microSD mode.

The microSD memory card is displayed in My Computer window on the PC as a storage memory (external storage device).

To remove the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 from the PC, follow the safe removal procedure on each OS.

■Important

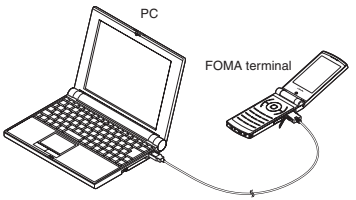
- Ensure that the FOMA terminal and PC are properly connected. An improper connection could not only prevent data exchange but also result in the loss of data.
- Attempting to exchange data when the FOMA terminals battery level is low or empty could not only prevent data exchange but also result in the loss of data. Make sure that the FOMA terminal's battery is charged enough. Also check the power of PC.
- Do not remove the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 when the incoming call lamp flashes while copying the data from the PC to the FOMA terminal. This may prevent not only data exchange but also result in the loss of data.

Setting the USB mode <USB mode setting>

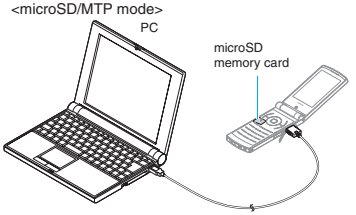
You can set the USB mode to use various functions by connecting a PC and the FOMA terminal.

- USB mode is categorized into “Communication mode”, “microSD mode”, “Print mode” and “MTP mode”.

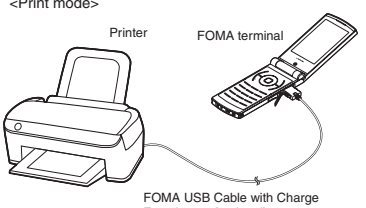
<Communication mode>



<microSD/MTP mode>



<Print mode>



1 MENU/MULTI ▶“Settings”▶“External connection”▶“USB mode setting”

The “USB mode setting” screen appears.



USB mode setting

2 Select any item:

Communication mode……Uses the external connector for packet communication, 64K data communication or data exchange via cable connection.

- “ ”: The FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 is connected and data are ready to be exchanged between the FOMA terminal and a PC

microSD mode……Uses the external connecter as a reader/writer of the microSD memory card.

- “ ”: The FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 is not connected.
- “ ”: The FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 is connected (You cannot transfer data between the FOMA terminal and the microSD memory card, display data in memory or format the microSD memory card)

Print mode……Uses the external connector for PictBridge print.

- “ ”: The FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 is not connected/The FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 is connected but data are not ready to be printed
- “ ”: The FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 is connected and data are ready to be printed

MTP mode……Uses the external connector for WMA data exchange.

- “ ”: The FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 is not connected.
- “ ”: The FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 is connected

Working with Folders and Files

You can add folders to each folder/microSD folder list screen of the Data box to organize the files.

■Movable contents folder

- For Music, you can use the function menus “Add folder”, “Edit folder name” and “Delete folder” and “Memory info” of the following “ FUNC Folder list” screen.
- For i-motion, you can use the same function menus as the following “ FUNC microSD folder list” screen.

Creating, editing and deleting folders

FUNC Folder list screen

Add folder……Enters a folder name to add a folder.
You can enter up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters.

Edit folder name……Edits the folder name of the added folder.
You can enter up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters.

Add desktop icon[*1] →p.115

Delete folder……You can also delete a folder that stores data.

- For Music, select the deleting method from “Delete this/Delete selected/Delete all” after entering your security code.

“About multiple-choice”→p.38

Delete all*2*3……Deletes all stored data. Note that the data saved in the secret folder are not deleted.

Edit playlist*4……Starts editing the playlist. When a playlist is already created, you can edit the playlist.

“Playing melodies in your preferred order”→p.289

Release playlist*4……Releases the playlist.

Memory info……Displays the capacity used, etc.

*1 : It can only be used for music.
*2 : “Delete all image” appears for My picture. “Delete all” appears for i-motion and melodies. “Delete all doc.” appears for My document.
*3 : It cannot be used for Music, movable contents music folder or Music&Video Channel.
*4 : Usable only when the playlist folder of Melody is highlighted.

NOTE

<Add folder>

- The maximum number of folders of the movable contents folder is 65,535 and the maximum number of files that can be stored in a folder is 65,535.

<Delete folder/Delete all image/Delete all>

- If you try to use “Delete folder”, “Delete all image” or “Delete all” to delete an image or movie that has been set in a display, original animation or user icon of Schedule, or if you use “Delete folder” or “Delete all” to delete a melody that has been set as a ring tone or alarm or set in a playlist or random melody, the corresponding feature (display, etc.) changes as follows:
  - The screens, ring tone and alarm settings are reset to the default.
  - The original animation and playlist are erased.
  - The alarm notification screen for the schedule switches to the screen on which you set “  ”.

FUNC microSD folder list screen (p.297)

Edit folder name*1……Edits the folder title.
You can enter up to 31 double-byte or 63 single-byte characters.*2

Create folder*1……Enters a folder name to create a folder.
You can enter up to 31 double-byte or 63 single-byte characters.*2

DPOF Print*1*3……“Printing Stored Images”→p.317

Delete folder……Deletes a folder.

Memory info……Displays the capacity used, etc.

*1 : Not usable with “Image Box” or “Decorate PI”.
*2 : You can enter up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters for i-motion movable contents folder or Melody.
*3 : Not usable for i-motion, Melody, My document or Document viewer.

NOTE

- When you attempt to access the data in the microSD memory card while i-αppli saves data to the microSD memory card, a message appears notifying that you cannot operate the card.

<Create folder>

- You cannot create folders in the “Image Box” or “Decorate PI” folders on the FOMA terminal. You can create these folders on a PC, etc.

When the memory is insufficient or there are too many stored items

When you try to save the photographed still images, movies or downloaded data, a message appears asking whether to delete some unnecessary data to save the new data. To save the new data, delete unnecessary data.

1 Select “YES” on the message

■ **Not to save the data**
▶“NO”

2 Select a folder▶Select data to be deleted

Some data types share data storage space, so before selecting a folder, select which data to delete.

3 (Finish)▶“YES”

(Finish) is not displayed until enough memory is allocated to save the data.

Managing the Phonebook and SMS on the FOMA Card (UIM)

<UIM operation>

You can exchange phonebook or SMS data between the FOMA terminal (Phone) and the FOMA card (UIM). You can also delete SMS data or phonebook entries stored on the FOMA terminal (Phone) or FOMA card (UIM).

- You cannot send/receive a voice/videophone/PushTalk call or i-mode mail while copying or deleting data. Also, you cannot activate other functions.
- You cannot copy items that cannot be stored in the UIM phonebook.
  Items and number of entries that can be copied →p.88
- You can save the received SMS and sent SMS up to 20 in total on the FOMA card (UIM).

Copying or deleting the phonebook entry or SMS from the main menu

<Example: To copy the phonebook entry or SMS>

1 (MENU/VAULT)▶"LifeKit"▶"UIM operation"▶Enter your security code

When you enter your security code, "圏外" appears and communication such as incoming calls becomes unavailable. If you receive a call or other communication before entering your security code, the UIM operation ends.

2 "Copy"

■ **To delete**

▶"Delete"

3 "Phone→UIM" or "UIM→Phone"

■ **To delete**

▶"Phone" or "UIM"

4 Select any item:

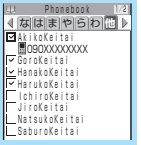
Phonebook……Searches and displays the phonebook list screen.
Searching the phonebook→p.92

SMS……Selects the SMS data.

- **Inbox**……Displays the Inbox list screen.
- **Outbox**……Displays the Outbox list screen.

5 Use ● to select a checkbox (□)▶(Finish)▶"YES"

To copy from the FOMA terminal (Phone) to the FOMA card (UIM), select another "YES".



UIM operation EX. Phonebook (Search all)

Function menu➡p.304

FUNC UIM operation screen (p.304)

- For the phonebook, available functions vary depending on the selected tab, etc.

Start copy*1……Starts copying operation.

Start deletion*2……Starts deleting operation.

Select this……Selects the data.

Select all……Selects all the data.

Release this……Deselects the selected data.

Release all……Deselects all the data.

Detail……Displays the data details.

*1 : Usable only with the copy screen.
*2 : Usable only with the Delete screen.

Copying a phonebook entry from the phonebook detail screen

1 Phonebook detail screen (p.92)▶(ch)(FUNC)▶"Copy to UIM" or "Copy to phone"▶"YES"

The menu displayed when (ch)(FUNC) is pressed depends on where to save the phonebook entry (to the FOMA terminal or the FOMA card (UIM)). To copy to the FOMA card (UIM), select another "YES".

Moving or copying SMS from the mail screen

- You can perform the UIM operation on the mail screens from the function menus of received mail list/detail screens and sent mails list/detail screens.

<Example: To move or copy received SMS on the FOMA terminal to the FOMA card (UIM)>

1 Received mail list screen (p.202, 204)▶Highlight SMS

2 ch (FUNC)▶“UIM operation”▶“Move to UIM” or “Copy to UIM”▶“YES”

■ To move or copy received SMS on the FOMA card (UIM)

▶“Move from UIM” or “Copy from UIM”

Moved or copied to the Inbox folder.

NOTE

<Phonebook>

- Copying the phonebook from the FOMA terminal (Phone) to the FOMA card (UIM) converts “katakana” included in name and reading to double-byte. You can copy up to 10 double-byte or 21 single-byte characters for name and up to 12 double-byte or 25 single-byte characters for reading, and remaining characters are not copied.
- As the number of phone numbers and e-mail addresses that can be stored in a single phonebook entry on the FOMA terminal (Phone) and FOMA card (UIM) is different, the second and subsequent phone numbers/e-mail addresses stored on the FOMA terminal (Phone) cannot be copied to the FOMA card (UIM).
- As the types of characters that can be used on the FOMA terminal (Phone) and FOMA card (UIM) are different, some characters may be converted to spaces or other characters.
- Phonebook entries stored as secret data cannot be copied using this function even when the FOMA terminal is set to “Secret mode” or “Secret data only mode”.
- If the same group names are set on the FOMA terminal (Phone) and the FOMA card (UIM), the phonebook group settings are retained. If there is no group with the same name, the entries are stored in “No Group”.

<SMS>

- If a sent SMS is copied, the corresponding SMS report is also copied. You cannot copy the SMS report only.
- You cannot protect SMS moved or copied to the FOMA card (UIM). If you move or copy protected SMS to the FOMA card (UIM), the protection is removed from the SMS on the FOMA card (UIM). “Replied to” or “Transferred” icon is also changed to “Read”.
- When moving/copying SMS sent to 2in1 Number B, the SMS is saved as for Number A.

Infrared Data Exchange/ iC Exchange

You can exchange the data such as phonebook entries and received mails with other devices with the Infrared data exchange or iC exchange function.

- Data exchange function of the FOMA terminal via the Infrared data exchange/iC exchange conforms to the IrMC1.1 standard. However, you may not be able to forward data depending on the other party’s device or the application even when IrMC1.1 is supported.
- You can forward the data one by one or all data at one time.
- You can forward the following:
  - Phonebook
  - My Profile
  - ToruCa, ToruCa (detail)
  - Schedule
  - To Do list
  - Received mail, sent mail, draft mail
  - Text memo
  - Melody*
  - Still image*
  - SWF Flash movie*
  - movie (i-motion)*
  - PDF data*
  - Bookmark of the i-mode browser or Full Browser
  - LCS client
  - Own dictionary
  - Common phrases

*: You cannot send all the data at a time.

Note on forwarding data

- You cannot forward data while Dial lock, Self mode, Omakase Lock or Keypad lock is set. Also, you cannot use the iC exchange when IC card lock is set.
- You cannot receive the phonebook data while Restrict dialing is set. However, you can send the phonebook data which is set to “Restrict dialing” and personal data of My Profile when sending the phonebook data.
- You may not be able to forward data depending on the status of the other partys device. Also, depending on the model of the other party’s device, it may not reflect the settings of the received mail or bookmark folder tree, or it may not receive the Deco-mail correctly.
- The FOMA terminal is set to Out of Area during the data exchange, which means you cannot make/receive a voice/videophone/PushTalk call or use i-mode, i-mode mail, packet communication or 64K data communication. Also, the FOMA terminal may remain the status of Out of Area for a while after the data exchange.
- It may take time to exchange data depending on the amount of data. Also, you may not be able to receive data.
- The progress bar indicates the number of sent data. A large amount of data may slow down the progress indicator or it may look different between the parties even when the data are being exchanged successfully.

Sent/received data

- The data received by the FOMA terminal are saved as follows:

Data	Destination/Order	
Still image, image, melody	The first in the Inbox folder	
Movie/ i-motion, PDF data	In date order in Inbox folder	
ToruCa, ToruCa (detail)*1	The first in the ToruCa folder	
Phonebook*2, My Profile	The smallest memory number available between “010” and “999”. If none of the numbers above is available, it is saved under the smallest memory number available between “000” and “009”	
Schedule	In the date order of the received schedules	
To Do list	The first in the To Do list	
Received mail, sent mail*3	(Receive 1)	The Inbox/Outbox folder in the date order of mails
	(Receive all)	User created folder or trash box according to the folder tree on the sender
Draft	The Draft box in the date order of mails	
Text memo	The first <Not recorded>	
Common phrases	(Receive 1)	The first <Not recorded>* 4
	(Receive all)	Same order and contents as the sender
Own dictionary	(Receive 1)	The first in the Own dictionary
	(Receive all)	Same order as the sender
i-mode bookmark, Full Browser bookmark	(Receive 1)	The first in the Bookmark folder under i-mode menu/Full Browser
	(Receive all)	The Bookmark folder under i-mode menu/Full Browser in the same order as on the sender *5
LCS client	(Receive 1)	The lowest number in the LCS client list
	(Receive all)	In order from the lowest number in the LCS client list

*1 : When sending one data by the Infrared data exchange, a confirmation screen about sending ToruCa (detail) appears.

*2 : The order in the PushTalk phonebook cannot be transferred via Infrared data exchange/iC exchange. The entries are registered in received order, which means that the memory number order will apply.

*3 : When using the Infrared data exchange, a mail larger than 2M bytes may not be sent correctly.

*4 : When original common phrases are already stored in all folders 3 to 5 and fixed common phrases in folders 1 and 2 have not changed since the time of purchase, received common phrases will be stored in folders 1 and 2, overwriting the fixed common phrases.

*5 : The data may not be saved in the same order depending on the model of the sender.

- If you receive all the still images, all the images stored in the phonebook are deleted.
- If you receive a phonebook entry, the still images stored in the phonebook you receive are stored in the Inbox folder of “My picture”. However, if the amount of data exceeds the storage limit of “My picture”, the exceeding images are deleted and the phonebook is stored.
- You can send/receive up to 9 double-byte or 18 single-byte characters for titles of still images, movies, i-motion or PDF data and up to 25 double-byte or 50 single-byte characters for titles of melodies. If the length of the title exceeds the maximum, the exceeding part is deleted.
- The FOMA terminal may not properly receive some symbols or pictographs entered in mail or phonebook.

- You cannot send or receive:
  - UIM phonebook, SMS
  - Frame data (can be received only)
  - Melody, still image, movie, i-motion or PDF data with FOMA card operational restriction
  - Data in the Secret folder
- You cannot receive:
  - Still images and other images other than JPEG, GIF and SWF.
  - Movies other than MP4 or 3GP
  - Still image, movie, i-motion, melody, PDF data whose image size or file size exceeds the capacity of the FOMA N905iμ
- Note the following when you transfer the phonebook data:
  - The secret code cannot be forwarded.
  - When you transfer one data of the phonebook stored as the secret data using the Infrared data exchange or iC exchange, the secret setting is canceled when transferred.
  - When you send all the phonebook data, the “My Profile” data is also sent. The data stored in “My Profile” (except for the phone number) is overwritten on the recipient side.
  - When all data are transferred, PushTalk phonebook entries are also transferred. When one data is transferred, only phonebook entries are transferred. However, a message appears asking whether to save the entries to the PushTalk phonebook after transferred, and they can be saved to the PushTalk phonebook.

● Note the following when you transfer the mail data:
- It may be impossible to receive part of the mail subject, depending on the model of receiving phone.
- When the i-αppli launch information or mail-connected i-αppli information is pasted into the mail, the mail is sent after the pasted data is deleted. When the data attached to the mail is set to “File restricted”, the mail is also sent after the data is deleted. Also, a still image may be deleted depending on the file format. However, when sending sent mails or draft mails, the data received via cable connection or copied from the microSD memory card are sent even when they are set to “File restricted”.
- When there is an attached file whose downloading is not completed, the mail is sent after the attached file is deleted.
- If there is not enough space in the Inbox when receiving one received mail, mails are deleted automatically in the order of mails in the Trash and old received mails. However, unread mails, protected received mails, i-mode mails and SMS in the secret folder are not deleted. It is recommended to protect mails you want to keep.
- If there is not enough space in the Outbox when receiving one sent mail, the oldest unprotected sent mail in the Outbox is overwritten.
- When receiving all the mails, the mails are received after deleting all the mails and user-created folders.
- You cannot transfer the received mail folder and sent mail folder of the mail-connected i-αppli. All the mails in the folder are saved to the Inbox or Outbox.
- The setting of “color coding” set in the received mail list screen or sent mail list screen cannot be transferred.

Session number

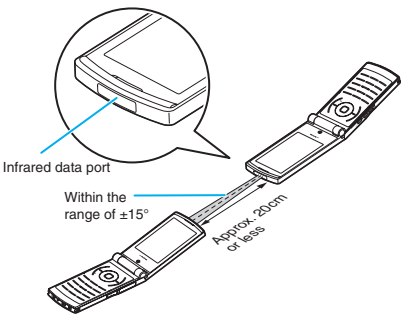
● Transferring all requires the session number to authenticate the sender and recipient. Before sending or receiving, the sender and recipient should agree on a 4-digit number as the session number and then both enter the same number.

Forwarding Data with Infrared Data Exchange

<Infrared data exchange>

When you forward data by Infrared data exchange

● Place the devices so that the Infrared data ports are aligned on the same level and facing each other. Also, do not place anything between the devices or cover the Infrared data ports.
● Use infrared communication within approximately 20cm. Do not move the devices until the confirmation message about completing the exchange appears.
● The devices may not communicate successfully if they are placed in direct sunlight, directly under a fluorescent light, or close to other infrared equipment.



Transferring one data at a time using the Infrared data exchange

<Send/Receive Ir data>

You can exchange one data at a time with other devices using the Infrared data exchange function.

● Sending one data

Select “Send Ir data” from the function menu of Data list screen or detail screen. If the data to send is a JPEG image, High-speed Ir send (IrSS) can also be selected.

<Example: To send one image>

1 My picture screen (p.274)▶ ch (FUNC) ▶“Send Ir data” or “IrSS”

Continued on next page

2 Set the receiving device ready to receive

3 Direct the Infrared data port toward the other party's device▶"YES"

The data transmission starts.
When the data is sent, a notification message about completing the exchange appears.

■ **To cancel sending**
▶"NO"

■ **To exit during sending**
▶ (Quit)

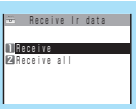
NOTE

- "IrSS" is a one-way communication and sends data without confirming response from the receiver. Thus, even if the receiver cannot receive data, the sending is finished successfully on the sender's side.

● Receiving one data

1 MENU ▶"LifeKit"▶"Receive Ir data"

The "Receive Ir data" screen appears.



Receive Ir data

Function menu➡p.308

2 "Receive"▶Direct the Infrared data port toward the other party's device▶Receive data from the other party's device

The data reception starts.

3 "YES"

When the received data is saved, a notification message about completing the save appears.
The received data is discarded if no operation is performed for about 30 seconds after it is received.

■ **To cancel receiving**
▶ (Quit)

■ **When you do not save the received data**
▶"NO"

FUNC **Receive Ir data screen (p.308)**

Add desktop icon→p.115

Transferring all data at a time using the Infrared data exchange

<Send/Receive all Ir data>

You can exchange all data at a time with other devices using the Infrared data exchange function.

- When you receive all, all the data on the FOMA terminal is overwritten by the received data and stored data are deleted including protected mails and secret data of the phonebook or schedule. However, frames and secret data in the secret folder are not deleted. Check if there is an important data before receiving all the data.
- Transferring all may change the order of data on the recipient.

● Sending all data at a time

Select "Send all Ir data" from the function menu of Data list screen or detail screen.

<Example: Send all data stored in the phonebook>

1 Phonebook list screen (p.91)▶ ch (FUNC)▶"Send all Ir data"

2 Enter your security code▶Enter session number

"Session number"→p.307

3 Set the receiving device ready to receive

4 Direct the Infrared data port toward the other party's device▶"YES"

Transmission of all data starts.
When the data is sent, a notification message about completing the exchange appears.

■ **To cancel sending all data**
▶"NO"

■ **To exit during sending**
▶ (Quit)

● Receiving all data at a time

1 Receive Ir data screen (p.308)▶"Receive all"

2 Enter your security code▶Enter session number

"Session number"→p.307

3 Direct the Infrared data port toward the other party's device▶"YES"

■ **To cancel receiving all Ir data**
▶"NO"

4 Select "YES" when the overwrite confirmation screen appears

■ **To cancel receiving all Ir data**
▶"NO"

5 Receive all data from other party's device

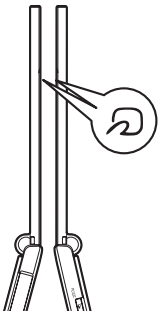
All the data reception starts.
When the received data is saved, a notification message about completing the save appears.

■ **To exit during the receiving**
▶✉ (Quit)

Forwarding Data with iC Exchange <iC exchange>

When transferring data using the iC exchange

- Place the FeliCa mark "((" on the FOMA terminal (sender) over the FeliCa mark "((" on the FOMA terminal (receiver).
- Data transmission may not be smooth depending on the FOMA terminal of the other party. Move FOMA terminals so that the FeliCa marks "((" of the sender and the receiver get close or distant, or move them to the right, left, up and down.



Transferring one data at a time using the iC exchange <iC transmission/Touch to receive data>

You can exchange one data at a time with other devices using the iC exchange function.

● Sending one data

Select "iC transmission" from the function menu of Data list screen or detail screen.

<Example: Send one phonebook data>

1 Phonebook detail screen (p.92)▶ ch (FUNC)▶"iC transmission"

2 Put the FeliCa mark "((" close to the FeliCa mark "((" of the other party▶ "YES"

The data transmission starts.
When the data is sent, a notification message about completing the exchange appears.

■ **To cancel sending**
▶"NO"

■ **To exit during sending**
▶✉ (Quit)

● Receiving one data

1 Put the FeliCa mark "((" close to the FeliCa mark "((" of the other party▶ Perform the operation to send the data from the FOMA terminal of the other party

The data reception starts and the progress bar appears.

2 "YES"

When the received data is saved, a notification message about completing the save appears.
The received data is discarded if no operation is performed for about 30 seconds after it is received.

■ **To cancel receiving**
▶✉ (Quit)

■ **When you do not save the received data**
▶"NO"

Transferring all data at a time using the iC exchange

<iC trans. all/Touch to receive all>

You can exchange all data at a time with other devices using the iC exchange function.

● Sending all data at a time

Select “iC trans. all” from the function menu of list screen or detail screen of the data you want to send all.

<Example: Sending all the phonebook data>

1. **Phonebook list screen (p.91)▶ ch (FUNC)▶“iC trans. all”**
2. **Enter your security code▶Enter session number**
   “Session number”→p.307
3. **Put the FeliCa mark “” close to the FeliCa mark “” of the other party▶“YES”**
   Transmission of all data starts.
   When the data is sent, a notification message about completing the exchange appears.

   ■ **To cancel sending all data**
   ▶“NO”

   ■ **To exit during sending**
   ▶ (Quit)

● Receiving all data at a time

1. **Put the FeliCa mark “” close to the FeliCa mark “” of the other party**
2. **Perform the data sending operation of all data from the FOMA terminal of the other party**
3. **Enter your security code▶Enter session number**
   “Session number”→p.307
   The data reception starts and the progress bar appears.

   ■ **To exit during the receiving**
   ▶ (Quit)
4. **Select “YES” when the overwrite confirmation screen appears**
   When the received data is saved, a notification message about completing the save appears.

   ■ **To cancel receiving**
   ▶“NO”

Forwarding Data by Cable Connection

<OBEX>

By connecting the FOMA terminal and your PC with the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 (optional), you can exchange various data such as phonebook entries or images.

- When you exchange data using the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 (OBEX), you have to install “ドコモケータイdatalink” (DoCoMo keitai datalink) (p.389) and “FOMA通信設定ファイル” (FOMA Communication Setting File) in the provided CD-ROM.
- For details such as installing of the “ドコモケータイdatalink” (DoCoMo keitai datalink), refer to the download page of the software. For details on data exchange, refer to the help files of the software.
- For details on installing “FOMA通信設定ファイル” (FOMA Communication Setting File) and the operational environment, refer to the “PC connection” chapter and “Manual for PC connection setting” (PDF format) in the provided CD-ROM.
- Set “USB mode setting” to “Communication mode” before transferring data.

■ Important

- Ensure that the FOMA terminal and PC are properly connected. An improper connection could not only prevent data exchange but also result in the loss of data.
- Attempting to exchange data when the FOMA terminals battery level is low or empty could not only prevent data exchange but also result in the loss of data. Make sure that the FOMA terminal’s battery is charged enough. Also check the power of PC.
- All the data on the FOMA terminal may be erased if an error occurs while forwarding all from PC to the FOMA terminal. Before forwarding all, check the cable connection, the battery level of the FOMA terminal and the power of PC.

Barring Phonebook Image Forwarding <Forwarding image>

When you use the Infrared data exchange, iC exchange, copying to microSD memory card function or data exchange (OBEX) to transfer phonebook data, you can prevent transferring still images stored in the phonebook.

1 MENU ▶“LifeKit”▶“Forwarding image”▶“OFF”

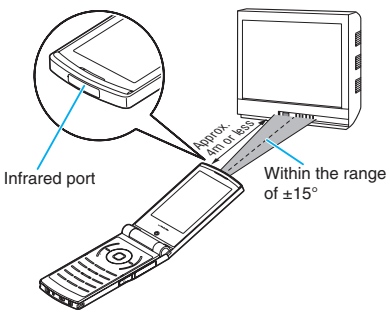
■ **To forward**
▶“ON”

Using the Infrared Remote Control Function

- To use the remote controller function, download the software according to the device you use (the key operations of the remote controller vary depending on the software).
- “Gガイド番組表リモコン” (G-GUIDE program guide remote control) is pre-installed at the time of purchase. →p.235
- The remote operation may not be possible depending on the device.
- You cannot use the Infrared Remote Control during the Self mode.

Using remote control

- Point the infrared data port of the FOMA terminal directly at the remote control sensor on the TV, etc. and operate the FOMA terminal as a remote control. The remote control is effective within about 4 meters away from the device. This may vary depending on the ambient light level.



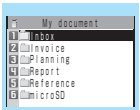
Viewing PDF Data <My document>

Use PDF Viewer to view PDF documents downloaded from sites and saved. You can also view PDF documents stored on a microSD memory card.

- Downloading from sites →p.176

1 MENU ▶“Data Box”▶“My document”

The “Folder list” screen appears.

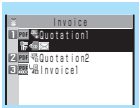


Folder list

Function menu➡p.302

2 **Select a folder**

The “PDF list” screen appears.



PDF list

Function menu➡p.312

3 **Select a PDF document**

The “PDF data” screen appears.



PDF data

Function menu➡p.316

■ **If the password entry screen appears**

Enter the password set to the PDF data.

■ **If a message about resuming the download appears**

You are attempting to open a document, a part of which has been downloaded by page. You can additionally download the remaining pages later on. →p.177

■ **If a message appears asking whether to download all remaining data**

You are attempting to open an incomplete PDF document which has been downloaded partially due to interruption at data acquisition, etc. You have to download the remaining data additionally. →p.177

NOTE

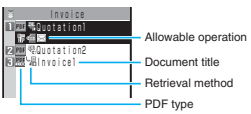
- It may take a long time to display some PDF data.
- A PDF data may not be properly displayed if it contain formats unsupported by the PDF viewer or complicated designs.

Continued on next page

NOTE

- While viewing a part of a PDF data which has been downloaded by page, attempting to view a page that has not been downloaded starts the download. You can download the remaining pages at a time.→p.177
- To transfer a PDF document from a PC to the microSD memory card, use the specified folder tree/name. →p.293
  A document cannot be displayed on the FOMA terminal if the folder tree/name is different from the specified format.
- “ ” flashes while viewing a PDF document stored on the microSD memory card.

Guide to the PDF list



■PDF type icon

icon	Description
PDF (Pale blue) PDF (blue)	All the pages have been downloaded * The file size of the PDF document with a blue icon exceeds 2M bytes, which cannot be stored on the FOMA terminal.
PDF (Pale blue)	Partially downloaded by pages
PDF (Pale blue)	Incomplete data which has been downloaded partially (data forwarding unavailable)

: File restricted data (data forwarding and copy to microSD memory card are unavailable)

■Retrieval method icons

icon	Description
icon OFF	Pre-installed data
	Downloaded from a site, etc.
	Acquired from a microSD memory card, PC, etc.

■Settings icon

icon	Description
	Can be attached to an i-mode mail (2M bytes or smaller)
	Can be transferred via Infrared data exchange and iC transmission
	Can be copied to a microSD memory card

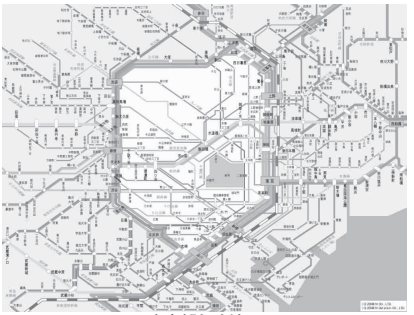
NOTE

- A PDF document stored on a microSD memory card, which appears with a blue icon “ (blue)” or “ (blue)”, cannot be viewed on the FOMA terminal.

Pre-installed PDF documents

The “鉄道路線図” (route map) PDF documents by “ゼンリン” (ZENRIN) are pre-installed on the FOMA N905iμ at the time of purchase.

- The Inbox folder under My document contains 札幌路線図 (Sapporo route map), 仙台路線図 (Sendai route map), 東京都心路線図 (Tokyo metropolitan route map), 中部路線図 (Chubu route map), 関西路線図 (Kansai route map) and 博多路線図 (Hakata route map).



東京都心路線図
(Tokyo metropolitan route map)

FUNC PDF list screen (p.311)/ Document list screen (p.313)

- The available functions vary depending on the folders, which means that the items listed in the function menu are different.

Edit title……Edits the title. You can enter up to 9 double-byte or 18 single-byte characters.

Display document……For PDF document, select the page to display from “From the last/First page/i-mode bookmark”.
For other documents, the contents are displayed from the first page.

Document info……The file name of the PDF data/ document, the date and time it was saved, and other information are displayed.

DL remaining data[*1]……“Downloading remaining PDF data after downloading partially”→p.177

Add desktop icon[*1*2]→p.115

Compose message[*3]……Composes an i-mode message with the PDF document/document attached.

iC transmission[*1*2]→p.309

Send Ir data[*1*2]→p.307

Copy to microSD[*1*2]→p.298

Move……Selects from “Move this/Move selected/Move all”, then selects a destination folder and moves the PDF document/document to another folder.
“About multiple-choice”→p.38

Memory info……Displays the capacity used, etc.

Sort[*1*2]……Sorts the PDF documents by the specified criteria.

Delete……Selects the deleting method from “Delete this/Delete selected/Delete all”. “About multiple-choice”→p.38

Copy to phone[*1*4]→p.299

Copy[*4]……“Copying the data to the different folder in the microSD memory card”→p.300

*1 : Available only with the PDF data list screen.
*2 : Not usable on the list screen of the microSD memory card.
*3 : When 2in1 is in B mode, this function is not available.
*4 : Not usable on the PDF list screen of the FOMA terminal.

NOTE

<Sort>
- “By source” sorts the PDF documents in the following order.
  ①PDF documents downloaded from sites
  ②PDF documents acquired via the Infrared data exchange or from a microSD memory card

Viewing Documents

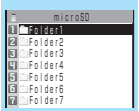
<Document viewer>

Document viewer is available to view a document attached to a mail message or stored on a microSD memory card.

■Viewable document type

Type	Extension
Excel	xls
Word	doc
PowerPoint	ppt

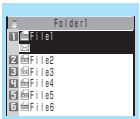
1 MENU ▶“Data Box”▶“Document viewer”
The “microSD folder list” screen appears.



microSD folder list (Document)

Function menu➡p.303

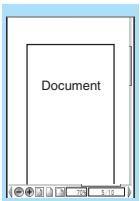
2 Select a folder
The “Document list” screen appears.



Document list

Function menu➡p.312

3 Select a document
The “Document view” screen appears.



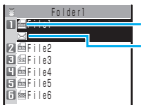
Document view

Function menu➡p.316

NOTE

- It may take long to display some documents.
- A document may not be properly displayed if it contain formats unsupported by the Document viewer or complicated designs.
- To transfer a document from a PC to the microSD memory card, use the specified folder tree/name. →p.293
  A document cannot be displayed on the FOMA terminal if the folder tree/name is different from the specified format.

Guide to the document list



■Document type icon

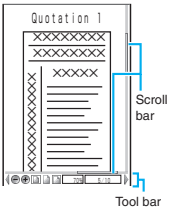
DOC XLS PPT	Viewable document type

■Settings icon

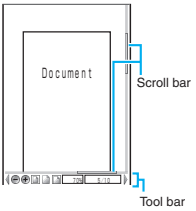
✉	Can be attached to a mail

PDF Data Screen/Document view Screen

On the PDF data screen and document view screen, the scroll bar to check the position on the screen and the tool bar for various screen operations are displayed.



<PDF data screen>



<Document view screen>

Operations on the screen

You can use the dial keys with assigned functions and tool bar icons as well as the function menu to change the display mode such as zoom in/out.

- You can also set i-mode bookmarks and marks, or clip and save a page.

Scrolling

■Use ⊕ to scroll

Press ⊕ in the direction you want to scroll.

■▲ (マナー), ▼ (📷) to scroll

Press ▲ (マナー) to scroll up and ▼ (📷) to scroll down.

Guide to the tool bar

- 8: Switches view/close of the tool bar (scroll bar)
- (Tool): Switch from the page operation to the tool bar operation
- (Cancel): Switch from the tool bar operation to the page operation
- ⊙: Switch of the icon display during the tool bar operation
- ⊕: Icon selection during the tool bar operation

icon	Description
Zoom	The zoom factor appears. Specify a zoom percentage to display pages in the specified percentage. ● **(Select)▶Enter a 4-digit number**
Page	The current page number appears. Specify a page number to go to the page. ● **(Select)▶Enter a 4-digit number**
	Zooms out.
	Zooms in.
	Displays the entire page.
	Displays a page at 100%.
	Adjusts the page width to the display.
	Displays the first page.
	Displays the previous page.
	Displays the next page.
	Displays the last page.
	Searches for text.
	Rotates a page 90 clockwise.
	Rotates a page 90 counterclockwise.
*	Copies text. “Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text” →p.367
*	“Clipping a page”→p.316
	Displays a description of an operation assigned to a tool bar or a key.
*	Displays a single page on the screen.
*	Displays pages continuously.
*	Displays the document in double-page spread.
*	Displays the Bookmark list screen.

*: Available only with the PDF data screen.

Useful keys on the PDF data/Document view screen

Key	Description
1	Zooms out.
2	Displays the entire page.
3	Zooms in.
4	Displays the previous page.
6	Displays the next page.
7	Searches for text. →p.315
8	Switches view/close of the tool bar and the scroll bar.
0	Displays a description of an operation assigned to a tool bar or a key.
#	Searches next.
*	Searches previous.

Searching for text

1 PDF data screen (p.311)/Document view screen (p.313)▶(Tool)▶Select "🔭"▶Select the text entry box▶Enter text to search for

You can enter up to 8 double-byte or 16 single-byte characters. However, some special characters may not be searched for.

2 Select the checkbox (☐) of the condition▶(Search)

When the text is found, a page containing the text appears.

Press * to search from the current position to the beginning of the page under the same condition.

Press # to search from the current position to the end of the page under the same condition.

■ To search in an Excel file

Select "Search in page" or "Search in file". "Search in page" searches in the currently displayed sheet. "Search in file" searches in the whole Excel document currently displayed.

Using a bookmark to view a PDF document

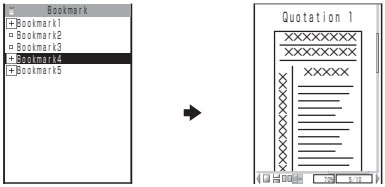
■ To use a "bookmark" already set in a PDF document

- If bookmarks are already set in a PDF document, follow the steps below to jump to the location (page) where a bookmark is set.

1 PDF data screen (p.311)▶(Tool)▶Select "🔖"▶Select a bookmark you want to view

The location (page) where the bookmark is set appears.

If there is no bookmark in the PDF document, a message appears notifying that no bookmark is found.



If you press (📖) at the bookmark with +, other bookmarks under the bookmark appear.

■ To use "i-mode bookmark"

- i-mode bookmark allows you to set a bookmark anywhere you like so that you can immediately jump to any page or location (up to 10 bookmarks in one PDF document).
- To jump to the location (page) where you set an i-mode bookmark, follow the steps below:

1 PDF data screen (p.311)▶(FUNC)▶"i-mode bookmark"▶Select an i-mode bookmark you want to view

The location (page) appears in the same display mode (zoom, etc.) as the one when you set the bookmark.

■ To add an i-mode bookmark

▶(Add)▶"YES"▶Enter a title of the i-mode bookmark

The current display mode (page, zoom, etc.) is saved as an i-mode bookmark.

■ To edit the title of an i-mode bookmark

▶(FUNC)▶"Edit title"▶Enter a title

■ To delete an i-mode bookmark

▶(FUNC)▶"Delete"▶"YES"

■ **To delete all i-mode bookmarks set in a PDF document**

▶ch (FUNC)▶“Delete all”▶Enter your security code▶“YES”

FUNC PDF data screen (p.311)/ Document view screen (p.313)

Zoom out……Zooms out a page.

Zoom in……Zooms in a page.

View types……Selects the display size of a page from “Zoom to/Fit page/Actual size/Fit width”.

Go to……Selects a page to display from “First page/ Previous page/Next page/Last page/Specified page”.

Search*1……“Searching for text”→p.315

Page layout*2……Selects the page display style from “Single page/Continuous/ContinuousFacing”.

Display link*1*2……Selects a URL, phone number or mail address to access, make a call or compose an i-mode message.

* The scroll and tool bars do not appear when you display the link destination in the document. Press CLR to return to the normal PDF data screen.

Hide tool/scr.bars⇔**Show tool/scr.bars**……Hides/ shows the tool bar and scroll bar.

Rotate view……Selects the direction to rotate the page from “Clockwise/Counterclockwise”.

Bookmark*2……“Using a bookmark to view a PDF document”→p.315

Copy*1*2……Copies text.

i-mode bookmark*2……To use “i-mode bookmark” →p.315

Mark*1*2……Adds/changes/deletes a mark. Up to 10 marks can be set.

Capture screen*1*2……“Clipping a page”→p.316

Compose message*1*3……Composes an i-mode message with the PDF document/document attached.

Add desktop icon*1*2*4→p.115

DL remaining data*1*2*4……“Downloading remaining PDF data after downloading partially”→p.177

Save*1……Saves the currently displayed PDF document/ document.

Help……Displays a description of an operation assigned to a key.

Document property*1*2……Displays the document properties.

End……Closes the current screen.

Document info……The file name of the PDF data/ document, the date and time it was saved, and other information are displayed.

Delete this*1……Deletes the currently displayed PDF document/document.

*1 : May not be available when viewing PDF data or documents attached in composing message or on a site.
*2 : Available only with the PDF data screen.
*3 : When 2in1 is in B mode, this function is not available.
*4 : Not usable for PDF documents on a microSD memory card.

● Clipping a page

You can clip a part of the PDF data screen and save as a JPEG image.

1 Display a page to clip▶(Tool)▶Select “ ”▶● (Set)▶“YES”▶Select the destination folder

The clipped page is saved.

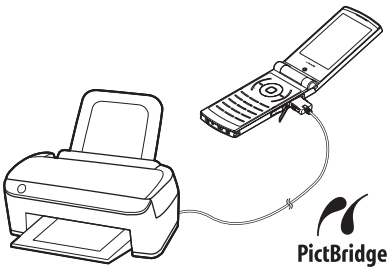
NOTE

- An image clipped out of a PDF document that is not allowed to be output from the FOMA terminal cannot be output from the FOMA terminal, e.g. attached to a mail or copied to a microSD memory card.
- You may not be able to clip an image if it is prohibited to copy the PDF document.

Printing Stored Images

<PictBridge print>

Connect the FOMA terminal to a PictBridge compatible printer via the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 (optional), and you can print stored images.



"Mobile Printing Ready" (PictBridge, microSD)

* This Mobile Printing Ready product is designed to provide easy printing from mobile phones.
This product follows Mobile Imaging and Printing Consortium (MIPC) guidelines version 1.0 for PictBridge, Memory Cards.

- Only JPEG images can be printed (Images shot with the built-in camera are JPEG-formatted).
- Some printers cannot properly print images if they are not still images shot with the built-in camera.
- Check that your printer supports the PictBridge print before connecting the printer and the FOMA terminal.
- You can set the printing method for images stored on the microSD memory card beforehand. →p.318
- You cannot print images that are not allowed to be output from the FOMA terminal.
- Charge the battery fully for PictBridge print. You may not be able to print if the battery is low.
- Do not remove the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 while communicating with the printer. "" appears during communication.
- The printing method (layout, sheets, etc.) specified on the FOMA terminal may not be applied on some printers.

1 USB mode setting screen (p.302)▶"Print mode"

When "Print mode" is set, "" appears.
You may not be able to print if "Print mode" is not set before connecting the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01.

2 Connect the FOMA terminal and a printer with the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01

Turn on the printer before connecting.

3 Image list screen (p.274)▶ch (FUNC)▶"PictBridge print"

■ **To use Print this**

Move the frame to the image you want to print on the image list screen or select the image to display the My picture screen. When you select the My picture function menu, go to Step 5.

■ **To use DPOF print**

Specify "DPOF setting" (p.318) beforehand and display "Image list" screen or "Title" screen on a microSD memory card.

4 Select the print type

Print this……Prints one image.

Print Choice……Select images to print.
"About multiple-choice"→p.38

DPOF Print……Prints images by following the "DPOF setting" and the paper size and layout specified for the printer (Step 5 and subsequent steps are not required).

5 Set the print settings

■ **Print settings**

Select from the following:

Print Sheets*……Enters the number of sheets (01 to 99) to print.

Print Style

size……Selects the paper size.

layout……Selects the layout from "1-up (border less)/1-up/2-up/4-up/8-up/16-up/Default".
Selecting 2-up to 16-up prints 2 to 16 images on one sheet. When printing only one image, the same 2 to 16 images are printed on one sheet.

a date……Sets whether to stamp the date.

*: Can be set only when "Print this" is selected in Step 4.

6 (Finish)

The image is printed.

When an error occurs on the printer

- If the “Error” message appears, an error may have occurred on the printer.
- Remove the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 from the printer and fix the error.
- After recovering from the error, make sure that “ ” appears at the top of the FOMA terminal display, then connect the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 to the printer.
- For information on how to recover from the error of a printer, see the printer’s manual.

NOTE

- You can print up to 100 images with Print Choice.
- Selectable paper size and layout for Print this or Print Choice vary depending on the printer. DPOF Print prints an image using the paper size and layout set on the printer.
- You cannot print following images:
  - An image whose width or height exceeds 2,592 dots
  - An image whose total number of dots exceeds 2,592 × 1,944 dots
  - An image whose file size exceeds 2M bytes
  - A progressive JPEG image whose width or height exceeds 854 dots
  - A progressive JPEG image whose total number of dots exceeds 854 × 480 dots

Setting How to Print Images Stored on the microSD Memory Card

<DPOF setting>

You can set DPOF (Digital Print Order Format) to the images stored in the microSD memory card.

- DPOF is a format to print the images shot by digital camera.
- When you save still images shot with the FOMA terminal to a microSD memory card, and specify still images to print, the number of sheets, etc., you can print the images on a DPOF-compatible printer (p.317) or in a print service shop.

1 Folder list screen (p.274)▶“microSD”▶“Picture”▶Select folder▶ ch (FUNC)▶“DPOF setting”

■ **To use DPOF set One**

Move the frame to the image you want to set on the image list screen or select the image to display the My picture screen. When you select the My picture function menu, go to Step 3.

2 Select the setting

DPOF set One……Sets the print settings for one image.

DPOF set Choice……Selects images to set DPOF settings. “About multiple-choice”→p.38

3 “Print”▶Select any item:

Print Sheets……Enters the number of sheets (01 to 99) to print.

a date……Selects whether to stamp the date.

■ **To cancel the print setting of the displayed image**

▶“Print OFF”

■ **To cancel the print setting of all the stored images**

▶“All print OFF”

4 (Finish)

NOTE

- You can set the DPOF setting up to 999 images. However, you cannot print up to the specified number depending on the printer.
- You cannot set the DPOF settings for following images:
  - An image whose width or height exceeds 2,592 dots
  - An image whose total number of dots exceeds 2,592 × 1,944 dots
  - An image whose file size exceeds 2M bytes
  - A progressive JPEG image whose width or height exceeds 854 dots
  - A progressive JPEG image whose total number of dots exceeds 854 × 480 dots
- You may not be able to set the DPOF setting when the space is not enough on the microSD memory card.
- You can check the number of sheets you set in “Image info”.

Music&Video Channel/ Music Playback

■Music&Video Channel

What is Music&Video Channel? 320
Launching Music&Video Channel 320
Setting Up Program 320
Playing Program 322
Using Music&Video Channel from Data Box 323

■Music player

Downloading Chaku-Uta-Full® from a Site 324
Using the Music Player ..... Music player 325
Playing Music 326
Using the Playlist 331
Using the SD-Audio 333
Saving the WMA Data on the microSD Memory Card 333
Using Other Functions During Music Playback ..... BGM play (background play) 334

Handling the Music Data

- In this manual, “Music data” is referred to as Chaku-Uta-Full®, WMA (Windows Media Audio) file, SD-Audio data.
- You can play WMA file or Chaku-Uta-Full® protected by copyright protection technologies on the FOMA terminal.
- When downloading music data from Internet website, etc., check usage condition (permitted or inhibited actions, etc.).
- WMA files protected by copyright protection technologies are played using information specific to the FOMA terminal. When information specific to the FOMA terminal is changed due to failure, repair or modifications of the terminal, existing WMA files may not be played.
- Under no circumstances shall NTT DoCoMo be held liable for handling of copy control CD (CCCD) or for reactions to inability to convert music data to WMA file.
- You can enjoy the music data stored in the FOMA terminal or microSD memory card within personal use. Take care not to infringe on the third party’s intellectual property right such as copyright. Do not copy or move music data stored in the FOMA terminal or microSD memory card to other devices such as PC.

What is Music&Video Channel?

Music&Video Channel is a service that a music program of up to 1 hour is automatically distributed during the night only by setting your favorite channel in advance. You can enjoy movie programs in high quality up to 30 minutes. The program is updated regularly and you can enjoy the distributed program anytime such as during commuting time to work or school.

■How to use Music&Video Channel

- Music&Video Channel is a pay service you need subscription (you need to subscribe to i-mode and Pake-Houdai/Pake-Houdai Full beforehand).
- Some programs may charge you an information fee besides the Music&Video Channel service charge.
- For details on Music&Video Channel, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".
- After you subscribe to the Music&Video service, when inserting the FOMA card (UIM) to a Music&Video Channel incompatible FOMA terminal, you cannot use the service. Even in this case, note that you would be charged the service fee unless you unsubscribe from the service.
- You cannot set or download Music&Video Channel during international roaming*. Stop the distribution before you go abroad. Restart the distribution service after you come back. For details, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

*: Note that the packet communication charges for the i-mode connection when you attempt to set or download programs during international roaming.

■BGM play (Background play)

You can view i-mode sites or mails while playing a Music&Video Channel program.

"Using Other Functions During Music Playback" →p.334

Launching Music&Video Channel

1 MENU/HOT ▶"MUSIC"▶"Music&Video Channel"

The "Music&Video Channel" screen appears.



Music&Video Channel

Function menu➡p.321

Setting Up Program

When you set a desired program beforehand, the program data is automatically delivered at night.

1 Music&Video Channel screen (p.320) ▶"Set program"▶Set up a program following the on-screen instructions

For details, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

NOTE

- You can set 2 programs for Music&Video Channel at a time.
- You need to add a site providing Music&Video Channel programs to My Menu (p.171) before setting a program.
- When you have not subscribed to the Music&Video Channel service, the message notifies you that the service is not subscribed. When you select "Music&Videoチャネルのお申し込みへ" (Subscribe to the Music&Video Channel) on the screen, you can subscribe to the Music&Video Channel service.

● Checking/canceling the program setting

1 Music&Video Channel screen (p.320) ▶"Set program"▶Follow the on-screen instructions

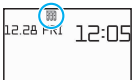
For details, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

NOTE

- Resetting the program does not delete the added My Menu.

After setting up the program

- “ ” appears on the standby screen 12 hours before the downloading starts.



- The program is automatically downloaded at night, and the desktop icon “ ” indicating Music&Video Channel is updated appears after successful downloading. The desktop icon “ ” indicating Music&Video Channel is not updated appears when the downloading fails. In this case, you can download the program manually. →p.321



NOTE

- If the communication is interrupted, the FOMA terminal attempts to resume the downloading up to 5 times at 3-minute intervals.
- You can save 2 programs. When a new program is downloaded, the previously downloaded program is deleted and you cannot play it. Move the program which you don’t want to delete to Data Box. →p.321
- You cannot save the downloaded program to microSD memory card.
- Since downloading a program may take time, make sure that the FOMA terminal is fully charged and used in an area where the signal status is good.
- Downloading failure is caused by the following reasons: “out of the service area”, “the terminal is turned off”, “no sufficient battery”, “cancelled by the user during the download”, “combination of Multitask/Multi access”, etc. In case that the downloading is failed for those reasons, the FOMA terminal will download the program at the next night. However, when canceled on the way with “cancelled by the user during the download”, etc., it may not be downloaded again at the next night.
- The FOMA terminal cannot download a program automatically when you insert a different FOMA card or after you initialize the terminal. Set programs again from the Music&Video Channel screen.
- When you eject the FOMA card from the FOMA terminal that you set the program, and insert the card into other Music&Video Channel compatible FOMA terminal, the program is not downloaded automatically. When you select “Set program” on the Music&Video Channel screen, the FOMA terminal updates its program settings automatically and the program can be downloaded automatically.
- If Music&Video Channel or i-mode is unsubscribed, program folder No. data may be deleted.

Guide to the icons on the Music&Video Channel screen

icon	Description
	Normal program
	Program supporting synchronized playback with program that is being streamed in the broadcasting wave
	Program downloaded in failure
	Program downloaded from sites
WEB	Program included information for site access (URL)
NEW	Program which has not been played

: Partially downloaded program

: Program with playback restriction (“ (gray)” turns to “ (red)” when the playback count, period or limit expires)

Downloading a program manually

When the download of Music&Video Channel is failed, you can download the program manually.

1 Music&Video Channel screen (p.320)▶Select the program▶“YES”

NOTE

- The desktop icon indicating that update of Music&Video Channel is failed disappears once you display the “Music&Video Channel” screen. You can manually download a program that you failed to download even if the desktop icon disappears.
- When download is interrupted, the partly downloaded program until the interruption can be saved. You can operate the FOMA terminal to resume downloading for the remaining data except during specific hours.
- You cannot re-download a program whose playback restrictions have expired. You cannot update until the next distribution date.
- During certain hours of a day, you may not be able to download a program manually.

FUNC Music&Video Channel screen (p.320)

Chapter list……Displays the list of title, artist and playback time of each chapter.
Select a chapter to play it.*1 “Chapter list” →p.322

Move program……Selects a destination folder and moves the program to user created folder in Music&Video Channel of the Data Box.*2

Continued on next page

Program info……Displays the program title, play count, period, time limit, etc.

Program image……Displays the images stored in the program.*3

Connect to URL……Accesses the site using the Web To function if the URL is included in the program.

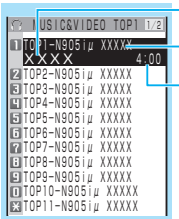
Add desktop icon→p.115

Delete……Deletes a program.

*1 : You cannot select the chapter of which all of the data are not downloaded.
*2 : Partially downloaded program and program supporting synchronized playback with program that is being streamed in the broadcasting wave cannot be moved.
*3 : When an animation GIF image is stored, the animation is played. You cannot save program images.

● Chapter list

Select “Chapter list” on the function menu of the Music&Video Channel screen to display the chapter list of the program.



Chapter list

Function menu➡p.322

FUNC Chapter list screen (p.322)

Chapter info……Displays the chapter title, play time, etc.

Chapter image……Displays the images stored in the chapter.*

Connect to URL……Accesses the site using the Web To function if the URL is included in the program.

*: When an animation GIF image is stored, the animation is played. Moreover, when the program is composed of i-motion, the image is not displayed. Note that images stored in the chapters cannot be saved.

Playing Program

1 MENU ▶“MUSIC”▶“Music&Video Channel”
The “Music&Video Channel” screen appears.

2 Select the program
The “music player” screen appears and the music playback starts.
“Guide to music player screen”→p.328
“Operations on the music player screen”→p.329

NOTE
- When earphones are connected, the sound comes only from the earphones regardless of the “Earphone” setting.
- When you select the program that you stop the playback last time, the playback starts from the beginning of the chapter where you stop the playback.
- Some programs have playback restrictions. “⃠” is displayed at the beginning of the title for the program with restrictions on the play count, period or time limit. The program restricted on the playback period cannot be played before or after the period. If the battery pack is removed from the FOMA terminal for a long period of time, the date and time settings stored on the FOMA terminal may be reset. In this case, the program restricted on the playback period or time limit cannot be played.
“Program info”→p.322

● Playing program supporting synchronized playback with program that is being streamed in the broadcasting wave

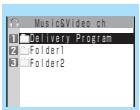
When a program is played, the same content as the one in the broadcasting wave can be played by synchronizing the program with the content that is being streamed in the broadcasting wave.
- The program must be downloaded beforehand.
- Playing the program is similar to that of the normal program, but it can be played only at the time when the play is possible.

NOTE
- Since the playback time is synchronized with the clock in the FOMA terminal which is corrected by Auto time set, the playable time is not changed even if the date and time are manually changed with this FOMA terminal.
- Partially downloaded program cannot be played.

Using Music&Video Channel from Data Box

1 MENU/HOLD ▶“Data Box”▶“Music&Video Channel”

The “Folder list” screen appears.
Contents in the Music&Video Channel folder →p.272



Folder list

Function menu➡p.302

2 Select a folder

The “Program list (Preview)” screen appears.
Guide to the program list screen →p.323



Program list (Preview)

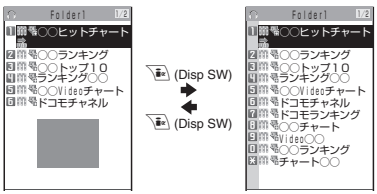
Function menu➡p.323

3 Select the program

The “Music player” screen appears and the music playback starts.
“Guide to music player screen” →p.328
“Operations on the music player screen” →p.329

Guide to the Preview screen/Title list

● Icons of the program list screen →p.321



Preview　　Title

■Preview screen

The screen displays 6 programs listed by title and a preview image from the selected program under the titles.

■Title list

The screen displays 11 programs listed by title.

FUNC Program list screen (p.323)

Chapter list……Displays the list of title, artist and playback time of each chapter.
Select a chapter to play it.*1 “Chapter list” →p.322

Edit title……Edits the program title.

Move program*2……Selects a destination folder and moves the program to user created folder.

Move*3……Selects from “Move this/Move selected/Move all”, then selects a destination folder and moves the program to another folder. “About multiple-choice” →p.38

Program info……Displays the program title, play count, period, time limit, etc.

Program image……Displays the images stored in the program.*4

Sort……Sorts programs by the specified criteria.

List setting……Specifies how to list the programs.

Connect to URL……Accesses the site using the Web To function if the URL is included in the program.

Memory info……Displays the storage capacity of program.

Reset title……Resets the title to the default.

Delete*2……Deletes a program.

Delete*3……Selects the deleting method from “Delete this/Delete selected/Delete all”. “About multiple-choice” →p.38

*1 : You cannot select the chapter of which all of the data are not downloaded.
*2 : Available only for the delivered program’s folder.
*3 : Available only for user created folder.
*4 : When an animation GIF image is stored, the animation is played. You cannot save program images.

Downloading Chaku-Uta-Full® from a Site

1 Sites screen (p.167)▶Select Chaku-Uta-Full®

When data downloading is completed, the “Data acquisition” screen appears.



Data acquisition

■ **To cancel downloading**

▶CLR

■ **To display the downloaded Chaku-Uta-Full®**

▶“Play”

“Guide to music player screen”→p.328

“Operations on the music player screen”→p.329

■ **To display information about Chaku-Uta-Full®**

▶“Property”

NOTE

- Some Chaku-Uta-Full® have the playback restrictions. “🕒” is displayed at the beginning of the title on the data acquisition screen for the Chaku-Uta-Full® with restrictions on the play count, period or time limit. The Chaku-Uta-Full® restricted on the playback period cannot be played before or after the period.
  Music information→p.327
- If the battery pack is removed from the FOMA terminal for a long period of time, the date and time settings stored on the FOMA terminal may be reset. In this case, Chaku-Uta-Full® restricted on the playback period or time limit cannot be played. However, you can play some Chaku-Uta-Full® by updating the playback restrictions.
- You cannot download Chaku-Uta-Full® which exceeds 5M bytes or whose size is unknown.
- You can save Chaku-Uta-Full® to the “Screen memo” using “Add screen memo”, the function menu of the data acquisition screen (p.324), then start playback from the screen memo.→p.174

Updating playback restrictions for Uta-houdai tracks

When you play a playlist or folder contains Uta-houdai tracks whose playback restrictions have expired and can be updated, a message to require the update of the playback restrictions appears. Select “YES” to connect to the site and update the playback restrictions (packet communication charge apply). When you select “NO”, you cannot play the data. When there are two or more Uta-houdai tracks whose playback restrictions can be updated, select an online music distribution site you want to update.

- Uta-houdai is music data that is allowed to play while you subscribe to the service of a contents provider. The playback period is specified by the license information downloaded with the music data. Music data whose playback period has expired can be played back again by updating the license. The license information may include playback extension period in addition to the playback period. You can play the music data without updating the playback period during the playback extension period, but the data cannot be played after the playback extension period has elapsed.
  If you download a music data without updating the playback period, the music data cannot be played until it is saved.
- The packet communication charges for the update of the playback period during international roaming is not covered by Pake-Houdai or Pake-houdai Full.
- The time limit may be expired before or after the displayed time outside Japan.
- Icons in the “Music list” screen indicates the status of the playback restrictions.→p.326
- Since updating playback restrictions is performed while connecting a site, packet communication charges will apply.
- It is recommended to initialize your FOMA terminal when you exchange the FOMA card (UIM).

NOTE

- When the Uta-houdai track which is set to the ring tone or alarm tone is disabled to be played, the default demo sound, ring tone or alarm tone is played.

Saving the downloaded Chaku-Uta-Full®

- You can store up to 100 Chaku-Uta-Full® on the FOMA terminal (the number of Chaku-Uta-Full® you can actually store may be reduced depending on the file size of stored Chaku-Uta-Full®).

1 Data acquisition screen (p.324)▶“Save”▶“YES”

■ When only a part of the data can be saved

When downloading is interrupted because of the signal condition or when the downloading is quitted, you may be able to save the downloaded portion only. In such a case, you can save only the downloaded portion.

■ To cancel the saving

▶“NO”

2 Select a destination folder

A notification message about completing the saving appears.

● Downloading the remaining data of partially downloaded Chaku-Uta-Full®

When you select Chaku-Uta-Full® which is downloaded partially from the saved folder, a confirmation message about downloading the remaining data appears. Select “YES” to connect to the site and download the remaining data.

When you download and save all data, the partially saved data are deleted.

- Icons in the “Music list” screen indicates the data downloading status. →p.326
- If the playback period or limit of Chaku-Uta-Full® which is partially downloaded is expired, you cannot download the remaining data (except for Uta-houdai tracks). You can delete the partially saved data when downloading the data.

Using the Music Player

<Music player>

Using the music player, you can play Chaku-Uta-Full®, i-motion, Music&Video Channel program and music stored in the microSD memory card.

- You can store music in a playlist and play your favorite music in your favorite order. →p.331
- Besides the pre-installed i-motion and Chaku-Uta-Full®, you can play the i-motion, Chaku-Uta-Full® and Music&Video Channel program downloaded from i-mode sites, or music data transferred from music CDs.
  “Downloading i-motion” →p.183
  “Downloading Chaku-Uta-Full® from a site” →p.324
  “Setting Up Program” →p.320
  “Using the SD-Audio” →p.333
  “Saving the WMA Data on the microSD Memory Card” →p.333
- You can enjoy the stereo sound with the built-in speaker or by connecting the flat-plug stereo earphone set (optional).
- When earphones are connected, the sound comes only from the earphones regardless of the “Earphone” setting.
- The sound can continue to be played with the FOMA terminal folded. →p.331

■ BGM play (Background play)

You can use mails or display i-mode sites while listening to music with the music player.

“Using Other Functions During Music Playback” →p.334

Playing Music

Using the music player plays Chaku-Uta-Full® music saved in the microSD memory card.

- Playing movies/i-motion→p.282
- Playing Music&Video Channel programs→p.322

1 MENU ▶"Data Box"▶"Music"

The "Folder list" screen appears.



Folder list

Function menu➡p.302

2 Select a folder

The "Music list" screen appears.
"Guide to Music list"→p.326

■ To use i-mode to search for music

▶"Search by i-mode"



Music list

Function menu➡p.327

3 Select a music file

The "Music player" screen appears and the music playback starts.
Operation during the playback→p.329

■ Chaku-Uta-Full® that is downloaded partially

A confirmation message about downloading the remaining data appears. Select "YES" to download the remaining data.→p.325



Music player

Function menu➡p.330

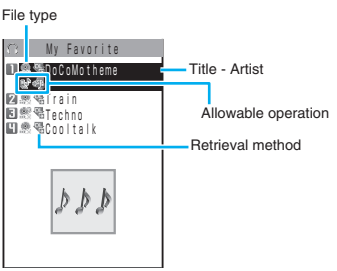
NOTE

- When earphones are connected, the sound comes from the earphones even when manner mode is set. If you disconnect earphones when manner mode is set, the playback is paused.

NOTE

- Some music files have playback restrictions. "" is displayed at the beginning of the title for the music file with restrictions on the play count, period or time limit. The music files restricted on the playback period cannot be played before or after the period.

Guide to Music list



■File type icon

Icon	Description
(gray) (gray) (pale blue)	Music stored on the FOMA terminal (Phone)
(gray) (gray) (gray) (gray) (pale blue) (pale blue)	Music stored on the microSD memory card and can be moved to the FOMA terminal (Phone)
	Music stored on the microSD memory card and prohibited to be moved to the FOMA terminal (Phone) Also displayed in the Playlist music list screen of the FOMA terminal (Phone) when the microSD memory card which contains the music file stored in the playlist is not inserted to the FOMA terminal
	Music that cannot be played or music with playback restrictions which cannot be updated
SD Audio	SD-Audio music
WMA	WMA music
	Partially downloaded music
	Music to which the FOMA card (UIM) operational restriction applied

: Music with the file restriction

: Music with playback restriction (“” turns to “” when the playback count, period or limit expires) Playback restrictions of music with the pale blue icon can be updated

: Playable only when the FOMA card (UIM) being used was also used to save the music

: Playable only when the model and FOMA card (UIM) being used were also used to save the music

■**Retrieval method icons**

Icon	Description
No icon	Pre-installed music
	Music downloaded from a site
	Music downloaded from PC

■**Settings icon**

Icon	Description
	Music that can be set as a ring tone
	Music that can be moved to the microSD memory card
	Music that can use the Web To function

FUNC Music list screen (p.326)

- The available functions vary depending on the folders, which means that the items listed in the function menu are different.

Add to playlist……Adds the music to the end of the playlist.

Create playlist→p.331

Move to microSD[*1]→p.300

Move……Selects from “Move this/Move selected/Move all” and moves the music to the other folder you select. “About multiple-choice”→p.38

Edit information……Edits the title, artist name, album name, etc.

Edit disp. title……Edits the title of music displayed on the music list screen. You can enter up to 9 double-byte or 18 single-byte characters.

Reset info……Resets the information to the status when the “File property” was retrieved.

Select ring tone……Sets the music as a ring tone. →p.100

Fullsong ring tone……Sets the whole music as a ring tone.

Point ring tone……Specifies the part of the music set as a ring tone using .

Search[*1]……Searches music in a selected criteria.

Sort[*1]……Sorts music by the specified criteria.

List setting……Selects a music-list format from “Title/Title+image”.

File property……Displays the file name of the music, playback restriction, whether or not it can be moved to microSD, etc.

Lyric……Displays the lyric of the music. If the lyrics cannot be displayed on a single page, you can switch the page with .

Jacket image……Displays the jacket image of the music. If there are two or more images, use to switch images.

Memory info……Displays the storage capacity of music.

Repeat setting……Sets whether to repeat the music or not on the music playback.

OFF (default)……Does not repeat the playback.

All repeat……Repeats the playback of all music in the folder.

Single repeat……Repeats the playback of the highlighted music.

Shuffle (default: OFF) ……Sets ON/OFF of the shuffle playback.

Connect to URL……Accesses the site using the Web To function if the URL is included in the music.

Delete……Selects the deleting method from “Delete this/Delete selected/Delete all”. “About multiple-choice”→p.38

Move to phone[*2]→p.300

*1 : Unavailable in the music list screen of the SD-Audio folder, movable contents folder or WMA folder.
*2 : Only available for the movable contents folder.

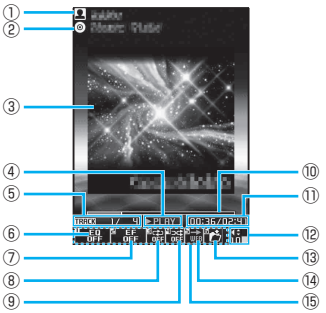
NOTE

<Move to microSD>

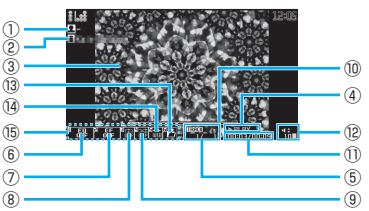
- To check whether a Chaku-Uta-Full® can be moved, select “File property” to see the music information. Some Chaku-Uta-Full® are movable only among the same model.

Guide to music player screen

Vertical view



Horizontal view



① Artist
Music: Artist
Music&Video Channel: Program title
i-motion: Creator

② Track title
Music: Track title
Music&Video Channel: Chapter title and artist
i-motion: Track title

③ Image/Movie
Music: Jacket image
Music&Video Channel: Chapter image or program movie
i-motion: Movie

④ Playback status
▶PLAY: During playback
❚❚PAUSE: During pause
▶▶FF: Skipping forward
◀◀REW: Skipping backward
▶SLOW: During slow playback
▶▶PLAY: Fast forward

⑤ Track number
Music: Playing track number/Total number of tracks in the folder
Music&Video Channel: Playing chapter number/Total number of chapters
i-motion: Playing file number/Total number of files

⑥ Sound quality (Equalizer)
EQ OFF: Equalizer OFF
Pop / Live / Vocal / Break / CLight / Woofe / Ballad / Rap / Concert / Rock / Kiss / Loud: Genre
EQ User1 / EQ User2 / EQ User3: User setting 1 to 3

⑦ Sound effect (Effect)
EF OFF: Effect OFF
Loud Enhanced / Sparkle Enhanced / Bass Enhanced / Natural Enhanced / Groove Bass / Crystal / Panoramic Grandeur / Vivid / BBE M3: Sound quality
EF User1 / EF User2 / EF User3: User setting 1 to 3

⑧ Repeat status
OFF: Repeat OFF
: All repeat
: Single repeat

⑨ Shuffle status
OFF: Shuffle OFF
: Shuffle ON

⑩ Playback position display
<During playback/pause>



The current playback position is indicated with a white marker. Moving the marker with ⊙ and pressing ● (Play) during pause starts playback from the position.

<When "Position to play" is selected>
When "Position to play" (p.330) is selected during playback, specify the position to play (indicated in orange) with ⊙.

⑪ Elapsed time (minutes: seconds)/Total playback time (minutes: seconds)

⑫ Volume
Displays the volume level from 0 to 20. When no sound is heard during Manner mode, "🔇" is displayed.

⑬ Music/File/Chapter
Selects the music/file/chapter to play

⑭ Web To function available
Accesses the URL included in the music data or program data.

⑮ Menu function →p.329

Operations on the music player screen

Key operation	Operation
● (📱)	Pauses/resumes playback*1
📱 (for 1 second or longer)	■ **During playback (on the standby screen)** Stops playback ■ **During pause (on the standby screen)** Resumes playback*2
⊕ (▲ (マナー)/▼ (📷))	Adjusting the volume
⊖ (▲ (マナー) (for 1 second or longer))	Plays from the beginning*1*3 Plays the previous music/chapter/movie when pressed within 1 second from the beginning*1*3*4*5
⊖ (▼ (📷) (for 1 second or longer))	Plays the next music/chapter/movie*1*3*4*5
⊖ (for 1 second or longer)	Skips backward*1*3
⊖ (for 1 second or longer)	Skips forward*1*3
⊖ during pause	Pressing ● (Play) after moving the marker starts playback from the position.
i-αppli (6)	Selects the played music/file/chapter*3*4
#/*	Switches the image when multiple images are stored*2
CLR	Stops playback
✉	Uses the function menu→p.329
1	Sets the equalizer
2	Sets the effect
3	Sets the repeat*1*2*4
4	Shuffle ON/OFF*4*6
5	Accesses the site*2
9	Switches the portrait screen and the landscape screen*7

*1 : You cannot perform this operation for Music&Video Channel program supporting synchronized playback with program that is being streamed in the broadcasting wave.
*2 : Available only on the Music or Music&Video Channel program playback.
*3 : You cannot operate i-motion play while downloading Streaming type i-motion and data.
*4 : You cannot operate these if you play it from the "Data acquisition" screen (p.324).
*5 : Plays the previous or next music regardless of the order in the folder or playlist during shuffle playback.
*6 : Available only for Music.
*7 : Available only for i-motion, or Music&Video Channel program of i-motion.

NOTE

- The i-motion volume is set to "Level 10" at the time of purchase. The volume can be selected between "Level 0" and "Level 20", and the setting is retained next time the i-motion is played.
- The volume set for the music player does not affect the ring volumes set in "Ring volume".
- Sound is muted during skipping backward/skipping forward.
- On the Music&Video Channel program, if some playback operations are restricted, the operations are not available (operation with ⊖, mainly).
- Skipping backward/skipping forward cannot be done depending on the data.

Uses the function menu

1 During playback/pause/stop▶ ✉ (MENU)

The cursor moves to the setting menu.
"Guide to music player screen"→p.328

2 Use ⊖ to select the function, ● (Select)

Each function can be set by 1 - 5.→p.329
Press CLR to return to playback/pause/stop.

When a flat-plug stereo earphone set, etc. is connected

You can use the switch to perform the following operations:

Key operation	Action
Once	Play/pause each time you press the switch
Twice in a row during playback	Play the next music/chapter
Three times in a row during playback	Play the previous music/chapter Plays the music from the beginning when the playback time is 3 seconds or longer
1 second or longer during playback	End music player

FUNC Music player screen (p.326)

● You can change the setting during playback.

Action setting

Sound effect……Sets the sound quality and effect.

Equalizer (default: OFF)……Selects the sound quality.

■To change the sound quality in the user setting

▶Hightlight User settings 1 to 3▶[Mail] (Detail)▶Use [Navi] to select frequency▶Use [Navi] to select the gain▶[●] (Set)

■To reset the changed sound quality to the default

▶Hightlight User settings 1 to 3▶[Mail] (Detail)▶[Mail] (FLAT)

Effect (default: OFF)……Selects the effect.

■To change the effect in the user setting

▶Hightlight User settings 1 to 3▶[Mail] (Detail)▶Use [Navi] to select the effect▶Use [Navi] to select the gain▶[●] (Set)

■To modify an existing effect

▶Hightlight User settings 1 to 3▶[Mail] (Detail)▶[Clear] (Mode)▶Select the effect▶[●] (Set)

■To reset the effects to the default of the set mode

▶Hightlight User settings 1 to 3▶[Mail] (Detail)▶[Mail] (Init)

Repeat setting[*1]

OFF (default)……Does not repeat the playback.

All repeat……Repeats the playback of all music in the folder.

Single repeat……Repeats the playback of the playing (paused) music.

Shuffle[*2] (default: OFF) ……Sets ON/OFF of the shuffle playback.

Screen setting[*3]……Specifies the display mode for the playback screen.

Normal screen mode (default)……Plays on the portrait screen.

Full screen mode……Plays on the landscape screen.

Change skin[*2]……Selects a skin for the music player screen.

Set image disp.[*3]……Specifies the display size for images in the portrait screen.

Normal (default)……Displays the image in the actual size.

Fit in display……Adjusts the image size to the display size.

Set repeat play[*4]……Specifies whether to play files continuously in the file order in the folder (to play repeatedly on the FOMA terminal).

ON……Plays files continuously in the file order in the folder.

OFF (default)……Plays only the selected file.

Play menu

Fast[*3]……Plays fast. To return to normal playback, press [Mail] (Play).

Slow[*3]……Plays slowly. To return to normal playback, press [Mail] (Play).

Position to play[*2]……Specifies the part of the music to be played using [Navi]. This function is not available depending on the music.

Chapter list[*4]……Displays the chapter list. Select a chapter to play it.

"Chapter list"→p.322

Detail info

File property[*2]……Displays the file name of the music, playback restriction, whether or not it can be moved to microSD, etc.

i-motion info[*4]……Displays the file name of i-motion, playback restriction, whether or not it can be moved to microSD, etc.

Chapter info[*5]……Displays the chapter title, play time, etc.

Lyric[*2]……Displays the lyric of the music. If the lyrics cannot be displayed on a single page, you can switch the page with [Navi].

Jacket image[*2]……Switches the jacket image of the playing music using [Navi].

Chapter image[*5]……Displays the images/animations stored in the played chapter.

Image[*6]……Always in gray display.

Connect to URL[*1]……Accesses the site using the Web To function if the URL is included.

Change music[*2]……Selects the music to play.

Select file[*4]……Selects the file to play.

Chapter list[*5]……Selects the chapter to play.

Help[*3]……Displays a description of an operation assigned to a key.

*1 : Available only on the Music or Music&Video Channel program playback.
*2 : Available only for music.
*3 : Available only for i-motion, or Music&Video Channel program of i-motion.

*4 : Available only for i-motion
*5 : Available only for Music&Video Channel program.
*6 : i-motion image only. Not available (always in gray out)

NOTE

<Chapter image>
- Images stored in the chapters cannot be saved.

Playing with the FOMA terminal folded

By using , you can operate the music player with the FOMA terminal folded.
- With the FOMA terminal folded, the music or the Music&Video channel program is available for play and the music is only available for activation.

1 (for 1 second or longer)
Starts playback from the music at which the playback was stopped last time.
Operation during the playback→p.329

NOTE
- You cannot use to activate the music player or resume playback during Manner mode (however, it is possible when earphones, etc. are connected).
- When the battery is low, the music player is not activated even when you press for 1 second or longer. In addition, when the playback pauses because of low battery, the playback is not resumed even when you press (open the FOMA terminal to operate).

Indicator display during playback

The indicator display is available for checking the playback status with the FOMA terminal folded.



①Playback status
: During playback : Playback is paused
②Track title and artist name
<Artist name and chapter title> (ticker display)
*: Items in <> are the displayed contents on the Music&Video Channel.

Using the Playlist

You can store music in a playlist and play your favorite music in your favorite order.
- The number of tracks and playlists you can store on the FOMA terminal (FOMA) are as follows:

Tracks	Up to 100
Playlists*	Up to 21 (including a list of all tracks)

*: You can store up to 99 tracks for 1 playlist (except for a list of all tracks).
- You can store the music (Chaku-Uta-Full®) stored on the FOMA terminal, the music (Chaku-Uta-Full®) stored on the microSD memory card, SD-Audio data and WMA data in the same playlist.

Creating a Playlist

1 Playlis list screen (p.332)/music list screen (p.326)▶ch (FUNC)▶"Create playlist"

2 Select a folder
Store multiple music files to a playlist.
"About multiple-choice"→p.38

■ **To create a playlist from the music list screen**
▶Select "Set this/Set select/Set all"
To store all music files in the music list screen to a playlist, select "Set all".

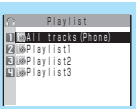
3 Enter the playlist name
The playlist is created and the "Playlist music list" screen appears.

■ **To start playback**
▶● (Play)

Playing a Playlist

1 Folder list screen (p.326)▶“Playlist”

The “Playlist list” screen appears.



Play list

Function menu➡p.332

■ **To play the playlist immediately**

▶Highlight the playlist to play▶ (Play)

2 Select a playlist

The “Playlist music list” screen appears.



Music in playlist

Function menu➡p.332

■ **When “All tracks (phone)” is selected**

The playlist which contains all music (playable music files) stored on the FOMA terminal (Phone) appears.

3 ● (Play)

The playback of the playlist starts and the music are played in the stored order.

NOTE

- When all music files stored on the playlist are deleted, the playlist is also deleted.

FUNC Playlist list screen (p.332)

Create playlist→p.331

Edit playlist……Edits the playlist name. You can enter up to 128 double-byte or 256 single-byte characters.

Copy to playlist……Creates a copy of the playlist in the playlist list.

Search……Searches music in a selected criteria.

Playlist info……Displays the playlist name, number of tracks in the playlist and the playback time of the playlist.

Delete playlist……Selects the deleting method from “Delete this/Delete selected/Delete all”. “About multiple-choice”→p.38

FUNC Playlist music list screen (p.332)

Create playlist→p.331

Edit playlist

- **Sort**……Selects the position to move to and rearranges the music.
- **Add music**……Selects the playlist to move to and add the music to the last of the other playlist. “About multiple-choice”→p.38
- **Release settings**……Selects from “Release this/Release selected/Release all” to release the music from the playlist. “About multiple-choice”→p.38

Search……Searches music in a selected criteria.

Sort……Sorts music in the playlist in a selected criteria.

List setting……Selects a list format from “Title/Title+image”.

File property……Displays the file name of the music, date and time when the music was saved, etc.

Lyric……Displays the lyric of the music. If the lyrics cannot be displayed on a single page, you can switch the page with ⊙.

Jacket image……Displays the jacket image of the music. If there are two or more images, use ⊙ to switch images.

Repeat setting

- **OFF** (default)……Does not repeat the playback.
- **All repeat**……Repeats the playback of all music in the playlist.
- **Single repeat**……Repeats the playback of the playing (paused) music.

Shuffle (default: OFF) ……Sets ON/OFF of the shuffle playback.

Connect to URL……Accesses the site using the Web To function if the URL is included in the music.

NOTE

<Edit playlist>

- Releasing music from the playlist does not delete the original data.

Using the SD-Audio

You can convert the music CD data or music data acquired via music delivery service to SD-Audio data and play it on the FOMA terminal.

- The data format, number of playlists and tracks that can be played on the FOMA terminal are as follows:

File format	MPEG2-AAC (LC)/ADTS Stream
Bit rate	16 to 192 kbps
Tracks	Up to 999
Playlists*	Up to 100 (including a list of all tracks)

*: You can store up to 99 tracks for 1 playlist (except for a list of all tracks).

- If you do not have a microSD memory card, you can purchase one at your local electrical-appliance store.

SD-Jukebox

You can purchase SD-Jukebox from the following web site:
http://www.sense.panasonic.co.jp/PanaSense/special/soft/sd_jukebox/
Supported OS for SD-Jukebox are Windows 2000, Windows XP, and Windows Vista. See the following web site for details about operating environment for SD-Jukebox:
http://panasonic.jp/support/software/sdjb/

Saving the SD-Audio Data on the microSD Memory Card

1 Prepare the following

- PC which satisfies the operational environment for “SD-Jukebox”*1
- microSD memory card reader/writer compatible with the copyright protection function*2
- microSD memory card

*1 : Install “SD-Jukebox” on your PC beforehand.
*2 : Required to write data from the PC to the microSD memory card. You can use the FOMA terminal as the microSD reader/writer using the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 (optional).→p.301

2 Launch “SD-Jukebox” on the PC and convert the music data such as music CD data to AAC format

For how to use “SD-Jukebox”, refer to the help files of “SD-Jukebox”.
To write the already converted music data, go to Step 3.

3 Use “SD-Jukebox” to save the SD-Audio data on the microSD memory card

NOTE

- SD-Audio data cannot be set as the ring tone.

Saving the WMA Data on the microSD Memory Card

“Windows Media Player” enables you to convert the music CD data to WMA data and save it on the microSD memory card.

- WMA data saved on the microSD memory card in another FOMA terminal may not be displayed/played on this FOMA terminal.
- The data format, number of playlists and tracks that can be played on the FOMA terminal are as follows:

File format	WMA9 (Windows Media Audio 9 Standard)
Bit rate	32 to 192 kbps
DRM	Windows Media DRM10 for Portable Devices
Tracks	Up to 999
Playlists*	Up to 100 (including a list of all tracks)

*: You can store up to 999 tracks for 1 playlist.

- Windows Media Player 10/11
  Use Windows XP Service Pack 2 or a later version to use Windows Media Player 10/11. Use Windows Media Player 11 for Windows Vista. For how to operate the software, refer to Windows Media Player 10/11 help.
- If you do not have a microSD memory card, you can purchase one at your local electrical-appliance store.

1 Prepare the following

- PC which satisfies the operational environment for “Windows Media Player”
- microSD memory card

2 USB mode setting screen (p.302)▶“MTP mode”

When set to “MTP mode”, “ ” appears.

3 Connect the FOMA terminal and a PC with the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01

“ ” appears when the microSD memory is inserted and the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 is connected during the MTP mode.

Continued on next page

4 Launch “Windows Media Player” on the PC and convert the music data such as music CD data to WMA format

It may take some time for “Windows Media Player” to recognize the FOMA terminal.

5 Transfer WMA data stored on the PC to the microSD memory card

6 Disconnect the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 after the data transfer

7 Set the USB mode of the FOMA terminal back to “Communication mode”

NOTE

- Napster® application
  You can also use the Napster® application to save the music data.
  - You can download the Napster® application from the following webpage:
    http://www.napster.jp/
  - For detailed information on the Napster® application, visit the following webpage:
    http://www.napster.jp/support/
- WMA data transferred to a microSD memory card via another FOMA terminal may not be displayed/played on N905iμ.
- A microSD memory card that contains WMA data transferred via another FOMA terminal may not be recognized on a PC even in MTP mode. Delete all WMA data (p.297) or format the card (p.301). microSD format deletes music and all other data.

Using Other Functions During Music Playback

<BGM play (background play)>

You can using other functions during music/Music&Video Channel program playback.

- BGM play is not available with Music&Video Channel program of i-motion.

1 Music player screen (p.326)▶☎▶“Switch to BGM”

The standby screen appears and you can use other functions.

■ To end BGM play

Switch the task to the music group, and stop the playback of the music player.

Switching tasks→p.337

■Functions for the music menu

Switch to BGM	Displays the standby screen while playing.
Quit music*1/ Quit Music&Video ch*2	Ends the playback.
Cancel	Hides the menu.

*1 : Available only when a music is played.
*2 : Available only when a program is played.

● Functions available during BGM play

Function	Availability
Voice call/Video phone call/PushTalk	×
Mail	○*1
i-mode	○
i-αppli	△*2
Data Box	△
LifeKit	△
Phonebook	○
Own Data	○
Settings	△
Service	△
Osaifu-Keitai/ToruCa	○

○: Available △: Partially available ×: Unavailable
*1 : When “Receiving setting” of mail is set to “Alarm preferred”, the music playback pauses when receiving a mail (even when set to “Operation preferred”, the music playback pauses when receiving a mail while the standby screen is displayed). When composing i-mode mail, some functions such as “Activate camera” are not available.
*2 : Activating i-αppli pauses music.

Other Convenient Functions

Multi Access ..... Multi access 336
Multitask ..... Multitask 337
Display Data in Chronological Order ..... Life history viewer 338
Keyword Search ..... Quick Search 339
Using the Alarm Function ..... Alarm 339
Managing Schedule ..... Schedule 340
Adding To Do List Entries ..... To Do list 343
Setting the Alarm Mode ..... Alarm setting 345
Reading Out Received Mails or Alarm Information 346
Storing Your Own Name and Image ..... My Profile 347
Recording Your and the Other Party's Voice ..... Voice memo (in-call)/Voice memo (in-standby) 349
Recording and Playing Alarm Tones and On Hold Tones ..... Voice announce 350
Checking Call Data ..... Call data 350
Setting the Upper Charge Limit to Notify an Alarm ..... Notice designate calls 352
Using the FOMA Terminal as a Calculator ..... Calculator 352
Composing Text Memo ..... Text memo 353
Using Dictionaries ..... Dictionary 353
Using an Earphone/Microphone with Switch ..... Earphone/microphone with Switch 355
Connecting Earphones and Selecting Person to Call ..... Headset sw to dial 356
Automatically Receiving Calls with an Earphone/Microphone Connected ..... Auto answer setting 356
Selecting a Microphone When an Earphone/Microphone is Connected ..... Select microphone 357
Resetting the Function Settings ..... Reset settings 357
Resetting to the Default Settings of the FOMA Terminal ..... Initialize 357

Multi Access <Multi access>

Multi access is a function that allows voice calls, packet communication and SMS to be conducted at the same time. This enables you to receive mail during a voice call or make a voice call while using the i-mode services.
“Multi Access Combination Patterns”→p.422

Communication lines that can be used at a time

Using the Multi access function, the FOMA terminal can use the 3 communication lines listed below at a time.

Type of communication	Lines used
Voice call	1 line
i-mode, i-αppli or i-mode mail	1 line for one of the types
Packet communication via PC	
SMS	1 line

NOTE

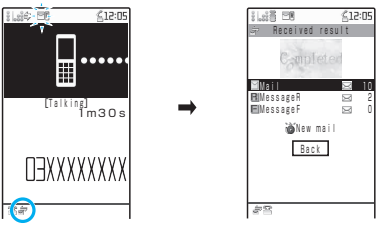
- Communication charges are applied for each of the lines used during Multi access communication.

When you receive a call during communication

Receiving an i-mode mail during a voice call

When you receive an i-mode mail during a voice call, the in-call screen remains displayed while receiving the i-mode mail. You can then read the i-mode mail without interrupting your call.

1 (MULTI)▶Select “ ” (Transmission)
The reception result screen for the i-mode mail appears.
Switching tasks→p.337



2 Checking the i-mode mail
Reading i-mode mail→p.202

3 (MULTI)▶Select “ ” (Talking)
The screen changes to the voice call screen.

Receiving a voice call during i-mode or packet communication

When you receive a voice call while using i-mode, receiving or sending an i-mode mail or using packet communication with the FOMA terminal and PC connected, the voice call ringing screen appears and you can answer the call without ending i-mode or packet communication.

1
The In-call screen appears, and you can talk.

■ **To return to the i-mode screen without answering the voice call**
▶ (MULTI)▶Select “ ” (Browser)
The caller hears ringing without a message.

2 To end the call, press
The call is ended and the i-mode screen reappears.

■ **To return to the i-mode screen without ending a voice call**
▶ (MULTI)▶Select “ ” (Browser)

To use other type of communication while communicating

You can use another type of communication without interrupting your current communications.

- To switch screens during Multi access, select the desired function on the task icon display area. →p.337

Making a voice call during i-mode

While connecting to i-mode or sending/receiving a mail, you can make a voice call without ending i-mode.

1 During i-mode▶ (MULTI) (1 second or longer)
The standby screen appears.

2 Make a voice call
Making voice calls→p.50

3 To end the call, press
The call is ended and the i-mode screen reappears.

■ **To return to the i-mode screen without ending a voice call**
▶ (MULTI)▶Select “ ” (Browser)

Multitask <Multitask>

Multitask enables you to use multiple functions at the same time. Up to 3 functions can be performed at once, one from each of the main menu groups shown below.*

*: Except Music.

“Multitask Combination Patterns”→p.423



In-use task icons

Group	Main menu item (task)
Mail group	Mail
i-mode group	i-mode
i-αppli group	i-αppli
Settings group	Settings, Service
Tools group	Data Box, LifeKit, Phonebook, Own Data
Music	MUSIC

- While receiving a Music&Video Channel program, 1 function enters the operated mode and the task icon “ ” appears.
- The voice call charge continues to increase while you are concurrently using another function during a voice call.

Activating tasks (functions)

1 While using a task▶ (MULTI) (1 second or longer)

The standby screen appears. However, the standby screen may not appear depending on the active task.

2 Select a task from a group of which tasks are not running

■ To activate a task from the main menu

▶ ▶ ▶ (MENU)▶Select a task→p.31

■ To activate a task using the menu number

▶ ▶ ▶ (MENU)▶Enter the menu number of the task you want to activate→p.402

■ To access the Mail menu

▶ →p.188

■ To access the i-mode menu

▶ →p.166

NOTE

- Some functions are called and activated as other group’s function.
- In the following cases, 1 task is added to compose a mail while viewing another mail.
  - Accessing the Mail menu to compose a mail
  - Accessing the Mail menu to compose SMS
  - Using a template to create a Deco-mail
  - Using Reply/Reply with quote/Forward for a received mail
  - Editing a sent mail
  - Editing a draft mail

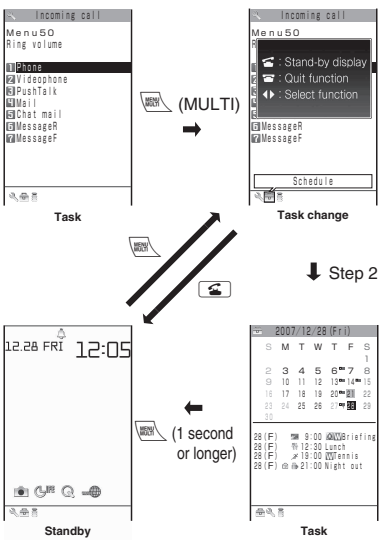
Switching tasks

When you are running multiple tasks, you can switch them to change an active task.

1 While using multiple tasks▶ (MULTI)

The “Task change” screen appears.

2 Use to highlight a task icon you want to switch▶● (Select)



Ending tasks

■To end a task

- Display the task screen you want to end▶[☎]
- On the Task change screen, highlight the task icon you want to end▶[☎]▶"Quit selected"

■To end all tasks

- On the Task change screen▶[☎]▶"Quit all function"

Display Data In Chronological Order

<Life history viewer>

You can refer to images you saved in the past, send/receive history and similar information, arranged by date and time.

- The types of data which can be viewed are as follows:
  - JPEG still images
  - movie, i-motion
  - Schedule
  - Mail send/receive history

1 [MENU/MULTI]▶"LifeKit"▶"Life history viewer"

The "Life history list" screen appears.
Use [◉] to scroll data up and down.
Viewing the Life history list screen→p.338


Life history list

Function menu➡p.339

■ Enlarging/reducing the time axis

▶[📷] (Enl.)/[✉] (Red.)

2 Select a data

The "Life history viewer" screen appears.
Stills and other images are displayed, while movies and i-motion are previewed. For other data, information on the data is displayed.


Life history viewer

Function menu➡p.339

3 [✉] (Open)

The function relevant to the data type starts up, and the data is displayed.

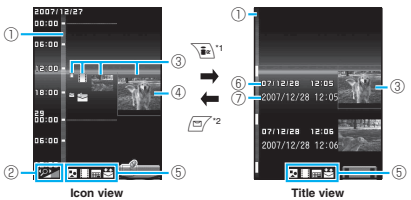
NOTE

- If some data is locked, security code entry is required regardless of the display setting.

NOTE

- The save date/time may not appear properly depending on the downloaded data.

Viewing the Life history list screen



*1 : The title is only displayed if the time axis has been enlarged. The time axis is enlarged each time you press the key.
*2 : The time axis is reduced if icon display is used.

①Time axis
②Time axis status display
to to , matching the time interval
③Icons
Still pictures, images, Movie, i-motion: Thumbnail image
Schedule: Schedule icon
Mail send/receive history: Mail send/receive history icon
④Information on the data
Still picture, image, Movie, i-motion: No display
Schedule: Schedule content
Mail send/receive history: Sender for received mail, recipient for sent mail
⑤Types of data subject to display
: Still picture, image
: Movie, i-motion
: Schedule
: Received mail history
: Sent mail history
: Mail send/receive history
⑥Date and time
Still picture, image, movie, i-motion: Date and time shot/Date and time updated/Date and time saved
Schedule: Start date and time
Sent/received mail history: Time sent or received
⑦Title
Still picture, image, Movie, i-motion: Title
Schedule: Schedule content
Mail send/receive history: Sender for received mail, recipient for sent mail

FUNC Life history list screen (p.338)/ Life history viewer screen (p.338)

Disp. enlarge*……Displays the Life history viewer screen.

Open……The function relevant to the data type starts up, and the data is displayed.

Display setting……For each type of data, sets whether to display it in the life history viewer.

Add desktop icon* →p.115

Enlargement*……Enlarges the time axis.

Reduction*……Reduces the time axis.

Reload……Refreshes the displayed information to the latest.

*: This can only be used on the Life history list screen.

Keyword Search <Quick Search>

Start the search window from the desktop icon, or from any function, they use an i-mode or other search site with the keyword you need, to search quickly for all kinds of information and data.

- Quick Search can be started from the function menus of the following functions:
  - Viewing screens for i-mode, full browser (Standard type), screen memo and i-Channel
  - Received mail, MessageR/F detail screen and i-mode mail composition screen
  - Schedule detail

<Example: Making a quick search while using i-mode>

1 Press ch (FUNC) during i-mode▶"Quick Search"

The "Quick Search" screen appears.

2 Select any item

Enter keyword……Enters a keyword directly.

Quote keyword……Select keywords in a range.

History……Selects a keyword from the history of previous searches.

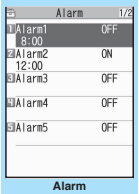
iMenu……Displays the iMenu screen.

Using the Alarm Function <Alarm>

- You can store up to 10 alarms.

1 MENU ▶"LifeKit"▶"Alarm"

The "Alarm" screen appears.
If you have set an alarm before, the last settings are displayed.



Alarm

Function menu➡p.340

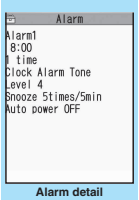
■ **To switch ON/OFF with the last settings**

▶Highlight the setting item ▶ (ON/OFF)

On and Off switches each time you press .

■ **To check the previous settings**

▶Highlight the setting item ▶●



Alarm detail

Function menu➡p.340

2 Highlight the item to set▶ (Edit)

3 Select any item:

Edit title……Enters the title of the alarm. You can enter up to 6 double-byte or 12 single-byte characters.

Time setting……Enters the time at which the alarm will sound.

Repeat……Sets the alarm repetitions.

1 time……The alarm sounds only once.

Daily ( )……The alarm sounds every day.

Select day (W)……The alarm sounds every week on the specified day. "About multiple-choice"→p.38

Alarm tone……Selects the alarm tone from clock alarm tone or folders of melody, i-motion, music, etc.
Select "OFF" to disable the alarm tone.

Volume……Sets the alarm tone volume with .

Illumination……Sets the flashing color for incoming call. Set to "off" when the illumination is not blinked.

Continued on next page

Pattern……Sets the flashing pattern for incoming call.

Snooze setting……Specifies whether a snooze (repeating) alarm is set or not.

ON……Enters the number of times for ringing (01 to 10 times) and the ringing interval (01 to 10 minutes).
The alarm tone (about 1 minute) rings repeatedly for the set number of times in the set interval.

OFF……Enters the ringing time (01 to 10 minutes).
Sounds the alarm tone continuously for the specified time.

Auto power ON……Specifies whether the FOMA terminal is automatically turned on or not when the time for an alarm is reached.

4 (Finish)

NOTE

- When the FOMA terminal is automatically turned on to notify you of an alarm, if you set a melody, i-motion or music downloaded from sites as alarm tone, the "Clock Alarm Tone" is played.
- Before entering an area such as an aircraft or hospital where there is electronic equipment that uses extremely precise control systems or very low signal levels and the use of mobile phones is prohibited, set the "Auto power ON" setting to "OFF" and then turn the FOMA terminal off.

FUNC Alarm screen (p.339)/Alarm detail screen (p.339)

Edit……Edits the alarm.

Display detail*……Displays the alarm content.

Finish (Set this)……Activates the alarm.

Release this……Disables one alarm.

Release all……Disables all set alarms.

*: Only the alarm list screen is available.

Managing Schedule <Schedule>

If you add an event to your schedule, an alarm tone sounds at the specified date and time and the FOMA terminal displays an animation and message notifying you of the details stored for the event. You can also add holidays and anniversaries. Stored scheduled events and holidays can be quickly checked on the FOMA terminals calendar. You can switch the calendar display mode between 1-month and 1-week to view the number or details of scheduled or To Do list events for a given day.

- The FOMA terminal supports from January 1, 2004 to December 31, 2037.

Adding schedule entries

You can organize your schedule in variety of ways, such as storing regularly scheduled events such as weekly meetings on a set day every week or setting alarm tones and animations that match the scheduled event.

- You can store up to 500 entries. You can also store multiple scheduled events for a day.
- Schedule alarms→p.345

1 MENU ▶"LifeKit"▶"Schedule"
The "Schedule" screen appears.



Schedule
Function menu➡p.341

2 (New)▶"Schedule"

3 **Select any item:**

Edit schedule……Enters the scheduled event details and selects an icon. You can enter up to 256 double-byte or 512 single-byte characters.
The entered details are displayed during alarm notification.

Date setting (from/to)……Sets the start/end date and time for the scheduled event.

Repeat……Sets the scheduled event repetitions.

1 time……The event is only set for the specified date and time.

Daily ( )……The event is set to repeat every day.

Select day (W)……The event is set to repeat every week on the specified day. "About multiple-choice"→p.38

Alarm……Specifies the alarm notification settings used when the starting date and time are reached.

ON……An alarm notification is given at the starting date and time.

ON/Set time……Sets how many minutes before the start date and time the alarm is given (01 to 99 minutes).

OFF……No alarm notification is given when the starting date and time are reached.

Alarm tone……Selects the alarm tone from clock alarm tone or folders of melody, i-motion, music, etc.
Select "OFF" to disable alarm tone.

Illumination……Sets the flashing color for incoming call. Set to "off" when the illumination is not blinked.

Pattern……Sets the flashing pattern for incoming call.

Edit summary……Enters the summary of the scheduled event. You can enter up to 20 double-byte or 40 single-byte characters.
The entered summary appears on the screen during alarm notification.

4 **(Finish)**

NOTE

- When set to "ON/Set time", the alarm notification is given only at the specified date and time before the scheduled event (01 to 99 minutes before the starting date and time). The alarm notification is not given at the date and time set for the scheduled event.
- Scheduled events can be stored to notify the alarm at the same date and time only with the setting combination of "Daily"/"Select day" and "1 time" (no repeats). In this case, the scheduled event with the "1 time" setting has priority.
- If the day of the week set as the starting time and the day of the week set in the Repeat setting are different, the day set in the Repeat setting has priority and the scheduled event is added on the first specified day after the starting time.

FUNC Schedule screen (p.340)

New……"Adding schedule entries"→p.340
"Adding holidays and anniversaries"→p.342

Weekly display⇔Monthly display……"Changing the Schedule display mode"→p.341

Icon display……Selects an icon and displays the scheduled event, holiday or anniversary by icon. Repeating scheduled events (D or W) are displayed as a single item.

User icon setting→p.342

Switch To Do list……Switches to the To Do list screen (p.343).

No. of schedules……Displays the number of stored schedule entries, holidays and anniversaries. In Secret mode/Secret data only mode, you can also check the number of records kept as the secret data.

iC trans. all→p.310

Send all Ir data→p.308

Reset holiday……Resets the national public holidays to default.

Delete……Selects the deleting method from "Delete selected/Delete all/Delete past".
"About multiple-choice"→p.38
- When "Delete past" is selected, all the entries before the data with the cursor on the schedule screen are deleted.
- When "Delete all/Delete past" is selected, select the item from "Schedule/Holiday/Anniversary/All".

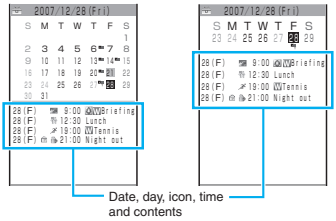
NOTE

- Selecting "Holiday" or "All" of "Delete all" resets the holidays to the default settings at the time of purchase.

Changing the Schedule display mode

The Schedule can be displayed either as "Monthly display" or "Weekly display". By pressing ⊛ to highlight a particular date, you can check icons and the number of scheduled events and To Do list stored for the selected date.

1 **(Disp SW)**
Press (Disp SW) to toggle "Monthly Display" and "Weekly Display".



Blue dates: Saturdays
Red dates: Sundays, public holidays and holidays
Pink dates: Anniversaries
__:Today
□:Scheduled event stored for the morning
■:Scheduled event stored for the afternoon
T: Stored To Do list

Public holiday dates are generated according to the the Public Holiday Law and revisions to the Elder Law(up to Law No. 43, 2005). The Spring and Autumnal Equinox Days are determined by the government on February 1st in the previous year and may differ (as of October 2007).

Adding holidays and anniversaries

- You can store up to 100 holidays and anniversaries. However, the national public holidays stored on the FOMA terminal at the time of purchase are not included in this number.
- You can store only 1 holiday or anniversary per day.

<Example: Storing an anniversary>

1 Schedule screen (p.340)▶ (New)▶ "Anniversary"

■ **To add a holiday**

▶"Holiday"

2 Select any item:

Date setting……Enters the date of the added holiday or anniversary.

Repeat……Sets the holiday or anniversary repetitions.

1 time……The holiday or anniversary is only set for that year.

Annually ( )……The holiday or anniversary is set for every year.

Reminder*……Provides "1week before/3days before/1day before/on the day" to start reminding for an anniversary. At twelve midnight on the day to be reminded, Reminder flashes an incoming illumination, indicates the desktop icon on the screen and informs you. →pp.113, 117

Edit holiday/Edit anniversary……Enters the details of the holiday or anniversary. You can enter up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters.

*: Displayed only for the Edit anniversary screen.

3 (Finish)

Setting your favorite image as your user icon

You can set an image or animation stored in My picture as a user icon. Icons set as user icons are displayed as " " to " " in the icon selection display. When you set a user icon, the selected image or animation is displayed when the alarm notification is given. " ★ " appears on the indicator display.

- You can store up to 5 user icons.

1 Schedule screen (p.340)▶ (FUNC)▶"User icon setting"▶"<Not recorded>"

■ **To change the previously stored user icons**

▶Select the items already set

■ **To clear all the user icon settings**

▶"Release all"▶"YES"

Settings can be cleared only when user icons have already been set.

2 Select a folder

If there are user-created folders, images can also be selected from these.

■ **To release the icon that is set to the schedule**

▶"Release this"▶"YES"

■ **To release the icon that is not set to the schedule**

▶"Release this"

3 Select an image

The selected image is previewed, then the screen returns to the user icon list after a while.

Checking scheduled event, holiday or anniversary

You can check scheduled event, holiday or anniversary.

1 Schedule screen (p.340)▶Select the date on which the scheduled event, holiday or anniversary is stored

The "Schedule list" screen appears.

In the list display, the stored contents and the settings are described with the following icons.



Schedule list

Function menu➡p.343

: Scheduled event (Scheduled event icon is displayed)

: Holiday

: Anniversary

: To Do list

: Alarm

: Daily repeating event

: Weekly repeating event on a specified day of the week

: Annual repeating event

: Scheduled event over a day (0:00 to 23:59)

❷ Select an item



Function menu➡p.343

Schedule list screen (p.342)/ FUNC Scheduled event, holiday or anniversary detail screen (p.343)

New……"Adding schedule entries"→p.340
"Adding holidays and anniversaries"→p.342

Edit……Edits the scheduled event, holiday or anniversary.

Copy……Copies the scheduled event, holiday or anniversary. When the copied entry has a repeat setting, the repeat setting is released when the entry is pasted.

Quick Search→p.339

Icon display……Selects an icon and displays the scheduled event, holiday or anniversary by icon. Repeating scheduled events (D or W) are displayed as a single item.

User icon setting→p.342

Switch To Do list……Switches to the To Do list screen (p.343).

Release secret……Changes the data stored in the Secret mode/Secret data only mode to the normal data. →p.128

Compose message→p.188

Attach to mail……Composes an i-mode mail with the schedule attached.

Add desktop icon→p.115

iC transmission→p.309

Send Ir data→p.307

iC trans. all→p.310

Send all Ir data→p.308

Copy to microSD→p.298

Delete……Selects the deleting method from "Delete this/ Delete selected/Delete all/Delete past". "About multiple-choice"→p.38

- When "Delete past" is selected, all the entries before the displayed data are deleted.
- When "Delete all/Delete past" is selected, select the item from "Schedule/Holiday/Anniversary/All".

Adding To Do List Entries

<To Do list>

You can manage your schedule by adding events to To Do list. You can also set alarms for events.

- You can set from January 1, 2004 to December 31, 2037.

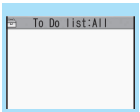
Adding/editing entries

- You can store up to 100 entries.
- You must enter "Contents". You cannot store an To Do list entry with no "Contents".
- To Do list alarms→p.345

<Example: To add an entry>

❶ MENU/MULTI ▶"LifeKit"▶"To Do list"

The "To Do list" screen appears.



To Do list

Function menu➡p.344

❷ ch (FUNC)▶"New"

■ **To edit an entry**
▶ch (FUNC)▶"Edit"
Software key displays (New) when no entry is stored and (Edt) when an entry is stored.

❸ Select any item

Edit To Do list……Enters the contents for the entry. You can enter up to 100 double-byte or 200 single-byte characters.

D Due date……Sets the due date for an entry.

Enter date……Enters the date and time.

Choose date……Selects a date from the calendar, then enters the time.

No date……No due date is set.

P Priority……Selects the priority for the entry from "H/ L/None".

Category……Selects a category for the entry from "None/Personal/Holiday/Travel/Business/ Meeting".

Alarm……Specifies the alarm notification settings used when the due date is reached.

ON……An alarm notification is given at the due date.

ON/Set time……Sets how many minutes before the due date the alarm is given (01 to 99 minutes).

OFF……No alarm notification is given when the due date is reached.

Continued on next page

Alarm tone……Selects the alarm tone from clock alarm tone or folders of melody, i-motion, music, etc.
Select “OFF” to disable the alarm tone.

Illumination……Sets the flashing color for incoming call. Set to “off” when the illumination is not blinked.

Pattern……Sets the flashing pattern for incoming call.

Completion date*……Sets the completion date for an entry.

- **Enter date**……Enters the date.
- **Choose date**……Selects a date from the calendar.
- **No date**……No completion date is set.

*: Only usable when an existing stored entry with a “Status” of “Completion” is edited.

4 (Finish)

NOTE

- When set to “ON/Set time”, the alarm notification is given only at the set time before the To Do list event (01 to 99 minutes in advance). The alarm notification is not given at the date and time set for the To Do list event.

FUNC To Do list screen (p.343)/To Do list detail screen (p.344)

New/Edit→p.343

Switch schedule……Switches to the schedule screen (p.340).

Change Status……Selects an entry status from “Plan/Acceptance/Request/Provisional plan/Confirmation/Denial/Completion/Substitution”.
When you select “Completion”, set the completion date.

Category display*……Selects entries from “All/None/Personal/Holiday/Travel/Business/Meeting”, and displays them by category.

Sort/Filter*……Sorts entries in a specified order or displays only the specified events with the filter function.

Add desktop icon*→p.115

Attach to mail……Composes an i-mode mail with the entry attached.

iC transmission→p.309

Send Ir data→p.307

iC trans. all*→p.310

Send all Ir data*→p.308

Copy to microSD→p.298

Delete……Selects the deleting method from “Delete this/Delete selected*/Delete completed*/Delete all*”. “About multiple-choice”→p.38

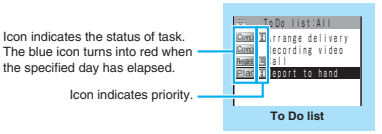
- When “Delete Completed” is selected, all the completed entries are deleted.

*: Available only for the To Do list screen.

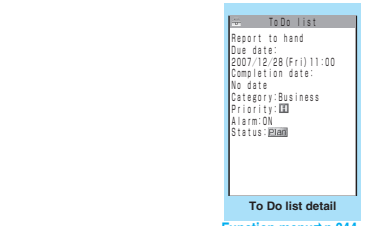
Checking entries

1 To Do list screen (p.343)▶Select an entry

The “To Do list detail” screen appears.



Function menu➡p.344



Function menu➡p.344

Setting the Alarm Mode

<Alarm setting>

You can select either “Operation preferred” or “Alarm preferred” as the alarm notification setting for “Alarm”, “Schedule” or “To Do list”.

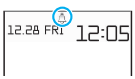
1 MENU ▶“Settings”▶“Clock”▶“Alarm setting”▶“Operation preferred” or “Alarm preferred”

When set to “Operation preferred”, the alarm is given only when the standby screen is displayed. When set to “Alarm preferred”, the alarm is given even when operating the FOMA terminal or during talking.

Alarm notification actions

When you set an alarm

When you set an “Alarm”, “Schedule” or “To Do list” alarm, the icon appears on the standby screen.



■ An alarm set for today (excluding times that have already passed)

The “ ” icon is displayed.

■ An alarm set for tomorrow or later

The “ ” icon is displayed.

When the specified time is reached

The alarm is issued with the action set for each function under “Alarm setting” (p.346).

- When an i-motion is set as the alarm tone, the image and sound are used for the alarm notification.
  The animation displayed for alarm differs depending on selected icon and category.

NOTE

- The volume of the “Schedule” and “To Do list” alarms is determined by the “Phone” setting in “Ring volume”.
- In-call Clock Alarm Tone volume is the one set in In-call volume.
- The alarm tone during a call is not played in Snooze even when the Snooze setting is set to “ON”.
- Even if an i-motion is set for “Alarm tone”, the alarm is issued with the Clock Alarm Tone and animation if the i-motion cannot start during a call.

<Alarm notification priority sequence>

- If “Alarm”, “Schedule” or “To Do list” alarms are set at the same time, alarm priority is assigned as follows:
  ①Alarm ②To Do list ③Schedule
  If the alarm notification fails, the “ Miss ” (Missed alarm) desktop icon appears on the standby screen.

To stop the alarm tone

■ Alarm

When the Snooze setting is set to “OFF”
Pressing any key stops the alarm tone and the animation/i-motion. Pressing any key again emits the release tone “pipip” and the display disappears.
When the Snooze setting is set to “ON”
Pressing any key stops the alarm tone and the animation/i-motion, an alarm message “Snooze...” appears, then the alarm is notified again in the set ringing interval (minutes). Pressing ☎ while “Snooze...” appears emits the release tone “pipip” and the snooze is canceled.

■ Schedule/To Do list

Pressing any key stops the alarm tone, animation or i-motion, and the alarm message remains displayed. Pressing any key again clears the alarm message. However, if you press the side keys when the FOMA terminal is folded, the alarm notification display is not cleared.

■ If you receive a call during alarm notification

Alarm notification stops and the FOMA terminal receives the call. The “Alarm” Snooze setting is also canceled.

NOTE

- Snooze is canceled in the following cases:
  - When you receive a voice, videophone or PushTalk call
  - When the Alarm, Schedule or To Do list alarm is notified when “Alarm preferred” is selected in “Alarm setting”

Checking alarm details when notification fails

If the alarm notification fails, the “ Miss ” (Missed alarm) desktop icon appears on the standby screen. You can check the details of the missed alarm (Missed alarm info) from the desktop icon.

1 On the standby screen▶●▶Select “ Miss ” (Missed alarm)

The missed alarm information for “Alarm”, “Schedule” or “To Do list” is displayed.

■ To clear “ Miss ”

▶CLR (1 second or longer)

Once you clear “ Miss ”, you can no longer check the missed alarm information.

Continued on next page

2 Check the details▶CLR

The standby screen reappears and the "Miss" (Missed alarm) desktop icon disappears.

Alarm action

■On the standby screen

- Alarm

  The alarm sounds for the set duration (01 to 10 minutes). When the Snooze setting is set to "ON", the alarm tone sounds repeatedly for the set number of times (01 to 10 in 2 digits) in the set interval (01 to 10 minutes in 2 digits) for about 1 minute. An animation/i-motion appears on the display and an animation appears on the indicator display.
- Schedule/To Do list

  The alarm tone sounds repeatedly for about 5 minutes, and an animation/i-motion appears on the display and an animation appears on the indicator display.

■When the FOMA terminal is turned off

- Alarm

  When "Auto power ON" is set to "ON", the FOMA terminal is turned on automatically and notifies you of the alarm. When set to "OFF", the power is not turned on and no alarm notification is given. The "Miss" (Missed alarm) desktop icon is not displayed even after the FOMA terminal is turned on.
- Schedule/To Do list

  No alarm notification is given even when the specified time is reached. However, the setting remains effective.

■When a call is in progress*

The clock alarm tone ("pipipi...") sounds through the FOMA terminal's earpiece 3 times. Animations appear on the display.

■During i-mode use or sending/receiving mail*

Alarm is performed as in "On the standby screen".

■When an earphone/microphone is connected

Alarm is performed as in "On the standby screen". The alarm tone sounds from the earphone or speaker according to the "Headset usage setting".

■When Dial lock/Omakase Lock/Original lock is set

- Alarm

  The alarm is not notified even when the set time is reached. When the FOMA terminal is turned off, it is not turned on even when the set time is reached and the "Miss" (Missed alarm) desktop icon does not appear even after the lock is released. The "Miss" (Missed alarm) desktop icon appears when Original lock is set, but it appears after the lock is released when Dial lock/Omakase Lock is set.
- Schedule/To Do list

  The alarm is not notified even when the set time is reached. The "Miss" (Missed alarm) desktop icon appears when Original lock is set, but it appears after the lock is released when Dial lock/Omakase Lock is set.

* Operations when "Alarm preferred" is set. If "Operation preferred" is set, the "Miss" (Missed alarm) desktop icon appears on the standby screen.

Reading Out Received Mails or Alarm Information

When a mail is received or an alarm is notified, you can have the FOMA terminal read out the contents.

NOTE

- The voice may be heard by others while reading out, so move to an area where it will not disturb other people.
- The FOMA terminal reads out at the volume level set in "Phone" in "Ring volume". When set to "Silent" or "Step", messages are read out at the "Level 2" volume.

Having the FOMA terminal read out mail

- Set "Read out received mail" under "Read out setting" to "ON" beforehand. You can select a voice with "Select voice".
- Mails are read out only when "Select language" is set to "日本語" (Japanese).

Reading out a new message using the side key when the FOMA terminal is folded

When "✉" appears on the indicator display, mails can be read out with the FOMA terminal folded.

- To have the folded FOMA terminal read out the mail, set Side key guard to "Enable when folded".

1 Press [side key] with the FOMA terminal folded ▶Press [side key] again within 10 seconds

The FOMA terminal starts to read out the mail or chat mail message.

■When "Missed call/new mail check settings" is set to "OFF"

The FOMA terminal starts to read out when [side key] is pressed with the FOMA terminal folded.

Reading out a new message when the FOMA terminal is opened

Mails can be read out when:

- You receive a mail/chat mail with the FOMA terminal opened and the reception screen appears
- You perform “Check new messages” and the checking result screen appears
- The received mail detail screen appears

<Example: When Check new messages is performed>

1 Press ✉ while the checking result screen is displayed

The FOMA terminal starts to read out the received mail or chat mail message.

■ When you receive multiple mails or chat mails at the same time

The FOMA terminal reads out mails in reverse chronological order of reception date. Pressing ⟳ during reading out enables the FOMA terminal to read out the next mail. After reading out a mail, the terminal automatically starts reading out the next mail.

NOTE

- Can not read out with pressing 📱.
- When you press ⟳ during reading out, the FOMA terminal emits a beep sound before reading out the next mail. If there is no more mail to read out, the FOMA terminal emits the “pipip” tone and ends the reading out.
- A new mail/chat mail is not read out:
  - When a mail-connected i-αppli mail or SMS report is received
  - During a call or communication (except packet communication)
  - In Manner mode and no equipment such as a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected
  - While Music Player is active
- If the senders name and e-mail address are stored in the phonebook, the message is read out after the voice notification “○○さんからのメール” (This is from XX). However, the voice notification is not given on the received mail detail screen.

Reading out the alarm contents during the alarm notification

When you receive an alarm notification while the FOMA terminal is folded, pressing 📱 during the alarm notification stops the alarm and reads out the alarm contents.

- The FOMA terminal reads out the contents only when “Missed call/new mail check settings” is set to “Voice”.

1 📱 during alarm notification

The FOMA terminal starts to read out.

The FOMA terminal reads out the following contents:

Alarm type	Contents
Alarm	Current time
Schedule	Up to 20 characters of the schedule summary or contents
To Do list	Up to 20 characters of the event contents

NOTE

- If you press 📱 while reading out, the FOMA terminal stops reading out.
- Schedules stored as secret data are not read out (except in “Secret mode” or “Secret data only mode”).

Storing Your Own Name and Image <My Profile>

You can store your own personal information such as your name, home phone number and e-mail address. Stored personal information provides the FOMA terminal with a way of confirming that you are the owner and can also be quoted in the Text entry (edit) screen.

- You cannot change or delete the FOMA terminals own phone number.
- Items other than Own number are stored on the FOMA terminal. If you insert another FOMA card (UIM), the data stored on the FOMA terminal are displayed.

Displaying My Profile

When this function is activated, it displays only your name, the FOMA terminals own phone number and the first e-mail address.

Continued on next page

1 MENU ▶“LifeKit”▶“My Profile”

The “My Profile” screen appears.
If you have stored your personal data such as your home phone number or address, you can display all the data by selecting “Display all data” from the function menu and entering security code.



My Profile

Function menu➡p.348

NOTE

- When 2in1 is in dual mode, press ⊙ on the My Profile screen to display Number B information.
  A appears for Number A My Profile, and
  B for Number B My Profile.
- Reset My Profile in B mode when you exchange the FOMA card (UIM) while using 2in1. →p.348

FUNC My Profile screen (p.348)

Edit →p.348

Display all data……Use ⊙ to check the details.

Copy name……Copies the name stored in My Profile. The copied name can be pasted into the text entry and other screens. “Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text” →p.367

Copy phone number[*1]……Copies the currently displayed phone number.
The copied phone number can be pasted into the text entry and other screens. “Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text” →p.367

Attach to mail[*2]……Composes an i-mode mail with the My Profile data attached.

Run i-αppli[*3]……Displays the supported i-αppli list screen.

Read a map[*3]……Uses the location information stored in My profile to connect to the site.

Paste to mail[*3]……Composes a new mail with the URL of the location information pasted into the i-mode mail message.

iC transmission →p.309

Send Ir data →p.307

Copy to microSD →p.298

Big font⇔Standard font……Switches the character size of the displayed name.

Check 2in1[*4]……Obtains information on Number B and stores it in the My Profile screen of Number B.

Reset……Resets (deletes) My Profile except for your own number and restores the default settings set at the time of purchase.

Delete phone No.[*5]……Deletes the currently displayed phone number.

*1 : Depending on the selected item, one of “Copy mail add./Copy address/Copy loc. Info/Copy birthday/Copy memorandums” appears.
*2 : Available only when displaying all data.
*3 : Available only when highlighting the location information during “Display all data”.
*4 : Available only while My Profile screen of Number B in 2in1 is displayed.
*5 : Depending on the selected item, one of “Delete mail add./Delete address/Delete loc. Info/Delete birthday/Delete memorandums/Delete image” appears.

Storing My Profile

1 My Profile screen (p.348)▶✉ (Edit)▶Enter your security code

2 Select any item

FN **Last name**……Enters your last name. You can enter up to 16 double-byte or 32 single-byte characters which include kanji characters, hiragana, katakana, alphabet, numbers, pictographs and N.

R **Reading**……As the reading is entered automatically when you enter your last name, change it if necessary. You can enter up to 32 characters including single-byte katakana, alphabets, numbers, symbols and reading of the first name.

N **First name**……Enters your first name in the same way as your last name.

R **Reading**……As the reading is entered automatically when you enter your first name in the same way as your last name, change it if necessary.

☎ **Phone number**……Adds a phone number other than the FOMA terminals own number and selects an icon. You can enter up to 26 digits for the phone number.
When you store a new phone number, the “☎ <Add>” option appears in the My Profile edit screen. Select this option to store an additional phone number.

✉ **Mail address**……Enters the e-mail address and selects an icon. You can enter up to 50 single-byte alphabets, numbers and symbols.
If the mail address is not stored, you can acquire the set mail address from the i-mode Center automatically by selecting “Acquire Automatically”.
Once you have stored the first e-mail address, the “✉ <Add>” option appears on the My Profile edit screen. Select this option to store an additional e-mail address.

Address……Enters the zip code and address (prefecture/city/street/apartment name) in order. Enter the 7 single-byte numbers for ZIP codes. You can enter up to 50 double-byte or 100 single-byte kanji characters, hiragana, katakana, alphabets, numbers and pictographs for the address other than the Zip code.

Location information……Stores the present location by GPS or from Location history. Select “Location info detail” to check the stored information. Select “Delete location info” to delete the information.

Birthday……Enters the birthday (year, month and day).
Any year from 1800 to 2099 can be set.
At twelve midnight on the birthday added, Reminder flashes an incoming illumination, indicates the desktop icon on the screen and informs you. →p.117

Memorandums……Enters a memo (short note). You can enter up to 100 double-byte or 200 single-byte characters which include kanji characters, hiragana, katakana, alphabets, numbers and pictographs.

Image……Shoots a still image with the camera or selects an image from My picture to display on My Profile. Select Release this to release the set still image.

3 (Finish)

NOTE

- When you change your own e-mail address or store a secret code, also change the mail address of this function (it is not changed automatically).

Quoting the personal information (My Profile)

Storing personal information allows you to identify your FOMA terminal and quote the stored information on the Text entry (edit) screen or i-mode.

<Example: To quote personal data on the i-mode site>
The items to select vary depending on the site.

1 Display the site to quote personal data▶Select “Quote My Profile”▶Enter your security code
The list of quotable items appears.

■ To select items to quote
▶Deselect checkboxes of items not to be quoted with ◉

■ When the 2in1 is in Dual mode
▶“My Profile A” or “My Profile B”

2 (Finish)
The items to be quoted are entered automatically

NOTE

- When you quote a street address on the Text entry or i-mode site, a space may be entered between items.
- When you quote the My Profile, the data except the items entered automatically are not quoted.

Recording Your and the Other Party’s Voice
<Voice memo (in-call)/Voice memo (in-standby)>

There are 2 types of Voice memo. “Voice memo (in-call)” allows you to record the other party’s voice during a voice or videophone call. “Voice memo (in-standby)” allows you to record your own voice while the standby screen is displayed.

- You can record either 1 voice memo (in-call) or 1 voice memo (in-standby), which overwrites the existing memo.
- You can record voice up to about 20 seconds.
- For information on playing and erasing recorded voice memo →p.72

Recording the other party’s voice during a call

1 During a call▶▼ (📷) (1 second or longer)
The FOMA terminal beeps and recording begins. The FOMA terminal beeps 5 seconds before the recording time (about 20 seconds) ends. When recording ends, the FOMA terminal gives a short double-beep and the “Recording” display returns to the in-call screen.

■ To stop recording in progress
▶● (Stop), CLR, ☎ or ▼ (📷) (1 second or longer)
Pressing ☎ also ends the call.
Pressing CLR does not stop recording during videophone call.

NOTE

- When you receive a call, the “Alarm”, “Schedule” or “To Do list” alarm is notified or operate other function while recording a voice memo, the recording stops.
- You cannot record voice while a videophone call is on hold or while you are using a Function menu option.
- When 2in1 is in A mode or B mode and you record the other party’s voice received at the unused number, “★” does not appear on the Play/Erase msg. screen and you cannot play the voice memo.

Recording your own voice in standby mode

1 MENU ▶"LifeKit"▶"Voice memo"▶"YES"▶Record voice memo

When the FOMA terminal beeps, begin speaking into the mouthpiece. The FOMA terminal beeps 5 seconds before the recording time (about 20 seconds) ends. When recording ends, the terminal gives a short double-beep and the "Recording" screen changes back to the "LifeKit list" screen.

■ To stop recording in progress

▶● (Stop), CLR or ☎

Pressing ☎ returns to the standby screen but the voice is recorded.

Recording and Playing Alarm Tones and On Hold Tones

<Voice announce>

You can record the voice and set it as original ring tone or answer message.

- You can make 2 voice recordings: "Voice announce 1" and "Voice announce 2".
- You can record voice up to about 15 seconds.
- When voice is being recorded with this function, "★" appears on the "Voice announce" screen.
- Voice recordings made using this function can be set in the following functions:
  - Ring tone (voice call, videophone call, PushTalk, mail, chat mail, MessageR/F, Call setting w/o ID, Multi Number, Number B of 2in1)
  - Alarm tone (Alarm, Schedule, To Do list, Notice designate calls)
  - On hold tone
  - Answer message (Record message)

Recording voice

1 MENU ▶"LifeKit"▶"Voice announce"▶Select an item▶"YES"▶Record voice

Speak into the mouthpiece. The FOMA terminal beeps 5 seconds before the recording time (about 15 seconds) ends. When recording ends, the FOMA terminal gives a short double-beep and the "Recording" screen returns to the previous screen.



Voice announce

Function menu➡p.350

■ To stop recording in progress

▶● (Stop), CLR or ☎

Pressing ☎ returns to the standby screen but the voice is recorded.

NOTE

- When you receive a voice/videophone/PushTalk call, the "Alarm", "Schedule" or "To Do list" alarm is notified or operate other function while recording a voice, the recording stops.

Playing voice announce recordings

1 MENU ▶"LifeKit"▶"Voice announce"▶Select an item

■ To stop playback in progress

▶● (Stop), CLR or ☎

FUNC Voice announce screen (p.350)

Record	Records voice.
Play	Plays the recorded voice.
Erase	Erases the recorded voice.

Checking Call Data

<Call data>

You can check the previous or total call time/charge for voice/videophone calls, etc.

- When you switch between voice call and videophone call, the total call time of voice and videophone calls is displayed, and the charges of voice and videophone calls are displayed separately. The displayed charge may differ from the actual charge.
- The call time is displayed for both voice calls and digital calls and communication (videophone calls and 64K data communication). Times for both calls made and received calls are counted.
- Charges are only displayed for dialed calls. However, if you call a toll free number such as directory assistance (104), "¥0" or "¥✻✻" is displayed.
- As charges are accumulated on the FOMA card (UIM), the accumulated charge (starting from December 2004) is displayed on the Charge line when you change your FOMA card (UIM).
  - * Charges are accumulated on FOMA cards (UIM) in FOMA terminals released before the 901i series, but they cannot be displayed.
- You can reset displayed call times and charges.

- Displayed call data may differ from the actual figures. Consumption tax is not included in the call charges.
- If you have subscribed to the 2in1, the total amount of Number A/B appears as the Call times and Total calls cost.

1 MENU/MULTI ▶"Settings"▶"Call time/Charge"▶"Call data"

Item	Displayed contents
Last call duration	Displays the approximate duration of the last call (displayed for both dialed/received call).
Last call cost	Displays the approximate charge for the last call ("Talk" for voice calls, "Digital (AV)" for videophone calls, "Digital (UD)" for 64K data communication).
Total calls duration	Displays the total talk time from the last reset to the present ("Talk" for voice calls, "Digital (AV)" for videophone calls, "Digital (UD)" for 64K data communication).
Total calls cost	Displays the approximate total charges for all the calls made since the last reset (the total costs of voice calls, videophone calls and 64K data communication).
Total duration reset	Displays the date and time of the last call reset.
Total cost reset	Displays the date and time of the last charge reset.

NOTE

- If the last or total voice or digital calls duration exceeds "199h59m59s", the call count returns to "0s".
- The time and charge of PushTalk, i-mode or packet communication, and the charge of sending Chakumoji are not counted. To check i-mode communication charges, see the "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version" provided at the time of contract.
- The time taken to pick up a call, or for the other party to pick up a call, and the time for switching a voice call and a videophone call are not counted.
- When the FOMA terminal is turned off, the duration and charge for the last call revert to "0s" and "¥✻✻" respectively.
- Turning the FOMA terminal off does not affect the total duration and charge.
- The international call charge for WORLD CALL is counted. For other international call services, the charge is not counted.

Resetting the total call time and total call charges <Reset total>

You can reset the Total calls duration or Total calls charge displayed in the "Call data" to zero.

1 MENU/MULTI ▶"Settings"▶"Call time/Charge"▶"Reset total"▶Enter your security code▶Select any item:

Reset total duration……Resets the accumulated duration.

Reset total cost……Enter PIN2 code to reset the accumulated charge. PIN2 code→p.124

Resetting charges automatically <Auto reset total cost>

You can set the FOMA terminal to reset the Total calls cost displayed in "Call data" to zero automatically on the 1st day every month, at 0:00 AM.

1 MENU/MULTI ▶"Settings"▶"Call time/Charge"▶"Auto reset total cost"▶Enter your security code

2 "Auto reset"▶"ON"▶Enter PIN2 code

PIN2 code→p.124

■ Not to set Auto reset

▶"OFF"

NOTE

- Setting Auto reset total cost to "ON" and changing the month in main clock setting resets the Total calls cost.
- The Auto reset total cost is reset to "OFF" when:
  - The FOMA terminal is turned on without the FOMA card (UIM) inserted
  - CLR is pressed on the PIN2 code input screen which appears when the FOMA terminal is turned on
  - The PIN2 code is locked→p.124
  - An error occurs on the FOMA card (UIM)

Setting the Upper Charge Limit to Notify an Alarm

<Notice designate calls>

When accumulated charge displayed at “Call data” exceeds the cost limit set in this function, you are notified on the standby screen or with alarms.

- The alarm notification works only once when the accumulated charge exceeds the set cost limit.
- Exceeding the limit does not prevent you from making a call.

1 MENU/UNLOCK ▶**“Settings”▶“Call time/Charge” ▶“Notice designate calls”▶Enter your security code**

2 Select any item

Cost limit setting……Sets the cost limit between 10 and 100,000 yen in units of 10.

Notify setting

Notify cost limit……Specifies whether to notify the cost limit.

Alarm tone……Select the alarm tone. Select “OFF” to disable the alarm tone.

Volume……Sets the alarm tone volume with ●.

3 ✉ **(Finish)**

NOTE

- The charges for PushTalk, i-mode or packet communication, and the charges for sending Chakumoji are not included in this function. To check i-mode communication charges, see the “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode] FOMA version” provided at the time of contract.

Alarm notification actions

After ending a call, the function notifies you by the following method when the accumulated charges exceed the cost limit.



■When Notify cost limit is set to “ON” and alarm tone is set to other than “OFF”

When the accumulated charge exceeds the preset cost limit, the alarm tone sounds for about 5 minutes starting 3 seconds after finishing the call, and the notification screen appears. To stop the alarm tone, press any key. After the notification, pressing CLR or ☎ displays the “MAX” (Notice designate calls) desktop icon on the standby screen.

■When Notify cost limit is set to “ON” and alarm tone is set to “OFF”

When the accumulated charge exceeds the preset cost limit, the “MAX” (Call billing) desktop icon appears on the standby screen.

Checking details of “MAX” (Notice designate calls)

The details of Notify cost limit are displayed by selecting the “MAX” (Notice designate calls)” desktop icon on the standby screen.

1 On the standby screen▶●▶Select “MAX (Notice designate calls)”▶Enter your security code

The details of “Notice designate calls” are displayed.

2 Check the details▶● (OK)

The standby screen reappears and “MAX” (Notice designate calls) disappears.

Using the FOMA Terminal as a Calculator

<Calculator>

You can use the FOMA terminal to perform 4 different types of arithmetical calculations (addition, subtraction, multiplication and division).

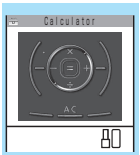
- The number can be displayed up to 10 digits. Below the decimal point, up to 9 digits can be displayed.
- If the result of a calculation exceeds 10 digits, “.E” is displayed.

1 MENU/UNLOCK ▶**“LifeKit”▶“Calculator”▶Calculate**

■ To calculate “23 + 57”

2 3 + 5 7 =

[2] [3] ○ [5] [7] ●



Calculator

Function menu➡p.353

■ To use negative numbers in a calculation

To calculate using negative amounts, simply insert “–” before the first digit.

– 2 3 + 5 7 =

○ [2] [3] ○ [5] [7] ●

NOTE

- CLR (AC or C) can be used in the following cases.
  - After pressing +, –, ×, / and =, AC is displayed. You can start calculation from the beginning by pressing CLR.
  - While inputting numbers or decimal points, C is displayed. You can delete wrong numbers or decimal points by pressing CLR.

FUNC Calculator screen (p.352)

Add desktop icon →p.115

Composing Text Memo

<Text memo>

You can write short messages in the form of text memos. You can paste a composed text memo into your schedule or mail message.

- You can store up to 10 text memos.
- You can enter up to 256 double-byte or 512 single-byte characters for a text memo.

Storing a text memo

1 MENU/MULTI ▶**"LifeKit"**▶**"Text memo"**

The "Text memo" screen appears.



Text memo

Function menu➡p.353

2 **Highlight <Not recorded>▶✉ (Edit)**

■ **To edit the content of an existing text memo**

▶Highlight the item to change▶✉ (Edit)

3 **Write the memo**

Checking the details of text memo

1 **Text memo screen (p.353)▶Select an item▶Check the memo**

FUNC Text memo screen (p.353)

Edit……Edits the text memo.

Compose message →p.188

Edit schedule →p.340

Add desktop icon →p.115

iC transmission →p.309

Send Ir data →p.307

iC trans. all →p.310

Send all Ir data →p.308

Copy to microSD →p.298

Text memo info……Displays the creation date/time and category.

Category……Selects a category from "None/Personal/Holiday/Travel/Business/Meeting".

Delete……Selects the deleting method from "Delete this/Delete selected/Delete all". "About multiple-choice" →p.38

Using Dictionaries

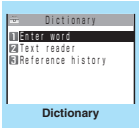
<Dictionary>

- You can use dictionaries from the function menu of each text entry screen. →p.354

Activating the dictionary

1 MENU/MULTI ▶**"LifeKit"**▶**"Dictionary"**

The "Dictionary" screen appears.



Dictionary

Function menu➡p.354

2 **Select any item:**

Enter word……Enters a word. You can enter up to 32 double-byte or 64 single-byte characters.

Text reader……Enters a word from the text reader. "Scanning Text" →p.163

Reference history……Searches the dictionary using the history of previously retrieved words. "Using reference history" →p.354

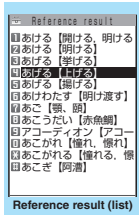
3 **Select the dictionary type**

The "Reference result (list)" screen appears.

When the searched word is not in the dictionary, the cursor is placed at the similar word.

■ **To display the previous or next list**

▶Reference result (list) screen▶◎



Reference result (list)

Function menu➡p.354

Other Convenient Functions

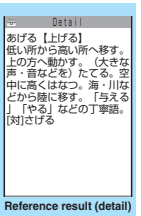
Continued on next page

4 Select a word

The “Reference result (detail)” screen appears.

■ **To display the previous or next word**

▶Reference result (detail) screen▶○



Reference result (detail)

Function menu➡p.354

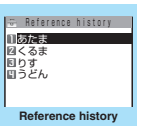
FUNC Dictionary screen (p.353)

Add desktop icon→p.115

Using reference history

1 Dictionary screen (p.353)▶“Reference history”

The “Reference history” screen appears.



Reference history

Function menu➡p.354

2 Select a word

FUNC Reference history screen (p.353, 354)

Delete this/Delete all……Deletes one or all reference history (histories).

FUNC Reference result (list/detail) screen (p.353)

Change window*1……Switches the screen between Reference result and Text edit.

Copy……Copies the word.

List screen: Copies the word in【 】of the reference result for Japanese-English or Japanese dictionary, and copies the word of the reference result for English-Japanese dictionary

Detail screen: Copies the text by selecting the range.

The copied word can be pasted into text entry screens, etc.

“Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text”→p.367

Search from detail*2→p.354

Refer dic.……Searches for the retrieved word in another dictionary.

Refer edit*3……Edits text referring to the Reference result.

“Divided screen”→p.361

*1 : Only appears when windows can be changes.
*2 : Available only for the reference result (detail) screen.
*3 : Only appears when available.

Searching in the Reference result (detail) screen

1 Reference result (detail) screen (p.354)▶ch (FUNC)▶“Search from detail”

2 ○▶● (Start) on the first character of the string

3 ○▶Highlight to the end of the string▶● (End)

4 Select the dictionary type

5 Select a word

Using dictionaries from other functions

Select “Refer dictionary” from the respective function menus in the following screens:

- The text edit screen, mail detail screen or message screen for i-mode mail
- Pages on sites and while a screen memo is displayed

■ **When activating a dictionary from the text edit screen, mail detail screen or message screen for i-mode mail**

You can select “Enter word”, “Select area” or “Reference history”.

Selecting “Select area” allows you to specify the range of the words you want to look up.

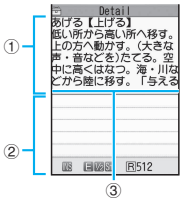
■ **When you activate the dictionary from a site or from a screen memo**

You can select “Enter word”, “Site refer (enter)” or “Reference history”.

Selecting “Site refer (enter)” allows you to enter the word you want to look up while referring to a screen memo or a page on a site.

● Guide to the dictionary reference screen

When you select “Refer edit” or “Site refer (enter)”, the display is split into top and bottom halves.
Each time you select “Change window” from the function menu, the window you can use switches between ① and ②.



■ **When you selected “Refer edit” from the Reference result (detail) screen**

①Dictionary detail screen
②Text edit screen
③Separation line

To exit the dictionary, select “Quit dic.” from the function menu or switch to window ① and press (End).

■ **When you selected “Site refer (enter)” from a screen memo or a page on a site**

①Site page or screen memo screen
②Search term entry screen
③Separation line

Enter the search term and press ● (Set). The dictionary selection display appears with the search term entered.

Using an Earphone/ Microphone with Switch

<Earphone/microphone with Switch>

You can make or receive a call by using a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional).

- To connect a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch to the FOMA terminal, open the terminal cap and insert the flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch. →p.25
- The tone of the switch operation for receiving or ending the call sounds regardless of the “Keypad sound” setting.
- Note that if the flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch is connected while ring tone sounds, the FOMA terminal may answer the call.
- Do not wrap the FOMA terminal with the cord of the flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch. This may interfere with signal reception. Also, if you move the cord of the flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch closer to the FOMA terminal while talking, you may hear the noise.

● Using the switch to make calls

1 Press the switch on the flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch for 1 second or longer on the standby screen

The FOMA terminal makes a call to a phone number set at “Headset sw to dial”.

■ **To make a call from the Phonebook list screen**

▶Phonebook list screen▶Highlight a phonebook entry▶Press the switch for 1 second or longer
The FOMA terminal emits a short beep and makes a call to the first phone number registered at the phonebook entry.
You can also make a call from Redial/Dialed calls screen (list) or Received calls screen (list).

■ **To make a call from the Phonebook detail screen**

▶Phonebook detail screen▶Display a phone number▶Press the switch for 1 second or longer
The FOMA terminal emits a short beep and makes a call to the selected phone number.
You can also make a call from Redial/Dialed calls screen (detail), Received calls screen (detail) or Choku-Den screen.
You can also make a call by holding down the switch for 1 second or longer on the Enter phone number screen.

2 When you finish talking, hold down the switch on the flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch for 1 second or longer

The FOMA terminal emits a short double-beep and ends the call.

● Using the switch to accept calls

1 When you receive a call, press the switch on the flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch

You can press the switch to answer the call with the FOMA terminal folded.

■ **To receive voice calls**

The FOMA terminal emits a short beep and answers the voice call.

■ **To receive videophone calls**

The FOMA terminal emits a short beep and answers the videophone call with the Substitute image when the FOMA terminal is folded and with the camera image when the FOMA terminal is opened.

Continued on next page

■ **To receive PushTalk calls**

The FOMA terminal emits a notification tone and receives the PushTalk call.

2 When you finish talking, hold down the switch on the flat-plug earphone/ microphone with switch for 1 second or longer

The FOMA terminal emits a short double-beep and ends the call.

NOTE

- If you have subscribed to the “Call Waiting”, you can answer a call that comes in during another call by pressing the switch on the flat-plug earphone/ microphone with switch. You can also switch calls by pressing the switch for 1 second or longer. However, pressing the switch does not end the current call.
- Do not repeatedly press and release the switch on the flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch. The FOMA terminal may answer the call automatically.
- For PushTalk calls, pressing the switch for 1 second or longer does not end the call.

Connecting Earphones and Selecting Person to Call

<Headset sw to dial>

When a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected to the FOMA terminal, this function allows you to have the FOMA terminal make voice calls or PushTalk calls simply by holding down the switch for 1 second or longer.

- You can set phone numbers stored in the phonebook of the FOMA terminal (Phone) to this function.
- Even when the FOMA terminal is folded, you can still make a voice or PushTalk call by holding down the switch of the flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch for 1 second or longer.

1 (MENU/MULTI)▶“Settings”▶“Dialing”▶“Headset sw to dial”▶Select any item:

Voice call……Selects a phone number from the phonebook. How to search the phonebook→p.92

PushTalk call……Selects a phone number from the PushTalk phonebook or group.→p.84

OFF……No dial setting.

NOTE

- You cannot set a phonebook for the FOMA card.
- If the phone number set in this function is not available due to the 2in1 setting, you cannot dial using a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch.

Automatically Receiving Calls with an Earphone/Microphone Connected

<Auto answer setting>

When a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected, this function allows you to answer received voice, videophone or PushTalk calls automatically without pressing the switch.

- You cannot answer the call automatically during a voice, videophone or PushTalk call or 64K data communication.
- You can receive a call automatically even when the FOMA terminal is folded.

1 (MENU/MULTI)▶“Settings”▶“External connection”▶“Auto answer setting”▶Select any item:

Phone……Sets voice call reception.

Videophone……Makes Videophone settings.

PushTalk……Makes PushTalk settings.

2 “ON”▶Enter ring time (001 to 120s, in 3 digits)

■ **To disable the function**

▶“OFF”

NOTE

- When answering a videophone call automatically, your substitute image is displayed to the caller. To switch to your camera image, select “My side” from the function menu.
- To give this function priority when the “Voice Mail Service” or “Call Forwarding Service” is set at the same time, set a shorter ringing time for this function than those set for Voice Mail and Call Forwarding.
- If the mute seconds set in “Ring time(sec.)” is longer than the Auto answer ringing time, the FOMA terminal switches to Auto answer without ringing. To set the FOMA terminal to ring before switching to Auto answer, set a ringing time for Auto answer longer than the mute seconds.
- The shorter of the ring times set in “Ring time setting” and “Auto answer setting” is applied for Automatic answer performed when a PushTalk call arrives.
- Connecting an earphone/microphone with switch while the FOMA terminal is ringing does not answer a call automatically, but removing it while the terminal is ringing answers a call automatically.

Selecting a Microphone When an Earphone/Microphone is Connected <Select microphone>

You can select the microphone to use when a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected from the microphone of the FOMA terminal or the microphone of the earphone/microphone.

1 MENU ▶**“Settings”▶“External connection”▶“Select microphone”▶“Internal microphone” or “External microphone”**

When you connect earphones without a microphone, select “Internal microphone”.

NOTE

- When “Select microphone” is set to “Internal microphone”, the microphone sensitivity becomes the same as the setting when handsfree is set to ON. When an earphone/microphone is connected, you do not need to talk with your mouth close to the mouthpiece.

Resetting the Function Settings <Reset settings>

You can reset the FOMA terminals function settings to the defaults set at the time of purchase.

Do not mistake “Initialize” for “Reset settings”. If you perform “Initialize”, you will lose all the data you have stored. →p.357

- For details on the functions that are reset, refer to “Menu Function List” (p.402).
- When the FOMA terminal is connected to an external device such as a PC, the setting of “USB mode setting” is not reset to the default setting.
- To reset the functions below to default, run Reset settings in each function:
  - Reset i-mode settings (i-mode) →p.180
  - Reset mail settings (Mail) →p.212
  - Reset Viewer type set./Reset Std. type set. (Full Browser) →p.269

1 MENU ▶**“Settings”▶“Other settings”▶“Reset settings”▶Enter your security code▶“YES”**

■ **If face authentication is enabled**

▶Position your face so that the whole appears on the display

■ **To cancel the reset**

▶“NO”

Resetting to the Default Settings of the FOMA Terminal <Initialize>

This function deletes stored data and returns the settings for the FOMA terminals functions to their defaults set at the time of purchase.

“Initialize” deletes all of your important data including phonebook, mail, downloaded images or melodies, i-αppli, PDF data, still images and movies shot with the camera (even protected data).

- Pre-installed data is not deleted.
- For more information on the restored default settings, see “Reset settings”.
- “Initialize” resets the functions reset by “Reset settings” and the functions and data listed below to their default settings set at the time of purchase.

- Mail data*1
- Mail folder*1
- Template*1
- Chat member for chat mail*1
- i-mode settings
- URL history
- Home
- Viewer type settings
- Standard type setting
- i-Channel setting
- Channel list
- Software list
- i-αppli auto start setting
- i-αppli action info
- Call data
- Kisekae Tool
- Pause dial
- Security Code
- Learning record (Clear character entry learning record)
- To Do list
- Schedule
- Text memo
- Play/Erase msg.
- Play/Erase VP msg.
- Music play history information
- Programs broadcast on the Music&Video Channel
- Bookmark
- Screen memo
- Last URL
- Go to location
- Chaku-moji sent messages record
- Additional service
- Multi Number (Number Setting)
- FOMA terminal (Phone) Phonebook*2
- PushTalk phonebook*2
- Group setting*2
- Received calls*1
- Redial/Dialed calls*1
- Received address list*1
- Sent address list*1
- Mail member*1
- Chat group*1
- Own dictionary*1
- Download dictionary*1
- Location history (GPS function)
- Register LCS client data (GPS Function)
- Ext. IC card (IC card authentic.)
- Image data saved for Face authentication

Continued on next page

- Voice memo
- Voice announce
- Mail Setting*1
- Message
- Text reader
- Bar code reader
- Dictionary reference history
- Chara-den
- PDF data
- Exchanging history (Data Security Service)
- Data stored by the user*3
- Menu display set operation history
- Quick Search history
- Choku-Den*2
- Software update schedule information
- Auto-update
- Interrupted programs/ tracks playback information
- Decorate PI

*1 : Even when 2in1 is set to A mode or B mode and there is data not currently displayed, all the data are initialized.
*2 : Even when 2in1 is set to A mode and the phonebook set for B is not displayed, the phonebook data for B is also initialized.
*3 : Stored data, downloaded data, i-αppli software, still images or movies shot with the camera, etc.

- Group names and folder names, etc. that you have edited revert to their default names.
- The secret data or data in Secret folder are also deleted.
- Ensure that the battery is fully charged before initializing the FOMA terminal. It may not be possible to initialize the FOMA terminal if the battery is low.
- Do not turn the FOMA terminal off while initializing.
- You cannot use any other functions while the FOMA terminal is being initialized. Also, you cannot receive voice calls, videophone calls, PushTalk calls or mails.

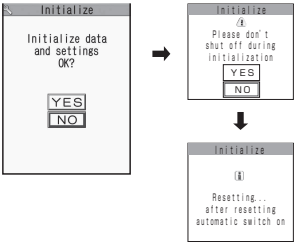
- Performing Initialize restores your FOMA terminal to the default settings.
  It is recommended to back up the data stored on the FOMA terminal by making a note or using DoCoMo keitai datalink (p.389) or the microSD memory card.

1 MENU UNLOCK ▶“Settings”▶“Other settings”▶“Initialize”▶Enter your security code

■ If face authentication is enabled

▶Position your face so that the whole appears on the display

2 “YES”▶“YES”



Initialization begins.
Initialization may take several minutes.
When initialization ends, the FOMA terminal is automatically restarted and displays an explanation of Software Update auto-update.

■ If initialization is not completed correctly

▶“OK” after turning the power on
The initialization starts again.

NOTE

- When the FOMA terminal is initialized, the i-Channel ticker is not displayed. The ticker is turned on again automatically when the information is updated automatically or when ch is pressed to receive the latest information.
- Settings of data communication which uses a PC are not initialized.
- The data of the Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli and the data on the IC card are not deleted.

Character Entry

Entering Text 360
Entering Text Using 5-Touch ..... Mode 1 (5-touch) 361
Modifying/Storing Common Phrases ..... Common phrases (store) 367
Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text 367
Entering Text Using Kuten Codes ..... Kuten code 368
Storing Frequently Used Words ..... Own dictionary 368
Resetting the Learning Record ..... Clear learned 368
Using Download Dictionaries ..... Download dictionary 369
Entering Text Using 2-Touch ..... Mode 2 (2-touch) 369
Entering Text Using T9 ..... Mode 3 (T9) 369

For the “Kuten code list”, refer to the PDF format “Kuten Code List” in the provided CD-ROM. To view the PDF format “Kuten Code List”, Adobe® Reader® is required. If this software is not installed on your PC, install the Adobe® Reader® in the same CD-ROM to view the file. Refer to the help of the Adobe® Reader® for details on how to use it.

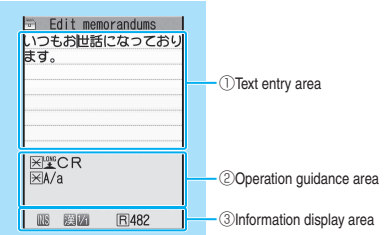
Entering Text

The FOMA terminal has 3 text entry modes: “5-touch”, “2-touch” and “T9”. This section explains the text entry mainly using the “5-touch”.

- Refer to the following sections for the settings, characteristics and method of each text entry mode.
  “Setting the text entry mode”→ p.361
  “Entering Text Using 5-Touch”→p.361
  “Entering Text Using 2-Touch”→p.369
  “Entering Text Using T9”→p.369

Text entry (edit) screen

The Text entry (edit) screen is made up of ① text entry area, ② operation guidance area, and ③ information display area. The descriptions of icons displayed in each area are as follows:



Function menu➡p.365

① Text entry area

Icon	Description
	Cursor (Text entry position)
	End mark (Text entry end position)

② Operation guidance area

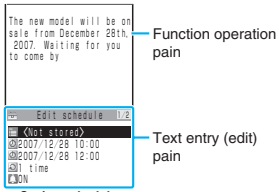
Icon	Description
CHG	Change can be made using .
All / Find	The phonebook can be searched using .
Area	Specifies the range of text copy (cut).
LONG CR	Line feed with (1 second or longer).
A/a	With , the entered character can be switched between lower case and upper case. Alternatively, Dakuten/Han-dakuten can be added.
AA→aa	Pressing can release the CapsLock mode →p.364
aa→Aa	Pressing can enter the Shift mode →p.364
Aa→AA	Pressing can enter the CapsLock mode →p.364
Back	You can use to return to the previous reading (e.g. え→う) during entering text using 5-touch.
Space	can be used to enter a space in alphabetic input mode of 5-touch mode.

③ Information display area

Icon	Description
2	Displays the text entry mode (2-touch input or T9 input) (No icon is displayed for 5-touch input)
INS OVR	Insert mode/overwrite mode
E 123 漢 カナ	Input character type
	Kuten code input mode →p.368
1/1 1/2	Double-byte mode/single-byte mode
Sm	Lower case character input mode
Shift CAPS LOCK	Shift mode/CapsLock mode →p.364
R	Remaining number of characters that can be entered in bytes (single-byte character: 1 byte, double-byte character: 2 bytes)
In	Number of characters that have been entered when adding entries in the FOMA card (UIM) phonebook or when composing an SMS

Divided screen

Some screens, such as that for storing schedule entries while referring to the original message, are split into 2 windows displaying the function operation screen and the Text entry (edit) screen at the same time.



Saving schedule referring from i-mode

- The function operation screen and Text entry (edit) screen are displayed at the same time in the following cases:
  - Adding schedule entries while referring to an i-mode screen
  - Entering words to search by activating dictionaries from an i-mode screen
  - Chat screen for Chat mail
  - Editing text while referring to the results of a dictionary search
  - Direct input from Quick Search screen

Procedure for changing the active screen

When the operation screen of each function and the text entry (edit) screen are displayed at the same time, you can select "Change window" from the function menu to change the operation screen.

NOTE

- You cannot change screens while you are entering a character reading. However, you can change the screen in cases such as pressing # to enter "http://" in alphabet input mode. In this case, the string you are entering is confirmed automatically.
- You cannot switch screens in the Chat screen for chat mail.

Setting the text entry mode

You can set the text entry mode you use from 3 text entry modes (5-touch/2-touch/T9).

1 MENU ▶**"Settings"▶"Other settings"▶"Character input set"▶"Input mode"▶Select character input mode**

NOTE

- You can switch the character input entry mode while entering text. Press (Chrct) for 1 second or longer, or select "CHG input method" from the function menu.

Switching the character input size

You can select the character size on the text entry (edit) screen or the symbol/face symbols/pictographs entry screen from 4 types of "Small/Standard/Large/X-large".

1 MENU ▶**"Settings"▶"Other settings"▶"Character input set"▶"CHG input size"▶Select input size**

Setting the word prediction

You can set whether to use the word prediction (ON/OFF).

- Prediction candidates are stored at the time of purchase.

1 MENU ▶**"Settings"▶"Other settings"▶"Character input set"▶"Prediction"▶"ON" or "OFF"**

Entering Text Using 5-Touch

<Mode 1 (5-touch)>

You can enter 1 character by pressing a dial key for several times. For example, to enter "う", the third character of the "あcolumn (あいうえお)", press 1 3 times.

- Refer to "Characters that can be entered using 5-touch input" (p.413) for details on the character assignment.

Entering kanji/hiragana/katakana

Enter the readings in hiragana, then convert them into the character such as kanji, hiragana or katakana.

Using word prediction to enter text

The word prediction has functions such as predicting a word from one entered character or predicting a word after the selected word. Therefore, you can enter text easily with smaller steps of entering text.

Continued on next page

<Example: To enter “携帯電話”>

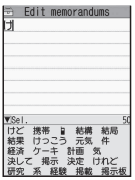
1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.360)▶Set to Kanji/hiragana input mode

When “Kanji/hiragana input mode (漢 1/1)” is not set, press [*] (Chrct) to switch the mode.

2 Enter a part of the reading

[2] 4 times
け

“け” is entered in the text entry area. “Predicted candidates” appear in the operation guidance area by predicting words from the entered one character.



3 ◎

Predication candidates in the operation guidance area can be selected.



■ **When the candidates do not include the word you want to enter**

▶[CLR]

Return to the reading entry.

The predicted candidates change as you continue entering the reading. Or, you can use the conversion function.

“Convert the entered hiragana”→p.362

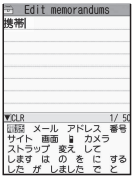
4 Select a predicted candidate

▶Select “携帯”

The selected word appears in the text entry area. Next predicted candidates which follow the selected word appear in the operation guide area.

5 ◎**▶Select the next predicted candidate**

▶Select “電話”



■ **To close the predicted candidates window**

▶[ch] (Exit)

NOTE

- Frequently used face symbols, pictographs, etc. also appear as the predicted candidate.
- Conversion candidates do not appear in the input mode other than Kanji/hiragana mode.

NOTE

- A word entered for once is added to the predicted candidate by the learning function. You can delete the added predicted candidate by highlighting the word and pressing [CLR] for 1 second or longer.
  To delete all the learned predicted candidates, clear the leaned records of the word prediction with “Clear learned”.

Convert the entered hiragana

When the word you want to enter does not appear in the predicted candidates or when the word prediction is set to OFF, you can change the entered hiragana to the word you want to enter.

<Example: To enter “秋のキャンプ”>

1 Enter the hiragana

[1] once (あ) [2] twice (き)
[5] 5 times (の) [2] twice (き)
[8] once (や) [*] once (To lower case)
[0] 3 times (ん) [6] 3 times (ふ)
[*] twice (゛(Han-dakuten))



■ **If you press the wrong key**

▶Press [CLR] to delete the character

■ **If you press a key too many times**

▶[←]

The previous character assigned to that key appears.

■ **When the next character to be entered is assigned to the same key**

▶Press the key again for 1 second or longer or press ◎ (the cursor slightly moves to the right).

The next character can be entered.

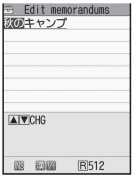
■ **To confirm the hiragana**

▶● (Set)

2 Edit the entered characters

▶Press [ch] (CHG) to change the characters to kanji or katakana

The conversion candidate for the first phrase is highlighted and the kanji candidates for the remaining unconfirmed characters are underlined (_).

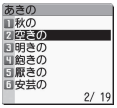


■ **If the conversion candidate is the desired kanji or katakana**

▶● (Set)

The conversion candidate is confirmed and the next phrase is highlighted.

■ **If the conversion candidate is not the kanji or katakana you want**



▶Press ch (CHG) to display other conversion candidates▶Select the characters to convert.
A list of conversion candidates for the highlighted phrase appears. Hiragana and katakana are included in the conversion candidates.
If the readings in the conversion range consists entirely of “あ”-level characters, numbers are also included in the conversion candidates. For example, entering 1 2 3 (あかさ) also shows the conversion candidate “123”.

■ **To change the conversion range**

▶Press ⇔ to change the conversion range
The conversion candidate changes as the conversion range changes.

■ **To display the alphanumeric or katakana conversion candidates**

▶✉ (ABC123)
The alphanumeric and katakana conversion candidates of the entered key appear. For example, pressing 2 3 (かさ) ✉ (ABC123) shows the conversion candidates such as “AD”, “23” or “カサ”.
For numbers of 2 to 4 digits which can be used as date (ex. 10/19) or time (ex. 10:19), such date and time are also displayed as conversion candidates.

NOTE

- If the conversion candidate list includes symbols, pictographs or face symbols, you can convert the text to these symbols.
  Refer to the following lists for the readings of symbols, pictographs and face symbols.
  - “Symbols and Special Characters List”→p.416
  - “Pictographs List”→p.417
  - “Face Symbols List”→p.421
- For other text entry operations such as entering symbols, pictographs, or inserting a space or a line-feed, refer to “Useful keys to assist text entry” (p.364) and “Function menu of the text entry (edit)” screen (p.365).
- You can use kuten codes to enter kanji that cannot be entered by conversion. →p.368

● The number of characters and scrolling

■ **The number of characters remaining and the number entered**

Characters displayed in the Text entry (edit) screen are counted according to the rules listed below.

- When the number of characters is counted, each double-byte character is counted as 2 bytes and each single-byte character is counted as 1 byte.
- The single-byte dakuten “゛” and han-dakuten “゜” are counted as 1 character respectively.

In the Text entry (edit) screen, the end mark “◀” indicates the end of the text that can be entered using the current function. Use the end mark as an approximate guide to how many more characters you can enter.

■ **Scrolling**

In the Text entry (edit) screen, use ⇔ to scroll up and down one line at a time, and ▼ (📷) and ▲ (マナー) to scroll 1 page at a time.
In the conversion candidates list, you can also use ⇔/▼ (📷) or ▲ (マナー) to scroll 1 page at a time.

● Data protection during text entry and editing

When you are entering text in the Text entry (edit) screen and the battery fails or you receive a voice call, the entered text is stored and not cleared from the screen.

■ **If the battery fails**

If the low-voltage alarm sounds during text entry, the Text entry (edit) screen is replaced by the “Recharge battery” message screen. When this happens, the entered text is automatically confirmed and saved so that you can continue entering the text when you turn the FOMA terminal back on and retrieve the function. However, in some functions, the entered data is not saved. Also, unconfirmed text that is being converted is not saved.
Re-editing the phonebook→p.90

■ **If you press ☎**

If you press ☎ while entering text, a message appears asking whether to exit text entry without saving changes. However, this message does not appear if no text is entered.
<To quit without saving the text>
Select “YES”. The previous screen or standby screen reappears without saving the entered text.
You can also exit the text entry screen without saving the entered text by pressing ☎.
<To continue entering text>
Select “NO”. The Text entry (edit) screen reappears with the entered text still displayed.
You can also return to the Text entry (edit) screen by pressing CLR.

Continued on next page

■When you receive a voice call

If you receive a voice call while entering text, you can answer the call without disturbing the text being entered. When the call ends, the Text entry (edit) screen reappears. You can use (MULTI) during a voice call to display the task switch screen and return to the text entry (edit) screen while talking. →p.337

Other text entry functions

For the operations such as switching the text entry mode on the text entry (edit) screen or entering symbols or pictographs, you can use useful keys as well as the function menus.

● Useful keys to assist text entry

Key	Description
(Chrct)	● The character mode switches each time you press (Chrct) in 5-touch mode and T9. Alphabetic (single-byte)→Numeric (single-byte)→Kanji/hiragana (double-byte)→Katakana (single-byte) * Use the function menu “Single-byte/Double-byte” to switch between “Single-byte” and “Double-byte” in Katakana, alphabets and numbers modes. ● Double-byte and single-byte switch each time you press (Chrct) in 2-touch mode. Double-byte→Single-byte ● While the pictograph/symbol list is being displayed, enter pictographs or symbols continuously. Each time is pressed, the mode switches as follows: Pictograph→Pictograph D*→Double-byte→Single-byte *: The list of pictograph D (Decorate PI) is displayed only in i-mode mail message entry screen.
	● You can enter “Dakuten/Han-dakuten” or switch “Upper case/Lower case” of the input text in 5-touch and 2-touch. ● The input modes of upper case and lower case switches each time you press in alphabetic input mode of T9 mode. (No CapsLock)→Shift→CapsLock • (No CapsLock): All characters are entered in lower case. • Shift mode: Only the first character entered after switching to this mode is entered in upper case, then subsequent characters are entered in lower case (Shift mode is canceled). • CapsLock: All characters are entered in upper case. * Only available when following icon is displayed in the operation guidance area. AA→aa/aa→Aa/Aa→AA
(1 second or longer)	Enters a line feed “ ↵ ” and moves the cursor to the next line.
	When the cursor is at the end of the text, pressing enters a space and pressing enters a line feed symbol.
	Entering in a row enters a space regardless of the position of the cursor in Hiragana or Katakana input mode. * Press in alphabetic input mode.
	Returns to the previous reading in 5-touch input mode. (Example: え→う)
(1 second or longer)	Restore the status of the operation such as text conversion, paste or cut for 1 step.
(PI·SB)	Enters pictographs or symbols continuously. The screen changes each time you press while the list of pictographs or symbols is displayed. Pictograph→Single-byte→Double-byte→Pictograph D* *: The list of pictograph D (Deco-mail pictograph) is displayed only in i-mode mail message entry screen. To end the continuous entry, press CLR. Symbols and Special Characters→p.416 Pictographs→p.417
(Chrct) (1 second or longer)	Switches the text entry mode. The mode switches as follows each time you press (Chrct) (1 second or longer). 5-touch mode→2-touch mode→T9 input mode

NOTE

<✉ (PI・SB) (PI・SB input mode)>

- Previously entered pictographs and symbols are stored in the first line of Pictograph, Decorate PI (Pictgraph D), Single-byte, and Double-byte screens respectively. Pictographs or symbols are also saved when “Pictograph” or “Symbols” is selected from the function menu.
- Pressing ch (Full) switches to the full-display and the input mode switches to “Pictograph” or “Symbols” input mode.

FUNC Text entry (edit) screen (p.360)

Face Mark……Displays the face symbols list.
The highlighted face symbol is displayed in two lines in the face symbols list and the reading (meaning) is also displayed.

Lower case⇔Upper case……Switches the “Lower case/Upper case” before entering text.

Single-byte⇔Double-byte……Switches the single-byte/double-byte modes.

Copy/Cut/Paste→p.367

Common phrases→p.366

Space……Inserts a space (blank).
A double-byte space is inserted in double-byte input mode and a single-byte space is inserted in single-byte input mode. In both cases, a space is counted as 1 character.

Line feed……Inserts the line-feed “ ↵ ” and moves the cursor down to the next line.

Symbols……Displays the symbols list.

Pictograph……Displays the pictographs list.

Kuten code→p.368

Overwrite⇔Insert……Switches between “Overwrite mode” and “Insert mode”.
When entering text, a character is inserted to the left of the cursor in “Insert mode” and the characters after the cursor position is overwritten in “Overwrite mode”. When the text entry (edit) screen is displayed, insert mode is selected as a default.

Quote data……Quotes and inputs various data.

- **Quote phonebook/Quote My Profile**→p.366
- **Text reader**→p.163
- **Bar code reader**→p.159

Refer dic.……Starts the dictionary. →p.353

Prediction OFF⇔Prediction ON……Selects OFF/ON of the word prediction. →p.361

CHG input method……Switches the text entry mode (5-touch/2-touch/T9).

T9 Kana CHG mode⇔T9 Kanji CHG mode……Selects whether to convert the entered characters to kana or kanji when using T9 input.

Jump……Moves the cursor quickly to the beginning or end of sentence.

UNDO……Returns the operation such as converting/pasting/cutting characters 1 step back.

Change window……Switches the operation screen when the divided screen is displayed. →p.361

Quick Search→p.339

NOTE

<Single-byte/Double-byte>

- You cannot switch the double-byte/single-byte modes in “Kanji/hiragana input mode”.

<Line feed>

- You can delete or overwrite the line-feed symbol “ ↵ ” in the same way as other characters.

<Symbols>

- You cannot enter double-byte symbols in the e-mail address registration screen, i-mode mail address input screen or URL input screen.
- When you can enter single-byte symbols only, only the single-byte symbols are displayed.
- Pictographs can be entered even while the symbol list is being displayed. The list switches each time you press ✉ or 絵.
- You can switch to “PI・SB input mode” by pressing ch (PI・SB) even after displaying the symbol list.

<Pictographs>

- Previously entered pictographs are stored in the first line of Pictograph and Decorate PI (Pictograph D) screens respectively.
- Symbols can be entered even while the pictograph list is being displayed. The list switches each time you press ✉ or 絵.
- You can switch to “PI・SB input mode” by pressing ch (PI・SB) even after displaying the pictograph list.

<CHG input method>

- In the text entry (edit) screens for specific items such as postal codes, it may not be able to switch the text entry mode.

<T9 Kana CHG mode/T9 Kanji CHG mode>

- This setting is valid for only the current text entry (edit) screen. The next time the text entry (edit) screen is displayed, the conversion mode reverts to the “T9 change mode” setting.

Deleting text

Use ⊛ to move the cursor to the text you want to delete and hold down CLR briefly (less than 1 second). The character to the right of the cursor is deleted.



■If no character is provided to the right of the cursor

The character to the left of the cursor is deleted.

■If you hold down CLR for 1 second or longer

All characters to the right of the cursor are deleted.

■If you hold down CLR for 1 second or longer when there is no character to the right of the cursor

All the text is deleted.

Entering common phrases

● Refer to p.422 for the pre-installed “Fixed common phrases”.

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.360)▶ ch (FUNC)▶“Common phrases”▶ Select a folder

2 Select a common phrase▶● (Select)

NOTE

● Common phrases can be used in the following text entry (edit) screens:
- Edit text memo
- i-mode mail subject/message body
- i-mode mail introduction/signature/quotes
- Enter mail search subject
- Enter auto sort setting subject
- Edit common phrase folder name/common phrase
- Edit alarm title
- Enter dictionary search word
- Edit To Do list
- Edit wake-up message
- Edit i-αppli text

NOTE

● Fixed common phrases are displayed (represented) differently depending on the text entry mode as shown below. Original common phrases and fixed common phrases that have been modified are displayed as stored regardless of the text entry mode.
- 5-touch, T9: Displayed as kanji/hiragana in Kanji/hiragana input mode.
  Displayed as single-byte katakana in other input modes.
- 2-touch input: Displayed as kanji/hiragana in double-byte input mode.
  Displayed as single-byte katakana in single-byte input mode.

(In English mode, the same fixed common phrases are displayed regardless of input mode.)

Entering text by quoting the phonebook or My Profile

In the Text Entry (Edit) screen for an e-mail, site or text memo, you can use this procedure to enter the name, reading, phone number, e-mail address, street address, birthday or memo stored in the “Phonebook” or in “My Profile”.

You can also launch the camera to scan a bar code and quote the scanned data.

● Data cannot be quoted from some Text entry (edit) screen.

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.360)▶ ch (FUNC)▶“Quote data”▶Select any item:

Quote phonebook……Searches for a phonebook entry to quote from and selects an item to quote.
About multiple-choice→p.38
Searching the phonebook→p.91

Quote My Profile……Selects an item to quote.
“About multiple-choice”→p.38

Text reader→p.163

Bar code reader→p.160

NOTE

<Quote My Profile>

● When you quote an address information, a space may be entered between each item.

● NTT DoCoMo accepts no liability whatsoever regarding the problem caused by the incorrect input of the owner information.

Modifying/Storing Common Phrases <Common phrases (store)>

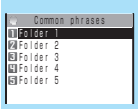
You can store frequently used phrases as common phrases in advance so that they can be retrieved when entering text.

- The common phrases are stored in 5 folders. Folders 1 and 2 each contain 10 pre-installed fixed common phrases. →p.422 Folders 3 to 5 each can store up to 10 original common phrases.
- You can modify the fixed common phrases.
- You can rename the folders to suit to the uses of the common phrases they contain.

Composing a new common phrase

1 MENU ▶"Own Data"▶"Common phrases"

The "Common phrase folder list" screen appears.



Common phrase folder list

Function menu➡p.367

2 Select a folder

The "Common phrase list" screen appears.



Common phrase list

Function menu➡p.367

3 Highlight "<Not stored>"▶ (Edit)▶ Enter the common phrase

NOTE

- You can use pictographs in common phrases for mails.

FUNC Common phrase folder list screen (p.367)

Edit folder name……Edits the folder name. You can enter up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters.

Reset name……Resets the folder name to the default folder name.

iC trans. all→p.310

Send all Ir data→p.308

FUNC Common phrase list screen (p.367)

Edit……Edits the common phrase.

iC transmission→p.309

Send Ir data→p.307

Delete this/Delete all……Deletes one or all common phrase(s).

Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text

- Only 1 item of copied or cut data can be stored. Copying or cutting a new item overwrites the previously stored text.

Copying (or cutting) text

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.360)▶ (FUNC)▶"Copy" or "Cut"

2 Move the cursor to the beginning of the text to be copied or cut ▶● (Start)

3 Move the cursor to the end of the text to be copied or cut ▶● (End)

The selected text is stored. You can store up to 5,000 double-byte characters or 10,000 single-byte characters.

■ **If the text is cut**

The selected text is deleted, but it is stored in FOMA.

Pasting text

- Once you have cut or copied text, you can paste that text as many times as you like until you cut or copy other text next time or turn the FOMA terminal off.

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.360)▶Move the cursor to the position to paste ▶ (FUNC)▶"Paste"

■ **If the text to be pasted includes characters that cannot be entered in the intended text entry (edit) screen**

A message appears notifying you that the characters will be replaced by spaces when the text is pasted.

Entering Text Using Kuten Codes <Kuten code>

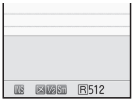
This function provides a way of entering kanji, hiragana, katakana, symbols and alphanumeric characters using 4-digit Kuten codes.

- For the Kuten code and the characters that can be input using the Kuten code, refer to the PDF format "Kuten Code List" in the provided CD-ROM.
- The character or a symbol in the Kuten Code List may be displayed differently on the screen.

<Example: Entering "慶" (kuten code 2336)>

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.360)▶ ch (FUNC)▶"Kuten code"

The input mode changes to "Kuten code input mode" and "区" appears in the information display area.



2 Enter Kuten code 2 3 3 6

The character ("慶" in this example) for the entered code appears and the FOMA terminal reverts to the original input mode.

■ **If there is no corresponding character for the entered kuten code**

A space is entered.

Storing Frequently Used Words <Own dictionary>

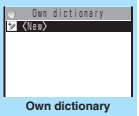
You can store frequently used words in the own dictionary under your preferred reading and recall these words by entering and converting the reading in the Text entry (edit) screen.

- Own dictionary can store up to 100 words.
- Words can contain up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters. Readings can include up to 10 double-byte hiragana.

Adding a new word

1 MENU ▶"Own Data"▶"Own dictionary"

The "Own dictionary" screen appears.



Own dictionary

Function menu➡p.368

2 "<New>"▶Enter the word▶Enter the reading

NOTE

- Registered words can be entered with word prediction.

Checking words

1 MENU ▶"Own Data"▶"Own dictionary"

2 Select a word

■ **To edit a word**

▶Highlight the word you want to change ▶ (Edit)

FUNC Own dictionary screen (p.368)

Edit……Edits the stored word.

iC transmission→p.309

Send Ir data→p.307

iC trans. all→p.310

Send all Ir data→p.308

Delete……Selects the deleting method from "Delete this/Delete selected/Delete all". "About multiple-choice"→p.38

Resetting the Learning Record <Clear learned>

The learning record contains character strings that were entered in the past and automatically stored as candidates for character conversion. This procedure resets the learning record to its default status at the time of purchase.

1 MENU ▶"Settings"▶"Other settings"▶"Character input set"▶"Clear learned"▶Enter your security code▶Select any item:

T9/Except words/pic.……Clears the learned records stored for T9, "Prediction", "Pictographs" and "Symbols".

Kana/Kanji change/face……Clears the learned record stored for kana-kanji conversion and the sorting order of the face mark screen.

Using Download Dictionaries

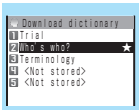
<Download dictionary>

You can set the dictionaries downloaded from sites, etc. for use in conversion.

- The FOMA terminal can store up to 5 download dictionaries.
- The dictionary is enabled when downloaded.
- For information on downloading dictionaries →p.178

1 MENU ▶"Own Data"▶"DL dictionary"

The "Download dictionary" screen appears.



Download dictionary

Function menu➡p.369

2 Select a dictionary

A star "★" appears next to the active dictionary.

■ **To disable**

▶Select a dictionary marked with a star "★".

The dictionary is disabled and the star "★" disappears.

NOTE

- When you activate the download dictionary of face symbols, face symbols of the dictionary are added to the screen displayed when "Face Mark" is selected from the function menu, then displayed in the list of maximum of 600 (including the pre-installed 100) face symbols.
- When you download 2 face symbols dictionaries and activate both of them, the face symbols of the first activated download dictionary are displayed in the list.

FUNC Download dictionary screen (p.369)

Edit title……Edits the title of the download dictionary. You can enter up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters.

Set dictionary……Enables or disables the download dictionary.

Dictionary info……Displays information for the download dictionary.

Delete this/Delete all……Deletes one or all download dictionary (dictionaries).

Entering Text Using 2-Touch

<Mode 2 (2-touch)>

You can enter 1 character by pressing 2 dial keys. For example, to enter "う", press 1 3 in sequence as "う" is the third character of the "あ column".

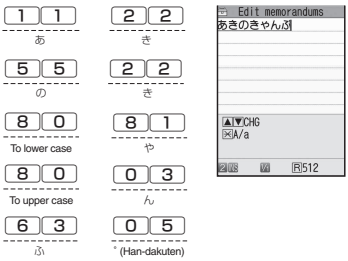
- Refer to "Characters that can be entered using 2-touch input" (p.414) for details on the character assignment.
- The method for selecting the predicted candidates with word prediction and the method for converting the entered hiragana to the word you want are same as those of the 5-touch input. →p.361

<Example: To enter "あきのきゃんぷ">

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.360)▶Set to Double-byte input mode

When "Double-byte input mode (1/1)" is not set, press ※ (Chrct) to switch the mode.

2 Enter the hiragana



NOTE

- You can also use * to enter "Dakuten/Han-dakuten" or to switch "Upper case/Lower case".

Entering Text Using T9

<Mode 3 (T9)>

You can enter a character with fewer key operations (1 time for 1 character) and select the character you want from the predicted/conversion candidates. For example, when you want to enter "春", press 6 for "は column", press 9 for "ら column", then select "春" from the displayed predicted/conversion candidates.

- To assist T9, you can use "Yomi edit function" to correct the reading when the predicted/conversion candidates do not have the character you want.
- Refer to "Characters that can be entered using T9 input" (p.415) for details on the character assignment.

Continued on next page

● T9 input mode is available only when the input mode is “Kanji/Hiragana”, “Katakana” or “Alphabets”. “5-touch mode” is automatically applied in “Numbers” input mode.

<Example: To enter “春”>

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.360)▶Set to Kanji/hiragana input mode

When “Kanji/hiragana input mode (漢 1/1)” is not set, press (Chrct) to switch the mode.

2 Enter characters

6 (は column) 9 (ら column)



The predicted candidates for the combination of “は column” and “ら column” are displayed.

■ **When the entered characters are too many**

Characters that cannot be recognized are displayed in gray. In this case, changing the conversion area with also changes the predicted/conversion candidates.

■ **To switch the display of predicted/conversion candidates**

Kanji/Kana: #

English/Japanese:

3

Conversion candidates in the operation guidance area can be selected.



■ **To return to entering characters**

▶CLR

■ **To display the predicted candidates for the highlighted reading**

Highlighting the predicted/conversion candidate and pressing displays the predicted candidates for the reading of the highlighted candidate.

For example, predicted candidates such as “春休み” or “遥か” appears for “春”.

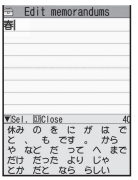
■ **To display the conversion candidates for the highlighted reading**

Highlighting the prediction/conversion candidate and pressing (CHG) displays the conversion candidates for the reading of the highlighted candidate.

For example, predicted candidates such as “張る” or “貼る” appears for “春”.

4 Select the conversion candidate

The selected words appear in the text entry area.

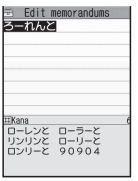


● Edit the reading

<Example: To enter “らんらんと”>

1 Enter characters

9 (ら column), 0 (わ column), 9 (ら column), 0 (わ column), 4 (た column)



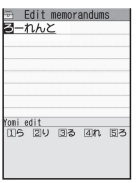
In this case, the predicted/conversion candidates do not contain the characters “らんらんと”.

2 (Yomi)

The FOMA terminal switches to the reading editing mode and the highlighting moves to the top. The “ら column” characters appear in the operation guidance area.

3 Press the number on the keypad for the character you want to enter.

In this case, press 1 (ら). After you correct the character, the cursor moves to the next character. Use the same procedure to correct the reading.



■ **When you do not correct the reading**

▶Use to move the cursor to the next character to be corrected.

■ **To exit edit mode in mid-operation**

▶ (Return)

The predicted/conversion candidates for the reading at the end appear.

Setting T9 change mode

When you are entering text in T9 input mode, you can use this procedure to specify whether the entered text is converted to kanji or katakana (T9 Kanji change mode) or hiragana (T9 Kana change mode).

1 ▶“Settings”▶“Other settings”▶“Character input set”▶“T9 change mode”▶“T9 Kanji change mode” or “T9 Kana change mode”

Network Services

Voice Mail Service ..... Voice Mail 372
Call Waiting ..... Call Waiting 373
Call Forwarding Service ..... Call Forwarding 374
Nuisance Call Blocking Service ..... Nuisance Call Blk 375
Caller ID Request Service ..... Caller ID Request 375
Dual Network Service ..... Dual Network 376
English Guidance ..... English Guidance 376
Service Dialing Number ..... Service Numbers 377
Handling Calls Received During a Call ..... In-Call Function Selection 377
Setting up Remote Control ..... Remote Control 378
Multi Number ..... Multi Number 378
2in1 ..... 2in1 379
Adding and Using Services ..... Additional service 384

Available Network Services

- Your FOMA terminal provides you with access to a range of useful DoCoMo network services. For the outline and the details on the services, refer to the reference pages in the following table.

Service name	Sub-scription	Monthly usage fees	Page
Voice Mail Service	Required	Charged	p.372
Call Waiting	Required	Charged	p.373
Call Forwarding Service	Required	Free	p.374
Nuisance Call Blocking	Not required	Free	p.375
Caller ID Notification	Not required	Free	p.48
Caller ID Request	Not required	Free	p.375

Service name	Sub-scription	Monthly usage fees	Page
Public mode (Driving mode)	Not required	Free	p.67
Public mode (Power OFF)	Not required	Free	p.69
Dual Network service	Required	Charged	p.376
English Guidance	Not required	Free	p.376
Multi Number	Required	Charged	p.378
2in1	Required	Charged	p.379
Melody Call	Required	Charged	p.103

- For the service used by connecting to the Network Service Center, you cannot operate the service while "圏外" appears.
- For the application and questions, contact the inquiries number provided on the back of this manual.
- This section explains the overview of the network services using the menus on the FOMA terminal. For more details, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network services]".

Voice Mail Service <Voice Mail>

When you are in the out of service area, when the FOMA terminal is not turned on, or when you cannot answer the call, this service plays an answer message to the caller of the voice or videophone call and stores the caller's message on your behalf.

- To give priority to voice mail when "Record message" (p.70) is set at the same time, ensure that the ring time set for voice mail is shorter than the ring time set for "Record message".
- When you do not answer the voice or videophone call when the Voice mail service is set to "Activate", calls are logged in the "Received calls" record as "Missed calls" record, and the "Missed call" desktop icon appears on the standby screen.
- The message can be recorded up to 3 minutes for 1 message, up to 20 messages for each of the voice and videophone calls, and stored up to 72 hours.

Basic flow of Voice mail service operation

Voice Mail service activated

⬇

Your FOMA terminal receives a voice/ videophone call

⬇

You cannot answer the call and it is connected to the Voice Mail service center

⬇

The caller records a message

If the caller is in a hurry and wishes to leave a message without listening to the Voice Mail answering message, he or she can interrupt the answering message and switch to message recording mode immediately by pressing #.

⬇

The Voice Mail service center notifies you that you have a recorded message

⬇

You listen to the recorded message

Using the Voice Mail service

1 MENU/MAIL ▶"Service"▶"Voice Mail"▶Select any item:

Play messages[*1]……The FOMA terminal calls the Voice mail service center.
Play the recorded messages by following the audio guidance.

Activate[*1]……Enters the ring time (000 to 120 seconds) and activates the Voice Mail service.
When set to 0 second, received calls are not recorded in the "Received calls" record.

Deactivate[*1]……Deactivates the Voice mail service.

Set ring time……Changes the ring time only (000 to 120 seconds).

Check setting[*1]……Checks the current Voice mail service settings.

- About the function menu of the displayed "Check setting" screen. →p.373

Setting[*1]……Changes the Voice mail service settings using audio guidance.
The FOMA terminal calls the Voice mail service center.
Specify the settings by following the audio guidance.

Check messages……Checking whether there is a recorded message.

Message notification[*2]……Emits the original notification tone when the number of recorded messages stored at the Voice mail service center increases.

Erase icon……Clears the " " icon (Voice mail icon) from the standby screen.

Activate notice call……When you receive a call while the FOMA terminal is turned off or is out of the service area, an SMS is sent to notify you of the information about the call (date, time and the caller ID) once you turn the FOMA terminal back on or move back in to the service area.

- **All Calls**……Notifies you of all received calls.
- **Calls with Caller ID**……Notifies you of only the calls with the caller ID.

Deactivate notice call……Deactivates the notice call.

Notice call status……Checks the current Notice call service settings.

*1 : When 2in1 is set to Dual mode, the screen appears to select Number A or Number B. However, the selection screen appears for "Check setting" even in B mode.
*2 : Only for the recorded message of voice calls.

NOTE

- To change the Voice mail service setting for videophone calls, make a voice call to “1412”.

<Check setting>

- When checking Number B setting for 2in1, only “Active” or “Inactive” appears.

<Check messages>

- If you have the recorded messages stored at the Voice mail service center, the “ ” (voice mail icon) and “ ” (“Voice mail” desktop icon) appear on the standby screen for the recorded messages of voice calls. The recorded messages of videophone calls are notified by SMS.
- The number in the voice mail icon changes according to the number of stored messages “ ”, “ ”, “ ” ... “ ” (10 messages or more). The displayed number of Voice mail messages is the number of new messages announced by the Voice mail center. The number of stored messages is not included.
- You may not be able to use this function to check for the message recorded after checking the message.

<Message notification>

- When 2in1 is set to A mode or B mode, the notification tone does not sound when a message is recorded for the unused number.

<Erase icon>

- Clearing the icon does not delete the corresponding recorded messages. The voice mail icon appears again when you check for messages.

<Activate notice call>

- Even if you set the SMS Rejection setting, the FOMA terminal receives the notification.

FUNC Check setting screen (p.372)

Activate/Deactivate……Activates or deactivates the Voice mail service.

Set ring time……Changes the ring time.

Call Waiting <Call Waiting>

When you receive a call while talking on a call, this service notifies the call with a ring tone and you can answer the newly received call by putting the current call on hold. You can also put your current call on hold and make a new call to someone else.

- To use Call waiting, select “Answer” in “Incoming Call Mng” (p.377) beforehand. If another setting is selected, you will not be able to answer a voice call received during another voice call even when Call waiting is activated.
- You can answer another call when you receive a videophone call during a voice call or when you receive a voice call or videophone call during a videophone call if you activate Call waiting and set “Incoming Call Mng” to “Answer”. In this case, you have to end the current voice call or videophone call (You cannot put the current call on hold). →p.377

Using the Call Waiting

1 MENU ▶“Service”▶“Call Waiting”▶ Select any item:

Activate/Deactivate……Activates or deactivates the Call waiting service.

Check setting……Checks the current Call waiting service settings.

Putting the current voice call on hold to answer a new received voice call

1 When you hear the double tones (repeated soft double-beeps) during a voice call, press

Your first call is automatically put on hold and the FOMA terminal answers the new voice call.

2 Switch back to the first call

■ To end the call with the second caller

▶ ▶

This ends the call with the second caller and returns you to your first call.

■ To put the second caller on hold

▶

This puts the second caller on hold and returns you to your first call.

You can switch back and forth between the 2 calls by pressing .

Continued on next page

■ **To end the voice call on hold**
▶ch (FUNC)▶“End held call”

Ending the current voice call to answer another voice call

1 **When you hear the double tones (repeated soft double-beeps), press**
The first call is ended and the ring tone sounds.

2
The FOMA terminal answers the new voice call.

Putting the current voice call on hold to make a voice call to someone else

You can put your current voice call on hold and make a new voice call to someone else.

1 **Dial another phone number during your current call▶**
Your first call is automatically put on hold and the FOMA terminal switches to the new call.
You can also make calls by searching the phonebook.
Searching the phonebook Member list→p.92

2 **Switch back to the first call**

■ **To end the new call**
▶▶
This ends the new call and returns you to your first call.

■ **To put the new call on hold**
▶
This puts the new call on hold and returns you to your first call.
You can switch back and forth between the 2 calls by pressing .

■ **To end the voice call on hold**
▶ch (FUNC)▶“End held call”

Call Forwarding Service
<Call Forwarding>

When you are in the out of service area or when the FOMA terminal is not turned on, or when you do not answer the call within the set ringing time, this service forwards the voice/videophone call.
- To give priority to the Call forwarding service when “Record message” (p.70) is set at the same time, ensure that the ring time set for the Call forwarding service is shorter than the ring time set for “Record message”.
- When you do not answer the voice or videophone call when the Call forwarding service is set to “Activate”, calls are logged in the “Received calls” record as “Missed calls” record, and the “Missed call” desktop icon appears on the standby screen.

Basic flow of Call forwarding service operation

Call Forwarding number registered
↓
Call Forwarding service activated
↓
Your FOMA terminal receives a voice or videophone call
↓
If you do not answer the voice or videophone call, it is automatically forwarded to the specified number

Call forwarding service call charges



Charges paid by the caller.
Charges paid by the Call Forwarding service subscriber.

Using the Call Forwarding service

1 MENU▶“Service”▶“Call Forwarding”▶ **Select any item:**

Activate[*1]……Set the forwarding number and the ring time, then select “Activate”.

Register fwd number……Enter the forwarding number.
Once you set the number, a star “★” appears next to “Register fwd number”.

•You can use ⓘ or ⓖ to enter the number by searching the phonebook.
Searching the phonebook→p.92

Set ring time……Enter the ring time (000 to 120 seconds). Once you set the number, a star "★" appears next to "Set ring time".
When set to 0 second, received calls are not recorded in the "Received calls" record.

Activate……Activates the Call forwarding service.

Deactivate[*1]……Deactivates the Call forwarding service.

Change forwarding No……Select "Change forwarding No" when the forwarding number is registered and the Call forwarding service is set to "Activate", and select "Change No.+Activate" when the service is set to "Deactivate".

Fwd number busy[*2]……When the forwarding number is busy, received calls are transferred to the Voice mail service center.

Check setting[*1]……Checks the current Call forwarding service settings.

*1 : When 2in1 is set to Dual mode, the screen appears to select Number A or Number B. However, the selection screen appears for Check setting even in B mode.
*2 : The subscription to the "Voice Mail service" is required.

NOTE

<Activate>
- When 2in1 is set to B mode, you cannot select "Register fwd number" and "Set ring time".
- To give priority to Call forwarding when "Remote monitoring" is set at the same time, ensure that the ring time set for Call forwarding is shorter than the ring time set for "Remote monitoring".

<Change forwarding No>
- When 2in1 is set to B mode, you cannot select "Change No.+Activate".

<Check setting>
- When checking Number B setting for 2in1, only "Active" or "Inactive" appears.

Setting or canceling the call forwarding guidance message

1 On the standby screen▶ 1 4 2 9 ▶ ☎

- Set the call forwarding guidance message by following the audio guidance message.
- For details, refer to the "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network Services]".

Nuisance Call Blocking Service <Nuisance Call Blk>

This service enables you to reject receiving "Nuisance calls". Once you store the number to reject, calls from the number are automatically rejected and answered by a message.
- The ring tone does not sound even when you receive a call from the number stored to reject. Also, the call is not recorded in "Received calls" record.

Using the Nuisance Call Blocking service

1 MENU/MULTI ▶"Service"▶"Nuisance Call Blk"▶ Select any item:

Register Caller……Registers the number of the last caller you answered to the list of barred numbers.

Register number……Registers the phone number by using the dial keys or quoting from the phonebook or Received calls record, etc.
- After entering a part of the phone number, you can use ⓘ or ⓖ to enter the number by searching the phonebook.
- You can use ⓘ or ⓖ to enter the number by searching the phonebook. Searching the phonebook Member list→p.92
- You can use ⓛ to search the Received calls record and ⓡ to search the Redial record.

Delete last entry……Deletes the last registered phone number. By repeating the same procedure, you can delete the stored barred number one by one from the last one.

Delete all entries……Deletes all the barred numbers.

The number of entries……Checks the number of call barring entries.

Caller ID Request Service <Caller ID Request>

When you receive a voice/videophone call from a caller who do not provide his or her phone number (caller ID), the call is answered by a message requesting the Caller ID, then the call automatically ends.
- Calls rejected by the Caller ID request service are not logged in the "Received calls" record and no "Missed call" desktop icon appears.

Using the Caller ID Request service

1 MENU ▶“Service”▶“Caller ID Request”▶ Select any item:

Activate/Deactivate……Activates or deactivates the Caller ID request service.

Check setting……Checks the current Caller ID Request service settings.

NOTE

- For the incoming call of PushTalk, the call automatically ends without the message.

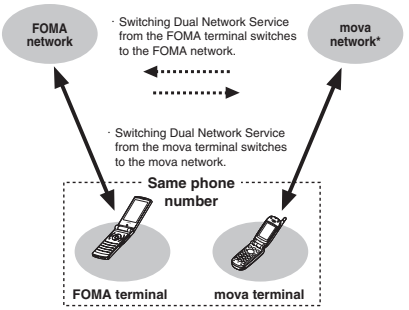
Dual Network Service

<Dual Network>

This service enables you to use the mova terminal with the phone number of your FOMA terminal. You can switch between the FOMA network and the mova network depending on the service area.

- You cannot use the FOMA terminal and the mova terminal at the same time.
- Switch the Dual network service from the terminal which is not using the service.
- For details on how to access the service from a mova terminal, refer to the “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [Network Services]”.

Overview of Dual Network service



*: Some services are not available.

Using the Dual Network service

1 MENU ▶“Service”▶“Dual Network”▶ Select any item:

Dual Network switching……The network security code is required to switch.
Network security code→p.124

Check setting……Checks whether the FOMA terminal can access the services or not.

NOTE

- If you use Dual Network Service on the mova terminal in Japan after using the FOMA terminal overseas, turn on the FOMA terminal before use.

<Dual Network switching>

- To switch networks, end communication from the terminal that is currently able to access services before making the switch.

English Guidance

<English Guidance>

You can set English as the language used in guidance messages for setting network services such as the “Voice Mail” service or the audio message such as the out of area warnings.

Item	Language	Guidance
Outgoing (including the guidance for the settings of the network services)	Japanese	Plays in Japanese.
	English	Plays in English.
Incoming (guidance messages played to callers)	Japanese	Plays in Japanese.
	Japanese +English	Plays in Japanese first and then in English.
	English+ Japanese	Plays in English first and then in Japanese.

Using the English Guidance

1 MENU ▶“Service”▶“English Guidance”▶Select any item:

Guidance setting……Selects the setting from the followings:

Outgoing+Incoming……Selects the language for outgoing calls from “Japanese/English”, then selects the language for incoming calls from “Japanese/Japanese+English/English+Japanese”.

Outgoing call……Selects the language only for the outgoing calls from “Japanese/English”.

Incoming call……Selects the language only for the incoming calls from “Japanese/Japanese+English/English+Japanese”.

Check setting……Checks the current English guidance settings.

Service Dialing Number

<Service Numbers>

You can make a call to the DoCoMo general help desk and service counter for information on faults, etc.

- The displayed items may be different or the items are not displayed depending on the FOMA card (UIM) you are using.

1 MENU/MULTI ▶“Service”▶“Service Numbers”▶ **Select any item:**

ドコモ故障問合せ……Calls the DoCoMo service desk.

ドコモ総合案内・受付……Calls the DoCoMo general information desk.

Handling Calls Received During a Call

<In-Call Function Selection>

You can specify how to handle voice calls, videophone calls and 64K data communication that arrives during a call when you have subscribed to the “Voice Mail”, “Call Forwarding” or “Call Waiting” service.

- If you have not subscribed to “Voice Mail”, “Call Forwarding” or “Call Waiting” service, you cannot answer the calls received during calls.
- To use “Incoming Call Mng”, set “Set in-call arrival” to “Active”.

Selecting how to handle incoming calls during another call

<Incoming Call Mng>

1 MENU/MULTI ▶“Service”▶“Incoming Call Mng”▶ **Select any item:**

Voice Mail……Transfers voice or videophone calls received during a call to the Voice mail service center regardless of the “Call Waiting” and “Voice Mail” service settings.

Call Forwarding……Transfers voice and videophone calls received during a call to the forwarding number regardless of the “Call Waiting” and “Call Forwarding” service settings.

Call Rejection……Rejects voice and videophone calls and 64K data communication received during a call.

Answer……If “Call Waiting” is activated and a voice call is received during another voice call, you can use the “Call Waiting” service. If call waiting is not activated or during a videophone call or 64K data communication, the call can be handled in any of the following ways:

- You can end the current voice or videophone call or 64K data communication, and answer the received voice or videophone call or 64K data communication.
- You can use the function menu to manually handle a voice call, videophone call or 64K data communication received during a call. →p.378
- If “Voice Mail” service or “Call Forwarding” service is activated, calls can be handled using these service settings.

Set in-call arrival

Activates/deactivates the function setting selected in “Incoming Call Mng” or checks the setting.

1 MENU/MULTI ▶“Service”▶“Set in-call arrival”▶ **Select any item:**

Activate……Activates the “Incoming Call Mng” setting.

Deactivate……Deactivates the “Incoming Call Mng” setting.

Check setting……Displays the current setting.

Ending the current call or 64K data communication to answer a received call

● When the current call and incoming call are the same type

<Example: Ending the current voice call to answer a received voice call>

1 **When you hear the double tones (repeated soft double-beeps), press** ☎

This ends the current call and the FOMA terminal starts ringing.

■ **For videophone or 64K data communication**

The ringing call screen appears.

▶☎

2 ☎

This accepts the incoming voice call.

■ **For 64K data communication**

▶Receive the call on a PC

● When the current call and incoming call are different types

If you receive a videophone call or 64K data communication during a voice call, if you receive a voice call or 64K data communication during a videophone call, or if you receive a voice or videophone call during 64K data communication, use this procedure to end your current call or 64K data communication to answer the incoming call.

<Example: Ending the current videophone call to answer an incoming voice call>

1 You hear the double tones (repeated soft double-beeps) and the voice call ringing screen appears

When you receive a 64K data communication, the double tones (repeated soft double-beeps) do not sound.

2 [☎]

■ **For 64K data communication**

▶[☎]▶Receive the call on a PC

Manually rejecting calls or connecting to the Call Forwarding or Voice Mail service

<Example: When Set in-call arrival is set to "Activate" and Incoming Call Mng is set to "Answer">

1 When you hear the double tones (repeated soft double-beeps), press [ch] (FUNC)

2 Select how to handle the received call

■ **To reject a received call**

▶"Call Rejection"

■ **To forward a received call to the forwarding number**

▶"Call Forwarding"

■ **To transfer a call to the Voice mail service center**

▶"Voice Mail"

With any of the above procedures, you can return to your first call.

Setting up Remote Control <Remote Control>

You can operate the "Voice Mail" or "Call Forwarding Service", etc. from push-key-type ordinary phones, payphones, DoCoMo mobile phones, etc.

- To use the "Voice Mail" or "Call Forwarding" service overseas, set Remote Control beforehand.
- For details on operating network services from a payphone, etc., refer to the "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network Services]".

1 [MENU/MULTI]▶"Service"▶"Remote Control"▶ Select any item:

Activate/Deactivate……Activates or deactivates the Remote control.

Check setting……Checks the current Remote control settings.

Multi Number <Multi Number>

You can add and use the maximum of two additional numbers (additional number 1 and additional number 2) other than the basic number as the phone numbers of the FOMA terminal.

- Cannot be used with 2in1 at the same time.
- The name stored for the multi number (basic number, additional number 1/2) respectively appears on the screen when making or receiving a call.
- When you make a call using the Redial/Received calls record, the multi number used for making or receiving a call at the last time is displayed and the call is made from the number.

Using Multi Number

1 [MENU/MULTI]▶"Service"▶"Multi Number"▶ Select any item:

Set Multi Number……Specifies the phone number you use for ordinary calls.

Basic Number*……Sets to call from the subscribed phone number (basic number).

Additional Number1/Additional Number2*……Sets to call from the additional number.

Check setting……Checks the current Multi number settings.

Number Setting……Registers the additional number notified at the subscription of the Multi number to the FOMA terminal.

▶Highlight the item to register (or change) the additional number▶✉ (Edit)▶Enter the name▶Enter the additional number

You can enter up to 8 double-byte or 16 single-byte characters for the name and you can enter up to 26 digits for the additional number.

- About the function menu of the “Multi Number setting” screen which appears when “Phone number record” is selected.→p.379

Select ring tone……Sets the ring tone for the received calls to the additional number 1 and additional number 2 respectively.→p.100

* : When the name is changed, registered name appears respectively.

NOTE

- The Multi number settings (name, phone number, etc.) in the FOMA terminal may be deleted if you remove or replace the FOMA card (UIM). In this case, register the additional number again.

<Number Setting>

- The name appears when you make various settings of the multi number function or when you select a phone number to use for each call.

<Select ring tone>

- Refer to p.101 for the priority when the ring tone settings are duplicated.

FUNC Multi Number setting screen (p.379)

Edit……Edits the name of the basic number or the phone number/name of the additional number.

Delete this……Deletes the name of the basic number or one phone number/name of the additional number.

Delete all……Deletes the name of the basic number and all phone numbers/names of the additional numbers.

Switching the phone number for each call

You can switch the phone number each time you make a call.

1 Enter phone number screen (p.50)▶ch (FUNC)▶“Multi Number”▶Select any item:

Basic Number*……Sets to call from the subscribed phone number (basic number).

Additional Number1/Additional Number2*……Sets to call from the additional number.

Cancel number……Cancels the setting and “Set Multi Number” setting is applied.

* : If the registration name is changed, each name is displayed.

NOTE

- You can also switch the phone number from the function menu of phonebook detail screen, detail screen of Redial/Dialed calls/Received calls records, etc.

2in1 <2in1>

You can separately use 2 phone numbers and 2 mail addresses on your FOMA terminal as if you have 2 terminals.

- In this function, your phone number and mail address is called “Number A and Address A” and the additional phone number and mail address is “Number B and Address B”.
- Cannot be used at the same time as Multi Number.

NOTE

- Information of Number B and Address B can be obtained with the following operation.
  - Number B: Run “Check 2in1” from the function menu in the My Profile screen for Number B→p.348
  - Address B: Run “Acquire Automatically” for the mail address when registering My Profile for Number B→p.348
- For more details, see “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [2in1]”.
- When sending a signal from an external device or AT commands, Number A is used for A/Dual mode and Number B is used for B mode.

About Modes

In 2in1, modes can be set to “A mode”, “B mode” or “Dual mode”.

mode	Description
A mode	You can dial with your phone number (Number A), send i-mode mails with Address A, or browse related data.
B mode	You can dial with 2in1 phone number (Number B), access to sites where WEB mail is available with Address B, and browse related data.
Dual mode	The mode that supports both functions of A and B mode.

* See “Services available for each mode” (p.382) for the details of available services in each mode.

NOTE

- Mail transmission for Address B is executed in the specified WEB mail site.
- Packet communication in B mode is available while subscribing to the i-mode service.
- Set A mode before you replace a FOMA card (UIM) with the subscription to 2in1 service to the FOMA card (UIM) without subscription.

Using 2in1

Set 2in1 to ON and perform settings operations.

1 MENU ▶“Service”▶“2in1 setting”▶Enter your security code▶“YES”▶Select any item:

■ When 2in1 is set to ON

After entering the security code, 2in1 setting screen appears without showing the screen to confirm whether to set 2in1 to ON is not displayed.

Mode switching……Selects the 2in1 mode from “A mode/B mode/Dual mode”.
“About Modes”→p.380

Phonebook 2in1 setting

Phonebook 2in1 setting……Highlight the phonebook entry to set and press ● (Switch) to select the mode.
The mode switches as follows each time you press ● (Switch): A (A mode)→ B (B mode)→ AB (Dual mode)
Searching the phonebook→p.92

Group 2in1 setting……Highlight the group to set and press ● (Switch) to select the mode.
The mode switches as follows each time you press ● (Switch): no setting→ AB (Dual mode)→ A (A mode)→ B (B mode)

Stand-by display……Sets the standby screen displayed in B mode or Dual mode respectively.
“Changing the standby screen image”→p.108
“★” appears for the changed item. To reset the setting, press (Release).

Set call/receive No.

Disp. call/receive No.……Sets to display the information (name, phone number, mail address, etc.) of “Number A (Address A)” and “Number B (Address B)” in different font color to distinguish when making/receiving a call.
Press (Switch) to switch the color of the pallet (16 colors or 256 colors).
Press (Reset) to reset to the default setting.

Ringtone for Number B……Sets ring tone (p.100), incoming call screen (p.107), illumination (p.113), vibration (p.102) and answering message (p.71) for the incoming voice, videophone calls, and receiving mails on Number B respectively.

2in1 function OFF……Sets 2in1 to OFF.

Rcv. avoid. setting

Change rcv. avoid.……Sets “Rcv. avoid. (Number A)” or “Rcv. avoid. (Number B)”.

Check rcv. avoid.……Checks the settings specified in “Rcv. avoid. (Number A)” or “Rcv. avoid. (Number B)”.

Mode link……Link this setting and the 2in1 function Mode switching. Set “Rcv. avoid. (Number B)” in A mode, and “Rcv. avoid. (Number A)” in B mode. Reception is not avoided in Dual mode.

Rcv. avoid. (abroad)……Sets “Rcv. avoid. (Number A)” or “Rcv. avoid. (Number B)” for overseas use. The number is used to connect when the Mode link is set to “OFF”.

NOTE

- When 2in1 is set to OFF, you can also perform “2in1 settings” by pressing 2 for 1 second or longer on the standby screen.

<Mode switching>

- You can also change mode by pressing 2 for 1 second or longer on the standby screen.

NOTE

<Phonebook 2in1 setting>

- Phonebook entries in B setting cannot be added to PushTalk phonebook.
- When the mode for phonebook entries added to PushTalk phonebook is set to B, a confirmation screen appears informing you that PushTalk calls cannot be made.
- You cannot set this function to UIM phonebook entries.
- Select “Display detail” from the function menu to display “Phonebook detail” screen from “Phonebook list” screen in this function.

<Stand-by display>

- When Change Mode is set to A mode, standby screens are displayed according to “Display setting”.
- When “Kisekae Tool” downloaded is set, or i-αppli standby screen or Random display is set, the default screen appears even when “Same as Number A” is set.

<Disp. call/receive No.>

- Names, phone numbers and mail addresses in the screens below will be displayed in the set color.
  - In-call screen
  - Dialing/Receiving screen
  - Redial/Dialed calls (list/detail)
  - Received calls (list/detail)
  - Sent*/Received address record screen (list/detail)
  - Chaku-moji Sent messages record screen

  *: In B mode, the screen for sent addresses cannot be displayed.
- The setting for Number A/Number B (Address A/Address B) is referred in the screen while incoming a call, even when 2in1 is set to OFF.

<Ringtone for Number B>

- When making the same settings to Number A and Address A, set each item as “Same as Number A”.
- When the ring tone settings are duplicated, the priority applies. →p.101

  When you receive a call with Number B without caller ID, “Ringtone for Number B” has priority in the ring tone setting.

Switching phone numbers each time when making a call

When 2in1 is set to ON and the mode is set to Dual mode, phone numbers can be switched when making a call.

- This function is available only on the detail screen of “Phonebook/Received calls/Dialed calls/Redial”.

<Example: When making a call using the phonebook>

1 Phonebook detail screen (p.92)▶ ch (FUNC)▶“Dial setting”▶“2in1/Multi Num.”▶Select any item:

Number A……Allows calls to be made from Number A.

Number B……Allows calls to be made from Number B.

Cancel number……Allows calls to made according to Phonebook 2in1 setting.

NOTE

- When switching phone numbers from the function menu of the Redial/Dialed/Received calls details screen, you can dial according to each 2in1 setting.
- “2in1/Multi Num.” in the function menu cannot be selected when the mode is set to A mode or B mode.
- When the following operations are performed, the phone number selection screen is displayed and the phone number to use can be selected.
  - When making calls by entering phone number in the phone number entry screen
  - When using services from the special number registered in Additional service
  - When “Dialing” from the function menu in Sent/Received address list is selected.
  - When using the Phone to function
  - When pressing the switch on the flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) on the phone number entry screen

Services available for each mode

- Only the functions with different operations depending on the mode are listed. (Those which operate in the same way as A mode are omitted.)

Service			A mode	B mode	Dual mode
Voice call/ Videophone	Dialing		Number A	Number B	Selectable on making a call[*1]
	Incoming call[*2]		All		
Phonebook[*3]	View type[*4]		A: Common	B: Common	All
	Name conversion[*5]		A: Common	B: Common	All
	2in1 setting on a new entry		A	B	A
	Receives all data through infrared data port/iC/ microSD memory card		Copies Phonebook 2in1 setting in the original source[*5]		
	Receives single data through infrared data port/ iC/microSD memory card		A	B	A
	UIM phonebook	Copy to UIM	Phonebook 2in1 setting is common		
		Copy to phone	A	B	A
Redial	View type		Dials with Number A	Dials with Number B	All
Received calls	View type		Receives with Number A	Receives with Number B	All
Mail/SMS	View type[*4]		Sent/received mails with Address A Sent/received SMS with Number A	(FOMA terminal) Received mails (when “端末に保存 (Save to the terminal)” is selected on the WEB mail site) or alert mails for new message/ alarm to Address B which are saved in your FOMA terminal Displays SMS received with Number B (WEB mail site) Sent/received mails with Address B	(FOMA terminal) Sent/received mails with Address A, and received mails or alert mails for new message/alarm to Address B which are saved in your FOMA terminal Sent/received SMS with Number A Displays SMS received with Number B (WEB mail site) Sent/received mails with Address B
	Send		(FOMA terminal) Mails from Address A SMS from Number A	(FOMA terminal) Unavailable for sending mails/SMS (WEB mail site) Mails with Address B	(FOMA terminal) Mails with Address A[*7] SMS from Number A (WEB mail site) Mails with Address B
	Receive		Mails to Address A/ SMS to Number A (vibration) Mails or alert mails for new message/alarm to Address B saved in FOMA terminal, or SMS with Number B (no vibration)	Mails to Address A/ SMS to Number A (no vibration) Mails or alert mails for new message/alarm to Address B saved in FOMA terminal, or SMS with Number B (vibration)	Mails to Address A/ SMS to Number A (vibration) Mails or alert mails for new message/alarm to Address B saved in FOMA terminal, or SMS with Number B (vibration)

Service			A mode	B mode	Dual mode
Mail/SMS	Receives all data through infrared data port/iC/microSD memory card		Copies the status in the original source.*6		
	Receives single data through infrared data port/iC/microSD memory card		A		
	FOMA card (UIM) (only for SMS)	Copy to UIM	A		
		Copy to phone	A		
PushTalk	Dialing		Number A	Unavailable	Number A
	Incoming call		Number A		
	PushTalk phonebook		View type	Unavailable	View type
i-αppli			All available	Available*8	Available*9
My Profile			Number A and Address A	Number B and Address B	Number A/B Address A/B

*1 : When A or common setting phonebook is set, dialing is made with Number A, and Number B is applied with B setting phonebook.

*2 : Each function of “Restrictions” varies depending on the following combination:

- In A mode, the phone number specified in A-common setting phonebook is targeted by the function.
- In B mode, the phone number specified in B-common setting phonebook is targeted by the function.
- In Dual mode, the phone number specified in all phonebook is targeted by the function.

However, in “Restrict dialing”, a call cannot be made besides the specified number regardless of 2in1 mode.

*3 : Gives priority to Secret data when the data is saved as secret.

*4 : In B mode, all phonebook entries in microSD memory card are displayed in a list. However the details are not displayed when 2in1 is set to A mode.
Although mails/SMS are also listed, the details are not displayed if the mail/SMS has been sent to Number A/Address A.

*5 : This function shows names which are checked against the name of data saved in phonebook with each number/address and converted into that name, when phone numbers on dialing/incoming, numbers on sending/receiving or addresses on sending/receiving are saved in phonebook.

*6 : A is applied when the terminal of the sender does not support 2in1.

*7 : The destination address is selectable from B setting phonebook when composing a new mail in Dual mode, however, please note that the mail is sent from Address A. Note that if you forward a mail to Address B in Dual mode, the mail is sent from Address A.

*8 : Unavailable for mail-connected i-αppli, i-αppli which uses the mail function, i-αppli stand-by display.

*9 : Unavailable for i-αppli stand-by display.

Adding and Using Services

<Additional service>

When a new network service is added by DoCoMo, you can add the service to the menu and use the service.

Adding new services and response messages

1 MENU/HELP ▶"Service"▶"Additional service"▶ Select any item:

Additional service……Adds new services.
▶Highlight "<Not stored>"▶ch (FUNC)▶"Add new service"▶Enter the service name▶Select any item
You can enter up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters for the service name.

Enter number……Uses the number to connect.
You can enter up to 20 digits.

Enter USSD number……Uses the service code to connect.
You can enter up to 40 digits.

- About the function menu of the "Additional service" screen which appears when "Additional service" is selected. →p.384

Additional guidance……Registers the response messages for the commands posted from the network when using the added network service with "USSD" (service code).
▶Highlight "<Not stored>"▶ch (FUNC)▶"Add new guidance"▶Enter the command▶Enter the response message▶"YES"
You can enter up to 20 digits for the command and you can enter up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters for the response message.

- About the function menu of the "Additional guidance" screen which appears when "Additional guidance" is selected. →p.384

NOTE

<Additional service>

- To use the service, enter the "number" or "service code" provided by DoCoMo. The "number" is the number used to connect to the service center. The "service code (USSD)" is the code used for notifying the service center.

Additional service screen FUNC (p.384)/Additional guidance screen (p.384)

Add new service/Add new guidance……Adds a setting.

Edit……Changes the setting.

Delete this/Delete all……Deletes one or all additional service(s) or additional guidance(s).

Using the newly added service

1 MENU/HELP ▶"Service"▶"Additional service"▶ "Additional service"

2 Select a service▶ (Send)

PC Connection

About Data Communication Available for the FOMA Terminal 386
Before Using 388
Checking the Procedure 388
AT Commands 389
CD-ROM 389
DoCoMo keitai datalink 389

For details on data communication, refer to the “Manual for PC connection setting” (PDF format) in the provided CD-ROM.
Adobe® Reader® is required to read the “Manual for PC connection setting” (PDF format). If this software is not installed on your PC, install the Adobe® Reader® in the attached CD-ROM to view the file.
Refer to the help of the Adobe® Reader® for details on how to use it.

About Data Communication Available for the FOMA Terminal

Available data communication

Available data communication between the FOMA terminal and PCs is classified in 3 categories: packet communication, 64K data communication and data exchange (OBEX).

Packet communication

Packet communication is charged according to the amount of data sent and received*1, and the data is received at the maximum speed of 3.6Mbps*2 and sent at the maximum speed of 384kbps.
You can also access a corporate LAN connected to the FOMA network.
Use an access point that supports FOMA packet communication, such as DoCoMo Internet connection service “mopera U” or “mopera”.
Packet communication is performed via the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 (optional) to a PC or via a dedicated cable connection to a PDA.

*1 : Note that the communication charge can become very expensive when large files are sent and received.
*2 : The communication speed is 384kbps at maximum for both sending and receiving in the following cases:
- When you are outside the FOMA HIGH-SPEED area
- When you use access points for “mopera”
- When you use packet communication with DoCoMo PDA “sigmarion Ⅲ” or “musea”

64K data communication

Regardless of the data volume, the charge is applied depending on the connection time.*
Use an access point that supports FOMA 64K data communication, such as DoCoMo Internet connection service “mopera U” or “mopera”, or ISDN synchronized 64K access point.
64K data communication is performed via the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 to a PC or via a dedicated cable connection to a PDA.

*: Note that the communication charge can become very expensive when the line is connected for a long time.

Data exchange (OBEX)

The data is sent and received by the Infrared data exchange or by the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01. When you exchange data with PC using the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01, you have to install the DoCoMo keitai datalink (p.389) in addition to the FOMA Communication Setting File explained later.

NOTE

- 64K data communication is not available abroad.

Usage notes

Internet service provider fees

In addition to FOMA service charges, you may need to pay user fees to an Internet service provider to use the Internet. These fees must be paid directly to the Internet service provider in addition to service fees of FOMA service. Contact your Internet service provider for details.
DoCoMo Internet connection service “mopera U” or “mopera” is available. “mopera U” is a pay service for which you need to apply. “mopera” is a free service for which you do not need to apply.

Setting an access point (e.g. Internet service provider)

Packet communication and 64K data communication use different access points. If you are using packet communication, use an applicable access point for it; if 64K data communication, use an access point for FOMA 64K data communication or ISDN synchronized 64K.

- You cannot use DoPa access points.
- You cannot use access points for PHS64K/32K data communication such as PIAFS.

User authorization when accessing network

Some access points may require your user authorization (ID and password) when connecting. Use communication software (Dial-up network) to enter your ID and password. ID and password will be provided by your Internet service provider or the network administrator. Contact the Internet service provider or administrator for details.

Access authorization when using a browser

When using FirstPass compliant sites on your PC's browser, FirstPass (user certification) for access authorization is required. Install the FirstPass PC software from the CD-ROM package provided with this product and conduct the setting. For details, refer to "FirstPassManual" (PDF format) stored in the "FirstPassPCSoft" folder included on the CD-ROM.

● Glossary for data communication

Administrative right
On Windows 2000, Windows XP and Windows Vista, users without this right cannot install/uninstall drivers or software because their access to the system is restricted.

Optimizing Communication Settings
Optimizing communication setting is a TCP parameter to optimize the transmission capacity of TCP/IP when packet communication is carried out on the FOMA network. This communication setting is required to make the most of communication performance of the FOMA terminal.

APN (Access Point Name)
APN is a string for identifying the Internet service provider or corporate LAN used to connect for packet communication. For example, it is described as "mopera.net" for mopera U.

cid (Context Identifier)
cid is a registration number for assigning the access point of packet communication (APN) to the FOMA terminal. It is used in the similar way as memory numbers in the phonebook and you can register 10 entries from 1 to 10.

DNS (Domain Name System)
DNS is a system which converts the domain name such as "nttdocomo.co.jp" to IP address indicated in numbers to make it easier for PCs to control.

HSDPA (High Speed Downlink Packet Access)
A standard designed to speed up data communication of the third-generation (3G) cell-phone system, "W-CDMA".

OBEX (Object Exchange)
OBEX is an international standard (protocol) of data communication qualified by IrDA. By using the devices or software which complies with OBEX standard, you can perform data communication among various information devices such as mobile phones, PCs, digital cameras and printers.

QoS (Quality of Service)
QoS is the service quality of network communication speed. QoS setting of the FOMA terminal can determine whether you allow any communication speed or connect at the maximum rate.

Before Using

Operational environment

The PC operation environment to use data communication is as shown below:

Item	Description
PC unit	• PC-AT compatible model with CD-ROM drive • USB port (compliant to Universal Serial Bus Specification Rev1.1) • Display resolution of 800 dots wide x 600 dots high, High Color (65,536 colors) is recommended.
OS *1	• Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Vista (Japanese)
Required memory	• Windows 2000: 64M bytes or more*2 • Windows XP: 128M bytes or more*2 • Windows Vista: 512M bytes or more*2
Hard disk space	• 5M bytes or more*2

*1 : Operations after the OS upgrade are not covered by the warranty.

*2 : The required memory and necessary hard disk space may differ depending on the PC's system configuration.

NOTE

- You can transmit data with the FOMA N905iμ connected to the DoCoMo PDA "musea" or "sigmarion Ⅲ". Update "musea" for connection. For how to update it and other details, visit the DoCoMo website.
- The FOMA N905iμ is not compatible with Remote Wakeup function.
- The FOMA N905iμ is not compatible with FAX communication.

Required devices

The following hardware and software, in addition to FOMA and a PC, are required.

- FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 or FOMA USB Cable (optional)
- Bundled CD-ROM "CD-ROM for FOMA N905iμ"

NOTE

- For USB cable, purchase the specified "FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01" or "FOMA USB Cable". The USB cable for PC cannot be used because the shape of the connector is different.
- In this manual, "FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01" is used for the operation example.
- The FOMA USB Cable may not function properly when connected to a USB HUB.

Checking the Procedure

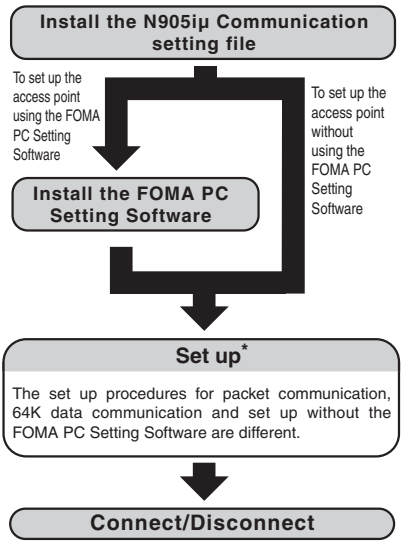
In data communication, the connection is made through a dial-up connection with Internet service providers or LANs that support FOMA data communication.

■About the software contained in the provided "CD-ROM for FOMA N905iμ"

- The CD-ROM contains the FOMA Communication setting file (drivers), FOMA PC setting software and FirstPass PC software.
- The FOMA Communication setting file is a software (driver) required for connecting the FOMA terminal with a PC via a FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 (optional) to carry out packet communication, 64K data communication and data exchange (OBEX). Installing the FOMA Communication setting file embeds each driver into Windows.
  Using the FOMA PC setting software, you can easily set up packet communication and 64K data communication and create a dial-up connection.

Flow chart for completing the data communication setup

■Packet communication and 64K data communication



*: To use Internet with the FOMA terminal and PC connected, "mopera U" (separate subscription is

required) is useful, which supports broadband connection, etc. Consider the plan in which you are charged only in a month when you use the service. If you use “mopera” for which you do not need a subscription, you can access Internet immediately. For more information, visit DoCoMo website.

■**Data exchange (OBEX)**

Install the N905iμ Communication setting file

*: Also install the DoCoMo keitai datalink (p.389).

AT Commands

AT commands are one of command sets used for modem control, etc. and the FOMA terminal complies with AT commands. In addition, the FOMA terminal supports some extended commands and original AT commands.
For details on AT commands to set the FOMA terminal functions from your PC, refer to the “Manual for PC connection setting” (PDF format) in the provided CD-ROM.

CD-ROM

The provided CD-ROM contains the software for using the data communication with the FOMA terminal, “Manual for PC connection setting” and “Kuten Code List” (PDF). For details, refer to the provided CD-ROM.

Supplied software/PDF

The provided CD-ROM contains the following software/PDF:

- FOMA Communication setting file
- FOMA PC setting software
- FOMA byte counter
- Guide to DoCoMo keitai datalink
- FirstPass PC software
- Guide to mopera U (mopera U start up tool/ mopera U connection & setting tool/mopera U requesting original data/FOMA byte counter)
- Guide to Napster®
- “Manual for PC connection setting” (PDF)
- “Kuten Code List” (PDF)
- Adobe® Reader®

The following warning screen may appear when you insert the CD-ROM into a PC. This warning is displayed according to the security setting of the Internet Explorer and does not affect the usage of the software. Click “Yes”.

*: The screen is the example when Windows® XP is used. The displayed screen may be different depending on the PC environment.



DoCoMo keitai datalink

“DoCoMo keitai datalink” is the software which enables you to back up your “Phonebook”, “Mail”, etc. on the FOMA terminal on a PC and edit the data. This software is provided on the DoCoMo website. For details and downloading, see the following website. You can also access to the following website from the provided CD-ROM.

http://datalink.nttdocomo.co.jp/ (Japanese)

The above software and website are only in Japanese. For details such as the downloading method, transferable data, operating environment including the supported OS, operations and restrictions, see the above website. As for the operations after the installation, refer to the help files of the software. You need a USB cable (optional) to use “DoCoMo keitai datalink”.

Overseas Use

Overview of International Roaming (WORLD WING) 392
Available Services 392
Before Using the FOMA Terminal Overseas 394
Making a Call Abroad 396
Receiving a Call Abroad 397
Setting the Network Connection Switching Method ..... 3G/GSM setting 397
Setting the Search Mode of the Operator ..... NW search mode 398
Displaying the Roaming Operator's Name ..... Display operator name 399
Commencing Roaming Guidance ..... Roam. Guidance 399
Setting to Bar Incoming Calls During Roaming ..... Bar incoming when roam 399
Network Services During Roaming ..... Service (Int.) 399

Overview of International Roaming (WORLD WING)

International roaming (WORLD WING) is a service that allows you to make/receive calls or use i-mode through the network of roaming service operator overseas.

- You can use your usual mobile phone number and mail address overseas as you do in Japan. You can make/receive voice/videophone calls, use i-mode, i-mode mail and SMS. Moreover, Voice Mail, Call Forwarding and other convenient network services are available.
- For the customers who have subscribed to the FOMA service on September 1, 2005 or after, a separate subscription is not necessary. However, customers who declared that they did not require this service at the FOMA service subscription or who unsubscribe from this service need a separate subscription.
- For the customers who have subscribed to the FOMA service on August 31, 2005 or before without subscribing to "WORLD WING", a separate subscription is necessary.
- This service is not available in some payment plans.
- To use the international roaming service, the FOMA card (other than blue) which is compatible with WORLD WING must be inserted.
- This FOMA terminal can be used only in the overseas DoCoMo roaming areas. For details on the service area and charge, see the DoCoMo "International Services Website".
- There are three international networks; the 3G network, GPRS network, and GSM network.
  - The 3G network is a third-generation mobile communication network complying with 3GPP*1 as an international standard.
  - The GPRS network is a 2.5-th generation mobile communication network enabling high-speed packet communication by GPRS*2 on the GSM network.
  - The GSM*3 network is a second-generation digital-type mobile communication network that is most popular throughout the world.

*1 : 3GPP (3rd Generation Partnership Project)
A regional standardization body established to develop commonly applied technical specifications for 3rd-generation mobile communications systems (IMT-2000).

*2 : GPRS (General Packet Radio Service)
Implements high-speed GSM and facilitates data communication including packet communication.

*3 : GSM (Global System for Mobile Communication)
Digital 2nd generation mobile communication system, most spreading throughout the world.

■**Country codes of major countries**

Enter the following country codes when using international call (p.54) or setting "Int'l dial assistance" (p.55) (as of October, 2007).

Area	ID Code	Area	ID Code
United States of America	1	Turkey	90
United Kingdom	44	Japan	81
Italy	39	New Caledonia	687
India	91	New Zealand	64
Indonesia	62	Norway	47
Egypt	20	Hungary	36
Australia	61	Fiji	679
Austria	43	Philippines	63
Holland	31	Finland	358
Canada	1	French Polynesia	689
Korea	82	France	33
Greece	30	Brazil	55
Singapore	65	Vietnam	84
Switzerland	41	Peru	51
Sweden	46	Belgium	32
Spain	34	Hong Kong	852
Thailand	66	Macao	853
Taiwan	886	Malaysia	60
Czech	420	Maldives	960
China	86	Russia	7
Germany	49		

* For other country codes and details, see DoCoMo "International Services Website".

Available Services

Communication services and functions available for this FOMA terminal in Japan are different from those available in overseas. Also, they are different depending on the overseas network and operator being used.

- For details on communication services available during international roaming, refer to the international service guide such as "Mobile Phone User's Guide [World Service]".

■Available communication services

The following communications services are available overseas:*1*2

Network	Overseas		
	3G	GPRS	GSM
Make/Receive a Voice Call	○*3*5	○*3*5	○*3*5
Making/receiving videophone call	○*3*4*5	×	×
Using i-mode (including Full Browser)	○	○	×
Reception of MessageR	○	○	×
Sending/receiving i-mode mail	○	○	×
Packet communication via PC	○	○	×
Sending/receiving SMS	○	○	○
i-Channel	○*6*7	○*6*7	×

*1 : Some services may not be available depending on the operator or area.
*2 : 64K data communication is not available.
*3 : Dialing with Number B is not available. Receiving at Number B may not be supported depending on the roaming operators.
*4 : International videophone calls are available with users of specific roaming operators overseas or FOMA terminals in Japan.
*5 : Multi Number is not allowed on dialing with additional number.
*6 : The automatic update will be automatically paused when a roaming operator is connected. To resume the i-Channel automatic update, it is required to set the i-Channel setting again. However, you are charged for the packet communication in addition to the monthly charge.
*7 : When you automatically update information on “Basic Channel”, the packet communication charges will apply.

NOTE

- During international roaming, you cannot receive MessageF, receive area mail, send/receive Chaku-moji, make/receive PushTalk calls, run “Update” and “Set auto-update” of the scanning function, update software, use packet communication or 64K data communication connected with a PC, or use ON in 2in1. However, you can delete data or cancel running an application that may cause failure.
- Depending on the network condition of the country, talk/standby times may drop as low as half the normal times.
  Getting the best out of your battery pack→p.43
- The GPS function is not available overseas.

■Sending and receiving SMS

- This service allows you to exchange text messages with subscribers to overseas carriers other than DoCoMo. For information on the supported country and the supported overseas operators, refer to DoCoMo “International Services Website”.
- To send an SMS to a user of a roaming operator, follow the steps described in the table below. Moreover, if a character contained in the message is not supported by the mobile phone of the recipient, the character may not be properly displayed. See international service guides such as “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [World Service]” for details.

Recipient	To specify the recipient
DoCoMo (FOMA terminal)	As in Japan, simply enter the phone number of the recipient.
Other roaming operator*	Enter “+”, “Country code” and the mobile phone number of the recipient. You can also send SMS by entering “010”, the “Country code” and the “Phone number” in the order. (To reply to SMS you received from overseas, enter “010”.)

*: When the other party’s mobile phone number begins with “0”, omit the “0” when dialing.

■Displayed icon

The network in use and its status are displayed in the task icon area.

Icon	Meaning
	Displayed when outgoing calls only are available in the FOMA network in Japan.
	Displayed when outgoing packets only are available in the FOMA network in Japan.
3G	Displayed when outgoing calls only are available in the overseas 3G network.
3G	Displayed when outgoing packets only are available in the overseas 3G network.
3G	Displayed when outgoing calls and packets are available in the overseas 3G network.
GSM	Displayed when outgoing calls only are available in the overseas GSM/GPRS network.
GPRS	Displayed when outgoing packets only are available in the overseas GSM/GPRS network.
GPRS	Displayed when outgoing calls and packets are available in the overseas GSM/GPRS network.

Continued on next page

■**Network services settings**

- When using network services overseas, even if Activate/Deactivate, etc. are available, the services may be restricted or unavailable. For details, refer to the “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [Network Services]” and the international service guide such as “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [World Service]”, etc.

Service name	Description
Chaku-moji	Can be set but the service is not available.
Voice Mail Service→p.372	Cannot be set in some service areas.
Call Waiting →p.373	
Call Forwarding Service→p.374	
Nuisance Call Blk Service→p.375	
Caller ID Notification→p.48	Cannot be set in some service areas. The caller ID may not be properly notified.
Caller ID Request Service→p.376	Cannot be set in some service areas.
Public mode (Driving mode)	Can be set but the service is not available. Release the setting overseas.
Dual Network Service	Cannot be set.
English Guidance →p.376	Cannot be set in some service areas.
Multi Number →p.378	Cannot be set in some service areas. The additional number cannot be used to dial. A call with an additional number can be received although you may not be able to check to which number the call was made.
Roam. Guidance →p.399	Cannot be set in some service areas.
Bar incoming when roam→p.399	
Voice Mail (Int.) →p.400	Can be set and the service is available.
Call Forwarding (Int.)→p.400	
Caller ID Request (Int.)→p.400	
Roam. Guidance (Int.)→p.400	
Remote access (Int.)→p.400	

* With the FOMA network, settings can be made for all the above services.

Before Using the FOMA Terminal Overseas

- When using the FOMA terminal overseas, also refer to the “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [Network Services]” and “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [World Service]”.
- Usage charges for the overseas services are included in your monthly bill of FOMA services. However, it may be charged in subsequent month due to the conditions of the roaming operator overseas.
- When using overseas, call charges in “Call data” (p.350) includes both incoming and outgoing calls. The displayed charge may differ from the actual charge. The charge may be displayed as “¥✻✻”.
- By default, when the FOMA terminal is turned on overseas, the network will be automatically searched and set as a local roaming operator. When the user moves outside the service area of the operator, another available operator will be automatically searched and reset.
  You can set the operator to be connected manually. →p.398

Inquiries overseas

For inquiries overseas such as lost, stolen, charge accumulation or malfunction, refer to “For lost, stolen, accumulated amount settlement overseas” or “For malfunction overseas” on the back cover of this manual. Note that you are charged for the call and communication even after the FOMA terminal is lost or stolen.

- For the latest information about International Access Code and Universal Number International ID Code, see DoCoMo “International Services Website”.

■**International Access Codes of major countries (Table 1)**

If the Universal Number International ID Code (Table 2) is not available to make inquiries overseas, use the International Access Code. The following are International Access Codes of major countries (as of August, 2007).

Area	ID Code	Area	ID Code
Ireland	00	Denmark	00
United States of America	011	Germany	00
United Arab Emirates	00	Turkey	00
United Kingdom	00	New Zealand	00
Italy	00	Norway	00

Area	ID Code	Area	ID Code
India	00	Hungary	00
Indonesia	001	Philippines	00
Australia	0011	Finland	00
Holland	00	France	00
Canada	011	Brazil	0041/ 0014
Korea	001	Vietnam	00
Greece	00	Belgium	00
Singapore	001	Poland	00
Switzerland	00	Portugal	00
Sweden	00	Hong Kong	001
Spain	00	Macao	00
Thailand	001	Malaysia	00
Taiwan	002	Monaco	00
Czech	00	Luxemburg	00
China	00	Russia	810

■**Universal Number International ID Code (Table 2)**
Dial the Universal Number International ID Code and corresponding number to make various inquiries overseas.
The following are Universal Number International ID Codes (as of August, 2007).

Area	ID Code	Area	ID Code
Ireland	00	China	00
United States of America	011	Denmark	00
Argentina	00	Germany	00
United Kingdom	00	New Zealand	00
Israel	014	Norway	00
Italy	00	Hungary	00
Australia	0011	Philippines	00
Austria	00	Finland	990
Holland	00	France	00
Canada	011	Brazil	0021
Korea	001	Bulgaria	00
Colombia	009	Peru	00
Singapore	001	Belgium	00
Switzerland	00	Portugal	00
Sweden	00	Hong Kong	001
Spain	00	Malaysia	00
Thailand	001	South Africa	09
Taiwan	00	Luxemburg	00

* Note that the universal numbers may not be available from mobile phones, public phones or hotels.
* The universal numbers are available only in the above countries.
* If you make a call from a hotel, the fees may be charged by the hotel. Check with the hotel before using.

Preparation before traveling

- To view i-mode sites overseas, first make the “International Settings” from the “iMenu”.
- Before using the network services overseas, “Remote Control(Int.)” (p.400) must be set to “Activate”.
  To use the Voice Mail or Call Forwarding service overseas, subscribe to “Voice Mail” or “Call Forwarding”.
- Depending on the roaming operator, network services may not be set or checked. See “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [World Service]” and “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [Network Services]” before leaving Japan.

Battery pack charging

- Precautions for handling the AC adapter→p.16
- Charging the AC adapter→pp.43, 44

NOTE

- For the preparation and settings, see “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode] FOMA version”, “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [World Service]” and “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [Network Services]”.

Use in the local area

This FOMA terminal is available in 3G, GPRS, and GSM roaming areas. When the FOMA terminal is turned on after you arrive the destination overseas, a local roaming operator is automatically set.

Display, date and time

While using the FOMA terminal overseas, the name of the operator connected appears on the standby screen.

- The display mode for an operator being used can be set in “Display operator name” (p.399).
- To display time of the current city on the standby screen, select “Auto” in “Set sub clock” (p.48), or select “Always” then the current city.
- In overseas as well as in Japan, the Redial/Dialed calls, Received calls, Missed calls and i-mode mails in the Sent address list are time stamped as the date and time set under “Set main time” on the FOMA terminal. However, regardless of the setting of “Set main time” on this FOMA terminal, the received address list is displayed based on the date/time upon receiving in Japan.

● Troubleshooting

- “圏外” does not disappear from the screen.
  - Set “NW search mode” to “Auto”.
  - Since this FOMA terminal is compatible with international roaming, it may take time to detect radio waves immediately after the power is turned on, and “圏外” may appear on the screen.
- The other party’s caller ID is not notified.
  - If the used network or operator does not notify the caller ID, the caller ID does not appear on the FOMA terminal screen even when the caller ID is notified.

● After returning to Japan

When you returned to Japan and turn on the FOMA terminal, the network will be automatically searched and set to the FOMA network (DoCoMo). If “NW search mode” (p.398) is set to “Manual”, set it to “Auto”.

Making a Call Abroad

By using the international roaming service, you can make voice or videophone calls from outside Japan with the FOMA terminal.

Videophone
Enter an international phone number then press ✉ (V.phone) to use “International Videophone” if you and the other party are using an operator compatible with FOMA videophone.

- See the DoCoMo “International Services Website” for information on accessible countries and operators.
- Depending on the other partys terminal, the image of the other party displayed on the FOMA terminal may be distorted or the connection may fail when making an international videophone.

Making a call to outside your destination country (including Japan)

- To make a call to Italy, etc., “0” may be required at the beginning of the area code (long distance code).

1 On the standby screen, dial the following: +(0 (1 second or longer)) →Country code→Area code (Long distance code)→The other party’s phone number

If the area code (long distance code) begins with “0”, omit the first “0”.
If the other party is an overseas user of “WORLD WING”, dial “81” (Japan) as the country code.

2 📞 (voice call)/✉ (V.phone) (videophone call)

● Making a call to a country stored in “Int’l dial assistance”

You can easily dial the number by storing the country name and codes of a party you often call to “Int’l dial assistance”.

- You can also make an international call from the phonebook, Redial or Dialed calls record.

1 Enter the phone number of the other party

To call a landline phone, dial the area code (long distance code) and phone number of the other party. To call a mobile phone or PHS in Japan, dial the phone number as is.

2 ch (FUNC)▶“Int’l call”▶Select a country▶📞 (voice call)/✉ (V.phone) (videophone call)

“+” and “Country code” are prefixed and an international call is made.
If the other party is an overseas user of “WORLD WING”, select “Japan” as the country name.

■ **Making a call to a country set in “Auto int’l call set.” under “Int’l dial assistance”**

▶Phonebook detail screen (p.92)/“Redial screen (detail)” (p.56), “Dialed calls (detail)” screen, etc. (the phonebook used)▶📞 (voice call)/✉ (V.phone) (videophone call)▶“Dial”

NOTE

- When you select a country name in “Int’l call”, and the other party’s phone number begins with “0”, “0” is deleted. However, if “Italy” is selected, the first “0” is not deleted.

NOTE

- To make a call to outside your destination country (including Japan) using “Phone To function” from the imode site or mail detail screen, select “Int’l call” on the “Dialing” screen (p.179), a country name then “Dial”. “+” and “Country code” are prefixed to the original phone number. If the country code of the country is not stored in “Int’l dial assistance”, “Phone To function” is not available to make an international call.
- When making a call to a number stored in the phonebook, “+81” is automatically upon dialing.
- Even if setting Caller ID Notification, the proper number may not be displayed showing “Unknown” or “User unset” depending on the roaming operators.

Making a local call abroad

To make a call, dial the phone number of the other party’s ordinary phone or mobile phone as making a call in Japan.

- Set “Auto int’l call set.” under “Int’l dial assistance” (p.55) to “OFF”.

1 Enter the phone number of the other party

To call a landline phone, dial the area code (long distance code) and phone number of the other party.

If the other party is a user of “WORLD WING”, even if the other party is in the same country, make a call as an international call to Japan.

2 (voice call)/ (V.phone) (videophone call)

Making a call to the overseas user of WORLD WING

If the other party is an overseas user of “WORLD WING”, even if the other party is in the same country, make a call as an international call to Japan by making a call to a country stored in “Int’l dial assistance” (p.55), making a call from the phonebook or “Making a call to outside your destination country (including Japan)” (p.396).

Receiving a Call Abroad

You can use the international roaming service to receive a call without changing the phone number.

1 When a call arrives,

■ To answer a videophone call with the substitute image

▶● (Subst.)

The other party’s procedure to make a call

■ To have the other party make a call from Japan to your destination country

To have the other party make a call from Japan to your FOMA terminal in your destination country, the other party only needs to dial the phone number as in Japan.

090 (or 080)-XXXX-XXXX

■ To have the other party make a call from outside Japan to your destination country

The other party needs to dial the international access code and “81” (country code of Japan) no matter whether you are in Japan or overseas.

International access code-81-90 (or 80)-XXXX-XXXX

NOTE

- When you receive a call while using international roaming services, the call is sent to your usual mobile phone number in Japan and then forwarded to your travel destination no matter from which country the call originates. The caller has to bear charges for calls to Japan, and you have to bear incoming call charges including international forwarding charges.
- Even if you use “Caller ID Request”, “Unkown” may come with receiving.

Setting the Network Connection Switching Method <3G/GSM setting>

Set the method of switching the network accessed overseas.

1 MENU MULTI ▶“Settings”▶“Int’l roaming set”▶“3G/GSM setting”▶Select any item:

AUTO……Automatically switches between the 3G network and GSM/GPRS network.

3G……Fixes to the 3G network.

GSM/GPRS……Fixes to the GSM/GPRS network.

NOTE

- Set “AUTO” or set according to the network to be accessed overseas.

Setting the Search Mode of the Operator <NW search mode>

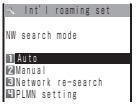
When you move out of the service area of the operator you are using, the FOMA terminal is reconnected to another operator's network.

- This function may not be set depending on the conditions of radio waves or networks.
- As of October 2007, no service provider other than DoCoMo can be selected in Japan.
- If "圏外" appears when you return to Japan, check that "NW search mode" is set to "Auto".

Changing the operator manually

1 MENU ▶"Settings"▶"Int'l roaming set"▶"NW search mode"

The "NW search mode" screen appears.



NW search mode

2 "Manual"▶Select an operator

■ **To switch the operator automatically**

▶"Auto"

You can set an operator to be preferably connected when searching the operator automatically. →p.398

Re-searching for the network

<Network re-search>

- You can re-search for a network then connect to the network if "NW search mode" is set to "Auto" and an operator could not be searched for, or if "NW search mode" is set to "Manual" and you want to change operators.

1 NW search mode screen (p.398)▶"Network re-search"▶Select an operator

■ **When "NW search mode" is set to "Auto"**

▶"Network re-search"

A network is searched then automatically accessed.

Setting an operator to be preferably connected

You can set an operator to be preferably connected when searching or re-searching the network automatically.

- The PLMN network list can store up to 20 operators.
- Operators designated by DoCoMo are stored to the PLMN network list.

1 NW search mode screen (p.398)▶"PLMN setting"

The "PLMN setting" screen appears. Operators are listed in the priority order.

2 Highlight the operator whose priority is to be changed▶ch (FUNC)▶"Change priority"

3 Highlight the position to move to▶● (Select)

The selected operator moves to the position above the highlighted item. Select "<last>" to move to the end.

4 ✉ (Finish)▶"YES"

FUNC PLMN setting screen (p.398)

PLMN manual select……Enters and stores the country code "operator code (MCC)" and network number "operator code (MNC)".

PLMN select……Selects and stores the operator from the list.

Set VPLMN to PLMN……Stores the currently selected operator.

Change priority……"Setting an operator to be preferably connected" →p.398

Delete……Selects the deleting method from "Delete this/Delete selected/Delete all". "About multiple-choice" →p.38

NOTE

- You cannot store the operator to the PLMN network list if the operator is already stored.
- The priority may not apply depending on the conditions of radio waves or networks.

Displaying the Roaming Operator's Name

<Display operator name>

You can set whether to display the name of the currently connected operator on the task icon area (p.29) during the international roaming.

1 MENU ▶"Settings"▶"Int'l roaming set"▶"Display operator name"

2 "Display ON"

■ Not to display the name of the operator

▶"Display OFF"

NOTE

- Even when set to "Display ON", the name of the operator is not displayed when you are in Japan (in the FOMA network).
- When "NW search mode" is set to "Manual", and the "圏外" is displayed or you move to outside of the service area, "select net" appears regardless of the setting of this function.

Commencing Roaming Guidance

<Roam. Guidance>

You can set the FOMA terminal to notify the other party that you are roaming internationally when you receive a voice call or videophone call during international roaming.

- Set this option in Japan.

1 MENU ▶"Service"▶"Roam. Guidance"▶Select any item:

Activate/Deactivate……Activates or deactivates the roaming guidance.

Check setting……Checks the roaming guidance setting.

NOTE

- This service may not be set in some service areas.
- Even when the guidance is not set, the other party hears the ring tone set by the operator.
- The caller may hear the English guidance depending on the conditions of the operators overseas.

Setting to Bar Incoming Calls During Roaming

<Bar incoming when roam>

You can select whether to bar videophone calls only or all incoming calls during international roaming.

- Set this option in Japan.

1 MENU ▶"Service"▶"Bar incoming when roam"▶Select any item:

Activate……Selects from "Bar All incoming" (bars all incoming calls) or "Data calls Barring" (bars incoming videophone calls and 64K data communications*).
Network Security Code is required for the setting.
Network Security Code→p.124

Deactivate……Deactivates the barring of incoming calls when roaming.
Network Security Code is required for deactivating.
Network Security Code→p.124

Check setting……Checks the incoming call barring setting.

*: 64K data communication is not available on this FOMA terminal during international roaming.

NOTE

- This service may not be set depending on overseas roaming operators.

Network Services During Roaming

<Service (Int.)>

You can use some network services such as "Voice Mail" or "Call Forwarding" overseas. The roaming guidance can also be set.

- To use "Voice Mail (Int.)" or "Call Forwarding (Int.)", the subscription to "Voice Mail" or "Call Forwarding" is required beforehand. Also, "Remote Control" must be set beforehand. For details, refer to the "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network Services]".
- You cannot perform the international services when "圏外" appears.
- When you perform the operation overseas, you must bear the international call charges of the country you are staying.
- For details on the network services, refer to the "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network Services]" and "Mobile Phone User's Guide [World Service]", etc.

Continued on next page

1 MENU/MULTI ▶“Service”▶“Service (Int.)”▶
Select any item:

Voice Mail (Int.)

Activate/Deactivate/Play messages/Set ring time/Setting……Follow the audio guidance to specify the setting.

Call Forwarding (Int.)

Activate/Deactivate/Setting……Follow the audio guidance to specify the setting.

Roam. Guidance (Int.)……Follow the audio guidance to specify the setting.

Remote access (Int.)……Follow the audio guidance to specify the setting.

Caller ID req. (Int.)……Follow the audio guidance to specify the setting.

Appendix/ External Devices/ Troubleshooting

Menu Functions 402
Character Assignment to Dial Keys 413
Symbols and Special Characters 416
Pictographs 417
Face Marks 421
Common Phrases 422
Multi Access Combination Patterns 422
Multitask Combination Patterns 423
Services Available for the FOMA Terminal 425
Options and Accessories 426

■Using the FOMA Terminal with External Devices

Movie Playing Software 426

■Troubleshooting

Malfunction Checklist 427
If Any Error Message Appears 432
Warranty and After-Sales Service 441
i-mode Malfunction Check Site 443
Updating Software ..... Software Update 443
Protecting the FOMA Terminal from Harmful Data ..... Scanning function 449
Specifications 452
Number of Data that can be Stored/Registered/Protected on the FOMA Terminal 453
Specific Absorption Rate of Mobile Phones, etc. 454
Export Administration Regulations 456

Menu Functions

- The settings with are restored to the default settings by “Reset settings”.
- Refer to the Table1 (p.411) for details of the reset settings of ① to ⑬ and other functions.
- Menu No. (Key operation) is available when main menu theme is set to “Standard”. →p.35

Main item	Sub item	Branch item	Menu No. (Key operation)	Default setting		Refer to page
Mail	Inbox		—		—	p.202
	Outbox		—		—	p.202
	Draft		—		—	p.194
	Compose message		—		—	p.188
	WEB Mail		—		—	p.188
	Chat Mail		—		—	p.219
	Compose SMS		—		—	p.224
	Check new messages		(1 second or longer)		—	p.198
	Receive option		—		—	p.197
	Check new SMS		—		—	p.226
	Template		—		—	p.192
	Mail Setting		—		—	p.211
i-mode	iMenu		—		—	p.167
	Bookmark		—		—	p.173
	Screen memo		—		—	p.174
	URL History		—		—	p.169
	Go to location		—		—	p.172
	One-touch mlt win.		—		—	p.174
	Full Browser		—		URL http://www.google.co.jp	p.264
	i-Channel		(Default)		—	p.185
	MessageR/F		—		—	p.217
	Check new messages		(1 second or longer)		—	p.217
	Client certificate		—		—	p.181
	i-mode settings		—		—	p.179
i-αppli	Software list		(1 second or longer)		—	p.229
	microSD		—		—	p.239
	Auto-start set		—		—	p.236
	i-αppli action info		—		—	p.232
Settings	Kisekae Tool setting		—		—	p.120
	Incoming call	Ring volume	5 0	Phone to MessageF	All Level 4	p.66
		Select ring tone	1 3	Phone	Pattern 1	p.100
				Videophone	Pattern 3	
				PushTalk	Pattern 4	
				Mail/Chat mail	Alarm 1	
				MessageR/ MessageF	Alarm 6	
		Sound effect	6 4	Stereo&3D sound	ON	p.102

Main item	Sub item	Branch item	Menu No. (Key operation)	Default setting		Refer to page
Settings	Incoming call	Vibrator	MENU 5 4	Phone to MessageF	All OFF	p.102
		Illumination	MENU 8 9	Set color	Phone to PushTalk: Color 5 (Phone color: bourgogne red)/ Color 2 (Phone color: opal white)/Color 6 (Phone color: venus gold)/Color 4 (Phone color: graphite black) Mail to MessageF: Color 7	p.113
				Set pattern	Wave	
				Missed info	ON	
		Manner mode set	MENU 2 0		Manner mode (Original settings: Default→p.105)	p.105
		Disp. phonebook image	—		ON	p.109
		Answer setting	MENU 5 8		Any key answer	p.65
		Mail/Msg. ring time	MENU 6 8	Mail to MessageF	All ON (Ring time: 5 seconds)	p.104
		Ring time(sec.)	MENU 9 0	Set mute seconds	OFF Mute seconds:1 sec (Set mute seconds is set to “ON”)	p.141
				Missed calls display	Display	
		Info notice setting	MENU 6 5		Japanese display: ボイス (Voice) (名前通知 (Name notification) :OFF) English display: ON	p.70
		Record message	MENU 5 5		OFF Answer message: Japanese 1 (When Record message is set to “ON”) Ringing time: 13 seconds (When Record message is set to “ON”)	p.70
		Disp. call/receive No.	—		White (Phone color: graphite black, bourgogne red)/Black (Phone color: opal white, venus gold)	p.109
		Melody Call setting	—		—	p.103
	Talk	Noise reduction	MENU 7 6		ON	p.63
		Quality alarm	MENU 7 5		High tone	p.104
		Reconnect signal	MENU 7 7		High tone	p.63
		Illumination in talk	—		OFF	p.114
		Set hold tone	—	On hold tone	Tone 1	p.67
		Setting when folded	MENU 1 8		End the call	p.65
	Dialing	Pause dial	MENU 8 4		—	p.61
		Sub-address setting	—		ON	p.62
		Prefix setting	—		“WORLD CALL” (009130010) User setting: Not recorded	p.62
		Headset sw to dial	—		OFF	p.356

Continued on next page

Main item	Sub item	Branch item	Menu No. (Key operation)	Default setting		Refer to page
Settings	Dialing	Int'l dial assistance	—	Auto int'l call set.	ON (automatically added)	p.55
				Country Code setting	"日本" (Country Code: 81) 22 country codes are already stored.	
				IDD Prefix setting	"WORLD CALL" (009130010) User setting: Not recorded	
	Videophone	Visual preference	—		Normal	p.73
		Select image	—	On hold	Pre-installed	p.74
				Holding	Pre-installed	
				Substitute image	Chara-den (ビーンズ (Beans))	
				Record message	Pre-installed	
				Preparing	Pre-installed	
				Voice memo	Pre-installed	
		Auto redial as voice	—		OFF	p.73
		Remote monitoring	—	Other ID	Not recorded	p.77
				Ringing time	5 seconds	
				Set	OFF	
		Display setting	—	Main display	Other side	p.75
				Front camera Reverse	ON	
		Ntfy switch-mode	—		—	p.76
		Hands-free switch	—		ON	p.75
		V-phone while packet	—		V-phone priority	p.76
	Display	Display setting	5 6	Stand-by display	Flame (Phone color: bourgogne red)/Aurora (Phone color: opal white)/Luster (Phone color: venus gold)/Stardust (Phone color: graphite black)	p.107
				Wake-up display	Shine Wake-up message: Not stored	
				Dialing	Flame (Phone color: bourgogne red)/Aurora (Phone color: opal white)/Luster (Phone color: venus gold)/Stardust (Phone color: graphite black)	
				Calling	Flame (Phone color: bourgogne red, opal white, venus gold)/ Stardust (Phone color: graphite black)	
				V.phone Dialing	Flame (Phone color: bourgogne red)/Aurora (Phone color: opal white)/Luster (Phone color: venus gold)/Stardust (Phone color: graphite black)	
				V.phone Calling to Mail rec'd result	Flame (Phone color: bourgogne red)/Aurora (Phone color: opal white)/Stardust (Phone color: venus gold)/Luster (Phone color: graphite black)	

Main item	Sub item	Branch item	Menu No. (Key operation)	Default setting		Refer to page
Settings	Display	Backlight	MENU 7 0	Lighting	ON (lighting) + Saver (Light time: 2 minutes)	p.109
				Charging	Standard	
				Area	LCD + Keys	
				Brightness	Middle	
		Display design	MENU 8 6	Color pattern	Bourgogne Red (Phone color: bourgogne red)/Opal Blue (Phone color: opal white)/ Golden Yellow (Phone color: venus gold)/Black (Phone color: graphite black)	p.110
				Icon pattern	Crest (Phone color: bourgogne red)/Opal (Phone color: opal white)/Stardust (Phone color: venus gold, graphite black)	
				Soft key	Red (Phone color: bourgogne red)/Gray (Phone color: opal white, graphite black)/Gold (Phone color: venus gold)	
		Indicator display	MENU 9 3		ON Disp. clock only: OFF Clock type: Digital 2 Called: ON Mail: OFF Connection: ON Background i-αppli: OFF Display time: 15 seconds	p.112
		Font	MENU 6 6 or 7 (1 second or longer)	Font type	Gothic	p.114
				Thickness	Bold	
				Character size	Standard	
		Desktop icon	MENU 6 3	Theme 1 to 3	Photo mode, Life history viewer, Quick Search, Viewer type menu	p.115
		3D display setting	—		ON	p.119
		Select language	MENU 1 5		Japanese	p.46
		Original menu	MENU 5 2		My Profile Check new messages Ring volume Vibrator Alarm Change security code	p.112
		Menu display set	MENU 5 7	Menu display	List	p.110
				Theme	Flame (Phone color: bourgogne red)/Aurora (Phone color: opal white)/Luster (Phone color: venus gold)/Stardust (Phone color: graphite black)	
				Memory focus	ON	
				Reset menu op. log	—	
		Viewer settings	—		Picture	p.274
		Icons	MENU 3 6		—	p.26
		Icons setting	—		ON	p.119

Continued on next page

Main item	Sub item	Branch item	Menu No. (Key operation)	Default setting		Refer to page
Settings	Display	Privacy angle	8 (1 second or longer)		OFF	p.109
	Call time/ Charge	Call data	MENU 6 1		—	p.350
		Notice designate calls	—	Cost limit setting	Not set	p.352
				Notify setting	OFF	
				Alarm tone	Alarm Tone	
				Volume	Level 4	
		Reset total	MENU 6 0		—	p.351
		Auto reset total cost	—		OFF	p.351
	Clock	Set main time	MENU 3 1	Auto time adjust	Auto time: Auto Auto time difference: Auto	p.47
				Summer time	OFF	
		Set sub clock	—	display method	Auto (automatic display when roaming)	p.48
				Summer time	OFF	
		Clock display	MENU 3 9	Display	ON	p.115
				Size	Big	
				Color	Black (Phone color: opal white)/ White (Phone color: bourgogne red, venus gold, graphite black)	
		Alarm setting	—		Alarm preferred	p.345
		Clock Alarm Tone set	—		Alarm Tone	p.104
	Lock/ Security	Lock	—	Dial lock	OFF	p.126
			—	Original lock	OFF	p.130
					Group and item settings Data disp. Edit del., GPS: All selected Dial/sending mail, Incoming/ Mail disp.: All deselected	
		IC card lock setting	3 (1 second or longer)	IC card lock	OFF	p.247
				IC lock (power-off)	Maintain	
		Keypad lock	—	After folded	OFF	p.134
				Timer	OFF	
		Face authentication	—		OFF	p.137
					New image: Not stored	
					Function to reset: Only IC card lock selected	
		Self mode	—		OFF	p.142
		Secret mode	MENU 4 0		OFF	p.127
		Secret data only mode	MENU 4 1		OFF	p.127
		Reject unknown	—		Accept	p.141
		Call setting w/o ID	MENU 1 0	Unknown to User unset	All Accept Select ring tone: Same as ring tone Select calling disp.: Same as display	p.140
		Change security code	MENU 2 9		0000 (4 zeros)	p.125
		IC card authentic.	—		OFF	p.135
					Ext. IC card: Not set	
		PIN setting	—		—	p.125

Main item	Sub item	Branch item	Menu No. (Key operation)	Default setting		Refer to page
Settings	Lock/ Security	Scanning function	—	Set scan	Scan: ON	p.449
					Message scan: ON	
	Connection setting	Set connection timeout	—		60 seconds	p.180
		Set check new messages	—	Mail to MessageF	All checked	p.213
		Host selection	8 1		i-mode User defined host: Not recorded	p.180
		SMS center selection	—		DoCoMo User setting: Not recorded	p.226
		Certificate	—		All Valid	p.181
		Certificate host	—		DoCoMo User defined host: Not recorded	p.183
	i-αppli settings	Disp. Software info	—		Not display	p.229
		End stand-by display	—		—	p.238
		i-αppli vol.	—		Level 4	p.231
	External connection	USB mode setting	—		Communication mode	p.302
		Headset usage setting	5 1		Headset+speaker	p.104
		Select microphone	—		External microphone	p.357
		Auto answer setting	9 4	Phone	OFF	p.356
				Videophone		
				PushTalk		
	Int'l roaming set	NW search mode	—		Auto	p.398
		3G/GSM setting	—		AUTO	p.397
		Display operator name	—		Display ON	p.399
	Other settings	Keypad sound	3 0		ON	p.103
		Charge sound	—		ON	p.104
		Battery level	7 1		—	p.45
		Side key guard	✱ (1 second or longer)		OFF	p.137
		Character input set	3 5	Input mode	5-touch	p.361
				Prediction	ON	p.361
				T9 change mode	T9 Kanji change mode	p.370
				Clear learned	—	p.368
				CHG input size	Standard	p.361
		ch-key setting	—		i-Channel	p.33
		Illumination	—	Closed illum.	ON Set illumination: Color 5 (Phone color: bourgogne red)/Color 2 (Phone color: opal white)/Color 6 (Phone color: venus gold)/Color 4 (Phone color: graphite black) Pattern: Hotaru	p.113
				Birthday reminder	ON Set illumination: Color 1 Pattern: Wave	
				Anniversary reminder	ON Set illumination: Color 1 Pattern: Wave	
		Reset settings	2 3		—	p.357
		Initialize	—		—	p.357

Continued on next page

Main item	Sub item	Branch item	Menu No. (Key operation)	Default setting		Refer to page
Settings	Other settings	Software Update	—	Set auto-update	Auto-update Date: Not specified Time: 03:00	p.443
Data Box	My picture		4 6		①	p.274
	Music		—		②	p.326
	Music&Video Channel		—		③	p.323
	i-motion		—		④	p.282
	Melody		1 6		⑤	p.288
	My document		—		⑥	p.311
	Chara-den		—		⑦	p.285
	Kisekae Tool		—		⑧	p.290
	Document viewer		—		—	p.313
LifeKit	Bar code reader		—		—	p.159
	Receive Ir data		7 9		—	p.307 p.308
	microSD manager		—		—	p.296
	Camera		(1 second or longer)		⑨	p.152 p.156
	Life history viewer		—		—	p.338
	GPS		1 (1 second or longer)	Position location	—	p.250
				Location notification	Not stored	p.259
				Location history	No location history	p.260
				i-αppli	地図アプリ	p.251
				GPS settings	Position settings GPS button setting: Read a Map Positioning mode: Standard mode	p.251
					Notification menu Register LCS client: Not stored Positioning mode: Standard mode	p.259
					Request menu Permit to send loc.: OFF Positioning mode: Standard mode Host selection: Initial address Service settings: —	p.256
					Tone/Vibrator Ring volume: Level 4 Select ring tone: Alarm 11 Vibrator: Pattern 1 Ring time Position location: OFF Location notification, Loc. request/permit, Loc. request/confirm: ON (5 seconds)	p.103
					Illumination: Color 3	p.103
	Data security serv.		—	Sndg img in Phonebook	OFF	p.98
	Schedule		4 5		⑩	p.340
	Alarm		4 4		All OFF	p.339
	To Do list		9 5		—	p.343
	Text memo		4 2		—	p.353

Main item	Sub item	Branch item	Menu No. (Key operation)	Default setting		Refer to page
LifeKit	Calculator		MENU 8 5		—	p.352
	Play/Erase msg.		▼ (📷)		—	p.72
	Play/Erase VP msg.		—		—	p.72
	Voice memo		MENU 4 3		—	p.350
	Voice announce		MENU 9 1		—	p.350
	UIM operation		—		—	p.304
	My Profile		MENU 0		⑪	p.48 p.347
	Forwarding image		—		ON	p.311
	Text reader		—		—	p.162
	Dictionary		—		—	p.353
Service	Chaku-moji		—	Create message	5 messages pre-installed	p.58
				MSG display settings	Calls with Caller ID	
				3D message display	ON	
	Caller ID Notification		MENU 1 7		—	p.48
	Voice Mail		—		—	p.372
	Call Waiting		—		—	p.373
	Call Forwarding		—		—	p.374
	2in1 setting		2 (1 second or longer)		OFF	p.379
				Mode switching	Dual mode	p.380
				Phonebook 2in1 setting	—	
				Stand-by display	Dual mode Stand-by display: Six Months Calendar B mode Stand-by display: Ivy	
				Set call/receive No.	Disp. call/receive No. Number A: White (Phone color: graphite black, bourgogne red)/Black (Phone color: opal white, venus gold) Number B: Gray Ringtone for Number B Voice call (recv.) Ring tone: Pattern 2 Other than above: Same as Number A V. phone (recv.) Ring tone: Pattern 2 Other than above: Same as Number A Mail (recv.) Ring tone: Alarm 2 Other than above: Same as Number A	
				2in1 function OFF	—	
				Rcv. avoid. setting	—	
	Nuisance Call Blk		—		—	p.375
	Caller ID Request		—		—	p.375
	Incoming Call Mng		—		Answer	p.377
	Set in-call arrival		—		—	p.377
	Remote Control		—		—	p.378

Continued on next page

Main item	Sub item	Branch item	Menu No. (Key operation)	Default setting		Refer to page
Service	Dual Network		—		—	p.376
	English Guidance		—		—	p.376
	Additional service		—		—	p.384
	Service Numbers		—		—	p.377
	Multi Number		—	Select ring tone	Same as ring tone	p.378
	Roam. Guidance		—		—	p.399
	Bar incoming when roam		—		—	p.399
	Service(Int.)		—		—	p.399
Phonebook	Phonebook		—		⑫	p.89 p.91
	PushTalk		▼		⑬	p.83 p.84
Own Data	Received calls		2 4		—	p.56
	Dialed calls		—		—	p.56
	Mail member		9 7		—	p.195
	Chat group		—		—	p.223
	Choku-Den		⏱		—	p.96
	Common phrases		3 8		Default common phrases (Folder name: Folder 1, 2)	p.367
	Own dictionary		8 2		—	p.368
	DL dictionary		—		—	p.369
MUSIC	Music Player		▼ (1 second or longer)		②	p.325
	Music&Video Channel		—		③	p.320
Camera			▼ (📷) (1 second or longer)		⑨	p.152 p.156
Osaifu-Keitai	IC card content		—		—	p.243
	DCMX		—		—	p.234
	ToruCa		—		—	p.245
	IC card lock setting		3 (1 second or longer)	IC card lock	OFF	p.247
				IC lock (power-off)	Maintain	
	Setting		—	ToruCa settings	Receive from R/W: Accept Repetition check: Yes Auto reading setting: ON Scroll: 1 line	p.246
				IC card notice set	Illumination: ON Vibrator: ON	p.114
	Search by i-mode		—		—	—

[Table1] Other reset setting functions

Function	Default setting
①My picture	Sort: Chronological ↑ Set image disp.: Normal
②Music	Sort: Title ↓ List setting: Title
③Music&Video Channel	Sort: Chronological ↑ List setting: Title + image
④i-motion	Sort: Chronological ↑ List setting: Title + image (Phone), Name + image (microSD)
⑤Melody	Sort: Chronological ↑ Set repeat play: OFF
⑥My document	Sort: Chronological ↑
⑦Chara-den	Substitute image: ビーンズ (Beans) Rec. Chara-den: Photo mode Set image disp.: Fit in display Photo mode Select size: QCIF (176 × 144) Storage setting (image): Fine Movie mode Movie type set: Video + voice Storage setting (movie): Normal File size: 2MB
⑧Kisekae Tool	Sort: Chronological ↑
⑨Camera	Movie mode Camera: Rear camera Select size: QCIF (176 × 144) File size: 2MB Quality setting: Normal Camera Settings Photo mode: Portrait White balance: Auto Flicker: Auto Shutter sound: Sound 1 Select to save: Phone (Camera folder) Voice mode File size: 2MB Shutter sound: Sound 1 Select to save: Phone (Camera folder)

Function	Default setting
⑨Camera	Photo mode Camera: Rear camera Select size Front camera: Screen (240 × 427) Rear camera: Screen (480 × 854) Quality setting: Super Fine Camera Settings Photo mode: Auto White balance: Auto Flicker: Auto Shutter sound: Sound 1 Select to save: Phone (Camera folder) Movie mode/Voice mode/Photo mode Auto timer: OFF (Delay time: 10 seconds) Auto save set: OFF File restriction: File unrestricted Continuous mode→p.154
⑩Schedule	Display: Monthly display User icon: Not recorded
⑩My Profile	Big font⇔Standard font: Standard font
⑫Phonebook	Ring tone/Image: Not set Restrictions: Not set Big font⇔Standard font: Standard font
⑬PushTalk	PushTalk setting Auto answer setting: OFF Ring time setting: 30 seconds Setting when folded: Speaker talk PushTalk arrival act: Answer Hands-free setting: ON
Music Player	Sound effect Equalizer: OFF Effect: OFF Repeat setting: OFF Shuffle: OFF Volume: Level 10 Screen setting: Normal screen mode Set image disp.: Normal Change skin: Flame (Phone color: bourgogne red)/Stardust (Phone color: opal white, venus gold, graphite black) Set repeat play: OFF

Continued on next page

Function	Default setting
Other functions	During a videophone call V.phone settings: Brightness: 0 Display light: All time ON Last one function* Main menu: Data Box Phonebook: Search reading Volume: Level 4 Manner mode: Released Public mode (Driving mode): Deactivated

*: "Last one function" makes the FOMA terminal select the function you select last time automatically when you operate the FOMA terminal next time.

Simple Menu Function List

Main item	Sub item/Branch item	Ref. page
Phone	Phonebook	p.89, p.91
	Dialed calls	p.56
	Received calls	p.56
	Play/Erase msg.	p.72
	Add to phonebook	p.89
	My profile	p.48, p.347
Mail	Inbox	p.202
	Outbox	p.202
	Draft	p.194
	Compose message	p.188
	Check new messages	p.198
i-mode	iMenu	p.167
	Bookmark	p.173
	Screen memo	p.174

Main item	Sub item/Branch item	Ref. page
Camera	Photo mode	p.152
	Movie mode	p.156
	My picture	p.274
	i-motion	p.282
Settings/Tools	Incoming call	p.100
	Display	p.107
	Alarm clock	p.339
	Calculator	p.352
	Call time/Charge	p.350
	Voice Mail	p.372

Character Assignment to Dial Keys

Allowable characters for 5-touch

Key	Kanji/Hiragana input mode	Kana input mode	Alphabetic input mode	Numeric input mode
1	あいうえおぁぃぅぇぉ	アイウエオァィゥェォ	. @ / ? ! ( ) , -_ : ' ~ *5 & ¥ 1 space	1
2	かきくけこ	カキクケコ	ABCabc2	2
3	さしすせそ	サシスセソ	DEFdef3	3
4	たちつてとっ	タチツテトッ	GHIghi4	4
5	なにぬねの	ナニヌネノ	JKLjkl5	5
6	はひふへほ	ハヒフヘホ	MNOmno6	6
7	まみむめも	マミムメモ	PQRSpqrs7	7
8	やゆよゃゅょ	ヤユヨャュョ	TUVtuv8	8
9	らりるれろ	ラリルレロ	WXYZwxyz9	9
0	わをんゎー	ワヲンヮ*1ー	0 Space	0＋*6
*	゛ ゜ *2, *3	゛ ゜ *2, *3	＿＿＿＿ *2, *3	＊*3
#	、。？！・Space*4	、。？！・Space*4	.ne.jp .co.jp .ac.jp www. .com .html http:// https:// @docomo.ne.jp*7	#

*1 : Lower case “ワ” can be entered in double-byte input mode.
*2 : When there are characters that cannot have dakuten/han-dakuten attached and the switching of the case is available, this will switch lowercase and uppercase. If “つ” or “ツ” is entered, lower case/upper case/dakuten can be switched.
*3 : Holding down the key for 1 second or longer enters a line feed (↵).
*4 : None of these can be entered when you enter a reading into Own dictionary. “、”, “。”, “？”, “！” and “・” cannot be entered when you enter a reading into UIM phonebook.
*5 : “￣” is displayed in double-byte input mode.
*6 : “＋” can be entered when you enter an SMS address by holding down the key for 1 second or longer.
*7 : Will not be displayed when switched to double-byte.

Allowable characters for 2-touch

■Double-byte input mode

Key		2nd key									
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
1st key	1	あ ぁ	い ぃ	う ぅ	え ぇ	お ぉ	A a	B b	C c	D d	E e
	2	か	き	く	け	こ	F f	G g	H h	I i	J j
	3	さ	し	す	せ	そ	K k	L l	M m	N n	O o
	4	た	ち	つ っ	て	と	P p	Q q	R r	S s	T t
	5	な	に	ぬ	ね	の	U u	V v	W w	X x	Y y
	6	は	ひ	ふ	へ	ほ	Z z	?	!	―	／
	7	ま	み	む	め	も	¥	&		*1	
	8	や ゃ	（	ゆ ゅ	）	よ ょ	＊	＃		*1	*2
	9	ら	り	る	れ	ろ	1	2	3	4	5
	0	わ ゎ	を	ん	*3	*3	6	7	8	9	0

■Single-byte input mode

Key		2nd key									
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
1st key	1	ｱ ｧ	ｲ ｨ	ｳ ｩ	ｴ ｪ	ｵ ｫ	A a	B b	C c	D d	E e
	2	ｶ	ｷ	ｸ	ｹ	ｺ	F f	G g	H h	I i	J j
	3	ｻ	ｼ	ｽ	ｾ	ｿ	K k	L l	M m	N n	O o
	4	ﾀ	ﾁ	ｯ ｯ	ﾃ	ﾄ	P p	Q q	R r	S s	T t
	5	ﾅ	ﾆ	ﾇ	ﾈ	ﾉ	U u	V v	W w	X x	Y y
	6	ﾊ	ﾋ	ﾌ	ﾍ	ﾎ	Z z	?	!	-	/
	7	ﾏ	ﾐ	ﾑ	ﾒ	ﾓ	¥	&		*1	
	8	ﾔ ｬ	（	ﾕ ｭ	）	ﾖ ｮ	＊	＃		*1	*2
	9	ﾗ @	ﾘ /	ﾙ -	ﾚ _	ﾛ ：	1 .ne.jp	2 .co.jp	3 .ac.jp	4 @docomo.ne.jp	5
	0	ﾜ ～	ｦ '	ﾝ	ﾞ ，	ﾟ ．	6 www.	7 .com	8 .html	9 http://	0 https://

- During reading input when you are storing entries in the UIM phonebook, Double-byte input mode becomes katakana input.

*1 : These can also be used only when pictograph input is possible, such as “Text memo” or storing “Common phrases”. Note that these icons are always entered as double-byte characters. “Pictograph” is not available when you are composing an SMS, but “☎” and “♥” can be entered.

*2 : Pressing 8 0 switches between upper case input mode (top) and lower case input mode (bottom). You can also enter upper case text and then change it to lower case by pressing ＊.

*3 : In “Double-byte input mode”, dakuten “゛” and han-dakuten “゜” are only displayed for characters with which dakuten can be used. Dakuten entered with other characters appear as spaces.

： Spaces are entered.

Allowable characters for T9

Key	Kanji/Hiragana input mode	Kana input mode	Alphabetic input mode
1	あ column, 1	ア column, 1	. @ / ? ! ( ) , - _ : ' ~ *5 & ¥ 1 space
2	か column, 2	カ column, 2	ABCabc2
3	さ column, 3	サ column, 3	DEFdef3
4	た column, 4	タ column, 4	GHIghi4
5	な column, 5	ナ column, 5	JKLjkl5
6	は column, 6	ハ column, 6	MNOmno6
7	ま column, 7	マ column, 7	PQRSpqrs7
8	や column, 8	ヤ column, 8	TUVtuv8
9	ら column, 9	ラ column, 9	WXYZwxyz9
0	わをんゎー, 0	ワヲンヮ*4ー, 0	0
*	*1, *2	*1, *2	*2, *6
#	*3	*3	.ne.jp .co.jp .ac.jp www. .com .html http:// https:// @docomo.ne.jp

- For “numeric input mode”, see “Mode 1 (5-touch input)” key assignments.
- Number candidates do not appear when you enter a reading into a UIM phonebook entry or “Own dictionary”.
- All characters are entered in upper case in “CapsLock mode”. In “Shift mode”, only the first character is entered in upper case, and other characters are entered in lower case. When these mode are canceled, all characters are entered in lower case.
- After confirming text in “Shift mode”, the mode is canceled.

*1 : Switches the conversion candidate readings with dakuten “゛” and han-dakuten “゜” during reading edit.
*2 : Holding down the key for 1 second or longer enters a line feed (↵).
*3 : “、”, “。”, “？”, “！”, “・”, “space” are displayed after reading and characters are confirmed.
*4 : The lower case “ワ” can be entered in double-byte input mode only.
*5 : “￣” is displayed in double-byte input mode.
*6 : The mode changes in order from “Released”→“Shift mode”→“CapsLock mode”.

Symbols and Special Characters

■ Double-byte Symbols

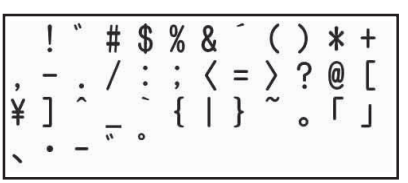




* The space at the first character is a “Double-byte space”.

■ Single-byte Symbols





* The space at the first character is a “Single-byte space”.

*: When entering the message of SMS, ♥ and ☎ appear at the end of the list.

■Symbols reading list

You can enter the following symbols by entering and converting the readings. Also, some of the following symbols are displayed as conversion candidates when you enter and convert “きごう”.

Name (characters to enter)	Symbol
あっと、あっとまーく	@
いこーる	=
えん	¥
おす	⇧
おなじ	々
おなじく	〃
おんぷ	♪
かける	×
かっこ	() 〔〕 ［］ ｛｝ ‹› 《》 「」 『』 【】 ¨ “” () ◇ ［］ ｛｝ 「」

Name (characters to enter)	Symbol
から	～
こめ	※
ころん	：
こんま	,
さんかく	△▲▽▼
しゃせん	／＼
しかく	□■◇◆
しめ	〆
たす	＋
どう	ヽ ゝ ゞ 〃 々
ぱーせんと	%

Name (characters to enter)	Symbol
ひく	－
ひしがた	◇◆
ほし	☆★
まる	○●◎
むげん	∞
めす	♀
やじるし	→←↑↓
ゆうびん	〒
るーと	√
わる	÷

Pictographs

■Pictographs





Continued on next page

■ Pictographs reading entry

You can enter the pictographs by entering and converting the following readings.

	Reading
	はーと
	はーと
	しつれん・はーと
	はーと
	わーい・かお・うれしい
	いかり・かお
	がく・かお・かなしい
	やだ・かお・かなしい
	ふらふら・かお
	るんるん・おんぷ
	おんせん
	かわいい・はな
	きすまーく・きす・ちゅっ
	ぴかぴか・あたらしい・きら・ぴか
	ひらめき・きら・ぴか
	むかっ・いかり
	ぱんち・いかり・て
	ばくだん・ばくはつ・いかり
	むーど・おんぷ
	ねむい・すいみん・ねる・ぐー
	びっくり・おどろき
	びっくり・おどろき
	びっくり・おどろき
	どんっ・しょうげき
	あせあせ・あせ
	あせ
	だっしゅ・にげろ
	ー
	ー
	ぐっど・やじるし・や・うえ
	ばっど・やじるし・や・した
	やじるし・うえ
	やじるし・した
	やじるし・うえ
	やじるし・した
	はれ・てんき・たいよう
	くもり・てんき・くも
	あめ・てんき・かさ
	ゆき・てんき・ゆきだるま
	かみなり・てんき・ぴか

	Reading
	たいふう・てんき・まる・ぐるぐる
	きり・てんき
	こさめ・てんき・かさ
	おひつじざ・せいざ
	おうしざ・せいざ
	ふたござ・せいざ
	かにざ・せいざ
	ししざ・せいざ
	おとめざ・せいざ
	てんびんざ・せいざ
	さそりざ・せいざ
	いてざ・せいざ
	やぎざ・せいざ
	みずがめざ・せいざ
	うおざ・せいざ
	すぽーつ・ふく
	やきゅう・すぽーつ・ぼーる
	ごるふ・すぽーつ
	てにす・すぽーつ
	さっかー・すぽーつ・ぼーる
	すきー・すぽーつ
	ばすけっとぼーる・すぽーつ・ばすけ・ばすけっと
	もーたーすぽーつ・はた・ふらっぐ・えふわん
	ぽけっとべる・ぽけべる・べる
	でんしゃ・のりもの
	ちかてつ・のりもの・めとろ
	しんかんせん・のりもの
	くるま・のりもの・せだん
	くるま・のりもの・あーるぶい
	ばす・のりもの
	ふね・のりもの
	ひこうき・のりもの
	いえ・たてもの・うち
	びる・たてもの・かいしゃ
	ゆうびんきょく・ゆうびん
	びょういん
	ぎんこう・ばんく
	えーてぃーえむ・ばんく
	ほてる
	こんびに

	Reading
	がそりんすたんど・がすすたんど・がす
	ちゅうしゃじょう・ぱーきんぐ・ぴー
	しんごう
	といれ・べんじょ
	れすとらん・しょくじ・ごはん・めし
	きっさてん・しょくじ・さてん・おちゃ
	ばー・しょくじ・さけ・かんぱい
	びーる・しょくじ・さけ・かんぱい
	ふぁーすとふーど・しょくじ・はんばーがー
	ぷていっく・くつ・ふく・はいひーる
	びよういん・はさみ・とこや
	からおけ・まいく・うた
	えいが・びでお
	ゆうえんち
	おんがく・きく・へっどほん
	あーと・かいが
	えんげき・しばい
	いべんと
	ちけっと・きっぷ
	きつえん・たばこ
	きんえん・たばこ
	かめら・しゃしん
	かばん・ばっぐ
	ほん
	りぼん
	ぷれぜんと・おめでとう
	ばーすでー・おめでとう・たんじょうび
	でんわ
	けいたいでんわ・けいたい・けーたい・でんわ
	めも
	てれび
	げーむ
	しーでぃー
	はーと・とらんぷ
	すぺーど・とらんぷ
	だいや・とらんぷ
	くらぶ・とらんぷ

	Reading
	め・みる・みて
	みみ・きく
	て・ぐー
	て・ちょき
	て・ぱー
	あし・あしあと
	くつ
	めがね
	くるまいす
	しんげつ・つき・まる
	はんつき・つき
	はんつき・つき
	みかづき・つき
	まんげつ・つき・まる
	いぬ・どうぶつ
	ねこ・どうぶつ
	りぞーと・よっと・ふね
	くりすます・き
	かちんこ・かっと・かんとく
	ふくろ
	ぺん・めも
	ひとかげ
	いす
	よる・つき・おやすみ
SOON	
ON!	
END	えんど・おわり
	とけい・じかん
	でんわ・でんわばんごう
	めーる・あどれす
FAX	ふぁっくす
	あいもーど・あい
	あいもーど・あい
	めーる・てがみ・あどれす
	どこも
	どこもぽいんと・どこも
	ゆうりょう・えん・かね
FREE	むりょう・ただ・ふりー
ID	あいでぃー
	ぱすわーど・かぎ
	つぎ・りたーん
CL	くりあ
	さーち・しらべる・むしめがね

	Reading
NEW	にゅー・にゅう・あたらしい
	はた・ふらっぐ・いち
	ふりーだいやる
	しゃーぷ
1	いち・すうじ
2	に・すうじ
3	さん・すうじ
4	し・よん・すうじ
5	ご・すうじ
6	ろく・すうじ
7	なな・しち・すうじ
8	はち・すうじ
9	きゅう・く・すうじ
0	ぜろ・れい・すうじ
OK	けってい・おーけー・おっけー
	あいあぶり・あぶり
	あいあぶり・あぶり
	てぃーしゃつ・しゃつ・ふく
	さいふ・かね・おかね
	けしょう・くちべに
	じーんず・ふく・ずぼん
	すのぼ・すのーぼーど・すぼーつ
	ちゃべる・べる・かね
	どあ・とびら
	どるぶくろ・かね・おかね
	ぱそこん・びーしー
	らぶれたー・らぶめーる・てがみ・めーる
	れんち・しゅうり
	えんぴつ・めも
	おうかん・かんむり・おう
	ゆびわ
	すなどけい・じかん
	じてんしゃ・のりもの・ちゃり
	ゆのみ・おちゃ・ちゃ
	うでどけい・とけい・じかん
	かんがえる・かお・うーむ
	ほっ・かお
	ひやあせ・かお
	ひやあせ・かお
	いかり・かお・ぷー
	ぼけー・かお

	Reading
	はーと・かお
	おーけー・て・おっけー
	あかんべ・かお・べー
	うぃんく・かお
	うれしい・かお・にこ
	がまん・かお
	ねこ・どうぶつ
	なみだ・かお・なき
	なみだ・かお・なき
NG	えぬじー・だめ
	くりっぷ・てんぷ
©	
TM	
	はしるひと・だっしゅ・はしる・にげる
秘	まるひ・ひみつ
	りさいくる
®	
	きけん・ちゅうい
禁	きんし
空	くうしつ・くうせき・くうしゃ・あき
合	ごうかく
満	まんしつ・まんせき・まんしゃ・いっぱい
	やじるし・や
	やじるし・や
	がっこう
	なみ・うぇーぶ・うみ
	ふじさん・やま
	くろーばー・はな
	さくらんぼ・はな・ちぇりー
	ちゅーりっぷ・はな
	ばなな・たべもの
	りんご・たべもの
	め・はな
	もみじ・はな
	さくら・はな
	おにぎり・おむすび・たべもの
	しょーとけーき・けーき・たべもの
	とっくり・おちょこ・さけ・かんぱい
	どんぶり・ごはん・たべもの・しょくじ
	ぱん・しょくじ・たべもの
	かたつむり・どうぶつ

Continued on next page

	Reading
	ひよこ・どうぶつ
	ぺんぎん・どうぶつ
	さかな・どうぶつ
	うまい・たべる・かお

	Reading
	にやり・かお・わらい
	うま・どうぶつ・けいば
	ぶた・どうぶつ
	わいんぐらす・わいん・さけ・かんぱい

	Reading
	げっそり・さけび・むんく・かお

* Pictographs with no reading can be entered only by Pictograph.

NOTE

- When you send pictographs to the mobile phone other than i-mode terminal or a PC, they may not be displayed correctly. Pictographs may not be displayed correctly depending on the model of the other party even when it is the i-mode terminal.

Face Marks

■ Face marks reading list

You can enter the face marks by entering and converting the following readings. Also, all the following marks are displayed as conversion candidates when you enter and convert “かお” or “かおもじ”.

Reading	Smiley Face
ありがと(う)	m(_)m
ばんざい	＼(^o^)／
わーい	(^o^)
わーい	(´∀`)
わーい	(*^□^*)
わーい	o(^▽^o)(o^▽^)o
わーい	(≧▼≦)
おーい	(^o^)／
ぶい	(^^)v
ぎゃはは	(^Q^)／^
あは	(o^o^o)
あは	^o^；
にこ	(^-^)
にこ	(*^^*)
にこ	(n‘∀‘n)
にこ	(n^∀^n)
にこ	(’∀’●)
にこ	(●^-^●)
にこ	(o^▽^o)
ちゅ	(^3^)／
ちゅ	(^ε^)-☆Chu!!
わくわく	o(^-^)o
ういんく	(^_-)
さよなら	(^_^)／^
さよなら	(´Д`)ノ~~
がんば	p(^^)q
ね	(^^)b
ぽりぽり	(^^ゞ
ひやあせ	(^o^；
あせあせ	(;^_^A
びくっ	(*_*)
どき	(◎-◎;)
え	(@_@;)
めがてん	(・・;)

Reading	Smiley Face
はてな	(・・?)
きらーん	(☆。☆)
しくしく	(T_T)
さよなら	(T_T)／~
いたた	(◇_◇)
いたた	(＞＜)
えーん	(;_;)
えーん	(´Д`)
えーん	Ω Å Ω;
えーん	(ノД<。)゜。
えーん	゜。(p> /\<q)。゜
えーん	(T ω ヽ)
なぜ	(?_?)
がーん	(￣□￣;)!!
がーん	(____;)
がーん	∑(￣□￣;)
えへん	(￣^￣)
む	(－＿－メ)
む	o(￣^￣ o)
いかり	(`´)
むか	(;-_-+
むか	(`へ´)
むか	(^^;)
こそこそ	(・_・|
じーっ	(-_-)
きこえない	|(-_-)|
こまったもんだ	(￣～￣)ξ
ぶたー	)^o^(
こあら	(－Q－)
いっぷく	(^|^)y^
いっぷく	(^_^)y-~~~
ほし	☆彡
ねてる	(-_-)zz
ねむい	＼(^o^)／

Reading	Smiley Face
ねむい	(_o_-)ノ
めも	φ(..)
うん	(゜゜)(。。)
かんぱい	(^^)／▽☆▽＼(^^)
ども	＼(^_^)(^_^)／
がまん	(;´∩`)
こんにちは	ヾ(=^▽^=)ノ
こんにちは	(・∀・)ノ
こんにちは	(●´∀`●)/
いいな	(o>ω<o)
いいな	(@゜▽゜@)
いいな	(m’□’m)
うーん	(￣～￣;)
てれる	(／_＼;)
てれる	(*/ω＼*)
てれる	(//∀//)
てれる	(≧ω≦)
しあわせ	°+。(*´∀`)。+°
しあわせ	ヽ(´▽`)/
しあわせ	(*´∀`*)
なかよし	^￣^)人(^￣^
ごめん	(*C*)
いじいじ	φ(_;)
いじわる	Ψ(`∀´#)
よろしく	☆ヽ(▽´*)
こまった	＞＜
やだ	(◯>_<)
へこむ	(´ ˘`)
へこむ	(´ω`)
びっくり	(o д O;)
びっくり	w(゜0゜)w
だっしゅ	ε=┏(・_・)┛

Common Phrases

■ Folder 1 (fixed)

No.	Message
1	Sorry
2	Thank you
3	Congratulations!
4	It's time
5	Wait a minute
6	Just arrived
7	Schedule change
8	Where are you?
9	Do your best
0	What are you doing?

■ Folder 2 (fixed)

No.	Message
1	All right
2	I hope you are well
3	Well done
4	Urgent
5	What do you think?
6	Please call
7	I will be late
8	Leave a message on voice mail
9	E-mail me via i-mode
0	Thank you for your help

Multi Access Combination Patterns

Current condition \ Another communication	Voice call		Videophone		i-mode usage*1	i-αppli usage	i-mode mail	
	Dialing	Incoming call	Dialing	Incoming call			Send	Receive
During a voice call	△*2	△*3	×	△*4	○	×	○	○
During a videophone call	×	△*4	—	△*4	×	×	×	×*9
During i-mode*1	○	○	△*6	△*7	—	○*14	○	○
During packet communication with a PC	○	○	×	×	×	△*8	×	×*9
During 64K data communication	×	△*4	×	△*4	×	×	×	×*9
During a PushTalk call	×	△*5	×	×*10	×	×	×	×*9

Current condition \ Another communication	SMS		Packet communication		64K data communication		PushTalk	
	Send	Receive	Send	Receive	Send	Receive	Dialing	Incoming call
During a voice call	○	○	○	○	×	△*4	×	×*10
During a videophone call	×	○	×	×*10	×	△*4	×	×
During i-mode*1	○	○	×	×	×	×	△*11	△*13
During packet communication with a PC	○	○	—	—	×	×	×	×
During 64K data communication	○	○	×	×	×	△*4	×	×
During a PushTalk call	○	○	×	×	×	×	×*12	×

○: Can be activated. ×: Cannot be activated. △: Can be activated depending on situation. —: Functionally incompatible.

*1 : Includes i-Channel site view, Full Browser and ToruCa communication.

*2 : If you have subscribed to “Call Waiting”, you can hold the current voice call to make another call.
*3 : If you have subscribed to “Call Waiting”, you can hold the current voice call to answer an incoming call. If you have subscribed to “Voice Mail” or “Call Forwarding”, you can end the current communication and then answer a new incoming communication. →p.377
*4 : If you have subscribed to “Call Waiting”, “Voice Mail” or “Call Forwarding”, you can end the current communication and then answer a new incoming communication. →p.377
*5 : If “PushTalk arrival act” is set to “Answer”, answering an incoming voice call ends PushTalk communication. →p.86
*6 : Make a videophone call after disconnecting the current i-mode.
*7 : If “V-phone while packet” is set to “V-phone priority”, answering an incoming videophone call disconnects i-mode communication.
*8 : You cannot communicate via i-αppli software.
*9 : An i-mode message, MessageR or MessageF is not received, but is stored in the i-mode Center. You can receive a stored i-mode message, MessageR or MessageF by performing “Check new messages” after the current communication ends.
*10 : It is logged as a missed call.
*11 : Make a PushTalk call after disconnecting the current i-mode.
*12 : Only when you are a caller, you can make a call to add members.
*13 : When “Set i-mode arrival act” under “i-mode settings” is set to “PushTalk preferred”, receiving a PushTalk call disconnects i-mode communication. If “i-mode preferred” is set, the missed call record is not left.
*14 : i-αppli cannot be activated while the full browser (viewer type) is active.

Multitask Combination Patterns

Function / Currently	Mail	i-mode menu/ i-Channel list	i-αppli	Settings	Data Box	LifeKit
Launching Mail group	○*2	○	○	○*11	○	○*18
Launching i-mode group	○*3	×	○*9	○*11	○*14	○*18
Launching i-αppli group	○	○*6*7	×	○*11	○*15	○*18
Launching Settings group	○	○	○	×	○	○*18
Launching Tools group*1	○	○	○	○*11	×*17	×*19
Music playing	○*4	○*8	○*10*30	○*11	○*8	○*11
During a voice call	○*5	○*5	×	×*12	×	×*19*20
During a videophone call	×	×	×	×	×	×*21*22
During a PushTalk call	○	○	×	○*12	×	○*23
During packet communication with a PC	○	○	○	○*11	○	○*18
During 64K data communication	○	○	×	×*12*13	×	×*11*19

Function / Currently	Service	Phonebook	Own Data	MUSIC	Camera	Osaifu-Keitai	Original Menu
Launching Mail group	○*24	○*27	○	○	○	○*11	○
Launching i-mode group	○*24	○*27	○	○	○	○*11	○
Launching i-αppli group	○*24	○*27	○	○	○	○*11	○

Continued on next page

Function / Currently	Service	Phonebook	Own Data	MUSIC	Camera	Osaifu-Keitai	Original Menu
Launching Settings group	×	○*27	○	○	○	○*11	○
Launching Tools group*1	○*24	×	×	○*11	×	○*11	○
Music playing	○*24	○*8*27	○	×	○*31	○*11	○
During a voice call	○*5*24 *25*26	○*5*27	○*5*28	×	○*29	×*16	○*5
During a videophone call	×	×	×	×	×	×	×
During a PushTalk call	○*24*25*26	○*27	○*28	×	○*29	×*16	○
During packet communication with a PC	○*24	○*27	○	×	○	○*11	○
During 64K data communication	○*24*25*26	○*27	○*28	×	○*29	×*16	○

○: Can be activated. ×: Cannot be activated.

*1 : The function is unavailable when “Receive Ir data”, “microSD manager” or “UIM operation” is selected.

*2 : “Compose message” and “Compose SMS” cannot be used simultaneously.

*3 : You cannot save images, such as files attached to a mail or added onto a template, on the microSD memory card while activating Full Browser (Viewer type).

*4 : Read out mail function is not available while Music Player is active. In addition, playing sounds such as melodies attached to files is not possible.

*5 : It is not available while switching between a voice call and a videophone call.

*6 : i-motion, Chaku-Uta-Full® and Music&Video Channel cannot be downloaded.

*7 : Full Browser (Viewer type) is not available.

*8 : Playing sounds such as melodies and i-motion is not possible while Music Player is active.

*9 : i-αppli may not be available while Full Browser (Viewer type) is activated.

*10 : i-αppli cannot be used while a track is played on “Music Player” or “Music&Video Channel”.

*11 : Some functions are unavailable.

*12 : Only “Pause dial”, “Keypad sound” and “IC card lock setting” are available.

*13 : Only “Ntfy switch-mode” is available.

*14 : While Full Browser (Viewer type) is activated, functions below are unavailable; images for copying/editing/adding location information on microSD, i-motion for editing/sending or receiving in OBEX moving between FOMA terminal and microSD memory card (10M bytes), music for copying/moving between FOMA terminal and microSD memory card.

*15 : Editing and copying still images to microSD memory card, editing, forwarding and copying/moving movies between the FOMA terminal (Phone) and microSD memory card, moving Chaku-Uta-Full® between the FOMA terminal (Phone) and microSD memory card, and GPS still image location information addition function (“From position loc.”, “From location history”) are also unavailable.

*16 : Only “ToruCa”, “IC card lock setting” and “Search by i-mode” are available.

*17 : If you perform infrared data exchange or iC exchange during positioning with the GPS function, you will be out of the service area and the positioning will be canceled.

*18 : “Receive Ir data”, “microSD manager”, “Voice announce” and “UIM operation” are unavailable.

*19 : The Position location, Location notification and Location request are available.

*20 : Only “Bar code reader”, “Camera”, “GPS”, “Data security serv.”, “Schedule”, “To Do list”, “Text memo”, “Calculator”, “My Profile”, “Text reader”, and “Dictionary” are available. However, only “Photo mode” and “Continuous mode” are available in “Camera”.

*21 : “Voice memo (in-call)” is available only when you press and hold ▼ (📷) for 1 second or longer. However, it is not available while switching between a voice call and a videophone call.

*22 : The Location notification and Location request are available.

*23 : Only “Bar code reader”, “Camera”, “GPS”, “Schedule”, “To Do list”, “Text memo”, “Calculator”, “My Profile”, “Text reader”, and “Dictionary” are available. However, only “Photo mode” and “Continuous mode” are available in “Camera”.
*24 : “Chaku-moji” is unavailable. “Mode switching”, etc. is not available depending on the 2in1 setting.
*25 : “Voice Mail” messages cannot be played. Service Numbers (p.377) and special number (p.384) cannot be dialed (but can be dialed using USSD).
*26 : “Caller ID Notification” and “2in1 setting” are unavailable.
*27 : “Restrictions” is unavailable.
*28 : “Common phrases”, “Own dictionary” and “Download dictionary” are unavailable.
*29 : “Photo mode” and “Continuous mode” are only available.
*30 : “Music&Video Channel” and “Music Player” are paused.
*31 : Camera cannot activate when Music Player is active.

Services Available for the FOMA Terminal

Available service	Phone number
Directory assistance (pay: service charge + call charge) * Unlisted phone numbers cannot be given	(No area code) 104
Telegram (pay: telegram charge)	(No area code) 115
Time (charged)	(No area code) 117
Weather forecast (charged)	Area code of an area you want to know + 177
Emergency call to the police	(No area code) 110
Emergency call for a fire engine or an ambulance	(No area code) 119
Emergency call for help with maritime accidents	(No area code) 118
Emergency Message Recording System (charged)	(No area code) 171
Collect call (pay: service charge + call charge)	(No area code) 106

NOTE

- When you use the Collect Call Service (106), the receiver will be billed for the call charge plus an additional service charge of 90 yen (94.5 yen tax included) for each call. (As of October, 2007)
- When you use the Directory Assistance Service (104), you will be billed for the call charge plus an additional service charge of 100 yen (105 yen tax included). A free service is available for persons with impaired vision or disability of the arms or hands. For further details call 116 NTT inquiries from general subscriber phones. (As of October, 2007)
- This FOMA terminal supports “緊急通報位置通知” (Emergency Location Report). When calling 110, 118 or 119 from the FOMA terminal, your current location (location information) is automatically notified to a concerned organization such as police office.
  The location information may not be correctly sent depending on your current location or the condition of the signal reception.
  When you notify your location information, the name of the organization that the location information has been sent appears on the standby screen.
  If you dialed with “184” attached not to notify the caller information, your location information and caller ID is not notified. However, when the concerned organization judges the information is necessary for protection of a human life, your location information and caller ID may be acquired. Where and when to start the support of “緊急通報位置通知” (Emergency Location Report), differ in every local organization.
- When calling 110, 119 or 118 from the FOMA terminal, first inform that you are calling from a mobile phone, give your number, and state your location clearly so that the police or fire department can call you back. Also, do not move around when making the call. Do not turn off the FOMA terminal immediately after ending the call, but leave it turned on for another ten minutes or so, so that you can receive a call.
- Depending on the area you are calling from, you may not be connected with the nearest police or fire department. In that case, call again from a public phone or land line.

Continued on next page

NOTE

- If you are using a “Call Forwarding” service from a general phone and if a mobile phone is set as the forwarding number, depending on the settings of the general phone or mobile phone, the caller may simply hear the ring tone even when the mobile phone is busy with another call, out of range or turned off.
- Other services such as 116 (NTT inquiries), Dial Q2, message (Dengon) Dial, and Credit Call Service are not available (However, Credit Call Service calls can be made from public or general subscriber phones to the FOMA terminals).

Options and Accessories

By combining various options and accessories sold separately, your FOMA terminal can support a wide range of applications to meet both your personal and professional needs. Some product may be unavailable in certain regions. For details, contact a DoCoMo shop.
For details of options and accessories, refer to relevant User’s Manual.

- Earphone/Microphone with Switch P001*1
- Earphone/Microphone with Switch P002*1
- Stereo Earphone Set P001*1
- Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch P01
- Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch P02
- Flat-plug Stereo Earphone Set P01
- Bone conduction microphone/receiver 01
- FOMA USB Cable*4
- FOMA AC Adapter 01/02*2
- FOMA DC Adapter 01
- FOMA DC Adapter 02
- Desktop Holder N15
- Battery Pack N16
- Back Cover N23
- In-Car Hands-Free Kit 01*3
- FOMA In-Car Hands-Free Cable 01
- Data Communications Adapter N01
- FOMA Indoor Booster Antenna*5
- FOMA Indoor Booster Antenna (Stand Type)*5
- In-Car Holder 01
- FOMA AC Adapter 01 for Global Use*2
- FOMA Dry Battery Adapter 01
- Carry Case L 01
- FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01*4
- FOMA Portable Charging Adapter 01

*1 : To connect to FOMA N905iμ, the Earphone Plug Adapter P001 is required.
*2 : AC Adapter charging→pp.43, 44
*3 : To connect/charge the FOMA N905iμ with USB, the FOMA In-car Hands-free Cable 01 is required.
*4 : The connection may not function normally if a USB hub is used.
*5 : Use in Japan only.

Movie Playing Software

- To play a movie (MP4-formatted file) on PC, install QuickTime Player (free) ver. 6.4 or later (or ver. 6.3 + 3GPP) of Apple Computer, Inc.
- Download QuickTime from the following website:
  http://www.apple.com/jp/quicktime/download/
  - To download, you need PC to access Internet. You are charged for the Internet communication fee to download the software.
  - View the website above for more details on the environment, how to download or how to operate.

Malfunction Checklist

● Check first whether the software update is required. If it is required, update the software.
"Updating Software"→p.443

Problem	Points to check	Ref. page
The FOMA terminal does not turn on (The FOMA terminal cannot be used)	● Is the battery pack properly attached? ● Has the battery run out?	p.42 p.45
An alarm tone sounds	● The battery has run out. Recharge the battery.	p.43 p.45
"Out of service area" appears	● Are you out of range or is the reception poor?	p.46
I cannot make a call by pressing the dial keys	● Is Original lock for "Keypad dial" under "Dial/sending mail" set? ● Is Keypad lock set? ● Is Restrict dialing set?	p.133 p.134 p.139
I dialed a number and initiated a call, but all I hear is a busy tone	● Did you start dialing before hearing the dial tone? ● Did you forget to dial the area code? ● Is "Please wait" displayed?	p.50 p.50 —
I cannot receive calls or the ring tone does not sound	● Are any of the following functions set? Restrictions • Call rejection • Call acceptance • Call forwarding • Voice mail Ring time(sec.) • Set mute seconds Reject unknown Call setting w/o ID • Unknown: Reject • Payphone: Reject • User unset: Reject ● Is the FOMA terminal in Manner mode? ● Is the FOMA terminal in Public mode (Driving mode)? ● Is Original lock for "Incoming call" under "Incoming/Mail disp." set? ● Is Self mode set? ● Is the start time of Voice Mail or Call Forwarding service set to "0 second"? ● Is Caller ID Request set to Activate? ● Is mova valid with the Dual Network service? ● Is the ring volume set to "Silent"? ● Is "0 second" set as the ring time for Record message?	p.139 p.141 p.141 p.140 p.105 p.67 p.133 p.142 p.372 p.374 p.375 p.376 p.66 p.71
Mail ring tones and alarm tones sound but no ring tone sounds when receiving a call	● Is "Set mute seconds" under "Ring time(sec.)" set to longer time (e.g. 99 seconds)? Set "Set mute seconds" to shorter time.	p.141
The records of Dialed calls/ Redial, Sent address disappear automatically	● Is "Restrict dialing" under "Restrictions" set?	p.139
The ring tone sounding when receiving a voice call or videophone call is different from what I selected	● When the ring tone settings are duplicated, the priority applies.	p.101
The image appearing when receiving a voice call or videophone call is different from what I selected	● When the image settings are duplicated, the priority applies.	p.108

Continued on next page

Problem	Points to check	Ref. page
When receiving a voice call or videophone call, the color or pattern of the incoming call lamp flashing is different from what I set up	● When the illumination settings are duplicated, the priority sequence will be assigned.	p.114
It takes long to display or play a movie/i-motion or a Chaku-Uta-Full®	● Is the movie/i-motion or the Chaku-Uta-Full® saved in “Movable contents” folder? It may take long to display or play the data saved in the “Movable contents” folder.	—
Cannot copy or move a movie/i-motion or a Chaku-Uta-Full® to microSD memory card	● Is the Chaku-Uta-Full® saved partially? ● Is the replay restriction (number of times, period, time limit) of the movie/i-motion or the Chaku-Uta-Full® invalid?	p.326 p.275
A PDF document is not properly displayed	● PDF data may not be properly displayed if it contain formats unsupported by PDF viewer or complicated designs.	—
It takes long to display a PDF document	● It may take long to display a large-sized PDF document.	—
Cannot copy a PDF document to the FOMA terminal	● Does the PDF file size exceed 2M bytes?	p.312
Cannot copy a PDF document to the microSD memory card	● Was the PDF document downloaded by page?	p.312
A document is not properly displayed	● A document may not be properly displayed if it contains formats unsupported by Document viewer or complicated designs.	—
It takes time to display a document	● It may take time to display a large-sized document.	—
The screen or ring tone for an incoming call or message is the default setting	● Depending on the combination of receiving screen and ring tone or the priority sequence, either the receiving screen or ring tone may be restored to default.	—
The ring tone sounding when receiving a message is different from what I selected for the mail address	● When the ring tone settings are duplicated, the priority applies. ● If you have received two or more messages, the tone set for the last received mail address sounds. ● If you have received two or more messages including a chat message, the FOMA terminal emits the ring tone set for the chat message. ● If the format of the sender’s mail address is “(phone number)@docomo.ne.jp”, save only that phone number as a mail address and set a distinctive ring tone for that mail address in Select ring tone under Mail (recv.). ● Is the sender’s mail address (a mail address shown on the received mail details screen) stored in the phonebook correctly and did you set a distinctive ring tone for that mail address in Select ring tone under Mail (recv.)? ● If you receive an SMS, a distinctive ring tone set in Mail (recv.) for the phone number in the phonebook sounds.	p.101 p.101 p.101 p.96 p.95 p.96
A string appears instead of the image, i-motion, music, or Music&Video Channel	● The following indicate that the image, i-motion, music, or Music&Video Channel cannot be selected for the function. Select data that will not display the following: “Not available”, “Expired file”, “No preview data”	p.274 p.282 p.322 p.326
Assigned menu No. (p.402) does not work	● Set Main Menu theme to “Standard”.	p.35

Problem	Points to check	Ref. page
The color of the illumination flashing when receiving a message is different from what I selected for the mail address	● When the incoming lamp settings are duplicated, the priority applies. ● If you receive two or more messages, the incoming call lamp flashes following the settings of the Illumination under Mail (recv.) that is set to the last received mail address. ● If the format of the sender's mail address is "(phone number)@docomo.ne.jp", save only that phone number as a mail address and set distinctive illumination for that mail address in Illumination under Mail (recv.). ● Is the sender's mail address (a mail address shown on the received mail details screen) stored in the phonebook correctly and did you set illumination for that mail address in Illumination under Mail (recv.)? ● If you receive an SMS, distinctive illumination set in Illumination under Mail (recv.) for the phone number in the phonebook flashes.	p.114 p.114 p.96 p.95 p.96
Cannot charge the FOMA terminal (the charge lamp of the FOMA terminal does not light)	● Is the battery pack properly attached to the FOMA terminal? ● Is the adapter firmly plugged into the electrical socket or cigarette lighter socket? ● Are the adapter and the FOMA terminal correctly connected (is the AC adapter firmly connected to the FOMA terminal or the desktop holder)?	p.42 p.44 p.44
The key does not sound when I press it	● Is "Keypad sound" set to "OFF"? ● Is the FOMA terminal in Manner mode?	p.103 p.105
I cannot use Any key answer to answer a voice call/videophone call/PushTalk call	● Is "Answer setting" set to "Quick silent" or "OFF"? ● You cannot use Any key answer to answer a videophone call.	p.65 —
The other party's voice is difficult to hear during a call	● Is the earpiece speaker properly placed against your ear? ● Is anything (e.g. a sticker) obstructing the earpiece speaker? ● Is anything obstructing the speaker in handsfree mode? ● Did you change the "Volume" setting? Change the setting so that you can hear the other party clearly.	p.24 — — p.66
The other party's voice is too loud during a call	● Did you change the "Volume" setting? Change the setting so that you can hear the other party clearly.	p.66
Pressing the sidekeys does not operate the folded FOMA terminal	● Is Keypad lock set? ● Is "Side key guard" set to "ON"?	p.134 p.137
Pressing [V] does not check missed calls, etc. when the FOMA terminal is folded Pressing [V] for 1 second or longer does not start the music player	● Is "Record message" set to "OFF"? ● Is Keypad lock set? ● Is "Side key guard" set to "ON"?	p.70 p.134 p.137
The display is hard to see	● Is Brightness under Backlight set to "Dimmer"? ● Is "Privacy angle" set to "ON"?	p.109 p.109
The display light of the display or keypad does not turn on	● Is Lighting under Backlight set to "OFF"? ● Press and hold [5] for 1 second or longer to turn the backlight on or off. Note that pressing and holding [5] for 1 second or longer will turn off the backlight e.g. while composing a message.	p.109 —
Receiving an incoming call immediately after turning on the power displays the phone number but does not display the name stored in the phonebook	● The FOMA terminal may be reading the FOMA card (UIM) immediately after turning on the power. The phonebook function may not be available then.	—

Continued on next page

Problem	Points to check	Ref. page
Battery life is short	● Is the battery pack at the end of it's life? The lifespan of the battery pack may be shortened depending on usage environment. ● Battery life will depend on how the FOMA terminal is used.	— —
It takes some time for the power to turn on after pressing and holding [☎] for 1 second or longer	● Data checking may take time (e.g. if the phonebook is full of data).	—
Nothing appears on the display, and ▭ beside Multi-function key flashes	● Power saver mode is active. Press any key to deactivate.	p.109
Nothing appears on the indicator display	● Is "Indicator display" set to "OFF"?	p.112
The FOMA terminal does not perform incoming call operations (ring tone sounding, vibrator, incoming call lamp flashing) when receiving a call	● The FOMA terminal does not perform incoming call operations (ring tone sounding, vibrator, incoming call lamp flashing) until the set time is reached, when receiving a call from a phone number not stored in the phonebook or from a caller who does not notify his/her caller ID and if "Set mute seconds" under "Ring time (sec.)" is set to "ON".	p.141
Receiving an SMS does not display the sender's name stored in the phonebook	● Did you correctly store the senders phone number on the phone number line ( ) of the phonebook?	p.89
A message is not automatically filtered	● If the sender's mail address is "(Phone number)@docomo.ne.jp", save only the phone number in the Auto-sort settings. ● If the sender's mail address is not "(Phone number)@docomo.ne.jp", save the entire address including the domain in the Auto-sort settings.	p.207 p.207
A message is not automatically received	● Have you set "Receive option setting" to "ON"? Set it to "OFF".	p.197 p.212
Cannot install the FOMA communication setting file (driver) or make data communication	● Have you set USB mode setting to "microSD mode", "Print mode" or "MTP mode"? Set it to "Communication mode".	p.302
Cannot transmit data	● Are you using a USB hub? The connection may not function normally if a USB hub is used.	—
Cannot connect to a PC in MTP mode	● microSD memory card data created on another FOMA terminal cannot be used.	—
i-mode, i-mode mail, i-αppli and i-Channel cannot be connected	● Is "Host selection" set to something other than "i-mode"? ● If you had started using the FOMA terminal before you subscribed to i-mode, turn the FOMA terminal off and then turn it back on.	p.180 —
The FOMA terminal does not perform receiving message operations (ring tone sounding, vibrator, incoming call lamp flashing) when receiving a message	● Is "Mail/Msg. ring time" set to "OFF"? ● Is Original lock for "Disp. recv. mail/msg." under "Incoming/Mail disp." set? ● Is "Receiving setting" set to "Operation preferred"?	p.104 p.133 p.212
A sent message is not saved to the Outbox	● Is "Sort all" set to the folder of mail-linked i-αppli? Highlight the folder of mail-linked i-αppli then select "Open folder" from the function menu to confirm the setting.	p.204 p.207
A received message is not saved to the Inbox, and " (white)" does not disappear	● Does " " appear on the folder of mail-linked i-αppli in the Inbox? Or is "Sort all" set to the folder of mail-linked i-αppli? Highlight the folder of mail-linked i-αppli then select "Open folder" from the function menu to confirm the setting.	p.204 p.207

Problem	Points to check	Ref. page
I was disconnected while sending a message, then received an SMS A message appears when I retry	● SMS interrupts communication and notifies you that a large amount of data is being transferred within a given time. Follow the contents of SMS and the displayed message.	—
Images taken with the rear camera are flickered	● When you take pictures indoors, flickering may appear due to the effect of fluorescent lighting, etc. Changing the “Flicker reduction” setting may suppress flickering.	p.153
Still images or movies shot with the rear camera look too bright	● You may shoot them outside or in a bright place with “Flicker reduction” set to “Mode 1(50Hz)” or “Mode 2(60Hz)”. Restore the flicker reduction to “Auto” if it is not.	p.153
Still images or movies look blurred	● Set a mode suited to the scene being shot.	p.151
“ ☒ ” appears when I try to display an image or “ ☒ ” appears in the demo or preview	● “ ☒ ” may appear when the image data is corrupted.	—
The terminal operates slowly when any keypads are pressed	● It may occur if a large amount of data is stored on the FOMA terminal or if you exchange large data by using the microSD reader/writer function.	—
Chance capture shooting shortens the shooting time	● Chance capture shooting saves control data together with movie data, which may shorten the shooting time.	—
When playing SD-Audio, microSD memory card is not recognized or “Replay error Quitting” message appears	● Store music data into PC using “SD-Jukebox” once, initialize the microSD memory card by “SD-Jukebox”, and then retrieve music data into the microSD memory card.	—
Cannot use Chokkan Game	● Is Original lock set to Camera?	p.130

■For overseas use

Problem	Points to check	Ref. page
“ 圏外 ” or “select net” does not disappear from the screen, and international roaming service cannot be used	● Are you out of international roaming service area or is the reception poor? ● See the international service guide such as “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [World Service]” to check if the area or operator is available. ● Turn off the FOMA terminal then turn it back on the first time you use the service after you move from Japan to overseas. ● Launch “NW search mode” to search for a compatible operator.	— — — p.398
A voice call or videophone call cannot be received	● Is “Bar incoming when roam” set to “Activate”? ● Is “V-phone while packet” set to something other than “V-phone priority”? ● Videophone is not available while using GSM/GPRS network.	p.399 p.76
The other party’s caller ID is not notified The notified caller ID is not the other party’s The FOMA terminal does not perform operations using phonebook data or Caller ID Notification	● If the used network or operator does not notify the caller ID, the caller ID does not appear on the FOMA terminal screen even when the caller ID is notified. Depending on the used network or operator, the notified caller ID may be different from the other party’s.	—

If Any Error Message Appears

● Numbers in parentheses contained in i-mode error messages are codes used by the i-mode Center as separators between transmitted errors.

Error Message	Explanation and Solution	Ref. page
“Activating restrict dialing”	● This is displayed if you attempt a prohibited operation while Restrict dialing is set.	p.139
“Activating Box lock Cannot download” “Activating Folder lock Cannot download”	● There is a lock on the inbox and outbox as a whole, or on folders using mail-linked i-αppli, so mail-linked i-αppli cannot be downloaded or upgraded. To download or upgrade the mail-linked i-αppli, release the Box or Folder lock.	p.138
“Activating Box lock Unable to delete” “Activating Folder lock Unable to delete”	● There is a lock on the inbox and outbox as a whole, or on folders using mail-linked i-αppli, so the mail-linked i-αppli and the folders using them cannot be deleted. To delete the mail-linked i-αppli and the folders using them, release the Box or Folder lock. If you delete only the mail-linked i-αppli, a message will be displayed asking whether to delete the corresponding mail folders dedicated to that i-αppli. Select “NO”.	p.138
“Attached file is deleted”	● This message appears when an i-mode message received that you attempt to quote to send a reply has any file attached. It is also displayed if you attempt to forward an i-mode mail that has a file attached that is prohibited from being attached to mail or output from the FOMA terminal. The attached file is deleted when you press ●.	—
“Authentication cancelled (401)”	● This is displayed when the Cancel button is pressed on the Authentication screen.	—
“Authentication type not supported (401)”	● This is displayed when authentication fails. Press ● to return to the original page.	—
“Box lock is set Unable to delete” “Folder lock is set Unable to delete”	● Inbox/Outbox or mail-linked i-αppli folder is locked, and mail-linked i-αppli and its folder cannot be deleted. To delete them, unlock the box or folder. To delete mail-linked i-αppli only, select “NO” when a message appears asking whether to delete its folder.	p.138
“Box lock is set Unable to download” “Folder lock is set Unable to download”	● Inbox/Outbox or mail-linked i-αppli folder is locked, and mail-linked i-αppli cannot be downloaded/upgraded. To download/upgrade, unlock the box or folder.	p.138
“Cannot dial by Number B in abroad. Dial by Number A”	● This is displayed when the 2in1 mode is set to B mode and you attempted to make a call while overseas. Select OFF for “Caller ID Notification” to make calls without caller ID with Number A.	—
“Cannot download because the IC card is full. Delete a service?” “Cannot upgrade version because the IC card is full. Delete a service?” “Cannot start because the IC card is full. Delete a service?”	● This is displayed when an Osaifu Keitai-related i-αppli is downloaded or activated from a microSD memory card but there is not enough data capacity left on the IC card. Select “YES” to display a list of the Osaifu Keitai service names already registered, the space (bytes) which would be freed by deleting each service, and the size of the capacity shortage. Select one or more services to delete, then follow the messages to start an i-αppli to delete them.	—

Error Message	Explanation and Solution	Ref. page
“Cannot download because UIM information does not match” “Cannot move because UIM information does not match” “Cannot save because UIM information does not match” “Cannot start because UIM information does not match” “Cannot delete because UIM information does not match” “Cannot backup because UIM information does not match”	● This is displayed when the inserted UIM does not match the UIM information registered for FeliCa and i-αppli activates from a microSD memory card.	—
“Cannot reset by this Ext. IC card”	● This is displayed when you put the FeliCa mark close to an unregistered contactless IC card during user authentication with the IC card authentication function.	p.135
“Cannot save attached file”	● This is displayed when a mail is received with an attached file that cannot be registered for Receive Ir data, cable connection communication or copying from microSD memory card.	—
“Cannot set this schedule”	● This is displayed when you have attempted to use “Copy & add this” on a schedule item with the same date and time as an existing item, or if you have received such a schedule item via infrared or iC exchange or cable connection.	—
“Cannot start while reading the FOMA card (UIM)”	● This is displayed when you attempt an operation related to the UIM while it is being read. Please try again later.	—
“Cannot start while talking” “Cannot operate while talking”	● This is displayed if you attempt an operation that is not possible while talking.	p.337 p.422 p.423
“Cannot use because of a different FOMA card (UIM)”	● This is displayed when you select and attempt to run a desktop icon for data that is protected by FOMA card operational restriction. ● This is displayed when you select and attempt to run a screen memo or MessageR/F that is protected by FOMA card (UIM) operational restriction.	p.40 p.40
“Cannot use PushTalk in Number B records”	● This message appears when 2in1 is in Dual mode and trying to make a PushTalk call from Number B Dialed calls/Received calls/ Redial.	—
“Cannot use PushTalk in Number B”	● “2in1/Multi Num.” under “Dial setting” in Phonebook detail function menu is set to “Number B”. Change it to “Number A” then retry.	p.93
“Caution! A telephone number or URL is written in this message. Be careful if you do not know the sender”	● This is displayed if Message Scan is turned on under Scan functions and you are about to display an SMS which contains a telephone number of URL in the text. Check the sender, then press ● to display the text of the SMS.	p.450
“Certificate is rejected (tampered)”	● This is displayed when an altered SSL certificate has been received. An SSL communication cannot be established with this site.	—
“Certificate is rejected (tampered)”	● This is displayed when an altered SSL/TLS certificate has been received. An SSL/TLS communication cannot be established with this site.	—
“Channel is not searched”	● Available channels could not be found.	—
“Character count exceeded. Delete text to an allowable size”	● The combined double-byte character count for the main text and quotation symbols in a reply-with-quote i-mode mail exceeds 5,000 characters. Delete text to bring the count to 5,000 double-byte characters or less.	—

Continued on next page

Error Message	Explanation and Solution	Ref. page
“Check new messages is set all OFF”	● New messages cannot be checked because none of the items is selected in “Set check new messages”. Select items to check in “Set check new messages”.	p.213
“Connection failed (403)”	● Connection to the site failed for some reason. Retry connection.	—
“Connection failed”	● This is displayed when the host settings are incorrect. Set the host correctly, using “Host selection” under Connection setting. ● Connection to i-mode failed for some reason. Retry connection.	p.180 —
“Connection failed”	● Set “Caller ID Notification” to “ON” and retry.	p.48
“Connection interrupted”	● i-mode connection was interrupted due to poor reception. Move to a location where the reception is good before using the i-mode service. ● If this message appears when the signal is strong and the “  ” mark is displayed, the connected site is very busy. Retry later.	p.166 —
“Continue using the i-αppli and communication?”	● This is displayed when you selected “NO” or “Terminate i-αppli” in response to “The number of i-αppli communications is large. Continue communication?” Select “YES” to continue i-αppli communication. Select “Terminate i-αppli” to stop using the i-αppli.	—
“Could not read”	● Copying could not be completed, for some reason. Replace with a different microSD card and try to copy again.	—
“Could not start because of a different FOMA card (UIM)”	● This is displayed when an i-αppli that is restricted by FOMA card operational restriction attempted to start automatically.	p.40
“Could not start the specified software because of a different FOMA card (UIM)”	● This is displayed when you specify and attempt to start an i-αppli that is restricted by FOMA card operational restriction.	p.40
“Data is too long A part is deleted”	● The size of address, subject or text or more than one data exceeds the maximum, and the Compose message screen appears with the excess part deleted.	—
“Data transmission is frequent Press CLR and confirm data transmission”	● This is displayed when the number of communications from an i-αppli standby screen becomes very large within a certain period. Press CLR to select whether or not to permit communications from the i-αppli standby display, or to close the i-αppli standby display.	p.238
“Dial/Receive calls activating Original lock”	● This is displayed when you have attempted a prohibited operation while the original lock is applied to “Dial/sending mail” and to “Incoming/Mail disp.”.	p.133
“Download failed”	● This is displayed when a download of a melody, Chara-den or download dictionary suffered a communication error or improper data.	—
(During Infrared Data Exchange/iC Exchange) “No response Retry?”	● The receiving terminal cannot be found/detected. If Ir communication is used, make sure the Ir ports are facing each other. If iC exchange is used, check the FeliCa marks and place them together again. You can select “YES”, then press ● to try again.	p.307 p.309
“Editing now Cannot delete”	● This is displayed if you attempt to delete a mail message saved in the Save box while it is being edited.	—
“Enter correct Network Security Code”	● This is displayed when an incorrect network security code was input for a function which requires network security code entry. Enter the correct network security code.	p.124
“Error in image Does not work correctly”	● This is displayed when a Flash movie cannot be played due to an error found in the data.	—

Error Message	Explanation and Solution	Ref. page
“Error Register forwarding number”	● This message appears when you have subscribed to the Call Forwarding service and attempt to forward an incoming call by selecting “Call Forwarding” from the function menu without setting the forwarding number.	p.374
“Eternal IC card not found”	● This is displayed when the IC card authentication function was used for user authentication, but authentication timed out and failed.	p.135
“Failed to Copy all”	● Copying could not be complete, for some reason. Replace with a different microSD card and try to copy again.	—
“Failed to Copy this”	● Copying could not be completed, for some reason. Replace with a different microSD card and try to copy again.	—
“For security, the i-αppli standby screen was canceled” “Closed due to security error”	● This is displayed when an i-αppli or i-αppli standby screen (including i-αppli DX) was closed because you attempted to perform an unauthorized operation.	p.232 p.238
“Format microSD for your phone”	● There is an error such as a microSD memory card that has not been initialized. Reformat the microSD memory card.	p.301
“Input error (205)”	● This is displayed after you input and send data from a site of Internet homepage. Press ● to cancel the input text or settings (The set or input content has been sent, so this operation does not cancel the transmission).	—
“Insert the FOMA card (UIM)”	● This is displayed when the UIM is not inserted correctly, or could be broken. Check that the FOMA card is inserted correctly.	p.39
“Interrupted because maximum number of frames exceeded”	● The webpage cannot be displayed because the frame count exceeds the maximum that can be displayed on Full Browser or picsel browser.	—
“Invalid address”	● The address contains a “,” and is invalid. Delete “,”. ● Mail cannot be replied to because the address of the received mail exceeds 50 single-byte characters. ● SMS cannot be sent because the address includes characters other than numerals, “#” and “✱”. Delete characters and spaces other than numerals, “#” and “✱”.	— — —
“Invalid URL”	● This is displayed when you entered a URL using “Enter URL” or “Home URL”, but it began with something other than “http://” or “https://”, or you selected OK without any input. Enter the URL again.	p.172 p.180 p.264
“Is the ToruCa automatic reading function in a mobile phone used through the reader/writer?”	● This is displayed if you swiped the FeliCa mark over a reader with “Auto reading setting” set to “OFF”. Select “YES” to use the automatic reading function.	p.246
“Limited Unable to view”	● Cannot view limited broadcast.	—
“Maximum size exceeded. Cannot receive (452)”	● This is displayed when data being received cannot be received because it exceeds the maximum size.	—
“Memory full Cannot move”	● This is displayed when you try to move data out of a secret folder but the destination folder is full. Delete data from the destination folder, then move the data again.	p.130
“Memory No. XXXX cannot rewrite”	● This is displayed when you are not in Secret mode or Secret data only mode, but you try to register the same phone number as a secret data memory number in the phonebook.	p.127
“Memory shortage Quit”	● The process is interrupted due to memory shortage. When you are composing an i-mode mail, the number of tasks running and the combination of characters may make it impossible to input as many as 5,000 double-byte characters.	—

Continued on next page

Error Message	Explanation and Solution	Ref. page
“Memory shortage Return to i-mode menu”	● The process is interrupted due to memory shortage. Press ● to return to the i-mode menu.	—
“Memory shortage Return to Standard type menu” “Memory shortage Return to View type menu”	● The process is interrupted due to memory shortage. Press ● to go back to the standard-type or viewer-type menu screen.	—
“Memory shortage”	● This is displayed when the software cannot be launched due to memory shortage. ● Operation is interrupted due to memory shortage. If this message often appears, reboot handset.	— —
“Message too long to add header & signature”	● This is displayed when you are forwarding i-mode mail, but it was not possible to automatically paste the header/signature because they would cause the character count to exceed the limit of 5,000 double-byte characters.	—
“Message too long to add header”	● This is displayed when the character count of the text and header in total exceeds 5,000 double-byte characters and the header cannot be added.	—
“Message too long to add signature”	● The signature cannot be pasted because the total of main text and signature would exceed 5,000 double-byte characters.	—
“No Channel information”	● No channel information. Cannot compose recommended mail.	—
“No contract for this service”	● The i-mode service is not available because you have not subscribed to the service. A separate subscription is required to use the service. ● If you had started using the FOMA terminal before you subscribed to i-mode, turn the FOMA terminal off and then turn it back on.	— —
“No data”	● This is displayed if there is no phonebook entry that matches the search conditions when you perform Phonebook search.	—
“No microSD inserted”	● The microSD memory card is not inserted correctly, or may be broken. Check that the microSD memory card is correctly inserted into the FOMA terminal.	p.291
“No more functions can be started”	● Close another function before continuing the operation.	—
“No requested data Delete this desktop icon?”	● This is displayed when you select the desktop icon for data that has been deleted and attempt to start it.	—
“No requested software”	● It is displayed when an i-αppli is started from mail, Send Ir data function, barcode reader, IC card or data broadcast, and the relevant software is absent.	—
“No response (408)”	● There was no response from the site, and communication was cut off. Retry connection.	—
“No Switch”	● This is displayed when you cannot switch to a videophone call during a voice call because the other party is establishing a packet communication (including i-mode). Check the other party’s status and retry.	p.53
“No User Certificate. Continue?”	● User Certificate has not been downloaded. It may be possible to display the site by selecting “YES”, but for some sites it may be impossible to continue.	p.181
“No “i-αppli To” setting”	● This is displayed when you attempted to start software from a site, mail, Send Ir data, barcode reader, IC card, ToruCa or data broadcast, but the software could not start because the specified software has no association permission.	p.237

Error Message	Explanation and Solution	Ref. page
“Not correspond contents”	● The information acquired by the bar code reader includes content not supported by this FOMA terminal, so it cannot be recognized.	—
“Omakase lock is engaged”	● Omakase lock is set. While Omakase Lock is set, all key operations are locked except receiving a voice call/videophone call and turning the power on/off.	p.127
“Other function active Cannot start” “Other function active Cannot operate”	● This is displayed when you attempt an unavailable operation when another function is running.	—
“Out of service area”	● This is displayed when you attempt to use an i-mode service outside the service area, or where the radio waves do not reach. Move to a place where “  ” is displayed, then use the i-mode service.	p.46
“Page is not found (404)”	● The site is not found. It may not exist.	—
“Password is not correct (401)”	● This is displayed when the authentication did not go through on the “Authentication” or “Re-authentication” screen. Select “YES” to retry authentication.	—
“Please wait (packet)”	● The packet communication device may be malfunctioning. Otherwise, the packet communication network may be congested. Retry later.	—
“Please wait”	● The voice line or packet communication device may be malfunctioning. Otherwise, the voice line/packet communication network may be congested. Attempt to use a voice call, videophone call or i-mode later. You can still make an emergency call (110, 119 and 118). However, you may not be connected depending on the condition.	—
“Preparing Cannot record”	● Cannot record immediately after recording is finished. Retry later.	—
“PushTalk is not usable in B mode”	● 2in1 mode is set to B mode, PushTalk is not available. Change to A mode, then proceed.	p.380
“Receiving failed Channel information cannot display”	● This is displayed when you display the channel list screen for the first time after purchase or when you attempt to display the channel list screen after resetting the i-Channel, changing the i-Channel host URL, initializing the FOMA terminal or exchanging the FOMA card (UIM), and then if i-Channel information cannot be obtained. Move to a location where “  ” is displayed, then display the channel list screen again.	p.185
“Replay period has expired”	● This is displayed when you select and attempt to run the desktop icon for an i-motion which has finished its play duration or play time limit.	—
“Root certificate has expired Do you connect?”	● This is displayed when an SSL server certificate out of the validity period has been received. Select “YES” to connect. Otherwise, select “NO”. ● This is displayed when there was a request for a client certificate during connection to site of Internet page that uses SSL communication.	— p.169
“Root certificate is not valid”	● This message appears when you receive an SSL/TLS certificate with the “Certificate” set to “Invalid”. Check the contents of the certificate, set the certificate to valid and reconnect.	p.181
“Root certificate is not valid”	● This is displayed when a certificate is received that is rendered invalid by Certificate settings. Check the content of the certificate, then set it as valid before trying to reconnect.	p.181

Continued on next page

Error Message	Explanation and Solution	Ref. page
“Service is used by the previous software Unable to download Delete a service?” “Service is used by the previous software Unable to move Delete a service?” “Service is used by the previous software Unable to update Delete a service?”	● When the same service has been already downloaded, you cannot download, upgrade or move new service from a microSD memory card unless you delete the existing service. If you select “YES”, the service subject to deletion is displayed. Delete the previously registered service.	—
“Service space is full. Tracks for overwritten services can no longer be played. Overwrite?”	● This is displayed if a limit has been exceeded on the number of music services which can be registered (member services). Select “YES” to overwrite service with the oldest playback time limit. Music downloaded from the overwritten service can no longer be played.	—
“Size of this page is not supported”	● The size of the data downloaded from a website (via i-mode, Full Browser or pixel browser) or Internet webpage exceeds the maximum of one page. The download is interrupted, and only the downloaded data is displayed. ● This message appears when the limit is exceeded while downloading a melody, download dictionary or Chara-den character.	— —
“Software is stopped because of error”	● This is displayed when software is running but suffers an error that prevents it from functioning further.	—
“Some addresses are invalid”	● This is displayed when you attempt to reply to two or more addresses but not all addresses are valid.	—
“Some attached file will be deleted”	● A file is attached to the i-mode mail you are going to forward that is prohibited from being attached to mail or output from the FOMA terminal. Press ● to delete the file that is prohibited from being attached to mail or output from the FOMA terminal.	—
“Some mail not sent (561)”	● Mail could not be sent correctly to some recipients.	—
“SSL session cannot be established”	● This is displayed when it was not possible to connect to a site or Internet page that uses SSL communication. Retry connection.	—
“SSL session failed”	● This is displayed when an authentication error occurred during SSL communication, causing interruption.	—
“SSL/TLS session failed”	● This message appears when an SSL communication is interrupted due to an error occurring during authentication for an SSL/TLS connection.	—
“Syntax error” “Syntax error (XXX)”	● The received data contains an error and cannot be displayed. The received data is discarded. A number indicating the contents of an error may appear in “XXX”.	—
“The number of i-αppli communications is large. Continue communication?”	● This is displayed when the number of communications when using an i-αppli becomes very large within a certain period. Select “Yes” to carry on i-αppli communication, or “No” to stop communication. Select “Terminate i-αppli” to stop using the i-αppli.	—
“The number of people able to talk simultaneously has exceeded four”	● This is displayed when you select five or more members and then dial. Dial again after selecting not more than four members.	—
“The PIN1 code is locked”	● When the PIN1 code is locked, this message is displayed when the power is switched on. Press ● to display the input screen for the PIN lock release code, then enter the PIN lock release code correctly to unlock.	p.125

Error Message	Explanation and Solution	Ref. page
“The PIN1 lock release code is locked”	● This is displayed when you turn on the power and attempt a UIM-related operation while the PUK code is locked. Contact the DoCoMo service counter.	p.124
“The playback period has expired. Delete?”	● This is displayed when you attempt to play an i-motion or Chaku-Uta-Full® for which the playback period has expired. Select “YES” to delete.	—
“The relevant software has been deleted. Check inside the folder”	● The software cannot be launched because the mail-linked i-αppli corresponding to the selected mail folder is deleted. Select a message contained in the folder from the function menu.	p.206
“This certificate is not valid for this URL Do you connect?”	● This is displayed when the CN (name) of an SSL certificate does not match. Select “YES” to connect. Otherwise, select “NO”.	—
“This data is not supported by this phone”	● This is displayed when an i-motion could not be acquired due to incompatible non-i-motion data.	—
“This data may not be replayed”	● This is displayed when the format of the acquired i-motion is not MP4 (Mobile MP4).	—
“This function cannot be used with phonebook data when the 2in1 setting is B”	● The “Phonebook 2in1 setting” for Phonebook data is “B”, so PushTalk calls cannot be made. Switch the Phonebook 2in1 setting to “A”, then proceed.	p.380
“This i-motion has reached the limit of plays”	● This is displayed when you select and attempt to run the desktop icon for an i-motion which has finished its number of plays.	—
“This site is not certified. Do you connect?”	● This is displayed when an unsupported SSL certificate is received. Select “YES” to connect. Otherwise, select “NO”.	—
“This site may not be certified. Do you connect?”	● This is displayed when an SSL server certificate is received that has expired, or has not reached its period of validity. Select “YES” to connect. Otherwise, select “NO”. ● This is displayed when you try to connect to a site or Internet page that uses SSL communication, if you have not made the “Set main time” setting. Make the “Set main time” setting.	— p.47
“This software contains an error” “This software contains an error Unable to download” “This software contains an error Unable to update”	● This is displayed when the software cannot be downloaded, updated or moved from a microSD memory card because its data is inaccurate.	—
“This software is not supported by this phone”	● This is displayed when the acquired software cannot be downloaded or moved from a microSD memory card because it is not compatible with this FOMA terminal.	—
“This UIM cannot be recognized”	● This is displayed when a UIM that cannot be used in this FOMA terminal may have been inserted. Check that the right FOMA card (UIM) is inserted.	p.41
“Too much data was entered”	● Too many characters are entered, and the data cannot be sent. Reduce the number of characters before trying to resend.	p.170
“Transmitting the manufacturer numbers of the mobile phone/ UIM”	● This may be displayed during viewing of an Internet page or other site. Select “YES” to send your mobile phone manufacturer number. Otherwise, select “NO”.	p.168
“Unable to connect within the set time”	● Accessing a site or sending a message was interrupted because the time, which is set in “Set connection timeout”, has elapsed. Retry later.	p.180
“Unable to obtain data due to replay restriction data error”	● The playback period of playback limit for a partially-acquired Chaku-Uta-Full® has expired, so the remaining data cannot be acquired. The partially saved data will be deleted.	—
“Unable to receive”	● This is displayed when you attempt to obtain data and a data error or communication error occurs.	—

Continued on next page

Error Message	Explanation and Solution	Ref. page
“Unable to retrieve the requested URL (504)”	● Connection to the site failed for some reason. Retry connection.	—
“Unable to support this card”	● The FOMA terminal does not support this microSD memory card. Use a compatible microSD memory card.	p.291
“Upper limit has been exceeded. Connection failed”	● The upper limit set for a Limit billing plan (Type Limit and Family Wide Limit) is exceeded.	—
“URL address changed (301)”	● The URL has changed because the site has been relocated. If the URL was registered as a bookmark, desktop icon or home URL, re-register it.	p.115 p.173 p.180 p.268
“URL is too long to register”	● The URL exceeds 256 single-byte characters, so the bookmark or URL cannot be registered.	—
“Usage is currently restricted Try again later”	● This is displayed if an extremely high volume of data communication occurred within a certain period while using a flat-rate i-mode packet service. Connection may become impossible for a period, so try to use i-mode again later.	—
“User Certificate has expired. Continue?”	● The site requested a User Certificate, but the certificate has expired. It may be possible to display the site by selecting “YES”, but you are advised to download a new User Certificate.	p.181
“Wrong password”	● This is displayed when an incorrect password was entered on the password entry screen in order to display or download PDF data.	p.176 p.311
“Wrong security code” “The security code has 4-8 digits”	● This is displayed when an incorrect security code was input for a function which requires security code entry. Enter the correct security code.	p.124
“You are advised to replace the microSD or run checkdisk”	● Run checkdisk on the microSD memory card.	p.296
“You have used the allowable number of plays. Delete?”	● This is displayed when you attempt to play an i-motion or Chaku-Uta-Full® which has finished its number of plays. Select “YES” to delete.	—
“Your certificate is requested Send your certificate?”	● The site has requested a User Certificate. Select “YES” to send the User Certificate or “No” to avoid sending it.	—
“●▲■.ne.jp” 宛のメールが混み合っているため、送信できません (555) Unable to send. “●▲■.ne.jp” is not available temporarily.” * Domain name indication differs according to the recipient.	● The telephone lines are down or extremely busy. Please try again later.	—

Warranty and After-Sales Service

Warranty

- Make sure that the warranty card is included with your FOMA terminal at the time of purchase. Check the contents, the information about “the shop or date of purchase”, etc. and keep the card in a safe place. If the card does not contain necessary information, immediately contact the shop and request them to fill in the card. The warranty period is one year from the date of purchase.
- The whole or part of the product, including its accessories, is subject to improvement without notice.
- The stored data such as phonebook entries may be altered or lost through the damage, repair or improper use of the FOMA terminal. It is recommended to take notes of the stored data such as phonebook entries just in case. Repairing the FOMA terminal cannot transfer most of the data downloaded via i-mode or i-αppli, complying with the copyright law.
  * With this FOMA terminal, you can save the data such as the phonebook to the microSD memory card.
  * With this FOMA terminal, you can save the data used with i-motion or i-αppli to the microSD memory card.
  * With this FOMA terminal, you can keep the data such as the phonebook at the Data Security Center by using the Data Security Service (a pay service you need subscription).
  * If you have a PC, you can transfer the data to your PC by using the DoCoMo keitai datalink (p.389), the FOMA USB Cable (optional) and the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 (Optional), then back up the data on the PC.

After-sales service

● If you have problems with your FOMA terminal

Before having your FOMA terminal repaired, see the “Malfunction Checklist” in this manual.
If you still have problems, call at the technical inquiries number described on the back of the manual.

● If, after contacting DoCoMo, you are informed that your FOMA terminal is in need of repairs

Take your FOMA terminal to a designated repair shop. The repair shop is only open during business hours. Remember to take your warranty card with you.

■ During the warranty period

- The FOMA terminal will be repaired free of charge in accordance with our written warranty policy.
- Make sure to take the warranty card with you when having your FOMA terminal repaired. Even during the warranty period, a charge will be made for the repair if you cannot show the warranty card or if the malfunction or damage has resulted from improper use.
- Even during the warranty period, a charge will be made for the repair if the malfunction has resulted from the use of devices or consumables that are not specified by NTT DoCoMo.
- A charge will be made for repairs in the event of damage to the LCD screen, connectors and similar components after purchase.

■ The FOMA terminal may not be able to be repaired

The FOMA terminal may be unable to be repaired if the water reaction is found on the seal, if corrosion is found to result from water exposure, condensation or perspiration, or if the internal board is damaged or deformed. Even if the FOMA terminal can be repaired, a charge will be made as the repair is not under warranty.

■ After the warranty period has expired

You can request to have your FOMA terminal repaired, although a charge will be made for the repair.

Continued on next page

■Stock period of parts

Replacement parts (required for maintaining the functionality of the FOMA terminal) will be kept in stock basically for minimum of 6 years following the termination of production. However, the FOMA terminal may not be able to be repaired due to the lack of parts depending on the damaged parts. The repair may still be able to be performed even after the stock period has expired. Call at the technical inquiries number described on the back of the manual.

■Important

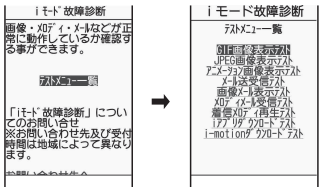
- Do not attempt to adapt the FOMA terminal or its accessories by yourself.
  - Doing so may cause fire, injury or malfunction.
  - Repairs to damage caused by modifications to the terminal will be accepted on the condition that the customer agrees to the said modifications being restored to their original condition. We reserve the right to reject your repair request, depending on the type of modification.
    The following will be deemed to be modifications:
    - Labels etc. affixed to the screen or keys.
    - Decorations to the FOMA terminal involving the use of adhesives.
    - Replacement of the exterior etc. of the terminal with non-DoCoMo components.
  - Even during the warranty period, a charge will be made for the repair if the malfunction or damage has resulted from modification.
- Do not peel off the model name seal attached to the FOMA terminal.
  The model name seal plays the part of the certificate verifying that the FOMA terminal complies with the technical standard. If the seal cannot be confirmed because it has been peeled off or replaced, the conformity to the technical standard cannot be judged, and then the repair may be unable to be accepted.
- The settings of the functions or the information about total call time may be cleared (reset) due to the damage, repair or improper use of the FOMA terminal. In this case, specify the settings again.
- Magnetic components are used for the following parts of the FOMA terminal. A cash card (ATM card, bank card), etc. which is easily affected by magnetism, may become unusable if it is kept close to the components:
  Speaker, earpiece speaker, near indicator display.
- If your FOMA terminal gets wet or moist, immediately turn it off, remove the battery pack, and take the FOMA terminal to the repair shop as soon as possible. Note that the FOMA terminal may be unable to be repaired depending on the condition.

Memory dial (phonebook function) and downloaded information

- It is your responsibility to keep a separate record of all data stored on your FOMA terminal. NTT DoCoMo disclaims any responsibility for alteration or loss of data.
- The data you created, imported or downloaded may be modified or lost when you change the mobile phone model or send the FOMA terminal to repair. NTT DoCoMo accepts no liability whatsoever for any modification to or loss of such data. NTT DoCoMo may send you a replacement of your FOMA terminal, instead of renovation. The data which contains the images and ring tones downloaded to the FOMA terminal, and the user created data are transferred to the replacement only when the FOMA terminal is repaired (some contents cannot be transferred. The data may not be transferred depending on the damage).
  * It may take time to transfer the data or the data may not be transferred depending on the amount of the data stored on the FOMA terminal.

i-mode Malfunction Check Site

You can check if sending/receiving mails, downloading images/melodies or other operations are normally performed on the FOMA terminal by yourself.



Top　　Test menu

- Connecting to “i-mode Malfunction Check Site” (Only in Japanese)
  - ▶“iMenu”▶“お知らせ” (Information)▶“サービス・機能” (Service & Function)▶“ｉモード” (i-mode)▶“ｉモード故障診断” (i-mode malfunction check)

QR code for connecting to the site

- Packet communication charge is not charged for the i-mode malfunction check site.
  * Charges apply when accessing from overseas.
- Test items vary depending on the FOMA terminal models. Also, the test items are subject to change.
- To check the operation with each test item, read the notes on the site carefully before performing test.
- When connecting to the i-mode malfunction check site or testing the mail sending, information specific to your FOMA terminal (model, mail address, etc.) is automatically sent to the server (i-mode malfunction check server). The information sent to DoCoMo is not used for any other purpose than i-mode malfunction checking.
- When there seems to be a malfunction as a result of the checking, contact the inquiries number provided on the back of this manual.

Updating Software

<Software Update>

Check whether it is necessary to update software on the FOMA terminal. Download and update the software via packet communication if necessary.
You will be notified of the update in the DoCoMo website or in “News” of iMenu.

- A charge will not be made for the packet communication to update the software.
- There are three ways to update: Automatic update, Now update and Reserved update.
  Automatic update: The new software is downloaded automatically and overwritten at the preset time.
  Now update: Updates immediately.
  Reserved update: Updates automatically on the date and time you specified.
- You can update the software if the i-mode host is set as the user defined host.
- Updating the software (downloading and installing) may take some time.
- When you update the software, an SSL connection is established with the server (the software update server managed by NTT DoCoMo). Validate the certificate beforehand (default: Valid. Setup method→p.181).
- Before updating the software, charge the battery to the full.
- It is recommended that you update the software staying in a place where the reception is good (three bars for the antenna icon).

Continued on next page

* If the reception becomes poor and then the download is interrupted, try to update again in a place where the reception is good.

- Updating the software with the “PIN1 code entry set” set to “ON” displays the PIN1 code entry screen in the automatic restart after installing the software. You cannot make or receive a call or use other communication functions if you do not enter the correct PIN1 code.
- You cannot download software for Software Update:
  - When FOMA card (UIM) is not inserted
  - When FOMA card (UIM) is invalid
  - When PIN lock is active
  - When PUK code is locked
  - When date and time is not set
  - When Omakase lock is active
  - In Self-mode
  - When out of range
  - When packet communication is restricted
  - When a mova terminal is used for Dual Network service
  - During 64K data communication

  If Reserve time is reached while using another function, download starts after the function is finished (Cannot start depending on the function).
- You cannot rewrite Software Update:
  - When Omakase lock is active
  - When using another function

  If Rewrite start fails, rewrite is retried at auto-update time (next day or in a week).
- You cannot make or receive calls or use communication or other functions while updating software. However, you can receive voice calls while downloading.
- If the software has already been updated, “No update is needed Please continue to use as before” is displayed when you check for new software updates.
- After updating the software, the displayed i-mode Center storage status icon disappears. Also, if the receive option is set to “ON” and mail is received while updating the software, the mail notification screen may not be displayed after the software has been updated.
- When you update the software, information specific to your FOMA terminal (model, manufacturer number, etc.) is automatically sent to the server (the server for software updates managed by NTT DoCoMo). The information sent to NTT DoCoMo is not used for any other purpose than updating the software.
- If the software download fails, “Rewrite failed” is displayed and you cannot operate the FOMA terminal. If this happens, take your FOMA terminal to a designated repair shop.
- Software update cannot be used overseas.

NOTE

- Do not remove the battery pack while updating the software. Doing so may cause the update to fail.
- It is possible to perform software updates while keeping your Phonebook entries, camera images, downloaded data and other data saved on the FOMA terminal intact. However, note that in some cases data cannot be protected depending on the condition of your terminal (malfunction, damage, water exposure, etc.). It is recommended that you back up important data. However, note that some data such as downloaded data may not be able to be backed up.
- In case of Now update or Reserve update, when the software update is completed without operation for confirmation, you will see the desktop icon “ ” (Update complete) on the standby screen. Select “ ” and enter the security code to see the detail results of the update.

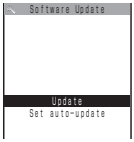
Perform Software update automatically

<Auto-update>

The new software is downloaded automatically and rewritten at the preset time. When rewriting is possible, UPDATE (the rewrite warning icon) is displayed on the standby screen. Check the time of the update. You can change the time, or order immediate rewrite.

● The default setting is Auto-update (date: unspecified, time: 03:00).

1 MENU/MULTI ▶**“Settings”**▶**“Other settings”**▶**“Software Update”**▶
Enter your security code



Software Update function list

2 **“Set auto-update”**▶**“Auto-update”**▶✉ **(set)**

The new software is automatically downloaded, and UPDATE (the rewrite warning icon) is displayed on the stand-by screen.

■ **To change the date and time for updates**

▶Select and set “Date” or “Time”▶✉ (Set)

■ **To set for notification of updates only**

▶Select “Only notification”▶✉ (Set)

If a software update is necessary, UPDATE (the update notification icon) is displayed on the stand-by screen.

■ **To leave auto-update set to off**

▶Select “Disable”▶✉ (Set)▶“Yes”

3 **On the standby screen**▶●▶“UPDATE”

Rewrite start time appears.



4 **“OK”**

“UPDATE” disappears.

Updating begins at the scheduled time.→p.447

■ **To change the time of the update**

▶Select “Change”▶✉ (Set)

■ **To run the software update immediately**

▶Select “Now rewrite”

Proceed to step 2 in “Update your software now” (p.448).

NOTE

● UPDATE (Update notification icon) appears when there is a notification from DoCoMo or update fails.

Running Software Update

To run Software Update, you can select the UPDATE (Update notification icon) that appears on the standby screen or from the menu screen.

● Select UPDATE (Update notification icon) and run Software update

1 **On the standby screen**▶●▶“UPDATE”

2 **“YES”**

■ **To delete UPDATE without running Software Update**

▶“NO”▶“YES”



Continued on next page

3 Enter your security code▶Check whether software update is required

At this stage, information specific to your FOMA terminal is sent to the server.

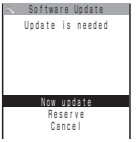
4 The check result appears

■ **When “Update is needed” appears**

▶Select “Now update” or “Reserve”

Select “Now update” to update the software immediately.→p.446

Select “Reserve” to update on the set time.→p.447



Check result

■ **When “No update is needed” appears**

▶“OK”

Continue using the FOMA terminal as there is no need to update the software.



● Running Software Update from the menu

1 MENU/MULTI▶“Settings”▶“Other settings”▶“Software Update”▶Enter your security code

The Software Update function list screen (p.445) appears.

2 “Update”

Proceed to step 3 (p.446) in “Select CHG UPDATE and run Software Update”.

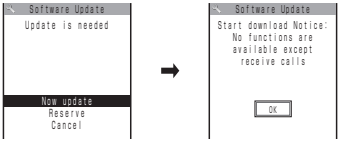
Updating software immediately

<Immediate update>

1 Check result screen (p.446)▶“Now update”▶Select “OK” when “Start download Notice” is displayed

Downloading starts immediately.

Download starts after a while, even if you do not select “OK”.

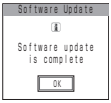


2 When the download ends and “Starting to rewrite” appears, “OK”

The software starts rewriting.
Rewrite starts after a while, even if you do not select “OK”. It may take time to start rewriting.



All keys are disabled during software rewriting. You cannot stop rewriting either.
When the software is rewritten, the FOMA terminal will reload automatically.
After reloading, when “Software update is complete” is displayed, select “OK”.
Software update is completed.



NOTE

- The screen on the right may be displayed if the server is busy.
  In this case, select “Reserve” to perform the reserved update.
- If you stop downloading before the download is completed, the data that has been downloaded until then is deleted.
- Even if the power is switched off during rewriting, it resumes when power is restored.
- Once you start downloading, the update starts automatically with no need of selecting any item such as menu.
- “Software update is complete” does not appear for Auto-update after rewritten.



Selecting the reservation date and time to update software

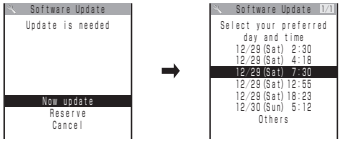
<Reserved update>

If it takes a long time to download or when the server is busy, you can select the time to startup Software update by communicating with the server beforehand.

<Example: Reserving at 7:30 AM on 29th of December (Saturday)>

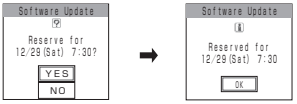
1 Check result screen (p.446)▶“Reserve”▶Select the date and time

■ **If there is no date and time you do want to reserve**
▶“Others”→p.448



Continued on next page

2 Check the selected date and time▶“YES”▶“OK”



The software update is reserved.

■ To change the date and/or time
▶“NO”

● At the scheduled time



The screen on the left appears at the reservation time and the FOMA terminal starts the software update automatically, 5 seconds later. Charge the battery fully, put the FOMA terminal at a location with strong radio wave reception and display the standby screen before the reservation time. The rest of operation is same as “Updating software immediately” (p.446).

NOTE

- The reservation time for the software update will be based on the server's time.
- When the reservation time for the software update is the same as the alarm notification time, priority is assigned to the software update.
- If Reserve time is reached while using another function, download starts after the function is finished.
- If you perform “Initialize” after the reservation procedure is complete, the software update does not start at the scheduled time. Reschedule the time for update.

● If you select “Others”

You can select the desired date and period of time after communicating with the server if you select “Others” at step 1 in p.447.

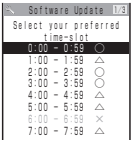
1 Select a desired date



In the date selection display, you will see the update availability represented as shown below:

○ : Available
△ : Almost full
None : Full

2 Select an hour



In the time selection display, you will see the update availability represented as shown below:

○ : Available
△ : Almost full
× : Full

Select the period of time to display the candidates for the reservation time by communicating with the server again.

3 Confirm the software update date and time



If you check the selected date and time and select “YES”, you will communicate with the server again.
The software update is reserved.

● Check, change or cancel the scheduled time

<Example: Canceling the reservation after checking it>

1 MENU/MULTI **▶“Settings”▶“Other settings”▶“Software Update”▶Enter your security code▶“Update”**

2 **“Cancel”**

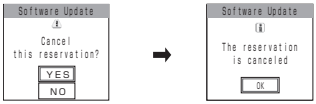


■ **To accept the reservation date and time**
▶“OK”

■ **To change the reservation date and time**
▶“Change”
Once information specific to your FOMA terminal has been sent to the server, follow the procedure used when “Others” is selected. →p.448

3 **When you see the message “Cancel this reservation?”, select “YES”**

At this point, information specific to your FOMA terminal is sent to the server.
NTT DoCoMo will never disclose or forward your FOMA terminal information (model and manufacturer number) to a third party.
After the message “Reservation cancelled” is displayed, select “OK”. Reservation deletion is complete.



Protecting the FOMA Terminal from Harmful Data

<Scanning function>

First, update the pattern data for the latest data.
When the FOMA terminal is downloading external files or programs from sites or i-mode mail, this function scans the data and deletes any data or cancels program activation where the data or the program could cause a fault.

- Pattern data is used for the check. Update the pattern data when it is upgraded because a problem has been detected. →p.450
- The Scanning function prevents the data that causes some fault from invading your FOMA terminal when viewing sites and websites or receiving mail. If the pattern data that fixes the error is not installed on your FOMA terminal or if the pattern data that fixes the fault does not exist, the Scanning function cannot prevent the error from occurring.
- The pattern data varies depending on the model of the FOMA terminal. As a matter of convenience, NTT DoCoMo may discontinue to distribute the pattern data for the model if three years have passed since it is first released.
- Set the date (year, month and day) correctly on the FOMA terminal.
- When the FOMA terminal is updating automatically or when you update the pattern data, information specific to your mobile phone (model, manufacturer number, etc.) is automatically sent to the server (scanning function server managed by NTT DoCoMo). NTT DoCoMo will not use that information for any purpose other than scanning function.
- Update of pattern data will be interrupted if a voice call is received or the FOMA terminal moves out of the service area while updating the pattern data.

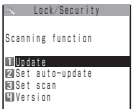
Setting the scanning function

<Set scan>

When the Scanning function is set to “ON”, data and programs are automatically checked when they are executed.
When the message scan is set to “ON”, the message body of SMS is automatically checked.

1 MENU/MULTI ▶**“Settings”▶“Lock/Security”▶“Scanning function”**

The “Scanning function” screen appears.



Scanning function

2 **“Set scan”▶“Scan” or “Message scan”▶“ON”**

■ If a message appears asking whether to change the settings

▶“YES”

* If you enable the Scanning function and it detects potentially harmful data, the event is displayed using one of 5 warning levels. →p.451

NOTE

- The Voice mail notification is not checked even when “Message scan” is set to “ON”.

Updating pattern data

<Pattern data update>

1 **Scanning function screen (p.450)▶“Update”▶“YES” ▶“YES”**

* If no pattern data update is required, the “Pattern definitions are up-to-date” message appears. Continue using your current pattern data.

NOTE

- You cannot update the pattern data when the update information is notified from the network, when other function is activated, or during i-mode communication, packet communication or international roaming.

Updating pattern data automatically

<Set auto-update>

1 **Scanning function screen (p.450)▶“Set auto-update”▶“ON”▶“YES”▶“YES”**

The scanning results display

■ Displaying problems detected by scanning

A list of up to 5 problems detected by the Scanning function is displayed, starting with the highest-level problem. If 6 or more problems were detected, the names of the 6th and subsequent problems are omitted. The rest of the problem elements (sixth and later), of which names are omitted, are displayed as follows:

1 to 9998 : The remaining count is displayed as it is.
9999 or more : “Other: 9999” is displayed regardless of the count.

■ Results of scanning

Warning level 0	Warning level 1	Warning level 2	Warning level 3	Warning level 4
Operation may not run properly	Operation may not run properly Cancel operation?	Operation may not run properly Canceling operation	Operation may not run properly Delete data?	Operation may not run properly Deleting data
◉ (Set)…Continues the operation.	◉ (Cancel)…Stops and cancels the operation. [✉] (Continue)…Continues the operation.	◉ (Set)…Stops and cancels the operation.	[✉] (Delete)…Deletes the data and cancels the operation. ◉ (Back)…Stops and cancels the operation.	◉ (Set)…Deletes the data and cancels the operation.

NOTE

- A message other than the above may appear depending on the condition.

Checking the Pattern Data Version

<Version>

1 **Scanning function screen (p.450)▶“Version”**

Specifications

Items		FOMA N905iμ	
Size		Height 108 mm × Width 50 mm × Thickness 12.9 mm (When folded)	
Weight		Approx. 106g (Battery pack attached)	
Continuous standby time		FOMA/3G: Stationary (“Auto”[*1]): Approx. 630 hours In transit (“3G”[*1]): Approx. 470 hours In transit (“Auto”[*1]): Approx. 390 hours GSM: Stationary (“Auto”[*1]): Approx. 290 hours	
Continuous talk time		FOMA/3G: Voice communications: Approx. 220 min. Videophone: Approx. 110 min. GSM: Voice communications: Approx. 190 min.	
Charging Time		AC Adapter: Approx. 120 min. DC Adapter: Approx. 120 min.	
Color LCD	Type	Display: LTPS_TFT 262,144 colors Indicator Display: Organic EL 1 color	
	Size	Display: Approx. 3.0 inches Indicator display: Approx. 0.8 inches	
	Pixels	Display: 409,920 pixels (480 × 854 dots) Indicator Display: 3,360 pixels (96 × 35 dots)	
Imaging device	Type	Front Camera: CMOS	Rear Camera: CMOS
	Size	Front Camera: 1/8 inches	Rear Camera: 1/4 inches
	Effective Pixels	Front Camera: Approx. 0.33 megapixels	Rear Camera: Approx. 2.00 megapixels
Camera	Maximum Recorded Pixels	Front Camera: Approx. 0.31 megapixels	Rear Camera: Approx. 1.90 megapixels
	Digital Zoom	Front Camera: Up to approx. 2.0X	Rear Camera: Up to approx. 9.1X
Record	Still Image	Approx.1,000 photos[*2]	
	Continuous mode	4 to 20 photos[*3]	
	Still image file type	JPEG	
	Movie record time	Save to terminal: Approx. 272 sec.[*4] Save to microSD memory card (64M bytes): Approx. 120 min.[*4]	
	Movie file type	MP4	
Music Playback	Continuous playback time	i-motion	Approx. 660 min.[*5]
		Chaku-Uta-Full®	Approx. 3,300 min.[*5*6]
		SD-Audio	Approx. 5,100 min.[*5*6]
		Windows Media Audio (WMA) file	Approx. 3,300 min.[*6]
		Music&Video Channel	Approx. 1,380 min. (Voice)[*6] Approx. 240 min. (Video)
Memory	Chaku-Uta®	Approx. 200M bytes[*7*8]	
	Chaku-Uta-Full®		

*1 : When switching network connections, use “3G/GSM setting” (p.397).
*2 : When Select size=SubQCIF (128 × 96), Quality setting=Fine (File size=10K bytes)
*3 : Varies depending on image size.
*4 : Record time for 1 item under the following conditions.
<Phone>
Select size=SubQCIF (128 × 96) Quality setting=Standard File size=2M Movie type set=Normal

<microSD memory card (64M bytes)>
Select size=SubQCIF (128 × 96) Quality setting=Standard File size=Long time Movie type set=Normal

*5 : File type=AAC format
*6 : Background play supported
*7 : Available memories of Secret folder for Chaku-Uta® is up to 10M bytes.
*8 : Shared with images, i-motion, PDF data and Screen memo

Number of Data that can be Stored/ Registered/Protected on the FOMA Terminal

Item		Store/Register	Protect
Phonebook		1,000 max.*1	—
Schedule	Schedule	500	—
	Holiday	100	—
	Anniversary	100	—
To Do list		100	—
Mail (SMS + i-mode)	Received mail	1,000 max.*2*3*4	1,000 max.*2
	Sent mail	400 max.*2*3*4	200 max.*2
	Draft	20 max.*2	—
Area Mail		100 max.	—
Template		45 max.*2*5	—
Message	MessageR	100 max.*2	50 max.*2
	MessageF	100 max.*2	50 max.*2
Bookmark	i-mode	100*6	—
	Full Browser	100*6	—
Screen memo		100 max.*2	50 max.*2
i-αppli		200 max.*2 (5 for mail-linked i-αppli)	—
ToruCa		100 max.*2	—
Still image		1,000 max.*2*4	—
Movie/i-motion		100 max.*2*6	—
Chara-den		10*5	—
Melody		400 max.*2	—
Kisekae Tool		100 max.*2*5	—
PDF data		400 max.*2	—
Music&Video Channel		30 max.*2	—
Music		100 max.*2	—

*1 : Up to 50 phonebooks can be stored on the FOMA card (UIM).
*2 : Actual storable, registerable or protectable counts may be decreased depending on the data size.
*3 : Up to 20 more received or sent SMS messages can be additionally stored on the FOMA card (UIM). →p.304
*4 : Up to 100 items can be additionally stored on the secret folder.
*5 : Pre-installed data are included.
*6 : Up to 10 items can be additionally stored or registered on the secret folder.

Specific Absorption Rate of Mobile Phones, etc.

Specific Absorption Rate (SAR)

This model phone FOMA N905iμ meets the MIC's[*1] technical regulation for exposure to radio waves. The technical regulation established permitted levels of radio frequency energy, based on standards that were developed by independent scientific organizations through periodic and thorough evaluation of scientific studies. The regulation employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR. The SAR limit is 2 watts/kilogram (W/kg)[*2] averaged over ten grams of tissue. The limit includes a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and health. The value of the limit is equal to the international guidelines recommended by ICNIRP[*3].

All phone models should be confirmed to comply with the regulation, before they are available for sale to the public. The highest SAR value for this model phone FOMA N905iμ is 0.871 W/kg. It was taken by the Telecom Engineering Center (TELEC), a Registered Certification Agency on the Radio Law. The test for SAR was conducted in accordance with the MIC testing procedure using standard operating positions with the phone transmitting at its highest permitted power level in all tested frequency bands. While there may be differences between the SAR levels of various phones and at various positions, they all meet the MIC's technical regulation. Although the SAR is determined at the highest certified power level, the actual SAR of the phone during operation can be well below the maximum value.

For further information about SAR, please visit the following websites:

World Health Organization (WHO): http://www.who.int/peh-emf/
ICNIRP: http://www.icnirp.de/
MIC: http://www.tele.soumu.go.jp/e/ele/body/index.htm
TELEC: http://www.telec.or.jp/ENG/Index_e.htm
NTT DoCoMo: http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/english/product/
NEC: http://www.n-keitai.com/lineup/ (in Japanese only)
Association of Radio Industries and Businesses: http://www.arib-emf.org/index.html (in Japanese only)

*1 : Ministry of Internet Affairs and Communications
*2 : The technical regulation is provided in Article 14-2 of the Ministry Ordinance Regulating Radio Equipment.
*3 : International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection

Radio Frequency (RF) Signals

THIS MODEL PHONE MEETS THE U.S. GOVERNMENT'S REQUIREMENTS FOR EXPOSURE TO RADIO WAVES.
Your wireless phone contains a radio transmitter and receiver. Your phone is designed and manufactured not to exceed the emission limits for exposure to radio frequency (RF) energy set by the Federal Communications Commission of the U.S. Government. These limits are part of comprehensive guidelines and establish permitted levels of RF energy for the general population. The guidelines are based on standards that were developed by independent scientific organizations through periodic and thorough evaluation of scientific studies.

The exposure standard for wireless mobile phones employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate (SAR). The SAR limit set by the FCC is 1.6 W/kg.* Tests for SAR are conducted using standard operating positions accepted by the FCC with the phone transmitting at its highest certified power level in all tested frequency bands. Although the SAR is determined at the highest certified power level, the actual SAR level of the phone while operating can be well below the maximum value. This is because the phone is designed to operate at multiple power levels so as to use only the power required to reach the network. In general, the closer you are to a wireless base station antenna, the lower the output.
Before a phone model is available for sale to the public, it must be tested and certified to the FCC that it does not exceed the limit established by the U.S. government-adopted requirement for safe exposure. The tests are performed on position and locations (for example, at the ear and worn on the body) as required by FCC for each model. The highest SAR value for this model phone as reported to the FCC when tested for use at the ear is 0.78 W/kg, and when worn on the body, is 0.288 W/kg. (Body-worn measurements differ among phone models, depending upon available accessories and FCC requirements). While there may be differences between the SAR levels of various phones and at various positions, they all meet the U.S. government requirement.
The FCC has granted an Equipment Authorization for this model phone with all reported SAR levels evaluated as in compliance with the FCC RF exposure guidelines. SAR information on this model phone is on file with the FCC and can be found under the Display Grant section at https://gullfoss2.fcc.gov/oetcf/eas/reports/GenericSearch.cfm after search on FCC ID A98-FOMA-N905IMYU.
For body worn operation, this phone has been tested and meets the FCC RF exposure guidelines when used with an accessory designated for this product or when used with an accessory that contains no metal and that positions the handset a minimum of 1.5 cm from the body.

---

*In the United States, the SAR limit for wireless mobile phones used by the public is 1.6 watts/kg (W/kg) averaged over one gram of tissue. SAR values may vary depending upon national reporting requirements and the network band.

FCC Regulations

This mobile phone complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.
This mobile phone has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation; if this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Declaration of Conformity

The product “FOMA N905iμ” is declared to conform with the essential requirements of European Union Directive 1999/5/EC Radio and Telecommunications Terminal Equipment Directive 3.1(a), 3.1 (b) and 3.2. The Declaration of Conformity can be found on http://www.n-keitai.com/lineup/index.html (Japanese only).

This mobile phone complies with the EU requirements for exposure to radio waves.
Your mobile phone is a radio transceiver, designed and manufactured not to exceed the SAR* limits** for exposure to radio-frequency (RF) energy, which SAR* value, when tested for compliance against the standard was 0.918 W/kg. While there may be differences between the SAR* levels of various phones and at various positions, they all meet*** the EU requirements for RF exposure.

*: The exposure standard for mobile phones employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR.

**: The SAR limit for mobile phones used by the public is 2.0 watts/kilogram (W/kg) averaged over ten grams of tissue, recommended by The Council of the European Union. The limit incorporates a substantial margin of safety to give additional protection for the public and to account for any variations in measurements.

***: Tests for SAR have been conducted using standard operating positions with the phone transmitting at its highest certified power level in all tested frequency bands. Although the SAR is determined at the highest certified power level, the actual SAR level of the phone while operating can be well below the maximum value. This is because the phone is designed to operate at multiple power levels so as to use only the power required to reach the network. In general, the closer you are to a base station antenna, the lower the power output.

Export Administration Regulations

This product and its accessories are subject to the Japan Export Administration Regulations (the “Foreign Exchange and Foreign Trade Law” and its related regulations). When exporting this product and its accessories, take the required steps at your expense and under your responsibility. For more details, contact the Ministry of Economy, Trade and Industry (METI).

Index/Quick Manual

Index 458
Quick Manual 472

Index

Index search

- This index functions as an alphabetical list of contents. The index contains not only the termis described in this manual, but also the abstracts of the descriptions. If you cannot find an item, try another keyword.

<Example 1: To set the keypad lock to “ON”>

Keypad light setting 109
Keypad lock. 134
Keypad sound 103

Lock function
IC card lock 247
Keypad lock. 134
Original lock 130

<Example 2: When you cannot answer a received call immediately>

Answer hold. 67
Answer message
(Voice mail service) 372

Holding (during incoming call, talking). . . .73
Home URL (i-mode) 190

<Example 3: When the keyword is described by another term>

Initialize → see “Reset”
Insert mode 365

Reset
Auto reset all cost 351

- The index for “Function menu” is supplied after the index by “Kana”. Use to search the function menu items (p.37).

Alphabetical/Numerical/Kana

A

AC adapter. 44
Accessories/Options 426
A-Continuous mode 154
Add bookmark 173
Adding a new word (own dictionary). . .368
Adding “186”/“184”. 60
Additional service
(Network services). 384
Address→ see “Mail address”
Adjusting the volume
Earpiece volume. 66
GPS function (Position location) . . .103
i-αppli sound. 231
Ring tone 66
Administrative right 387
After-sales service 441
Alarm setting 345
Alarm tone (how to stop) 345
Alarm tone (pre-installed) 100
Alarm (Timer) 339
Answer hold. 67
Answer message
(Voice mail service) 372
Answer setting. 65
Any key answer 65
APN. 387
Area mail
Receive 218
Setting 219
AT commands 389
Attach file
Download selectively 200
Save. 201
Send 193
Auto answer setting. 356
Auto Deco-mail 192
Auto focus 152
Auto receive mail. 196
Auto redial as voice 73
Auto reset total cost. 351
Auto save set 153
Auto timer 159
Automatic replay (i-motion). 184
Auto-sort (mail) 207
Auto-start set (i-αppli) 236
Auto-start time (i-αppli) 236
AV Phone To function 178

B

Background play 334
Backlight setting 109
Bar code reader 159
Bar incoming when roam 399
Basic Channels. 185
Basic operation. 36
Battery pack
Attach/Remove the battery pack. . . . 42
Battery pack life. 43
Charging the FOMA terminal. . . . 43
Checking battery level 45
Getting the best out of your
battery pack. 43

Low-voltage alarm 45
Power saver mode 109
Usage time 43
Blank (space) 365
Blocking noise (Noise reduction) 63
Bookmark 173
Copy from microSD to Phone . . . 299
Copy from Phone to microSD . . . 298
Displaying SD-PIM data 296
Saving the attached file 202
Send attach file 193
Storage capacity 453
Brightness
Camera 153
My picture 281
Videophone 52
Brightness (Edit image) 281

C

CA certificate 169
Cable connection (USB) 310
Cache 170
Calculator 352
Calendar (standby screen) 108
Call acceptation (Restrictions) . . . 139
Call Forwarding Service 374
Call Forwarding (Int.) 400
Call Forwarding (Restrictions) . . . 139
Call rejection (Restrictions) 139
Call setting w/o ID 140
Call Waiting 373
Caller ID Notification 48, 61
Calling with “186”/“184” added. . . . 60
Specifying each time you make a call 61
Caller ID Request 375
Caller ID req. (Int.) 400
Calls with Chaku-moji 63
Camera
Activate 146
How to use the camera 146
Key operation 149
Notes on shooting 146
Shooting settings 158
When using the microSD memory card 147
Canceling operation 37
CD-ROM for FOMA N905iμ 389
Chaku-moji 58
Chaku-Uta-Full®
Acquire 324
Play 326
Pre-installed 101
Save 325
Storage capacity 453
Chance capture 158
Change i-mode Password 172
Change mode (T9) 370
Change rcv. type (mail) 189
Change security code 125
Change size (Edit image) 281
Change skin 330
Change window (Full Browser) . . 265
Change window (i-mode) 171
Changing menu icon 111
Changing the certificate host 183
Channel list (i-Channel) 185
Character assignment to dial keys 413
Character assignments (5-touch/2-touch/T9) 413
Character Entry 359
Clear learned 368
Download dictionary setting . . . 369
T9 Input 369
2-touch input 369
5-touch input 361
Character entry using 2-touch input . . . 369
Character entry using 5-touch input . . . 361
Character input mode (5-touch/2-touch/T9) 361
Character stamp (Edit image) . . . 282
Chara-den
Display 285
Download 177
For videophone 73
Guide to the list 285
Operation 285
Rec. Chara-den 286
What is Chara-den? 285
Chara-den settings priority 90
Chara-den set 52
Charge sound 104
Charge (Cost limit setting) 352
Charging the FOMA terminal 43
Charging Time 43
Chat 224
Chat group setting 223
Chat mail (compose/send/receive) . . . 219
Chat mail (receive) 222
Chat member
Change 222
Chat group setting 223
Setting details 223
Setting 221
Check
a new mail 30
an address list 211
anniversary 342
call times and charges 350
holiday 342
i-αppli information 231
i-mode settings 180
i-motion details 184
security error history (i-αppli) . . . 232
Check new messages
Mail 198
Setting 213
Check new SMS 226
CHG camera-mode 151
CHG input method 365
ch-key setting 33
Choku-Den 96
cid 387
Clear learned (character entry) . . . 368
Client certificate 169
Clock Alarm Tone set 104
Clock display 31, 115
Clock display setting (indicator display) 112
Clock setting 47
Close-up 146
Column search (phonebook) 92
Common phrases 422
Common phrases (enter) 366
Common phrases (store) 367
Communication mode 302
Component Names and Functions . . . 24
Composing i-mode mail
Change rcv. type 189
Delete receiver 189
Entering an address from Mail member 188
Saving i-mode mail 194
Send attach file 193
Composite image (4 images) . . . 279
Confirm Settings
Restrictions 140
Ring tone/image 96
Continuous shooting 154
Continuous standby time 43
Continuous talk time 43
Convert readings to kanji 362
Copy
From microSD to Phone 299
From Phone to microSD 298
Text 367

To the different folder in the microSD 300
Copy to microSD
Image, etc. 298
Phonebook, etc. (SD-PIM data). . .298
Copy to the FOMA terminal
Image, etc. 299
Phonebook, etc. (SD-PIM data). . .299
Copyright 20
Correct backlight (Edit image) . . .281
Create/delete/edit folder
Bookmark 173
Data box 302
Mail 206
microSD 303
Cut (text) 367

D

Data box
Create/delete/edit folder 302
Folder structure 272
Data communication 385
Data exchange (OBEX) 386
Data Security Service 142
Image 278
Mail 209
Phonebook 98
Date setting 47
DC adapter. 44
DCMXクレジットアプリ 234
Deco-mail
Compose/send 190
Compose/send (auto) 192
Compose/send (template) 192
Decomail templates 193
Download 178
No. of templates 193
Decomail-picture
Download 178
Decorate PI 189
Decoration 75
Delete
Bookmark 174
Chara-den. 286
Delete all bookmarks 173
Delete all images (own data) . . .303
Delete all mails (read/received/sent) 206
Delete all melodies (own data) . . .303
Delete all movies (own data). . . .303
Desktop icon. 117
Document 313
i-αppli 230
Image 277
Kisekae Tool. 291
Mail 208, 210
Melody 289
Message 218
Movie/i-motion 283
Music 327
Music&Video Channel 322
PDF data 313
Phonebook (detail screen). 95
Phonebook (list screen) 93
PushTalk phonebook 85
Received calls 58
Redial/Dialed calls 58
Screen memo 175
text 366
ToruCa 246
Voice 350
Delete receiver 189
Descriptions of menu operations . . . 37
Desktop Holder 44
Desktop icon 115
Dial lock. 126
Dialed calls 56
Dictionary 353
Dictionary setting (download dictionary) 369
Disp emotion mail 197
Display
Backlight 109
Color pattern/background 110
Font setting 114
How to view 26
Privacy angle 109
Display design. 110
Display during dialing/receiving calls . . . 107
Display during dialing/receiving videophone calls 107
Disp dur mail/msg ckg. 107
Display operator name 399
Display setting. 107
Display setting (videophone). 75
Display shooting image 274
Display when the FOMA terminal is turned on 107
Display while receiving a call. 64
Displaying menu 110
Displaying SSL pages 169
Disp. call/receive No. 109
Disp. phonebook image. 109
Disp. SMS report. 225
Disp. Software info (i-αppli). 229
DNS 387
DoCoMo CA certificate. 169
DoCoMo keitai datalink. 389
DoCoMo Videophone Software. . . . 77
Document viewer 313
Display. 313
Guide to the document list . . . 313
Operation. 314
Scroll 314
Searching for text 315
Double-byte 365
Download
Auto Decomail-picture 178
Chaku-Uta-Full® 324
Chara-den 177
Charged contents 175
Client certificate. 181
Decomail-picture 178
Dictionary 178
i-αppli 228
Image 176
i-melody. 176
i-motion 183
Kisekae Tool 178
PDF data 176
Template 178
ToruCa. 178
Download dictionary setting 369
Downloading Auto Decomail-pictures. 178
Downloading charged contents 175
Downloading dictionary 178
DPOF setting 318
Driving mode → see “Public mode”
Dual Network service 376

E

Earphone/microphone with switch . . . 355
Easy Search 4
Edit
Draft. 195
Image 280
Movie/i-motion. 284
Phonebook 94
Edit file name
Image 277
Melody. 289
Movie/i-motion. 283
Edit image. 280
Edit the reading (T9). 370

Edit title
Bar code reader 161
Bookmark 173
Chara-den 286
Desktop icon 117
DL dictionary 369
Document 312
Image 277
Kisekae Tool 121, 290
Melody 289
microSD 297
Movie/i-motion 283
Music&Video Channel 323
Original animation 279
PDF data 312
Screen memo 175
Template 193
Edit (mail) 209
Editing country codes 55
Emergency mode 110
Emotion-expressing mail 197
Emotion/Keyword 215
English 46
English Guidance 376
Enter/add an address 188
Entering a mail address from the address list 188
Entering a mail address from the phonebook 188
Entering numbers 36
Entering security code 36
Erase/play memo (voice/movie) . . . 72
Error message list 432
Export administration regulations . . 456

F

Face authentication 137
Releasing IC card lock 247
Face mark 365, 421
Favorite Channels 185
FeliCa 242
FeliCa mark (📡)
Acquire ToruCa 244
IC card authentication 135
iC exchange 309
Osaifu-Keitai 243
File attached mail 193
File restriction 276
File size 151
Filter function
Mail 208
Message 218
To Do list 344
ToruCa 246
FirstPass setting 181
Fixed Common Phrases List 422
Flash movie 171
Flashing of the Incoming call lamp (For a missed call) 30
Flashing of the Incoming call lamp when shooting 147
Flicker reduction 153
FOMA card
Add to phonebook 89
Functional differences 41
Insert/remove 39
Managing SMS 304
Managing the phonebook entry 304
Manufacturer number 168
Operational restriction function 40
Security code 124
Setting for replacing 41
Font size
CHG input size 361
Font setting 114
Font size setting (i-Channel) 186
Font size (i-mode) 179
Font size (mail) 212
Phonebook (big/standard) 93
Format (microSD) 301
Forward (mail) 199
Forwarding image 311
Frame (Edit image) 281
Frame (Full Browser) 266
Framed photography 156
Full Browser 263
Standard type 265
Viewer type 265
Function menu 37

G

Glossary for chat 221
Glossary for data communication . . . 387
Go to location 172
GPS function 249
Location notification 259
Location history 260
Tone/Vibrator 103
i-αppli 251
Location request 256
Position location 250
Position settings 251
Group member (change) 222
Group search (phonebook) 92
Guide Overview 2
Guide to the PDF list 312
Guide to the shooting screen (camera) 150
Gガイド番組表リモコン 235

H

Handling with Care 18
Hands-free switch (videophone) . . . 75
Hands-free (switch during a call) . . . 56
Header/Signature 213
Headset sw to dial 356
Headset usage setting 104
Holding (during incoming call, talking) . . . 67
Home URL (i-mode) 180
Host selection (i-mode) 180
How to display the original menu . . . 33
How to display the simple menu . . . 35
How to use the software keys 33
How to view the chat screen 220
How to view the indicator display . . . 30
How to view the main menu 31
How to view the screen
PDF list 312
PushTalk talking screen 81

I

i-αppli 227
Adjusting the volume 231
Auto-start set 236
Auto-start time 236
Checking the security error history . . . 232
Delete 230
Download 228
Launch (from a site/mail) 237
Storage capacity 453
Upgrade 239
i-αppli data information 239
i-αppli info
Launch/quit 229
i-αppli standby screen
End stand-by info 238
Setting 238
i-αppli To setting 237
IC card authentic 135
IC card Illumination 114
IC card lock 247
iC Exchange 309
FeliCa mark (📡) 309
Send/Receive all data 310
Send/receive one data 309
IC lock (power-off) 247

iC Transfer Service. 242
iC trans. all 310
i-Channel setting 186
Icon description
Desktop 117
Display 26
Document viewer 313
Emotion-expressing mail 197
i-αppli 231
Image 170
Image/movie 274
Kisekae Tool 290
Mail detail screen 205
Mail folder list screen 204
Mail list screen 204
Melody 288
MessageR/F 216
Music 326
Music player playback screen 328
Music&Video Channel 321
PDF data 312
Received calls/missed calls 57
Rec. Chara-den screen 286
Redial/Dialed calls 57
Ring tone/image 96
Shooting menu 151
Shooting screen (camera) 150
Standard type (Full Browser) 265
Text entry (edit) screen. 360
Videophone screen. 51
Viewer type (Full Browser) 265
Icon operation
Desktop 116
Selecting displayed icons 119
Icons setting. 119
iD 設定アプリ. 234
Illumination. 113
Illumination in talk 114
Illumination setting
During a call 114
For incoming calls. 113
IC card 114
Indicator display 112
Image
Copy from microSD to Phone 299
Copy from Phone to microSD 298
Delete 277
Display (microSD). 297
Display (Phone) 274
Download 176
Edit 280
Move. 277
Save (from site/message) 176
Saving the attached file 201
Send attach file 193
Storage capacity 453
Switching list display 274
Titles and file names 276
Image display in the picture list . . . 36
Image information 277
Image priority 108
i-melody download 176
iMenu. 167
Immediate update (software update) 446
i-mode 165
i-mode basics
Displaying iMenu 167
Displaying SSL pages 169
Image display. 170
Jumping to previous/next pages . . .170
Operations for viewing sites 170
Scroll function 167
Start/exit. 166
What is i-mode? 166
i-mode mail → see “Mail”
i-mode malfunction check site 443
i-mode menu 166
i-mode Password. 124
i-mode setting 180
i-motion
Automatic replay 184
Copy from microSD to Phone. . . .299
Copy from Phone to microSD. . . .298
Create/delete/edit folder. 302
Delete 283
Download. 183
Edit. 284
Move 283
Move among Phone/microSD. . . .300
Operations during playback 329
Play (microSD). 297
Playback (Phone). 282
Save (from site) 184
Saving the attached file 201
Send attach file 193
Storage capacity 453
Trimming (Edit i-motion). 284
What is i-motion? 183
Inbox 202
In-car hands-free. 63
Incoming call display
(indicator display) 112
Incoming call lamp priority. 114
Incoming Call Mng 377
Index. 457
Indicator display (setting) 112
Indicator for new mails 30
Infrared data exchange. 307
High-speed Ir transmission (IrSS) . . .307
Infrared data port. 307
Send/receive all data. 308
Send/receive one data 307
Infrared remote control 311
Initial setting 46
Initialize. 357
Initialize → see “Reset”
Insert mode. 365
Intellectual property right 20
International dialing service 54
International roaming 392
Internet connection. 172
Interrupted shooting 147
Interval/number for shooting
(continuous shooting) 155
Int’l call 55
Int’l dial assistance 55
ISP connection 180
ｉアプリバンキング. 236

J

Jacket image. 328
JAN code 160

K

kanji conversion 362
Key 103
Key operation
Holding down. 26
How to use the software keys . . .33
Key names and functions 24
Keypad light setting 109
Keypad lock 134
Keypad sound. 103
Keyword search 339
Kisekae Tool 290
Delete 291
Download 178
Guide to the package list. 290
Setting a package 120
Kuten Code List → see attached
CD-ROM
Kuten code (enter) 368

L

Last URL. 268
Launching i-αppli from a mail . . . 237

Launching i-αppli from a site . . . 237
Launching i-αppli with Infrared data exchange 237
Launching i-αppli with the Bar code reader 237
Life history viewer. 338
Light setting (backlight) 109
Line feed. 364
Location info. 250
Lock function
BOX lock 138
Call setting w/o ID. 140
Dial lock/Omakase Lock 126
Face authentication. 137
Folder lock 138
IC card authentic. 135
IC card lock. 247
Keypad lock 134
Original lock 130
Reject unknown 141
Restrictions. 139
Ring time(sec.) 141
Secret data only mode 127
Secret folder 129
Self mode 142
Side key guard 137
Lower case. 364

M

Mail address
Save (receivers/senders address) . . . 200
Search (phonebook) 92
Mail info
Changing the list screen display mode. 203
Changing the mail character size . . . 202
Compose/send 188
Displaying mail menu 188
Guide to the folder list screens . . 204
Guide to the mail detail screens . . . 205
Guide to the mail list screens . . 204
Mail display (Inbox) 202
Viewing new message 196
What is mail? 188
When you receive a mail. 196
Mail settings
Auto-sort 207
BOX lock 138
Check settings (FOMA terminal) . . 212
Display during sending/receiving mails 107
Folder lock 138
Mail Setting (FOMA terminal) 211
Mail/Msg ring time 104
Read out message setting 213
Reset Mail Setting (FOMA terminal). 212
Set check new messages. 213
Mail To function 179
Making phone calls 50
Chaku-moji 58
Choku-Den 97
Dialing 50
Earphone/microphone with switch . . . 355
From site/mail message 178
International calls 54
Overseas Use 396
Phonebook 91
Received calls 56
Redial/Dialed calls 56
Two-touch dialing 98
Malfunction check (i-mode) 443
Malfunction checklist 427
Managing mail
Copy from microSD to Phone 299
Copy from Phone to microSD 298
Create/delete/edit folder 206
Delete. 208, 210
Display (Inbox) 202
Displaying SD-PIM data 296
Move to trash box. 208, 210
Move (among folders) . . . 208, 209
No. of messages 206, 208
Protect ON/OFF 208, 209
Read out mail 210
Read out mail (Side key) 346
Saving the attached file 201
Search 208
Storage capacity 453
Storing addresses in mailing lists. . . 195
Manner mode 105
Manner mode set. 105
Manner mode when earphones are connected 107
manufacturer number 168
Marker stamps (Edit image) 281
Marking a checkbox. 38
M-Continuous mode 154
Melody
Copy from microSD to Phone. . . 299
Copy from Phone to microSD. . . 298
Create/delete/edit folder. 302
Delete. 289
Download 176
Move 289
Operations during playback. . . 289
Play (microSD) 297
Playback (Phone) 288
Playlist 289
Pre-installed. 100
Save (from site) 176
Saving the attached file 201
Send attach file 193
Storage capacity 453
Titles and file names 288
Melody Call setting 103
Melody linkage (vibrator). 102
Memory card → see “microSD”
Memory info
Chara-den list 286
Document list. 313
Folder list. 303
Image list 277
Melody list 289
microSD folder list screen 303
Movie list 283
Movie mode. 157
Music list 327
Package list 291
PDF list 313
Program list 323
Still image/continuous shooting . . . 153
Memory No. search (phonebook). . . . 92
Menu display set 110
Menu Functions 402
Menu numbers for function display. . . 32
Message auto-display. 180
Message display (mail) 212
Message info
Icon description 216
Viewing new message. 216
When you receive a message . . . 216
Message list display 180
MessageR/F
Delete 218
Display (messages read/unread) . . 217
No. of messages 218
Protect ON/OFF. 218
Set check new messages 213
Storage capacity 453
View (new message) 216
microSD
Create/delete/edit folder 303
Data that can be copied. 295
Displaying images, etc. 297

Displaying phonebook, etc. (SD-PIM data) 296
Folder structure 293
Format 301
Insert/remove 291
Memory capacity 295
Notes on handling 291
microSD data (i-αppli) 239
microSD manager 296
microSD memory card → see "microSD"
microSD mode 302
microSD reader/writer 301
microSD software list (i-αppli) . . .239
Missed call
Check 30
Indicator 30
Notification tone 70
Record 57
Storage status 57
Missed calls display 141
Missed info Illumination 113
Mode 1 (5-touch) 361
Mode 2 (2-touch) 369
Mode 3 (T9) 369
Movable contents 300
Movable contents folder 302
Move folder → see "Move (among folders)"
Move trash box (mail) 208, 210
Move (among folders)
Image 277
Mail 208, 209
Melody 289
Movie/i-motion 283
Music 327
Move (among Phone/microSD) . . .300
Movie
Copy from microSD to Phone 299
Copy from Phone to microSD 298
Delete 283
Edit 284
Move 283
Move among Phone/microSD 300
Movie playing software (for PC) 426
Play (microSD) 297
Playback (Phone) 282
Playlist 284
Send attach file 193
Shooting 156
Shooting time 148
Storage capacity 453
Titles and file names 276
Movie mode 156
Multi access 336
Multi access combination patterns . . . 422
Multi Number 378
Multi window 171
Multiple-choice 38
Multitask 337
Activate 337
combination 423
End 338
Switch 337
Music player 325
Guide to the player screen 328
Operations during playback 329
Play with the FOMA terminal folded 331
Playlist 331
Save the WMA data 333
SD-Audio 333
Switch to BGM 334
Music (storage capacity) 453
Music&Video Channel 320
Operations during playback 329
Play 322
Setting up program 320
Switch to BGM 334
Using from Data Box 323
My document 311
My Menu 171
My picture
Create/delete/edit folder 302
Display 274
My Profile
Checking your own phone number 48
Display 347
Quote data 366
Send attach file 193
Store 348

N

Name search (phonebook) 92
Network re-search 398
Network Security Code 124
Network services 371
Additional service 384
Call Forwarding Service 374
Call Forwarding (Int.) 400
Call Waiting 373
Caller ID Request 375
Caller ID req. (Int.) 400
Dual Network service 376
English Guidance 376
Multi Number 378
Nuisance Call Blocking 375
Remote Control 378
Remote Control (Int.) 400
Roam. Guidance (Int.) 400
Service Numbers 377
Voice Mail service 372
Voice Mail (Int.) 400
2in1 379
Noise reduction 63
Notes on shooting 146
Notice call 372
Notice designate calls 352
Notification tone
Charge 104
Missed call 70
Notifying alarm
Priority 345
Quality alarm 104
Reconnect signal 63
No. of messages
Mail 206, 208
Message 218
Screen memo 175
Ntfy switch-mode 76
Nuisance Call Blocking priority . . . 143
Nuisance Call Blocking 375
Number of data that can be protected . . 453
NW search mode 398

O

OBEX 310, 386, 387
Omakase Lock 127
One-touch mlt win 174
Operation descriptions 37
Operation description in this manual 37
Operations description 37
Operations during playback
Melody 289
Music player 329
Optimizing Communication Settings . . . 387
Optional equipment 22
Options/Accessories 426
Original animation (create) 279
Original animation (playback) . . . 280
Original lock 130
Original manner mode 105
Original menu 112
Osaifu-Keitai 242
IC card lock 247
Read/write data 242
Using Osaifu-Keitai 243

Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli 242
Outbox 202
Overwrite mode 365
Own dictionary 368

P

Packet communication 386
Page display
Bookmark 173
From URL on a site mail 179
i-Channel 185
Last URL 268
My Menu 172
One-touch mlt win. 174
Screen memo 175
Site 167
URL history 172
Website 172, 264
Page reloading 171
Password change (i-mode). 172
Paste (character) 367
Pasting desktop icons 116
Pattern data update 450
Pause dial. 61
PC Connection 385
PDF data 311
Clipping a page. 316
Display 311
Download 176
i-mode bookmark 315
Operation 314
Save 176
Scroll. 314
Searching for text 315
Petit message. 75
Phone number
Checking your own phone number . . . 48
Re-entering phone numbers . . . 50
Search (phonebook) 92
Phone number notification 48
Phone To function 178
Phonebook 87
Add entries (from other screens) . . 90
Add entries (Phone, UIM) 89
Call acceptation 139
Call Forwarding (Restrictions) . . 139
Call rejection 139
Compose message. 189
Copy from microSD to Phone . . . 299
Copy from Phone to microSD . . . 298
Delete (detail screen) 95
Delete (list screen) 93
Difference between phone and UIM . . . 88
Displaying SD-PIM data 296
Edit 94
List screen (tab display) 91
No. of phonebook 95
PushTalk phonebook 83
Reject unknown 141
Renaming group. 91
Restrict dialing 139
Restrict dialing (Restrictions) . . . 139
Saving the attached file 202
Search 92
Secret code setting (other party) 94
Secret data. 127
Send attach file 193
Storage capacity 453
Stored data. 88
Storing data from sites 171
Voice mail (Restrictions). 139
Photo mode 151, 152
Photograph → see “Image”
PictBridge print 317
Pictograph 365
Pictographs list 417
PIN code (PIN1/PIN2) 124
PIN setting. 125
PI・SB continuous entry 364
Play
Melody 288
Movie/i-motion 282
Music 326
Music&Video Channel 322
Recorded message/voice memos . . . 72
Voice 350
Playlist 331
Play/erase recorded messages . . . 72
Play/erase voice memos 72
PLMN setting 398
Portrait right 20
Power saver mode 109
Precautions 12
Prefer attachment 212
Prefix setting 62
Pre-installed
Chaku-Uta-Full® 101
Fixed Common Phrases List . . . 422
PDF data 312
Ring tone/melody/alarm 100
Preview display 283
Preview (SMS). 225
Print 317
Print (image) 317
Priority → see “Function priority”
Priority of functions
Chara-den setting 90
Display for incoming call 108
Illumination 114
Notifying alarm 345
Nuisance call blocking functions . . . 143
Ring tone 101
Standby screen 108
Vibrator 102
Privacy angle 109
Protect
Mail 208, 209
Message 218
Screen memo 175
Public mode (Driving mode) 67
Public mode (Power OFF). 69
PushTalk 79
Adding members (during a call) . . . 82
Dialing 80
PushTalkPlus 80
Receive (join). 82
setting 86
PushTalk phonebook. 83
Delete 85
Dialing 84
Store 83

Q

QoS. 387
QR code 160
Quality alarm. 104
Quality setting (camera) 151
Quick Manual 472
Quick Manual
(For Overseas Use). 479
Quick message 72
Quick Search 339
Quick silent 65
Quotation mark 213
Quote data 366
Quoting the personal information . . . 366

R

Redial 56
Read out mail 210
Read out the alarm contents. . . . 347
Reading search (phonebook) 92
Receive option (mail) 197
Received address list 210
Received calls. 56

Receiving phone calls 63
Earphone/microphone with switch. . . .355
Overseas Use. 397
Receiving setting (mail) 212
Reception level (signal strength) . . .46
Reconnect signal 63
Record
Voice. 350
Voice memo 349
Record message setting 71
Refresh skin tone (Edit image) 281
Reject unknown 141
Release
Dial lock 126
Keypad lock (temporarily) 135
Manner mode 105
Message protection 218
PIN lock 125
Protect for screen memo 175
Protected mail. 208, 209
Public mode (Driving mode) 67
Public mode (Power OFF) 69
Restrictions. 139
Secret code 94
Secret data. 128
Secret (data only) mode 128
Vibrator. 102
Reload 171
Remote access (Int.) 400
Remote control function. 311
Remote Control (Network services) 378
Remote monitoring (videophone) 77
Renaming group name (phonebook). 91
Reply with quote (mail) 199
Reply (mail) 199
Resend (mail). 209
Reserved update (software update) 447
Reset
Auto reset total cost 351
Clear learned 368
i-mode setting. 180
Initialize. 357
My Profile 348
Reset desktop. 117
Reset i-Channel 186
Reset last URL 269
Reset Mail Setting 212
Reset original menu 112
Reset settings. 357
Reset Std. type set 269
Reset total 351
Reset Viewer type set. 269
Reset i-Channel 186
Reset last URL 269
Reset settings 357
Reset total (call time/charge). . . .351
Restrict dialing. 139
Restriction
Dial lock/Omakase Lock 126
IC card lock 247
Keypad lock 134
Original lock. 130
Restrict dialing 139
Self mode. 142
Side key guard 137
Restrictions 139
Retouch (Edit image) 281
Ring time(sec.) 141
Ring tone
Adjusting the volume 66
Increasing (step) 66
Mute (silent) 66
Pre-installed. 100
Priority 101
Ring time (mail/message) 104
Ring tone of chat mail
Adjusting the volume 66
Ring time 104
Select. 100
Ring tone of mail
Adjusting the volume 66
Priority 101
Ring time 104
Select. 100
Ring tone of message
Adjusting the volume 66
Ring time 104
Select. 100
Ring tone of videophone
Adjusting the volume 66
Select. 100
Ring tone of voice phone
Adjusting the volume 66
Priority 101
Select. 100
Ring tone/image 95
Ring tone/image for group (phonebook) 95
Ring tone/image (Confirm Settings) 96
Roam. Guidance 399
Roam. Guidance (Int.). 400
Rotate (Edit image) 281

S

SAR (Specific absorption rate) 454
Save images 201
Saving i-motion 201
Saving movies 147
Saving still images 147
Scanning function 449
Schedule. 340
Adding holidays and anniversaries. 342
Check 342
Clock Alarm Tone set 104
Copy from microSD to Phone . . . 299
Copy from Phone to microSD . . . 298
Display mode (monthly/weekly) . . . 341
Displaying SD-PIM data 296
Saving the attached file. 202
Secret data 127
Send attach file 193
Storage capacity 453
Store 340
User icon setting 342
Schedule (To Do list). 343
Screen memo 174
Screen memo (storage capacity) . . . 453
Scroll function
Document viewer. 314
i-mode 167
PDF data 314
Standard type (Full Browser) . . . 266
Viewer type (Full Browser) . . . 266
Scroll setting (i-mode). 179
Scroll setting (mail) 211
SD-PIM data 296
Search all (phonebook) 93
Search (phonebook) 92
Secret code setting (other party) 94
Secret data 127
Secret (data only) mode 127
Secret data only mode releasing . . . 128
Secret data releasing 128
Secret folder 129
Secret folder function 129
Security scan → “Scan function”
Security Code 124
Change 125
Entry method. 36
Security codes for the FOMA terminal. 124
Select image(videophone) 74
Select language 46

Select microphone 357
Select ring tone 100
Select size 151
Select to save. 153, 155, 157
Selecting items with dial keys. . . . 36
Selecting multiple items 38
Selecting ON/OFF 36
Selecting the Menu 31
Selecting the shooting menu . . . 151
Selecting YES/NO 36
Self mode. 142
Send DTMF tone 52
Sending all data
(Infrared data exchange) 308
Sending one data
(iC exchange). 309
Sending one data
(Infrared data exchange) 307
Sending push signals. 61
Sending/receiving mail message
Auto receive mail 196
Edit 209
Forward. 199
Receive option 197
Reply. 199
Resend 209
Send (from a site/mail message) . . 179
Sending draft i-mode mail. . . . 195
View (new message). 196
Sending the manufacturer number
(i-mode) 168
Sent address list. 210
Sent/received data (data exchange) . . . 306
Service Numbers 377
Service (Int.). 399
Services Available for the
FOMA Terminal 425
Session number (data exchange) . . 307
Set auto-update (pattern data) . . . 450
Set connection timeout (i-mode) . . . 180
Set hold tone 67
Set image disp. (Full Browser) . . 267
Set image disp. (i-mode) 179
Set in-call arrival. 377
Set mute seconds 141
Set sub clock 48
Set time 47
Setting and status query permission
(i-mode) 181
Setting detail (chat mail). 224
Setting for checking missed calls/new
mails. 70
Setting Main Time 47
Setting sub clocks 48
Setting the clock display
(standby screen) 115
Setting the upper limit of charge. . . .352
Setting when folded. 65
Shooting
AF lock 152
Auto focus shooting 152
Chara-den 287
Compose message 156
Continuous shooting 154
Movie 156
Still image. 152
Focus fixed. 152
Shooting menu icons. 151
Shooting settings. 158
Short message → see “SMS”
Shot image (display) 274
Side key guard. 137
Signal strength (reception level). . . .46
Silent
Recorded memo/voice memo. . . .72
Ring volume 66
Voice 350
Simple Menu Function List 412
Single-byte. 365
SMS
Compose/send. 224
Copy from microSD to Phone 299
Copy from Phone to microSD 298
Preview. 225
Receive 225
SMS center settings 226
SMS input char. 225
SMS report req. 225
SMS settings 212
SMS valid. per. 225
Software
DoCoMo keitai datalink 389
DoCoMo Videophone Software. . . .77
Software key functions. 33
Software Update 443
Sort → see “Sort function”, “Filter function”
Sort function
Document. 313
Image 277
Kisekae Tool. 291
Mail. 208
Melody 289
Message. 218
Movie/i-motion 283
Music. 327
Music&Video Channel 323
PDF data 313
Phonebook 93
Template 193
To Do list 344
ToruCa. 246
Sound effect
Surround 102
3D sound 102
Sound effect (i-mode) 180
Space (blank) 365
Special characters list. 416
Specific absorption rate (SAR) 454
Specifications 452
SSL Certificates 181
Standard type i-motion 183
Standard type (Full Browser) . . . 265
Cookie 269
Displaying a desired portion of
the entire page. 268
Displays in the landscape screen. . . .267
Frame 266
How to view the screen 265
Key operation. 266
Multi window 171
Page display 264
Referer. 270
Scroll 266
Setting 268
SSL/TLS 264
Switching from i-mode. 169
Switching the display mode . . . 266
Uploading images 267
URL history 169
Standby screen
Display setting 108
Priority 108
Return to the standby screen. . . . 37
Standby screen with i-αppli. 238
Start attachment (auto) Message 180
Start attachment (auto) (Mail) . . . 212
Still image
AF lock. 152
Auto focus shooting 152
Copy from microSD to Phone. . . . 299
Copy from Phone to microSD. . . . 298
Display (microSD) 297
Display (Phone) 274
Edit 280
Focus fixed 152
No. of images that can be stored 148

Shooting 152
Storage capacity for music data 453
Storage capacity (respective data). . . .453
Store
PushTalk phonebook 83
Store address→see “Mail address”
Storing IDD prefix code 55
Storing phone number/
mail address on sites 171
Storing receivers address
(Mail address) 200
Storing/displaying personal data 347
Streaming type i-motion 183
Sub-address setting 62
Super silent 105
Switch to front camera 146
Switch to rear camera 146
Switching pages. 36
Switching the display mode
(Entering text divided screen) . . .361
Switching the network 397
Symbols 365
Symbols list 416

T

Template for composing Deco-mail
message 192
Text entry
Changing the conversion range 363
CHG input method 364
Common phrases 366
Convert. 362
Copy 367
Cut 367
Delete 366
Face mark. 365
Kuten code (enter) 368
Line feed. 364
Paste 367
Pictographs. 365
PI・SB continuous entry 364
Quote data 366
Single-byte/Double-byte 365
Space (blank) 365
Switching insert/overwrite mode . . .365
Symbols 365
Type/thickness/size. 114
Text entry (edit) screen 360
Text memo 353
Text reader. 162
The CLR (CLR) key 37
Ticker color setting 186
Ticker display setting 186
Ticker font size setting. 186
Ticker speed setting 186
Timer (Alarm) 339
Title list (image). 274
Title list (movie) 283
To Do list
Check. 344
Clock Alarm Tone set 104
Copy from microSD to Phone 299
Copy from Phone to microSD. . . .298
Store 343
ToruCa. 243
Acquire. 244
Display 245
Download. 178
Saving the attached file 201
Setting 246
ToruCa viewer 245
Trademarks 20
Trimming (Edit image) 282
Turning the FOMA terminal on/off. . . .46
TV remote control 311
Two-touch dialing. 98
T9 change mode (kanji/kana) . . .370
T9 Input mode
Character assignments 415
Character Entry 369
Edit the reading 370

U

UIM → see “FOMA card”
UIM operation 304
Upgrade (i-αppli) 239
Upper case 364
URL entry 172
URL history 172
USB cable connection. 310
USB mode setting 302
Using multi window 171

V

Version (pattern data) 451
Vibrator 102
Vibrator priority 102
Video
Move from Phone to microSD. . . .300
Videophone
Answer mode during i-mode . . . 76
Answering during i-mode 76
Auto redial as voice 73
Chara-den setting 52
Decoration. 75
External devices 77
Hands-free switch 75
How to view the screen 51
Image setting. 73
Making videophone calls. 50
Overseas Use 396
Petit message 75
Play/erase recorded messages . . . 72
Receiving 63
Remote monitoring 77
Select image 74
Using Chara-den. 73
Visual check 74
When a call is not connected. . . . 53
Videophone/voice phone switch
(Called) 64
Videophone/voice phone switch
(Caller) 53
View style
How to view the screen
(Music player) 328
Operation (Music player) 329
Viewer settings 274
Viewer type (Full Browser) 265
Cookie 269
Displays in the landscape screen . . . 267
How to view the screen 265
Key operation 266
Last URL 264
Page display 264
Referer 270
Scroll 266
Setting 268
SSL/TLS 264
Switching the display mode. . . 266
Toolbar. 266
Uploading images 267
View pos. display. 265
Viewing PDF data 311
Viewing sites. 167
Bookmark 173
From URL on a site mail 179
i-Channel. 185
Multi window 171
My Menu 172
One-touch mlt win. 174
Screen memo 175
URL history 169
Visual check (videophone) 74
Voice announce 350

Voice clock 70
Voice Mail 372
Voice Mail (Int.) 400
Voice Mail (Restrictions) 139
Voice memo 349
Voice memo (in-call) 349
Voice memo (in-standby) 349
Voice mode 158
Voice/videophone switch (Called) . . . 64
Voice/videophone switch (Caller) . . 53
Volume adjustment 66
V-phone while packet 76

W

Wake-up display 107
Warranty and after-sales service . . . 441
WEB mail 188
Web To function 179
Website 172
Welcome display setting 107
What is i-Channel? 185
When the shooting is interrupted . . . 147
When you are out of service area . . . 46
White balance 152
Word prediction 361
WORLD CALL 54
WORLD WING 41, 392

Z

Zoom adjustment 158

Numerals, etc.

2in1 379
2-touch input character assignments . . . 414
3D animation
  Desktop icon 119
3D display setting 119
3D sound 102
3G/GSM switching 397
4 images composite (Edit image) . . 279
5-touch character assignments . . . 413
64K data communication 386
カメラでケンサク！ (Camera de kensaku!) ER search 234
圏外 46
地図アプリ 251
デコメをつくろう 233
みんなNらんど 168
楽オク出品アプリ2 (Rakuten Auction application 2) 236

Function menu

Alarm 340
Bar code reader
  Reading data detail 161
  Reading data list 161
  Scanning 160
Bookmark
  Bookmark folder list 173
  Bookmark list 173
Chaku-moji
  Create message list 60
Channel list 186
Chapter list 322
Chara-den
  Chara-den list 286
  Chara-den player 286
  Rec. Chara-den 287
Chat
  Chat 221
  Chat group list 223
  Chat member 221
  Group member list 223
Choku-Den 97
Common phrases
  Common phrase folder list 367
  Common phrase list 367
Continuous shooting
  Continuous mode check 155
  Continuous shooting 153
  Continuous shooting detail check 156
Country Code setting 55
Data box
  Folder list 302
Deco-mail
  Template list 193
  Template preview 193
Desktop
  Desktop 117
  Desktop icon 117
  Theme selection 117
Dialed calls 58
Dictionary
  Dictionary 354
  Reference history 354
  Reference result (list/detail) . . . 354
Document
  Document list 312
  Document view 316
Download dictionary 369
Draft mail list 195
Emotion/Keyword 215
Exchanging history 98
Face authentication 138
Folder list 302
i-αppli
  End stand-by info 238
  microSD data 239
  microSD software 239
  Security error history 232
  Software list 230
IC card authentication 135
IDD Prefix setting 62
i-motion
  Data acquisition 184
Kisekae Tool
  Contents checking 122
  Kisekae Tool set list 121
  Package list 290
LCS client 259
Life history viewer
  Life history list 339
  Life history viewer 339
Location history (list/detail) 261
Mail
  Address (list/detail) 211
  Mail detail 209
  Mail folder list 206
  Mail list 208
  Message 190
  New mail 189
  Unread mail list 208
Mail member
  Mail member detail 195
  Mail member list 195
Melody
  Melody 289
  Melody list 289
Message
  Message detail 218
  Message list 218
microSD
  Categories 296
  Data detail 297
  Data list 297
  File list 297
  microSD client folder 260
  microSD client (list/detail) 260
  microSD folder list 303
mlt win. setting 174
Movie
  Movie List 283
  Playlist folder List 284

Movie mode
Movie mode checking 158
Movie mode shooting 157
Music player
Music list 327
Music player 330
Playlist list 332
Playlist music list 332
Music&Video Channel
Chapter list 322
Music&Video Channel 321
Program list 323
My picture
Image list 277
My picture 277
My Profile 348
Network services
Additional guidance 384
Additional service 384
Check setting 373
Multi Number setting 379
New SMS 225
Original animation
Original animation list 279
Original animation playback . . .280
Original lock
Category list 134
Function list 134
Group list 134
Original menu 112
Original theme 111
Own dictionary 368
Pause dial 61
PDF
PDF data 316
PDF list 312
Phonebook
Group setting 91
Phonebook detail 93
Phonebook list 93
Photo mode
Photo mode checking 153
Photo mode shooting 153
Playlist folder List 284
Play/Erase msg. (voice/video) 73
PLMN setting 398
Prefix setting 62
PushTalk phonebook 85
Receive Ir data 308
Received calls 58
Redial 58
Restrictions 140
Schedule
Schedule 341
Schedule list 343
Screen memo
Screen memo detail 175
Screen memo list 175
Sites 168
Standard type 267
Text entry (edit) 365
Text memo 353
Text reader
Reading data detail 164
Reading data list 164
Text reader 164
Text reader scanning 164
To Do list
To Do list 344
To Do list detail 344
ToruCa
ToruCa display 246
ToruCa folder list 245
ToruCa list 246
UIM operation 304
URL History 169
URL list 172
Viewer type 267
Voice announce 350
Voice/Videophone Calls
Enter phone number 52
Other ID 78
Ringing 64
Videophone in-call 52

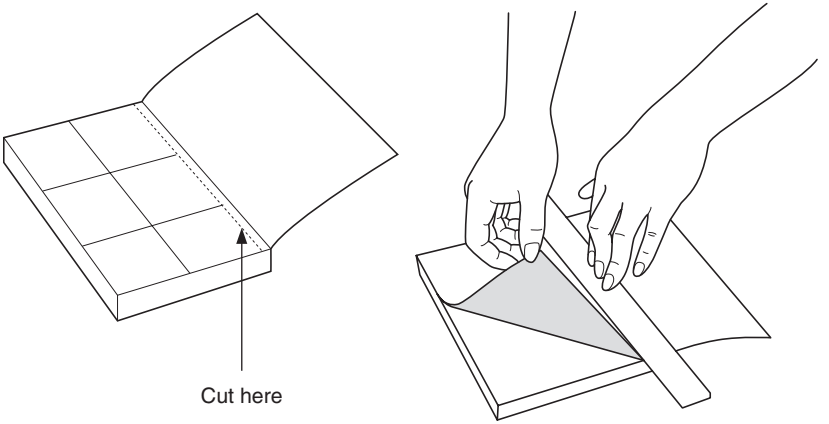
Quick Manual

How to use the Quick Manual

The Quick Manual describes basic operations and displays of the FOMA terminal.
To use the Quick Manual embedded in this manual, cut the sheets along the cutting line and fold them as described below. Take the Quick Manual (For Overseas Use) when using international roaming (WORLD WING) abroad.

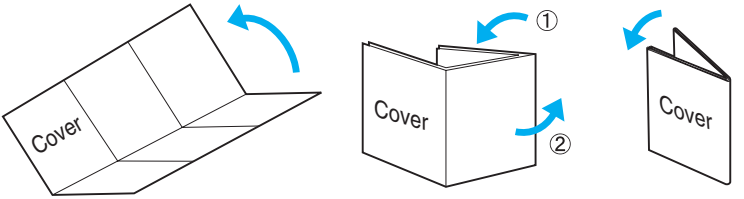
■How to cut

Cut the Quick Manual sheets along the cutting line.
Use a ruler to cut along the cutting line as described below.
Detach one page at a time so that you do not tear other pages.
* Take care not to hurt yourself when cutting with scissors, etc.



■How to fold

Fold the Quick Manual along with the folding line as described below so that the front cover comes to the front.



FOMA® N905iμ

Quick Manual

○**General Inquiries <DoCoMo Information Center>**
(In English)
0120-005-250 (toll free)
* Can be called from mobile phones and PHSs.
(In Japanese only)
(No prefix) 151 (toll free)
* Can only be called from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHSs.
○**Repairs**
(In Japanese only)
(No prefix) 113 (toll free)
* Can only be called from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHSs.
(In Japanese only)
0120-800-000 (toll free)
* Can be called from mobile phones and PHSs.
* Please confirm the phone number before you dial.
* For further information, refer to the "Nationwide Service Station List" included with your FOMA terminal and other devices.

Add to phonebook

1 MENU/ch →"Phonebook"→"Phonebook"→ ch (FUNC)→"Add to phonebook"

● **To add data from the received calls record**
On the Standby screen→ ⊙ →Select the received calls record→ ch (FUNC)→"Add to phonebook"

● **To add data from the redial**
On the Standby screen→ ⊙ →Select the redial calls record→ ch (FUNC)→"Add to phonebook"

2 **Select the destination→Enter a name→Check the reading of the name→ ● (Set)**

3 **Select items and enter them**

■**Group (01 to 19, No Group)**
GR<Not stored>→Select a group

■**Phone number (up to 4)**
<Not stored>→Enter phone number→Select an icon

■**Mail address (up to 3)**
<Not stored>→Enter mail address→Select an icon

■**Address**
<Not stored>→Enter zip code→Enter address

■**Location information**
<Not stored>→Add location information

■**Birthday**
<Not stored>→Enter birthday

■**Memorandums**
<Not stored>→Enter memorandums

■**Image**
<Not stored>→Select the photo mode or image

■**Chara-den**
<Not stored>→Select Chara-den

■**Memory number (000 to 999)**
No→Enter memory number

4 ✉ **(Finish)**
Only name, reading, group, phone number and mail address can be stored to the FOMA card (UIM).

■**PushTalk phone number**
The PushTalk phone number is stored if the entry is to be stored in the "All Phonebook".

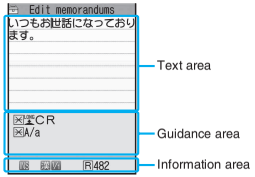
Edit/delete phonebook data

■**Edit the phonebook data**
Display the phonebook detail screen→ ch (FUNC)→"Edit Phonebook"→Edit the items if necessary→ ✉ (Finish)→"YES" (For the FOMA card (UIM), press ✉ (Finish) and select "Overwrite"→"YES")

■**Delete phonebook data**
Display the phonebook list screen→ ch (FUNC)→"Delete data"→"Delete this"→"YES" (Select "YES" again depending on the phonebook)

Character Entry

■**Character entry screen**



■**Input mode**
E…Alphabet 漢…Kanji/hiragana 123…Number
カナ… Katakana 区…Kuten code

■**Switch text entry mode**
(Chrct) (For 1 second or longer)
The mode switches as follows:
5-touch input→2-touch input→T9 input

■**Enter dakuten, han-dakuten**
＊ (one time or more)

■**Entering comma**
(one time or more)

■**Switch to kanji/hiragana, katakana, alphabet or number mode**
(Chrct) (one time or more)

Cut here

■Enter pictograph and symbol continuously

(PI・SB)➜Select pictograph or symbol➜CLR after entering

■Clear character

Use ⊕ to move the cursor to the character to clear ➜CLR

■Enter space

(FUNC)➜“Space”

(Only when the cursor is at the end of the text)

■Insert a line feed

✳ (for 1 second or longer)

(Only when the cursor is at the end of the text)

■Switch the upper case/lower case of entered text

✳

Enter “携帯” on Text memo

■Text entry (edit) display

MENU➜“LifeKit”➜“Text memo”➜(Edit)➜(Chrct) (Several times)➜“Kanji/hiragana input mode”➜

け➜2 4 times, い➜1 2 times,
た➜4 1 time, い➜1 2 times

■Character conversion

(Convert)➜⊕➜⊕➜Select “携帯” from the candidates

Camera

■Shoot still image

MENU➜“LifeKit”➜“Camera”➜“Photo mode”➜● (Record)➜● (Save)

■Continuous shooting

MENU➜“LifeKit”➜“Camera”➜“Photo mode”➜(FUNC)➜“CHG camera-mode”➜“Continuous shooting”➜“Auto” or “Manual”➜● (Cont./Record)➜(FUNC)➜Select the saving method

■Movie mode

MENU➜“LifeKit”➜“Camera”➜“Movie mode”➜● (Record)➜● (Exit)➜● (Save)

Display still image/movie/play melody

■Displaying a still image

MENU➜“Data Box”➜“My picture”➜Select folder➜Select still image

■Playing a movie

MENU➜“Data Box”➜“i-motion”➜Select folder➜Select movie

■Playing a melody

MENU➜“Data Box”➜“Melody”➜Select folder➜Select melody

Using the music player

■Playing the Music

MENU➜“Data Box”➜“Music”➜Select folder➜Select music

Making/receiving videophone call

■Make a videophone call

Enter the phone number ➜(V.phone) ➜☎ after talking ends

■Receiving a videophone call

The ring tone sounds and the incoming call lamp flashes.

☎ or ● (Subst.)➜☎ after talking ends

☎: Sends your camera image to the caller.
● (Subst.): Sends your substitute image to the caller.

■During a call

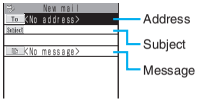
: Switches/cancels handsfree (ON/OFF).

● (Change): Switches the camera (Front camera/rear camera).

Cut here

i-mode mail

Composing/sending i-mode mail



■Compose message screen

(Mail) ➜“Compose message”

■Enter Address

“ To ”➜Enter Address

■Enter Subject

“ Subject ”➜Enter Subject

■Enter Message

“ ”➜Enter Message

■Sending mail

(Send)➜“OK”

Attaching files

■Attaching a image, i-motion, melody, PDF, Document, ToruCa, etc.

Display the new mail screen➜(ch) (FUNC)➜“Attach file”➜Select an item➜Select a folder➜Select the data

■Attaching phonebook

Display the new mail screen➜(ch) (FUNC)➜“Attach file”➜“Phonebook”➜“Phone”➜“Search a phonebook”➜Select a phonebook

■Attaching My Profile

Display the new mail screen➜(ch) (FUNC)➜“Attach file”➜“My Profile”➜Enter your security code➜● (Set)

■Attaching schedule

Display the new mail screen➜(ch) (FUNC)➜“Attach file”➜“Schedule”➜Select an item➜Select the data➜● (Select)

■Attaching bookmark

Display the new mail screen➜(ch) (FUNC)➜“Attach file”➜“Bookmark”➜Select an item➜Select a folder➜Select the data➜● (Select)

Receiving i-mode mail

“ ” flashes➜Received results screen appears➜Select “ (New)”

Other mail functions

■Replying mail

Display the mail to reply➜(Mail) (Reply)➜“ ”➜Enter message➜(Mail) (Send)➜“OK”

■Forwarding mail

Display the mail to forward➜(ch) (FUNC)➜“Forward”➜“ To ”➜Enter a mail address➜(Mail) (Send)➜“OK”

Check new messages

(Mail) (1 second or longer)

Menu Function List

* Menu number (key operation) is available when setting the theme of main menu to “Standard”.

(Menu)

Main item	Sub item	Branch item
Mail	Inbox	
	Outbox	
	Draft	
	Compose message	
	WEB Mail	
	Chat Mail	
	Compose SMS	
	Check new messages	
	Receive option	
	Check new SMS	
	Template	
	Mail settings	
i-mode	iMenu	
	Bookmark	
	Screen memo	

(Menu)

Main item	Sub item	Branch item
i-mode	URL History	
	Go to location	
	One-touch mlt win.	
	Full Browser	
	i-Channel	
	Message R/F	
	Check new messages	
	Client certificate	
	i-mode settings	
i-αppli	Software list	
	microSD	
	Auto-start set	
	i-αppli action info	
Settings	Kisekae Tool setting	
	Incoming call	Ring volume
		Select ring tone
		Sound effect
		Vibrator
		Illumination

Cut here

Menu

Main item	Sub item	Branch item
Settings	Incoming call	Manner mode set
		Disp. phonebook image
		Answer setting
		Mail/Msg. ring time
		Ring time(sec.)
		Info notice setting
		Record message
		Disp. call/receive No.
		Melody Call setting
	Talk	Noise reduction
		Quality alarm
		Reconnect signal
		Illumination in talk
		Set hold tone
		Setting when folded

Menu

Main item	Sub item	Branch item
Settings	Dialing	Pause dial
		Sub-address setting
		Prefix setting
		Headset sw to dial
		Int'l dial assistance
	Videophone	Visual preference
		Select image
		Auto redial as voice
		Remote monitoring
		Display setting
		Ntfy switch-mode
		Hands-free switch
		V-phone while packet
	Display	Display setting
		Backlight
		Display design
		Indicator display
		Font
		Desktop icon

Menu

Main item	Sub item	Branch item	
Settings	Display	3D display setting	
		Select language	
		Original menu	
		Menu display set	
		Viewer settings	
		Icons	
		Icons setting	
		Privacy angle	
	Call time/Charge	Call data	
		Notice designate calls	
		Reset total	
		Auto reset total cost	
	Clock	Set main time	
		Set sub clock	
		Clock display	
		Alarm setting	
		Clock Alarm Tone set	
	Lock/ Security	Lock	Dial lock
			Original lock

Menu

Main item	Sub item	Branch item
Settings	Lock/ Security	IC card lock setting
		Keypad lock
		Face authentication
		Self mode
		Secret mode
		Secret data only mode
		Reject unknown
		Call setting w/o ID
		Change security code
		IC card authentic.
		PIN setting
		Scanning function
	Connection setting	Set connection timeout
		Set check new messages
		Host selection
		SMS center selection
		Certificate
		Certificate host
	i-αppli settings	Disp. Software info
		End stand-by display
		i-αppli vol.

Menu

Main item	Sub item	Branch item
Settings	External connection	USB mode setting
		Headset usage setting
		Select microphone
		Auto answer setting
	Int'l roaming set	NW search mode
		3G/GSM setting
		Display operator name
	Other settings	Keypad sound
		Charge sound
		Battery level
		Side key guard
		Character input set
		ch-key setting
		Illumination
		Reset settings
		Initialize
		Software Update

Menu

Main item	Sub item	Branch item
Data box	My picture	
	Music	
	Music&Video Channel	
	i-motion	
	Melody	
	My document	
	Chara-den	
	Kisekae Tool	
	Document viewer	
LifeKit	Bar code reader	
	Receive Ir data	
	microSD manager	
	Camera	
	Life history viewer	
	GPS	
	Data security serv.	
	Schedule	
	Alarm	
	To Do list	
	Text memo	

Cut here

Menu

Main item	Sub item	Branch item
LifeKit	Calculator	
	Play/Erase msg.	
	Play/Erase VP msg.	
	Voice memo	
	Voice announce	
	UIM operation	
	My Profile	
	Forwarding image	
	Text reader	
	Dictionary	
Service	Chaku-moji	
	Caller ID Notification	
	Voice Mail	
	Call Waiting	
	Call Forwarding	
	2in1 setting	
	Nuisance Call Blk	
	Caller ID Request	

Menu

Main item	Sub item	Branch item
Service	Incoming Call Mng	
	Set in-call arrival	
	Remote Control	
	Dual Network	
	English Guidance	
	Additional service	
	Service Numbers	
	Multi Number	
	Roam. Guidance	
	Bar incoming when roam	
	Service (Int.)	
Phonebook	Phonebook	
	PushTalk	
Own Data	Received calls	
	Dialed calls	
	Mail member	
	Chat group	
	Choku-Den	

Menu

Main item	Sub item	Branch item
Own Data	Common phrases	
	Own dictionary	
	DL dictionary	
MUSIC	Music player	
	Music&Video Channel	
Camera		
Osaifu-Keitai	IC card content	
	DCMX	
	ToruCa	
	IC card lock setting	
	Setting	
	Search by i-mode	

<Other functions>

- Manner mode: # (1 second or longer) (Set/release with each press)
- Public mode
  (Driving mode): * (1 second or longer) (Set/release with each press)

Network services

Voice Mail service

Activate

MENU➜“Service”➜“Voice Mail”➜“Activate”➜“YES”➜“YES”➜Enter Ring time (seconds)

Deactivate

MENU➜“Service”➜“Voice Mail”➜“Deactivate”➜“YES”

Play messages

MENU➜“Service”➜“Voice Mail”➜“Play messages”➜“YES”➜Follow the voice guidance

Call Waiting

Activate

MENU➜“Service”➜“Call Waiting”➜“Activate”➜“YES”

Deactivate

MENU➜“Service”➜“Call Waiting”➜“Deactivate”➜“YES”

Answering another incoming call

Press ☎ to switch to incoming call.

To switch the calls, press ☎.

Call Forwarding Service

Activate

MENU➜“Service”➜“Call Forwarding”➜“Activate”➜Set a forwarding number and the ring time, then select “Activate”➜“YES”

Deactivate

MENU➜“Service”➜“Call Forwarding”➜“Deactivate”➜“YES”

Caller ID Request

Activate

MENU➜“Service”➜“Caller ID Request”➜“Activate”➜“YES”➜“OK”

Deactivate

MENU➜“Service”➜“Caller ID Request”➜“Deactivate”➜“YES”➜“OK”

Cut here

Services Available for the FOMA Terminal

Directory assistance (charged: service charge + call charge) *1	(No area code) 104
Telegram (charged: telegram charge)	(No area code) 115
Time (charged)	(No area code) 117
Weather forecast (charged)	Desired area's Area code + 177
Emergency call to the police *2	(No area code) 110
Emergency call for a fire engine or an ambulance *2	(No area code) 119
Emergency call for help with maritime accidents	(No area code) 118
Emergency Message Recording System (charged)	(No area code) 171
Collect call (charged: service charge + call charge)	(No area code) 106

*1: Unlisted phone numbers cannot be given.

*2: An emergency call to the local fire station or police station may not be connected in some areas. In that case, call again from a public phone or land line.

Icon indication

■ **Appearance**



■ **Typical icons**

: Battery level

: Signal strength

: i-mode in progress

: SSL-compatible page displayed

: Unread mail

: Unread MessageF

: Mail kept at the i-mode Center

: When Dial lock is set

: IC card lock setting

: GPS location being positioned

: While in communication mode (USB cable connected)

: Ir data exchange in progress

: microSD memory card inserted

: During a voice call

: Vibrator is set

: "Ring volume" is set to "Silent"

: Manner mode is set

: Public mode (Driving mode) is set

: Music&Video channel reservation being set

/ : Alarm is set

to , : Voice mail message

to : Record message is set

to : Record message (Record VP message) is set

: Emergency mode is set to "ON"

: Keypad lock is set/ready

: When external keys guard is set to "ON"

<Contact for lost, etc>

Omakase Lock

* Omakase Lock is a pay service. If you subscribe to the service at the same time with the subscription of suspending the service or while the service is suspended, no charge applies.

Set/Release Omakase Lock

0120-524-360

24 hours available (only in Japanese)

* Omakase Lock can be set/released from My DoCoMo website via PC, etc.

Other contacts

<Contact: >

<Contact: >

<Contact: >

* Check the phone number carefully before dialing.

Cut here

NTT DoCoMo

FOMA® N905iμ

Quick Manual (For Overseas Use)

○**Lost or theft of FOMA terminal, or payment of cumulative cost overseas**

<DoCoMo Information Center> (available 24 hours a day)

●**DoCoMo mobile phone**

International Access Codes of the country (Table 1) **-81-3-5366-3114*** **(toll free)**

* Calling from the fixed phone will be charged according to the call rate for Japan.

✻ If you use N905iμ, you should dial the number +81-3-5366-3114 (to dial "+", press the "0" key for over a second).

●**Fixed phone <Universal numbers>**

Universal Number International ID Code (Table 2) **-800-0120-0151***

* You are charged according to the call rate for the country where you are staying.

✻ See p.9 for International Access Codes of major countries (Table 1) and p.10 for Universal Number International ID Code (Table 2) in this manual.

○**Failures encountered overseas**

<Network Technical Support and Operation Center> (available 24 hours a day)

●**DoCoMo mobile phone**

International Access Codes of the country (Table 1) **-81-3-6718-1414*** **(toll free)**

* Calling from the landline will be charged according to the call rate for Japan.

✻ If you use N905iμ, you should dial the number +81-3-6718-1414 (to dial "+", press the "0" key for over a second).

●**Fixed phone <Universal numbers>**

Universal Number International ID Code (Table 2) **-800-5931-8600***

* You are charged according to the call rate for the country where you are staying.

✻ See p.9 for International Access Codes of major countries (Table 1) and p.10 for Universal Number International ID Code (Table 2) in this manual.

Before traveling

i-mode

■Set in Japan

i-mode→"iMenu"→"English iMenu"→"Options"→"International Settings"→"i-mode services Settings"→"Yes"→Enter i-mode password→"Select"

■Set abroad

i-mode→"iMenu"→"English iMenu"→"International Settings"→"Yes"→Enter i-mode password→"Set"

Remote Control

■Set in Japan

MENU→"Service"→"Remote Control"→"Activate"→"YES"

■Set abroad

MENU→"Service"→"Service (Int.)"→"Remote Control (Int.)"→"YES"→Follow the audio guidance

Time Correction

MENU→"Settings"→"Clock"→"Set main time"→"Auto time adjust"→Select "Auto" for "Auto time" and "Auto time difference"

World Clock

MENU→"Settings"→"Clock"→"Set sub clock"→"display method"→Select "Auto"

Available Services

- Voice/videophone calls
- i-mode (induding Full Browser)
- i-Channel
- Packet communication via PC
- i-mode mail
- SMS
- MessageR

* Depends on the network to be accessed or operator.

Setting Network Switching Method

MENU→"Settings"→"Int'l roaming set"→"3G/GSM setting"→"Auto", "3G" or "GSM/GPRS"

Setting the Search Mode of the Operator

■Switching the operator automatically or manually

MENU→"Settings"→"Int'l roaming set"→"NW search mode"→"Auto" or "Manual"
When set to "Manual", select an operator.

■Re-searching the connectable operator

MENU→"Settings"→"Int'l roaming set"→"NW search mode"→"Network re-search"
When set to "Manual", select an operator.

Setting an operator to be preferably connected

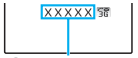
MENU→"Settings"→"Int'l roaming set"→"NW search mode"→"PLMN setting"→Highlight the operator to change the priority→ch (FUNC)→"Change priority"→Highlight the destination→● (Select)→✉ (Finish)→"YES"

Setting operator name display

MENU→"Settings"→"Int'l roaming set"→"Display operator name"→"Display ON" or "Display OFF"

■Display on the screen

The name of the currently connected operator appears on the task icon area.



Connected operator

After returning to Japan

When you returned to Japan and turn on the FOMA terminal, the network will be automatically searched and set to the FOMA network (DoCoMo). Setting the Search Mode of the Operator→p.4

Making a Call

Making a call to outside your destination country (including Japan)

■Making a call to a country registered in "Int'l dial assistance"

Dial the other party's phone number→ch (FUNC)→"Int'l call"→Select a country→📞 or ✉ (V. phone)

■Making a call by dialing from the country code

On the standby screen, dial + (0 (1 second or longer))→Country code→Area code (Long distance code)→The other party's phone number→📞 or ✉ (V. phone)

Cut here

Making a local call abroad

Dial the other party's phone number ➔ or (V. phone)

Receiving a call

When you receive a voice/videophone call, press

Network services

To use the network serivce overseas, set Remote Control beforehand.

Roam. Guidance

- Make the setting in Japan.
  ➔"Serivce"➔"Roam. Guidance"➔"Activate" or "Deactivate"➔"YES"

Bar incoming when roam

- This service may not be set depending on overseas roaming operator.
  ➔"Serivce"➔"Bar incoming when roam"➔"Activate" or "Deactivate"
  When set to "Activate", select the setting from "Bar All incoming" or "Data calls Barring".
  ➔"YES"➔Enter your network security code

Voice Mail (Int.)

➔"Service"➔"Service (Int.)"➔"Voice Mail (Int.)"➔Select the service➔"YES"➔Follow the audio guidance

Call Forwarding (Int.)

➔"Service"➔"Service (Int.)"➔"Call Forwarding (Int.)"➔Select the service➔"YES"➔Follow the audio guidance

Roam. Guidance (Int.)

➔"Serivce"➔"Service (Int.)"➔"Roam.Guidance(Int.)"➔"YES"➔Follow the audio guidance

Remote access (Int.)

➔"Service"➔"Service (Int.)"➔"Remote access(Int.)"➔"YES"➔Follow the audio guidance

Caller ID req. (Int.)

➔"Serivce"➔"Service (Int.)"➔"Caller ID req. (Int.)"➔"YES"➔Follow the audio guidance

Country codes of major countries

Enter the following country codes when using international call or setting "Int'l dial assistance".

(As of October, 2007)

Area	ID Code	Area	ID Code	Area	ID Code
United States of America	1	Switzerland	41	Fiji	679
		Sweden	46	Philippines	63
United Kingdom	44	Spain	34	Finland	358
Italy	39	Thailand	66	French Polynesia	689
India	91	Taiwan	886	France	33
Indonesia	62	Czech	420	Brazil	55
Egypt	20	China	86	Vietnam	84
Australia	61	Germany	49	Peru	51
Austria	43	Turkey	90	Belgium	32
Holland	31	Japan	81	Hong Kong	852
Canada	1	New Caledonia	687	Macao	853
Korea	82	New Zealand	64	Malaysia	60
Greece	30	Norway	47	Maldives	960
Singapore	65	Hungary	36	Russia	7

* For other country codes and details, see the DoCoMo "International Services Website".

International Access Codes of major countries (Table 1)

(As of August 2007)

Area	ID Code	Area	ID Code	Area	ID Code
Ireland	00	Switzerland	00	Finland	00
United States of America	011	Sweden	00	France	00
		Spain	00	Brazil	00417 0014
United Arab Emirates	00	Thailand	001		
United Kingdom	00	Taiwan	002	Vietnam	00
Italy	00	Czech	00	Belgium	00
India	00	China	00	Poland	00
Indonesia	001	Denmark	00	Portugal	00
Australia	0011	Germany	00	Hong Kong	001
Holland	00	Turkey	00	Macao	00
Canada	011	New Zealand	00	Malaysia	00
Korea	001	Norway	00	Monaco	00
Greece	00	Hungary	00	Luxemburg	00
Singapore	001	Philippines	00	Russia	810

* For the latest information, see the DoCoMo "International Services Website".

Universal Number International ID Code (Table 2)

(As of August 2007)

Area	ID Code	Area	ID Code	Area	ID Code
Ireland	00	Singapore	001	Finland	990
United States of America	011	Switzerland	00	France	00
		Sweden	00	Brazil	0021
Argentina	00	Spain	00	Bulgar	00
United Kingdom	00	Thailand	001	Peru	00
Israel	014	Taiwan	00	Belgium	00
Italy	00	China	00	Portugal	00
Australia	0011	Denmark	00	Hong Kong	001
Austria	00	Germany	00	Malaysia	00
Holland	00	New Zealand	00	South Africa	09
Canada	011	Norway	00	Luxemburg	00
Korea	001	Hungary	00		
Colombia	009	Philippines	00		

* Note that the universal numbers may not be available from mobile phones, public phones or hotels.

* For the latest information, see the DoCoMo "International Services Website".

Inquiries

For inquiries overseas such as lost, stolen, charge accumulation or malfunction, refer to "For lost, stolen, charge accumulation, etc. overseas" on the front cover of the Quick Manual (For Overseas Use) or "For malfunctions overseas" in p.1.

- When dialing to the inquiries numbers, International access code or Universal number international ID code assigned to your destination country is required. For details on "International access code" and "Universal number international ID code", refer to the "Mobile Phone User's Guide [World Service]".

* Note that the universal numbers may not be available from mobile phones, public phones or hotels.

Cut here

Access DoCoMo e-site for procedures to change your address or billing plan and for request of information materials.

From i-mode iMenu ⇒ 料金&お申込・設定 (Charges & Applications/Setting) ⇒ 各種手続き (ドコモeサイト) (Application procedure (DoCoMo e-site)) Packet communication charges free

From PC My DoCoMo (http://www.mydocomo.com/) ⇒ 各種手続き (ドコモeサイト) (Application procedure (DoCoMo e-site))

* You will need your "network ID" to access e-site from i-mode.
* No packet communication charges are incurred when accessing e-site from i-mode. Accessing from overseas will incur charges.
* You will need "DoCoMo ID/password" to access e-site from PC.
* If you do not have or you have forgotten your "network ID" or "DoCoMo ID/password", contact the DoCoMo information Center listed on the back cover of this manual.
* DoCoMo e-site may not be available depending upon the content of your subscription.
* You may not be able to access e-site services due to system maintenance, etc.

Using your FOMA Terminal Politely

When using your FOMA terminal, do not forget to consider the feelings of people around you.

Turn off your FOMA terminal when you are:

■ In a place where it is prohibited to use a mobile phone.
It is prohibited to use a mobile phone in some places. Turn off your FOMA terminal in:
・An airplane ・A hospital
* There is not only a person in a ward who uses medical electrical equipment.Turn off your FOMA terminal even in a lobby or waiting room.

■ Driving
The penalty shall be imposed on use of a handset held in your hand while driving.
* If you are obliged to receive a call, tell the other to call back later in handsfree mode and stop the car at a secure location for dialing.

■ In a crowded place such as rush-hour train, where somebody nearby may be using an implantable cardiac pacemaker or implantable cardioverter-defibrillator
Radio waves may affect the operation of implantable cardiac pacemakers or implantable cardioverter-defibrillators.

■ In a public place such as theater, cinema, or museum
Using the FOMA terminal in a public place, where you need to be quiet, annoys people around you.

Mind where you use your FOMA terminal and the loudness of your voice or the ring tone

■ If you use your FOMA terminal in a quiet place such as restaurant or hotel lobby, mind the loudness of your voice is, etc.

■ Take care not to disturb other people when you use your FOMA terminal in a public place.

Respect privacy

Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones.

These functions enable you to be well-mannered

Your FOMA terminal is equipped with useful functions not to answer an incoming call or to mute the sounds of the FOMA terminal.

[Manner mode/Original manner mode]→p.105
Manner mode mutes the sounds of the FOMA terminal such as the keypad sounds and the ring tone. You can customize manner mode by changing the settings of the Record message function, vibrator or ring tone (Original manner mode). However, neither Manner mode nor Original manner mode can mute the shutter sound of the camera.
[Public mode (Driving mode/Power OFF)]→pp.67, 69
The FOMA terminal announces to the caller that you cannot answer the call because you are driving, or you are in the place you have to retain from calling or you have to turn off the mobile phone.
[Vibrator]→p.102
The FOMA terminal vibrates to notify you of an incoming call.
[Record message function]→p.70
When you cannot answer a call, the caller can leave a message.
You can also use optional services such as the Voice Mail service (p.372) and Call Forwarding service (p.374).

This manual is bound in consideration of recycling. When this manual becomes unnecessary, we appreciate your cooperation of taking this manual out to the collection or recycling.

General Inquiries <DoCoMo Information Center>

(In English)

0120-005-250 (toll free)

*Can be called from mobile phones and PHSs.

(In Japanese only)

(No prefix) 151 (toll free)

*Can only be called from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHSs.

Repairs

(In Japanese only)

(No prefix) 113 (toll free)

*Can only be called from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHSs.

(In Japanese only)

0120-800-000 (toll free)

*Can be called from mobile phones and PHSs.
* Please confirm the phone number before you dial.
* For further information, refer to the "Nationwide Service Station List" included with your FOMA terminal and other devices.

Lost or theft of FOMA terminal, or payment of cumulative cost overseas

<DoCoMo Information Center> (available 24 hours a day)

DoCoMo mobile phone

International Access Codes of the country (Table 1) **-81-3-5366-3114*** (toll free)

*Calling from the fixed phone will be charged according to the call rate for Japan.

* If you use N905iμ, you should dial the number +81-3-5366-3114 (to dial "+", press the "0" key for over a second).

Fixed phone

<Universal number>

Universal Number International ID Code (Table 2) **-800-0120-0151***

*You are charged according to the call rate for the country where you are staying.

* See p.394 for International Access Codes of major countries (Table 1) and p.395 for Universal Number International ID Code (Table 2) in this manual.

Failures encountered overseas

<Network Technical Support and Operation Center> (available 24 hours a day)

DoCoMo mobile phone

International Access Codes of the country (Table 1) **-81-3-6718-1414*** (toll free)

*Calling from the fixed phone will be charged according to the call rate for Japan.

* If you use N905iμ, you should dial the number +81-3-6718-1414 (to dial "+", press the "0" key for over a second).

Fixed phone

<Universal number>

Universal Number International ID Code (Table 2) **-800-5931-8600***

*You are charged according to the call rate for the country where you are staying.

* See p.394 for International Access Codes of major countries (Table 1) and p.395 for Universal Number International ID Code (Table 2) in this manual.

- If your FOMA terminal is lost or stolen overseas, take procedure to suspend the subscription immediately.
- If your FOMA terminal has been damaged overseas, bring it to a repair counter designated by DoCoMo after returning to Japan.



Don't forget your cellular phone ... or your manners!

○When using your mobile phone in public, don't forget to show common courtesy and consideration for others around you.

Sales: NTT DoCoMo Group

NTT DoCoMo Hokkaido, Inc.	NTT DoCoMo Tohoku, Inc.	NTT DoCoMo, Inc.
NTT DoCoMo Tokai, Inc.	NTT DoCoMo Hokuriku, Inc.	NTT DoCoMo Kansai, Inc.
NTT DoCoMo Chugoku, Inc.	NTT DoCoMo Shikoku, Inc.	NTT DoCoMo Kyushu, Inc.

Manufacturer: NEC Corporation



To prevent damage to the environment, bring used battery packs to an NTT DoCoMo service counter, an NTT DoCoMo agent or a recycle center.



Made from 100% recycled paper



This manual is printed using an ink based on soy bean oil.

'07.11 (1st Edition)
MDT-000077-EAA0

FOMA® N905iμ
Manual for PC connection setting

About Data Communication Available for the FOMA Terminal 1
Before Using 3
Checking the Procedure 4
Setting the PC 7
About the FOMA PC Setting Software 10
How to Set Various Settings 17
Executing Set Data Communication 23
Optimizing Communication Settings 26
Access Point Name (APN) Settings 27
Setting up Dial-up Network 28
Setting up Dial-up 35
AT Command List 46

About Manual for PC connection setting
This manual describes necessary information for data communication using the FOMA N905iμ and how to install "FOMA communication setting file" and "FOMA PC setting software" provided in the CD-ROM. The procedures or screens may vary depending on your environment.

About Data Communication Available for the FOMA Terminal

Packet communication and 64K data communication

Data communication that can be used between the FOMA terminal and PCs is classified in 2 categories: packet communication and 64K data communication.

● Packet communication

The data is received at the maximum speed of 3.6Mbps and sent at the maximum speed of 384kbps.* Packet communication is charged according to the amount of data sent and received, regardless of the time it takes or the distance. Note that the communication charge can become expensive when large files are sent and received. It is also possible to access a corporate LAN connected to a FOMA network and exchange data.

- When you use packet communication with DoCoMo PDA "sigmarion Ⅲ" or "musea", the communication speed is 384kbps at maximum for both sending and receiving. It is not compatible with FOMA HIGH-SPEED Area communication.

* : The communication speed is 384kbps at maximum for both sending and receiving outside FOMA HIGH-SPEED area.

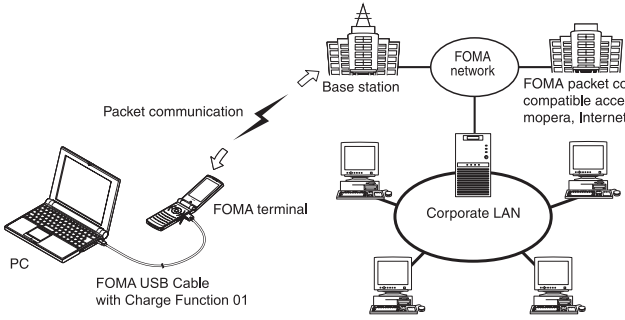
● 64K data communication

This type of communication is charged according to the length of time the line is connected regardless of the amount of data. Note that the communication charge can become expensive when the line is connected for a long time.

■ For packet communication

Packet communication is performed via the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 (optional) connected to a PC or via a dedicated cable connected to a PDA.
Use an access point that supports FOMA packet communication, such as DoCoMo Internet connection service "mopera U" or "mopera".

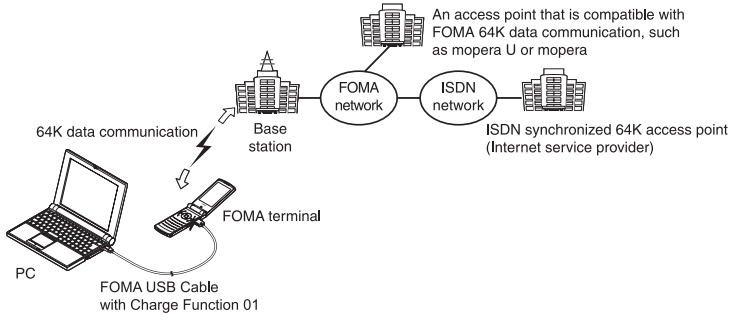
- DoCoMo Internet service "mopera" is also available. When you use access points for "mopera", the communication speed is 384kbps at maximum for both sending and receiving.



■ For 64K data communication

64K data communication is performed via the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 (optional) connected to a PC or via a dedicated cable connected to a PDA.
Use an access point that supports FOMA 64K data communication, such as DoCoMo Internet connection service "mopera U".

- DoCoMo Internet service "mopera" is also available.



NOTE

- Select IP connection method when you perform packet communication overseas. (Packet communication using PPP connection is not supported.)
- 64K data communication is not available overseas.

Notice before using

Internet service provider fees

In addition to FOMA service charges, you may need to pay user fees to an Internet service provider to use the Internet. These fees must be paid directly to the Internet service provider in addition to service fees of FOMA service. Contact your Internet service provider for details.
DoCoMo Internet connection service "mopera U" or "mopera" is available. "mopera U" is a pay service for which you need to apply. "mopera" is a free service for which you do not need to apply.

Setting an access point (e.g. Internet service provider)

Packet communication and 64K data communication use different access points. If you are using packet communication, use an applicable access point for it; if 64K data communication, use an access point for FOMA 64K data communication or ISDN synchronized 64K.

- You cannot use DoPa access points.
- You cannot use access points for PHS64K/32K data communication such as PIAFS.

User authorization when accessing network

Some access points may require your user authorization (ID and password) when connecting. Use communication software (Dial-up network) to enter your ID and password. ID and password will be provided by your Internet service provider or the network administrator. Contact the Internet service provider or network administrator for details.

Access authorization when using the browser

To view FirstPass compliant sites on your PC's browser, FirstPass (user certification) for access authorization is needed. Install the FirstPass PC software from the attached CD-ROM and conduct the setting. For details, refer to "FirstPassManual" (PDF format) under the "FirstPassPCSoft" folder provided in the CD-ROM. (The "FirstPassManual" is only in Japanese.) To view the "FirstPassManual" (PDF format), Adobe® Reader® is required. Unless you install it on your PC, install the Adobe® Reader® from the CD-ROM to read the document. For how to use it, refer to the Adobe® Reader® help.

Required conditions for performing packet and 64K data communication

The following conditions are required* to perform communication using the FOMA terminal:

- Your PC is compatible with the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 (optional).
- You are in the FOMA service area.
- For packet communication, the access point supports FOMA packet communication.
- For 64K data communication, the access point supports FOMA 64K data communication or ISDN synchronized 64K.

However, depending on congestion of the base station or weaker signal strength, you cannot perform communication even when the above conditions are satisfied.

* : For communication in Japan

Before Using

Operational environment

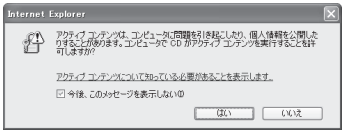
The PC operation environment to use data communication is as shown below:

PC unit	• PC/AT compatible model with CD-ROM drive • USB port (compliant to Universal Serial Bus Specification Rev1.1) • Display resolution of 800 dots wide × 600 dots high, High Color (65,536 colors) is recommended
OS*1	• Windows 2000 (Japanese version) • Windows XP (Japanese version) • Windows Vista (Japanese version)
Required memory	• Windows 2000: 64M bytes or higher*2 • Windows XP: 128M bytes or higher*2 • Windows Vista: 512M bytes or higher*2
Hard disk space	• 5M bytes or higher*2

*1： The proper operations on the upgraded OS are not guaranteed.
*2： The required memory and necessary hard disk space may differ depending on the PC's system configuration.

● Microsoft Internet Explorer 6.0* or later is recommended to run the menu. If the menu screen does not appear even when you insert the CD-ROM, use the following procedure:
① Open "スタート" (Start) → "マイコンピュータ" (My Computer)
For Windows Vista, open " " → "コンピュータ" (Computer)
② Right-click the CD-ROM icon and select "開く" (Open)
③ Double-click "index.html"
*：For Windows Vista, Microsoft Internet Explorer 7.0 or later is recommended.

When the CD-ROM is inserted to the PC, the warning screen as shown right may appear. This warning is displayed according to the security setting of the Internet Explorer. There is no matter with using the software. Click "はい" (Yes).
* This screen is an example when using Windows XP. The warning screen may differ depending on the environments of your PC.



NOTE

● You can transmit data with the FOMA terminal connected to the DoCoMo PDA "musea" or "sigmarion Ⅲ". Update "musea" when you connect it to a FOMA terminal. For how to update it and other details, visit the DoCoMo website.
● This FOMA terminal is not compatible with Remote Wakeup function.
● This FOMA terminal is not compatible with the FAX communication.

Required devices

The following hardware and software, in addition to the FOMA terminal and a PC, are required.
• "FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01" (optional) or "FOMA USB Cable" (optional)
• CD- ROM "CD-ROM for FOMA N905iμ"

NOTE

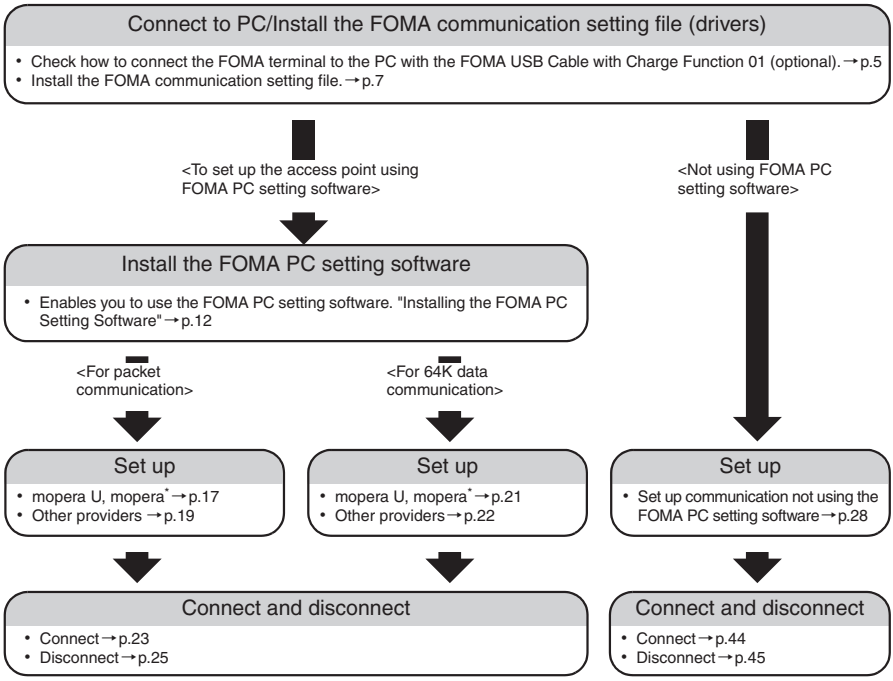
● Purchase the specified "FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01" or "FOMA USB Cable". The USB cable for PC cannot be used because the shape of the connector is different.
● This manual gives an example when you use "FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01".
● The FOMA USB Cables may not function properly when connected to a USB HUB.

Checking the Procedure

In data communication, the connection is made through a dial-up connection with Internet service providers or LANs that support FOMA data communication.

Flow chart for completing the data communication setup

This section describes preparation to use packet communication and 64K data communication.



* : To use Internet with the FOMA terminal and PC connected, "mopera U" (you need to apply for) is useful, which supports broadband connection, etc. Consider the plan in which you are charged only in a month when you use the service. If you use "mopera" for which you do not need to apply, you can access Internet immediately.
For more information, visit the DoCoMo website.

Setting the USB mode setting to "Communication mode"

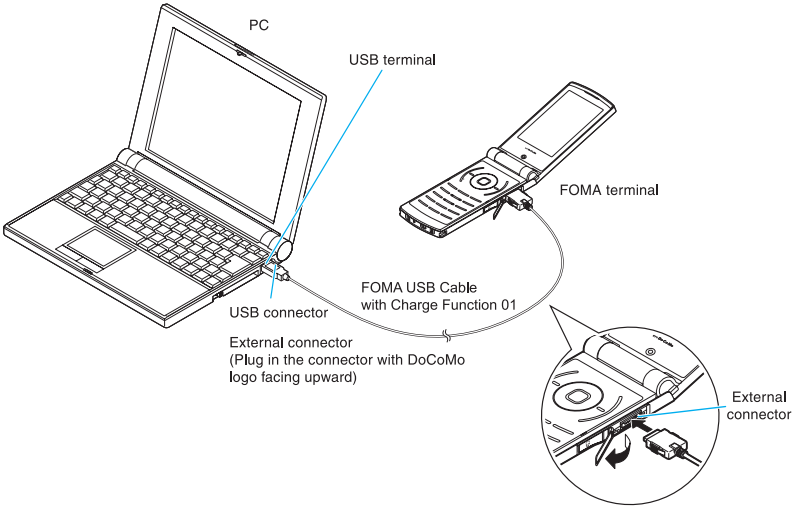
Set the external connector to be used for the packet communication and 64K data communication.

● Before connecting to PC, set "USB mode setting" to "Communication mode".

1 MENU/MULTI ▶"Settings"▶"External connection"▶"USB mode setting"▶"Communication mode"

Connecting the devices

The following procedure explains how to connect the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 (optional).



1 Open the external connector cap of the FOMA terminal

2 Check the orientation of the external connector of the FOMA terminal, then insert the external connector of the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 horizontally until you hear a click

3 Connect the USB connector of the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 to the USB terminal of your PC

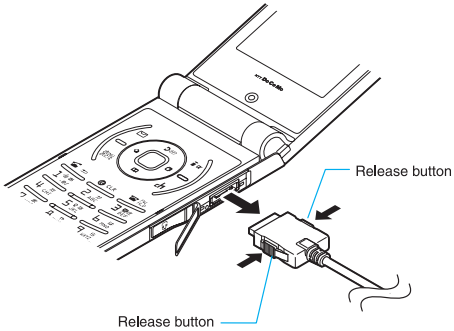
" " appears on the FOMA terminal when the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 is connected.

NOTE

● " " appears on the FOMA terminal when the FOMA communication setting file is installed and the connection with a PC is recognized. Before the FOMA communication setting file is installed, the connection is not recognized and " " does not appear.

Disconnecting the devices

The following procedure explains how to disconnect the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 (optional).



1 Remove the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 from the USB terminal of the PC

2 Pull the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 out horizontally while pressing the release buttons of the external connector of FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01

3 Close the external connector cap of the FOMA terminal

NOTE

- When you connect and disconnect the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 repeatedly, wait for a while in each step because the FOMA terminal may not recognize the PC correctly.
- Do not disconnect the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 during data communication because this may cause the disconnection of communication, malfunction or loss of data.
- Keep pressing the release buttons of the external connector of the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 when pulling it out of the external connector of the FOMA terminal. Using excessive force to pull the cable may cause malfunction.

Setting the PC

The following procedure explains how to install the FOMA communication setting file (drivers).

Installing the FOMA communication setting file (drivers)

● When installing FOMA communication setting file, be sure to log on as Administrator. If you attempt to install the file with another account, an error occurs. Contact your PC's manufacturer or Microsoft for information on how to set Administrator privileges on your PC.

1 Start up Windows and insert the "CD-ROM for FOMA N905iμ" in the CD-ROM drive of your PC

This screen will automatically appear.



2 Click "データリンクソフト・各種設定ソフト" (Setup software)

3 Click "インストール" (Install) of "FOMA通信設定ファイル(USBドライバ)" (FOMA communication setting file (USB driver))

4 Double-click "FOMAinst.exe" in the appeared folder

It is displayed as "FOMAinst" depending on the setting of your PC.

5 Upon confirming the software license agreement, click "同意する" (Agree) to agree to it

If you click "同意しない" (Not agree), the installation is canceled.

6 Turn on the FOMA terminal and then connect the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 (optional) to your FOMA terminal

7 After the message requesting to connect the FOMA terminal to PC appears, connect the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 to the USB terminal of your PC

Installing the drivers automatically starts.
After drivers are successfully installed, FOMA byte counter can be installed successively. To install FOMA byte counter, click "インストールする（推奨）" (Install (Recommended)). Click "完了" (Complete) not to install it.
Proceed to the "Checking the installed driver" (p.8) for further steps.

Checking the installed driver

Check that the FOMA communication setting file (drivers) has been correctly installed.

1 Open the Control Panel of Windows

For Windows Vista

Select " " → "コントロールパネル" (Control Panel)

For Windows XP

Select "スタート" (Start) → "コントロールパネル" (Control Panel)

For Windows 2000

Select "スタート" (Start) →"設定" (Settings) → "コントロールパネル" (Control Panel)

2 Click the "システム" (System) icon in "パフォーマンスとメンテナンス" (Performance and maintenance)

For Windows Vista

Open "システムとメンテナンス" (Systems and maintenance) in the "コントロールパネル" (Control Panel)

For Windows 2000

Open "システム" (System) in the "コントロールパネル" (Control Panel)

3 Open the device manager

For Windows Vista

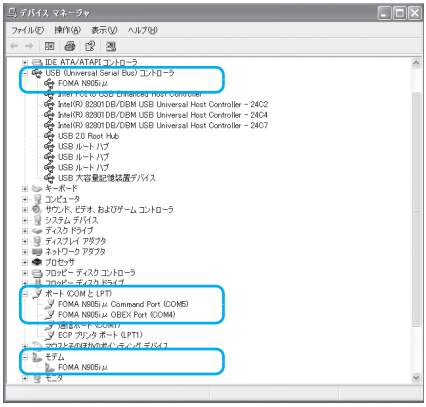
Select "デバイスマネージャ " (Device Manager) and click "続行" (Continue)

For Windows XP and 2000

Click the "ハードウェア" (Hardware) tab and click "デバイスマネージャ " (Device manager)

4 Click each device to check the installed driver name

Check that all the driver names are displayed under "ユニバーサルシリアルバスコントローラ" (Universal Serial Bus Controller) or "USB（Universal Serial Bus）コントローラ" (USB (Universal Serial Bus) controller), "ポート（COMとLPT）" (Ports (COM& LPT)) and "モデム" (Modems).
Check the driver name and proceed to "About the FOMA PC Setting Software" (p.10).



Device name	Driver name
ユニバーサルシリアルバスコントローラ or USB (Universal Serial Bus) コントローラ	• FOMA N905iμ
ポート(COMとLPT)	• FOMA N905iμ Command Port • FOMA N905iμ OBEX Port
モデム	• FOMA N905iμ

NOTE

● When you check the above, if not all the driver names appear, follow the uninstall instructions (p.9) to delete the FOMA communication setting file and install the proper file.

Uninstalling the FOMA communication setting file (drivers)

If necessary (when updating the drivers, etc.), uninstall the drivers as follows. The procedure for uninstalling from a Windows XP machine is described as an example.

- If you attempt to execute "プログラムの追加と削除" (Add and remove applications) while connecting to the FOMA terminal, the uninstall program does not run.
- When uninstalling FOMA communication setting file, be sure to log on as Administrator. If you attempt to uninstall the file with another account, an error occurs. Contact your PC's manufacturer or Microsoft for information on how to set Administrator privileges on your PC.

1 If the FOMA terminal and the PC are connected by the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 (optional), remove the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01

2 Start "プログラムの追加と削除" (Add and remove applications) on the Windows

Open "スタート" (Start)→"コントロールパネル" (Control Panel)→"プログラムの追加と削除" (Add and remove applications)

For Windows Vista

Open " " → "コントロールパネル" (Control Panel)→"プログラムのアンインストール" (Uninstall a program)

For Windows 2000

Open "スタート" (Start) → "設定" (Settings) → "コントロールパネル" (Control Panel) → "アプリケーションの追加と削除" (Add and remove applications)

3 Select "FOMA N905iμ USB" and click "変更と削除" (Change and delete)

For Windows Vista

Select "FOMA N905iμ USB" and click "アンインストールと変更" (Uninstall/Change) and then "続行" (Continue).

4 Click "OK" to uninstall

To cancel uninstallation, click "キャンセル" (Cancel).

5 Click "はい" (Yes) to restart Windows

Now the uninstallation is completed.
If you click "いいえ" (No), restart Windows manually.

NOTE

- When "FOMA N905iμ USB" is not displayed in the "プログラムの追加と削除" (Add and remove applications) on the Windows, perform the following procedure:
  - ①Insert the "CD-ROM for FOMA N905iμ" in the CD-ROM drive of your PC
  - ②Open "スタート" (Start)→"マイコンピュータ" (My Computer)
    For Windows Vista, open " " → "コンピュータ" (Computer)
  - ③Right-click the CD-ROM icon and select "開く" (Open)
  - ④Open "N905iμ_USB_Driver"→"Drivers"→"Win2k_XP" folder in the CD-ROM
    For Windows Vista, open "N905iμ_USB_Driver"→"Drivers"→"WinVista32" folder
  - ⑤Double-click "n905imun.exe" *

  *：It is displayed as "n905imun" depending on the setting of your PC.

About the FOMA PC Setting Software

By using the FOMA PC setting software, you can easily set up the followings:

- You can also set up packet communication and 64K data communication without using the FOMA PC setting software. →p.28



See p.5 for the connection between the FOMA terminal and PC.

かんたん設定 (Easy settings)

The guide walks you through the procedures for "FOMAデータ通信用ダイヤルアップの作成" (Making a new dial-up connection for FOMA data communication) and "通信設定最適化" (Optimize communication settings) together.

通信設定最適化 (Optimize communication settings)

Optimizes the communication settings of a PC before using "FOMA packet communication".
To get the most out of communication performance, it is necessary to optimize communication settings.

接続先（APN）の設定 (Access Point Name (APN) settings)

Sets the access point name (APN) required for packet communication.
Unlike 64K data communication, a normal phone number is not used for FOMA packet communication access point. Before you connect, register the APN (Access Point Name) of each access point in the FOMA terminal and assign its registration number (cid) to the connection point phone number field.
As the APN of mopera "mopera.ne.jp" is assigned to cid1 and APN of mopera U "mopera.net" to cid3 by default, assign the APN to cid2 or between cid4 to cid10.
cid [Context Identifier] ··· a number used to manage the Access Point Name (APN) for the packet communication registered in the FOMA terminal. It is set when registering the APN in the FOMA terminal.

NOTE

- When the old version of FOMA PC setting software (version 4.0.0 or older, hereafter referred to Previous FOMA PC setting software) is installed, uninstall it in advance.

Procedures ranging from installation of the FOMA PC setting software to connection to the Internet

STEP 1
Installing software

Install the "FOMA PC setting software"

See p.12 for installation details.
When the "Previous FOMA PC setting software" is installed, uninstall it before installing the "FOMA PC setting software Ver4.0.0".
When the "Previous FOMA PC setting software" is installed, you cannot install the "FOMA PC setting software Ver4.0.0".
If a screen appears indicating that "Previous W-TCP setting software" or "Previous APN setting software" is installed, see p.14.

STEP 2
Setting preparation

Make preparations for making various settings

Before making various settings, ensure that the FOMA terminal is connected to the PC and has been properly recognized by the PC.
See p.5 for how to connect the FOMA terminal to the PC.
See "Setting the PC" (p.7) for how to make the PC recognize the FOMA terminal properly.
If the FOMA terminal is not properly recognized by the PC, you cannot make various settings nor perform communication.
In this case, install the communication setting file (drivers).

STEP 3
Various settings

Set according to the communication method you use

Easy settings: "Settings for Packet communication using mopera U or mopera" →p.17
Easy settings: "Settings for Packet communication using other providers" →p.19
Easy settings: "Settings for 64K data communication using mopera U or mopera" →p.21
Easy settings: "Settings for 64K data communication using other providers" →p.22
For other settings, see p.26 or the following pages.

STEP 4
Connecting

Connect to the Internet

See p.23 for the executing communication.

Installing the FOMA PC Setting Software

- Check the operating environment prior to the installation of the FOMA PC setting software.→p.3
- When installing the "FOMA PC setting software", be sure to log on as Administrator. If you attempt to install the software with another account, an error occurs. Contact your PC's manufacturer or Microsoft for information on how to set Administrator privileges on your PC.

1 Insert the CD-ROM in the CD-ROM drive of the PC

This screen will automatically appear.



2 Click "データリンクソフト・各種設定ソフト" (Setup software)

3 Click "インストール" (Install) of "FOMA PC設定ソフト" (FOMA PC setting software)

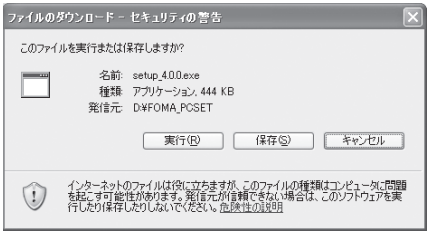
When clicking "インストール" (Install), the warning screen as shown below may appear. This warning is displayed according to the security setting of the Internet Explorer. There is no matter with using the software.

* This screen is an example when using Windows XP. The warning screen may differ depending on the environments of your PC.

When the "ファイルのダウンロードーセキュリティの警告" (Download file－Security warning) screen appears

Click "実行" (Execute).

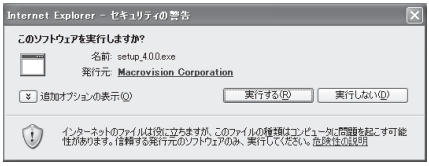
For Windows Vista, click "実行" (Execute) and then "続行" (Continue).



When the "Internet Explorerーセキュリティの警告" (Internet Explorer－Security warning) screen appears

Click "実行する" (Execute).

For Windows Vista, click "実行" (Execute) and then "続行" (Continue).



4 Click "次へ" (Next)

Before starting the setup process, make sure that no other program is currently running or resident. If there is any program running, click "キャンセル" (Cancel) to exit the program and resume installation. If a screen appears indicating that Previous W-TCP setting software or Previous APN setting software is installed, proceed to p.14.

5 Upon confirming the software license agreement of "FOMA PC設定ソフト" (FOMA PC setting software), click "はい" (Yes) to agree to it

For Windows XP and 2000, proceed to Step 6.
For Windows Vista, proceed to Step 7.

If you click "いいえ" (No) and then click "はい" (Yes), the installation is canceled.

6 Click "次へ" (Next)

For Windows XP and 2000, select whether or not you want "通信設定最適化" (Optimize communication settings) to reside in the task-tray.
If you let it reside in the task-tray, click "次へ" (Next) with "タスクトレイに常駐する" (Let it reside in the task-tray) checked and continue with the installation. Even after installation, you can change the settings by selecting "メニュー" (Menu) → "通信設定最適化をタスクトレイに常駐させる" (Let Optimize communication settings reside in the task-tray) on the FOMA PC setting software.
(Note): This option is disabled when the "タスクトレイに常駐する" (Let it reside in the task-tray) setting is in effect.



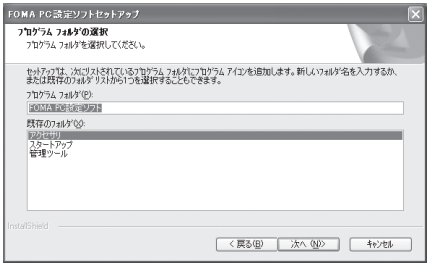
If you let it reside in the task-tray, the 通信設定最適化 (Optimize communication settings) icon appears in the task-tray located at the bottom-right of the desktop.

7 Select the installation location and click "次へ" (Next)

If you want to change the location, click "参照" (Reference), specify the location and click "次へ" (Next).

8 Check the name of program folder and click "次へ" (Next)

If you want to change it, enter a new folder name and click "次へ" (Next).



9 Click "完了" (Finish)

When the setup process is completed, the "FOMA PC設定ソフト" (FOMA PC setting software) operation screen appears. You can specify various settings at this point.

Notes on installation of the FOMA PC setting software

<If the Previous W-TCP setting software is installed>



- Open "アプリケーション（プログラム）の追加と削除" (Add/Remove programs) and delete the old W-TCP setting software.

<If the Previous APN setting software is installed>



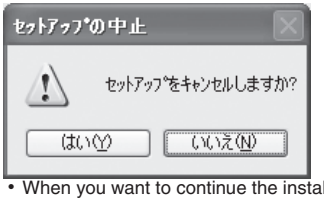
- When you click "OK", the previous APN setting software is automatically uninstalled, and the FOMA PC setting software will be installed.

<If the FOMA PC setting software is already installed>



- Click "OK", and the install is interrupted. Open "アプリケーション（プログラム）の追加と削除" (Add/Remove programs), uninstall the already installed "FOMA PC設定ソフト" (FOMA PC setting software), and then reinstall the software.
- Perform the same procedure when an old version of "FOMA PC setting software" is installed.

<If the "キャンセル" (Cancel) button is clicked during installation>



- When you want to continue the installation, click "いいえ" (No). When you want to stop the procedure, click "はい" (Yes).

Confirming the version information of the FOMA PC setting software

1 Open "FOMA PC設定ソフト" (FOMA PC setting software)

For Windows Vista

Open " " → "すべてのプログラム" (All programs) → "FOMA PC設定ソフト" (FOMA PC setting software) → "FOMA PC設定ソフト" (FOMA PC setting software)

For Windows XP

Open "スタート" (Start) → "すべてのプログラム" (All programs) → "FOMA PC設定ソフト" (FOMA PC setting software) → "FOMA PC設定ソフト" (FOMA PC setting software)

For Windows 2000

Open "スタート" (Start) → "プログラム" (Program) → "FOMA PC設定ソフト" (FOMA PC setting software) → "FOMA PC設定ソフト" (FOMA PC setting software)

2 Open "メニュー" (Menu) → "バージョン情報" (Version information) of the toolbar

The version information of the FOMA PC setting software is displayed.

Uninstalling the FOMA PC Setting Software

If necessary (when upgrading the FOMA PC setting software, etc.), uninstall the software as follows. The procedure for uninstalling from a Windows XP machine is described as an example.

- When uninstalling the "FOMA PC setting software", be sure to log on as Administrator. If you attempt to uninstall the software with another account, an error occurs. Contact your PC's manufacturer or Microsoft for information on how to set Administrator privileges on your PC.

1 Before uninstalling

For Windows XP and 2000, before starting the uninstallation process of the "FOMA PC設定ソフト" (FOMA PC setting software), the various changes made for FOMA must be returned to their default settings. For Windows Vista, proceed to Step 2.

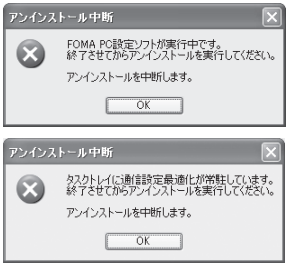
(1) Disable the "通信設定最適化" (Optimize communication settings) in the task-tray

Right-click the "通信設定最適化" (Optimize communication settings) icon in the task-tray located at the bottom-right of the desktop and select "終了" (End).



(2) Exit any running program

If you try to begin uninstallation while the "FOMA PC setting software" or "通信設定最適化" (Optimize communication settings) is in operation, this screen appears. Cancel the uninstallation program and exit the respective programs.



2 Start uninstallation

For Windows Vista

Open "" → "コントロールパネル" (Control Panel) → "プログラムのアンインストール" (Uninstall a program)

For Windows XP

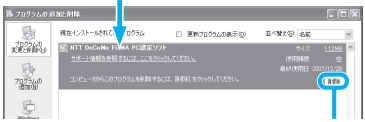
Open "スタート" (Start) → "コントロールパネル" (Control Panel) → "プログラムの追加と削除" (Add and remove programs)

For Windows 2000

Open "スタート" (Start) → "設定" (Settings) → "コントロールパネル" (Control Panel) → "アプリケーションの追加と削除" (Add and remove applications)

3 Select "NTT DoCoMo FOMA PC設定ソフト" (NTT DoCoMo FOMA PC setting software) and click "削除" (Delete)

Select "NTT DoCoMo FOMA PC設定ソフト" (NTT DoCoMo FOMA PC setting software)



Click "削除" (Delete)

For Windows Vista

Select "NTT DoCoMo FOMA PC設定ソフト" (NTT DoCoMo FOMA PC setting software) and click "続行" (Continue)

For Windows 2000

Select "NTT DoCoMo FOMA PC設定ソフト" (NTT DoCoMo FOMA PC setting software) and click "変更と削除" (Change and delete)

4 Check the program name to be deleted and click "はい" (Yes)

Uninstallation starts.



5 Click "完了" (Finish)

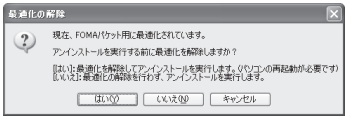
Uninstallation of the "FOMA PC setting software" is completed.



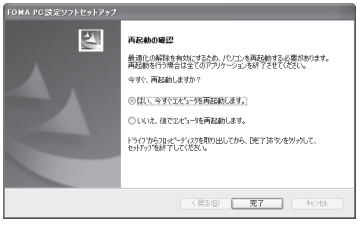
NOTE

● Canceling "通信設定最適化" (Optimize communication settings)

For Windows XP and 2000, this screen appears when "通信設定最適化" (Optimize communication settings) is performed. Usually, click "はい" (Yes) to uninstall and cancel the optimization.



The cancellation of communication settings optimization is valid after the restart.



How to Set Various Settings

The FOMA terminal needs to be connected to your PC via FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 (optional), and the FOMA communication setting file (drivers) needs to be properly recognized on the device of your PC to specify various settings.

1 Open "FOMA PC設定ソフト" (FOMA PC setting software)

This operation screen appears when the software is started.

For Windows Vista

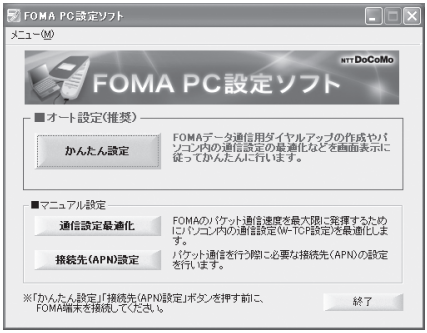
Open " " → "すべてのプログラム" (All programs) → "FOMA PC設定ソフト" (FOMA PC setting software) → "FOMA PC設定ソフト" (FOMA PC setting software)

For Windows XP

Open "スタート" (Start) → "すべてのプログラム" (All programs) → "FOMA PC設定ソフト" (FOMA PC setting software) → "FOMA PC設定ソフト" (FOMA PC setting software)

For Windows 2000

Open "スタート" (Start) → "プログラム" (Program) → "FOMA PC設定ソフト" (FOMA PC setting software) → "FOMA PC設定ソフト" (FOMA PC setting software)



Easy settings: "Settings for Packet communication using mopera U or mopera"

- This section explains how to make settings for a packet communication of 3.6Mbps maximum. The DoCoMo Internet connection service "mopera U" or "mopera" will be used as a provider. (When you use "mopera", the communication speed is 384kbps at maximum for both sending and receiving.) Packet communication: Enables high-speed packet communication of up to 3.6Mbps for receiving and up to 384kbps for sending.* Since you will be charged according to the amount of data transferred, you can enjoy data communication without worrying about time.
  *：The communication speed is 384kbps at maximum for both sending and receiving outside FOMA HIGH-SPEED area.
- Note that the communication charge can become expensive if "packet communication" is used to communicate large volumes of data such as to view sites and websites containing images or to download files.

1 Click "かんたん設定" (Easy settings)

2 Select "パケット通信（HIGH-SPEED対応端末）" (Packet communication (HIGH-SPEED phone)) and click "次へ" (Next)

For Windows Vista

Select "パケット通信" (Packet communication) and click "次へ" (Next)

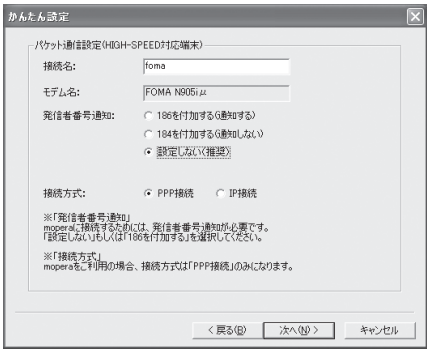
3 Select "『mopera U』への接続" ('mopera U' access) or "『mopera』への接続" ('mopera' access) and click "次へ" (Next)

See p.19 if you use a provider other than mopera U or mopera.

4 Click "OK"

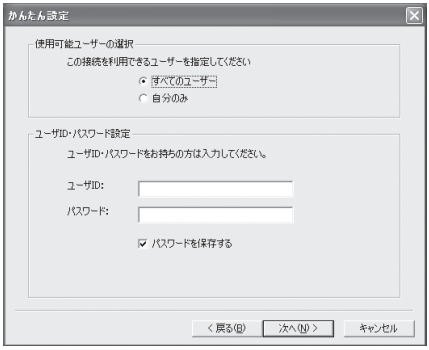
The access point (APN) settings will be obtained from the FOMA terminal which is connected to the PC. Wait for a while.

5 Enter the connection name, select the connection method and click "次へ" (Next)



You can specify the name of the connection. Enter a name easy to recognize in the "接続名" (Connection name) column.
You cannot use the following reserved characters: ¥/: * ?!<> | " (half-pitch only).
Select the "発信者番号通知" (Caller ID setting) and "接続方式" (Connection method).
As for "発信者番号通知" (Caller ID setting), select "設定しない（推奨）" (OFF (Recommended)) for overseas use.
As for "接続方式" (Connection method), mopera U supports both "PPP接続" (PPP connection) and "IP接続" (IP connection). mopera supports "PPP接続" (PPP connection) only. Select "IP接続" (IP connection) for overseas use.

6 Specify a user ID and password, select the accessible user and click "次へ" (Next)



You can leave user ID and password blank for the mopera U or mopera connection.
When "すべてのユーザー" (All users) is selected in the "使用可能ユーザーの選択" (Selecting accessible user) column, the connection setting is applied to all the users registered in Windows.

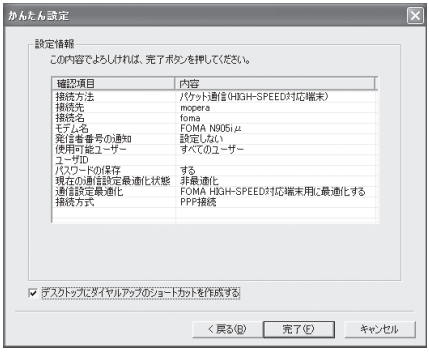
For Windows Vista

Specify the user ID and password and click "次へ" (Next)
Proceed to Step 8.

7 Check "最適化を行う" (Optimize the setting) and click "次へ" (Next)

Optimize the communication settings of a PC to use FOMA packet communication. If they are already optimized, this screen does not appear.

8 Check the setting information and click "完了" (Finish)



The contents of the settings are listed. Make sure that all settings are correct.
Checking "デスクトップにダイヤルアップのショートカットを作成する" (Add dial-up shortcut on desktop) automatically creates a shortcut icon.
To change any setting, click "戻る" (Back).

9 Click "OK"

You need to restart the PC to enable the changes in the settings. If the restart selection screen appears, click "はい" (Yes).
Execute communication.→p.23

Easy settings: "Settings for Packet communication using other providers"

1 Click "かんたん設定" (Easy settings)

2 Select "パケット通信（HIGH-SPEED対応端末）" (Packet communication (HIGH-SPEED phone)) and click "次へ" (Next)

For Windows Vista

Select "パケット通信" (Packet communication) and click "次へ" (Next)

3 Select "その他" (Other) and click "次へ" (Next)

4 Click "OK"

The access point (APN) settings will be obtained from the FOMA terminal which is connected to the PC. Wait for a while.

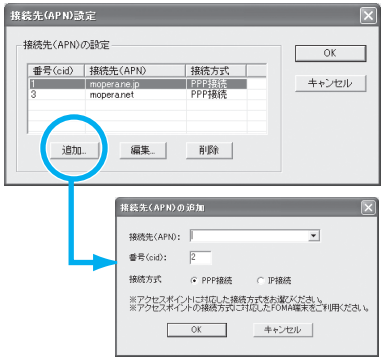
5 Specify the packet communication settings

After the terminal setting is completely acquired, the screen "パケット通信設定" (Packet communication setting) appears.
Enter any name in "接続名" (Connection name).
You cannot use the following reserved characters: ¥/: * ?!<> | " (half-pitch only).
Select whether to notify the caller ID for dial-up connection.
"APN:mopera.net" is specified for the mopera U connection and "APN:mopera.ne.jp" for the mopera connection by default in "接続先（APN）の選択" (Select the access point (APN)).
For the caller ID settings, follow the instructions from the provider. Select "設定しない" (OFF) for overseas use.



6 Click "接続先（APN）設定" (Specify the access point (APN))

As the APN of mopera "mopera.ne.jp" is assigned to cid1 and APN of mopera U "mopera.net" to cid3 by default, assign the APN to cid2 or between cid4 to cid10.
Open the "接続先（APN）の追加" (Add the access point (APN)) screen by clicking the "追加" (Add) button, select the connection method, specify an access point name that supports FOMA packet communication and click "OK".
The "接続先（APN）設定" (Specify the access point (APN)) screen reappears.
Half-pitch alphanumeric characters, hyphen (-) and dots (.) can only be entered for the access point.



7 Select the Access point (APN) and click "OK"

The screen of Step 5 reappears.
The access point (APN) entered in Step 6 is displayed on "接続先（APN）の選択" (Select the access point (APN)).

8 Confirm the Access point (APN) on "接続先（APN）の選択" (Select the access point (APN)) and click "次へ" (Next)

To specify advanced settings (TCP/IP settings)

Clicking "詳細情報の設定" (Detailed settings) displays the setup screen for "IP address" and "Name server". If they must be input as the provider or corporate LAN information, follow the input information directions and enter the addresses.

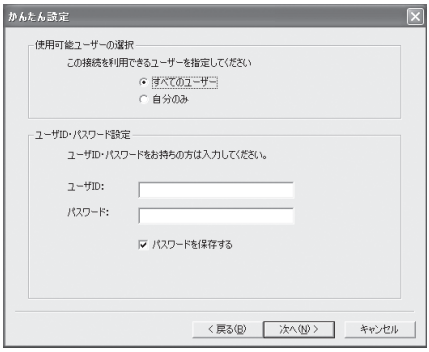
9 Specify a user ID and password, select the accessible user and click "次へ" (Next)

When "すべてのユーザー " (All users) is selected in the "使用可能ユーザーの選択" (Selecting accessible user) column, the connection setting is applied to all the users registered in Windows.

When setting the user ID and password, input the correct, case-sensitive data provided by the service provider.

For Windows Vista

Specify the user ID and password and click "次へ" (Next)
Proceed to Step 11.

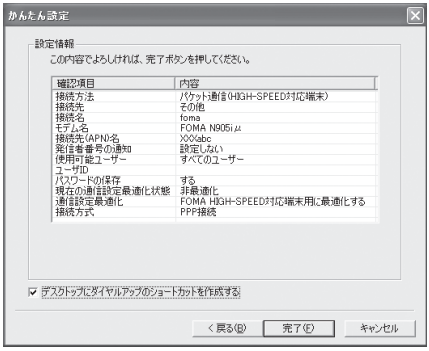


10 Check "最適化を行う" (Optimize the setting) and click "次へ" (Next)

Optimize the communication settings of a PC to use FOMA packet communication. If they are already optimized, this screen does not appear. Proceed to Step 11.

11 Check the setting information and click "完了" (Finish)

The contents of the settings are listed. Make sure that all settings are correct.
Checking "デスクトップにダイヤルアップのショートカットを作成する" (Add dial-up shortcut on desktop) automatically creates a shortcut icon.
To change any setting, click "戻る" (Back).



12 Click "OK"

You need to restart the PC to enable the changes in the settings. If the restart selection screen appears, click "はい" (Yes).
Execute communication.→p.23

Easy settings: "Settings for 64K data communication using mopera U or mopera"

- This section explains how to specify settings for 64K data communication at the maximum speed of 64kbps. The DoCoMo Internet connection service "mopera U" or "mopera" will be used as a provider.
- 64K Data Communication: The charges are based on the amount of time you connected.
- Note that the communication charge can become expensive if "64K data communication" is used for a long time.

1 Click "かんたん設定" (Easy settings)

2 Select "64Kデータ通信" (64K data communication) and click "次へ" (Next)

3 Select "『mopera U』への接続" ('mopera U' access) or "『mopera』への接続" ('mopera' access) and click "次へ" (Next)

See p.22 if you use a provider other than mopera U or mopera.

4 Enter the access point name and select the modem, and click "次へ" (Next)

The "64Kデータ通信設定" (64K data communication setting) screen appears. You can specify the name of the connection. Enter a name easy to recognize in the "接続名" (Connection name) column.
You cannot use the following reserved characters: ¥/: * ?!<> | " (half-pitch only).
When using the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 (optional), confirm that modem name is set to "FOMA N905iμ".
Select "設定しない" (OFF) or "186を付加する" (Add 186) for the caller ID settings.

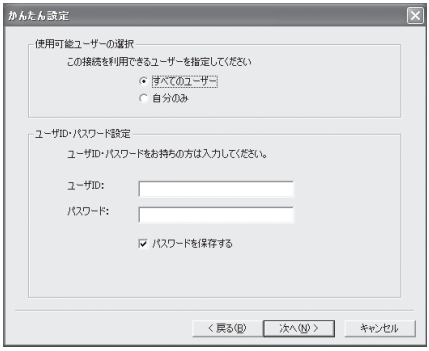


5 Specify a user ID and password, select the accessible user and click "次へ" (Next)

You can leave user ID and password blank for the mopera U or mopera connection.
When "すべてのユーザー" (All users) is selected in the "使用可能ユーザーの選択" (Selecting accessible user) column, the connection setting is applied to all the users registered in Windows.

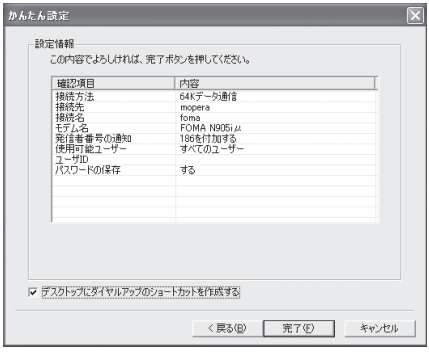
For Windows Vista

Specify the user ID and password and click "次へ" (Next)



6 Check the setting information and click "完了" (Finish)

The contents of the settings are listed. Make sure that all settings are correct.
Checking "デスクトップにダイヤルアップのショートカットを作成する" (Add dial-up shortcut on desktop) automatically creates a shortcut icon.
To change any setting, click "戻る" (Back).



7 Click "OK"

Execute communication. →p.23

Easy settings: "Settings for 64K data communication using other providers"

1 Click "かんたん設定" (Easy settings)

2 Select "64Kデータ通信" (64K data communication) and click "次へ" (Next)

3 Select "その他" (Other) and click "次へ" (Next)

4 Enter the dial-up information and click "次へ" (Next)



Register the following items in order to connect to a service provider with ISDN synchronous 64K access points other than mopera U or mopera when creating a dial-up;

- "接続名" (Connection name) (optional)
- "モデムの選択" (Modem Selection) (FOMA N905iμ)
- "電話番号" (Phone number)
- Notifying or not notifying the caller ID for dial-up connection

You cannot use the following reserved characters: ¥/: * ?!<> | " (half-pitch only).

Enter the correct information according to the provider information. Enter the correct, case-sensitive phone number in half-pitch.
For the caller ID settings, follow the instructions from the provider.

To specify advanced settings (TCP/IP settings)

Clicking "詳細情報の設定" (Detailed settings) displays the setup screen for "IP address" and "Name server". If they must be input as the provider or corporate LAN information, follow the input information directions and enter the addresses.

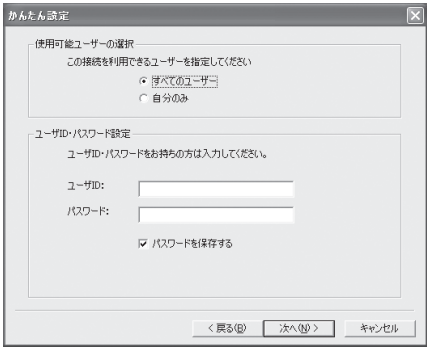
5 Specify a user ID and password, select the accessible user and click "次へ" (Next)

When "すべてのユーザー" (All users) is selected in the "使用可能ユーザーの選択" (Selecting accessible user) column, the connection setting is applied to all the users registered in Windows.

When setting the user ID and password, input the correct, case-sensitive data provided by the service provider.

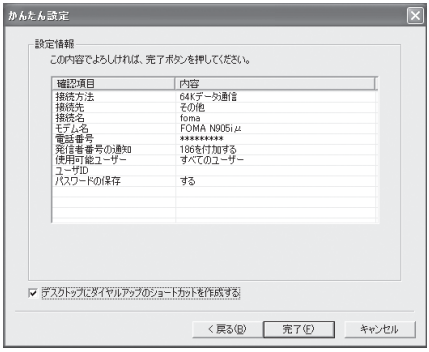
For Windows Vista

Specify the user ID and password and click "次へ" (Next)



6 Check the setting information and click "完了" (Finish)

The contents of the settings are listed. Make sure that all settings are correct.
Checking "デスクトップにダイヤルアップのショートカットを作成する" (Add dial-up shortcut on desktop) automatically creates a shortcut icon.
To change any setting, click "戻る" (Back).



7 Click "OK"

Execute communication. →p.23

Executing Set Data Communication

1 Double-click the connection icon on the desktop



If the connection icon does not appear on the desktop, use the following procedure:

For Windows Vista

Open " " → "接続先" (Access point), select the access point and click "接続" (Connection)

For Windows XP

Open "スタート" (Start) → "すべてのプログラム" (All Programs) → "アクセサリ" (Accessories) → "通信" (Communication)→"ネットワーク接続" (Network connections) →Open the access point

For Windows 2000

Open "スタート" (Start) → "プログラム" (Programs) → "アクセサリ" (Accessories) → "通信" (Communication) → "ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続" (Network and dialup connection) → Open the access point

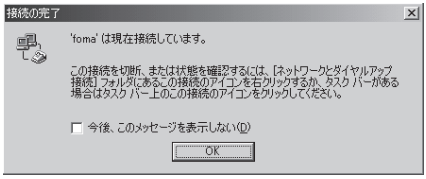
2 Click "ダイヤル" (Dial) and execute access operation

You can leave user name and password blank for the mopera U or mopera connection. If you select an Internet service provider other than mopera U, mopera or you use dial-up connection, enter the "ユーザー名" (User name) and "パスワード" (Password) and click "ダイヤル" (Dial).
Check "パスワードを保存する" (Save the password) to skip entry of the password at subsequent connections.

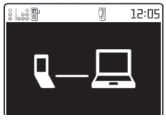


3 Check that the line is connected properly, and click "OK"

The screen on the right may not appear depending on the settings or the OS.
This "接続" (Connection) message does not appear if it has been set to be disabled or when using Windows Vista.



● During packet communication, a different icon appears on the FOMA terminal depending on the communication conditions.



(Communicating, sending data)
(Communicating, receiving data)
(Communicating, no data transfer)
(Sending, or disconnecting)
(Receiving, or disconnecting)

● " " appears on the FOMA terminal during 64K data communication.



NOTE

● When executing data communication by using the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 (optional), dialing from the dial-up icon is only valid for the FOMA terminal used when the icon is created.
Therefore, to connect to another FOMA terminal, the communication setting file (drivers) must be installed again.

How to disconnect

Since just closing the browser on your PC may not disconnect, be sure to disconnect by the following procedure:

1 Double-click the dial-up icon in the task-tray

The connecting screen appears.



Dial-up icon

For Windows Vista

Open "" → "接続先" (Access point)
Select the dial-up currently connected.

2 Click "切断" (Disconnect)



NOTE

● The communication speed displayed on the PC may be different from the actual communication speed.

When this happens

● Check the followings if you cannot connect to the network or dial-up successfully.

Problem	Points to check
"FOMA N905iμ" is not recognized by the PC.	· Check if your PC satisfies the required operational environment (p.3). · Check if the FOMA communication setting file (drivers) is installed. · Check if the FOMA terminal is connected to the PC and the power is turned on. · Check if the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 (optional) is firmly connected. · Check if the USB mode setting (p.5) is set to "Communication mode".
Unable to connect with the access point.	· Check if the settings for the ID (user name) and password are correct. · Check if the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 (optional) is firmly connected. · If the access point requires the Caller ID, make sure that "184" is not added to the phone number. · Check if the box of "フロー制御を使う" (Use the flow control) of the modem property is checked. · Check if the APN is set correctly. · If you still cannot connect to the other end after checking the above, consult with the Internet service provider or network administrator about the setting method.

Optimizing Communication Settings

"通信設定最適化" (Optimize communication settings) is a "TCP parameter setup tool" to optimize the transmission capability of TCP/IP when "Packet communication" is carried out on the FOMA network. The communication settings by this software are required to make the most of communication performance of the FOMA terminal on Windows XP or 2000.

● Cancel optimization beforehand when you perform the PC connection overseas.

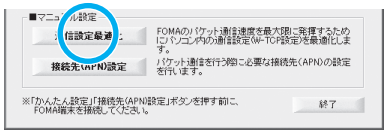
Setting up and canceling optimization

The procedure for setting up and canceling optimization from a Windows XP machine is described as an example.

1 Start the program

(1) If you are operating from "FOMA PC設定ソフト" (FOMA PC setting software)

Click "通信設定最適化" (Optimize communication settings) of "マニュアル設定" (Manual setup) after starting the FOMA PC setting software.



(2) If you are operating from the task-tray

Click the "通信設定最適化" (Optimize communication settings) icon in the task-tray located at the bottom-right of the desktop to start the program.



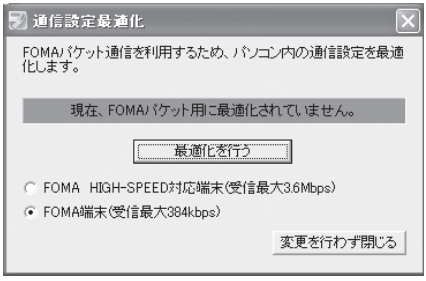
2 Proceed with the following

Close all the programs open and follow the screen instructions to restart the PC. The optimized system settings become valid after the restart.

(1) If the system settings have not been optimized

Select "FOMA HIGH-SPEED対応端末 （受信最大3.6Mbps）" (FOMA HIGH-SPEED phone (up to 3.6Mbps for receiving)) and click "最適化を行う" (Optimize the setting).

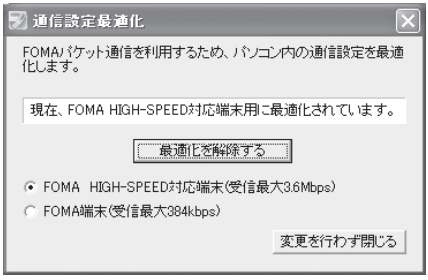
"HIGH-SPEED対応端末の確認 (Confirmation for HIGH-SPEED phone)" screen appears. Click "はい" (Yes) to optimize the system settings.





(2) If the system settings have been optimized

When canceling the optimization settings to execute communication via a device other than a FOMA terminal, click "最適化を解除する" (Cancel optimization). Close all the programs open and restart the PC to enable the cancellation of the optimization.

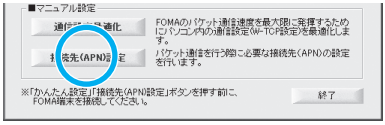


Access Point Name (APN) Settings

Set up the access point (APN) for packet communication. You can set up to 10 destinations and administer them by registering them into cid (Registration Numbers) 1 through 10.

- As the APN of mopera "mopera.ne.jp" is assigned to cid1 and APN of mopera U "mopera.net" to cid3 by default, assign the APN to cid2 or between cid4 to cid10.

1 After starting "FOMA PC 設定ソフト" (FOMA PC setting software), click "接続先（APN）設定" (Set up Access point (APN))



2 Click "OK" on the FOMA terminal settings acquisition screen

Automatically accesses the connected FOMA terminal and reads the registered Access point (APN) information.
It does not start if no FOMA terminal is connected.

3 Set up the access point (APN)



Adding/Editing/Deleting the Access point (APN)

- **To add an access point (APN)**
  Click "追加" (Add) on the "接続先（APN）設定" (Set up Access point (APN)) screen.
- **To edit a registered access point (APN)**
  Select the applicable access point (APN) from the list and click "編集" (Edit) on the "接続先（APN）設定" (Set up Access point (APN)) screen.
- **To delete a registered access point (APN)**
  Select the applicable access point (APN) from the list and click "削除" (Delete) on the "接続先（APN）設定" (Set up Access point (APN)) screen.
  You cannot delete the access point assigned to cid1 and cid3 (Even if you select cid3 and click "削除" (Delete), the access point is not deleted and remains "mopera.net").

Saving in File

If you want to back up the access point (APN) settings registered on the FOMA terminal and/or save the access point (APN) settings being edited, you can save the access point (APN) settings by setting from the "ファイル" (File) menu of the toolbar.

Reading from File

If you want to edit the saved access point (APN) settings and/or write into the FOMA terminal, you can read the access point (APN) settings saved on the PC by operating from the "ファイル" (File) menu of the toolbar.

Writing Access point (APN) information into FOMA terminal

Clicking "FOMA端末へ設定を書き込む" (Write settings into FOMA terminal) on the "接続先（APN）設定" (Set up Access point (APN)) screen allows you to write the displayed access point (APN) settings into the FOMA terminal.

Dial-up creating function
Select the added/edited access point (APN) on the "接続先（APN）設定" (Set up Access point (APN)) screen and click "ダイヤルアップ作成" (Create dial-up).
When the screen for writing into the FOMA terminal appears, click "はい" (Yes). After finishing writing into the FOMA terminal, the "パケット通信用ダイヤルアップの作成" (Create dial-up for packet communication) appears. Enter any connection name you want and click "ユーザID・パスワードの設定" (Set up User ID/Password). Enter the user ID and password, and follow the onscreen instructions to configure the settings. You can leave the user ID and password blank for mopera U or mopera.

If your provider has given you instructions for setting IP and DNS information, click "詳細情報の設定" (Detailed settings) on the "パケット通信用ダイヤルアップの作成" (Create dial-up for packet communication) screen, register necessary information and click "OK".
After entering the settings, click "FOMA端末へ設定を書き込む" (Write settings into FOMA terminal), confirm overwriting and start writing.

NOTE

- The APN settings (the access point for FOMA packet communication) are stored in the FOMA terminal. Therefore, the APN must be registered again if you connect to another FOMA terminal.
- When continuously using the dial-up setting created on the PC, register the same APN setting (cid setting) number with the FOMA terminal.

Setting up Dial-up Network

This section describes how to set up a dial-up connection for packet communication / 64K data communication without using the FOMA PC setting software. The flow of operation is described below.

- It is unnecessary to set up the dial-up network for 64K data communication. Go on to "Setting up Dial-up" (p.35).

About AT commands

- AT commands are commands for modem control. The FOMA terminal complies AT commands and supports some enhanced commands and its own AT commands.
- Entering an AT command allows you to set or confirm (display) the detail settings and the contents of the settings for the "Data communication" and FOMA terminal.

Checking the COM port

- To set up the access point (APN), you need to specify the COM port number assigned to "FOMA N905iμ" (Modem) built in after installing the FOMA communication setting file (drivers). This section describes how to confirm the COM port number. The COM port confirmed here will be used in the access point (APN) set up (p.31).

Preparation

1 Connect the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 (optional) to the FOMA terminal

2 Turn on the FOMA terminal, then connect the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 connected to the FOMA terminal to your PC

To check the COM port on Windows Vista

1 Open "" → "コントロールパネル" (Control Panel)

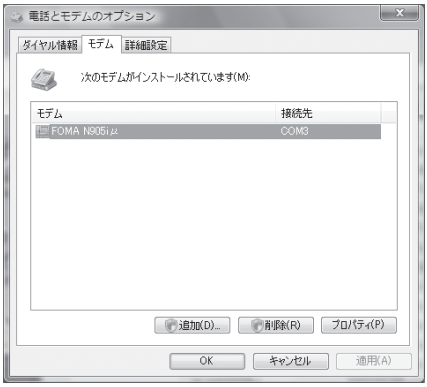
2 Open "ハードウェアとサウンド" (Hardware and Sound) → "電話とモデムのオプション" (Telephone and modem options) in Control Panel

3 **If the "所在地情報" (Address information) screen is displayed, enter "市外局番／エリアコード" (Area code) and click "OK"**

4 **Click the "モデム" (Modem) tab to confirm the COM port of the "接続先" (Access point) column of "FOMA N905iμ" and click "OK"**

The COM port confirmed here will be used in the access point (APN) set up (p.31).

The contents displayed on the screen and the COM port number differ depending on the PC.

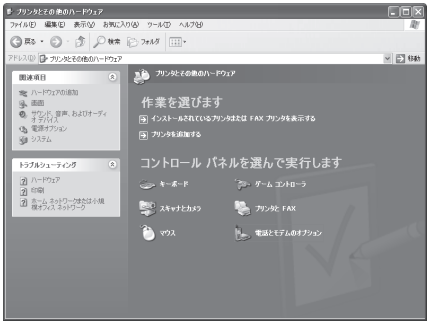


● To check the COM port on Windows XP

1 **Open "スタート" (Start)→"コントロールパネル" (Control Panel)**



2 **Open "電話とモデムのオプション" (Telephone and modem options) from "プリンタとその他のハードウェア" (Printers and other hardware) in Control Panel**



3 **If the "所在地情報" (Address information) screen is displayed, enter "市外局番／エリアコード" (Area code) and click "OK"**

4 **Click the "モデム" (Modem) tab to confirm the COM port of the "接続先" (Access point) column of "FOMA N905iμ" and click "OK"**

The COM port confirmed here will be used in the access point (APN) set up (p.31).

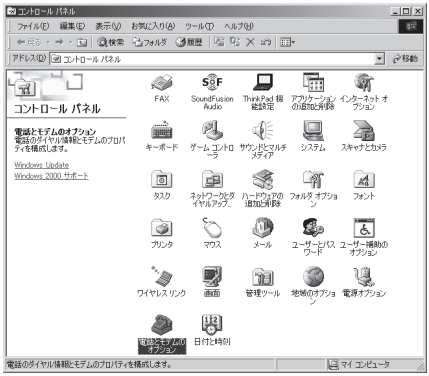
The contents displayed on the screen and the COM port number differ depending on the PC.



● To check the COM port on Windows 2000

1 **Open "スタート" (Start) → "設定" (Settings) → "コントロールパネル" (Control Panel)**

2 **Open "電話とモデムのオプション" (Telephone and modem options) in Control Panel**

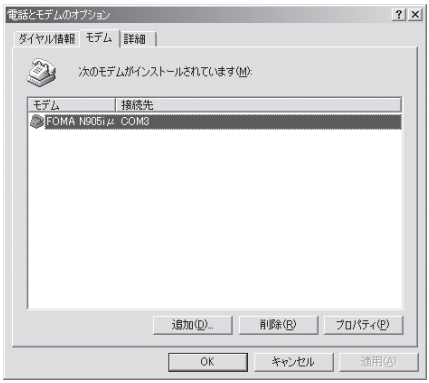


3 **If the "所在地情報" (Address information) screen appears, enter "市外局番" (Area Code) and click "OK"**

4 Click the "モデム" (Modem) tab to confirm the COM port of the "接続先" (Access point) column of "FOMA N905iμ" and click "OK"

The COM port confirmed here will be used in the access point (APN) set up (p.31).

The contents displayed on the screen and the COM port number differ depending on the PC.



Setting up the access point (APN)

Default setting	cid1：mopera.ne.jp　cid3：mopera.net　cid2, 4 to 10：not set

Communication software to enter AT commands is required for the settings. This section describes how to set it up using "Hyper terminal" that comes with Windows.

- Windows Vista is not compatible with "Hyper terminal". For Windows Vista, set with compatible software. (Follow the instructions for the setting of the software.)

Access points <APN/cid>

- Normal telephone numbers are not used for access points for packet communication unlike 64K data communication. Set up APN instead of a telephone number for connection.
- The APN setting is just like registering a Phonebook for packet communication from a PC. Assign registration number (cid) 1 through 10 to register, which is used as a part of the access point number. As the APN of mopera "mopera.ne.jp" is assigned to cid1 and APN of mopera U "mopera.net" to cid3 by default, assign the APN to cid2 or between cid4 to cid10.*1
- APN is administered by "cid (administration numbers 1 through 10)". Specifying "＊99＊＊＊<cid number>＃" as the access point number enables the connection to the access point with the cid number.
- Specifying "＊99＊＊＊1＃" as the access point number for the mopera connection or "＊99＊＊＊3＃" for the mopera U connection enables you to use mopera or mopera U easily.*2
- The APN setting registers the access point to the FOMA terminal just like registering other parties' information (telephone number, etc.) on a mobile phone. The following are comparisons with the Phonebook of the mobile phone:

		APN setting	Phonebook of mobile phone
Data to be registered		APN	Phone number
		cid	Memory number of Phonebook
		—	Other party's name
How to register	Register using PC	○ (FOMA PC setting software, etc.)	○ (Dedicated software required)
	Register using Mobile phone	× (Cannot even confirm)	○
How to use		Specify cid to connect	Look up Phonebook to call
		—	Enter the telephone number directly from the dial key on the FOMA terminal to call.

- Registered cid will be connection numbers in the dialup connection settings.
- Contact your Internet service provider or network administrator for an access point (APN) other than mopera U or mopera.

*1：Set up the APN setting for the access point (Internet service provider) on the FOMA terminal in advance instead of entering APN in the Telephone Number column of "ダイヤルアップネットワーク" (Dial-up Network) for connection.

*2：To connect to other Internet service providers, set the APN and assign it to cid2 or cid4 to cid10.

<Example: For Windows XP>

1 Connect the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 (optional) to the FOMA terminal

2 Turn on the FOMA terminal, then connect the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 connected to the FOMA terminal to the PC

3 Click "スタート" (Start) → "すべてのプログラム" (All programs) → "アクセサリ" (Accessories) → "通信" (Communication) → "ハイパーターミナル" (Hyper terminal) to start Hyper terminal

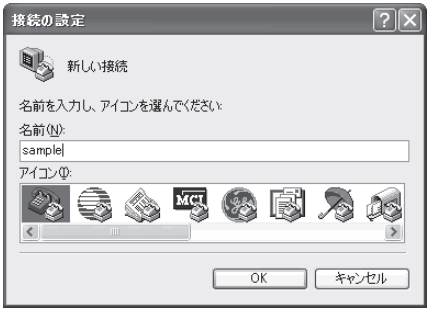
For Windows 2000

Open "スタート" (Start) → "プログラム" (Programs) → "アクセサリ" (Accessories) → "通信" (Communication) → "ハイパーターミナル" (Hyper terminal).

4 Select the "今後、このメッセージを表示しない" (Do not display this message again) checkbox and then click "はい" (Yes)

5 Enter any name in the "名前" (Name) column and click "OK"

"sample" is entered here as an example.



6 Select "FOMA N905iμ" from "接続方法" (Connection method), and click "OK"

Click "キャンセル" (Cancel) after the connection screen appears.

If a COM port of "FOMA N905iμ" can be selected

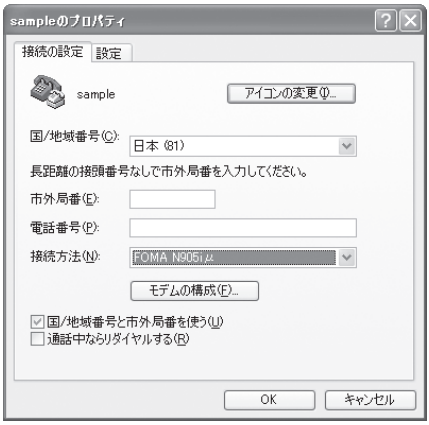
When Properties of the COM port is displayed, click "OK".
In this example, "COM3" is selected. See "Checking the COM port" (p.28) to confirm the actual COM port number of "FOMA N905iμ" to be selected in "接続方法" (Connection method).



If a COM port of "FOMA N905iμ" cannot be selected

Click "キャンセル" (Cancel) to close the "接続の設定" (Connection Settings) screen and then follow the steps below:

(1) Select "ファイル" (File) menu → "プロパティ " (Properties)
(2) Select "FOMA N905iμ" in the "接続方法" (Connection method) column of the "接続の設定" (Connection Settings) tab on the "sampleのプロパティ " (sample Properties) screen
(3) Uncheck "国/地域番号と市外局番を使う" (Use the Country/Region Code and Area Code)
(4) Click "OK"



7 Enter the access point (APN) and press ↵

Enter in the format of AT+CGDCONT=<cid>, "PDP_type", "APN"

<cid>： Enter any number from 2 or between 4 and 10.

Please be cautious because if cid has been already set, the setting will be overwritten.

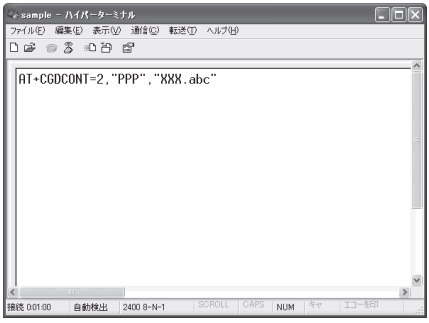
"PDP_type" :Enter "PPP" or "IP".

"APN"： Put " " around the access point (APN) to enter.

If "OK" is displayed, the settings for the access point (APN) are completed.

Example: To enter APN named XXX.abc in cid Number2

Enter AT+CGDCONT=2,"PPP","XXX.abc" ↵.



8 Confirm that "OK" appears and click "ハイパーターミナルの終了" (Close Hyper terminal) in the "ファイル" (File) menu

""sample"と名前付けされた接続を保存しますか？ " (Are you going to save the connection "sample"?) appears, but it is not necessary to save.

NOTE

- The AT commands entered in "Hyper terminal" may not be displayed after Step 7 on p.33. In this case, if you enter ATE1 ↵, AT commands you enter from then on are displayed.
- To reset the access point (APN) settings using the AT command
  - If reset, the access point (APN) setting with cid=1 will return to "mopera.ne.jp" (Default value) and cid=3 to "mopera.net" (Default value), and cid=2, 4 through 10 will be unregistered.

  <How to enter>

  AT+CGDCONT= ↵ (to reset all cid)

  AT+CGDCONT=〈cid〉 ↵ (to reset a certain cid only)
- To confirm the access point (APN) settings using the AT command
  - Display the current settings.

  <How to enter>

  AT+CGDCONT? ↵

Notifying or Not notifying the Caller ID

- You can set whether to notify the other person of your caller ID when packet communication is carried out. Since the caller ID is important information, please take care when you send your caller ID.
- You can set up the Notify or not notify Caller ID setting using the AT command prior to a dial-up connection.
- Use the ＊DGPIR command (p.47) to notify or not notify the caller ID or change back to "Not set" (Default value).

1 Start "ハイパーターミナル" (Hyper terminal)

2 Set up Notify (186) or Not notify (184) Caller ID for packet communication

Enter in the format of "AT ＊DGPIR=<*n*>".

To automatically attach 184 (Not notify) for dialing an outgoing call/answering an incoming call

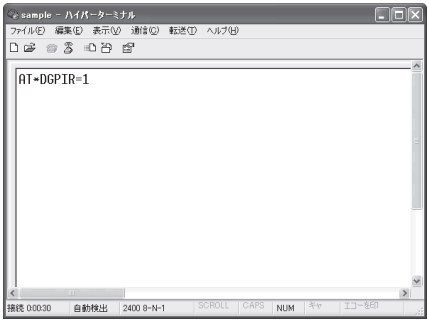
Enter the following:

AT ＊DGPIR=1 ↵

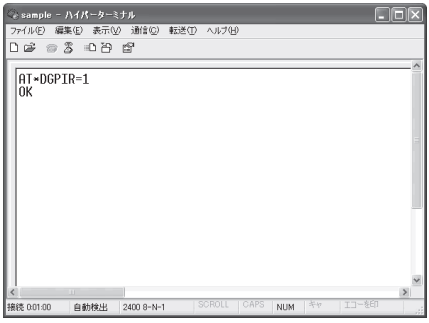
To automatically attach 186 (Notify) for dialing an outgoing call/answering an incoming call

Enter the following:

AT ＊DGPIR=2 ↵



3 Confirm that "OK" appears and click "ハイパーターミナルの終了" (Close Hyper terminal) in the "ファイル" (File) menu



NOTE

- The Caller ID needs to be set to "Notify" to use DoCoMo's internet connection service mopera U or mopera.

About 186 (Notify)/184 (Not notify) in Dial-up Network

You can attach 186/184 to the access point number in the Dial-up network settings as well.
The following table shows what happens if you set 186/184 both for the ＊DGPIR command and the Dial-up network setting.

Dial-up network setting (for cid=1)	Notify/Not notify setting by ＊DGPIR command	Notify/Not notify Caller ID
＊99＊＊＊1#	Not set	Notify
	Not notify	Not notify
	Notify	Notify
184＊99＊＊＊1#	Not set	Not notify (Dial-up network notification 184 has the priority)
	Not notify	
	Notify	
186＊99＊＊＊1#	Not set	Notify (Dial-up network notification 186 has the priority)
	Not notify	
	Notify	

Setting up Dial-up

- This section takes accessing mopera U by packet communication for example.
- To connect using packet communication, enter "＊99＊＊＊3#" as the number of access point for mopera U or "＊99＊＊＊1#" for mopera. To connect using 64K data communication, enter "＊8701" as the number of access point for mopera U or "＊9601" for mopera.

Setting up dial-up on Windows Vista

1 Open "" → "接続先" (Access point)

2 Click "接続またはネットワークをセットアップします" (Set up the connection or network)

3 Select "ダイヤルアップ接続をセットアップします" (Set up dial-up connection) and click "次へ" (Next)

4 If the modem selection screen appears, click "FOMA N905iμ モデム" (FOMA N905iμ modem)

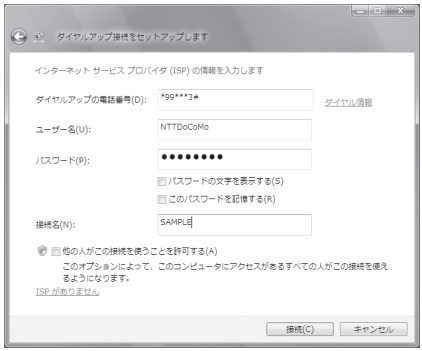
The modem selection screen appears only if there are multiple modems.



5 Select the "ダイヤルアップの電話番号" (Phone number for dial-up) and enter the number of the access point

You can leave user name and password blank for mopera U or mopera connection.
To connect to any other provider than mopera U or mopera, enter the user name and password specified by the provider or network administrator in the "ユーザー名" (User Name) and "パスワード" (Password) columns as this screen.

This screen is an example of accessing mopera U by packet communication.



6 Click "接続" (Connect) and then "スキップ" (Skip)

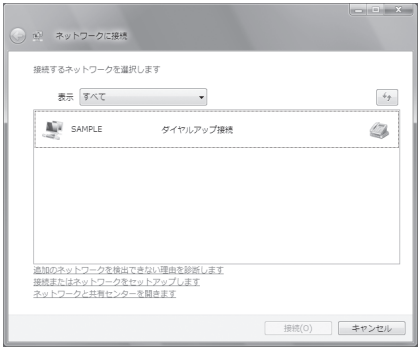
Stay a connection and check only settings here.

7 Click "接続をセットアップします" (Set up the connection)

8 Click "閉じる" (Close)

9 Open " " → "接続先" (Access point)

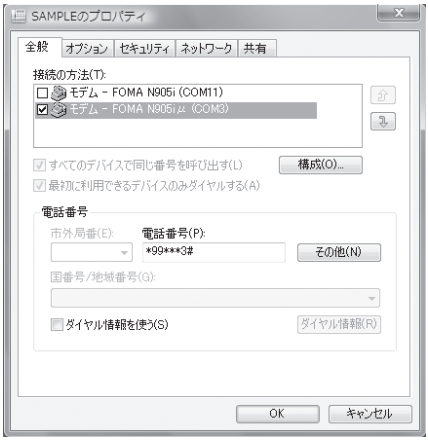
10 Right-click the icon created for the dial-up and click "プロパティ" (Properties)



11 Confirm the settings on the "全般" (General) tab

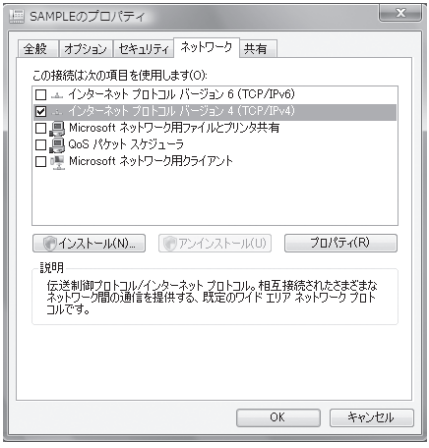
If two or more modems are connected to the PC, confirm that only "モデム－FOMA N905iμ" (Modem - FOMA N905iμ) is checked in the "接続の方法" (Connection method) column. If not, check it.

Confirm that "ダイヤル情報を使う" (Use Dial Information) is unchecked. If not, uncheck it.



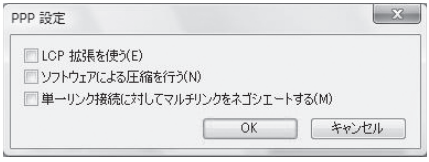
12 Click the "ネットワーク" (Network) tab and set up each setting

Check only "インターネット プロトコル バージョン4（TCP/IPv4）" (Internet Protocol version 4 (TCP/IPv4)) in the "この接続は次の項目を使用します" (Use the following items for this connection). Check "QoS パケットスケジューラ" (QoS Packet Scheduler) if instructed by the provider.



13 Click the "オプション" (Options) tab and click "PPP設定" (PPP settings)

14 Clear all the boxes and click "OK"

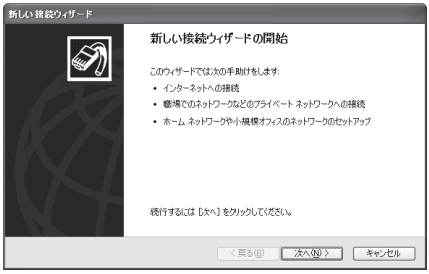


15 Click "OK"

Setting up dial-up on Windows XP

1 **Open "スタート" (Start) → "すべてのプログラム" (All programs) → "アクセサリ" (Accessories) → "通信" (Communication) → "新しい接続ウィザード" (New connection wizard)**

2 **When the "新しい接続ウィザード" (New Connection Wizard) screen appears, click "次へ" (Next)**



3 **Select "インターネットに接続する" (Connect to the Internet) and click "次へ" (Next)**

4 **Select "接続を手動でセットアップする" (Set up the connection manually) and click "次へ" (Next)**

5 **Select "ダイヤルアップモデムを使用して接続する" (Connect using a dial-up modem) and click "次へ" (Next)**

6 **If the "デバイスの選択" (Select the device) screen appears, select only "モデム－FOMA N905iμ (COMx)" (Modem－FOMA N905iμ (COMx)), and click "次へ" (Next)**

The "デバイスの選択" (Select the device) screen appears only if there are multiple modems.
(COMx) is a number of COM port displayed in "Checking the COM port" (p.28).

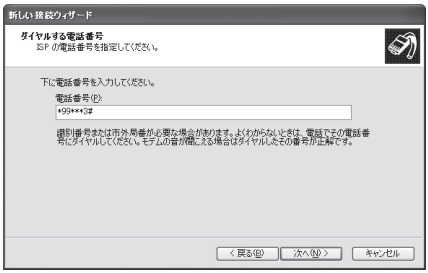


7 **Enter any name you want in the "ISP名" (ISP Name) and click "次へ" (Next)**



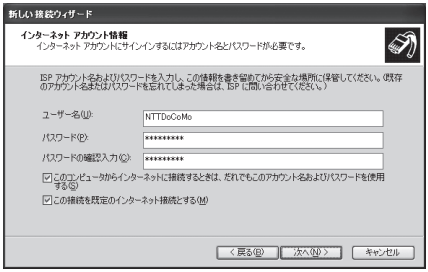
8 Enter the number of the access point in the "電話番号" (Telephone Number) column and click "次へ" (Next)

This screen is an example of accessing mopera U by packet communication.



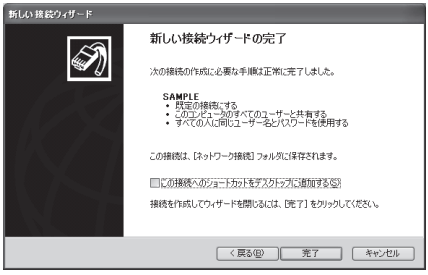
9 Click "次へ" (Next)

You can leave user name and password blank for mopera U or mopera connection.
To connect to any other provider than mopera U or mopera, enter exact information specified by the provider or network administrator in the "ユーザー名" (User Name), "パスワード" (Password) and "パスワードの確認入力" (Confirm Password) columns as this screen.



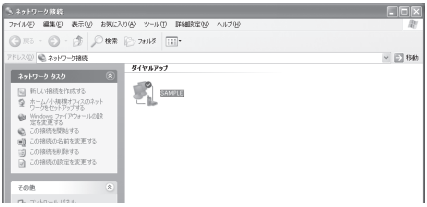
10 Click "完了" (Finish)

The newly created connection wizard appears.



11 Open "スタート" (Start) → "すべてのプログラム" (All programs) → "アクセサリ" (Accessories) → "通信" (Communication) → "ネットワーク接続" (Network connections)

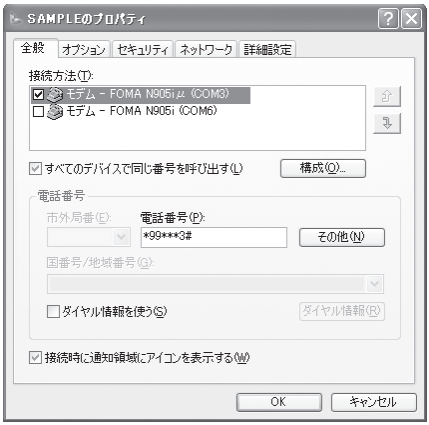
12 Select the icon created for the dial-up and open "プロパティ" (Properties) in the "ファイル" (File) menu



13 Confirm the settings on the "全般" (General) tab

If two or more modems are connected to the PC, confirm that only "モデム－FOMA N905iμ" (Modem - FOMA N905iμ) is checked in the "接続方法" (Connection method) column. If not, check it.
Confirm that "ダイヤル情報を使う" (Use Dial Information) is unchecked. If it is checked, uncheck it.

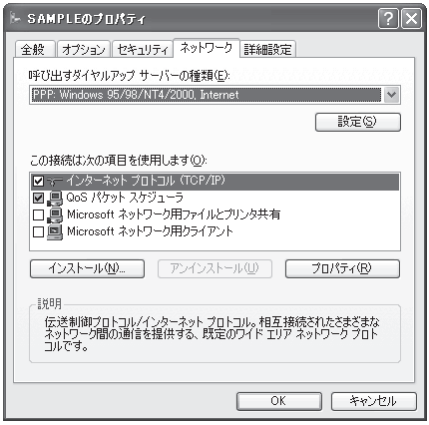
This screen is an example of accessing mopera U by packet communication.



14 Click the "ネットワーク" (Network) tab and set up each setting

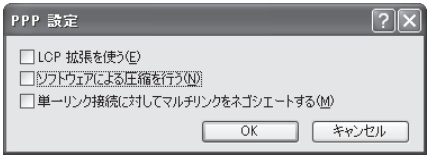
Select "PPP: Windows 95/98/NT4/2000, Internet" in the "呼び出すダイヤルアップサーバーの種類" (Type of the dial-up server to call).

Select "インターネットプロトコル（TCP/IP）" (Internet Protocol (TCP/IP)) in the "この接続は次の項目を使用します" (Use the following items for this connection). Since the setting of "QoSパケットスケジューラ" (QoS Packet Scheduler) cannot be changed, leave it as it is.



15 Click "設定" (Settings)

16 Clear all the boxes and click "OK"

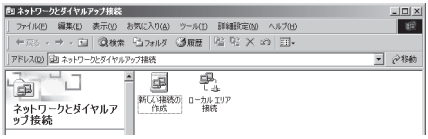


17 When the Step 14 screen reappears, click "OK"

Setting up dial-up on Windows 2000

1 **Open "スタート" (Start) → "プログラム" (Programs) → "アクセサリ" (Accessories) → "通信" (Communication) → "ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続" (Network and Dial-up connections)**

2 **Double-click "新しい接続の作成" (Create a new connection) in Network and Dial-up Connections**



3 **If the "所在地情報" (Address information) screen appears, enter "市外局番" (Area Code) and click "OK"**

The "所在地情報" (Address Information) screen appears only when "新しい接続の作成" (Create a new connection) is started for the first time in Step 2.
This screen does not appear from the second time on, but the "ネットワークの接続ウィザード" (Network Connection Wizard) screen does instead, proceed to Step 5.

4 **When the "電話とモデムのオプション" (Telephone and Modem options) screen appears, click "OK"**

5 **When the "ネットワークの接続ウィザード" (Network Connection Wizard) screen appears, click "次へ" (Next)**

6 **Select "インターネットにダイヤルアップ接続する" (Connect to the Internet via dial-up) and click "次へ" (Next)**

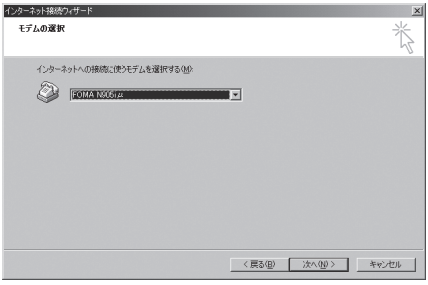
7 **Select "インターネット接続を手動で設定するか、またはローカルエリアネットワーク(LAN)を使って接続します" (Set up an internet connection manually or connect using Local Area Network (LAN)) and click "次へ" (Next)**

8 **Select "電話回線とモデムを使ってインターネットに接続します" (Connect to the internet using a telephone line and a modem) and click "次へ" (Next)**

9 **Confirm that the "インターネットへの接続に使うモデムを選択する" (Select the modem used to connect to the internet) has "FOMA N905iμ" and click "次へ" (Next)**

If "FOMA N905iμ" is not selected, select "FOMA N905iμ".

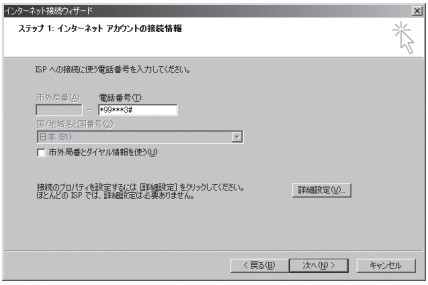
If no other modem than "FOMA N905iμ" has been installed, this screen does not appear.



10 **Enter the number of the access point in the "電話番号" (Telephone number) column and click "詳細設定" (Advanced settings)**

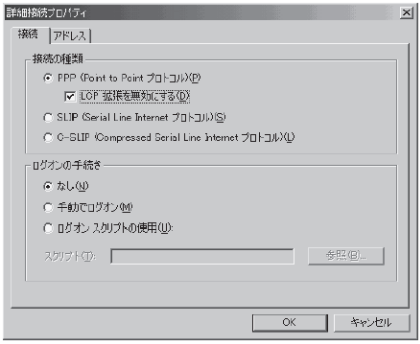
Uncheck "市外局番とダイヤル情報を使う" (Use Area Code and Dial information).

This screen is an example of accessing mopera U by packet communication.



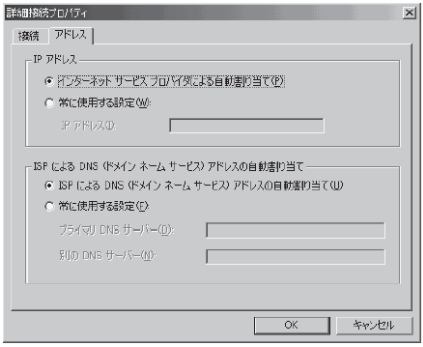
11 Set up the "接続" (Connection) tab as shown on the right and click the "アドレス" (Address) tab

To connect to any other provider than mopera U or mopera, enter exact information specified by the Internet service provider or network administrator in "接続の種類" (Connection Type) and "ログオンの手続き" (Logon Procedure).



12 Set up the IP address and DNS (Domain Name Service) address on the "アドレス" (Address) tab as shown on the right and click "OK"

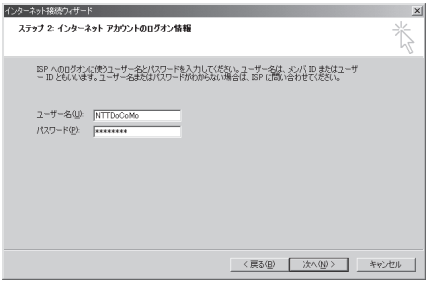
To connect to any other provider than mopera U or mopera, enter exact information specified by the Internet service provider or network administrator in "IPアドレス" (IP address) and "ISPによるDNS（ドメインネームサービス）アドレスの自動割り当て" (Automatically assign DNS (Domain Name Service) by ISP).



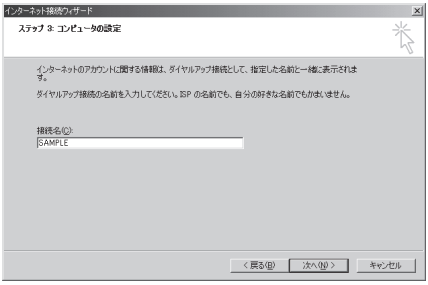
13 When the screen returns to Step 10, click "次へ" (Next)

14 Click "次へ" (Next)

You can leave user name and password blank for mopera U or mopera connection.
To connect to any other provider than mopera U or mopera, enter exact information specified by the Internet service provider or network administrator in "ユーザー名" (User Name) and "パスワード" (Password) columns as this screen.



15 Enter any name you want in the "接続名" (Connection name) and click "次へ" (Next)



16 Select "いいえ" (No) and click "次へ" (Next)

17 Click "完了" (Finish)

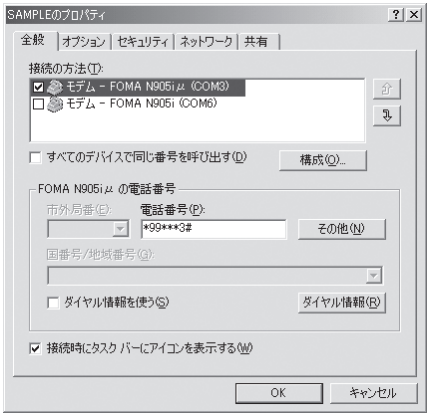
18 Select the icon created for the dial-up and open "プロパティ" (Properties) in the "ファイル" (File) menu



19 Confirm the settings on the "全般" (General) tab

If two or more modems are connected to the PC, confirm that only "モデム－FOMA N905iμ" (Modem - FOMA N905iμ) is checked in the "接続の方法" (Connection method) column. If not, check it.
Confirm that "ダイヤル情報を使う" (Use Dial Information) is unchecked. If not, uncheck it.

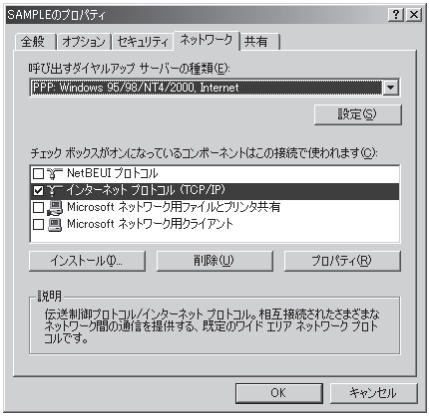
This screen is an example of accessing mopera U by packet communication.



20 Click the "ネットワーク" (Network) tab and set up each setting

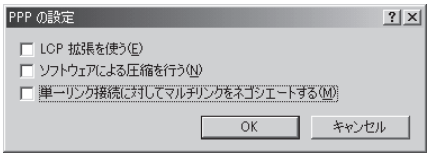
Select "PPP: Windows 95/98/NT4/2000, Internet" in the "呼び出すダイヤルアップサーバーの種類" (Type of the dial-up server to call).

Check only "インターネットプロトコル（TCP/IP）" (Internet Protocol (TCP/IP)) for components.



21 Click "設定" (Settings)

22 Clear all the boxes and click "OK"



23 When the Step 20 screen reappears, click "OK"

Running dial-up connection

This section describes how to make a dial-up connection for packet communication by using the dial-up setting.

<Example: For Windows XP>

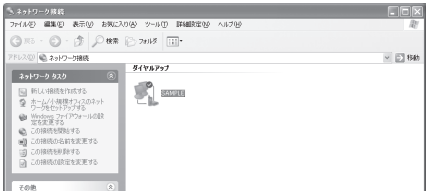
1 Connect the FOMA terminal to the PC with the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 (optional)

"Connecting the devices"→p.5

2 Open "スタート" (Start) → "すべてのプログラム" (All programs) → "アクセサリ" (Accessories) → "通信" (Communication) → "ネットワーク接続" (Network connections)

3 Open Access point

Select the dial-up access point icon with the ISP name set in Step 7 on p.38 to select "ネットワークタスク" (Network task) → "この接続を開始する" (Start this connection) or double-click the icon of the access point.



4 Confirm the settings and click "ダイヤル" (Dial)

This screen is an example for mopera U connection. You can leave user name and password blank for mopera U or mopera connection.



<The Connecting screen appears>

While this screen appears, the log-on process such as confirmation of the user name and password is performed.



<Completion of the connection>

When the connection is complete, a message appears from the indicator of the taskbar located on the bottom-right of the desktop for a few seconds.
You can start browser software to view sites and websites or to use e-mail.
If this message does not appear, check "Setting up Dial-up Network" (p.28) and "Setting up Dial-up" (p.35).
See p.24 for communication conditions.



How to disconnect

Just closing the Internet browser may not disconnect the communication line. Follow the instructions below to disconnect for sure. This section describes an example using Windows XP.

1 Click the dial-up icon in the task-tray

The connection condition screen for Internet will be displayed.



Dial-up icon

For Windows Vista

Open "  " → "接続先" (Access point)
Select the dial-up currently connected.

2 Click "切断" (Disconnect)

NOTE

- The communication speed displayed on the PC may be different from the actual communication speed.

AT Command List

AT commands available on FOMA terminal

- The following abbreviations are used in the AT command list;
  [&F] : Command of which setting is initialized by AT&F command.
  [&W] : Command of which setting is saved by AT&W command. The setting can be retrieved by ATZ command.
- For dialing or AT command dialing from an external device, Number A is used for A/Dual mode and Number B is used for B mode.

Modem port command list

The followings are the usable commands for "FOMA N905iμ (モデム)" (modem):

AT command	Outline	Parameter/description	Command execution example
A/	Executes the last executed command again. No carriage return is necessary.	—	A/ OK
AT	—	The modem function of a FOMA terminal is controllable by adding the command of this table after this command. * OK is answered even when only AT is entered.	AT OK
AT%V	Displays the version of the FOMA terminal.	—	AT%V Ver1.00 OK
AT&C*n* [&F] [&W]	Selects the operating condition of the circuit CD signal to DTE.	*n*=0 : CD is always ON. *n*=1 : CD changes according to the carrier of the other party's modem (initial value).	AT&C1 OK
AT&D*n* [&F] [&W]	Selects the operation to take place when the circuit ER signal received from DTE transits between ON and OFF.	*n*=0 : Ignores ER status (always assumed to be ON). *n*=1 : When ER changes from ON to OFF, it becomes an on-line command status. *n*=2 : If ER changes from ON to OFF, a connection is disconnected and it will be in an off-line command status (initial value).	AT&D1 OK
AT&E*n* [&F] [&W]	Selects how to display the connection speed.	*n*=0 : Displays the wireless network transmission speed. *n*=1 : Displays the DTE serial transmission speed (initial value).	AT&E0 OK
AT&F*n*	Restores all of registers to their defaults. If this command is input during communication, the line will be disconnected.	Only *n*=0 can be specified (can be omitted).	(At the time of off-line mode) AT&F OK AT&F? ERROR AT&F=? ERROR (At the time of on-line command mode) AT&F NO CARRIER (Change to off-line mode)
AT&S*n* [&F] [&W]	Sets the Data Set Ready signal to be output to DTE.	*n*=0 : DR is always ON (initial value). *n*=1 : DR signal is ON when the line is connected (when the communication call is established).	AT&S0 OK

AT command	Outline	Parameter/description	Command execution example
AT&W*n*	Stores the current settings.	Only *n*=0 can be specified (can be omitted).	AT&W0 OK AT&W OK AT&W? ERROR AT&W=? ERROR
AT＊DANTE	Displays the FOMA terminal signal reception level.	0：FOMA terminal signal reception level is displayed as out of area. 1：FOMA terminal signal reception level is 0 or 1 bar. 2：FOMA terminal signal reception level is 2 bars. 3：FOMA terminal signal reception level is 3 bars.	AT＊DANTE ＊DANTE:3 OK AT＊DANTE=? ＊DANTE:(0-3) OK
AT＊DGANSM=*n*	Sets the reject/permit mode setting for the packet incoming call. This command is effective for those incoming packet calls after the setting command is input.	*n*=0：Disables the incoming call reject (AT＊DGARL)/permit setting (AT＊DGAPL) (initial value). *n*=1：Enables the incoming call reject setting. *n*=2：Enables the incoming call permit setting. AT＊DGANSM? ：Displays the current setting.	AT＊DGANSM=0 OK AT＊DGANSM? ＊DGANSM:0 OK
AT＊DGAPL=*n* [,cid]	Sets APN, which permits incoming packet calls, by using <cid> parameter defined by +CGDCONT	*n*=0：Adds the APN defined by <cid> to incoming call permission list. *n*=1：Deletes the APN defined by <cid> from incoming call permission list. If <cid> is omitted, this will apply to all cid. AT＊DGAPL? ：Displays incoming call permission list.	AT＊DGAPL =0,1 OK AT＊DGAPL? ＊DGAPL:1 OK AT＊DGAPL =1 OK AT＊DGAPL? OK
AT＊DGARL=*n* [,cid]	Sets APN, which rejects incoming packet calls, by using <cid> parameter defined by +CGDCONT	*n*=0：Adds the APN defined by <cid> to incoming call rejection list. *n*=1：Deletes the APN defined by <cid> from incoming call rejection list. If <cid> is omitted, this will apply to all cid. AT＊DGARL? ：Displays incoming call rejection list.	AT＊DGARL =0,1 OK AT＊DGARL? ＊DGARL:1 OK AT＊DGARL =1 OK AT＊DGARL? OK
AT＊DGPIR=*n*	This command validates the setting for notifying Caller ID when sending/ receiving packet communication. Even in the dial up network setting, you can also add 186 (notify) or 184 (not notify) to the access point number. (p.34)	*n*=0：Uses APN as it is (initial value). *n*=1：Uses APN by adding "184". (Caller ID is always not sent.) *n*=2：Uses APN by adding "186". (Caller ID is always sent.) AT＊DGPIR? ：Displays the current setting.	AT＊DGPIR =0 OK AT＊DGPIR? ＊DGPIR:0 OK
AT＊DRPW	Displays the indicator value of the receiving power of the FOMA terminal.	—	AT＊DRPW ＊DRPW:0 OK AT＊DRPW=? ＊DRPW:(0-75) OK
AT+CAOC	Inquires for the current charge.	—	AT+CAOC +CAOC:"000014" OK

AT command	Outline	Parameter/description	Command execution example
AT+CBC	Displays the battery status of the FOMA terminal.	Result: +CBC:<bcs>,<bcl> bcs: 0 : FOMA terminal is powered by the battery. 1 : FOMA terminal is not powered by the battery. 2 : FOMA terminal is not connected to the battery. 3 : FOMA terminal is out of transmission due to the power-supply error. bcl: 0 : Battery has run out, or battery is not connected. 1-100 : Battery remained	AT+CBC +CBC:0,70 OK AT+CBC? ERROR AT+CBC=? +CBC:(0-3),(0-100) OK
AT+CBST [&F] [&W]	Changes the bearer service type.	Format: AT+CBST=*n*,1,0 *n*=116 : 64,000bps (bit transparent) (initial value) *n*=134 : 64,000bps (multimedia)	AT+CBST=134,1,0 OK AT+CBST? +CBST:134,1,0 OK AT+CBST=? +CBST:(116,134),(1),(0) OK
AT+CEER	Displays the reason for disconnection of the previous call.	Result: +CEER:<report> report: List of disconnection reasons (p.58).	AT+CEER +CEER:36 OK
AT+CGDCONT	Sets the access point name (APN) for packet origination.	p.55	p.55
AT+CGEQMIN	Registers a criterion to be used to decide whether or not to allow the QoS (quality of service) that is informed from the network side when PPP packet communication is established.	p.55	p.55
AT+CGEQREQ	Sets the QoS (quality of service) to be requested to network when originating a PPP packet communication.	p.56	p.56
AT+CGMR	Displays the version of the FOMA terminal.	—	AT+CGMR 12345xxxxxxxxxx OK
AT+CGREG=*n* [&F] [&W]	Specifies whether to notify the network registration condition. The returned notification displays whether you are inside or out of service.	*n*=0 : Not informed (initial value). *n*=1 : Informed. Informed when switching between "Inside the service area" and "Outside the service area" is completed. AT+CGREG? : Displays the current setting. +CGREG: <*n*>, <stat> *n*: Set value stat : 0: Out of packet area 1: Within packet area 4: Unknown 5: Within packet area	AT+CGREG=1 OK (Set to informed) AT+CGREG? +CGREG: 1,0 OK AT+CGREG=? +CGREG: (0,1) OK (Outside the service area) (When you move from "outside the service area" to "inside the service area".) +CGREG:1
AT+CGSN	Displays the product number of the FOMA terminal.	—	AT+CGSN 12345xxxxxxxxxx OK
AT+CLIP=*n* [&F] [&W]	Displays the other party's Caller ID on a PC when a 64K data communication call is received.	*n*=0 : Not display the result (initial value) *n*=1 : Display the result AT+CLIP? : Displays the current setting. +CLIP:*n*,*m* *m*=0 : NW setting not notifying the other party of the Caller ID in outgoing call. *m*=1 : NW setting notifying the other party of the Caller ID in outgoing call. *m*=2 : Unknown	AT+CLIP=0 OK AT+CLIP=? +CLIP:(0,1) OK (A call is received when +CLIP=1 is set) RING +CLIP: "090XXXXXXXX",177, "123",136

AT command	Outline	Parameter/description	Command execution example
AT+CLIR=*n*	Sets whether or not to notify the other party of the phone number when originating a 64K data communication call.	*n*=0 : Complies to the CLIR service contract. *n*=1 : Not notify the other party of the caller's phone number. *n*=2 : Notify the other party of the caller's phone number (initial value). AT+CLIR? : Displays the current setting. +CLIR:*n*,*m* *m*=0 : CLIR is not started (Caller ID is always sent) *m*=1 : CLIR is started (Caller ID is always not sent) *m*=2 : Unknown *m*=3 : CLIR temporary mode (default is not notify) *m*=4 : CLIR temporary mode (default is notify)	AT+CLIR=0 OK AT+CLIR? +CLIR:0,1 OK AT+CLIR=? +CLIR:(0-2) OK
AT+CMEE=*n* [&F] [&W]	Sets whether the error report of the FOMA terminal is present.	*n*=0 : Use the ERROR result (initial value). *n*=1 : +CME ERROR:<err> result code is used, and a numeral value is used for <err>. *n*=2 : +CME ERROR:<err> result code is used, and characters are used for <err>. AT+CMEE? : Displays the current setting. The command displayed on the right is the execution example for cases when there is a FOMA terminal problem or a connection error. +CME ERROR result code is as follows. 1 : no connection to phone 10 : SIM not inserted 15 : SIM wrong 16 : incorrect password 100 : unknown	AT+CMEE=0 OK AT+CNUM ERROR AT+CMEE=1 OK AT+CNUM +CME ERROR:10 AT+CMEE=2 OK AT+CNUM +CME ERROR:SIM not inserted
AT+CNUM	Displays the own number of the FOMA terminal.	Result: +CNUM:,<number>,<type> number: phone number type : 129 or 145 129 : International access code (+) is not included. 145 : International access code (+) is included.	AT+CNUM +CNUM:,"+8190XXXX XXXX",145 OK
AT+COPS	Selects the network operator to connect.	Format : AT+COPS=<mode>,2,<oper> mode=0 : automatic (searches the network and switches the network operator automatically) mode=1 : manual (connects to the network operator specified in <oper>) mode=2 : Disconnects the connection to the network operator mode=3 : Mapping is not performed. mode=4 : manual/automatic (if the connection to the network operator specified in <oper> fails, works as automatic mode.) <oper> is a hexadecimal value which consists of Country code (MCC) and Network code (MNC). The format is as follows: Digit 1 of MCC · · · octet 1 bits 1 to 4 Digit 2 of MCC · · · octet 1 bits 5 to 8 Digit 3 of MCC · · · octet 2 bits 1 to 4 Digit 3 of MNC · · · octet 2 bits 5 to 8 Digit 2 of MNC · · · octet 3 bits 5 to 8	AT+COPS=0 OK AT+COPS? +COPS:0 OK AT+COPS=? +COPS:(2,,,"44F001"),(3,,,"44F002"),,(0,1),(2) OK

AT command	Outline	Parameter/description	Command execution example
AT+CPAS	Displays whether the control signal to the FOMA terminal is available or not.	Result: +CPAS: <pas> pas: 0 : FOMA terminal can send/receive control signal. 1 : FOMA terminal can not send/receive control signal. 2 : Unknown (control signal sending/ receiving is not assured). 3 : FOMA terminal can send/receive control signal and it is currently receiving. 4 : FOMA terminal can send/receive control signal and it is currently communicating.	AT+CPAS +CPAS:0 OK AT+CPAS? ERROR AT+CPAS=? +CPAS:(0-4)
AT+CPIN	Enters the PIN code in the FOMA terminal.	Format: AT+CPIN="<pin>","<newpin>" This command is to enter the PIN1, PIN2, or PUK code - depending on the state of the result code returned when AT+CPIN? is entered - of the FOMA terminal. Even if PIN code entry or the PUK code is requested on the screen, depending on the state of the result code when AT+CPIN? is entered, you may not be able to use this command to enter the PIN. Do not use this command to change PIN code. Put <pin> and <newpin> in " ". AT+CPIN? result +CPIN：READY：PIN1 code, PIN2 code Cannot enter the PUK1 or PUK2 code +CPIN：SIM PIN：PIN1 entry standby +CPIN：SIM PIN2：PIN2 entry standby +CPIN：SIM PUK：PIN1 blocked (Can enter PUK1 code) +CPIN：SIM PUK2 : PIN2 blocked (Can enter PUK2 code) The command displayed on the right is an entry sample of PIN code "1234" and PUK code "12345678".	(The status in which +CPIN: READY is answered when +CPIN? is entered) AT+CPIN="1234" ERROR (The status in which +CPIN: READY is answered when +CPIN? is entered) AT+CPIN="12345678", "1234" ERROR (The status in which +CPIN: SIM PIN is answered when +CPIN? is entered) AT+CPIN="1234" OK (The status in which +CPIN: SIM PUK is answered when +CPIN? is entered: PIN1 lock status) AT+CPIN="12345678", "1234" OK (The status in which +CPIN: SIM PUK2 is answered when +CPIN? is entered: PIN2 lock status) AT+CPIN="12345678", "1234" OK AT+CPIN? +CPIN:READY OK AT+CPIN=? OK
AT+CR=*n* [&F] [&W]	When the line is connected, displays the bearer service type before the CONNECT result code is displayed.	*n*=0 : Not display (initial value). *n*=1 : Display. <serv> : Displays only "GPRS", which means packet communication. (Displaying "SYNC" or "AV64K" depending on the line type.) AT+CR?: ：Displays the current setting.	AT+CR =1 OK ATD＊99＊＊＊1# +CR : GPRS CONNECT

AT command	Outline	Parameter/description	Command execution example
AT+CRC=*n* [&F] [&W]	Sets whether to use the extended result code for the incoming call.	*n*=0 : Not use +CRING (initial value). *n*=1 : Use +CRING.<type>. Format of +CRING: +CRING：SYNC +CRING：AV64K ：GPRS “PPP” ,,, “<APN>” AT+CRC? ：Displays the current setting.	AT+CRC=0 OK AT+CRC? +CRC ：0 OK (PPPoverUD received) +CRING：SYNC (AV64K received) +CRING：AV64K (PPP packet received) +CRING：GPRS “PPP” ,,,” 〈APN〉”
AT+CREG=*n* [&F] [&W]	Specifies whether the result screen is present regarding the inside/outside the service area information display. ● This setting may not be available depending on the Operating System.	*n*=0 : Not informed (initial value). *n*=1 : Informed. Informed when switching between "Inside the service area" and "Outside the service area" is complete. AT+CREG? ：Displays the current setting. +CREG ：<*n*>,<stat> *n*: Set value stat: 0: Outside voice call area 1: Inside voice call area 4: Unknown 5: Inside voice call area	AT+CREG=1 OK (Set to informed) AT+CREG? +CREG ：1,0 OK (Outside the service area) (When you move from outside the service area to inside the service area.) +CREG ：1
AT+CUSD [&F] [&W]	Specifies or inquires for the network setting regarding the additional services.	Format: AT+CUSD=<*n*>,"<str>"[,0] *n*=0 : Does not send mid result <*m*>[<str>,<dcs>] (initial value) *n*=1 : Sends mid result <*m*>[<str>,<dcs>] Mid result: *m*=0 : The settings completed *m*=1 : The network requires the information. str : Only 0-9, #, ∗ can be entered. Enclose <str> with "" (double quotation mark).	AT+CUSD=0, "xxxxxxxxx" OK AT+CUSD=1," ∗ 148 ∗ 1 ∗ 0000#",0 +CUSD:0,"148 ∗ 7#",0 OK AT+CUSD? +CUSD:0 OK AT+CUSD =? +CUSD:(0,1) OK
AT+FCLASS=*n* [&F] [&W]	Sets the communication class supported by the FOMA terminal.	*n*=0 : data is only supported. (initial value)	AT+FCLASS=0 OK
AT+GCAP	Displays the supported area for the AT commands available for the FOMA terminal.	Result: +GCAP:<area>,<area>,<area> area： +CGSM : Some or all GSM commands are supported. +FCLASS : +FCLASS command is supported. +W : +W command is supported.	AT+GCAP +GCAP:+CGSM,+FCLASS,+W OK
AT+GMI	Displays the manufacturer name (NEC).	—	AT+GMI NEC OK
AT+GMM	Displays the FOMA terminal product name (FOMA N905iμ).	—	AT+GMM FOMA N905imyu OK
AT+GMR	Displays the version of the FOMA terminal.	—	AT+GMR Ver1.00 OK

AT command	Outline	Parameter/description	Command execution example
AT+IFC=*n*,*m* [&F] [&W]	Selects the flow control method.	*n* : DCE by DTE *m* : DTE by DCE 0 : No flow control 1 : XON/XOFF flow control. 2 : RS/CS (RTS/CTS) flow control. initial value: *n*,*m* =2, 2 AT+IFC?: Displays the current setting.	AT+IFC=2,2 OK AT+IFC? +IFC : 2,2 OK AT+IFC=? +IFC : (0,1,2) ,(0,1,2) OK
AT+WS46	Displays the wireless communication mode of the FOMA terminal.	12 : GSM/GPRS fixed mode 22 : IMT fixed mode 25 : Auto mode	AT+WS46? 25 OK
AT¥S	Displays the contents of commands and S registers currently set.	—	AT¥S E1 Q0 V1 X4 &C1 &D2 &S0 &E1 ¥V0 S000=000 S002=043 S003=013 S004=010 S005=008 S006=005 S007=060 S008=003 S010=001 S030=000 S103=001 S104=001 OK
AT¥V*n* [&F] [&W]	Selects the response code specification for connecting the line.	*n*=0 : Not use extended result code (initial value). *n*=1 : Use extended result code.	AT¥V0 OK
ATA	Handles the incoming call process according to the mode received by the FOMA terminal.	—	RING ATA CONNECT
ATD	Handles the automatic calling process for the FOMA terminal according to the specified parameters and dial parameters.	ATD＊99＊＊＊<cid># : Packet communication <cid> 1 to 10: displays APN with +CGDCONT setting. AT+CBST=116,1,0 ATD<phone number> : 64K communication AT+CBST=134,1,0 ATD<phone number> : AV64K communication	<Packet communication> ATD＊99＊＊＊1# CONNECT <64K communication> AT+CBST=116,1,0 OK ATD090xxxxxxxx CONNECT <AV64K communication> AT+CBST=134,1,0 OK ATD090xxxxxxxx CONNECT
ATE*n* [&F] [&W]	Selects whether the echo back is present for DTE in the command mode.	*n*=0 : Echo back absent. *n*=1 : Echo back present (initial value).	ATE1 OK
ATH*n*	Performs on-hook operation for the FOMA terminal.	*n*=0 : Disconnect the line (can be omitted).	(During packet communication) +++ OK ATH NO CARRIER

AT command	Outline	Parameter/description	Command execution example
ATI*n*	Displays the ID code.	*n*=0 : Displays "NTT DoCoMo". *n*=1 : Displays the product name (same with +GMM). *n*=2 : Displays the version of the FOMA terminal (same with +GMR). *n* =3 : Displays the each element of ACMP signal. *n* =4 : Displays the details of communication functions of the FOMA terminal.	ATI0 NTT DoCoMo OK ATI1 FOMA N905imyu OK
ATO*n*	Returns from the online command mode to the online data mode during communication.	*n*=0 : Returns from online command mode to online data mode (can be omitted).	ATO CONNECT
ATQ*n* [&F] [&W]	Specifies whether or not to display the result code for DTE.	*n*=0 : Displays the result code (initial value). *n*=1 : Not display the result code.	ATQ0 OK ATQ1 (At that time, OK is not returned.)
ATS0=*n* [&F] [&W]	Specifies how many times the FOMA terminal rings before it automatically receives a call.	*n*=0 : No automatic answer (initial value). *n*=1- 255: A call is automatically answered after the specified number of rings. ATS0?: Displays the current setting.	ATS0=0 OK ATS0? 000 OK
ATS2=*n* [&F]	Sets an escape character.	*n*=43 : Initial value. *n*=127 : Escapes processing is invalid. ATS2? : Displays the current setting.	ATS2=43 OK ATS2? 043 OK
ATS3=*n* [&F]	Sets a carriage return (CR) character.	*n*=13 : Initial value (Only *n*=13 can be specified). ATS3? : Displays the current setting.	ATS3=13 OK ATS3? 013 OK
ATS4=*n* [&F]	Sets a line feed (LF) character.	*n*=10 : Initial value (Only *n*=10 can be specified). ATS4? : Displays the current setting.	ATS4=10 OK ATS4? 010 OK
ATS5=*n* [&F]	Sets a backspace (BS) character.	*n*=8 : Initial value (Only *n*=8 can be specified). ATS5? : Displays the current setting.	ATS5=8 OK ATS5? 008 OK
ATS6=*n* [&F]	Sets the pause time (second) until a dial starting.	This command can be set but cannot be operated.	ATS6=5 OK ATS6? 005 OK ATS6=? ERROR
ATS8=*n* [&F]	Sets the pause time (second) by using the comma dial.	This command can be set but cannot be operated.	ATS8=3 OK ATS8? 003 OK ATS8=? ERROR

AT command	Outline	Parameter/description	Command execution example
ATS10=*n* [&F][&W]	Automatic disconnection delay time setting. (1/10 second)	This command can be set but cannot be operated.	ATS10=1 OK ATS10? 001 OK ATS10=? ERROR
ATS30=*n* [&F]	Disconnects the line when there is no user data exchange for the time set in this command.	*n*=0 : Inactive timer off (initial value) *n*=0 - 255 Where *n* is the number of minutes.	ATS30=0 OK ATS30? 000 OK ATS30=? ERROR
ATS103=*n* [&F]	Sets the called sub address character.	*n*=0 : * *n*=1 : / (initial value) *n*=2 : ¥ (¥ mark or back slash)	ATS103=0 OK ATS103? 000 OK ATS103=? ERROR
ATS104=*n* [&F]	Sets the calling sub address character.	*n*=0 : # *n*=1 : % (initial value) *n*=2 : &	ATS104=0 OK ATS104? 000 OK ATS104=? ERROR
ATV*n* [&F] [&W]	Specifies whether the result code is returned in numerals or alphabets.	*n*=0 : Returns the result code in numeral value. *n*=1 : Returns the result code in characters (initial value).	ATV1 OK
ATX*n* [&F] [&W]	Specifies whether the speed indication is present in the CONNECT display when connecting the line. Also detects a busy tone or a dial tone.	*n*=0 : Without dial tone detection; without busy tone detection; without speed display. *n*=1 : Without dial tone detection; without busy tone detection; with speed display. *n*=2 : With dial tone detection; without busy tone detection; with speed display. *n*=3 : Without dial tone detection; with busy tone detection; with speed display. *n*=4 : With dial tone detection; with busy tone detection; with speed display. (initial value)	ATX1 OK
ATZ	Resets the current setting to the contents of the non-volatile memory. If this command is input during communication, the line will be disconnected.	—	(Online command mode) ATZ NO CARRIER (Offline command mode) ATZ OK
+++	In response to the escape sequence, the online data mode changes to the online command mode while maintaining the line connection.	—	(Online data mode) +++ (No display) OK

● Supplementary explanation of AT command

■ Commands which do not function

The following commands do not generate errors but will not function as a command:

- ATT (Tone setting)
- ATP (Pulse setting)

■ Command name: +CGDCONT

- **Outline**

  Sets the access point name (APN) for packet origination.

  Though this command is a setting command, it will not be recorded in non-volatile memory written by [&W], nor reset by [&F] or [Z].

- **Format**

  +CGDCONT=[<cid>[,"<PDP_type>"[,"<APN>"]]]

- **Explanation of the parameters**

  Sets the access point name (APN) for packet origination. See the following command execution example:

  <cid>*1：1 ~ 10

  <PDP_type>*2：PPP or IP

  <APN>*3：Any value

  *1：<cid> is a number for managing the access point name (APN) registered in the FOMA terminal for a packet communication. For the FOMA terminal, you can register from number 1 to 10. As "mopera.ne.jp" is assigned to <cid>=1 and "mopera.net" is assigned to <cid>=3 by default, assign to cid2 or cid4 to cid10.

  *2：<PDP_type> is the connection method. For the FOMA terminal, you can specify PPP or IP. PPP is assigned to <cid>=1 and IP is assigned to <cid>=3 by default.

  *3：<APN> is an arbitrary character string indicating each access point name.

- **Operation performed when the parameter is omitted**

  +CGDCONT=：Sets the initial value to all <cid>.

  +CGDCONT=<cid>：Sets the specified <cid> to the initial value.

  +CGDCONT=?：Displays a list of values that can be set.

  +CGDCONT?：Displays the current setting.

- **Command execution example**

  Command for registering an APN name of abc (when cid is 2).

  AT+CGDCONT=2,"PPP","abc"

  OK

■ Command name: +CGEQMIN=[parameter]

- **Outline**

  Registers a criterion to be used to decide whether or not to allow the QoS (quality of service) that is informed from the network side when PPP packet communication is established.

  There are 4 setting patterns as described in the following command execution example.

  Though this command is a setting command, it will not be recorded in non-volatile memory written by [&W], nor reset by [&F] or [Z].

- **Format**

  +CGEQMIN=[<cid>[,,<Maximum bitrate UL>[,<Maximum bitrate DL>]]]

- **Explanation of the parameters**

  <cid>*1：1～10

  <Maximum bitrate UL>*2：None (initial value) or 384

  <Maximum bitrate DL>*2：None (initial value) or 3,648

  *1：<cid> is a number for managing the access point name (APN) registered in the FOMA terminal for a packet communication. For the FOMA terminal, you can register from number 1 to 10. As "mopera.ne.jp" is assigned to <cid>=1 and "mopera.net" is assigned to <cid>=3 by default, assign to cid2 or cid4 to cid10.

  *2：<Maximum bitrate UL> and <Maximum bitrate DL> set the minimum communication speed (kbps) of uplink and downlink between the FOMA terminal and base station. When it is set to "None" (initial value), all speeds will be permitted, but when set to 384 or 3,648, a connection at a speed of other values will not be permitted, and a packet communication may not be connected.

- **Operation performed when the parameter is omitted**

  +CGEQMIN=：Sets the initial value to all <cid>.

  +CGEQMIN=<cid>：Sets the specified <cid> to the initial value.

  +CGEQMIN=?：Displays a list of values that can be set.

  +CGEQMIN?：Displays the current setting.

・**Command execution example**

Only the following 4 patterns can be set. (1) is set as an initial value to each cid.

(1) Command for permitting all speeds of both uplink and downlink (when cid is 2)
AT+CGEQMIN=2
OK

(2) Command for permitting only the speed of uplink 384kbps and downlink 3,648kbps (when cid is 4)
AT+CGEQMIN=4,,384,3648
OK

(3) Command for permitting uplink 384kbps and all speeds of downlink (when cid is 5).
AT+CGEQMIN=5,,384
OK

(4) Command for permitting all speeds of uplink and only 3,648kbps of downlink (when cid is 6)
AT+CGEQMIN=6,,,3648
OK

■ **Command name: +CGEQREQ=[parameter]**

・**Outline**

Sets the QoS (quality of service) to be requested to network when originating a PPP packet communication.
For setting, only the following pattern in the command execution example can be set, which is also set as an initial value.
Though this command is a setting command, it will not be recorded in non-volatile memory written by [&W], nor reset by [&F] or [Z].

・**Format**

+CGEQREQ=[<cid>]

・**Explanation of the parameters**

<cid>* : 1 to 10

* : <cid> is a number for managing the access point name (APN) registered in the FOMA terminal for a packet communication. For the FOMA terminal, you can register from number 1 to 10. As "mopera.ne.jp" is assigned to <cid>=1 and "mopera.net" is assigned to <cid>=3 by default, assign to cid2 or cid4 to cid10.

・**Operation performed when the parameter is omitted**

+CGEQREQ= : Sets the initial value to all <cid>.

+CGEQREQ=<cid> : Sets the specified <cid> to the initial value.

+CGEQREQ=? : Displays a list of values that can be set.

+CGEQREQ? : Displays the current setting.

・**Command execution example**

Only the following 1 pattern can be set. This is set to each cid as an initial value.
Command for requesting a connection at a speed of uplink 384kbps and downlink 3,648kbps (when cid is 2).
AT+CGEQREQ=2
OK

Saving modem port command setting value

The values set by AT commands are initialized every time the power of FOMA terminal is turned on or off, except the access point name (APN) set by AT+CGDCONT command (p.31), QoS setting by AT+CGEQMIN/AT+CGEQREQ command, permit or reject incoming call setting by AT＊DGAPL/AT＊DGARL/AT＊DGANSM command and the setting for specifying sending/not sending caller ID of packet communication set by AT＊DGPIR command. However, you can save the values set by commands with [&W] if you enter

AT&W ↵

after the setting. In this case, other set values with [&W] will also be saved. These values can be retrieved by entering

ATZ ↵

even after the power is turned on or off.

Result codes

■ **Result codes related with data communication**

Number indication	Character indication	Description
0	OK	Successfully executed.
1	CONNECT	Connected.
2	RING	Incoming call.
3	NO CARRIER	Line disconnected.
4	ERROR	Command not acceptable.
6	NO DIALTONE	Unable to detect dialing tone.
7	BUSY	Busy tone detected.
8	NO ANSWER	Time out in connection completing.
100	RESTRICTION	Network restricted.
101	DELAYED	Redialing restricted.

■ **Extended result codes**

• &E0

Number indication	Character indication	Description
122	CONNECT 64000	Connected between the FOMA terminal and base station at 64,000bps.
125	CONNECT 384000	Connected between the FOMA terminal and base station at 384,000bps.
133	CONNECT 3648000	Connected between the FOMA terminal and base station at 3,648,000bps.

• &E1

Number indication	Character indication	Description
5	CONNECT 1200	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 1,200bps.
10	CONNECT 2400	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 2,400bps.
11	CONNECT 4800	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 4,800bps.
13	CONNECT 7200	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 7,200bps.
12	CONNECT 9600	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 9,600bps.
15	CONNECT 14400	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 14,400bps.
16	CONNECT 19200	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 19,200bps.
17	CONNECT 38400	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 38,400bps.
18	CONNECT 57600	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 57,600bps.
19	CONNECT 115200	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 115,200bps.
20	CONNECT 230400	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 230,400bps.
21	CONNECT 460800	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 460,800bps.

■ **Communication protocol result codes**

Number indication	Character indication	Description
1	PPPoverUD	Connected by PPPoverUD (BC=UDI, +CBST=116,1,0)
3	AV64K	Connected by AV (Videophone) [64K]
5	PACKET	Connected by Packet

NOTE

- The result code appears as character indication (default value) when ATV*n* command (p.54) is set to *n*=1, and as number indication when the command is set to *n*=0.
- Though the communication speed appears in order to maintain a compatibility with the modem connected by traditional RS-232C, it differs from the actual connection speed because the FOMA terminal and PC are connected via FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 (optional).
- "RESTRICTION" (Number indication: 100) indicates that the network is congested. If this is displayed, wait for a while and then try again.

Result code display example

■ **When ATX0 is set**

Regardless of the AT¥V*n* command (p.52) setting, only CONNECT appears when the connection is completed.

Character indication example: ATD ＊99＊＊＊1#
CONNECT

Number indication example: ATD ＊99＊＊＊1#
1

■ **When ATX1 is set**

・ATX1, AT¥V0 are set (default)

Displayed in CONNECT <rate between the FOMA terminal and the PC> format when the connection is completed.

Character indication example: ATD ＊99＊＊＊1#
CONNECT 460800

Number indication example: ATD ＊99＊＊＊1#
1 21

・ATX1, AT¥V1 are set *

The following format appears when the connection is completed:

CONNECT <rate between the FOMA terminal and the PC> PACKET <Connecting party's APN>/ <Upstream (the FOMA terminal→ Wireless base station) maximum rate>/<Downstream (the FOMA terminal ← Wireless base station) maximum rate >

The following sample indicates that a connection is made to mopera.ne.jp at maximum 384kbps for sending, and maximum 3,648kbps for receiving.

Character indication example: ATD ＊99＊＊＊1#
CONNECT 460800 PACKET mopera.ne.jp/384/3648

Number indication example: ATD ＊99＊＊＊1#
1 21 5

＊：If both ATX1 and AT¥V1 are set simultaneously, a dial-up connection may not be correctly made. The single setting of AT¥V0 is recommended.

List of disconnection reasons

■ **Packet communication**

Value	Reason
26 27	Missing or incorrect APN.
30	Activation rejected by the network.
33	Requested service option not subscribed.
36	Disconnected successfully.

■ **64K data communication**

Value	Reason
1	The specified number does not exist.
16	Disconnected successfully.
17	Cannot communicate because the other party's line is busy.
18	Dialed, but no response within the specified time.
19	Cannot communicate because the other party is ringing.
21	The other party has rejected the communication.
63	The service or option of the network is not valid.
65	A transmission capacity not provided has been specified.
88	Sent to a terminal with different terminal attributes or received call.

FOMA® N905iμ
Kuten Code List

Kuten Code List

<Guide to the kuten code table>

First enter “digits 1-3 of the kuten code” then “digit 4”.

● Some kuten codes in the table here may look different from what actually appear on screens.

First to third digits of Kuten codes	Fourth digit of Kuten codes 0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
010		(ﾊﾟ⁽ﾊﾞ⁾)	゛	゜	゛	゜	‥	‥	;	?
011	!	”	#	$	%	&	’	(	)	*
012	+	,	-	.	/	0	1	2	3	4
013	5	6	7	8	9	:	;	<	=	>
014	?	@	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H
015	I	J	K	L	M	N	O	P	Q	R
016	S	T	U	V	W	X	Y	Z	[	¥
017	]	^	_	‘	a	b	c	d	e	f
018	g	h	i	j	k	l	m	n	o	p
019	q	r	s	t	u	v	w	x	y	z
020	{	|	}	‾	¨	ヽ	ヾ	〃	仝	々
021	〆	〇	〓	ー	―	‐	／	＼	～	∥
022	…	‥	‘	’	“	”	（	）	〔	〕
023	［	］	｛	｝	〈	〉	《	》	「	」
024	『	』	【	】	＋	−	±	×	÷	=
025	≦	≧	≠	<	>	∞	∴	♂	♀	°
026	′	″	℃	¥	$	¢	£	%	#	&
027	*	@	§	☆	★	○	●	◎	■	□
028	◆	◇	△	▲	▽	▼	※	〒	→	←
029	↑	↓	〓							
030						∈	∋	⊆	⊇	⊂
031	⊃	∪	∩	∧	∨	¬	⇒	⇔	∀	∃
032	⊥	∠	⌒	∂	∇	≡	≒	≪	≫	√
033	∽	∝	∵	∫	∬					
034	Å	‰	♯	♭	♪	†	‡	¶		
035										
036										
037										
038										
039										
040										
041										
042										
043										
044										
045										
046										
047										
048										
049										
050										
051										
052										
053										
054										
055										
056										
057										
058										
059										
060										
061										
062										
063										
064										
065										
066										
067										
068										
069										
070										
071										
072										
073										
074										

First to third digits of Kuten codes	Fourth digit of Kuten codes 0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
075	б	в	г	д	е	ё	ж	з	и	й
076	к	л	м	н	о	п	р	с	т	у
077	ф	х	ц	ч	ш	щ	ъ	ы	ь	э
078	ю	я								
079										
080										
081										
082										
083										
084										
085										
086										
087										
088										
089										
090										
091										
092										
093										
094										
095										
096										
097										
098										
099										
100										
101										
102										
103										
104										
105										
106										
107										
108										
109										
110										
111										
112										
113										
114										
115										
116										
117										
118										
119										
120										
121										
122										
123										
124										

First to third digits of Kuten codes	Fourth digit of Kuten codes 0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
125	①	②	③	④	⑤	⑥	⑦	⑧	⑨	⑩
126	⑪	⑫	⑬	⑭	⑮	⑯	⑰	⑱	⑲	⑳
127	Ⅰ	Ⅱ	Ⅲ	Ⅳ	Ⅴ	Ⅵ	Ⅶ	Ⅷ	Ⅸ	Ⅹ
128	ミリ	キロ	センチ	メートル	グラム	トン	アール	ヘクタール	リットル	ワット
129	kg	cc	m²	km	mg	kg	cm²	mm	cm	m³
130	平成	昭和	大正	明治	株	有	代	上	下	左
131	右	医	宅	学	監	企	資	協	夫	妻
132	平均	点	打	割	安打	盗塁	本塁打	審判	投手	捕手
133	一塁手	二塁手	三塁手	遊撃手	外野手	走者	満塁	走塁	併殺	失策
134	完封	完投	救援	勝利	敗戦	引分	打率	防御率	打点	本塁打
135	試合	回	対	戦	勝	負	分	差	率	厘
136	毛	糎	粍	瓦	竏	弗	噸	哩	呎	吋
137	封	缶	函	箱	瓶	袋	冊	巻	枚	組
138	台	基	本	件	通	号	階	軒	戸	棟
139	番	頭	羽	隻	双	艘	両	機	発	度
140										
141										
142										
143										
144										
145										
146										
147										
148										
149										
150										
151										
152										
153										
154										
155										
156										
157										
158										
159										
160										
161										
162										
163										
164										

First to third digits of Kuten codes	Fourth digit of Kuten codes 0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
165	凱	蓋	蛎	殻	隔	橿	滑	株	萱	瓦
166	堪	慨	涸	潤	缶	間	巌	願		
167	き									
168	企	希	伎	幾	岐	棄	気	貴	妓	蟻
169	橘	丘	久	及	仇	汲	旧	許	共	僵
170	矯	仰	粁	禁	金					
171	く									
172	九	駆	隅							
173	矩	空	偶	苦	窪	熊	隈	群	桑	軍
174	け									
175	係	径	渓	蛍	穴	券	捲	犬	軒	幻
176	限	こ								
177	乎	個	故	呼	湖	固	狐			
178	姑	孤	己	庫	弧					

First to third digits of Kuten codes	Fourth digit of Kuten codes 0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
179	崖	涯	慨	蓋	骸	柿	各	覚	楽	割
180	且	釜	咳	鎧	嚇	穫	岳	潟	轄	蒲
181	貝	碍	柿	核	閣	樫	渇	褐	靴	茅
182	苅	喚	慣	漢	緩	鑑	岸	顔		
183	階	涯	垣	格	郭	笠	活	樺	柏	刈
184	巻	感	汗	簡	還	含	頑			
185	き									
186	外	該	劃	確	学	鰍	褐	閑	玩	
187	勿	街	鈎	獲	革	梶	葛	兜		
188	凱	完	敢	環	肝	関	癌			
189	乾	姦	換	潅	翰	閑				
190	寒	寛	桓	監	莞	喊	岩			
191	冠	官	柑	甘	艦	陥	眼			
192	冠	官	柑	甘	艦	陥	眼			
193	勘	幹	款	竿	諫	舘	贋			
194	き									
195	器	机	稀	騎	欺	鞠	却	吸	球	居
196	漁	匡	恭	興	暁	均	緊			
197	く									
198	駆	隅								
199	駆	遇	寓							
200	矩	空	偶	苦	窪	熊	隈	群	桑	軍
201	け									
202	傾	恵	畦	計	戟	結	剣			
203	圭	掲	継							
204	啓	憩	経	軽	隙	月	堅			
205	絹	顕	玄							
206	兄	慧	系	警	激	訣	圏			
207	現	験								
208	き									
209										
210	喜	揮	季	飢	擬	菊	黍	及	灸	去
211	鋸									
212	祈	揮	技	掬	朽	牛	臣			
213	危	忌	机							
214	寄	棋	毅	記	儀	義	桔	逆	救	級
215	挙	享	僑	境	況	響	極	欣	襟	
216	嬉	期	帰	規	偽	祇	喫	虐	急	笈
217	拠	享	侠	喬	橋	鏡	曲	斤	衿	
218	既	機	徽	亀	疑	吃	脚	弓	窮	拒
219	魚	供	叫	教	郷	局	錦	園		
220	き									
221	岐	阜	葉	気	貴	妓	蟻	橘	丘	朽
222	糾	渠	京	兇	峡	狂	響	玉	欽	謹
223	く									
224	汽	起	宜	誼	詰	久	求	給	旧	虚
225	競	強	狭	驚	桐	琴	近			
226	く									
227	玖	喰	屈	靴	勲					
228	け									
229	傾	恵	畦	計	戟	結	剣			
230	き									
231	幾	岐	葉	気	貴	妓	蟻	橘	丘	朽
232	糾	渠	京	兇	峡	狂	響	玉	欽	謹
233	く									
234	駆	隅								
235	駆	遇	寓							
236	け									
237	傾	恵	畦	計	戟	結	剣			
238	き									
239	岐	阜	葉	気	貴	妓	蟻	橘	丘	朽
240	糾	渠	京	兇	峡	狂	響	玉	欽	謹
241	く									
242	駆	隅								
243	駆	遇	寓							

First to third digits of Kuten codes	Fourth digit of Kuten codes 0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
245	雇	孤	胡	股	跨	虎	糊	鮫	褌	鼓
246	後	伍	互	五	誇	午	顧	瑚	鮭	悟
247	醐	侯	檎	梧	呉	碁	御	侯	鯉	鯉
248	功	向	佼	交	語	候	乞	口	厚	交
249	鈷	垢	坑	厚	倖	好	効	垢	喉	浩
250	娯	恥	広	喉	孔	康	為	垣	幸	紋
251	護	宏	昂	攻	弘	更	巧	根	攻	行
252	功	慌	港	浩	杭	申	拘	梗	浩	閣
253	工	梗	絵	紋	皇	考	汐	稿	紋	壕
254	抗	稿	綱	行	肯	貢	込	腔	行	穀
255	構	衡	閣	閣	購	香	困	酵	閣	骨
256	糠	隆	壕	壕	高	豪	混	剛	壕	頃
257	膏	拷	穀	穀	轟	黒	濁	克	穀	根
258	鉱	酷	骨	骨	獄	痕	坤	腰	骨	魂
259	欽	狛	頃	頃	瀧	墾	込	恨	頃	懇
260	取	今	根	根	麹	紺	困	艮	根	恩
261	工	梱	混	混	翅	墾	混	婚	混	昏
262	抗	込	濠	濠	鵠	坤	濠	恨	濠	懇
263	構	困	豪	豪	込	痕	豪	魂	豪	恩
264	糠	混	黒	黒	困	魂	黒	懇	黒	昏
265	膏	濁	墨	墨	混	恩	墨	昏	墨	墨
266	鉱	墨	墾	墾	墨	昏	墾	墨	墾	墾
267	欽	墾	懇	懇	墾	墨	懇	墾	懇	懇
268	工	懇	恩	恩	懇	墾	恩	懇	恩	恩
269	抗	恩	昏	昏	恩	懇	昏	恩	昏	昏
270	構	昏	墨	墨	昏	恩	墨	昏	墨	墨
271	糠	墨	墾	墾	墨	昏	墾	墨	墾	墾
272	膏	墾	懇	懇	墾	墨	懇	墾	懇	懇
273	鉱	懇	恩	恩	懇	墾	恩	懇	恩	恩
274	欽	恩	昏	昏	恩	懇	昏	恩	昏	昏
275	工	昏	墨	墨	昏	恩	墨	昏	墨	墨
276	抗	墨	墾	墾	墨	昏	墾	墨	墾	墾
277	構	墾	懇	懇	墾	墨	懇	墾	懇	懇
278	糠	懇	恩	恩	懇	墾	恩	懇	恩	恩
279	膏	恩	昏	昏	恩	懇	昏	恩	昏	昏
280	鉱	昏	墨	墨	昏	恩	墨	昏	墨	墨
281	欽	墨	墾	墾	墨	昏	墾	墨	墾	墾
282	工	墾	懇	懇	墾	墨	懇	墾	懇	懇
283	抗	懇	恩	恩	懇	墾	恩	懇	恩	恩
284	構	恩	昏	昏	恩	懇	昏	恩	昏	昏
285	糠	昏	墨	墨	昏	恩	墨	昏	墨	墨
286	膏	墨	墾	墾	墨	昏	墾	墨	墾	墾
287	鉱	墾	懇	懇	墾	墨	懇	墾	懇	懇
288	欽	懇	恩	恩	懇	墾	恩	懇	恩	恩
289	工	恩	昏	昏	恩	懇	昏	恩	昏	昏
290	抗	昏	墨	墨	昏	恩	墨	昏	墨	墨
291	構	墨	墾	墾	墨	昏	墾	墨	墾	墾
292	糠	墾	懇	懇	墾	墨	懇	墾	懇	懇
293	膏	懇	恩	恩	懇	墾	恩	懇	恩	恩
294	鉱	恩	昏	昏	恩	懇	昏	恩	昏	昏
295	欽	昏	墨	墨	昏	恩	墨	昏	墨	墨
296	工	墨	墾	墾	墨	昏	墾	墨	墾	墾
297	抗	墾	懇	懇	墾	墨	懇	墾	懇	懇
298	構	懇	恩	恩	懇	墾	恩	懇	恩	恩
299	糠	恩	昏	昏	恩	懇	昏	恩	昏	昏
300	膏	昏	墨	墨	昏	恩	墨	昏	墨	墨
301	鉱	墨	墾	墾	墨	昏	墾	墨	墾	墾
302	欽	墾	懇	懇	墾	墨	懇	墾	懇	懇
303	工	懇	恩	恩	懇	墾	恩	懇	恩	恩
304	抗	恩	昏	昏	恩	懇	昏	恩	昏	昏
305	構	昏	墨	墨	昏	恩	墨	昏	墨	墨
306	糠	墨	墾	墾	墨	昏	墾	墨	墾	墾
307	膏	墾	懇	懇	墾	墨	懇	墾	懇	懇
308	鉱	恩	昏	昏	恩	懇	昏	恩	昏	昏
309	欽	昏	墨	墨	昏	恩	墨	昏	墨	墨
310	工	墨	墾	墾	墨	昏	墾	墨	墾	墾
311	抗	墾	懇	懇	墾	墨	懇	墾	懇	懇
312	構	懇	恩	恩	懇	墾	恩	懇	恩	恩
313	糠	恩	昏	昏	恩	懇	昏	恩	昏	昏
314	膏	昏	墨	墨	昏	恩	墨	昏	墨	墨
315	鉱	墨	墾	墾	墨	昏	墾	墨	墾	墾

First to third digits of Kuten codes	Fourth digit of Kuten codes 0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
316	す									
317										
318										
319										
320										
321	せ									
322										
323										
324										
325										
326										
327										
328										
329	さ									
330										
331										
332										
333	そ									
334										
335										
336										
337										
338										
339										
340										
341	し									
342										
343	た									
344										
345										
346										
347										
348										
349										
350										
351										
352										
353										
354	ち									
355										
356										
357										
358										
359										
360										
361										
362										
363	つ									
364										
365										
366										
367	て									
368										
369										
370										
371										
372										
373										
374	と									
375										
376										

First to third digits of Kuten codes	Fourth digit of Kuten codes 0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
377	な									
378										
379										
380										
381										
382										
383										
384	に									
385										
386										
387	ぬ〜の									
388										
389										
390										
391	は									
392										
393										
394										
395										
396										
397										
398										
399										
400										
401										
402	ひ									
403										
404										
405										
406	ふ									
407										
408										
409										
410										
411										
412										
413	へ									
414										
415										
416	ほ									
417										
418										
419										
420										
421										
422	ま									
423										
424										
425										
426	み									
427										
428										
429										
430										
431										
432	む									
433										
434										
435										
436										

First to third digits of Kuten codes	Fourth digit of Kuten codes 0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
377	搭	投	桃	東	踏	逃	銅	毒	透	導
378	燈	灯	痘	当	同	堂	鳶	苫	峡	等
379		到	湾		道	遊	豚		毒	峠
380		討	統	頭	禿	鴻		遁	苦	椅
381		闘	藤	豆	届	巣	沌		遁	椿
382		童	瞳	動	沌	屈				等
383		流	徳	胴	凸	沌				
384		凸	橡	特	屯	豚				
385		屯	噸	突	惇					
386			鈍							
387	な									
388										
389										
390										
391	に									
392										
393										
394										
395										
396										
397										
398										
399										
400										
401										
402	ぬ〜の									
403										
404										
405										
406	ね									
407										
408										
409										
410										
411										
412										
413	の									
414										
415										
416	は									
417										
418										
419										
420										
421										
422	ば									
423										
424										
425										
426	ぱ									
427										
428										
429										
430										
431										
432	ひ									
433										
434										
435										
436										

First to third digits of Kuten codes	Fourth digit of Kuten codes 0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
377	棟	等								
378	透	導	峠							
379			椿							
380			等							
381										
382										
383										
384										
385										
386	雑	楠								
387										
388										
389	肉									
390										
391	禰	燃								
392										
393	能									
394	杷	廃								
395	覇	俳	輩							
396	播	馬	肺	賃	剥	迫				
397	濃	捻	納							
398	能									
399	把	芭	背	薄						
400	罵	牌	煤	蛇	板	販	磐			
401	配	賠	拍	漠						
402	婆	盃	楳	剋	粕	麦	箸	溌	噺	搬
403	年	嚢	蚕							
404	熱	埜								
405	念	悩	櫨	髪	隼	北	采	蛮		
406	尼	入	任	ぬ〜の						
407	弐	匂	忍	認						
408	振	捻	濃	乳	韮					
409	猫	之	覗							
410	日	尿								
411	廿	如								
412	妊									
413	那	馴	縄							
414	内									
415	奈	楢								
416	鍋									
417	捺	汝								
418	灘									
419	難									
420	内									
421	縄									
422	那									
423	馴									
424	認									
425	忍									
426	任									
427	乳	韮								
428	日	尿								
429	廿	如								
430	妊									
431	布	腐	撫	踏						
432	富	符	侮	葺						
433	富	父	阜	楓						
434	附	風	扮							
435	弗	憤								
436	淵	墳	聞							

First to third digits of Kuten codes	Fourth digit of Kuten codes 0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
377	搭	投	桃	東	踏	逃	銅	毒	透	導
378	燈	灯	痘	当	同	堂	鳶	苫	峡	等
379	答	到	湾	糖	道	遊	豚	遁	苦	峠
380		討	統	藤	禿	鴻			遁	椅
381		闘	騰	豆	届	巣	沌			椿
382		童	瞳	同	沌	屈				等
383		流	徳	道	凸	沌				
384		凸	橡	胴	屯	豚				
385		屯	噸	特						
386			鈍	突						
387	宕	島	内	那	乍	廊	雨	凪	雑	楠
388	盗	淘	縄	馴	庵					
389	答	筒			椿					
390		董	捺	内						
391		陶	汝	縄						
392		撞								
393		匿								
394		読								
395		酉								
396		呑								
397	嶋	湯	糖	蕩						
398	悼	涛	統	騰	瞳	徳	橡	噸	鈍	
399	島	淘	筒	董	陶	撞	匿	読	酉	呑
400	宕	盗	答							
401	搭	投	灯	到	討	闘	童	流	凸	屯
402	燈									
403										
404										
405										
406	匿	斐	被	微						
407	彼	碑	飛	美	匹	筆	標	病	斌	
408	披	肥	尾		膝	媛	票	鉄	賓	頻
409	悲	秘	桶		足	逼	氷	秒	浜	
410	批	籠	備		髭	検	漂	苗	瀕	
411	妃	疲	避	琵	柊	必	俵	廟	品	
412	否	泌	費	毘	鼻	弼	謬	豹	鰭	瓶
413	妃	疲	非	眉	稗	畢	彪	描	彬	
414	庇	皮	彦	姫	瓢	絵	漂	苗	瀕	
415	妃	披	膝	媛	票	鉄	賓			
416	婦	埠	斧	賦	部	服	覆	噴	丈	
417	富	符	侮	葺						
418	不	扶	譜	葡	復	腹	分	紛		
419	付	敷	負	無	幅	復	吻	雰		
420	怖	芙	舞	副	福	鮒	糞			
421	府	膚	武	伏		物	粉			
422	夫	普	赴	封						
423	淵	墳	聞							
424	仏	奮								
425	布	腐	撫	踏						
426	冨	符	侮	葺						
427	富	父	阜	楓						
428	附	風	扮							
429	弗	憤								
430	沸	焚								
431	払	扮								
432	沸	憤								
433	淵	墳	聞							
434	仏	奮								
435	布	腐	撫	踏						
436	冨	符	侮	葺						

First to third digits of Kuten codes	Fourth digit of Kuten codes 0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
377	搭	投	桃	東	踏	逃	銅	毒	透	導
378	燈	灯	痘	当	同	堂	鳶	苫	峡	等
379	答	到	湾	糖	道	遊	豚	遁	苦	峠
380		討	統	藤	禿	鴻			遁	椅
381		闘	騰	豆	届	巣	沌			椿
382		童	瞳	同	沌	屈				等
383		流	徳	道	凸	沌				
384		凸	橡	胴	屯	豚				
385		屯	噸	特						
386			鈍	突						
387	宕	島	内	那	乍	廊	雨	凪	雑	楠
388	盗	淘	縄	馴	庵					
389	答	筒			椿					
390		董	捺	内						
391		陶	汝	縄						
392		撞								
393		匿								
394		読								
395		酉								
396		呑								
397	嶋	湯	糖	蕩						
398	悼	涛	統	騰	瞳	徳	橡	噸	鈍	
399	島	淘	筒	董	陶	撞	匿	読	酉	呑
400	宕	盗	答							
401	搭	投	灯	到	討	闘	童	流	凸	屯
402	燈									
403										
404										
405										
406	匿	斐	被	微						
407	彼	碑	飛	美	匹	筆	標	病	斌	
408	披	肥	尾		膝	媛	票	鉄	賓	頻
409	悲	秘	桶		足	逼	氷	秒	浜	
410	批	籠	備		髭	検	漂	苗	瀕	
411	妃	疲	避	琵	柊	必	俵	廟	品	
412	否	泌	費	毘	鼻	弼	謬	豹	鰭	瓶
413	妃	疲	非	眉	稗	畢	彪	描	彬	
414	庇	皮	彦	姫	瓢	絵	漂	苗	瀕	
415	妃	披	膝	媛	票	鉄	賓			
416	婦	埠	斧	賦	部	服	覆	噴	丈	
417	富	符	侮	葺						
418	不	扶	譜	葡	復	腹	分	紛		
419	付	敷	負	無	幅	復	吻	雰		
420	怖	芙	舞	副	福	鮒	糞			
421	府	膚	武	伏		物	粉			
422	夫	普	赴	封						
423	淵	墳	聞							
424	仏	奮								
425	布	腐	撫	踏						
426	冨	符	侮	葺						
427	富	父	阜	楓						
428	附	風	扮							
429	弗	憤								
430	沸	焚								
431	払	扮								
432	沸	憤								
433	淵	墳	聞							
434	仏	奮								
435	布	腐	撫	踏						
436	冨	符	侮	葺						

First to third digits of Kuten codes	Fourth digit of Kuten codes										
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	
	ま										
436			摩							妹	祉
437			槙	又		磨		麻	埋	鮪	迄
438			哩	侯		幕		枕	沫		
439	毎		俣	慢		抹		沫			
440	桝		慢	蔓							
	み										
441	鱒						魔	膜	末		
	蘭									密	
									岬	眠	
440					味	未	魅	箕	巳		
441	蜜		湊		稔	脈	妙	民	粍		
	む										
441										務	
442									娘		
443	夢		無		牟	矛	霧	鵡	椋	婿	
	め										
442										冥	滅
443				明	綿		迷			牝	
444	名		命	棉			面			牲	
444	免								鳴		
	も										
444								摸	茂	妄	黙	悶
445								模	木		
445				猛	勿			儲	問		
446	孟		毛		匁			貰			
447	目		杢	門				粍			
447	紋							蒙			
	や										
447								耗	戻		
448										弥	薮
449					也				爺	野	柳
	ゆ										
449					約				薬		
450									訳	耶	
451									躍	靖	
452										予	
453										容	用
454										熔	陽
455										遥	
456										淀	
	よ										
456										羅	
457										落	酪
458										覧	
	ら										
458										利	吏
459										率	立
460										硫	粒
461										亮	僚
462										緑	倫
463										鱗	麟
464											
465											
	り										
466										了	励
467										寮	麗
468										涼	隣
469										猟	
470										領	
	る～れ										
466										輪	
467										裂	
468										烈	
469											
470											
	れ										
470										令	鈴
471										例	零
472										冷	霊
473										鈴	恋
	ろ										
470										路	漏
471										賂	浪
472										麓	禄
473										炉	
474										櫨	
475										六	
476										郎	
477										楼	
478										廊	
479										朗	
	わ										
473										蝋	
474										脇	惑
475										腕	湾
476										賄	
477										賂	
478										蕨	
479										歪	
480										藁	
481											
482											
483											
484											
485											
486											
487											

First to third digits of Kuten codes	Fourth digit of Kuten codes										
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	
488	僂	傲	傑	僂	僞	僊	僉	僉	僂	僉	
489	僂	僊	傳	僉	儼	兪	冲	凭	刮	剴	
490			傳	儻	儼	兩	菩	冱	凩	劂	
491			會	儻	儷	兩	菩	冱	凩	劂	
492			會	儻	儷	兩	菩	冱	凩	劂	
493			會	儻	儷	兩	菩	冱	凩	劂	
494			會	儻	儷	兩	菩	冱	凩	劂	
495			會	儻	儷	兩	菩	冱	凩	劂	
496			會	儻	儷	兩	菩	冱	凩	劂	
497			會	儻	儷	兩	菩	冱	凩	劂	
498			會	儻	儷	兩	菩	冱	凩	劂	
499			會	儻	儷	兩	菩	冱	凩	劂	
500			會	儻	儷	兩	菩	冱	凩	劂	
501			會	儻	儷	兩	菩	冱	凩	劂	
502			會	儻	儷	兩	菩	冱	凩	劂	
503			會	儻	儷	兩	菩	冱	凩	劂	
504			會	儻	儷	兩	菩	冱	凩	劂	
505			會	儻	儷	兩	菩	冱	凩	劂	
506			會	儻	儷	兩	菩	冱	凩	劂	
507			會	儻	儷	兩	菩	冱	凩	劂	
508			會	儻	儷	兩	菩	冱	凩	劂	
509			會	儻	儷	兩	菩	冱	凩	劂	
510			會	儻	儷	兩	菩	冱	凩	劂	
511			會	儻	儷	兩	菩	冱	凩	劂	
512			會	儻	儷	兩	菩	冱	凩	劂	
513			會	儻	儷	兩	菩	冱	凩	劂	
514			會	儻	儷	兩	菩	冱	凩	劂	
515			會	儻	儷	兩	菩	冱	凩	劂	
516			會	儻	儷	兩	菩	冱	凩	劂	
517			會	儻	儷	兩	菩	冱	凩	劂	
518			會	儻	儷	兩	菩	冱	凩	劂	
519			會	儻	儷	兩	菩	冱	凩	劂	
520			會	儻	儷	兩	菩	冱	凩	劂	
521			會	儻	儷	兩	菩	冱	凩	劂	
522			會	儻	儷	兩	菩	冱	凩	劂	
523			會	儻	儷	兩	菩	冱	凩	劂	
524			會	儻	儷	兩	菩	冱	凩	劂	
525			會	儻	儷	兩	菩	冱	凩	劂	
526			會	儻	儷	兩	菩	冱	凩	劂	
527			會	儻	儷	兩	菩	冱	凩	劂	
528			會	儻	儷	兩	菩	冱	凩	劂	
529			會	儻	儷	兩	菩	冱	凩	劂	
530			會	儻	儷	兩	菩	冱	凩	劂	
531			會	儻	儷	兩	菩	冱	凩	劂	
532			會	儻	儷	兩	菩	冱	凩	劂	
533			會	儻	儷	兩	菩	冱	凩	劂	
534			會	儻	儷	兩	菩	冱	凩	劂	
535			會	儻	儷	兩	菩	冱	凩	劂	
536			會	儻	儷	兩	菩	冱	凩	劂	
537			會	儻	儷	兩	菩	冱	凩	劂	
538			會	儻	儷	兩	菩	冱	凩	劂	
539			會	儻	儷	兩	菩	冱	凩	劂	
540			會	儻	儷	兩	菩	冱	凩	劂	
541			會	儻	儷	兩	菩	冱	凩	劂	
542			會	儻	儷	兩	菩	冱	凩	劂	
543			會	儻	儷	兩	菩	冱	凩	劂	
544			會	儻	儷	兩	菩	冱	凩	劂	
545			會	儻	儷	兩	菩	冱	凩	劂	
546			會	儻	儷	兩	菩	冱	凩	劂	
547			會	儻	儷	兩	菩	冱	凩	劂	
548			會	儻	儷	兩	菩	冱	凩	劂	
549			會	儻	儷	兩	菩	冱	凩	劂	
550			會	儻	儷	兩	菩	冱	凩	劂	
551			會	儻	儷	兩	菩	冱	凩	劂	
552			會	儻	儷	兩	菩	冱	凩	劂	
553			會	儻	儷	兩	菩	冱	凩	劂	
554			會	儻	儷	兩	菩	冱	凩	劂	
555			會	儻	儷	兩	菩	冱	凩	劂	
556			會	儻	儷	兩	菩	冱	凩	劂	
557			會	儻	儷	兩	菩	冱	凩	劂	
558			會	儻	儷	兩	菩	冱	凩	劂	
559			會	儻	儷	兩	菩	冱	凩	劂	
560			會	儻	儷	兩	菩	冱	凩	劂	
561			會	儻	儷	兩	菩	冱	凩	劂	
562			會	儻	儷	兩	菩	冱	凩	劂	
563			會	儻	儷	兩	菩	冱	凩	劂	

First to third digits of Kuten codes	Fourth digit of Kuten codes										
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	
564	愴	愴	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	
565	愴	憎	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	
566	愴	憎	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	
567	愴	憎	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	
568	愴	憎	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	
569	愴	憎	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	
570	愴	憎	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	
571	愴	憎	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	
572	愴	憎	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	
573	愴	憎	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	
574	愴	憎	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	
575	愴	憎	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	
576	愴	憎	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	
577	愴	憎	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	
578	愴	憎	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	
579	愴	憎	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	
580	愴	憎	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	
581	愴	憎	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	
582	愴	憎	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	
583	愴	憎	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	
584	愴	憎	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	
585	愴	憎	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	
586	愴	憎	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	
587	愴	憎	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	
588	愴	憎	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	
589	愴	憎	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	
590	愴	憎	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	
591	愴	憎	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	
592	愴	憎	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	
593	愴	憎	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	
594	愴	憎	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	
595	愴	憎	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	
596	愴	憎	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	
597	愴	憎	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	
598	愴	憎	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	
599	愴	憎	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	
600	愴	憎	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	
601	愴	憎	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	
602	愴	憎	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	
603	愴	憎	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	
604	愴	憎	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	
605	愴	憎	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	
606	愴	憎	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	
607	愴	憎	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	
608	愴	憎	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	
609	愴	憎	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	
610	愴	憎	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	
611	愴	憎	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	
612	愴	憎	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	
613	愴	憎	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	
614	愴	憎	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	
615	愴	憎	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	
616	愴	憎	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	
617	愴	憎	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	
618	愴	憎	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	
619	愴	憎	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	
620	愴	憎	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	
621	愴	憎	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	
622	愴	憎	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	
623	愴	憎	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	
624	愴	憎	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	
625	愴	憎	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	
626	愴	憎	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	
627	愴	憎	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	
628	愴	憎	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	
629	愴	憎	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	
630	愴	憎	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	
631	愴	憎	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	
632	愴	憎	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	
633	愴	憎	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	
634	愴	憎	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	
635	愴	憎	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	
636	愴	憎	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	
637	愴	憎	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	
638	愴	憎	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	
639	愴	憎	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	憑	

First to third digits of Kuten codes	Fourth digit of Kuten codes									
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
640		爨	犇	犢	玀	狃	爰	牾	狃	倏
641	爲	犛	犮	狄	狽	狷	狻	猊	猗	獃
642	犮	犁	狄	狽	狷	猂	猙	獃	獍	獗
643	狆	狗	獍	獏	默	玱	琥	瑩	璀	璀
644	獏	獗	瑯	瑯	瑯	瑾	瑾	璀	璨	璞
645	瑯	瑁	瑁	瑁	瑾	瑾	璀	璨	璞	璞
646	瑁	瑁	瑾	瑾	璀	璨	璞	璞	璞	璞
647	瑁	瑾	瑾	璀	璨	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
648	瑾	瑾	璀	璨	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
649	瑾	璀	璨	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
650	璀	璨	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
651	璨	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
652	璨	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
653	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
654	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
655	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
656	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
657	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
658	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
659	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
660	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
661	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
662	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
663	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
664	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
665	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
666	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
667	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
668	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
669	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
670	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
671	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
672	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
673	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
674	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
675	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
676	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
677	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
678	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
679	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
680	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
681	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
682	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
683	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
684	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
685	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
686	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
687	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
688	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
689	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
690	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
691	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
692	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
693	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
694	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
695	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
696	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
697	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
698	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
699	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
700	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
701	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
702	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
703	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
704	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
705	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
706	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
707	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
708	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
709	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
710	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
711	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
712	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
713	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
714	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
715	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞

First to third digits of Kuten codes	Fourth digit of Kuten codes									
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
716	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
717	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
718	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
719	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
720	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
721	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
722	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
723	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
724	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
725	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
726	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
727	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
728	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
729	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
730	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
731	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
732	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
733	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
734	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
735	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
736	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
737	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
738	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
739	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
740	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
741	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
742	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
743	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
744	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
745	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
746	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
747	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
748	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
749	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
750	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
751	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
752	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
753	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
754	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
755	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
756	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
757	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
758	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
759	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
760	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
761	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
762	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
763	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
764	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
765	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
766	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
767	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
768	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
769	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
770	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
771	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
772	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
773	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
774	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
775	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
776	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
777	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
778	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
779	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
780	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
781	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
782	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
783	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
784	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
785	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
786	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
787	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
788	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
789	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
790	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
791	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞

First to third digits of Kuten codes	Fourth digit of Kuten codes									
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
792	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
793	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
794	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
795	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
796	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
797	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
798	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
799	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
800	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
801	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
802	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
803	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
804	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
805	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
806	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
807	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
808	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
809	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
810	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
811	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
812	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
813	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
814	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
815	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
816	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
817	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
818	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
819	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
820	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
821	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
822	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
823	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
824	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
825	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
826	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
827	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
828	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
829	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
830	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
831	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
832	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
833	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
834	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
835	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
836	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
837	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
838	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
839	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞
840	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞	璞